GLOBAL EDITION

Principles of Operations Management

Sustainability and Supply Chain Management

TENTH EDITION

Jay Heizer • Barry Render • Chuck Munson

ALWAYS LEARNING

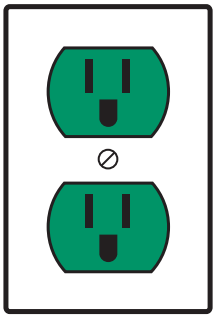
PEARSON

with MyOMLab™

- **Worked Solutions**—Provide step-by-step explanations on how to solve select problems using the exact numbers and data that were presented in the problem. Instructors will have access to the Worked Solutions in preview and review mode.

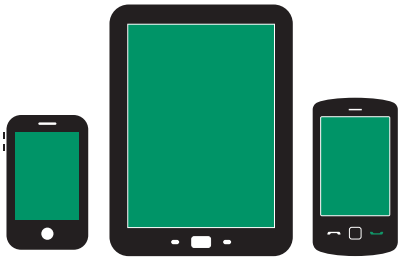
- **Test Manager**—Choose from the hundreds of available questions correlated to the textbook and AACSB standards to create and manage tests.

- **Reporting Dashboard**—View, analyze, and report learning outcomes clearly and easily. Available via the Gradebook and fully mobile-ready, the Reporting Dashboard presents student performance data at the class, section, and program levels in an accessible, visual manner.



- **LMS Integration**—Link from any LMS platform to access assignments, rosters, and resources, and synchronize MyLab grades with your LMS gradebook.
  For students, new direct, single sign-on provides access to all the personalized learning MyLab resources that make studying more efficient and effective.

- **Mobile Ready**—Students and instructors can access multimedia resources and complete assessments right at their fingertips, on any mobile device.



This page intentionally left blank

GLOBAL EDITION

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT

Sustainability and Supply Chain Management

This page intentionally left blank

TENTH EDITION

GLOBAL EDITION

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT

Sustainability and Supply Chain Management

JAY
HEIZER
Jesse H. Jones Professor of Business Administration
Texas Lutheran University

BARRY
RENDER
Charles Harwood Professor of Operations Management
Graduate School of Business
Rollins College

CHUCK
MUNSON
Professor of Operations Management
Carson College of Business
Washington State University

PEARSON

Boston Columbus Indianapolis New York San Francisco
Amsterdam Cape Town Dubai London Madrid Milan Munich Paris Montreal Toronto
Delhi Mexico City Sao Paulo Sydney Hong Kong Seoul Singapore Taipei Tokyo

Vice President, Business Publishing: Donna Battista
Editor-in-Chief: Stephanie Wall
Acquisitions Editor: Daniel Tylman
Editorial Assistant: Linda Albelli
Assistant Acquisitions Editor, Global Editions: Ananya Srivastava
Associate Project Editor, Global Edition: Amrita Kar
Project Manager, Global Editions: Pooja Aggarwal
Manager, Media Production, Global Edition: Vikram Kumar
Senior Manufacturing Controller, Production, Global Edition: Trudy Kimber
Vice President, Product Marketing: Maggie Moylan
Director of Marketing, Digital Services and Products: Jeanette Koskinas
Field Marketing Manager: Lenny Ann Kucenski
Product Marketing Assistant: Jessica Quazza
Team Lead, Program Management: Ashley Santora
Program Manager: Claudia Fernandes
Team Lead, Project Management: Jeff Holcomb
Senior Project Manager: Jacqueline A. Martin
Operations Specialist: Carol Melville
Creative Director: Blair Brown
Art Director: Janet Slowik
Vice President, Director of Digital Strategy and Assessment: Paul Gentile
Manager of Learning Applications: Paul DeLuca
Director, Digital Studio: Sacha Laustsen
Digital Studio Manager: Diane Lombardo
Digital Studio Project Manager: Andra Skaalrud
Digital Studio Project Manager: Regina DaSilva
Digital Studio Project Manager: Alana Coles
Digital Studio Project Manager: Robin Lazrus
Digital Content Project Lead: Courtney Kamauf
Full-Service Project Management and Composition: Cenveo® Publisher Services
Cover Designer: Lumina Datamatics Ltd
Cover Photo: Csaba Peterdi/Shutterstock.
Printer/Binder: Vivar, Malaysia
Cover Printer: Vivar, Malaysia

Microsoft and/or its respective suppliers make no representations about the suitability of the information contained in the documents and related graphics published as part of the services for any purpose. All such documents and related graphics are provided "as is" without warranty of any kind. Microsoft and/or its respective suppliers hereby disclaim all warranties and conditions with regard to this information, including all warranties and conditions of merchantability, whether express, implied or statutory, fitness for a particular purpose, title and non-infringement. In no event shall Microsoft and/or its respective suppliers be liable for any special, indirect or consequential damages or any damages whatsoever resulting from loss of use, data or profits, whether in an action of contract, negligence or other tortious action, arising out of or in connection with the use or performance of information available from the services.

The documents and related graphics contained herein could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically added to the information herein. Microsoft and/or its respective suppliers may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described herein at any time. Partial screen shots may be viewed in full within the software version specified.

Microsoft® and Windows® are registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries. This book is not sponsored or endorsed by or affiliated with the Microsoft Corporation.

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate
Harlow
Essex CM20 2JE
England

and Associated Companies throughout the world.

Visit us on the World Wide Web at:
www.pearsonglobaleditions.com

© Pearson Education Limited 2017

The rights of Jay Heizer, Barry Render and Chuck Munson to be identified as the authors of this work have been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

Authorized adaptation from the United States edition, entitled Principles of Operations Management: Sustainability and Supply Chain Management, Tenth Edition, ISBN 978-0-13-418198-1 by Jay Heizer, Barry Render and Chuck Munson, published by Pearson Education © 2017.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without either the prior written permission of the publisher or a license permitting restricted copying in the United Kingdom issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency Ltd, Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London EC 1N 8TS.

All trademarks used herein are the property of their respective owners. The use of any trademark in this text does not vest in the author or publisher any trademark ownership rights in such trademarks, nor does the use of such trademarks imply any affiliation with or endorsement of this book by such owners.

ISBN-10: 1-292-15301-6
ISBN-13: 978-1-292-15301-8

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Typeset by Cenveo® Publisher Services
Printed and bound by Vivar, Malaysia

To Karen Heizer Herrmann, all a sister could ever be

J.H.

To Donna, Charlie, and Jesse

B.R.

To Kim, Christopher, and Mark Munson for their unwavering support, and to Bentonville High School teachers Velma Reed and Cheryl Gregory, who instilled in me the importance of detail and a love of learning

C.M.

ABOUT THE AUTHORS

JAY HEIZER

Professor Emeritus, the Jesse H. Jones Chair of Business Administration, Texas Lutheran University, Seguin, Texas. He received his B.B.A. and M.B.A. from the University of North Texas and his Ph.D. in Management and Statistics from Arizona State University. He was previously a member of the faculty at the University of Memphis, the University of Oklahoma, Virginia Commonwealth University, and the University of Richmond. He has also held visiting positions at Boston University, George Mason University, the Czech Management Center, and the Otto-Von-Guericke University, Magdeburg.

Dr. Heizer's industrial experience is extensive. He learned the practical side of operations management as a machinist apprentice at Foringer and Company, as a production planner for Westinghouse Airbrake, and at General Dynamics, where he worked in engineering administration. In addition, he has been actively involved in consulting in the OM and MIS areas for a variety of organizations, including Philip Morris, Firestone, Dixie Container Corporation, Columbia Industries, and Tenneco. He holds the CPIM certification from APICS—the Association for Operations Management.

Professor Heizer has co-authored 5 books and has published more than 30 articles on a variety of management topics. His papers have appeared in the *Academy of Management Journal*, *Journal of Purchasing*, *Personnel Psychology*, *Production & Inventory Control Management*, *APICS—The Performance Advantage*, *Journal of Management History*, *IIE Solutions,* and *Engineering Management*, among others. He has taught operations management courses in undergraduate, graduate, and executive programs.

BARRY RENDER

Professor Emeritus, the Charles Harwood Professor of Operations Management, Crummer Graduate School of Business, Rollins College, Winter Park, Florida. He received his B.S. in Mathematics and Physics at Roosevelt University, and his M.S. in Operations Research and Ph.D. in Quantitative Analysis at the University of Cincinnati. He previously taught at George Washington University, University of New Orleans, Boston University, and George Mason University, where he held the Mason Foundation Professorship in Decision Sciences and was Chair of the Decision Sciences Department. Dr. Render has also worked in the aerospace industry for General Electric, McDonnell Douglas, and NASA.

Professor Render has co-authored 10 textbooks for Pearson, including *Managerial Decision Modeling with Spreadsheets*, *Quantitative Analysis for Management*, *Service Management*, *Introduction to Management Science*, and *Cases and Readings in Management Science*. *Quantitative Analysis for Management,* now in its 13th edition, is a leading text in that discipline in the United States and globally. Dr. Render's more than 100 articles on a variety of management topics have appeared in *Decision Sciences*, *Production and Operations Management*, *Interfaces*, *Information and Management*, *Journal of Management Information Systems*, *Socio-Economic Planning Sciences*, *IIE Solutions*, and *Operations Management Review*, among others.

Dr. Render has been honored as an AACSB Fellow and was twice named a Senior Fulbright Scholar. He was Vice President of the Decision Science Institute Southeast Region and served as Software Review Editor for *Decision Line* for six years and as Editor of the *New York Times* Operations Management special issues for five years. For nine years, Dr. Render was President of Management Service Associates of Virginia, Inc., whose technology clients included the FBI, NASA, the U.S. Navy, Fairfax County, Virginia, and C&P Telephone. He is currently Consulting Editor to *Pearson Press*.

Dr. Render has received Rollins College's Welsh Award as leading Professor and was selected by Roosevelt University as the recipient of the St. Claire Drake Award for Outstanding Scholarship. Dr. Render also received the Rollins College MBA Student Award for Best Overall Course, and was named Professor of the Year by full-time MBA students.

CHUCK MUNSON

Professor of Operations Management, Carson College of Business, Washington State University, Pullman, Washington. He received his BSBA *summa cum laude* in finance, along with his MSBA and Ph.D. in operations management, from Washington University in St. Louis. For two years, he served as Associate Dean for Graduate Programs in Business at Washington State. He also worked for three years as a financial analyst for Contel Telephone Corporation.

Professor Munson serves as a senior editor for *Production and Operations Management*, and he serves on the editorial review board of four other journals. He has published more than 25 articles in such journals as *Production and Operations Management*, *IIE Transactions, Decision Sciences*, *Naval Research Logistics*, *European Journal of Operational Research*, *Journal of the Operational Research Society*, and *Annals of Operations Research.* He is editor of the book *The Supply Chain Management Casebook: Comprehensive Coverage and Best Practices in SCM*, and he has co-authored the research monograph *Quantity Discounts: An Overview and Practical Guide for Buyers and Sellers*. He is also coauthor of *Managerial Decision Modeling with Spreadsheets* (4th edition), published by Pearson.

Dr. Munson has taught operations management core and elective courses at the undergraduate, MBA, and Ph.D. levels at Washington State University. He has also conducted several teaching workshops at international conferences and for Ph.D. students at Washington State University. His major awards include being a Founding Board Member of the Washington State University President's Teaching Academy (2004); winning the WSU College of Business Outstanding Teaching Award (2001 and 2015), Research Award (2004), and Service Award (2009 and 2013); and being named the WSU MBA Professor of the Year (2000 and 2008).

This page intentionally left blank

Brief Table of Contents

PART ONE Introduction to Operations Management *39*

Chapter 1 Operations and Productivity 39

Chapter 2 Operations Strategy in a Global Environment 67

Chapter 3 Project Management 97

Chapter 4 Forecasting 144

PART TWO Designing Operations *197*

Chapter 5 Design of Goods and Services 197

- Supplement 5 Sustainability in the Supply Chain 231

Chapter 6 Managing Quality 251

- Supplement 6 Statistical Process Control 283

Chapter 7 Process Strategy 317

- Supplement 7 Capacity and Constraint Management 345

Chapter 8 Location Strategies 375

Chapter 9 Layout Strategies 405

Chapter 10 Human Resources, Job Design, and Work Measurement 445

PART THREE Managing Operations *479*

Chapter 11 Supply Chain Management 479

- Supplement 11 Supply Chain Management Analytics 509

Chapter 12 Inventory Management 525

Chapter 13 Aggregate Planning and S&OP 567

Chapter 14 Material Requirements Planning (MRP) and ERP 601

Chapter 15 Short-Term Scheduling 637

Chapter 16 Lean Operations 673

Chapter 17 Maintenance and Reliability 697

ONLINE TUTORIALS

1. **Statistical Tools for Managers T1-1**
2. **Acceptance Sampling T2-1**
3. **The Simplex Method of Linear Programming T3-1**
4. **The MODI and VAM Methods of Solving Transportation Problems T4-1**
5. **Vehicle Routing and Scheduling T5-1**

This page intentionally left blank

Table of Contents

About the Authors 8
Preface 23

PART ONE Introduction to Operations Management 39

Chapter 1 Operations and Productivity 39

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *HARD ROCK CAFE* 40
What Is Operations Management? 42
Organizing to Produce Goods and Services 42
The Supply Chain 44
Why Study OM? 44
What Operations Managers Do 45
The Heritage of Operations Management 46
Operations for Goods and Services 49
Growth of Services 49
Service Pay 50
The Productivity Challenge 51
Productivity Measurement 52
Productivity Variables 53
Productivity and the Service Sector 55
Current Challenges in Operations Management 56
Ethics, Social Responsibility, and Sustainability 57
Summary 58
Key Terms 58
Ethical Dilemma 58
Discussion Questions 58
Using Software for Productivity Analysis 59
Solved Problems 59
Problems 60
CASE STUDIES 62
Uber Technologies, Inc. 62
Frito-Lay: Operations Management in Manufacturing Video Case 63
Hard Rock Cafe: Operations Management in Services Video Case 63
Endnotes 64
Rapid Review 65
Self Test 66

Chapter 2 Operations Strategy in a Global Environment 67

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *BOEING* 68
A Global View of Operations and Supply Chains 70
Cultural and Ethical Issues 73
Developing Missions and Strategies 73
Mission 74
Strategy 74
Achieving Competitive Advantage Through Operations 74
Competing on Differentiation 75
Competing on Cost 76
Competing on Response 77
Issues in Operations Strategy 78
Strategy Development and Implementation 79
Key Success Factors and Core Competencies 79
Integrating OM with Other Activities 81
Building and Staffing the Organization 81
Implementing the 10 Strategic OM Decisions 82
Strategic Planning, Core Competencies, and Outsourcing 82
The Theory of Comparative Advantage 84
Risks of Outsourcing 84
Rating Outsource Providers 85
Global Operations Strategy Options 87
Summary 88
Key Terms 88
Ethical Dilemma 89
Discussion Questions 89
Using Software to Solve Outsourcing Problems 89
Solved Problems 90
Problems 91
CASE STUDIES 93
Rapid-Lube 93
Strategy at Regal Marine Video Case 93
Hard Rock Cafe's Global Strategy Video Case 93
Outsourcing Offshore at Darden Video Case 94
Endnotes 94
Rapid Review 95
Self Test 96

Chapter 3 Project Management 97

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *BECHTEL GROUP* 98
The Importance of Project Management 100

Project Planning 100
The Project Manager 101
Work Breakdown Structure 102
Project Scheduling 103
Project Controlling 104
Project Management Techniques: PERT and CPM 105
The Framework of PERT and CPM 105
Network Diagrams and Approaches 106
Activity-on-Node Example 107
Activity-on-Arrow Example 109
Determining the Project Schedule 109
Forward Pass 110
Backward Pass 112
Calculating Slack Time and Identifying the Critical Path(s) 113
Variability in Activity Times 115
Three Time Estimates in PERT 115
Probability of Project Completion 117
Cost-Time Trade-Offs and Project Crashing 120
A Critique of PERT and CPM 123
Using Microsoft Project to Manage Projects 124
Summary 126
Key Terms 126
Ethical Dilemma 127
Discussion Questions 127
Using Software to Solve Project Management Problems 127
Solved Problems 128
Problems 131
CASE STUDIES 136
Southwestern University: (A) 136
Project Management at Arnold Palmer Hospital Video Case 137
Managing Hard Rock's Rockfest Video Case 138
Endnotes 140
Rapid Review 141
Self Test 142

Chapter 4 Forecasting 143
GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *WALT DISNEY PARKS & RESORTS* 144
What is Forecasting? 146
Forecasting Time Horizons 146
Types of Forecasts 147
The Strategic Importance of Forecasting 147
Supply-Chain Management 147
Human Resources 148
Capacity 148
Seven Steps in the Forecasting System 148
Forecasting Approaches 149
Overview of Qualitative Method 149
Overview of Quantitative Methods 150
Time-Series Forecasting 150
Decomposition of a Time Series 150
Naive Approach 151
Moving Averages 152
Exponential Smoothing 154
Measuring Forecast Error 155
Exponential Smoothing with Trend Adjustment 158
Trend Projections 162
Seasonal Variations in Data 164
Cyclical Variations in Data 169
Associative Forecasting Methods: Regression and Correlation Analysis 169
Using Regression Analysis for Forecasting 169
Standard Error of the Estimate 171
Correlation Coefficients for Regression Lines 172
Multiple-Regression Analysis 174
Monitoring and Controlling Forecasts 176
Adaptive Smoothing 177
Focus Forecasting 177
Forecasting in the Service Sector 178
Summary 179
Key Terms 179
Ethical Dilemma 179
Discussion Questions 180
Using Software in Forecasting 180
Solved Problems 182
Problems 184
CASE STUDIES 191
Southwestern University: (B) 191
Forecasting Ticket Revenue for Orlando Magic Basketball Games Video Case 192
Forecasting at Hard Rock Cafe Video Case 193
Endnotes 194
Rapid Review 195
Self Test 196

PART TWO Designing Operations *197*

Chapter 5 Design of Goods and Services 197
GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *REGAL MARINE* 198
Goods and Services Selection 200
Product Strategy Options Support Competitive Advantage 201
Product Life Cycles 202
Life Cycle and Strategy 202

Product-by-Value Analysis 203
Generating New Products 203
Product Development 204
Product Development System 204
Quality Function Deployment (QFD) 204
Organizing for Product Development 207
Manufacturability and Value Engineering 208
Issues for Product Design 209
Robust Design 209
Modular Design 209
Computer-Aided Design (CAD) and Computer-Aided Manufacturing (CAM) 209
Virtual Reality Technology 210
Value Analysis 211
Sustainability and Life Cycle Assessment (LCA) 211
Product Development Continuum 211
Purchasing Technology by Acquiring a Firm 212
Joint Ventures 212
Alliances 213
Defining a Product 213
Make-or-Buy Decisions 214
Group Technology 215
Documents for Production 216
Product Life-Cycle Management (PLM) 216
Service Design 217
Process–Chain–Network (PCN) Analysis 217
Adding Service Efficiency 219
Documents for Services 219
Application of Decision Trees to Product Design 220
Transition to Production 222
Summary 222
Key Terms 223
Ethical Dilemma 223
Discussion Questions 223
Solved Problem 224
Problems 224
CASE STUDIES 227
De Mar's Product Strategy 227
Product Design at Regal Marine Video Case 227
Endnotes 228
Rapid Review 229
Self Test 230

Supplement 5 Sustainability in the Supply Chain 231

Corporate Social Responsibility 232
Sustainability 233
Systems View 233
Commons 233
Triple Bottom Line 233
Design and Production for Sustainability 236
Product Design 236
Production Process 238
Logistics 238
End-of-Life Phase 241
Regulations and Industry Standards 241
International Environmental Policies and Standards 242
Summary 243
Key Terms 243
Discussion Questions 243
Solved Problems 244
Problems 245
CASE STUDIES 246
Building Sustainability at the Orlando Magic's Amway Center Video Case 246
Green Manufacturing and Sustainability at Frito-Lay Video Case 247
Endnotes 248
Rapid Review 249
Self Test 250

Chapter 6 Managing Quality 251

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *ARNOLD PALMER HOSPITAL* 252
Quality and Strategy 254
Defining Quality 255
Implications of Quality 255
Malcolm Baldrige National Quality Award 256
ISO 9000 International Quality Standards 256
Cost of Quality (COQ) 256
Ethics and Quality Management 257
Total Quality Management 257
Continuous Improvement 258
Six Sigma 259
Employee Empowerment 260
Benchmarking 260
Just-in-Time (JIT) 262
Taguchi Concepts 262
Knowledge of TQM Tools 263
Tools of TQM 264
Check Sheets 264
Scatter Diagrams 265
Cause-and-Effect Diagrams 265
Pareto Charts 265
Flowcharts 266
Histograms 267
Statistical Process Control (SPC) 267
The Role of Inspection 268
When and Where to Inspect 268
Source Inspection 269

Service Industry Inspection 270
Inspection of Attributes versus Variables 271
TQM in Services 271
Summary 273
Key Terms 273
Ethical Dilemma 273
Discussion Questions 274
Solved Problems 274
Problems 275
CASE STUDIES 277
Southwestern University: (C) 277
The Culture of Quality at Arnold Palmer Hospital Video Case 278
Quality Counts at Alaska Airlines Video Case 278
Quality at the Ritz-Carlton Hotel Company Video Case 280
Endnotes 280
Rapid Review 281
Self Test 282

Supplement 6 Statistical Process Control 283

Statistical Process Control (SPC) 284
Control Charts for Variables 286
The Central Limit Theorem 286
Setting Mean Chart Limits ($\bar{x}$-Charts) 288
Setting Range Chart Limits (R-Charts) 291
Using Mean and Range Charts 292
Control Charts for Attributes 294
Managerial Issues and Control Charts 297
Process Capability 298
Process Capability Ratio (C_p) 298
Process Capability Index (C_{pk}) 299
Acceptance Sampling 300
Operating Characteristic Curve 301
Average Outgoing Quality 302
Summary 303
Key Terms 303
Discussion Questions 303
Using Software for SPC 304
Solved Problems 305
Problems 307
CASE STUDIES 312
Bayfield Mud Company 312
Frito-Lay's Quality-Controlled Potato Chips Video Case 313
Farm to Fork: Quality at Darden Restaurants Video Case 314
Endnotes 314
Rapid Review 315
Self Test 316

Chapter 7 Process Strategy 317

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *HARLEY-DAVIDSON* 318
Four Process Strategies 320
Process Focus 320
Repetitive Focus 321
Product Focus 322
Mass Customization Focus 322
Process Comparison 324
Selection of Equipment 326
Process Analysis and Design 326
Flowchart 327
Time-Function Mapping 327
Process Charts 327
Value-Stream Mapping 328
Service Blueprinting 330
Special Considerations for Service Process Design 331
Production Technology 332
Machine Technology 332
Automatic Identification Systems (AISs) and RFID 333
Process Control 333
Vision Systems 334
Robots 334
Automated Storage and Retrieval Systems (ASRSs) 334
Automated Guided Vehicles (AGVs) 334
Flexible Manufacturing Systems (FMSs) 335
Computer-Integrated Manufacturing (CIM) 335
Technology in Services 336
Process Redesign 336
Summary 337
Key Terms 337
Ethical Dilemma 338
Discussion Questions 338
Solved Problem 338
Problems 339
CASE STUDIES 340
Rochester Manufacturing's Process Decision 340
Process Strategy at Wheeled Coach Video Case 340
Alaska Airlines: 20-Minute Baggage Process—Guaranteed! Video Case 341
Process Analysis at Arnold Palmer Hospital Video Case 342
Endnotes 342
Rapid Review 343
Self Test 344

Supplement 7 Capacity and Constraint Management 345

Capacity 346
Design and Effective Capacity 347

Capacity and Strategy 349
Capacity Considerations 349
Managing Demand 350
Service-Sector Demand and Capacity Management 351
Bottleneck Analysis and the Theory of Constraints 352
Theory of Constraints 355
Bottleneck Management 355
Break-Even Analysis 356
Single-Product Case 357
Multiproduct Case 358
Reducing Risk with Incremental Changes 360
Applying Expected Monetary Value (EMV) to Capacity Decisions 361
Applying Investment Analysis to Strategy-Driven Investments 362
Investment, Variable Cost, and Cash Flow 362
Net Present Value 362
Summary 364
Key Terms 365
Discussion Questions 365
Using Software for Break-Even Analysis 365
Solved Problems 366
Problems 368
CASE STUDY 371
Capacity Planning at Arnold Palmer Hospital Video Case 371
Endnote 372
Rapid Review 373
Self Test 374

Chapter 8 Location Strategies 375

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *FEDEX* 376
The Strategic Importance of Location 378
Factors That Affect Location Decisions 379
Labor Productivity 380
Exchange Rates and Currency Risk 380
Costs 380
Political Risk, Values, and Culture 381
Proximity to Markets 381
Proximity to Suppliers 382
Proximity to Competitors (Clustering) 382
Methods of Evaluating Location Alternatives 382
The Factor-Rating Method 383
Locational Cost–Volume Analysis 384
Center-of-Gravity Method 386
Transportation Model 387
Service Location Strategy 388
Geographic Information Systems 389
Summary 391
Key Terms 391
Ethical Dilemma 392
Discussion Questions 392
Using Software to Solve Location Problems 392
Solved Problems 393
Problems 395
CASE STUDIES 400
Southern Recreational Vehicle Company 400
Locating the Next Red Lobster Restaurant Video Case 400
Where to Place the Hard Rock Cafe Video Case 401
Endnote 402
Rapid Review 403
Self Test 404

Chapter 9 Layout Strategies 405

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *McDONALD'S* 406
The Strategic Importance of Layout Decisions 408
Types of Layout 408
Office Layout 409
Retail Layout 410
Servicescapes 413
Warehouse and Storage Layouts 413
Cross-Docking 414
Random Stocking 415
Customizing 415
Fixed-Position Layout 415
Process-Oriented Layout 416
Computer Software for Process-Oriented Layouts 420
Work Cells 421
Requirements of Work Cells 421
Staffing and Balancing Work Cells 422
The Focused Work Center and the Focused Factory 424
Repetitive and Product-Oriented Layout 424
Assembly-Line Balancing 425
Summary 430
Key Terms 430
Ethical Dilemma 430
Discussion Questions 430
Using Software to Solve Layout Problems 431
Solved Problems 432
Problems 434
CASE STUDIES 440
State Automobile License Renewals 440
Laying Out Arnold Palmer Hospital's New Facility Video Case 440
Facility Layout at Wheeled Coach Video Case 442
Endnotes 442
Rapid Review 443
Self Test 444

Chapter 10 Human Resources, Job Design, and Work Measurement 445

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *RUSTY WALLACE'S NASCAR RACING TEAM* 446
Human Resource Strategy for Competitive Advantage 448
Constraints on Human Resource Strategy 448
Labor Planning 449
Employment-Stability Policies 449
Work Schedules 449
Job Classifications and Work Rules 450
Job Design 450
Labor Specialization 450
Job Expansion 451
Psychological Components of Job Design 451
Self-Directed Teams 452
Motivation and Incentive Systems 453
Ergonomics and the Work Environment 453
Methods Analysis 455
The Visual Workplace 458
Labor Standards 458
Historical Experience 459
Time Studies 459
Predetermined Time Standards 463
Work Sampling 465
Ethics 468
Summary 468
Key Terms 468
Ethical Dilemma 469
Discussion Questions 469
Solved Problems 470
Problems 472
CASE STUDIES 475
Jackson Manufacturing Company 475
The "People" Focus: Human Resources at Alaska Airlines Video Case 475
Hard Rock's Human Resource Strategy Video Case 476
Endnotes 476
Rapid Review 477
Self Test 478

PART THREE Managing Operations *479*

Chapter 11 Supply Chain Management 479

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *DARDEN RESTAURANTS* 480
The Supply Chain's Strategic Importance 482
Sourcing Issues: Make-or-Buy and Outsourcing 484
Make-or-Buy Decisions 485
Outsourcing 485
Six Sourcing Strategies 485
Many Suppliers 485
Few Suppliers 485
Vertical Integration 486
Joint Ventures 486
Keiretsu *Networks 486*
Virtual Companies 487
Supply Chain Risk 487
Risks and Mitigation Tactics 488
Security and JIT 489
Managing the Integrated Supply Chain 489
Issues in Managing the Integrated Supply Chain 489
Opportunities in Managing the Integrated Supply Chain 490
Building the Supply Base 492
Supplier Evaluation 492
Supplier Development 492
Negotiations 493
Contracting 493
Centralized Purchasing 493
E-Procurement 494
Logistics Management 494
Shipping Systems 494
Warehousing 495
Third-Party Logistics (3PL) 496
Distribution Management 497
Ethics and Sustainable Supply Chain Management 498
Supply Chain Management Ethics 498
Establishing Sustainability in Supply Chains 498
Measuring Supply Chain Performance 499
Assets Committed to Inventory 499
Benchmarking the Supply Chain 501
The SCOR Model 501
Summary 502
Key Terms 503
Ethical Dilemma 503
Discussion Questions 503
Solved Problems 503
Problems 504
CASE STUDIES 505
Darden's Global Supply Chains Video Case 505

Supply Chain Management at Regal Marine Video Case 505
Arnold Palmer Hospital's Supply Chain Video Case 506
Endnote 506
Rapid Review 507
Self Test 508

Supplement 11 Supply Chain Management Analytics 509

Techniques for Evaluating Supply Chains 510
Evaluating Disaster Risk in the Supply Chain 510
Managing the Bullwhip Effect 512
A Bullwhip Effect Measure 513
Supplier Selection Analysis 514
Transportation Mode Analysis 515
Warehouse Storage 516
Summary 517
Discussion Questions 518
Solved Problems 518
Problems 520
Rapid Review 523
Self Test 524

Chapter 12 Inventory Management 525

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *AMAZON.COM* 526
The Importance of Inventory 528
Functions of Inventory 528
Types of Inventory 528
Managing Inventory 529
ABC Analysis 529
Record Accuracy 531
Cycle Counting 531
Control of Service Inventories 532
Inventory Models 533
Independent vs. Dependent Demand 533
Holding, Ordering, and Setup Costs 533
Inventory Models for Independent Demand 534
The Basic Economic Order Quantity (EOQ) Model 534
Minimizing Costs 535
Reorder Points 539
Production Order Quantity Model 540
Quantity Discount Models 543
Probabilistic Models and Safety Stock 546
Other Probabilistic Models 549
Single-Period Model 551
Fixed-Period (*P*) Systems 552
Summary 553
Key Terms 553
Ethical Dilemma 553
Discussion Questions 553
Using Software to Solve Inventory Problems 554
Solved Problems 555
Problems 558
CASE STUDIES 562
Zhou Bicycle Company 562
Parker Hi-Fi Systems 563
Managing Inventory at Frito-Lay Video Case 563
Inventory Control at Wheeled Coach Video Case 564
Endnotes 564
Rapid Review 565
Self Test 566

Chapter 13 Aggregate Planning and S&OP 567

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *FRITO-LAY* 568
The Planning Process 570
Sales and Operations Planning 571
The Nature of Aggregate Planning 572
Aggregate Planning Strategies 573
Capacity Options 573
Demand Options 574
Mixing Options to Develop a Plan 575
Methods for Aggregate Planning 576
Graphical Methods 576
Mathematical Approaches 581
Aggregate Planning in Services 583
Restaurants 584
Hospitals 584
National Chains of Small Service Firms 584
Miscellaneous Services 584
Airline Industry 585
Revenue Management 585
Summary 588
Key Terms 588
Ethical Dilemma 589
Discussion Questions 589
Using Software for Aggregate Planning 590
Solved Problems 592
Problems 593
CASE STUDIES 597
Andrew-Carter, Inc. 597
Using Revenue Management to Set Orlando Magic Ticket Prices Video Case 598
Endnote 598
Rapid Review 599
Self Test 600

Chapter 14 Material Requirements Planning (MRP) and ERP 601

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *WHEELED COACH* 602
Dependent Demand 604

Dependent Inventory Model Requirements 604
Master Production Schedule 605
Bills of Material 606
Accurate Inventory Records 608
Purchase Orders Outstanding 608
Lead Times for Components 608
MRP Structure 609
MRP Management 613
MRP Dynamics 613
MRP Limitations 613
Lot-Sizing Techniques 614
Extensions of MRP 618
Material Requirements Planning II (MRP II) 618
Closed-Loop MRP 619
Capacity Planning 619
MRP in Services 621
Distribution Resource Planning (DRP) 622
Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) 622
ERP in the Service Sector 625
Summary 625
Key Terms 625
Ethical Dilemma 625
Discussion Questions 626
Using Software to Solve MRP Problems 626
Solved Problems 627
Problems 630
CASE STUDIES 633
When 18,500 Orlando Magic Fans Come to Dinner Video Case 633
MRP at Wheeled Coach Video Case 634
Endnotes 634
Rapid Review 635
Self Test 636

Chapter 15 Short-Term Scheduling 637

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *ALASKA AIRLINES* 638
The Importance of Short-Term Scheduling 640
Scheduling Issues 640
Forward and Backward Scheduling 641
Finite and Infinite Loading 642
Scheduling Criteria 642
Scheduling Process-Focused Facilities 643
Loading Jobs 643
Input–Output Control 644
Gantt Charts 645
Assignment Method 646
Sequencing Jobs 649
Priority Rules for Sequencing Jobs 649
Critical Ratio 652
Sequencing N *Jobs on Two Machines: Johnson's Rule 653*
Limitations of Rule-Based Sequencing Systems 654
Finite Capacity Scheduling (FCS) 655
Scheduling Services 656
Scheduling Service Employees with Cyclical Scheduling 658
Summary 659
Key Terms 659
Ethical Dilemma 659
Discussion Questions 660
Using Software for Short-Term Scheduling 660
Solved Problems 662
Problems 665
CASE STUDIES 668
Old Oregon Wood Store 668
From the Eagles to the Magic: Converting the Amway Center Video Case 669
Scheduling at Hard Rock Cafe Video Case 670
Endnotes 670
Rapid Review 671
Self Test 672

Chapter 16 Lean Operations 673

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION* 674
Lean Operations 676
Eliminate Waste 676
Remove Variability 677
Improve Throughput 678
Lean and Just-in-Time 678
Supplier Partnerships 678
Lean Layout 680
Lean Inventory 681
Lean Scheduling 684
Lean Quality 687
Lean and the Toyota Production System 687
Continuous Improvement 687
Respect for People 687
Processes and Standard Work Practice 688
Lean Organizations 688
Building a Lean Organization 688
Lean Sustainability 690
Lean in Services 690
Summary 691
Key Terms 691
Ethical Dilemma 691
Discussion Questions 691
Solved Problem 691
Problems 692

CASE STUDIES 693
Lean Operations at Alaska Airlines Video Case 693
JIT at Arnold Palmer Hospital Video Case 694
Endnote 694
Rapid Review 695
Self Test 696

Chapter 17 Maintenance and Reliability 697
GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *ORLANDO UTILITIES COMMISSION* 698
The Strategic Importance of Maintenance and Reliability 700
Reliability 701
System Reliability 701
Providing Redundancy 703
Maintenance 705
Implementing Preventive Maintenance 705
Increasing Repair Capabilities 708
Autonomous Maintenance 708
Total Productive Maintenance 709
Summary 709
Key Terms 709
Ethical Dilemma 709
Discussion Questions 709
Using Software to Solve Reliability Problems 710
Solved Problems 710
Problems 710
CASE STUDY 712
Maintenance Drives Profits at Frito-Lay Video Case 712
Rapid Review 713
Self Test 714

Appendix 715
Bibliography 737
Name Index 743
General Index 747

ONLINE TUTORIALS

1. Statistical Tools for Managers T1-1

Discrete Probability Distributions T1-2

Expected Value of a Discrete Probability Distribution T1-3

Variance of a Discrete Probability Distribution T1-3

Continuous Probability Distributions T1-4

The Normal Distribution T1-4

Summary T1-7

Key Terms T1-7

Discussion Questions T1-7

Problems T1-7

Bibliography T1-7

2. Acceptance Sampling T2-1

Sampling Plans T2-2

Single Sampling T2-2

Double Sampling T2-2

Sequential Sampling T2-2

Operating Characteristic (OC) Curves T2-2

Producer's and Consumer's Risk T2-3

Average Outgoing Quality T2-5

Summary T2-6

Key Terms T2-6

Solved Problem T2-7

Discussion Questions T2-7

Problems T2-7

3. The Simplex Method of Linear Programming T3-1

Converting the Constraints to Equations T3-2

Setting Up the First Simplex Tableau T3-2

Simplex Solution Procedures T3-4

Summary of Simplex Steps for Maximization Problems T3-6

Artificial and Surplus Variables T3-7

Solving Minimization Problems T3-7

Summary T3-8

Key Terms T3-8

Solved Problem T3-8

Discussion Questions T3-8

Problems T3-9

4. The MODI and VAM Methods of Solving Transportation Problems T4-1

MODI Method T4-2

How to Use the MODI Method T4-2

Solving the Arizona Plumbing Problem with MODI T4-2

Vogel's Approximation Method: Another Way to Find an Initial Solution T4-4

Discussion Questions T4-8

Problems T4-8

5. Vehicle Routing and Scheduling T5-1

Introduction T5-2

Service Delivery Example: Meals-for-ME T5-2

Objectives of Routing and Scheduling Problems T5-2

Characteristics of Routing and Scheduling Problems T5-3

Classifying Routing and Scheduling Problems T5-3

Solving Routing and Scheduling Problems T5-4

Routing Service Vehicles T5-5

The Traveling Salesman Problem T5-5

Multiple Traveling Salesman Problem T5-8

The Vehicle Routing Problem T5-9

Cluster First, Route Second Approach T5-10

Scheduling Service Vehicles T5-11

The Concurrent Scheduler Approach T5-13

Other Routing and Scheduling Problems T5-13

Summary T5-14

Key Terms T5-15

Discussion Questions T5-15

Problems T5-15

Case Study: Routing and Scheduling of Phlebotomists T5-17

Bibliography T5-17

Preface

Welcome to your operations management (OM) course. In this book, we present a state-of-the-art view of the operations function. Operations is an exciting area of management that has a profound effect on productivity. Indeed, few other activities have as much impact on the quality of our lives. The goal of this text is to present a broad introduction to the field of operations in a realistic, practical manner. Even if you are not planning on a career in the operations area, you will likely be working with people in operations. Therefore, having a solid understanding of the role of operations in an organization will be of substantial benefit to you. This book will also help you understand how OM affects society and your life. Certainly, you will better understand what goes on behind the scenes when you attend a concert or major sports event; purchase a bag of Frito-Lay potato chips; buy a meal at an Olive Garden or a Hard Rock Cafe; place an order through Amazon.com; board a flight on Alaska Airlines; or enter a hospital for medical care. More than one and a half million readers of our earlier editions seem to have endorsed this premise.

We welcome comments by email from our North American readers and from students using the International edition, the Indian edition, the Arabic edition, and our editions in Portuguese, Spanish, Turkish, Indonesian, and Chinese. Hopefully, you will find this material useful, interesting, and even exciting.

New to This Edition

We've made significant revisions to this edition, and want to share some of the changes with you.

Four New *Video Case Studies* Featuring Alaska Airlines

In this edition, we take you behind the scenes of Alaska Airlines, consistently rated as one of the top carriers in the country. This fascinating organization opened its doors—and planes—so we could examine leading edge OM in the airlines industry. We observe: the quality program at Alaska Air (Chapter 6); the process analysis behind the airline's 20-minute baggage retrieval guarantee (Chapter 7); how Alaska empowers its employees (Chapter 10); and the airline's use of Lean, 5s, kaizen, and Gemba walks (Chapter 16).

Our prior editions focused on integrated *Video Case Studies* for the Orlando Magic basketball team, Frito-Lay, Darden Restaurants, Hard Rock Cafe, Arnold Palmer Hospital, Wheeled Coach Ambulances, and Regal Marine. These *Video Case Studies* appear in this edition as well, along with the five new ones for Alaska Airlines. All of our videos are created by the authors, with the outstanding coauthorship of Beverly Amer at Northern Arizona University, to explicitly match with text content and terminology.

Alaska Airlines: 20-Minute Baggage Process—Guaranteed! Video Case

Alaska Airlines is unique among the nine major U.S. carriers not only for its extensive flight coverage of remote towns throughout Alaska (it also covers the U.S., Hawaii, and Mexico from its primary hub in Seattle). It is also one of the smallest independent airlines, with 10,300 employees, including 3,000 flight attendants and 1,500 pilots. What makes it really unique, though, is its ability to build state-of-the-art processes, using the latest technology, that yield high customer satisfaction. Indeed, J. D. Power and Associates has ranked Alaska Airlines highest in North America for seven years in a row for customer satisfaction.

Alaska Airlines was the first to sell tickets via the Internet, first to offer Web check-in and print boarding passes online, and first with kiosk check-in. As Wayne Newton, Director of System Operation Control, states, "We are passionate about our processes. If it's not measured, it's not managed."

One of the processes Alaska is most proud of is its baggage handling system. Passengers can check in at kiosks, tag their own bags with bar code stickers, and deliver them to a customer service agent at the carousel, which carries the bags through the vast underground system that eventually delivers the bags to a baggage handler. En route, each bag passes through TSA automated screening and is manually opened or inspected if it appears suspicious. With the help of bar code readers, conveyer belts automatically sort and transfer bags to their location (called a "pier") at the tarmac level. A baggage handler then loads the bags onto a cart and takes it to

Alaska Airlines

Creating Your Own Excel Spreadsheets

We continue to provide two free decision support software programs, Excel OM for Windows and Mac and POM for Windows, to help you and your students solve homework problems and case studies. These excellent packages are found in MyOMLab and at our text's Student Download Page.

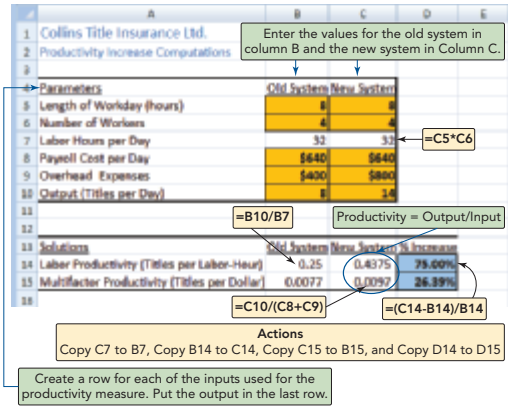
Many instructors also encourage students to develop their own Excel spreadsheet models to tackle OM issues. With this edition, we provide numerous examples at chapter end on how to do so. "Creating Your Own Excel Spreadsheets" examples now appear in Chapters 1, 2, 4, 8, 12 (2 examples), and 13, Supplement 6, and Supplement 7. We hope these nine samples will help expand students' spreadsheet capabilities.

Using Software for Productivity Analysis

This section presents three ways to solve productivity problems with computer software. First, you can create your own Excel spreadsheets to conduct productivity analysis. Second, you can use the Excel OM software that comes with this text. Third, POM for Windows is another program that is available with this text.

CREATING YOUR OWN EXCEL SPREADSHEETS

Program 1.1 illustrates how to build an Excel spreadsheet for the data in Example 2.



Program 1.1

USING EXCEL OM

Excel OM is an Excel "add-in" with 24 Operations Management decision support "Templates." To access the templates, double-click on the *Excel OM* tab at the top of the page, then in the menu bar choose the appropriate chapter (in this case Chapter 1), from either the "Chapter" or "Alphabetic" tab on the left. Each of Excel OM's 24 modules includes instructions for that particular module. The instructions can be turned on or off via the "instruction" tab in the menu bar.

USING POM FOR WINDOWS

POM for Windows is decision support software that includes 24 Operations Management modules. The modules are accessed by double-clicking on *Module* in the menu bar, and then double-clicking on the appropriate (in this case *Productivity*) item. Instructions are provided for each module just below the menu bar.

Expanding and Reordering Our Set of Homework Problems

We believe that a vast selection of quality homework problems, ranging from easy to challenging (denoted by one to four dots), is critical for both instructors and students. Instructors need a broad selection of problems to choose from for homework, quizzes, and exams—without reusing the same set from semester to semester. We take pride in having more problems—by far, with 618—than any other OM text. We added dozens of new problems this edition. The following table illustrates the selection by chapter.

Chapter	Number of Problems	Chapter	Number of Problems	Chapter	Number of Problems
1	18	Supplement 6	55	Supplement 11	20
2	12	7	17	12	53
3	33	Supplement 7	45	13	26
4	59	8	34	14	32
5	28	9	27	15	27
Supplement 5	19	10	46	16	12
6	21	11	8	17	24

Further, with the majority of our adopters now using the MyOMLab learning system in their classes, we have reorganized all the homework problems—both those appearing in the printed text, as well as the Additional Homework Problems that are available in MyOMLab—by topic heading. We are identifying all problems by topic (see the following example).

The list of all problems by topic also appears at the end of each boxed example, as well as in the Rapid Review that closes each chapter. These handy references should make it easier to assign problems for homework, quizzes, and exams. A rich set of assignable problems and cases makes the learning experience more complete and pedagogically sound.

Problem **5.3** *is available in* MyOMLab.

Problems 5.4–5.8 relate to Product Development

•• **5.4** Construct a house of quality matrix for a wristwatch. Be sure to indicate specific customer wants that you think the general public desires. Then complete the matrix to show how an operations manager might identify specific attributes that can be measured and controlled to meet those customer desires.

•• **5.5** Using the house of quality, pick a real product (a good or service) and analyze how an existing organization satisfies customer requirements.

•• **5.6** Prepare a house of quality for a mousetrap.

•• **5.7** Conduct an interview with a prospective purchaser of a new bicycle and translate the customer's *wants* into the specific *hows* of the firm.

•••• **5.8** Using the house of quality sequence, as described in Figure 5.4 on page 169, determine how you might deploy resources to achieve the desired quality for a product or service whose production process you understand.

Problems 5.9–5.17 relate to Defining a Product

•• **5.9** Prepare a bill of material for (a) a pair of eyeglasses and its case or (b) a fast-food sandwich (visit a local sandwich

Problems 5.21–5.28 relate to the Application of Decision Trees to Product Design

•• **5.21** The product design group of Iyengar Electric Supplies, Inc., has determined that it needs to design a new series of switches. It must decide on one of three design strategies. The market forecast is for 200,000 units. The better and more sophisticated the design strategy and the more time spent on value engineering, the less will be the variable cost. The chief of engineering design, Dr. W. L. Berry, has decided that the following costs are a good estimate of the initial and variable costs connected with each of the three strategies:

a) *Low-tech:* A low-technology, low-cost process consisting of hiring several new junior engineers. This option has a fixed cost of $45,000 and variable-cost probabilities of .3 for $.55 each, .4 for $.50, and .3 for $.45.
b) *Subcontract:* A medium-cost approach using a good outside design staff. This approach would have a fixed cost of $65,000 and variable-cost probabilities of .7 of $.45, .2 of $.40, and .1 of $.35.
c) *High-tech:* A high-technology approach using the very best of the inside staff and the latest computer-aided design technology. This approach has a fixed cost of $75,000 and variable-cost probabilities of .9 of $.40 and .1 of $.35.

What is the best decision based on an expected monetary value (EMV) criterion? (*Note:* We want the lowest EMV, as we are dealing with costs in this problem.) PX

•• **5.22** MacDonald Products, Inc., of Clarkson, New York, has the option of (a) proceeding immediately with production of

Jay, Barry, and Chuck's OM Blog

As a complement to this text, we have created a companion blog, with coordinated features to help teach the OM course. There are teaching tips, highlights of OM items in the news (along with class discussion questions and links), video tips, guest posts by instructors using our text, sample OM syllabi from dozens of colleges, and much more—all arranged by chapter. To learn more about any chapter topics, visit *www.heizerrenderOM.wordpress.com*. As you prepare your lectures and syllabus, scan our blog for discussion ideas, teaching tips, and classroom exercises.

Lean Operations

In previous editions, we sought to explicitly differentiate the concepts of just-in-time, Lean, and Toyota Production System in Chapter 16. However, there is significant overlap and interchangeability among those three concepts, so we have revised Chapter 16 to incorporate the three concepts into an overall concept of "Lean." The chapter suggests that students view Lean as a comprehensive integrated operations strategy that sustains competitive advantage and results in increased returns to all stakeholders.

Chapter-by-Chapter Changes

To highlight the extent of the revisions in this edition, here are a few of the changes, on a chapter-by-chapter basis.

Chapter 1: Operations and Productivity

We updated Table 1.4 to reflect employment in various sectors and expanded our discussion of Lean operations. Our new case, Uber Technologies, introduces productivity by discussing the disruptive nature of the Uber business model. In addition, there is a new "Creating Your Own Excel Spreadsheets" example for both labor productivity and multifactor productivity.

Chapter 2: Operations Strategy in a Global Environment

We have updated Figure 2.1 to better reflect changes in the growth of world trade and Figure 2.5 to reflect product life cycle changes. The Minute Lube case has been revised as Rapid Lube. Example 1 (National Architects) has been expanded to clarify factor rating calculations and is also demonstrated with a "Creating Your Own Excel Spreadsheets" presentation.

Chapter 3: Project Management

We rewrote and updated the Bechtel Global Company Profile and added a new section on well-defined projects with the "agile" and "waterfall" approaches. There are two new OM in Action boxes: "Agile Project Management at Mastek," and "Behind the Tour de France."

Chapter 4: Forecasting

We created a new table comparing the MAD, MSE, and MAPE forecasting error measures. There is also a new OM in Action box called "NYC's Potholes and Regression Analysis."

Chapter 5: Design of Goods and Services

We expanded our treatment of *concurrent engineering* and added two new discussion questions. Solved Problem 5.1 has been revised.

Supplement 5: Sustainability in the Supply Chain

We wrote a new introductory section on Corporate Social Responsibility. There is also a new OM in Action box called "Blue Jeans and Sustainability" and 10 new homework problems.

Chapter 6: Managing Quality

We added new material to expand our discussion of Taguchi's quality loss function. There is a new section on SERVQUAL, and a new video case study, "Quality Counts at Alaska Airlines," appears here.

Supplement 6: Statistical Process Control

We added a figure on the relationship between sample size and sampling distribution. We also added raw data to Examples S2 and S3 to illustrate how ranges are computed. There is a new Excel spreadsheet to show students how to make their own *c*-chart, and we have added three new homework problems.

Chapter 7: Process Strategy

We wrote a new section on machine technology and additive manufacturing. There are two new discussion questions and three new homework problems. Our second new video case study is called "Alaska Airlines: 20-Minute Baggage Process—Guaranteed!"

Supplement 7: Capacity and Constraint Management

We added a new Table S7.1, which compares and clarifies three capacity measurements, with an example of each. There is a new treatment of expected output and actual output in Example S2. The discussion of bottleneck time versus throughput time has also been expanded. Example S3, capacity analysis with parallel processes, has been revised. We have also added a new "Creating Your Own Excel Spreadsheets" example for a break-even model. Finally, we updated the Arnold Palmer Hospital capacity planning case with recent data.

Chapter 8: Location Strategies

We added two new OM in Action boxes: "Iowa—Home of Corn and Facebook" and "Denmark's Meat Cluster." We changed the notation for the center-of-gravity model to simplify the equation and provided a new "Creating Your Own Excel Spreadsheets" presentation for the center-of-gravity example.

Chapter 9: Layout Strategies

We created a new Muther grid for office relationship charting and added a spread of five layouts showing how offices have evolved over time. There is a new OM in Action box called "Amazon Lets Loose the Robots," and there is a new graphic example of Proplanner's Flow Path Calculator. We have included a formula for idle time as a second measure of balance assignment efficiency and added new technology issues to the Arnold Palmer Hospital video case.

Chapter 10: Human Resources, Job Design, and Work Measurement

We added a new OM in Action box, "The Missing Perfect Chair," and revised the Operations Chart as a service example. Our third new video case study is "The 'People' Focus: Human Resources at Alaska Airlines."

Chapter 11: Supply Chain Management

We added "outsourcing" as a supply chain risk in Table 11.3.

Supplement 11: Supply Chain Management Analytics

We added a major section on the topic of Warehouse Storage, with a new model for allocating inventory to storage locations. There is a new discussion question and three new homework problems.

Chapter 12: Inventory Management

New Programs 12.1 and 12.2 illustrate "Creating Your Own Excel Spreadsheets" for both the production run model and the single-period inventory model. The Excel function NORMSINV is introduced throughout the chapter. The Quantity Discount Model section is totally rewritten to illustrate the *feasible solution* shortcut. Solved Problem 12.5 is likewise redone with the new approach.

Chapter 13: Aggregate Planning and S&OP

We added a new OM in Action box, "Revenue Management Makes Disney the 'King' of the Broadway Jungle." We also provided a new "Creating Your Own Excel Spreadsheets" example for the transportation method for aggregate planning, using the Solver approach.

Chapter 14: Material Requirements Planning (MRP) and ERP

The MRP II example now includes greenhouse gasses.

Chapter 15: Short-Term Scheduling

We begin this chapter with a new Global Company Profile featuring Alaska Airlines and the scheduling issues it faces in its northern climate. We have added two new graphics to help illustrate Forward and Backward Scheduling. There is also a new section called Performance Criteria, detailing how the choice of priority rule depends on four quantifiable criteria. We now explicitly define the performance criteria for sequencing jobs as separate numbered equations. Also, we provide an explicit formula for job lateness. There is a new OM in Action box called "Starbucks' Controversial Scheduling Software."

Chapter 16: Lean Operations

This chapter saw a major reorganization and rewrite with an enhanced focus on Lean operations. There is more material on supplier partnerships and building lean organizations. A new OM in Action box describes the use of kaizen at San Francisco General Hospital, and we have added a new video case study called "Lean Operations at Alaska Airlines."

Chapter 17: Maintenance and Reliability

There are no major changes in this chapter.

Student Resources

To liven up the course and help students learn the content material, we have made available the following resources:

- *Forty-one exciting Video Case Studies (videos located at MyOMLab):* These *Video Case Studies* feature real companies (Alaska Airlines, The Orlando Magic, Frito-Lay, Darden Restaurants, Regal Marine, Hard Rock Cafe, Ritz-Carlton, Wheeled Coach, and Arnold Palmer Hospital) and allow students to watch short videos, read about the key topics, and answer questions. These case studies can also be assigned without using class time to show the videos. Each of them was developed and written by the text authors to specifically supplement the book's content. Instructors who wish to use these in class, and who don't have access to MyOMLab, should contact their Pearson Publishing Representative for access to the MyOMLab materials.
- *POM for Windows software (located at MyOMLab and at the Student Download Page, www.pearsonglobaleditions.com/heizer):* POM for Windows is a powerful tool for easily solving OM problems. Its 24 modules can be used to solve most of the homework problems in the text.
- *Excel OM problem-solving software (located at MyOMLab and at the Student Download Page, www.pearsonglobaleditions.com/heizer):* Excel OM is our exclusive user-friendly Excel add-in. Excel OM automatically creates worksheets to model and solve problems. Users select a topic from the pull-down menu and fill in the data, and then Excel will display and graph (where appropriate) the results. This software is great for student homework, what-if analysis, and classroom demonstrations. This edition includes a new version of Excel OM that is compatible with Microsoft Excel 2013 for Windows, Excel 2011 and 2016 for Mac, and earlier versions of Excel. Professor Howard Weiss, Temple University, developed both Excel OM for Windows and Mac, and POM for Windows to accompany our text and its problem set.
- *Excel OM data files (located at MyOMLab and at the Student Download Page, www.pearsonglobaleditions.com/heizer):* These data files are prepared for specific examples and allow users to solve all the marked text examples without reentering any data.
- *Active Models (located at MyOMLab and at the Student Download Page, www.pearsonglobaleditions.com/heizer):* These 28 Active Models are Excel-based OM simulations, designed to help students understand the quantitative methods shown in the textbook examples. Students may change the data in order to see how the changes affect the answers.

- *Virtual tours (located at MyOMLab):* These company tours provide direct links to companies—ranging from a hospital to an auto manufacturer—that practice key OM concepts. After touring each Web site, students are asked questions directly related to the concepts discussed in the chapter.
- *Online Tutorial Chapters (located at MyOMLab and at the Student Download Page, www.pearsonglobaleditions.com/heizer):* "Statistical Tools for Managers," "Acceptance Sampling," "The Simplex Method of Linear Programming," "The MODI and VAM Methods of Solving Transportation Problems," and "Vehicle Routing and Scheduling" are provided as additional material.
- *Additional practice problems (located at MyOMLab):* These problems provide problem-solving experience. They supplement the examples and solved problems found in each chapter.
- *Additional case studies (located at MyOMLab and at the Student Download Page, www.pearsonglobaleditions.com/heizer):* Over two dozen additional case studies supplement the ones in the text. Detailed solutions appear in the Solutions Manual.
- *Virtual office hours (located at MyOMLab):* Professors Heizer, Render, and Munson walk students through all 73 Solved Problems in a series of 5- to 20-minute explanations. These have been updated with this new edition.

Instructor Resources

At the Instructor Resource Center, *www.pearsonglobaleditions.com/heizer*, instructors can easily register to gain access to a variety of instructor resources available with this text in downloadable format. If assistance is needed, our dedicated technical support team is ready to help with the media supplements that accompany this text. Visit *http://247.pearsoned.com* for answers to frequently asked questions and toll-free user support phone numbers.

The following supplements are available with this text:

Instructor's Resource Manual

The Instructor's Resource Manual, updated by co-author Chuck Munson, contains many useful resources for instructors—PowerPoint presentations with annotated notes, course outlines, video notes, blog highlights, learning techniques, Internet exercises and sample answers, case analysis ideas, additional teaching resources, and faculty notes.

Instructor's Solutions Manual

The Instructor's Solutions Manual, written by the authors, contains the answers to all of the discussion questions, *Ethical Dilemmas*, Active Models, and cases in the text, as well as worked-out solutions to all the end-of-chapter problems, additional homework problems, and additional case studies.

PowerPoint Presentations

An extensive set of PowerPoint presentations, created by Professor Jeff Heyl of Lincoln University, is available for each chapter. With well over 2,000 slides, this set has excellent color and clarity.

Test Bank/TestGen® Computerized Test Bank

The test bank, updated by James Roh, contains a variety of true/false, multiple-choice, short-answer, and essay questions, along with a selection of written problems, for each chapter. Test questions are annotated with the following information:

- Difficulty level
- Type: multiple-choice, true/false, short-answer, essay, problem
- Learning objective
- AACSB (see the description that follows)

TestGen®, Pearson Education's test-generating software, is PC/MAC compatible and preloaded with all the test bank questions. The test program permits instructors to edit, add, and delete questions from the test bank to create customized tests.

AACSB

The Association to Advance Collegiate Schools of Business (AACSB)

The test bank has connected select questions to the general knowledge and skill guidelines found in the AACSB Assurance of Learning standards.

AACSB is a not-for-profit corporation of educational institutions, corporations, and other organizations devoted to the promotion and improvement of higher education in business administration and accounting. A collegiate institution offering degrees in business administration or accounting may volunteer for AACSB accreditation review. The AACSB makes initial accreditation decisions and conducts periodic reviews to promote continuous quality improvement in management education. Pearson Education is a proud member of the AACSB and is pleased to provide advice to help you apply AACSB assurance of learning standards.

What are AACSB assurance of learning standards? One of the criteria for AACSB accreditation is quality of the curricula. Although no specific courses are required, the AACSB expects a curriculum to include learning experiences in the following areas:

- Written and oral communication
- Ethical understanding and reasoning
- Analytical thinking
- Information technology
- Interpersonal relations and teamwork
- Diverse and multicultural work environments
- Reflective thinking
- Application of knowledge

Questions that test skills relevant to these guidelines are appropriately tagged. For example, a question regarding clothing manufactured for U.S. firms by 10-year olds in Asia would receive the Ethical understanding and reasoning tag.

Tagged questions help you measure whether students are grasping the course content that aligns with the AACSB guidelines noted. In addition, the tagged questions may help instructors identify potential applications of these skills. This in turn may suggest enrichment activities or other educational experiences to help students achieve these skills.

Video Package

Designed and created by the authors specifically for their Heizer/Render/Munson texts, the video package contains the following 41 videos:

- Frito-Lay: Operations Management in Manufacturing (Chapter 1)
- Hard Rock Cafe: Operations Management in Services (Chapter 1)
- Strategy at Regal Marine (Chapter 2)
- Hard Rock Cafe's Global Strategy (Chapter 2)
- Outsourcing Offshore at Darden (Chapter 2)
- Project Management at Arnold Palmer Hospital (Chapter 3)
- Managing Hard Rock's Rockfest (Chapter 3)
- Forecasting Ticket Revenue for Orlando Magic Basketball Games (Chapter 4)
- Forecasting at Hard Rock Cafe (Chapter 4)
- Product Design at Regal Marine (Chapter 5)
- Building Sustainability at the Orlando Magic's Amway Center (Supplement 5)
- Green Manufacturing and Sustainability at Frito-Lay (Supplement 5)
- Quality Counts at Alaska Airlines (Chapter 6)
- The Culture of Quality at Arnold Palmer Hospital (Chapter 6)
- Quality at the Ritz-Carlton Hotel Company (Chapter 6)
- Frito-Lay's Quality-Controlled Potato Chips (Supplement 6)

- Farm to Fork: Quality at Darden Restaurants (Supplement 6)
- Alaska Airlines: 20-Minute Baggage Process—Guaranteed! (Chapter 7)
- Process Strategy at Wheeled Coach (Chapter 7)
- Process Analysis at Arnold Palmer Hospital (Chapter 7)
- Capacity Planning at Arnold Palmer Hospital (Supplement 7)
- Locating the Next Red Lobster Restaurant (Chapter 8)
- Where to Place the Hard Rock Cafe (Chapter 8)
- Facility Layout at Wheeled Coach (Chapter 9)
- Laying Out Arnold Palmer Hospital's New Facility (Chapter 9)
- The "People" Focus: Human Resources at Alaska Airlines (Chapter 10)
- Hard Rock's Human Resource Strategy (Chapter 10)
- Darden's Global Supply Chains (Chapter 11)
- Supply Chain Management at Regal Marine (Chapter 11)
- Arnold Palmer Hospital's Supply Chain (Chapter 11)
- Managing Inventory at Frito-Lay (Chapter 12)
- Inventory Control at Wheeled Coach (Chapter 12)
- Using Revenue Management to Set Orlando Magic Ticket Prices (Chapter 13)
- When 18,500 Orlando Magic Fans Come to Dinner (Chapter 14)
- MRP at Wheeled Coach (Chapter 14)
- From the Eagles to the Magic: Converting the Amway Center (Chapter 15)
- Scheduling at Hard Rock Cafe (Chapter 15)
- Lean Operations at Alaska Airlines (Chapter 16)
- JIT at Arnold Palmer Hospital (Chapter 16)
- Maintenance Drives Profits at Frito-Lay (Chapter 17)

Acknowledgments

We thank the many individuals who were kind enough to assist us in this endeavor. The following professors provided insights that guided us in this edition (their names are in bold) and in prior editions:

ALABAMA

John Mittenthal
University of Alabama

Philip F. Musa
University of Alabama at Birmingham

William Petty
University of Alabama

Doug Turner
Auburn University

ALASKA

Paul Jordan
University of Alaska

ARIZONA

Susan K. Norman
Northern Arizona University

Scott Roberts
Northern Arizona University

Vicki L. Smith-Daniels
Arizona State University

Susan K. Williams
Northern Arizona University

CALIFORNIA

Jean-Pierre Amor
University of San Diego

Moshen Attaran
California State University–Bakersfield

Ali Behnezhad
California State University–Northridge

Joe Biggs
California Polytechnic State University

Lesley Buehler
Ohlone College

Rick Hesse
Pepperdine

Ravi Kathuria
Chapman University

Richard Martin
California State University–Long Beach

Ozgur Ozluk
San Francisco State University

Zinovy Radovilsky
California State University–Hayward

Robert J. Schlesinger
San Diego State University

V. Udayabhanu
San Francisco State University

Rick Wing
San Francisco State University

COLORADO

Peter Billington
Colorado State University–Pueblo

Gregory Stock
University of Colorado at Colorado Springs

CONNECTICUT

David Cadden
Quinnipiac University

Larry A. Flick
Norwalk Community Technical College

FLORIDA

Joseph P. Geunes
University of Florida

Rita Gibson
Embry-Riddle Aeronautical University

Jim Gilbert
Rollins College

Donald Hammond
University of South Florida

Wende Huehn-Brown
St. Petersburg College

Adam Munson
University of Florida

Ronald K. Satterfield
University of South Florida

Theresa A. Shotwell
Florida A&M University

Jeff Smith
Florida State University

GEORGIA

John H. Blackstone
University of Georgia

Johnny Ho
Columbus State University

John Hoft
Columbus State University

John Miller
Mercer University

Nikolay Osadchiy
Emory University

Spyros Reveliotis
Georgia Institute of Technology

ILLINOIS

Suad Alwan
Chicago State University

Lori Cook
DePaul University

Matt Liontine
University of Illinois–Chicago

Zafar Malik
Governors State University

INDIANA

Barbara Flynn
Indiana University

B.P. Lingeraj
Indiana University

Frank Pianki
Anderson University

Stan Stockton
Indiana University

Jerry Wei
University of Notre Dame

Jianghua Wu
Purdue University

Xin Zhai
Purdue University

IOWA

Debra Bishop
Drake University

Kevin Watson
Iowa State University

Lifang Wu
University of Iowa

KANSAS

William Barnes
Emporia State University

George Heinrich
Wichita State University

Sue Helms
Wichita State University

Hugh Leach
Washburn University

M.J. Riley
Kansas State University

Teresita S. Salinas
Washburn University

Avanti P. Sethi
Wichita State University

KENTUCKY

Wade Ferguson
Western Kentucky University

Kambiz Tabibzadeh
Eastern Kentucky University

LOUISIANA

Roy Clinton
University of Louisiana at Monroe

L. Wayne Shell (retired)
Nicholls State University

MARYLAND

Eugene Hahn
Salisbury University

Samuel Y. Smith, Jr.
University of Baltimore

MASSACHUSETTS

Peter Ittig
University of Massachusetts

Jean Pierre Kuilboer
University of Massachusetts–Boston

Dave Lewis
University of Massachusetts–Lowell

Mike Maggard (retired)
Northeastern University

Peter Rourke
Wentworth Institute of Technology

Daniel Shimshak
University of Massachusetts–Boston

Ernest Silver
Curry College

Yu Amy Xia
Northeastern University

MICHIGAN

Darlene Burk
Western Michigan University

Damodar Golhar
Western Michigan University

Dana Johnson
Michigan Technological University

Doug Moodie
Michigan Technological University

MINNESOTA

Rick Carlson
Metropolitan State University

John Nicolay
University of Minnesota

Michael Pesch
St. Cloud State University

Manus Rungtusanatham
University of Minnesota

Kingshuk Sinha
University of Minnesota

Peter Southard
University of St. Thomas

MISSOURI

Shahid Ali
Rockhurst University

Stephen Allen
Truman State University

Sema Alptekin
University of Missouri–Rolla

Gregory L. Bier
University of Missouri–Columbia

James Campbell
University of Missouri–St. Louis

Wooseung Jang
University of Missouri–Columbia

Mary Marrs
University of Missouri–Columbia

A. Lawrence Summers
University of Missouri

NEBRASKA

Zialu Hug
University of Nebraska–Omaha

NEVADA

Joel D. Wisner
University of Nevada, Las Vegas

NEW JERSEY

Daniel Ball
Monmouth University

Leon Bazil
Stevens Institute of Technology

Mark Berenson
Montclair State University

Grace Greenberg
Rider University

Joao Neves
The College of New Jersey

Leonard Presby
William Paterson University

Faye Zhu
Rowan University

NEW MEXICO

William Kime
University of New Mexico

NEW YORK

Theodore Boreki
Hofstra University

John Drabouski
DeVry University

Richard E. Dulski
Daemen College

Jonatan Jelen
Baruch College

Beate Klingenberg
Marist College

Donna Mosier
SUNY Potsdam

Elizabeth Perry
SUNY Binghamton

William Reisel
St. John's University

Kaushik Sengupta
Hofstra University

Girish Shambu
Canisius College

Rajendra Tibrewala
New York Institute of Technology

NORTH CAROLINA

Coleman R. Rich
Elon University

Ray Walters
Fayetteville Technical Community College

OHIO

Victor Berardi
Kent State University

Andrew R. Thomas
University of Akron

OKLAHOMA

Wen-Chyuan Chiang
University of Tulsa

OREGON

Anne Deidrich
Warner Pacific College

Gordon Miller
Portland State University

John Sloan
Oregon State University

PENNSYLVANIA

Henry Crouch
Pittsburgh State University

Jeffrey D. Heim
Pennsylvania State University

James F. Kimpel
University of Pittsburgh

Ian M. Langella
Shippensburg University

Prafulla Oglekar
LaSalle University

David Pentico
Duquesne University

Stanford Rosenberg
LaRoche College

Edward Rosenthal
Temple University

Susan Sherer
Lehigh University

Howard Weiss
Temple University

RHODE ISLAND

Laurie E. Macdonald
Bryant College

John Swearingen
Bryant College

Susan Sweeney
Providence College

SOUTH CAROLINA

Jerry K. Bilbrey
Anderson University

Larry LaForge
Clemson University

Emma Jane Riddle
Winthrop University

TENNESSEE

Joseph Blackburn
Vanderbilt University

Hugh Daniel
Lipscomb University

Cliff Welborn
Middle Tennessee State University

TEXAS

Warren W. Fisher
Stephen F. Austin State University

Garland Hunnicutt
Texas State University

Gregg Lattier
Lee College

Henry S. Maddux III
Sam Houston State University

Arunachalam Narayanan
Texas A&M University

Ranga V. Ramasesh
Texas Christian University

Victor Sower
San Houston State University

Cecelia Temponi
Texas State University

John Visich-Disc
University of Houston

Dwayne Whitten
Texas A&M University

Bruce M. Woodworth
University of Texas–El Paso

UTAH

William Christensen
Dixie State College of Utah

Shane J. Schvaneveldt
Weber State University

Madeline Thimmes (retired)
Utah State University

VIRGINIA

Andy Litteral
University of Richmond

Arthur C. Meiners, Jr.
Marymount University

Michael Plumb
Tidewater Community College

WASHINGTON

Mark McKay
University of Washington

Chris Sandvig
Western Washington University

John Stec
Oregon Institute of Technology

WASHINGTON, DC

Narendrea K. Rustagi
Howard University

WEST VIRGINIA

Charles Englehardt
Salem International University

Daesung Ha
Marshall University

John Harpell
West Virginia University

James S. Hawkes
University of Charleston

WISCONSIN

James R. Gross
University of Wisconsin–Oshkosh

Marilyn K. Hart (retired)
University of Wisconsin–Oshkosh

Niranjan Pati
University of Wisconsin–La Crosse

X. M. Safford
Milwaukee Area Technical College

Rao J. Taikonda
University of Wisconsin–Oshkosh

WYOMING

Cliff Asay
University of Wyoming

INTERNATIONAL

Steven Harrod
Technical University of Denmark

Robert D. Klassen
University of Western Ontario

Ronald Lau
Hong Kong University of Science and Technology

In addition, we appreciate the wonderful people at Pearson Education who provided both help and advice: Stephanie Wall, our superb editor-in-chief; Lenny Ann Kucenski, our dynamo marketing manager; Linda Albelli, our editorial assistant; Courtney Kamauf and Andra Skaalrud for their fantastic and dedicated work on MyOMLab; Jeff Holcomb, our project manager team lead; Claudia Fernandes, our program manager; Jacqueline Martin, our senior project manager; and Heidi Allgair, our project manager at Cenveo® Publisher Services. We are truly blessed to have such a fantastic team of experts directing, guiding, and assisting us.

In this edition, we were thrilled to be able to include one of the country's premier airlines, Alaska Airlines, in our ongoing Video Case Study series. This was possible because of the wonderful efforts of COO/EVP-Operations Ben Minicucci, and his superb management team. This included John Ladner (Managing Director, Seattle Station Operations), Wayne Newton (Managing Director, Station Operations Control), Mike McQueen (Director, Schedule Planning), Chad Koehnke (Director, Planning and Resource Allocation), Cheryl Schulz (Executive Assistant to EVP Minicucci), Jeffrey Butler (V.P. Airport Operations & Customer Service), Dan Audette (Manager of Operations Research and Analysis), Allison Fletcher (Process Improvement Manager), Carlos Zendejas (Manager Line-Flying Operations, Pilots), Robyn Garner (Flight Attendant Trainer), and Nikki Meier and Sara Starbuck (Process Improvement Facilitators). We are grateful to all of these fine people, as well as the many others that participated in the development of the videos and cases during our trips to the Seattle headquarters.

We also appreciate the efforts of colleagues who have helped to shape the entire learning package that accompanies this text. Professor Howard Weiss (Temple University) developed the Active Models, Excel OM, and POM for Windows software; Professor Jeff Heyl (Lincoln University) created the PowerPoint presentations; and Professor James Roh (Rowan University) updated the test bank. Beverly Amer (Northern Arizona University) produced and directed the video series; Professors Keith Willoughby (Bucknell University) and Ken Klassen (Brock University) contributed the two Excel-based simulation games; and Professor Gary LaPoint (Syracuse University) developed the Microsoft Project crashing exercise and the dice game for SPC. We have been fortunate to have been able to work with all these people.

We wish you a pleasant and productive introduction to operations management.

JAY HEIZER
Texas Lutheran University
1000 W. Court Street
Seguin, TX 78155
Email: jheizer@tlu.edu

BARRY RENDER
Graduate School of Business
Rollins College
Winter Park, FL 32789
Email: brender@rollins.edu

CHUCK MUNSON
Carson College of Business
Washington State University
Pullman, WA 99164-4746
Email: munson@wsu.edu

Pearson would like to thank and acknowledge Soroosh Saghiri (Cranfield University, England), Andreas Kakouris, René Claus Larsen (VIA University College, Denmark), Björn Samuelsson (Luleå University of Technology, Sweden), Hakan Carlqvist (Luleå University of Technology, Sweden), Kate Dunne (GMIT Letterfrack), Roman Malaric (University of Zagreb,Croatia), Dubravko Sabolic (HOPS, Croatia), A. Ramin (Khazar University, Azerbaijan), Viktor Kiss (University of Pécs, Hungary), Selçuk Karabatı (Koç University, Turkey) and Evrim Didem Gunes (Koç University, Turkey) for their contribution to the Global Edition, and Merwyn Strate (Hult International Business School, Dubai), Hauck Zsuzsanna (University of Pécs, Hungary) and E.C.H. Knook (The Hague University of Applied Sciences, The Netherlands) for reviewing the Global Edition.

TWO VERSIONS ARE AVAILABLE

This text is available in two versions: *Operations Management*, 12th edition, and *Principles of Operations Management*, 10th edition. Both books include the identical core Chapters 1–17. However, *Operations Management*, 12th edition also includes six business analytics modules in Part IV.

OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT, 12TH EDITION ISBN: 0-13-413042-1

PART I INTRODUCTION TO OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT

1. Operations and Productivity
2. Operations Strategy in a Global Environment
3. Project Management
4. Forecasting

PART II DESIGNING OPERATIONS

5. Design of Goods and Services
S5. Sustainability in the Supply Chain
6. Managing Quality
S6. Statistical Process Control
7. Process Strategy
S7. Capacity and Constraint Management
8. Location Strategies
9. Layout Strategies
10. Human Resources, Job Design, and Work Measurement

PART III MANAGING OPERATIONS

11. Supply Chain Management
S11. Supply Chain Management Analytics
12. Inventory Management
13. Aggregate Planning and S&OP
14. Material Requirements Planning (MRP) and ERP
15. Short-Term Scheduling
16. Lean Operations
17. Maintenance and Reliability

PART IV BUSINESS ANALYTICS MODULES

A. Decision-Making Tools
B. Linear Programming
C. Transportation Models
D. Waiting-Line Models
E. Learning Curves
F. Simulation

ONLINE TUTORIALS

1. Statistical Tools for Managers
2. Acceptance Sampling
3. The Simplex Method of Linear Programming
4. The MODI and VAM Methods of Solving Transportation Problems
5. Vehicle Routing and Scheduling

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT, 10TH EDITION ISBN: 0-13-418198-0

PART I INTRODUCTION TO OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT

1. Operations and Productivity
2. Operations Strategy in a Global Environment
3. Project Management
4. Forecasting

PART II DESIGNING OPERATIONS

5. Design of Goods and Services
S5. Sustainability in the Supply Chain
6. Managing Quality
S6. Statistical Process Control
7. Process Strategy
S7. Capacity and Constraint Management
8. Location Strategies
9. Layout Strategies
10. Human Resources, Job Design, and Work Measurement

PART III MANAGING OPERATIONS

11. Supply Chain Management
S11. Supply Chain Management Analytics
12. Inventory Management
13. Aggregate Planning and S&OP
14. Material Requirements Planning (MRP) and ERP
15. Short-Term Scheduling
16. Lean Operations
17. Maintenance and Reliability

ONLINE TUTORIALS

1. Statistical Tools for Managers
2. Acceptance Sampling
3. The Simplex Method of Linear Programming
4. The MODI and VAM Methods of Solving Transportation Problems
5. Vehicle Routing and Scheduling

GLOBAL EDITION

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT

Sustainability and Supply Chain Management

This page intentionally left blank

Operations and Productivity

CHAPTER 1

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *Hard Rock Cafe*

- What Is Operations Management? *42*
- Organizing to Produce Goods and Services *42*
- The Supply Chain *44*
- Why Study OM? *44*
- What Operations Managers Do *45*
- The Heritage of Operations Management *46*
- Operations for Goods and Services *49*
- The Productivity Challenge *51*
- Current Challenges in Operations Management *56*
- Ethics, Social Responsibility, and Sustainability *57*

Alaska Airlines

10 OM STRATEGY DECISIONS

- Design of Goods and Services
- Managing Quality
- Process Strategy
- Location Strategies
- Layout Strategies
- Human Resources
- Supply-Chain Management
- Inventory Management
- Scheduling
- Maintenance

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
Hard Rock Cafe

Operations Management at Hard Rock Cafe

Operations managers throughout the world are producing products every day to provide for the well-being of society. These products take on a multitude of forms. They may be washing machines at Whirlpool, motion pictures at DreamWorks, rides at Disney World, or food at Hard Rock Cafe. These firms produce thousands of complex products every day—to be delivered as the customer ordered them, when the customer wants them, and where the customer wants them. Hard Rock does this for over 35 million guests worldwide every year. This is a challenging task, and the operations manager's job, whether at Whirlpool, DreamWorks, Disney, or Hard Rock, is demanding.

Andre Jenny/Alamy

Hard Rock Cafe in Orlando, Florida, prepares over 3,500 meals each day. Seating more than 1,500 people, it is one of the largest restaurants in the world. But Hard Rock's operations managers serve the hot food hot and the cold food cold.

Operations managers are interested in the attractiveness of the layout, but they must be sure that the facility contributes to the efficient movement of people and material with the necessary controls to ensure that proper portions are served.

Demetrio Carrasco/Rough Guides/Dorling Kindersley, Ltd.

Presselect/Alamy

Lots of work goes into designing, testing, and costing meals. Then suppliers deliver quality products on time, every time, for well-trained cooks to prepare quality meals. But none of that matters unless an enthusiastic waitstaff, such as the one shown here, holding guitars previously owned by members of U2, is doing its job.

Efficient kitchen layouts, motivated personnel, tight schedules, and the right ingredients at the right place at the right time are required to delight the customer.

Jack Picone/Alamy

Orlando-based Hard Rock Cafe opened its first restaurant in London in 1971, making it over 45 years old and the granddaddy of theme restaurants. Although other theme restaurants have come and gone, Hard Rock is still going strong, with 150 restaurants in more than 53 countries—and new restaurants opening each year. Hard Rock made its name with rock music memorabilia, having started when Eric Clapton, a regular customer, marked his favorite bar stool by hanging his guitar on the wall in the London cafe. Now Hard Rock has 70,000 items and millions of dollars invested in memorabilia. To keep customers coming back time and again, Hard Rock creates value in the form of good food and entertainment.

The operations managers at Hard Rock Cafe at Universal Studios in Orlando provide more than 3,500 custom products—in this case meals—every day. These products are designed, tested, and then analyzed for cost of ingredients, labor requirements, and customer satisfaction. On approval, menu items are put into production—and then only if the ingredients are available from qualified suppliers. The production process, from receiving, to cold storage, to grilling or baking or frying, and a dozen other steps, is designed and maintained to yield a quality meal. Operations managers, using the best people they can recruit and train, also prepare effective employee schedules and design efficient layouts.

Managers who successfully design and deliver goods and services throughout the world understand operations. In this text, we look not only at how Hard Rock's managers create value but also how operations managers in other services, as well as in manufacturing, do so. Operations management is demanding, challenging, and exciting. It affects our lives every day. Ultimately, operations managers determine how well we live.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO 1.1 ***Define*** operations management 42
LO 1.2 ***Explain*** the distinction between goods and services 49
LO 1.3 ***Explain*** the difference between production and productivity 51
LO 1.4 ***Compute*** single-factor productivity 52
LO 1.5 ***Compute*** multifactor productivity 53
LO 1.6 ***Identify*** the critical variables in enhancing productivity 54

STUDENT TIP Let's begin by defining what this course is about.

What Is Operations Management?

LO 1.1 *Define* operations management

Operations management (OM) is a discipline that applies to restaurants like Hard Rock Cafe as well as to factories like Ford and Whirlpool. The techniques of OM apply throughout the world to virtually all productive enterprises. It doesn't matter if the application is in an office, a hospital, a restaurant, a department store, or a factory—the production of goods and services requires operations management. And the *efficient* production of goods and services requires effective applications of the concepts, tools, and techniques of OM that we introduce in this book.

As we progress through this text, we will discover how to manage operations in an economy in which both customers and suppliers are located throughout the world. An array of informative examples, charts, text discussions, and pictures illustrates concepts and provides information. We will see how operations managers create the goods and services that enrich our lives.

VIDEO 1.1 Operations Management at Hard Rock

VIDEO 1.2 Operations Management at Frito-Lay

In this chapter, we first define *operations management*, explaining its heritage and exploring the exciting role operations managers play in a huge variety of organizations. Then we discuss production and productivity in both goods- and service-producing firms. This is followed by a discussion of operations in the service sector and the challenge of managing an effective and efficient production system.

Production The creation of goods and services.

Operations management (OM) Activities that relate to the creation of goods and services through the transformation of inputs to outputs.

Production is the creation of goods and services. **Operations management (OM)** is the set of activities that creates value in the form of goods and services by transforming inputs into outputs. Activities creating goods and services take place in all organizations. In manufacturing firms, the production activities that create goods are usually quite obvious. In them, we can see the creation of a tangible product such as a Sony TV or a Harley-Davidson motorcycle.

In an organization that does not create a tangible good or product, the production function may be less obvious. We often call these activities *services*. The services may be "hidden" from the public and even from the customer. The product may take such forms as the transfer of funds from a savings account to a checking account, the transplant of a liver, the filling of an empty seat on an airplane, or the education of a student. Regardless of whether the end product is a good or service, the production activities that go on in the organization are often referred to as operations, or *operations management*.

STUDENT TIP Operations is one of the three functions that every organization performs.

Organizing to Produce Goods and Services

To create goods and services, all organizations perform three functions (see Figure 1.1). These functions are the necessary ingredients not only for production but also for an organization's survival. They are:

1. *Marketing*, which generates the demand, or at least takes the order for a product or service (nothing happens until there is a sale).
2. *Production/operations*, which creates, produces, and delivers the product.
3. *Finance/accounting*, which tracks how well the organization is doing, pays the bills, and collects the money.

Universities, churches or synagogues, and businesses all perform these functions. Even a volunteer group such as the Boy Scouts of America is organized to perform these three basic

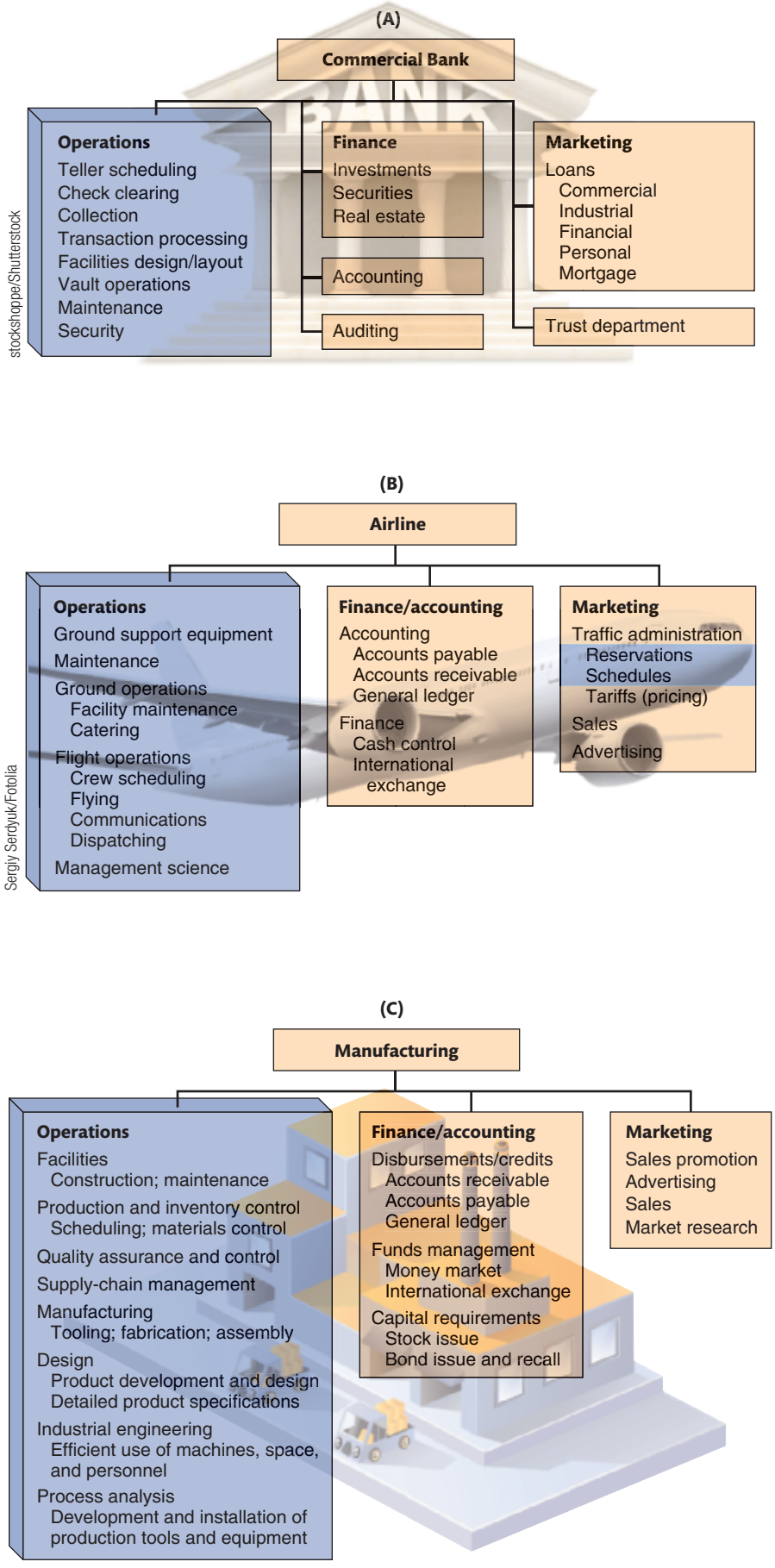


Figure 1.1

Organization Charts for Two Service Organizations and One Manufacturing Organization

(A) a bank, (B) an airline, and (C) a manufacturing organization. The blue areas are OM activities.

STUDENT TIP

The areas in blue indicate the significant role that OM plays in both manufacturing and service firms.

Figure 1.2

Soft Drink Supply Chain

A supply chain for a bottle of Coke requires a beet or sugar cane farmer, a syrup producer, a bottler, a distributor, and a retailer, each adding value to satisfy a customer. Only with collaborations between all members of the supply chain can efficiency and customer satisfaction be maximized. The supply chain, in general, starts with the provider of basic raw materials and continues all the way to the final customer at the retail store.

functions. Figure 1.1 shows how a bank, an airline, and a manufacturing firm organize themselves to perform these functions. The blue-shaded areas show the operations functions in these firms.

The Supply Chain

Supply chain
A global network of organizations and activities that supplies a firm with goods and services.

Through the three functions—marketing, operations, and finance—value for the customer is created. However, firms seldom create this value by themselves. Instead, they rely on a variety of suppliers who provide everything from raw materials to accounting services. These suppliers, when taken together, can be thought of as a *supply chain.* A **supply chain** (see Figure 1.2) is a global network of organizations and activities that supply a firm with goods and services.

As our society becomes more technologically oriented, we see increasing specialization. Specialized expert knowledge, instant communication, and cheaper transportation also foster specialization and worldwide supply chains. It just does not pay for a firm to try to do everything itself. The expertise that comes with specialization exists up and down the supply chain, adding value at each step. When members of the supply chain collaborate to achieve high levels of customer satisfaction, we have a tremendous force for efficiency and competitive advantage. Competition in the 21st century is not between companies; it is between *supply chains.*

STUDENT TIP Good OM managers are scarce and, as a result, career opportunities and pay are excellent.

Why Study OM?

We study OM for four reasons:

1. OM is one of the three major functions of any organization, and it is integrally related to all the other business functions. All organizations market (sell), finance (account), and produce (operate), and it is important to know how the OM activity functions. Therefore, we study *how people organize themselves for productive enterprise*.
2. We study OM because we want to know *how goods and services are produced*. The production function is the segment of our society that creates the products and services we use.
3. We study OM to *understand what operations managers do*. Regardless of your job in an organization, you can perform better if you understand what operations managers do. In addition, understanding OM will help you explore the numerous and lucrative career opportunities in the field.
4. We study OM *because it is such a costly part of an organization*. A large percentage of the revenue of most firms is spent in the OM function. Indeed, OM provides a major opportunity for an organization to improve its profitability and enhance its service to society. Example 1 considers how a firm might increase its profitability via the production function.

Example 1

EXAMINING THE OPTIONS FOR INCREASING CONTRIBUTION

Fisher Technologies is a small firm that must double its dollar contribution to fixed cost and profit in order to be profitable enough to purchase the next generation of production equipment. Management has determined that if the firm fails to increase contribution, its bank will not make the loan and the equipment cannot be purchased. If the firm cannot purchase the equipment, the limitations of the old equipment will force Fisher to go out of business and, in doing so, put its employees out of work and discontinue producing goods and services for its customers.

APPROACH ► Table 1.1 shows a simple profit-and-loss statement and three strategic options (marketing, finance/accounting, and operations) for the firm. The first option is a *marketing option*, where excellent marketing management may increase sales by 50%. By increasing sales by 50%, contribution will in turn increase 71%. But increasing sales 50% may be difficult; it may even be impossible.

TABLE 1.1 Options for Increasing Contribution

		MARKETING OPTION[a]	FINANCE/ ACCOUNTING OPTION[b]	OM OPTION[c]
	CURRENT	INCREASE SALES REVENUE 50%	REDUCE FINANCE COSTS 50%	REDUCE PRODUCTION COSTS 20%
Sales	$100,000	$150,000	$100,000	$100,000
Costs of goods	–80,000	–120,000	–80,000	–64,000
Gross margin	20,000	30,000	20,000	36,000
Finance costs	–6,000	–6,000	–3,000	–6,000
Subtotal	14,000	24,000	17,000	30,000
Taxes at 25%	–3,500	–6,000	–4,250	–7,500
Contribution[d]	$ 10,500	$ 18,000	$ 12,750	$ 22,500

[a]Increasing sales 50% increases contribution by $7,500, or 71% (7,500/10,500).
[b]Reducing finance costs 50% increases contribution by $2,250, or 21% (2,250/10,500).
[c]Reducing production costs 20% increases contribution by $12,000, or 114% (12,000/10,500).
[d]Contribution to fixed cost (excluding finance costs) and profit.

The second option is a *finance/accounting option*, where finance costs are cut in half through good financial management. But even a reduction of 50% is still inadequate for generating the necessary increase in contribution. Contribution is increased by only 21%.

The third option is an *OM option*, where management reduces production costs by 20% and increases contribution by 114%.

SOLUTION ► Given the conditions of our brief example, Fisher Technologies has increased contribution from $10,500 to $22,500. It may now have a bank willing to lend it additional funds.

INSIGHT ► The OM option not only yields the greatest improvement in contribution but also may be the only feasible option. Increasing sales by 50% and decreasing finance cost by 50% may both be virtually impossible. Reducing operations cost by 20% may be difficult but feasible.

LEARNING EXERCISE ► What is the impact of only a 15% decrease in costs in the OM option? [Answer: A $19,500 contribution; an 86% increase.]

Example 1 underscores the importance of the effective operations activity of a firm. Development of increasingly effective operations is the approach taken by many companies as they face growing global competition.

What Operations Managers Do

All good managers perform the basic functions of the management process. The management process consists of *planning*, *organizing*, *staffing*, *leading*, and *controlling*. Operations managers apply this management process to the decisions they make in the OM function. The **10 strategic OM decisions** are introduced in Table 1.2. Successfully addressing each of these decisions requires planning, organizing, staffing, leading, and controlling.

10 Strategic OM Decisions
- Design of goods and services
- Managing quality
- Process strategy
- Location strategies
- Layout strategies
- Human resources
- Supply-chain management
- Inventory management
- Scheduling
- Maintenance

Where Are the OM Jobs? How does one get started on a career in operations? The 10 strategic OM decisions identified in Table 1.2 are made by individuals who work in the disciplines shown in the blue areas of Figure 1.1. Business students who know their accounting,

STUDENT TIP

An operations manager must successfully address the 10 decisions around which this text is organized.

TABLE 1.2 Ten Strategic Operations Management Decisions

DECISION	CHAPTER(S)
1. *Design of goods and services:* Defines much of what is required of operations in each of the other OM decisions. For instance, product design usually determines the lower limits of cost and the upper limits of quality, as well as major implications for sustainability and the human resources required.	5, Supplement 5
2. *Managing quality:* Determines the customer's quality expectations and establishes policies and procedures to identify and achieve that quality.	6, Supplement 6
3. *Process and capacity strategy:* Determines how a good or service is produced (i.e., the process for production) and commits management to specific technology, quality, human resources, and capital investments that determine much of the firm's basic cost structure.	7, Supplement 7
4. *Location strategy:* Requires judgments regarding nearness to customers, suppliers, and talent, while considering costs, infrastructure, logistics, and government.	8
5. *Layout strategy:* Requires integrating capacity needs, personnel levels, technology, and inventory requirements to determine the efficient flow of materials, people, and information.	9
6. *Human resources and job design:* Determines how to recruit, motivate, and retain personnel with the required talent and skills. People are an integral and expensive part of the total system design.	10
7. *Supply chain management:* Decides how to integrate the supply chain into the firm's strategy, including decisions that determine what is to be purchased, from whom, and under what conditions.	11, Supplement 11
8. *Inventory management:* Considers inventory ordering and holding decisions and how to optimize them as customer satisfaction, supplier capability, and production schedules are considered.	12, 14, 16
9. *Scheduling:* Determines and implements intermediate- and short-term schedules that effectively and efficiently utilize both personnel and facilities while meeting customer demands.	13, 15
10. *Maintenance:* Requires decisions that consider facility capacity, production demands, and personnel necessary to maintain a reliable and stable process.	17

statistics, finance, and OM have an opportunity to assume entry-level positions in all of these areas. As you read this text, identify disciplines that can assist you in making these decisions. Then take courses in those areas. The more background an OM student has in accounting, statistics, information systems, and mathematics, the more job opportunities will be available. About 40% of *all* jobs are in OM.

The following professional organizations provide various certifications that may enhance your education and be of help in your career:

- APICS, the Association for Operations Management (www.apics.org)
- American Society for Quality (ASQ) (www.asq.org)
- Institute for Supply Management (ISM) (www.ism.ws)
- Project Management Institute (PMI) (www.pmi.org)
- Council of Supply Chain Management Professionals (www.cscmp.org)

Figure 1.3 shows some recent job opportunities.

The Heritage of Operations Management

The field of OM is relatively young, but its history is rich and interesting. Our lives and the OM discipline have been enhanced by the innovations and contributions of numerous individuals. We now introduce a few of these people, and we provide a summary of significant events in operations management in Figure 1.4.

1/15 **Plant Manager**
Division of Fortune 1000 company seeks plant manager for plant located in the upper Hudson Valley area. This plant manufactures loading dock equipment for commercial markets. The candidate must be experienced in plant management including expertise in production planning, purchasing, and inventory management. Good written and oral communication skills are a must, along with excellent application of skills in managing people.

2/23 **Operations Analyst**
Expanding national coffee shop: top 10 "Best Places to Work" wants junior level systems analyst to join our excellent store improvement team. Business or I.E. degree, work methods, labor standards, ergonomics, cost accounting knowledge a plus. This is a hands-on job and excellent opportunity for a team player with good people skills. West Coast location. Some travel required.

3/18 **Quality Manager**
Several openings exist in our small package processing facilities in the Northeast, Florida, and Southern California for quality managers. These highly visible positions require extensive use of statistical tools to monitor all aspects of service, timeliness, and workload measurement. The work involves (1) a combination of hands-on applications and detailed analysis using databases and spreadsheets, (2) processing of audits to identify areas for improvement, and (3) management of implementation of changes. Positions involve night hours and weekends.

4/6 **Supply-Chain Manager and Planner**
Responsibilities entail negotiating contracts and establishing long-term relationships with suppliers. We will rely on the selected candidate to maintain accuracy in the purchasing system, invoices, and product returns. A bachelor's degree and up to 2 years related experience are required. Working knowledge of MRP, ability to use feedback to master scheduling and suppliers and consolidate orders for best price and delivery are necessary. Proficiency in all PC Windows applications, particularly Excel and Word, is essential. Effective verbal and written communication skills are essential.

5/14 **Process Improvement Consultants**
An expanding consulting firm is seeking consultants to design and implement lean production and cycle time reduction plans in both service and manufacturing processes. Our firm is currently working with an international bank to improve its back office operations, as well as with several manufacturing firms. A business degree required; APICS certification a plus.

Figure **1.3**

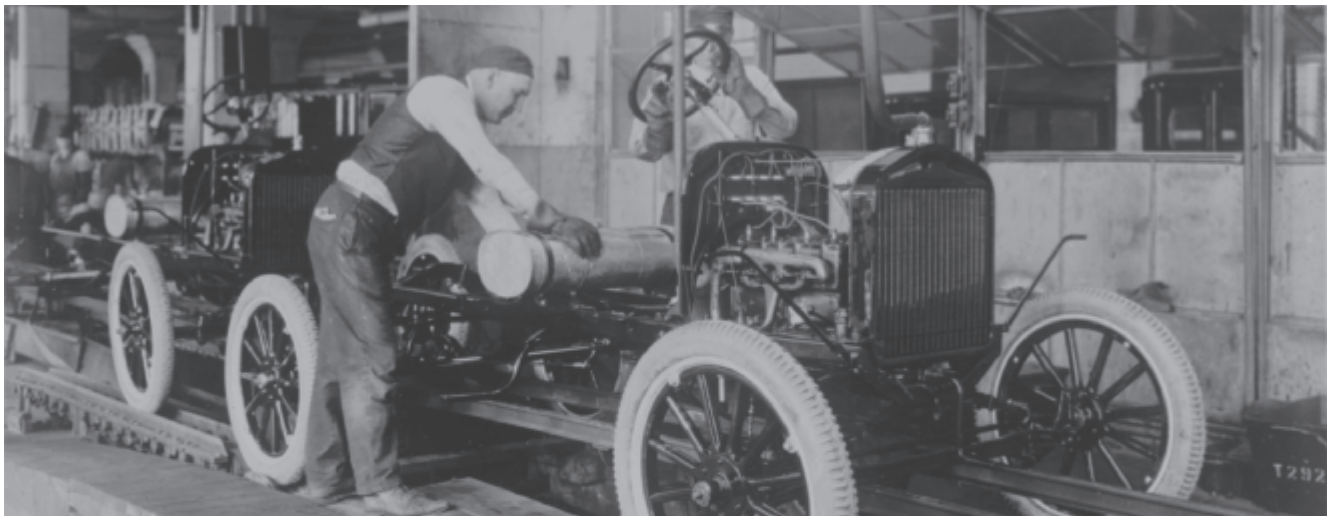
Many Opportunities Exist for Operations Managers

Eli Whitney (1800) is credited for the early popularization of interchangeable parts, which was achieved through standardization and quality control. Through a contract he signed with the U.S. government for 10,000 muskets, he was able to command a premium price because of their interchangeable parts.

Frederick W. Taylor (1881), known as the father of scientific management, contributed to personnel selection, planning and scheduling, motion study, and the now popular field of ergonomics. One of his major contributions was his belief that management should be much more resourceful and aggressive in the improvement of work methods. Taylor and his colleagues, Henry L. Gantt and Frank and Lillian Gilbreth, were among the first to systematically seek the best way to produce.

Another of Taylor's contributions was the belief that management should assume more responsibility for:

1. Matching employees to the right job.
2. Providing the proper training.
3. Providing proper work methods and tools.
4. Establishing legitimate incentives for work to be accomplished.



Everett Collection/Newscom

Cost Focus		Quality Focus	Customization Focus	Globalization Focus
Early Concepts 1776–1880 Labor Specialization (Smith, Babbage) Standardized Parts (Whitney) **Scientific Management Era 1880–1910** Gantt Charts (Gantt) Motion & Time Studies (Gilbreth) Process Analysis (Taylor) Queuing Theory (Erlang)	**Mass Production Era 1910–1980** Moving Assembly Line (Ford/Sorensen) Statistical Sampling (Shewhart) Economic Order Quantity (Harris) Linear Programming PERT/CPM (DuPont) Material Requirements Planning (MRP)	**Lean Production Era 1980–1995** Just-in-Time (JIT) Computer-Aided Design (CAD) Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) Total Quality Management (TQM) Baldrige Award Empowerment Kanbans	**Mass Customization Era 1995–2005** Internet/E-Commerce Enterprise Resource Planning International Quality Standards (ISO) Finite Scheduling Supply Chain Management Mass Customization Build-to-Order Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)	**Globalization Era 2005–2020** Global Supply Chains Growth of Transnational Organizations Instant Communications Sustainability Ethics in a Global Workforce Logistics

Figure **1.4**

Significant Events in Operations Management

By 1913, Henry Ford and Charles Sorensen combined what they knew about standardized parts with the quasi-assembly lines of the meatpacking and mail-order industries and added the revolutionary concept of the assembly line, where men stood still and material moved.

Quality control is another historically significant contribution to the field of OM. Walter Shewhart (1924) combined his knowledge of statistics with the need for quality control and provided the foundations for statistical sampling in quality control. W. Edwards Deming (1950) believed, as did Frederick Taylor, that management must do more to improve the work environment and processes so that quality can be improved.

Operations management will continue to progress as contributions from other disciplines, including *industrial engineering, statistics, management,* and *economics*, improve decision making.

Innovations from the *physical sciences* (biology, anatomy, chemistry, physics) have also contributed to advances in OM. These innovations include new adhesives, faster integrated circuits, gamma rays to sanitize food products, and specialized glass for iPhones and plasma TVs. Innovation in products and processes often depends on advances in the physical sciences.

Especially important contributions to OM have come from *information technology*, which we define as the systematic processing of data to yield information. Information technology—with wireless links, Internet, and e-commerce—is reducing costs and accelerating communication.

Decisions in operations management require individuals who are well versed in analytical tools, in information technology, and often in one of the biological or physical sciences. In this textbook, we look at the diverse ways a student can prepare for a career in operations management.

Operations for Goods and Services

STUDENT TIP
Services are especially important because almost 80% of all jobs are in service firms.

Manufacturers produce a tangible product, while service products are often intangible. But many products are a combination of a good and a service, which complicates the definition of a service. Even the U.S. government has trouble generating a consistent definition. Because definitions vary, much of the data and statistics generated about the service sector are inconsistent. However, we define **services** as including repair and maintenance, government, food and lodging, transportation, insurance, trade, financial, real estate, education, legal, medical, entertainment, and other professional occupations.

Services
Economic activities that typically produce an intangible product (such as education, entertainment, lodging, government, financial, and health services).

The operation activities for both goods and services are often very similar. For instance, both have quality standards, are designed and produced on a schedule that meets customer demand, and are made in a facility where people are employed. However, some major differences *do* exist between goods and services. These are presented in Table 1.3.

LO 1.2 *Explain* the distinction between goods and services

We should point out that in many cases, the distinction between goods and services is not clear-cut. In reality, almost all services and almost all goods are a mixture of a service and a tangible product. Even services such as consulting may require a tangible report. Similarly, the sale of most goods includes a service. For instance, many products have the service components of financing and delivery (e.g., automobile sales). Many also require after-sale training and maintenance (e.g., office copiers and machinery). "Service" activities may also be an integral part of production. Human resource activities, logistics, accounting, training, field service, and repair are all service activities, but they take place within a manufacturing organization. Very few services are "pure," meaning they have no tangible component. Counseling may be one of the exceptions.

Growth of Services

Services constitute the largest economic sector in postindustrial societies. Until about 1900, most Americans were employed in agriculture. Increased agricultural productivity allowed people to leave the farm and seek employment in the city. Similarly, manufacturing employment has decreased for the past 60 years. The changes in agriculture, manufacturing, and service employment as a percentage of the workforce are shown in Figure 1.5. Although the *number* of people employed in manufacturing has decreased since 1950, each person is now producing almost 20 times more than in 1950. Services became the dominant

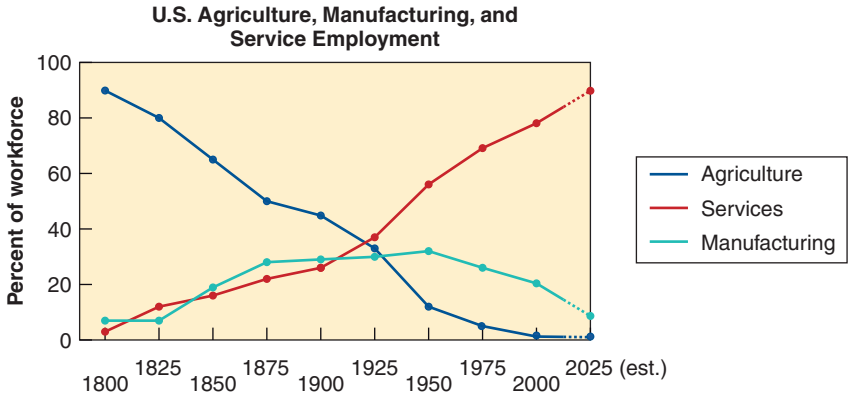
TABLE 1.3 Differences Between Goods and Services

CHARACTERISTICS OF SERVICES	CHARACTERISTICS OF GOODS
Intangible: Ride in an airline seat	Tangible: The seat itself
Produced and consumed simultaneously: Beauty salon produces a haircut that is consumed as it is produced	Product can usually be kept in inventory (beauty care products)
Unique: Your investments and medical care are unique	Similar products produced (iPods)
High customer interaction: Often what the customer is paying for (consulting, education)	Limited customer involvement in production
Inconsistent product definition: Auto insurance changes with age and type of car	Product standardized (iPhone)
Often knowledge based: Legal, education, and medical services are hard to automate	Standard tangible product tends to make automation feasible
Services dispersed: Service may occur at retail store, local office, house call, or via Internet.	Product typically produced at a fixed facility
Quality may be hard to evaluate: Consulting, education, and medical services	Many aspects of quality for tangible products are easy to evaluate (strength of a bolt)
Reselling is unusual: Musical concert or medical care	Product often has some residual value

Figure 1.5

U.S. Agriculture, Manufacturing, and Service Employment

Source: U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics.



employer in the early 1920s, with manufacturing employment peaking at about 32% in 1950. The huge productivity increases in agriculture and manufacturing have allowed more of our economic resources to be devoted to services. Consequently, much of the world can now enjoy the pleasures of education, health services, entertainment, and myriad other things that we call services. Examples of firms and percentage of employment in the U.S. service sector are shown in Table 1.4. Table 1.4 also provides employment percentages for the nonservice sectors of manufacturing, construction, agriculture, and mining on the bottom four lines.

Service sector
The segment of the economy that includes trade, financial, lodging, education, legal, medical, and other professional occupations.

Service Pay

Although there is a common perception that service industries are low paying, in fact, many service jobs pay very well. Operations managers in the maintenance facility of an airline are very well paid, as are the operations managers who supervise computer services to the financial community. About 42% of all service workers receive wages above the national average. However, the service-sector average is driven down because 14 of the U.S. Department of

TABLE 1.4 Examples of Organizations in Each Sector

SECTOR	EXAMPLE	PERCENT OF ALL JOBS	
Service Sector			
Education, Medical, Other	San Diego State University, Arnold Palmer Hospital	15.3	
Trade (retail, wholesale), Transportation	Walgreen's, Walmart, Nordstrom, Alaska Airlines	15.8	
Information, Publishers, Broadcast	IBM, Bloomberg, Pearson, ESPN	1.9	
Professional, Legal, Business Services, Associations	Snelling and Snelling, Waste Management, American Medical Association, Ernst & Young	13.6	85.2
Finance, Insurance, Real Estate	Citicorp, American Express, Prudential, Aetna	9.6	
Leisure, Lodging, Entertainment	Olive Garden, Motel 6, Walt Disney	10.4	
Government (Fed, State, Local)	U.S., State of Alabama, Cook County	15.6	
Manufacturing Sector	General Electric, Ford, U.S. Steel, Intel		8.6
Construction Sector	Bechtel, McDermott		4.3
Agriculture	King Ranch		1.4
Mining Sector	Homestake Mining		.5
Grand Total			100.0

Source: Bureau of Labor Statistics, 2015.

Commerce categories of the 33 service industries do indeed pay below the all-private industry average. Of these, retail trade, which pays only 61% of the national private industry average, is large. But even considering the retail sector, the average wage of all service workers is about 96% of the average of all private industries.

The Productivity Challenge

STUDENT TIP

Why is productivity important? Because it determines our standard of living.

Productivity

The ratio of outputs (goods and services) divided by one or more inputs (such as labor, capital, or management).

The creation of goods and services requires changing resources into goods and services. The more efficiently we make this change, the more productive we are and the more value is added to the good or service provided. **Productivity** is the ratio of outputs (goods and services) divided by the inputs (resources, such as labor and capital) (see Figure 1.6). The operations manager's job is to enhance (improve) this ratio of outputs to inputs. Improving productivity means improving efficiency.[1]

This improvement can be achieved in two ways: reducing inputs while keeping output constant or increasing output while keeping inputs constant. Both represent an improvement in productivity. In an economic sense, inputs are labor, capital, and management, which are integrated into a production system. Management creates this production system, which provides the conversion of inputs to outputs. Outputs are goods and services, including such diverse items as guns, butter, education, improved judicial systems, and ski resorts. *Production* is the making of goods and services. High production may imply only that more people are working and that employment levels are high (low unemployment), but it does not imply high *productivity*.

LO 1.3 *Explain* the difference between production and productivity

Measurement of productivity is an excellent way to evaluate a country's ability to provide an improving standard of living for its people. *Only through increases in productivity can the standard of living improve.* Moreover, only through increases in productivity can labor, capital, and management receive additional payments. If returns to labor, capital, or management are increased without increased productivity, prices rise. On the other hand, downward pressure is placed on prices when productivity increases because more is being produced with the same resources.

The benefits of increased productivity are illustrated in the *OM in Action* box "Improving Productivity at Starbucks."

For well over a century (from about 1869), the U.S. has been able to increase productivity at an average rate of almost 2.5% per year. Such growth has doubled U.S. wealth every 30 years. The manufacturing sector, although a decreasing portion of the U.S. economy, has on occasion seen annual productivity increases exceeding 4%, and service sector increases of almost 1%. However, U.S. annual productivity growth in the early part of the 21st century is slightly below the 2.5% range for the economy as a whole and in recent years has been trending down.[2]

In this text, we examine how to improve productivity through operations management. Productivity is a significant issue for the world and one that the operations manager is uniquely qualified to address.

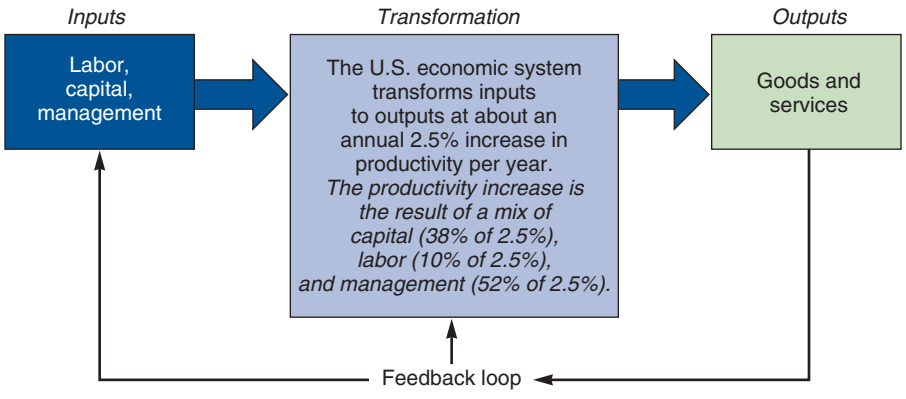


Figure 1.6

The Economic System Adds Value by Transforming Inputs to Outputs

An effective feedback loop evaluates performance against a strategy or standard. It also evaluates customer satisfaction and sends signals to managers controlling the inputs and transformation process.

OM in Action — Improving Productivity at Starbucks

"This is a game of seconds …" says Silva Peterson, whom Starbucks has put in charge of saving seconds. Her team of 10 analysts is constantly asking themselves: "How can we shave time off this?"

Peterson's analysis suggested that there were some obvious opportunities. First, stop requiring signatures on credit-card purchases under $25. This sliced 8 seconds off the transaction time at the cash register.

Then analysts noticed that Starbucks' largest cold beverage, the Venti size, required two bending and digging motions to scoop up enough ice. The scoop was too small. Redesign of the scoop provided the proper amount in one motion and cut 14 seconds off the average time of 1 minute.

Third were new espresso machines; with the push of a button, the machines grind coffee beans and brew. This allowed the server, called a "barista" in Starbucks's vocabulary, to do other things. The savings: about 12 seconds per espresso shot.

As a result, operations improvements at Starbucks outlets have increased the average transactions per hour to 11.7—a 46% increase—and yearly volume by $250,000, to about $1 million. The result: a 27% improvement in overall productivity—about 4.5% per year. In the service industry, a 4.5% per year increase is very tasty.

Sources: BusinessWeek (August 23–30, 2012) and *The Wall Street Journal* (October 13, 2010 and August 4, 2009).

Kondor83/Shutterstock

Productivity Measurement

LO 1.4 *Compute* single-factor productivity

The measurement of productivity can be quite direct. Such is the case when productivity is measured by labor-hours per ton of a specific type of steel. Although labor-hours is a common measure of input, other measures such as capital (dollars invested), materials (tons of ore), or energy (kilowatts of electricity) can be used.[3] An example of this can be summarized in the following equation:

$$\text{Productivity} = \frac{\text{Units produced}}{\text{Input used}} \tag{1-1}$$

For example, if units produced = 1,000 and labor-hours used is 250, then:

$$\text{Single-factor productivity} = \frac{\text{Units produced}}{\text{Labor-hours used}} = \frac{1{,}000}{250} = 4 \text{ units per labor-hour}$$

Single-factor productivity
Indicates the ratio of goods and services produced (outputs) to one resource (input).

Multifactor productivity
Indicates the ratio of goods and services produced (outputs) to many or all resources (inputs).

The use of just one resource input to measure productivity, as shown in Equation (1-1), is known as **single-factor productivity**. However, a broader view of productivity is **multifactor productivity**, which includes all inputs (e.g., capital, labor, material, energy). Multifactor productivity is also known as *total factor productivity*. Multifactor productivity is calculated by combining the input units as shown here:

$$\text{Multifactor productivity} = \frac{\text{Output}}{\text{Labor} + \text{Material} + \text{Energy} + \text{Capital} + \text{Miscellaneous}} \tag{1-2}$$

To aid in the computation of multifactor productivity, the individual inputs (the denominator) can be expressed in dollars and summed as shown in Example 2.

Example 2

COMPUTING SINGLE-FACTOR AND MULTIFACTOR GAINS IN PRODUCTIVITY

Collins Title Insurance Ltd. wants to evaluate its labor and multifactor productivity with a new computerized title-search system. The company has a staff of four, each working 8 hours per day (for a payroll cost of $640/day) and overhead expenses of $400 per day. Collins processes and closes on 8 titles each day. The new computerized title-search system will allow the processing of 14 titles per day. Although the staff, their work hours, and pay are the same, the overhead expenses are now $800 per day.

APPROACH ▶ Collins uses Equation (1-1) to compute labor productivity and Equation (1-2) to compute multifactor productivity.

LO 1.5 *Compute* multifactor productivity

SOLUTION ▶

$$\text{Labor productivity with the old system: } \frac{8 \text{ titles per day}}{32 \text{ labor-hours}} = .25 \text{ titles per labor-hour}$$

$$\text{Labor productivity with the new system: } \frac{14 \text{ titles per day}}{32 \text{ labor-hours}} = .4375 \text{ titles per labor-hour}$$

$$\text{Multifactor productivity with the old system: } \frac{8 \text{ titles per day}}{\$640 + 400} = .0077 \text{ titles per dollar}$$

$$\text{Multifactor productivity with the new system: } \frac{14 \text{ titles per day}}{\$640 + 800} = .0097 \text{ titles per dollar}$$

Labor productivity has increased from .25 to .4375. The change is $(.4375 - .25)/.25 = 0.75$, or a 75% increase in labor productivity. Multifactor productivity has increased from .0077 to .0097. This change is $(.0097 - .0077)/.0077 = 0.26$, or a 26% increase in multifactor productivity.

INSIGHT ▶ Both the labor (single-factor) and multifactor productivity measures show an increase in productivity. However, the multifactor measure provides a better picture of the increase because it includes all the costs connected with the increase in output.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the overhead goes to \$960 (rather than \$800), what is the multifactor productivity? [Answer: .00875.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 1.1, 1.2, 1.4, 1.5, 1.6, 1.7, 1.8, 1.9, 1.10, 1.11, 1.13, 1.14, 1.17

Use of productivity measures aids managers in determining how well they are doing. But results from the two measures can be expected to vary. If labor productivity growth is entirely the result of capital spending, measuring just labor distorts the results. Multifactor productivity is usually better, but more complicated. Labor productivity is the more popular measure. The multifactor-productivity measures provide better information about the trade-offs among factors, but substantial measurement problems remain. Some of these measurement problems are:

1. *Quality* may change while the quantity of inputs and outputs remains constant. Compare an HDTV of this decade with a black-and-white TV of the 1950s. Both are TVs, but few people would deny that the quality has improved. The unit of measure—a TV—is the same, but the quality has changed.
2. *External elements* may cause an increase or a decrease in productivity for which the system under study may not be directly responsible. A more reliable electric power service may greatly improve production, thereby improving the firm's productivity because of this support system rather than because of managerial decisions made within the firm.
3. *Precise units of measure* may be lacking. Not all automobiles require the same inputs: Some cars are subcompacts, others are 911 Turbo Porsches.

Productivity measurement is particularly difficult in the service sector, where the end product can be hard to define. For example, economic statistics ignore the quality of your haircut, the outcome of a court case, or the service at a retail store. In some cases, adjustments are made for the quality of the product sold but *not* the quality of the sales presentation or the advantage of a broader product selection. Productivity measurements require specific inputs and outputs, but a free economy is producing worth—what people want—which includes convenience, speed, and safety. Traditional measures of outputs may be a very poor measure of these other measures of worth. Note the quality-measurement problems in a law office, where each case is different, altering the accuracy of the measure "cases per labor-hour" or "cases per employee."

Productivity Variables

As we saw in Figure 1.6, productivity increases are dependent on three **productivity variables**:

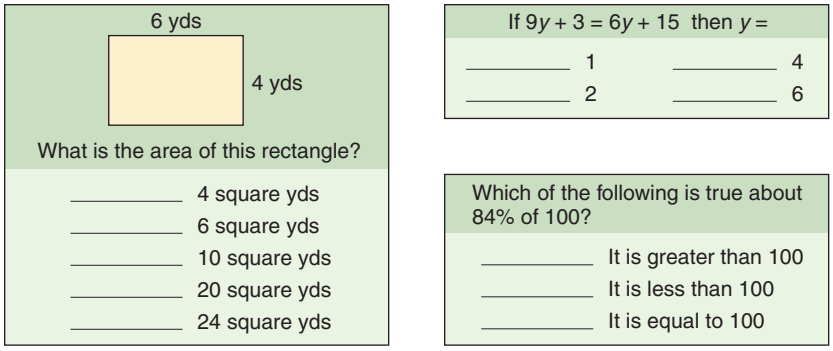
Productivity variables
The three factors critical to productivity improvement—labor, capital, and the art and science of management.

1. *Labor,* which contributes about 10% of the annual increase.
2. *Capital,* which contributes about 38% of the annual increase.
3. *Management,* which contributes about 52% of the annual increase.

These three factors are critical to improved productivity. They represent the broad areas in which managers can take action to improve productivity.

Figure 1.7

About Half of the 17-Year-Olds in the U.S. Cannot Correctly Answer Questions of This Type



LO 1.6 *Identify* the critical variables in enhancing productivity

Labor Improvement in the contribution of labor to productivity is the result of a healthier, better-educated, and better-nourished labor force. Some increase may also be attributed to a shorter workweek. Historically, about 10% of the annual improvement in productivity is attributed to improvement in the quality of labor. Three key variables for improved labor productivity are:

1. Basic education appropriate for an effective labor force.
2. Diet of the labor force.
3. Social overhead that makes labor available, such as transportation and sanitation.

Illiteracy and poor diets are a major impediment to productivity, costing countries up to 20% of their productivity. Infrastructure that yields clean drinking water and sanitation is also an opportunity for improved productivity, as well as an opportunity for better health, in much of the world.

In developed nations, the challenge becomes *maintaining and enhancing the skills of labor* in the midst of rapidly expanding technology and knowledge. Recent data suggest that the average American 17-year-old knows significantly less mathematics than the average Japanese at the same age, and about half cannot answer the questions in Figure 1.7. Moreover, about one-third of American job applicants tested for basic skills were deficient in reading, writing, or math.

Overcoming shortcomings in the quality of labor while other countries have a better labor force is a major challenge. Perhaps improvements can be found not only through increasing competence of labor but also via *better utilized labor with a stronger commitment*. Training, motivation, team building, and the human resource strategies discussed in Chapter 10, as well as improved education, may be among the many techniques that will contribute to increased labor productivity. Improvements in labor productivity are possible; however, they can be expected to be increasingly difficult and expensive.

Capital Human beings are tool-using animals. Capital investment provides those tools. Capital investment has increased in the U.S. every year except during a few very severe recession periods. Annual capital investment in the U.S. has increased at an annual rate of 1.5% after allowances for depreciation.

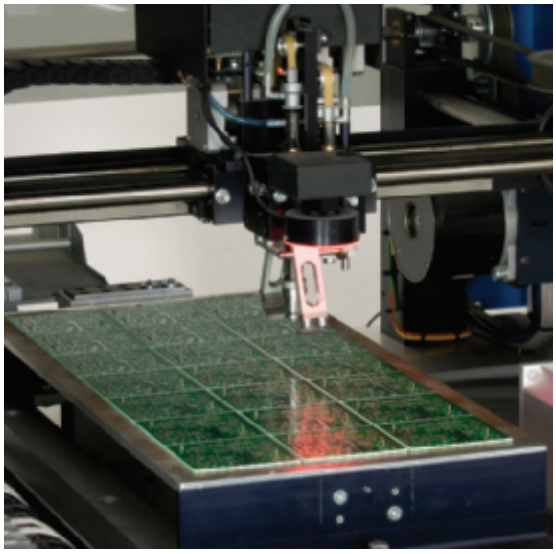
Inflation and taxes increase the cost of capital, making capital investment increasingly expensive. When the capital invested per employee drops, we can expect a drop in productivity. Using labor rather than capital may reduce unemployment in the short run, but it also makes economies less productive and therefore lowers wages in the long run. Capital investment is often a necessary, but seldom a sufficient, ingredient in the battle for increased productivity.

The trade-off between capital and labor is continually in flux. The higher the cost of capital or perceived risk, the more projects requiring capital are "squeezed out": they are not pursued because the potential return on investment for a given risk has been reduced. Managers adjust their investment plans to changes in capital cost and risk.

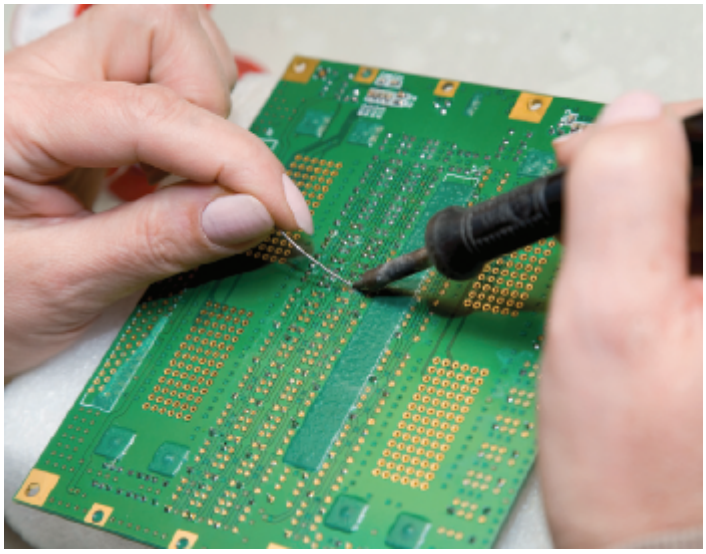
Management Management is a factor of production and an economic resource. Management is responsible for ensuring that labor and capital are effectively used to increase productivity. Management accounts for over half of the annual increase in productivity. This increase includes improvements made through the use of knowledge and the application of technology.

Knowledge society
A society in which much of the labor force has migrated from manual work to work based on knowledge.

Using knowledge and technology is critical in postindustrial societies. Consequently, postindustrial societies are also known as **knowledge societies**. Knowledge societies are those in which much of the labor force has migrated from manual work to technical and information-processing



Andrzej Thiel/Fotolia



Guy Shapira/Shutterstock

The effective use of capital often means finding the proper trade-off between investment in capital assets (automation, left) and human assets (a manual process, right). While there are risks connected with any investment, the cost of capital and physical investments is fairly clear-cut, but the cost of employees has many hidden costs including fringe benefits, social insurance, and legal constraints on hiring, employment, and termination.

tasks requiring ongoing education. The required education and training are important high-cost items that are the responsibility of operations managers as they build organizations and workforces. The expanding knowledge base of contemporary society requires that managers use *technology and knowledge effectively.*

More effective use of capital also contributes to productivity. It falls to the operations manager, as a productivity catalyst, to select the best new capital investments as well as to improve the productivity of existing investments.

The productivity challenge is difficult. A country cannot be a world-class competitor with second-class inputs. Poorly educated labor, inadequate capital, and dated technology are second-class inputs. High productivity and high-quality outputs require high-quality inputs, including good operations managers.

Productivity and the Service Sector

The service sector provides a special challenge to the accurate measurement of productivity and productivity improvement. The traditional analytical framework of economic theory is based primarily on goods-producing activities. Consequently, most published economic data relate to goods production. But the data do indicate that, as our contemporary service economy has increased in size, we have had slower growth in productivity.

Olaf Jandke/Agencja Fotograficzna Caro/Alamy

Siemens, a multi-billion-dollar German conglomerate, has long been known for its apprentice programs in its home country. Because education is often the key to efficient operations in a technological society, Siemens has spread its apprentice-training programs to its U.S. plants. These programs are laying the foundation for the highly skilled workforce that is essential for global competitiveness.

OM in Action Technology Innovation by Uber

Uber Technologies Inc. was founded in 2009 as "UberCab" by Travis Kalanick and Garrett Camp. The company operates the Uber mobile peer to peer smartphone application which links drivers and passengers. Mobility-as a-Service concept is likely to create significant economic benefits globally by changing the overall composition of demand for transport and thereby influencing traffic flows. Due to their low costs and ease of use, peer-to-peer transport services are likely to immediately attract demand from other types of transport, and will induce car owners to give up car ownership, thereby reducing the use of private cars. As example, it is estimated that in the Swedish capital city of Stockholm the Uber service will reduce daily car trips by up to 37,000 trips (3 percent of total) and total number of active cars in Stockholm by up to 18,000 (5 percent of total). Both these effects will lower traffic intensity and congestion, which in turn decreases time spent in traffic, creating a total value for society of up to $100 million per year. Well-functioning peer-to-peer transport services are likely to have an impact on the environment as well, in particular emissions in the form of CO_2 particles and land use. It is expected that the emissions decrease in Stockholm have economic value of up to $22 million. The improved utilization of vehicles will also reduce the demand for parking in the city center which will make room for 63 km of new bike lanes. In addition, it would become easier and less costly to remove snow in Nordic capitals. The new service will create new jobs as well. In the short run, the service creates almost 3,000 full-time jobs, as citizens who normally drive their own car shifted to commercial peer-to-peer transport.

Uber expanded internationally in 2012, and is currently available in more than 65 countries and 300 cities worldwide. The company is worth more than $50 billion in 2015 and has changed dramatically public transportation services as peer-to-peer fares are usually 40 to 60 percent lower than a similar ride in a taxi.

Shutterstock

Source: Amanda Stefansdotter, Carl von Utfall Danielsson, Dr Claus Kastberg Nielsen, Dr Eva Rytter Sunesen. *Economic benefits of peer-to-peer transport services, Copenhagen Economics*; http://www.copenhageneconomics.com/dyn/resources/Publication/publicationPDF/0/320/1441009386

Productivity of the service sector has proven difficult to improve because service-sector work is:

1. Typically labor intensive (e.g., counseling, teaching).
2. Frequently focused on unique individual attributes or desires (e.g., investment advice).
3. Often an intellectual task performed by professionals (e.g., medical diagnosis).
4. Often difficult to mechanize and automate (e.g., a haircut).
5. Often difficult to evaluate for quality (e.g., performance of a law firm).

The more intellectual and personal the task, the more difficult it is to achieve increases in productivity. Low-productivity improvement in the service sector is also attributable to the growth of low-productivity activities in the service sector. These include activities not previously a part of the measured economy, such as child care, food preparation, house cleaning, and laundry service. These activities have moved out of the home and into the measured economy as more and more women have joined the workforce. Inclusion of these activities has probably resulted in lower measured productivity for the service sector, although, in fact, actual productivity has probably increased because these activities are now more efficiently produced than previously.

However, despite the difficulty of improving productivity in the service sector, improvements are being made. And this text presents a multitude of ways to make these improvements. Indeed, what can be done when management pays attention to how work actually gets done is astonishing!

Although the evidence indicates that all industrialized countries have the same problem with service productivity, the U.S. remains the world leader in overall productivity *and* service productivity. Retailing is twice as productive in the U.S. as in Japan, where laws protect shopkeepers from discount chains. The U.S. telephone industry is at least twice as productive as Germany's. The U.S. banking system is also 33% more efficient than Germany's banking oligopolies. However, because productivity is central to the operations manager's job and because the service sector is so large, we take special note in this text of how to improve productivity in the service sector. (See, for instance, the *OM in Action* box "Technology Innovation by Uber.")

Current Challenges in Operations Management

Operations managers work in an exciting and dynamic environment. This environment is the result of a variety of challenging forces, from globalization of world trade to the transfer of ideas, products, and money at electronic speeds. Let's look at some of these challenges:

- *Globalization:* The rapid decline in the cost of communication and transportation has made markets global. Similarly, resources in the form of capital, materials, talent, and labor are also now global. As a result, countries throughout the world are contributing to globalization as they vie for economic growth. Operations managers are rapidly seeking creative designs, efficient production, and high-quality goods via international collaboration.
- *Supply-chain partnering:* Shorter product life cycles, demanding customers, and fast changes in technology, materials, and processes require supply-chain partners to be in tune with the needs of end users. And because suppliers may be able to contribute unique expertise, operations managers are outsourcing and building long-term partnerships with critical players in the supply chain.
- *Sustainability:* Operations managers' continuing battle to improve productivity is concerned with designing products and processes that are ecologically sustainable. This means designing green products and packaging that minimize resource use, can be recycled or reused, and are generally environmentally friendly.
- *Rapid product development:* Technology combined with rapid international communication of news, entertainment, and lifestyles is dramatically chopping away at the life span of products. OM is answering with new management structures, enhanced collaboration, digital technology, and creative alliances that are more responsive and effective.
- *Mass customization:* Once managers recognize the *world* as the marketplace, the cultural and individual differences become quite obvious. In a world where consumers are increasingly aware of innovation and options, substantial pressure is placed on firms to respond in a creative way. And OM must rapidly respond with product designs and flexible production processes that cater to the individual whims of consumers. The goal is to produce customized products, whenever and wherever needed.
- *Lean operations:* Lean is the management model sweeping the world and providing the standard against which operations managers must compete. Lean can be thought of as the driving force in a well-run operation, where the customer is satisfied, employees are respected, and waste does not exist. The theme of this text is to build organizations that are more efficient, where management creates enriched jobs that help employees engage in continuous improvement, and where goods and services are produced and delivered when and where the customer desires them. These ideas are also captured in the phrase *Lean*.

STUDENT TIP

One of the reasons OM is such an exciting discipline is that an operations manager is confronted with ever-changing issues, from technology, to global supply chains, to sustainability.

These challenges must be successfully addressed by today's operations managers. This text will provide you with the foundations necessary to meet those challenges.

Ethics, Social Responsibility, and Sustainability

The systems that operations managers build to convert resources into goods and services are complex. And they function in a world where the physical and social environment is evolving, as are laws and values. These dynamics present a variety of challenges that come from the conflicting perspectives of **stakeholders**, such as customers, distributors, suppliers, owners, lenders, employees, and community. Stakeholders, as well as government agencies at various levels, require constant monitoring and thoughtful responses.

Stakeholders

Those with a vested interest in an organization, including customers, distributors, suppliers, owners, lenders, employees, and community members.

Identifying ethical and socially responsible responses while developing sustainable processes that are also effective and efficient productive systems is not easy. Managers are also challenged to:

- Develop and produce safe, high-quality green products
- Train, retain, and motivate employees in a safe workplace
- Honor stakeholder commitments

Managers must do all this while meeting the demands of a very competitive and dynamic world marketplace. If operations managers have a *moral awareness and focus on increasing productivity in this system*, then many of the ethical challenges will be successfully addressed. The organization will use fewer resources, the employees will be committed, the market will be satisfied, and the ethical climate will be enhanced. Throughout this text, we note ways in which operations managers can take ethical and socially responsible actions while successfully addressing these challenges of the market. We also conclude each chapter with an *Ethical Dilemma* exercise.

Summary

Operations, marketing, and finance/accounting are the three functions basic to all organizations. The operations function creates goods and services. Much of the progress of operations management has been made in the twentieth century, but since the beginning of time, humankind has been attempting to improve its material well-being. Operations managers are key players in the battle to improve productivity.

As societies become increasingly affluent, more of their resources are devoted to services. In the U.S., more than 85% of the workforce is employed in the service sector. Productivity improvements and a sustainable environment are difficult to achieve, but operations managers are the primary vehicle for making improvements.

Key Terms

Production (p. 42)
Operations management (OM) (p. 42)
Supply chain (p. 44)
10 strategic OM decisions (p. 45)
Services (p. 49)
Service sector (p. 50)
Productivity (p. 51)
Single-factor productivity (p. 52)
Multifactor productivity (p. 52)
Productivity variables (p. 53)
Knowledge society (p. 54)
Stakeholders (p. 57)

Ethical Dilemma

Since 2009, Volkswagen has allegedly installed elaborate cheating software in 11 million vehicles worldwide including 482.000 diesel vehicles in USA. It was done purposely to defeat the Environmental Protection Agency and Clean Air Act regulations in USA and similar regulations in other parts of the world. While the final resolution of the case is still difficult to predict, the immediate effect was that Volkswagen stock dropped 20% and the CEO resigned. It is estimated that company will face EPA penalties of up to $37,500 for each vehicle not in compliance with regulations in USA alone. The company has immediately put aside $7.3 bn to pay for the fault—which is likely to include a massive recall—but some analysts predict that a final bill would be closer to $18 billion. The "defeat device" software was used to cheat on lab tests on nitrogen oxide (NOx) levels, even though they emitted as much as 40 times the legal limit of NOx on the road where a car would be guided by different software that would increase acceleration, torque, and fuel economy making it more attractive to customers. It is indeed clever engineering but there is no doubt that everyone involved knew it was highly unethical and illegal as well. This raises several other ethical questions:

a) How is it possible that such a scheme lasted for seven years before it was detected? How many people in VW knew that this software was installed in their cars and did nothing about it? For some, this was detected but it was neglected for over a year saying the EPA testers have gotten it wrong.

b) Who should be made accountable except CEO?

c) Are other manufacturers honest or do they just make smarter algorithms to cheat the system? Should this spark more investigations of other car manufacturers? Is it easy to fool EPA tests? What can EPA do to avoid such a scandal in the future?

d) What would it take for the company to earn back their customers' trust?

Discussion Questions

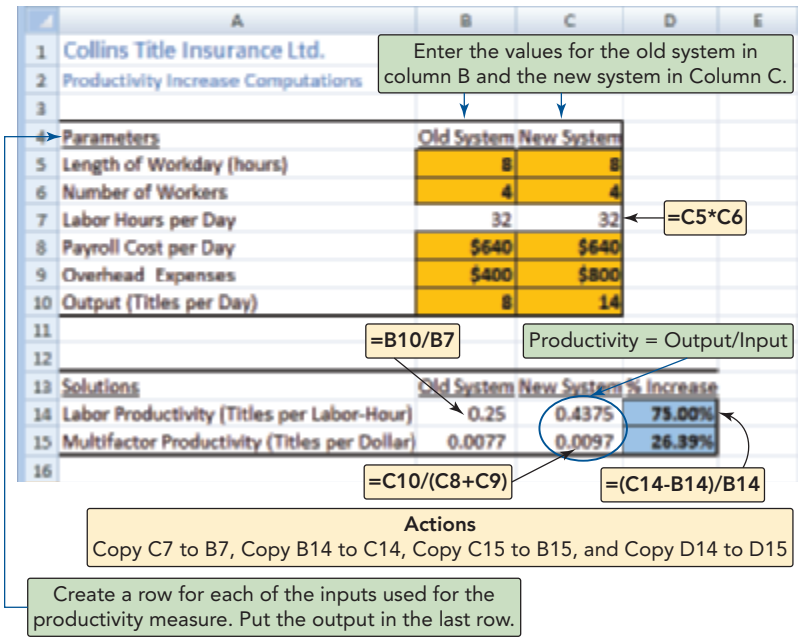
1. Why should one study operations management?
2. Identify four people who have contributed to the theory and techniques of operations management.
3. Briefly describe the contributions of the four individuals identified in the preceding question.
4. Figure 1.1 outlines the operations, finance/accounting, and marketing functions of three organizations. Prepare a chart similar to Figure 1.1 outlining the same functions for one of the following:
   a. a newspaper
   b. a drugstore
   c. a college library
   d. a summer camp
   e. a small costume-jewelry factory
5. Answer Question 4 for some other organization, perhaps an organization where you have worked.
6. What are the three basic functions of a firm?
7. Identify the 10 strategic operations management decisions.
8. Name four areas that are significant to improving labor productivity.
9. "The reasons for failure (in productivity) are cost reduction programmes (which) produces narrowness of vision. We must first let go of old fashioned productivity as a goal (instead) we must set a new but powerful objective of competitiveness." (*Skinner, 1986*). Discuss this historical but seminal viewpoint.
10. What are the measurement problems that occur when one attempts to measure productivity?
11. Mass customization and rapid product development were identified as challenges to modern manufacturing operations. What is the relationship, if any, between these challenges? Can you cite any examples?
12. Suggest measurements of productivity which are often used by operations managers in:
    a. Airline b. Bus c. Hotel
13. Many believe that productivity is the essence of operations management. Suggest reasons to support this claim.
14. Discuss the overlap amongst operations, marketing, and finance—the three functions basic to all organizations—for small medium enterprises.

Using Software for Productivity Analysis

This section presents three ways to solve productivity problems with computer software. First, you can create your own Excel spreadsheets to conduct productivity analysis. Second, you can use the Excel OM software that comes with this text. Third, POM for Windows is another program that is available with this text.

CREATING YOUR OWN EXCEL SPREADSHEETS

Program 1.1 illustrates how to build an Excel spreadsheet for the data in Example 2.



Program 1.1

USING EXCEL OM

Excel OM is an Excel "add-in" with 24 Operations Management decision support "Templates." To access the templates, double-click on the *Excel OM* tab at the top of the page, then in the menu bar choose the appropriate chapter (in this case Chapter 1), from either the "Chapter" or "Alphabetic" tab on the left. Each of Excel OM's 24 modules includes instructions for that particular module. The instructions can be turned on or off via the "instruction" tab in the menu bar.

USING POM FOR WINDOWS

POM for Windows is decision support software that includes 24 Operations Management modules. The modules are accessed by double-clicking on *Module* in the menu bar, and then double-clicking on the appropriate (in this case *Productivity*) item. Instructions are provided for each module just below the menu bar.

Solved Problems

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM 1.1

Productivity can be measured in a variety of ways, such as by labor, capital, energy, material usage, and so on. At Modern Lumber, Inc., Art Binley, president and producer of apple crates sold to growers, has been able, with his current equipment, to produce 240 crates per 100 logs. He currently purchases 100 logs per day, and each log requires 3 labor-hours to process. He believes that he can hire a professional buyer who can buy a better-quality log at the same cost. If this is the case, he can increase his production to 260 crates per 100 logs. His labor-hours will increase by 8 hours per day.

What will be the impact on productivity (measured in crates per labor-hour) if the buyer is hired?

SOLUTION

$$\text{(a) Current labor productivity} = \frac{240 \text{ crates}}{100 \text{ logs} \times 3 \text{ hours/log}} = \frac{240}{300} = .8 \text{ crates per labor-hour}$$

$$\text{(b) Labor productivity with buyer} = \frac{260 \text{ crates}}{(100 \text{ logs} \times 3 \text{ hours/log}) + 8 \text{ hours}} = \frac{260}{308} = .844 \text{ crates per labor-hour}$$

Using current productivity (.80 from [a]) as a base, the increase will be 5.5% (.844/.8 = 1.055, or a 5.5% increase).

SOLVED PROBLEM 1.2

Art Binley has decided to look at his productivity from a multifactor (total factor productivity) perspective (refer to Solved Problem 1.1). To do so, he has determined his labor, capital, energy, and material usage and decided to use dollars as the common denominator. His total labor-hours are now 300 per day and will increase to 308 per day. His capital and energy costs will remain constant at $350 and $150 per day, respectively. Material costs for the 100 logs per day are $1,000 and will remain the same. Because he pays an average of $10 per hour (with fringes), Binley determines his productivity increase as follows:

SOLUTION

CURRENT SYSTEM	
Labor:	300 hrs. @10 = 3,000
Material:	100 logs/day 1,000
Capital:	350
Energy:	150
Total Cost:	$4,500

Multifactor productivity of current system:
= 240 crates/$4,500 = .0533 crates/dollar

SYSTEM WITH PROFESSIONAL BUYER	
308 hrs. @10 =	$3,080
	1,000
	350
	150
	$4,580

Multifactor productivity of proposed system:
= 260 crates/$4,580 = .0568 crates/dollar

Using current productivity (.0533) as a base, the increase will be .066. That is, .0568/.0533 = 1.066, or a 6.6% increase.

Problems

Note: PX means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel OM.

Problems 1.1 to 1.17 relate to The Productivity Challenge

• **1.1** Chuck Sox makes wooden boxes in which to ship motorcycles. Chuck and his three employees invest a total of 40 hours per day making the 120 boxes.
a) What is their productivity?
b) Chuck and his employees have discussed redesigning the process to improve efficiency. If they can increase the rate to 125 per day, what will be their new productivity?
c) What will be their unit *increase* in productivity per hour?
d) What will be their percentage change in productivity? PX

• **1.2** Carbondale Casting produces cast bronze valves on a 10-person assembly line. On a recent day, 160 valves were produced during an 8-hour shift.
a) Calculate the labor productivity of the line.
b) John Goodale, the manager at Carbondale, changed the layout and was able to increase production to 180 units per 8-hour shift. What is the new labor productivity per labor-hour?
c) What is the percentage of productivity increase? PX

• **1.3** A small electronic manufacturing company which makes communication devices has determined its costs as follows (all value data are expressed in millions Euro):

	2013	2014
Output:	2	3
Inputs:		
Labour	1	1.8
Material and supplies	0.6	0.8
Capital equipment depreciation	0.07	0.12

Calculate and compare all single-factor and multifactor productivity for 2013 and 2014.

What conclusions do you draw?

• **1.4** Lori Cook produces "Final Exam Care Packages" for resale by her sorority. She is currently working a total of 5 hours per day to produce 100 care packages.
a) What is Lori's productivity?
b) Lori thinks that by redesigning the package, she can increase her total productivity to 133 care packages per day. What will be her new productivity?
c) What will be the percentage increase in productivity if Lori makes the change? PX

•• **1.5** George Kyparisis makes bowling balls in his Miami plant. With recent increases in his costs, he has a newfound interest in efficiency. George is interested in determining the productivity of his organization. He would like to know if his organization is maintaining the manufacturing average of 3% increase in productivity per year? He has the following data representing a month from last year and an equivalent month this year:

	LAST YEAR	NOW
Units produced	1,000	1,000
Labor (hours)	300	275
Resin (pounds)	50	45
Capital invested ($)	10,000	11,000
Energy (BTU)	3,000	2,850

Show the productivity percentage change for each category and then determine the improvement for labor-hours, the typical standard for comparison. PX

•• **1.6** George Kyparisis (using data from Problem 1.5) determines his costs to be as follows:

- *Labor:* $10 per hour
- *Resin:* $5 per pound
- *Capital expense:* 1% per month of investment
- *Energy:* $0.50 per BTU

Show the percent change in productivity for one month last year versus one month this year, on a multifactor basis with dollars as the common denominator. PX

• **1.7** Hokey Min's Kleen Karpet cleaned 65 rugs in October, consuming the following resources:

Labor:	520 hours at $13 per hour
Solvent:	100 gallons at $5 per gallon
Machine rental:	20 days at $50 per day

a) What is the labor productivity per dollar?
b) What is the multifactor productivity? PX

•• **1.8** Lillian Fok is president of Lakefront Manufacturing, a producer of bicycle tires. Fok makes 1,000 tires per day with the following resources:

Labor:	400 hours per day @ $12.50 per hour
Raw material:	20,000 pounds per day @ $1 per pound
Energy:	$5,000 per day
Capital costs:	$10,000 per day

a) What is the labor productivity per labor-hour for these tires at Lakefront Manufacturing?
b) What is the multifactor productivity for these tires at Lakefront Manufacturing?
c) What is the percent change in multifactor productivity if Fok can reduce the energy bill by $1,000 per day without cutting production or changing any other inputs? PX

••• **1.9** Brown's, a local bakery, is worried about increased costs—particularly energy. Last year's records can provide a fairly good estimate of the parameters for this year. Wende Brown, the owner, does not believe things have changed much, but she did invest an additional $3,000 for modifications to the bakery's ovens to make them more energy efficient. The modifications were supposed to make the ovens at least 15% more efficient. Brown has asked you to check the energy savings of the new ovens and also to look over other measures of the bakery's productivity to see if the modifications were beneficial. You have the following data to work with:

	LAST YEAR	NOW
Production (dozen)	1,500	1,500
Labor (hours)	350	325
Capital investment ($)	15,000	18,000
Energy (BTU)	3,000	2,750

PX

•• **1.10** Munson Performance Auto, Inc., modifies 375 autos per year. The manager, Adam Munson, is interested in obtaining a measure of overall performance. He has asked you to provide him with a multifactor measure of last year's performance as a benchmark for future comparison. You have assembled the following data. Resource inputs were labor, 10,000 hours; 500 suspension and engine modification kits; and energy, 100,000 kilowatt-hours. Average labor cost last year was $20 per hour, kits cost $1,000 each, and energy costs were $3 per kilowatt-hour. What do you tell Mr. Munson? PX

•• **1.11** Lake Charles Seafood makes 500 wooden packing boxes for fresh seafood per day, working in two 10-hour shifts. Due to increased demand, plant managers have decided to operate three 8-hour shifts instead. The plant is now able to produce 650 boxes per day.
a) Calculate the company's productivity before the change in work rules and after the change.
b) What is the percentage increase in productivity?
c) If production is increased to 700 boxes per day, what is the new productivity? PX

••• **1.12** The State department of motor vehicle, attempts to perform an analysis of the driver's licence renewal operations. In the past each renewal process followed six steps to be performed and took one hour to finish. Calculate the daily productivity, assuming that the working time is eight hours per day.

In an effort to improve performance, State department reengineered the whole process, i.e. eliminated some steps, merged some others, etc. As a result the renewal time of each process dropped to half-hour. However, from time to time during the day, there are some unexpected failures, which result in delays up to an hour per day. Has the modified process impact productivity?

•• **1.13** Mr Store who runs his photocopy business working 8 hours per day process 100 scripts. He estimates his labour cost to be €9 per hour. Also he has estimated that the total material cost for each script is approximately €2; while the daily expenses are €28. Calculate the multifactor productivity.

In an effort to increase the rate of the photocopy process to 150 scripts, he decides to change the quality of ink thus raising the material cost to €2.5 per day. Is the new productivity better than before?

If Mr Store would like to increase the photocopy process to 150 scripts without sacrificing the initial multifactor productivity, by what amount has the material costs to be increased?

••• **1.14** A production operation is making 150 pieces of a product by engaging 5 workers for 300 hours. However, 40 percent of the products appear to have various quality problems and the company decides to sell them as seconds at a price of €50 each when the normal product is sold €150 each. What is the productivity of the company?

In an effort to improve the situation, a number of initiatives were proposed including a scheme where for every improvement 50 percent will be given to workers and the other 50 percent will be held by the company. This resulted in a significant drop in defects, as now only 10 products were faulty out of an output of 130 pieces. What is the new productivity of the company, and what will be the earnings per hour of the workers under the bonus scheme, if the cost per piece is €70 both before and after the scheme?

•• **1.15** A furniture manufacturing company working on a 40 hour per week basis makes 100 chairs. The sales price is €70 each, and the company has the following costs:
- Direct materials €700
- Direct labor €300
- Overhead €500

a) Calculate the productivity of the company.
b) What will be the new productivity if the company decides to make 135 chairs per week?
c) If the company decides to improve productivity through materials costs reduction only, how much these costs must be reduced in order to achieve a 10 percent increase in total productivity?
d) If the company repeats the same exercise as in (c) above, but through labour costs reduction, how much these costs must be reduced in order to achieve a 10 percent increase in total productivity?

••**1.16** An air-conditioner factory makes three different types of air-conditioners: the ceiling type, the cassette type and the wall-mounted type. Weekly sales of each type are 2, 4 and 6 pieces, at a price of €350, €450, and €500 each, respectively. The ceiling type can be assembled in 1.5 hours, the cassette type in 1 hour and the wall-mounted type in 45 minutes. Labour cost is €40 per hour and the current factory's multi factor productivity is 2.2.

a) Calculate the average cost per air-conditioner based on current multifactor productivity
b) Calculate labor productivity (in euro per hour) for each type of air-condition
c) Where the company should focus its efforts, based (i) on the labor productivity, and (ii) on average cost?

•••**1.17** As part of a study for the Department of Labor Statistics, you are assigned the task of evaluating the improvement in productivity of small businesses. Data for one of the small businesses you are to evaluate are shown at right. The data are the monthly average of last year and the monthly average this year. Determine the multifactor productivity with dollars as the common denominator for:

a) Last year.
b) This year.
c) Then determine the percent change in productivity for the monthly average last year versus the monthly average this year on a multifactor basis.

- *Labor:* $8 per hour
- *Capital:* 0.83% per month of investment
- *Energy:* $0.60 per BTU

	LAST YEAR	THIS YEAR
Production (dozen)	1,500	1,500
Labor (hours)	350	325
Capital investment ($)	15,000	18,000
Energy (BTU)	3,000	2,700

CASE STUDIES

Uber Technologies, Inc.

The $41 billion dollar firm Uber Technology, Inc., is unsettling the traditional taxi business. In over 40 countries and 240 markets around the world, Uber and similar companies are challenging the existing taxi business model. Uber and its growing list of competitors, Lyft, Sidecar, and Flywheel in America, and fledging rivals in Europe, Asia, and India, think their smart phone apps can provide a new and improved way to call a taxi. This disruptive business model uses an app to arrange rides between riders and cars, theoretically a nearby car, which is tracked by the app. The Uber system also provides a history of rides, routes, and fees as well as automatic billing. In addition, driver and rider are also allowed to evaluate each other. The services are increasingly popular, worrying established taxi services in cities from New York to Berlin, and from Rio de Janeiro to Bangkok. In many markets, Uber has proven to be the best, fastest, and most reliable way to find a ride. Consumers worldwide are endorsing the system as a replacement for the usual taxi ride. As the most established competitor in the field, Uber is putting more cars on the road, meaning faster pickup times, which should attract even more riders, which in turn attracts even more drivers, and so on. This growth cycle may speed the demise of the existing taxi businesses as well as provide substantial competition for firms with a technology-oriented model similar to Uber's.

The Uber business model initially attempts to bypass a number of regulations and at the same time offer better service and lower fees than traditional taxis. However, the traditional taxi industry is fighting back, and regulations are mounting. The regulations vary by country and city, but increasingly special licensing, testing, and inspections are being imposed. Part of the fee charged to riders does not go to the driver, but to Uber, as there are real overhead costs. Uber's costs, depending on the locale, may include insurance, background checks for drivers, vetting of vehicles, software development and maintenance, and centralized billing. How these overhead costs compare to traditional taxi costs is yet to be determined. Therefore, improved efficiency may not be immediately obvious, and contract provisions are significant (see www.uber.com/legal/usa/terms).

In addition to growing regulations, a complicating factor in the model is finding volunteer drivers at inopportune times. A sober driver and a clean car at 1:00 a.m. New Year's Eve does cost more. Consequently, Uber has introduced "surge" pricing. Surge pricing means a higher price, sometimes much higher, than normal. Surge pricing has proven necessary to ensure that cars and drivers are available at unusual times. These higher surge prices can be a shock to riders, making the "surge price" a contentious issue.

Discussion Questions

1. The market has decided that Uber and its immediate competitors are adding efficiency to our society. How is Uber providing that added efficiency?
2. Do you think the Uber model will work in the trucking industry?
3. In what other areas/industries might the Uber model be used?

Sources: Wall Street Journal (January 2, 2015), B3, and (Dec. 18, 2014), D1; and www.bloombergview.com/articles/2014-12-11/can-uber-rule-the-world.

Frito-Lay: Operations Management in Manufacturing

Video Case

Frito-Lay, the massive Dallas-based subsidiary of PepsiCo, has 38 plants and 48,000 employees in North America. Seven of Frito-Lay's 41 brands exceed $1 billion in sales: Fritos, Lay's, Cheetos, Ruffles, Tostitos, Doritos, and Walker's Potato Chips. Operations is the focus of the firm—from designing products for new markets, to meeting changing consumer preferences, to adjusting to rising commodity costs, to subtle issues involving flavors and preservatives—OM is under constant cost, time, quality, and market pressure. Here is a look at how the 10 decisions of OM are applied at this food processor.

In the food industry, product development kitchens experiment with new products, submit them to focus groups, and perform test marketing. Once the product specifications have been set, processes capable of meeting those specifications and the necessary quality standards are created. At Frito-Lay, quality begins at the farm, with onsite inspection of the potatoes used in Ruffles and the corn used in Fritos. Quality continues throughout the manufacturing process, with visual inspections and with statistical process control of product variables such as oil, moisture, seasoning, salt, thickness, and weight. Additional quality evaluations are conducted throughout shipment, receipt, production, packaging, and delivery.

The production process at Frito-Lay is designed for large volumes and small variety, using expensive special-purpose equipment, and with swift movement of material through the facility. Product-focused facilities, such as Frito-Lay's, typically have high capital costs, tight schedules, and rapid processing. Frito-Lay's facilities are located regionally to aid in the rapid delivery of products because freshness is a critical issue. Sanitary issues and necessarily fast processing of products put a premium on an efficient layout. Production lines are designed for balanced throughput and high utilization. Cross-trained workers, who handle a variety of production lines, have promotion paths identified for their particular skill set. The company rewards employees with medical, retirement, and education plans. Its turnover is very low.

The supply chain is integral to success in the food industry; vendors must be chosen with great care. Moreover, the finished food product is highly dependent on perishable raw materials. Consequently, the supply chain brings raw material (potatoes, corn, etc.) to the plant securely and rapidly to meet tight production schedules. For instance, from the time that potatoes are picked in St. Augustine, Florida, until they are unloaded at the Orlando plant, processed, packaged, and shipped from the plant is under 12 hours. The requirement for fresh product requires on-time, just-in-time deliveries combined with both low raw material and finished goods inventories. The continuous-flow nature of the specialized equipment in the production process permits little work-in-process inventory. The plants usually run 24/7. This means that there are four shifts of employees each week.

Tight scheduling to ensure the proper mix of fresh finished goods on automated equipment requires reliable systems and effective maintenance. Frito-Lay's workforce is trained to recognize problems early, and professional maintenance personnel are available on every shift. Downtime is very costly and can lead to late deliveries, making maintenance a high priority.

Discussion Questions*

1. From your knowledge of production processes and from the case and the video, identify how each of the 10 decisions of OM is applied at Frito-Lay.
2. How would you determine the productivity of the production process at Frito-Lay?
3. How are the 10 decisions of OM different when applied by the operations manager of a production process such as Frito-Lay versus a service organization such as Hard Rock Cafe (see the Hard Rock Cafe video case below)?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before addressing these questions.

Hard Rock Cafe: Operations Management in Services

Video Case

In its 45 years of existence, Hard Rock has grown from a modest London pub to a global power managing 150 cafes, 13 hotels/casinos, and live music venues. This puts Hard Rock firmly in the service industry—a sector that employs over 75% of the people in the U.S. Hard Rock moved its world headquarters to Orlando, Florida, in 1988 and has expanded to more than 40 locations throughout the U.S., serving over 100,000 meals each day. Hard Rock chefs are modifying the menu from classic American—burgers and chicken wings—to include higher-end items such as stuffed veal chops and lobster tails. Just as taste in music changes over time, so does Hard Rock Cafe, with new menus, layouts, memorabilia, services, and strategies.

At Orlando's Universal Studios, a traditional tourist destination, Hard Rock Cafe serves over 3,500 meals each day. The cafe employs about 400 people. Most are employed in the restaurant, but some work in the retail shop. Retail is now a standard and increasingly prominent feature in Hard Rock Cafes (since close to 48% of revenue comes from this source). Cafe employees include kitchen and waitstaff, hostesses, and bartenders. Hard Rock employees are not only competent in their job skills but are also passionate about music and have engaging personalities. Cafe staff is scheduled down to 15-minute intervals to meet seasonal and daily demand changes in the tourist environment of Orlando. Surveys are done on a regular basis to evaluate quality of food and service at the cafe. Scores are rated on a 1-to-7 scale, and if the score is not a 7, the food or service is a failure.

Hard Rock is adding a new emphasis on live music and is redesigning its restaurants to accommodate the changing tastes. Since Eric Clapton hung his guitar on the wall to mark his favorite bar stool, Hard Rock has become the world's leading collector and exhibitor of rock 'n' roll memorabilia, with changing exhibits at its cafes throughout the world. The collection includes 70,000 pieces, valued at $40 million. In keeping with the times, Hard Rock also maintains a Web site, www.hardrock.com, which receives over 100,000 hits per week, and a weekly cable television

program on VH1. Hard Rock's brand recognition, at 92%, is one of the highest in the world.

Discussion Questions*

1. From your knowledge of restaurants, from the video, from the *Global Company Profile* that opens this chapter, and from the case itself, identify how each of the 10 OM strategy decisions is applied at Hard Rock Cafe.
2. How would you determine the productivity of the kitchen staff and waitstaff at Hard Rock?
3. How are the 10 OM strategy decisions different when applied to the operations manager of a service operation such as Hard Rock versus an automobile company such as Ford Motor Company?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before addressing these questions.

- **Additional Case Study:** Visit MyOMLab for these case studies:
  National Air Express: Introduces the issue of productivity, productivity improvement, and measuring productivity.
  Zychol Chemicals Corp.: The production manager must prepare a productivity report, which includes multifactor analysis.

Endnotes

1. *Efficiency* means doing the job well—with a minimum of resources and waste. Note the distinction between being *efficient*, which implies doing the job well, and *effective*, which means doing the right thing. A job well done—say, by applying the 10 strategic decisions of operations management—helps us be *efficient*; developing and using the correct strategy helps us be *effective*.
2. U.S. Dept. of Labor, 2015: www.bls.gov/lpc/
3. The quality and time period are assumed to remain constant.

Chapter 1 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
WHAT IS OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT? (p. 42)	■ **Production**—The creation of goods and services ■ **Operations management (OM)**—Activities that relate to the creation of goods and services through the transformation of inputs to outputs	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4 **VIDEOS 1.1 and 1.2** OM at Hard Rock OM at Frito-Lay
ORGANIZING TO PRODUCE GOODS AND SERVICES (pp. 42–44)	All organizations perform three functions to create goods and services: **1.** *Marketing*, which generates demand **2.** *Production/operations,* which creates the product **3.** *Finance/accounting,* which tracks how well the organization is doing, pays the bills, and collects the money	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4
THE SUPPLY CHAIN (p. 44)	■ **Supply chain**—A global network of organizations and activities that supply a firm with goods and services	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4
WHY STUDY OM? (pp. 44–45)	We study OM for four reasons: **1.** To learn how people organize themselves for productive enterprise **2.** To learn how goods and services are produced **3.** To understand what operations managers do **4.** Because OM is a costly part of an organization	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.2
WHAT OPERATIONS MANAGERS DO (pp. 45–46)	Ten **OM strategic decisions** are required of operations managers: **1.** Design of goods and services **2.** Managing quality **3.** Process strategy **4.** Location strategies **5.** Layout strategies **6.** Human resources **7.** Supply chain management **8.** Inventory management **9.** Scheduling **10.** Maintenance About 40% of *all* jobs are in OM. Operations managers possess job titles such as plant manager, quality manager, process improvement consultant, and operations analyst.	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.4
THE HERITAGE OF OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT (pp. 46–48)	Significant events in modern OM can be classified into six eras: **1.** Early concepts (1776–1880)—Labor specialization (Smith, Babbage), standardized parts (Whitney) **2.** Scientific management (1880–1910)—Gantt charts (Gantt), motion and time studies (Gilbreth), process analysis (Taylor), queuing theory (Erlang) **3.** Mass production (1910–1980)—Assembly line (Ford/Sorensen), statistical sampling (Shewhart), economic order quantity (Harris), linear programming (Dantzig), PERT/CPM (DuPont), material requirements planning **4.** Lean production (1980–1995)—Just-in-time, computer-aided design, electronic data interchange, total quality management, Baldrige Award, empowerment, kanbans **5.** Mass customization (1995–2005)—Internet/e-commerce, enterprise resource planning, international quality standards, finite scheduling, supply-chain management, mass customization, build-to-order, radio frequency identification (RFID) **6.** Globalization era (2005–2020)—Global supply chains, growth of transnational organizations, instant communications, sustainability, ethics in a global work force, logistics and shipping	Concept Questions: 6.1–6.4
OPERATIONS FOR GOODS AND SERVICES (pp. 49–51)	■ **Services**—Economic activities that typically produce an intangible product (such as education, entertainment, lodging, government, financial, and health services). Almost all services and almost all goods are a mixture of a service and a tangible product. ■ **Service sector**—The segment of the economy that includes trade, financial, lodging, education, legal, medical, and other professional occupations. Services now constitute the largest economic sector in postindustrial societies. The huge productivity increases in agriculture and manufacturing have allowed more of our economic resources to be devoted to services. Many service jobs pay very well.	Concept Questions: 7.1–7.4

Chapter 1 *Rapid* Review *continued*

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
THE PRODUCTIVITY CHALLENGE (pp. 51–56)	■ **Productivity**—The ratio of outputs (goods and services) divided by one or more inputs (such as labor, capital, or management) High production means producing many units, while high productivity means producing units efficiently. Only through increases in productivity can the standard of living of a country improve. U.S. productivity has averaged a 2.5% increase per year for over a century. $$\text{Single-factor productivity} = \frac{\text{Units produced}}{\text{Input used}} \quad (1\text{-}1)$$ ■ **Single-factor productivity**—Indicates the ratio of goods and services produced (outputs) to one resource (input). ■ **Multifactor productivity**—Indicates the ratio of goods and services produced (outputs) to many or all resources (inputs). Multifactor productivity $$= \frac{\text{Output}}{\text{Labor} + \text{Material} + \text{Energy} + \text{Capital} + \text{Miscellaneous}} \quad (1\text{-}2)$$ Measurement problems with productivity include: (1) the quality may change, (2) external elements may interfere, and (3) precise units of measure may be lacking. ■ **Productivity variables**—The three factors critical to productivity improvement are labor (10%), capital (38%), and management (52%). ■ **Knowledge society**—A society in which much of the labor force has migrated from manual work to work based on knowledge	Concept Questions: 8.1–8.4 Problems: 1.1–1.17 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problems: 1.1, 1.2
CURRENT CHALLENGES IN OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT (pp. 46–57)	Some of the current challenges for operations managers include: ■ Global focus; international collaboration ■ Supply chain partnering; joint ventures; alliances ■ Sustainability; green products; recycle, reuse ■ Rapid product development; design collaboration ■ Mass customization; customized products ■ Lean operations; continuous improvement and elimination of waste	Concept Questions: 9.1–9.4
ETHICS, SOCIAL RESPONSIBILITY, AND SUSTAINABILITY (p. 57)	Among the many ethical challenges facing operations managers are (1) efficiently developing and producing safe, quality products; (2) maintaining a clean environment; (3) providing a safe workplace; and (4) honoring stakeholder commitments. ■ **Stakeholders**—Those with a vested interest in an organization	Concept Question: 10.1

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 1.1 The current challenges in operations management are:
- **a)** Globalization
- **b)** Supply-chain partnering
- **c)** Sustainability
- **d)** Lean operations
- **e)** All of the above

LO 1.2 Services often:
- **a)** are tangible.
- **b)** are standardized.
- **c)** are knowledge based.
- **d)** are low in customer interaction.
- **e)** have consistent product definition.

LO 1.3 Productivity:
- **a)** can use many factors as the numerator.
- **b)** is the same thing as production.
- **c)** increases at about 0.5% per year.
- **d)** is dependent upon labor, management, and capital.
- **e)** is the same thing as effectiveness.

LO 1.4 Stakeholders are those with a vested interest in an organization, including:
- **a)** customers,
- **b)** suppliers,
- **c)** owners,
- **d)** employees,
- **e)** all of the above.

LO 1.5 Multifactor productivity:
- **a)** remains constant.
- **b)** is never constant.
- **c)** usually uses substitutes as common variables for the factors of production.
- **d)** seldom uses labor as a factor.
- **e)** always uses management as a factor.

LO 1.6 Which of the following events are considered significant in the evolution of operations management:
- **a)** cost focus
- **b)** quality focus
- **c)** customization focus
- **d)** globalization focus
- **e)** all of the above

Answers: LO 1.1. e; LO 1.2. c; LO 1.3. d; LO 1.4. e; LO 1.5. c; LO 1.6. e.

The Global Environment and Operations Strategy

CHAPTER 2

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *Boeing*

- A Global View of Operations and Supply Chains *70*
- Developing Missions and Strategies *73*
- Achieving Competitive Advantage Through Operations *74*
- Issues in Operations Strategy *78*
- Strategy Development and Implementation *79*
- Strategic Planning, Core Competencies, and Outsourcing *82*
- Global Operations Strategy Options *87*

Alaska Airlines

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
Boeing

Boeing's Global Supply-Chain Strategy Yields Competitive Advantage

Boeing's strategy for its 787 Dreamliner is unique for its technologically advanced product design and vast global supply chain.

The Dreamliner incorporates the latest in a wide range of aerospace technologies, from airframe and engine design to super-lightweight titanium-graphite laminate and carbon-fiber composites. The electronic monitoring system that allows the airplane to report maintenance requirements in real time to ground-based computer systems is another product innovation. Boeing's collaboration with General Electric and Rolls-Royce has resulted in the development of more efficient engines and an emissions reduction of 20%. The advances in engine technology contribute as much as 8% of the increased fuel/payload efficiency of the new airplane, representing a nearly two-generation jump in technology.

Boeing's design group at its Everett, Washington, facility led an international team of aerospace companies in development of this state-of-the-art plane. Technologically advanced design, new manufacturing processes, and a committed international supply chain have helped Boeing and its partners achieve unprecedented levels of performance in design and manufacture.

Peter Carey/Alamy

Dan Lamont/Alamy

With the 787's state-of-the-art design, more spacious interior, and global suppliers, Boeing has garnered record sales worldwide.

Some of the International Suppliers of Boeing 787 Components

SUPPLIER	HQ COUNTRY	COMPONENT
Latecoere	France	Passenger doors
Labinel	France	Wiring
Dassault	France	Design and product life cycle management software
Messier-Bugatti	France	Electric brakes
Thales	France	Electrical power conversion system
Messier-Dowty	France	Landing gear structure
Diehl	Germany	Interior lighting
Cobham	UK	Fuel pumps and valves
Rolls-Royce	UK	Engines
Smiths Aerospace	UK	Central computer system
BAE Systems	UK	Electronics
Alenia Aeronautica	Italy	Upper center fuselage
Toray Industries	Japan	Carbon fiber for wing and tail units
Fuji Heavy Industries	Japan	Center wing box
Kawasaki Heavy Ind.	Japan	Forward fuselage, fixed sections of wing
Teijin Seiki	Japan	Hydraulic actuators
Mitsubishi Heavy Ind.	Japan	Wing box
Chengdu Aircraft	China	Rudder
Hafei Aviation	China	Parts
Korean Airlines	South Korea	Wingtips
Saab	Sweden	Cargo and access doors

Tim Kelly/Reuters

State-of-the-art composite sections of the 787 are built around the world and shipped to Boeing for final assembly.

Copyright Boeing

Components from Boeing's worldwide supply chain come together on assembly lines in Everett, Washington, and Charleston, South Carolina. Although components come from throughout the world, about 35% of the 787 structure comes from Japanese companies.

The 787 is global not only because it has a range of 8,300 miles, but also because it is built all over the world. With a huge financial commitment of over $5 billion, Boeing needed partners. The global nature of both the technology and the aircraft market meant finding exceptional engineering talent and suppliers, wherever they might be. It also meant developing a culture of collaboration and integration with firms willing to step up to the risk associated with this revolutionary and very expensive new product.

State-of-the-art technology, multinational aircraft certifications, the cross-culture nature of the communications, and logistical challenges all added to the supply chain risk. In the end, Boeing accepted the challenge of teaming with more than 300 suppliers in over a dozen countries. Twenty of these suppliers developed technologies, design concepts, and major systems for the 787. Some of them are shown in the table. The partners brought commitment to the table. The expectation is that countries that have a stake in the Dreamliner are more likely to buy from Boeing than from its European competitor, Airbus.

Japanese companies are producing over 35% of the project, and Italy's Alenia Aeronautica is building an additional 10% of the plane.

The innovative Dreamliner, with its global range and worldwide supply chain, is setting new levels of operational efficiency. As a result, it is the fastest-selling commercial jet in history with over 1,100 planes sold. Boeing's Dreamliner reflects the global nature of business in the 21st century.

Copyright Boeing

Boeing's collaborative technology enables a "virtual workspace" that allows Everett, Washington-based engineers, as well as partners in Australia, Japan, Italy, Canada, and across the United States, to make concurrent design changes to the airplane in real time. Digitally designing, building, and testing before production not only reduces design time and errors, but also improves efficiencies in component manufacturing and assembly.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO 2.1 ***Define*** mission and strategy 74

LO 2.2 ***Identify*** and explain three strategic approaches to competitive advantage 74

LO 2.3 ***Understand*** the significance of key success factors and core competencies 80

LO 2.4 ***Use*** factor rating to evaluate both country and outsource providers 85

LO 2.5 ***Identify*** and explain four global operations strategy options 87

A Global View of Operations and Supply Chains

Today's successful operations manager has a global view of operations strategy. Since the early 1990s, nearly 3 billion people in developing countries have overcome the cultural, religious, ethnic, and political barriers that constrain productivity. And now they are all players on the global economic stage. As these barriers disappear, simultaneous advances are being made in technology, reliable shipping, and inexpensive communication. These changes mean that, increasingly, firms find their customers and suppliers located around the world. The unsurprising result is the growth of world trade (see Figure 2.1), global capital markets, and the international movement of people. This means increasing economic integration and interdependence of countries—in a word, globalization. In response, organizations are hastily extending their distribution channels and supply chains globally. The result is innovative strategies where firms compete not just with their own expertise but with the talent in their entire global supply chain. For instance:

- Boeing is competitive because both its sales and supply chain are worldwide.
- Italy's Benetton moves inventory to stores around the world faster than its competition with rapid communication and by building exceptional flexibility into design, production, and distribution.
- Sony purchases components from a supply chain that extends to Thailand, Malaysia, and elsewhere around the world for assembly of its electronic products, which in turn are distributed around the world.
- Volvo, considered a Swedish company, was purchased by a Chinese company, Geely. But the current Volvo S40 is assembled in Belgium, South Africa, Malaysia, and China, on a platform shared with the Mazda 3 (built in Japan) and the Ford Focus (built in Europe).
- China's Haier (pronounced "higher") is now producing compact refrigerators (it has one-third of the U.S. market) and refrigerated wine cabinets (it has half of the U.S. market) in South Carolina.

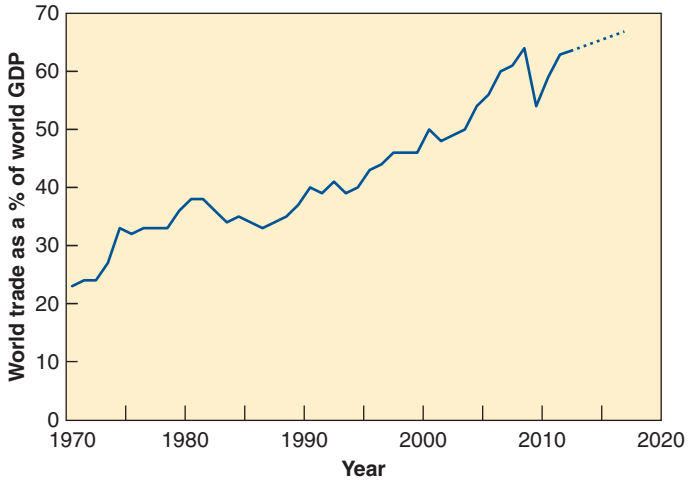


Figure **2.1**

Growth of World Trade as a Percent of World GDP

Sources: World Bank; World Trade Organization; and IMF.

Globalization means customers, talent, and suppliers are worldwide. The new standards of global competitiveness impact quality, variety, customization, convenience, timeliness, and cost. Globalization strategies contribute efficiency, adding value to products and services, but they also complicate the operations manager's job. Complexity, risk, and competition are intensified, forcing companies to adjust for a shrinking world.

We have identified six reasons domestic business operations decide to change to some form of international operation. They are:

1. Improve the supply chain.
2. Reduce costs and exchange rate risk.
3. Improve operations.
4. Understand markets.
5. Improve products.
6. Attract and retain global talent.

Let us examine, in turn, each of the six reasons.

Improve the Supply Chain The supply chain can often be improved by locating facilities in countries where unique resources are available. These resources may be human resource expertise, low-cost labor, or raw material. For example, auto-styling studios from throughout the world have migrated to the auto mecca of southern California to ensure the necessary expertise in contemporary auto design. Similarly, world athletic shoe production has migrated from South Korea to Guangzhou, China; this location takes advantage of the low-cost labor and production competence in a city where 40,000 people work making athletic shoes for the world. And a perfume manufacturer wants a presence in Grasse, France, where much of the world's perfume essences are prepared from the flowers of the Mediterranean.

Reduce Costs and Exchange Rate Risk Many international operations seek to reduce risks associated with changing currency values (exchange rates) as well as take advantage of the tangible opportunities to reduce their direct costs. (See the *OM in Action* box "U.S. Cartoon Production at Home in Manila.") Less stringent government regulations on a wide variety of operations practices (e.g., environmental control, health and safety) can also reduce indirect costs.

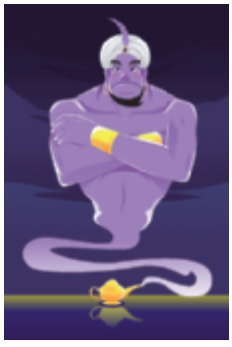
Shifting low-skilled jobs to another country has several potential advantages. First, and most obviously, the firm may reduce costs. Second, moving the lower-skilled jobs to a lower-cost location frees higher-cost workers for more valuable tasks. Third, reducing wage costs allows the savings to be invested in improved products and facilities (and the retraining of existing workers, if necessary) at the home location. Finally, having facilities in countries with different currencies can allow firms to finesse currency risk (and related costs) as economic conditions dictate.

OM in Action U.S. Cartoon Production at Home in Manila

Fred Flintstone is not from Bedrock. He is actually from Manila, capital of the Philippines. So are Tom and Jerry, Aladdin, and Donald Duck. More than 90% of American television cartoons are produced in Asia and India, with the Philippines leading the way. With their natural advantage of English as an official language and a strong familiarity with U.S. culture, animation companies in Manila now employ more than 1,700 people. Filipinos understand Western culture, and "you need to have a group of artists that can understand the humor that goes with it," says Bill Dennis, a Hanna-Barbera executive.

Major studios like Disney, Marvel, Warner Brothers, and Hanna-Barbera send *storyboards*—cartoon action outlines—and voice tracks to the Philippines. Artists there draw, paint, and film about 20,000 sketches for a 30-minute episode. The cost of $130,000 to produce an episode in the Philippines compares with $160,000 in Korea and $500,000 in the United States.

Sources: Animation Insider (March 30, 2011); *The New York Times* (February 26, 2004): and *The Wall Street Journal* (August 9, 2005).



artisticco/Fotolia

Maquiladoras
Mexican factories located along the U.S.–Mexico border that receive preferential tariff treatment.

World Trade Organization (WTO)
An international organization that promotes world trade by lowering barriers to the free flow of goods across borders.

North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA)
A free trade agreement between Canada, Mexico, and the United States.

European Union (EU)
A European trade group that has 28 member states.

The United States and Mexico have created **maquiladoras** (free trade zones) that allow manufacturers to cut their costs by paying only for the value added by Mexican workers. If a U.S. manufacturer, such as Caterpillar, brings a $1,000 engine to a maquiladora operation for assembly work costing $200, tariff duties will be charged only on the $200 of work performed in Mexico.

Trade agreements also help reduce tariffs and thereby reduce the cost of operating facilities in foreign countries. The **World Trade Organization (WTO)** has helped reduce tariffs from 40% in 1940 to less than 3% today. Another important trade agreement is the **North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA)**. NAFTA seeks to phase out all trade and tariff barriers among Canada, Mexico, and the U.S. Other trade agreements that are accelerating global trade include APEC (the Pacific Rim countries), SEATO (Australia, New Zealand, Japan, Hong Kong, South Korea, New Guinea, and Chile), MERCOSUR (Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay, and Uruguay), and CAFTA (Central America, Dominican Republic, and United States).

Another trading group is the **European Union (EU)**.[1] The European Union has reduced trade barriers among the participating European nations through standardization and a common currency, the euro. However, this major U.S. trading partner, with over 500 million people, is also placing some of the world's most restrictive conditions on products sold in the EU. Everything from recycling standards to automobile bumpers to hormone-free farm products must meet EU standards, complicating international trade.

Improve Operations Operations learn from better understanding of management innovations in different countries. For instance, the Japanese have improved inventory management, the Germans are aggressively using robots, and the Scandinavians have contributed to improved ergonomics throughout the world.

Another reason to have international operations is to reduce response time to meet customers' changing product and service requirements. Customers who purchase goods and services from U.S. firms are increasingly located in foreign countries. Providing them with quick and adequate service is often improved by locating facilities in their home countries.

Understand Markets Because international operations require interaction with foreign customers, suppliers, and other competitive businesses, international firms inevitably learn about opportunities for new products and services. Europe led the way with cell phone innovations, and then the Japanese and Indians led with cell phone fads. Knowledge of markets not only helps firms understand where the market is going but also helps firms diversify their customer base, add production flexibility, and smooth the business cycle.

Another reason to go into foreign markets is the opportunity to expand the *life cycle* (i.e., stages a product goes through; see Chapter 5) of an existing product. While some products in the U.S. are in a "mature" stage of their product life cycle, they may represent state-of-the-art products in less-developed countries.

Improve Products Learning does not take place in isolation. Firms serve themselves and their customers well when they remain open to the free flow of ideas. For example, Toyota and BMW will manage joint research and share development costs on battery research for the next generation of green cars. Their relationship also provides Toyota with BMW's highly regarded diesel engines for its European market, where diesel-powered vehicles make up more than half of the market. The payoff is reduced risk in battery development for both, a state-of-the-art diesel engine for Toyota in Europe, and lower per-unit diesel engine cost for BMW. Similarly, international learning in operations is taking place as South Korea's Samsung and Germany's Robert Bosch join to produce lithium-ion batteries to the benefit of both.

Attract and Retain Global Talent Global organizations can attract and retain better employees by offering more employment opportunities. They need people in all functional areas and areas of expertise worldwide. Global firms can recruit and retain good employees because they provide both greater growth opportunities and insulation against

Kraipit Phanvut/Sipa Press

A worldwide strategy places added burdens on operations management. Because of economic and lifestyle differences, designers must target products to each market. For instance, clothes washers sold in northern countries must spin-dry clothes much better than those in warmer climates, where consumers are likely to line-dry them. Similarly, as shown here, Whirlpool refrigerators sold in Bangkok are manufactured in bright colors because they are often put in living rooms.

unemployment during times of economic downturn. During economic downturns in one country or continent, a global firm has the means to relocate unneeded personnel to more prosperous locations.

So, to recap, successfully achieving a competitive advantage in our shrinking world means maximizing all the possible opportunities, from tangible to intangible, that international operations can offer.

Cultural and Ethical Issues

While there are great forces driving firms toward globalization, many challenges remain. One of these challenges is reconciling differences in social and cultural behavior. With issues ranging from bribery, to child labor, to the environment, managers sometimes do not know how to respond when operating in a different culture. What one country's culture deems acceptable may be considered unacceptable or illegal in another. It is not by chance that there are fewer female managers in the Middle East than in India.

In the last decade, changes in international laws, agreements, and codes of conduct have been applied to define ethical behavior among managers around the world. The WTO, for example, helps to make uniform the protection of both governments and industries from foreign firms that engage in unethical conduct. Even on issues where significant differences between cultures exist, as in the area of bribery or the protection of intellectual property, global uniformity is slowly being accepted by most nations.

Despite cultural and ethical differences, we live in a period of extraordinary mobility of capital, information, goods, and even people. We can expect this to continue. The financial sector, the telecommunications sector, and the logistics infrastructure of the world are healthy institutions that foster efficient and effective use of capital, information, and goods. Globalization, with all its opportunities and risks, is here. It must be embraced as managers develop their missions and strategies.

Developing Missions and Strategies

STUDENT TIP

Getting an education and managing an organization both require a mission and strategy.

An effective operations management effort must have a *mission* so it knows where it is going and a *strategy* so it knows how to get there. This is the case for a small domestic organization as well as a large international organization.

Mission

Mission
The purpose or rationale for an organization's existence.

LO 2.1 *Define* mission and strategy

Economic success, indeed survival, is the result of identifying missions to satisfy a customer's needs and wants. We define the organization's **mission** as its purpose—what it will contribute to society. Mission statements provide boundaries and focus for organizations and the concept around which the firm can rally. The mission states the rationale for the organization's existence. Developing a good strategy is difficult, but it is much easier if the mission has been well defined. Figure 2.2 provides examples of mission statements.

Once an organization's mission has been decided, each functional area within the firm determines its supporting mission. By *functional area* we mean the major disciplines required by the firm, such as marketing, finance/accounting, and production/operations. Missions for each function are developed to support the firm's overall mission. Then within that function lower-level supporting missions are established for the OM functions. Figure 2.3 provides such a hierarchy of sample missions.

Strategy

Strategy
How an organization expects to achieve its missions and goals.

LO 2.2 *Identify* and explain three strategic approaches to competitive advantage

VIDEO 2.1
Operations Strategy at Regal Marine

With the mission established, strategy and its implementation can begin. **Strategy** is an organization's action plan to achieve the mission. Each functional area has a strategy for achieving its mission and for helping the organization reach the overall mission. These strategies exploit opportunities and strengths, neutralize threats, and avoid weaknesses. In the following sections, we will describe how strategies are developed and implemented.

Firms achieve missions in three conceptual ways: (1) differentiation, (2) cost leadership, and (3) response. This means operations managers are called on to deliver goods and services that are (1) *better*, or at least different, (2) *cheaper*, and (3) more *responsive*. Operations managers translate these *strategic concepts* into tangible tasks to be accomplished. Any one or combination of these three strategic concepts can generate a system that has a unique advantage over competitors.

Achieving Competitive Advantage Through Operations

Competitive advantage
The creation of a unique advantage over competitors.

Each of the three strategies provides an opportunity for operations managers to achieve competitive advantage. **Competitive advantage** implies the creation of a system that has a unique advantage over competitors. The idea is to create customer value in an efficient and sustainable way. Pure forms of these strategies may exist, but operations managers will more likely

Figure **2.2**

Mission Statements for Three Organizations

Source: Mission statement from Merck. Copyright © by Merck & Co., Inc. Reprinted with permission.

Merck
The mission of Merck is to provide society with superior products and services—innovations and solutions that improve the quality of life and satisfy customer needs—to provide employees with meaningful work and advancement opportunities and investors with a superior rate of return.
PepsiCo
Our mission is to be the world's premier consumer products company focused on convenient foods and beverages. We seek to produce financial rewards to investors as we provide opportunities for growth and enrichment to our employees, our business partners and the communities in which we operate. And in everything we do, we strive for honesty, fairness and integrity.
Arnold Palmer Hospital
Arnold Palmer Hospital for Children provides state of the art, family-centered healthcare focused on restoring the joy of childhood in an environment of compassion, healing, and hope.

Sample Company Mission	
To manufacture and service an innovative, growing, and profitable worldwide microwave communications business that exceeds our customers' expectations.	
Sample Operations Management Mission	
To produce products consistent with the company's mission as the worldwide low-cost manufacturer.	
Sample OM Department Missions	
Product design	To design and produce products and services with outstanding quality and inherent customer value.
Quality management	To attain the exceptional value that is consistent with our company mission and marketing objectives by close attention to design, supply chain, production, and field service opportunities.
Process design	To determine, design, and develop the production process and equipment that will be compatible with low-cost product, high quality, and a good quality of work life.
Location	To locate, design, and build efficient and economical facilities that will yield high value to the company, its employees, and the community.
Layout design	To achieve, through skill, imagination, and resourcefulness in layout and work methods, production effectiveness and efficiency while supporting a high quality of work life.
Human resources	To provide a good quality of work life, with well-designed, safe, rewarding jobs, stable employment, and equitable pay, in exchange for outstanding individual contribution from employees at all levels.
Supply-chain management	To collaborate with suppliers to develop innovative products from stable, effective, and efficient sources of supply.
Inventory	To achieve low investment in inventory consistent with high customer service levels and high facility utilization.
Scheduling	To achieve high levels of throughput and timely customer delivery through effective scheduling.
Maintenance	To achieve high utilization of facilities and equipment by effective preventive maintenance and prompt repair of facilities and equipment.

Figure 2.3

Sample Missions for a Company, the Operations Function, and Major OM Departments

be called on to implement some combination of them. Let us briefly look at how managers achieve competitive advantage via *differentiation*, *low cost*, and *response*.

Competing on Differentiation

STUDENT TIP

For many organizations, the operations function provides *the* competitive advantage.

Safeskin Corporation is number one in latex exam gloves because it has differentiated itself and its products. It did so by producing gloves that were designed to prevent allergic reactions about which doctors were complaining. When other glove makers caught up, Safeskin developed hypoallergenic gloves. Then it added texture to its gloves. Then it developed a synthetic disposable glove for those allergic to latex—always staying ahead of the competition. Safeskin's strategy is to develop a reputation for designing and producing reliable state-of-the-art gloves, thereby differentiating itself.

Differentiation is concerned with providing *uniqueness*. A firm's opportunities for creating uniqueness are not located within a particular function or activity but can arise in virtually everything the firm does. Moreover, because most products include some service, and most services

Differentiation
Distinguishing the offerings of an organization in a way that the customer perceives as adding value.

include some product, the opportunities for creating this uniqueness are limited only by imagination. Indeed, **differentiation** should be thought of as going beyond both physical characteristics and service attributes to encompass everything about the product or service that influences the value that the customers derive from it. Therefore, effective operations managers assist in defining everything about a product or service that will influence the potential value to the customer. This may be the convenience of a broad product line, product features, or a service related to the product. Such services can manifest themselves through convenience (location of distribution centers, stores, or branches), training, product delivery and installation, or repair and maintenance services.

Experience differentiation
Engaging a customer with a product through imaginative use of the five senses, so the customer "experiences" the product.

In the service sector, one option for extending product differentiation is through an *experience*. Differentiation by experience in services is a manifestation of the growing "experience economy." The idea of **experience differentiation** is to engage the customer—to use people's five senses so they become immersed, or even an active participant, in the product. Disney does this with the Magic Kingdom. People no longer just go on a ride; they are immersed in the Magic Kingdom—surrounded by dynamic visual and sound experiences that complement the physical ride. Some rides further engage the customer with changing air flow and smells, as well as having them steer the ride or shoot at targets or villains. Even movie theaters are moving in this direction with surround sound, moving seats, changing "smells," and mists of "rain," as well as multimedia inputs to story development.

VIDEO 2.2
Hard Rock's Global Strategy

Theme restaurants, such as Hard Rock Cafe, likewise differentiate themselves by providing an "experience." Hard Rock engages the customer with classic rock music, big-screen rock videos, memorabilia, and staff who can tell stories. In many instances, a full-time guide is available to explain the displays, and there is always a convenient retail store so the guest can take home a tangible part of the experience. The result is a "dining experience" rather than just a meal. In a less dramatic way, both Starbucks and your local supermarket deliver an experience when they provide music and the aroma of fresh coffee or freshly baked bread.

Competing on Cost

Southwest Airlines has been a consistent moneymaker while other U.S. airlines have lost billions. Southwest has done this by fulfilling a need for low-cost and short-hop flights. Its operations strategy has included use of secondary airports and terminals, first-come, first-served seating, few fare options, smaller crews flying more hours, snacks-only or no-meal flights, and no downtown ticket offices.

In addition, and less obviously, Southwest has very effectively matched capacity to demand and effectively utilized this capacity. It has done this by designing a route structure that matches the capacity of its Boeing 737, the only plane in its fleet. Second, it achieves more air miles than other airlines through faster turnarounds—its planes are on the ground less.

One driver of a low-cost strategy is a facility that is effectively utilized. Southwest and others with low-cost strategies understand this and use financial resources effectively. Identifying the optimum size (and investment) allows firms to spread overhead costs, providing a cost advantage. For instance, Walmart continues to pursue its low-cost strategy with superstores, open 24 hours a day. For 20 years, it has successfully grabbed market share. Walmart has driven down store overhead costs, shrinkage, and distribution costs. Its rapid transportation of goods, reduced warehousing costs, and direct shipment from manufacturers have resulted in high inventory turnover and made it a low-cost leader.

Likewise, Franz Colruyt, a Belgian discount food retailer, is also an aggressive cost cutter. Colruyt cuts overhead by using converted factory warehouses, movie theaters, and garages as outlets. Customers find no background music, shopping bags, or bright lights: all have been eliminated to cut costs. Walmart and Colruyt are winning with a low-cost strategy.

Low-cost leadership
Achieving maximum value, as perceived by the customer.

Low-cost leadership entails achieving maximum *value* as defined by your customer. It requires examining each of the 10 OM decisions in a relentless effort to drive down costs while meeting customer expectations of value. A low-cost strategy does *not* imply low value or low quality.

Competing on Response

Response
A set of values related to rapid, flexible, and reliable performance.

The third strategy option is response. Response is often thought of as *flexible* response, but it also refers to *reliable* and *quick* response. Indeed, we define **response** as including the entire range of values related to timely product development and delivery, as well as reliable scheduling and flexible performance.

Flexible response may be thought of as the ability to match changes in a marketplace where design innovations and volumes fluctuate substantially.

Hewlett-Packard is an exceptional example of a firm that has demonstrated flexibility in both design and volume changes in the volatile world of personal computers. HP's products often have a life cycle of months, and volume and cost changes during that brief life cycle are dramatic. However, HP has been successful at institutionalizing the ability to change products and volume to respond to dramatic changes in product design and costs—thus building a *sustainable competitive advantage*.

The second aspect of response is the *reliability* of scheduling. One way the German machine industry has maintained its competitiveness despite having the world's highest labor costs is through reliable response. This response manifests itself in reliable scheduling. German machine firms have meaningful schedules—and they perform to these schedules. Moreover, the results of these schedules are communicated to the customer, and the customer can, in turn, rely on them. Consequently, the competitive advantage generated through reliable response has value to the end customer.

The third aspect of response is *quickness*. Johnson Electric Holdings, Ltd., with headquarters in Hong Kong, makes 83 million tiny motors each month. The motors go in cordless tools, household appliances, and personal care items such as hair dryers; dozens are found in each automobile. Johnson's major competitive advantage is speed: speed in product development, speed in production, and speed in delivery.

Whether it is a production system at Johnson Electric or a pizza delivered in 5 minutes by Pizza Hut, the operations manager who develops systems that respond quickly can have a competitive advantage.

In practice, differentiation, low cost, and response can increase productivity and generate a sustainable competitive advantage. Proper implementation of the ten decisions by operations managers (see Figure 2.4) will allow these advantages to be achieved.

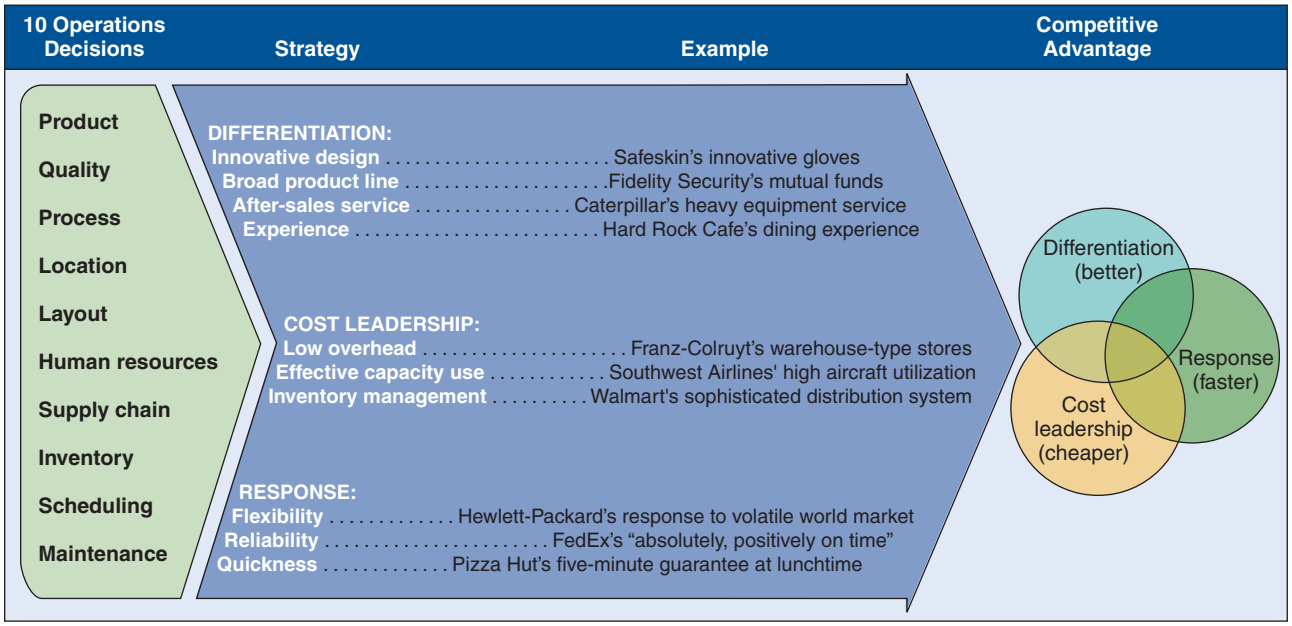


Figure **2.4**

Achieving Competitive Advantage Through Operations

Response strategy wins orders at Super Fast Pizza. Using a wireless connection, orders are transmitted to $20,000 kitchens in vans. The driver, who works solo, receives a printed order, goes to the kitchen area, pulls premade pizzas from the cooler, and places them in the oven—it takes about 1 minute. The driver then delivers the pizza—sometimes even arriving before the pizza is ready.

Darren Hauck/AP Images

Issues in Operations Strategy

Resources view
A method managers use to evaluate the resources at their disposal and manage or alter them to achieve competitive advantage.

Value-chain analysis
A way to identify those elements in the product/service chain that uniquely add value.

Five forces model
A method of analyzing the five forces in the competitive environment.

Whether the OM strategy is differentiation, cost, or response (as shown in Figure 2.4), OM is a critical player. Therefore, prior to establishing and attempting to implement a strategy, some alternate perspectives may be helpful. One perspective is to take a **resources view**. This means thinking in terms of the financial, physical, human, and technological resources available and ensuring that the potential strategy is compatible with those resources. Another perspective is Porter's value-chain analysis.[2] **Value-chain analysis** is used to identify activities that represent strengths, or potential strengths, and may be opportunities for developing competitive advantage. These are areas where the firm adds its unique *value* through product research, design, human resources, supply-chain management, process innovation, or quality management. Porter also suggests analysis of competitors via what he calls his **five forces model**.[3] These potential competing forces are immediate rivals, potential entrants, customers, suppliers, and substitute products.

In addition to the competitive environment, the operations manager needs to understand that the firm is operating in a system with many other external factors. These factors range from economic, to legal, to cultural. They influence strategy development and execution and require constant scanning of the environment.

The firm itself is also undergoing constant change. Everything from resources, to technology, to product life cycles is in flux. Consider the significant changes required within the firm as its products move from introduction, to growth, to maturity, and to decline (see Figure 2.5). These internal changes, combined with external changes, require strategies that are dynamic.

In this chapter's *Global Company Profile*, Boeing provides an example of how strategy must change as technology and the environment change. Boeing can now build planes from carbon fiber, using a global supply chain. Like many other OM strategies, Boeing's strategy has changed with technology and globalization. Microsoft has also had to adapt quickly to a changing environment. Faster processors, new computer languages, changing customer preferences, increased security issues, the Internet, the cloud, and Google have all driven changes at Microsoft. These forces have moved Microsoft's product strategy from operating systems to office products, to Internet service provider, and now to integrator of computers, cell phones, games, and television via the cloud.

The more thorough the analysis and understanding of both the external and internal factors, the more likely that a firm can find the optimum use of its resources. Once a firm understands itself and the environment, a SWOT analysis, which we discuss next, is in order.

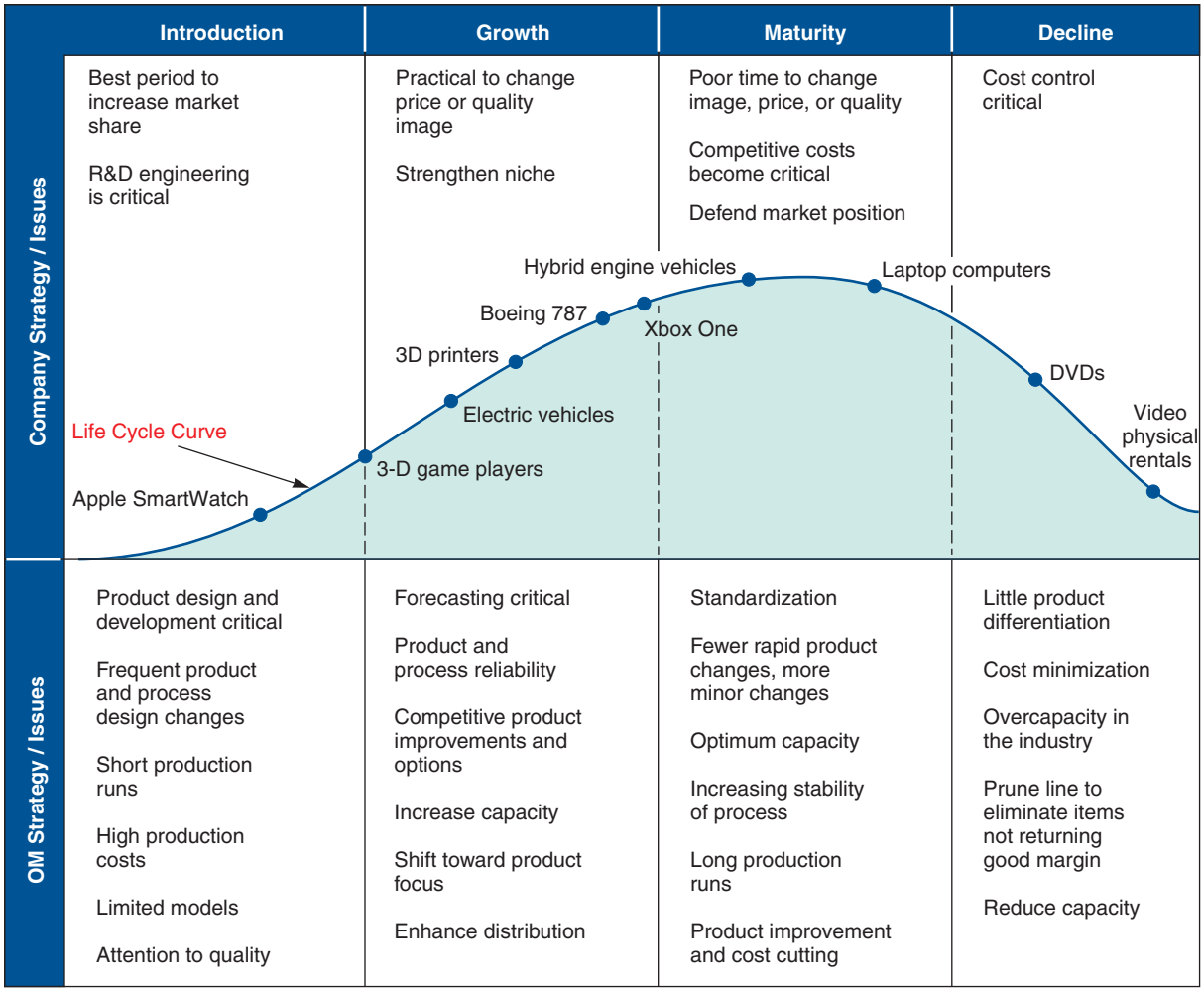


Figure **2.5**

Strategy and Issues During a Product's Life

Strategy Development and Implementation

A **SWOT analysis** is a formal review of internal strengths and weaknesses and external opportunities and threats. Beginning with SWOT analyses, organizations position themselves, through their strategy, to have a competitive advantage. A firm may have excellent design skills or great talent at identifying outstanding locations. However, it may recognize limitations of its manufacturing process or in finding good suppliers. The idea is to maximize opportunities and minimize threats in the environment while maximizing the advantages of the organization's strengths and minimizing the weaknesses. Any preconceived ideas about mission are then reevaluated to ensure they are consistent with the SWOT analysis. Subsequently, a strategy for achieving the mission is developed. This strategy is continually evaluated against the value provided customers and competitive realities. The process is shown in Figure 2.6. From this process, key success factors are identified.

STUDENT TIP

A SWOT analysis provides an excellent model for evaluating a strategy.

SWOT analysis

A method of determining internal strengths and weaknesses and external opportunities and threats.

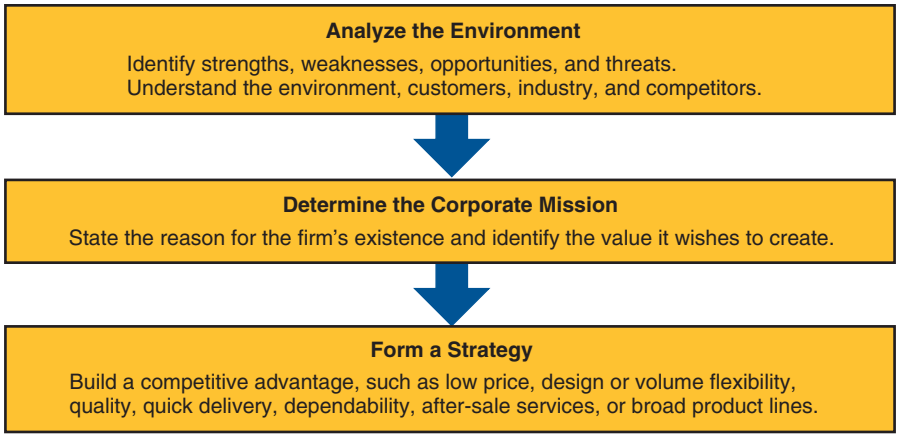
Key Success Factors and Core Competencies

Because no firm does everything exceptionally well, a successful strategy requires determining the firm's key success factors and core competencies. **Key success factors (KSFs)** are those activities that are necessary for a firm to achieve its goals. Key success factors can be so significant

Key success factors (KSFs)

Activities or factors that are *key* to achieving competitive advantage.

Figure 2.6
Strategy Development Process



Core competencies
A set of skills, talents, and capabilities in which a firm is particularly strong.

that a firm must get them right to survive. A KSF for McDonald's, for example, is layout. Without an effective drive-through and an efficient kitchen, McDonald's cannot be successful. KSFs are often necessary, but not sufficient for competitive advantage. On the other hand, **core competencies** are the set of unique skills, talents, and capabilities that a firm does at a world-class standard. They allow a firm to set itself apart and develop a competitive advantage. Organizations that prosper identify their core competencies and nurture them. While McDonald's KSFs may include layout, its core competency may be consistency and quality. Honda Motors' core competence is gas-powered engines—engines for automobiles, motorcycles, lawn mowers, generators, snow blowers, and more. The idea is to build KSFs and core competencies that provide a competitive advantage and support a successful strategy and mission. A core competency may be the ability to perform the KSFs or a combination of KSFs. The operations manager begins this inquiry by asking:

LO 2.3 *Understand* the significance of key success factors and core competencies

- "What tasks must be done particularly well for a given strategy to succeed?"
- "Which activities provide a competitive advantage?"
- "Which elements contain the highest likelihood of failure, and which require additional commitment of managerial, monetary, technological, and human resources?"

Only by identifying and strengthening key success factors and core competencies can an organization achieve sustainable competitive advantage. In this text we focus on the 10 strategic OM decisions that typically include the KSFs. These decisions, plus major decision areas for marketing and finance, are shown in Figure 2.7.

Honda's core competence is the design and manufacture of gas-powered engines. This competence has allowed Honda to become a leader in the design and manufacture of a wide range of gas-powered products. Tens of millions of these products are produced and shipped around the world.

Automobiles

Julie Lucht/Shutterstock

Generators

American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

Motorcycles

Courtesy of www.HondaNews.com

Water Pumps

American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

Marine Motors

American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

Race Cars

American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

4-Wheel Scooters

American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

Snow Blowers

American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

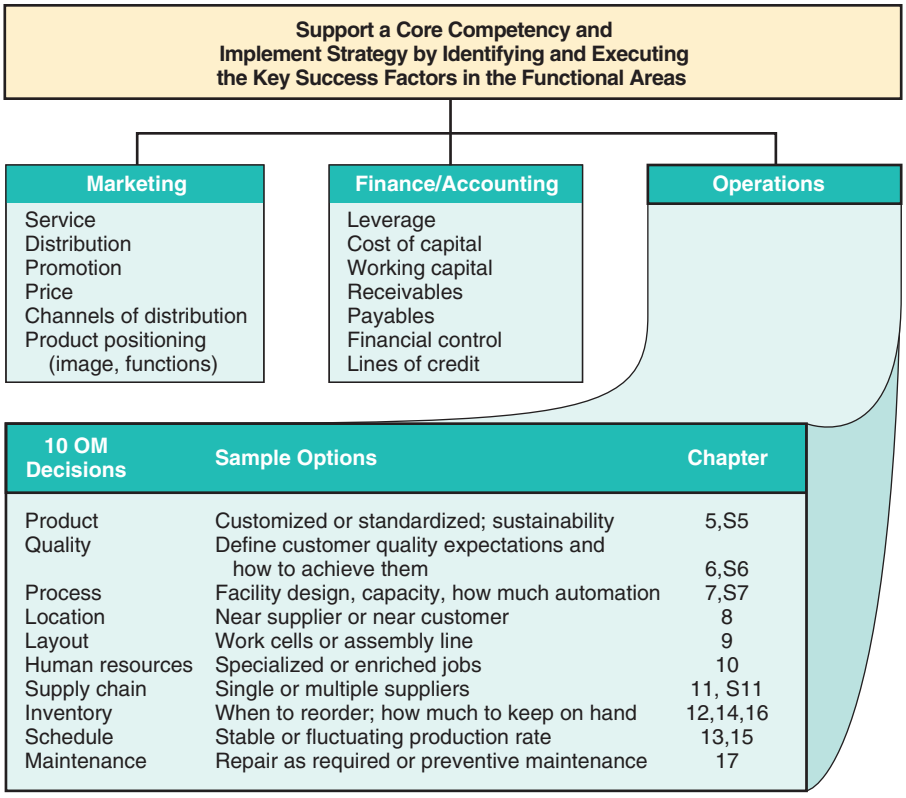


Figure 2.7

Implement Strategy by Identifying and Executing Key Success Factors That Support Core Competencies

STUDENT TIP

These 10 decisions are used to implement a specific strategy and yield a competitive advantage.

Integrating OM with Other Activities

Whatever the KSFs and core competencies, they must be supported by the related activities. One approach to identifying the activities is an **activity map**, which links competitive advantage, KSFs, and supporting activities. For example, Figure 2.8 shows how Southwest Airlines, whose core competency is operations, built a set of integrated activities to support its low-cost competitive advantage. Notice how the KSFs support operations and in turn are supported by other activities. The activities fit together and reinforce each other. In this way, all of the areas support the company's objectives. For example, short-term scheduling in the airline industry is dominated by volatile customer travel patterns. Day-of-week preference, holidays, seasonality, college schedules, and so on all play roles in changing flight schedules. Consequently, airline scheduling, although an OM activity, is tied to marketing. Effective scheduling in the trucking industry is reflected in the amount of time trucks travel loaded. But maximizing the time trucks travel loaded requires the integration of information from deliveries completed, pickups pending, driver availability, truck maintenance, and customer priority. Success requires integration of all of these activities.

Activity map

A graphical link of competitive advantage, KSFs, and supporting activities.

The better the activities are integrated and reinforce each other, the more sustainable the competitive advantage. By focusing on enhancing its core competence and KSFs with a supporting set of activities, firms such as Southwest Airlines have built successful strategies.

Building and Staffing the Organization

Once a strategy, KSFs, and the necessary integration have been identified, the second step is to group the necessary activities into an organizational structure. Then, managers must staff the organization with personnel who will get the job done. The manager works with subordinate managers to build plans, budgets, and programs that will successfully implement strategies that achieve missions. Firms tackle this organization of the operations function in a variety of

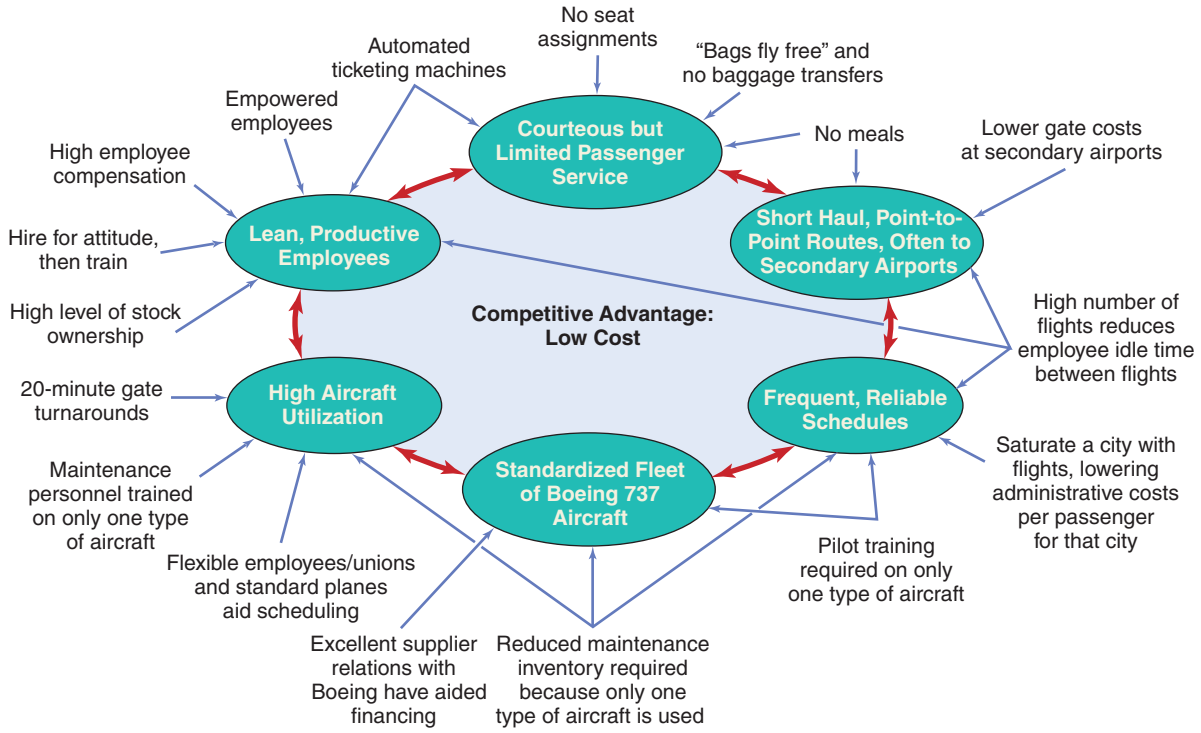


Figure **2.8**

Activity Mapping of Southwest Airlines' Low-Cost Competitive Advantage

To achieve a low-cost competitive advantage, Southwest has identified a number of key success factors (connected by red arrows) and support activities (shown by blue arrows). As this figure indicates, Southwest's low-cost strategy is highly dependent on a very well-run operations function.

ways. The organization charts shown in Chapter 1 (Figure 1.1) indicate the way some firms have organized to perform the required activities. *The operations manager's job is to implement an OM strategy, provide competitive advantage, and increase productivity.*

Implementing the 10 Strategic OM Decisions

As mentioned earlier, the implementation of the 10 strategic OM decisions is influenced by a variety of issues—from missions and strategy to key success factors and core competencies—while addressing such issues as product mix, product life cycle, and competitive environment. Because each product brings its own mix of attributes, the importance and method of implementation of the 10 strategic OM decisions will vary. Throughout this text, we discuss how these decisions are implemented in ways that provide competitive advantage. How this might be done for two drug companies, one seeking competitive advantage via differentiation and the other via low cost, is shown in Table 2.1.

Strategic Planning, Core Competencies, and Outsourcing

As organizations develop missions, goals, and strategies, they identify their strengths—what they do as well as or better than their competitors—as their *core competencies*. By contrast, *non-core activities*, which can be a sizable portion of an organization's total business, are good candidates for outsourcing. **Outsourcing** is transferring activities that have traditionally been internal to external suppliers.

Outsourcing
Transferring a firm's activities that have traditionally been internal to external suppliers.

Outsourcing is not a new concept, but it does add complexity and risk to the supply chain. Because of its potential, outsourcing continues to expand. The expansion is accelerating due to

TABLE 2.1 Operations Strategies of Two Drug Companies*

COMPETITIVE ADVANTAGE	BRAND NAME DRUGS, INC. PRODUCT DIFFERENTIATION STRATEGY	GENERIC DRUG CORP. LOW-COST STRATEGY
Product selection and design	Heavy R&D investment; extensive labs; focus on development in a broad range of drug categories	Low R&D investment; focus on development of generic drugs
Quality	Quality is major priority, standards exceed regulatory requirements	Meets regulatory requirements on a country-by-country basis, as necessary
Process	Product and modular production process; tries to have long product runs in specialized facilities; builds capacity ahead of demand	Process focused; general production processes; "job shop" approach, short-run production; focus on high utilization
Location	Still located in city where it was founded	Recently moved to low-tax, low-labor-cost environment
Layout	Layout supports automated product-focused production	Layout supports process-focused "job shop" practices
Human resources	Hire the best; nationwide searches	Very experienced top executives hired to provide direction; other personnel paid below industry average
Supply chain	Long-term supplier relationships	Tends to purchase competitively to find bargains
Inventory	Maintains high finished goods inventory primarily to ensure all demands are met	Process focus drives up work-in-process inventory; finished goods inventory tends to be low
Scheduling	Centralized production planning	Many short-run products complicate scheduling
Maintenance	Highly trained staff; extensive parts inventory	Highly trained staff to meet changing demands

*Notice how the 10 decisions are altered to build two distinct strategies in the same industry.

three global trends: (1) increased technological expertise, (2) more reliable and cheaper transportation, and (3) the rapid development and deployment of advancements in telecommunications and computers. This rich combination of economic advances is contributing to both lower cost and more specialization. As a result more firms are candidates for outsourcing of non-core activities.

VIDEO 2.3
Outsourcing Offshore at Darden

Outsourcing implies an agreement (typically a legally binding contract) with an external organization. The classic make-or-buy decision, concerning which products to make and which to buy, is the basis of outsourcing. When firms such as Apple find that their core competency is in creativity, innovation, and product design, they may want to outsource manufacturing.

Keith Dannemiller/Alamy

Contract manufacturers such as Flextronics provide outsourcing service to IBM, Cisco Systems, HP, Microsoft, Sony, Nortel, Ericsson, and Sun, among many others. Flextronics is a high-quality producer that has won over 450 awards, including the Malcolm Baldrige Award. One of the side benefits of outsourcing is that client firms such as IBM can actually improve their performance by using the competencies of an outstanding firm like Flextronics. But there are risks involved in outsourcing.

Outsourcing manufacturing is an extension of the long-standing practice of *subcontracting* production activities, which when done on a continuing basis is known as *contract manufacturing*. Contract manufacturing is becoming standard practice in many industries, from computers to automobiles. For instance, Johnson & Johnson, like many other big drug companies whose core competency is research and development, often farms out manufacturing to contractors. On the other hand, Sony's core competency is electromechanical design of chips. This is its core competency, but Sony is also one of the best in the world when it comes to rapid response and specialized production of these chips. Therefore, Sony finds that it wants to be its own *manufacturer*, while specialized providers come up with major innovations in such areas as software, human resources, and distribution. These areas are the providers' business, not Sony's, and the provider may very well be better at it than Sony.

Other examples of outsourcing non-core activities include:

- DuPont's legal services routed to the Philippines
- IBM's handing of travel services and payroll and Hewlett-Packard's provision of IT services to P&G
- Production of the Audi A4 convertible and Mercedes CLK convertible by Wilheim Karmann in Osnabruck, Germany
- Blue Cross sending hip resurfacing surgery patients to India

Managers evaluate their strategies and core competencies and ask themselves how to use the assets entrusted to them. Do they want to be the company that does low-margin work at 3%–4% or the innovative firm that makes a 30%–40% margin? PC and iPad contract manufacturers in China and Taiwan earn 3%–4%, but Apple, which innovates, designs, and sells, has a margin 10 times as large.

The Theory of Comparative Advantage

Theory of comparative advantage
A theory which states that countries benefit from specializing in (and exporting) goods and services in which they have relative advantage, and they benefit from importing goods and services in which they have a relative disadvantage.

The motivation for international outsourcing comes from the **theory of comparative advantage**. This theory focuses on the economic concept of relative advantage. According to the theory, if an external provider, regardless of its geographic location, can perform activities more productively than the purchasing firm, then the external provider should do the work. This allows the purchasing firm to focus on what it does best—its core competencies. Consistent with the theory of comparative advantage, outsourcing continues to grow. But outsourcing the wrong activities can be a disaster. And even outsourcing non-core activities has risks.

STUDENT TIP
The substantial risk of outsourcing requires managers to invest in the effort to make sure they do it right.

Risks of Outsourcing

Risk management starts with a realistic analysis of uncertainty and results in a strategy that minimizes the impact of these uncertainties. Indeed, outsourcing *is* risky, with roughly half of all outsourcing agreements failing because of inadequate planning and analysis. Timely delivery and quality standards can be major problems, as can underestimating increases in inventory and logistics costs. Some potential advantages and disadvantages of outsourcing are shown in Table 2.2. A survey of North American companies found that, as a group, those that outsourced customer service saw a drop in their score on the American Consumer Satisfaction Index. The declines were roughly the same whether companies outsourced domestically or overseas.[4]

However, when outsourcing is overseas, additional issues must be considered. These issues include financial attractiveness, people skills and availability, and the general business environment. Another risk of outsourcing overseas is the political backlash that results from moving jobs to foreign countries. The perceived loss of jobs has fueled anti-outsourcing rhetoric. This rhetoric is contributing to a process known as *reshoring*, the return of business activity to the originating country. (See the *OM in Action* box "Dyson.")

TABLE 2.2 Potential Advantages and Disadvantages of Outsourcing

ADVANTAGES	DISADVANTAGES
Cost savings	Increased logistics and inventory costs
Gaining outside expertise that comes with specialization	Loss of control (quality, delivery, etc.)
Improving operations and service	Potential creation of future competition
Maintaining a focus on core competencies	Negative impact on employees
Accessing outside technology	Risks may not manifest themselves for years

In addition to the external risks, operations managers must deal with other issues that outsourcing brings. These include: (1) reduced employment levels, (2) changes in facility requirements, (3) potential adjustments to quality control systems and manufacturing processes, and (4) expanded logistics issues, including insurance, tariffs, customs, and timing.

To summarize, managers can find substantial efficiencies in outsourcing non-core activities, but they must be cautious in outsourcing those elements of the product or service that provide a competitive advantage. The next section provides a methodology that helps analyze the outsourcing decision process.

Rating Outsource Providers

LO 2.4 *Use* factor rating to evaluate both country and outsource providers

Research indicates that the most common reason for the failure of outsourcing agreements is that the decisions are made without sufficient analysis. The *factor-rating method* provides an objective way to evaluate outsource providers. We assign points for each factor to each provider and then importance weights to each of the factors. We now apply the technique in Example 1 to compare outsourcing providers being considered by a firm.

OM in Action Dyson

Dyson, the company that has invented internationally acclaimed vacuum cleaners and fans, has taken advantage of global business. Its research center, home to 650 employees, is based in the United Kingdom. However, it moved one of its manufacturing plants from the United Kingdom to Malaysia in 2002. In making this move, Sir James Dyson struck a deal with a Malaysian company called VSI. VSI sources raw materials, manufacturing, assembly, and delivery of Dyson products all over the world.

The forces of globalization mean that developed countries cannot compete with low-cost manufacturing countries based, for example, in Asia. Moreover, research conducted at Dyson, thanks to a large pool of talent from renowned universities, upholds that low-margin operations should be outsourced to increase quality and keep costs down.

Apple famously has margins of around $200 per iPhone, whereas the manufacturing firm is making between $10 and $20. This illustrates quite well the illusion of relocating industries back to developed countries. The term *reshoring* was coined in 2010 in the United States, with the "Reshoring Initiative" to bring back well-paid manufacturing jobs. Scholars and economists have different views on this movement. Influential newspapers such as the *Financial Times* claim that this American initiative will have little effect over the manufacturing base in Asia. Lower costs and industrial know-how have been acquired over the years, and OM in Action unless customers are willing to pay significantly more for their products manufactured in Asia to support that political decision, reshoring will have limited impact. Reshoring is already happening but not in the sense it was initially anticipated. Western companies tend to move their operations to nearby low-cost countries to reduce the transit time from Asia and give more flexibility to their supply chains. For example, IBM moved its call centers from India to Mexico, and Modus Media, a supply chain company, has developed significant supply chain hubs in the Czech Republic, to the detriment of countries such as France. Reshoring is happening, but not in the way it was expected.

Keith Dannemiller/Alamy

Sources: "Apple Inc.," *Forbes*, finapps.forbes.com/finapps/jsp/finance/comp-info/Ratios.jsp?tkr=AAPL (2012); "Bringing Manufacturing Back Home," *The Reshoring Initiative*, www.reshorenow.org (2012); "Dyson Plant Shuts Up Shop," *BBC News*, news.bbc.co.uk/2/hi/uk_news/england/2282809.stm (2002); and "Vacuum Cleaners," *Dyson*, www.dyson.com/vacuums.aspx (2012).

Example 1

RATING PROVIDER SELECTION CRITERIA

National Architects, Inc., a San Francisco–based designer of high-rise office buildings, has decided to outsource its information technology (IT) function. Three outsourcing providers are being actively considered: one in the U.S., one in India, and one in Israel.

APPROACH ► National's VP–Operations, Susan Cholette, has made a list of seven criteria she considers critical. After putting together a committee of four other VPs, she has rated each firm (boldface type, on a 1–5 scale, with 5 being highest) and has also placed an importance weight on each of the factors, as shown in Table 2.3.

TABLE 2.3 Factor Ratings Applied to National Architects' Potential IT Outsourcing Providers

FACTOR (CRITERION)*	IMPORTANCE WEIGHT	OUTSOURCE PROVIDERS		
		BIM (U.S.)	S.P.C. (INDIA)	TELCO (ISRAEL)
1. Can reduce operating costs	.2	.2 × **3** = .6	.2 × **3** = .6	.2 × **5** = 1.0
2. Can reduce capital investment	.2	.2 × **4** = .8	.2 × **3** = .6	.2 × **3** = .6
3. Skilled personnel	.2	.2 × **5** = 1.0	.2 × **4** = .8	.2 × **3** = .6
4. Can improve quality	.1	.1 × **4** = .4	.1 × **5** = .5	.1 × **2** = .2
5. Can gain access to technology not in company	.1	.1 × **5** = .5	.1 × **3** = .3	.1 × **5** = .5
6. Can create additional capacity	.1	.1 × **4** = .4	.1 × **2** = .2	.1 × **4** = .4
7. Aligns with policy/philosophy/culture	.1	.1 × **2** = .2	.1 × **3** = .3	.1 × **5** = .5
Total Weighted Score		3.9	3.3	3.8

*These seven major criteria are based on a survey of 165 procurement executives, as reported in J. Schildhouse, *Inside Supply Management* (December 2005): 22–29.

SOLUTION ► Susan multiplies each rating by the weight and sums the products in each column to generate a total score for each outsourcing provider. She selects BIM, which has the highest overall rating.

INSIGHT ► When the total scores are as close (3.9 vs. 3.8) as they are in this case, it is important to examine the sensitivity of the results to inputs. For example, if one of the importance weights or factor scores changes even marginally, the final selection may change. Management preference may also play a role here.

LEARNING EXERCISE ► Susan decides that "Skilled personnel" should instead get a weight of 0.1 and "Aligns with policy/philosophy/culture" should increase to 0.2. How do the total scores change? [Answer: BIM = 3.6, S.P.C. = 3.2, and Telco = 4.0, so Telco would be selected.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ► 2.8–2.12

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch02Ex1.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

A. Ramey/PhotoEdit, Inc.

Most U.S. toy companies now outsource their production to Chinese manufacturers. Cost savings are significant, but there are several downsides, including loss of control over such issues as quality. A few years ago, Mattel had to recall 10.5 million Elmos, Big Birds, and SpongeBobs. These made-in-China toys contained excessive levels of lead in their paint. More recently, quality issues have dealt with poisonous pet food, tainted milk products, and contaminated sheetrock.

Global Operations Strategy Options

As we suggested early in this chapter, many operations strategies now require an international dimension. An **international business** is any firm that engages in international trade or investment. A **multinational corporation (MNC)** is a firm with *extensive* international business involvement. MNCs buy resources, create goods or services, and sell goods or services in a variety of countries. The term *multinational corporation* applies to most of the world's large, well-known businesses. Certainly IBM is a good example of an MNC. It imports electronics components to the U.S. from over 50 countries, exports to over 130 countries, has facilities in 45 countries, and earns more than half its sales and profits abroad.

International business
A firm that engages in cross-border transactions.

Multinational corporation (MNC)
A firm that has extensive involvement in international business, owning or controlling facilities in more than one country.

Operations managers of international and multinational firms approach global opportunities with one of four strategies: *international*, *multidomestic*, *global*, or *transnational* (see Figure 2.9). The matrix of Figure 2.9 has a vertical axis of cost reduction and a horizontal axis of local responsiveness. Local responsiveness implies quick response and/or the differentiation necessary for the local market. The operations manager must know how to position the firm in this matrix. Let us briefly examine each of the four strategies.

An **international strategy** uses exports and licenses to penetrate the global arena. This strategy is the least advantageous, with little local responsiveness and little cost advantage. But an international strategy is often the easiest, as exports can require little change in existing operations, and licensing agreements often leave much of the risk to the licensee.

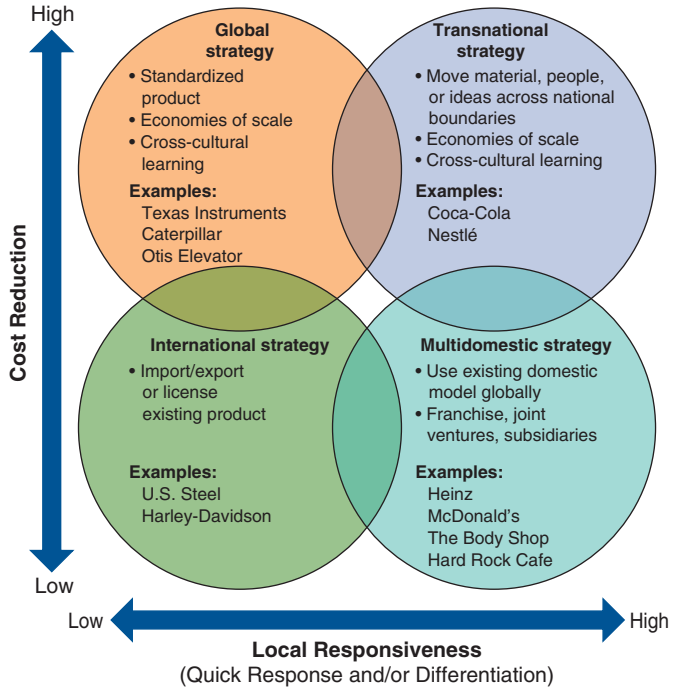
International strategy
A strategy in which global markets are penetrated using exports and licenses.

The **multidomestic strategy** has decentralized authority with substantial autonomy at each business. These are typically subsidiaries, franchises, or joint ventures with substantial independence. The advantage of this strategy is maximizing a competitive response for the local market; however, the strategy has little or no cost advantage. Many food producers, such as Heinz, use a multidomestic strategy to accommodate local tastes because global integration of the production process is not critical. The concept is one of "we were successful in the home market; let's export the management talent and processes, not necessarily the product, to accommodate another market."

Multidomestic strategy
A strategy in which operating decisions are decentralized to each country to enhance local responsiveness.

A **global strategy** has a high degree of centralization, with headquarters coordinating the organization to seek out standardization and learning between plants, thus generating economies of scale. This strategy is appropriate when the strategic focus is cost reduction but has little to recommend it when the demand for local responsiveness is high. Caterpillar, the world leader in earth-moving equipment, and Texas Instruments, a world leader in semiconductors, pursue global strategies. Caterpillar and Texas Instruments find this strategy advantageous because the end products are similar throughout the world. Earth-moving equipment is the same in Nigeria as in Iowa.

Global strategy
A strategy in which operating decisions are centralized and headquarters coordinates the standardization and learning between facilities.



LO 2.5 *Identify* and explain four global operations strategy options

Figure **2.9**

Four International Operations Strategies

Source: See a similar presentation in M. Hitt, R. D. Ireland, and R. E. Hoskisson, *Strategic Management: Concepts, Competitiveness, and Globalization,* 8th ed. (Cincinnati: Southwestern College Publishing).

In a continuing fierce worldwide battle, both Komatsu and Caterpillar seek global advantage in the heavy equipment market. As Komatsu (left) moved west to the UK, Caterpillar (right) moved east, with 13 facilities and joint ventures in China. Both firms are building equipment throughout the world as cost and logistics dictate. Their global strategies allow production to move as markets, risk, and exchange rates suggest.

Washington Imaging/Alamy

Bernd Wüstneck/dpa/picture-alliance/Newscom

Transnational strategy
A strategy that combines the benefits of global-scale efficiencies with the benefits of local responsiveness.

A **transnational strategy** exploits the economies of scale and learning, as well as pressure for responsiveness, by recognizing that core competence does not reside in just the "home" country but can exist anywhere in the organization. *Transnational* describes a condition in which material, people, and ideas cross—or *transgress*—national boundaries. These firms have the potential to pursue all three operations strategies (i.e., differentiation, low cost, and response). Such firms can be thought of as "world companies" whose country identity is not as important as their interdependent network of worldwide operations. Nestlé is a good example of such a company. Although it is legally Swiss, 95% of its assets are held and 98% of its sales are made outside Switzerland. Fewer than 10% of its workers are Swiss.

Summary

Global operations provide an increase in both the challenges and opportunities for operations managers. Although the task is difficult, operations managers can and do improve productivity. They build and manage global OM functions and supply chains that contribute in a significant way to competitiveness. Organizations identify their strengths and weaknesses. They then develop effective missions and strategies that account for these strengths and weaknesses and complement the opportunities and threats in the environment. If this procedure is performed well, the organization can have competitive advantage through some combination of product differentiation, low cost, and response.

Increasing specialization provides economic pressure to build organizations that focus on core competencies and to outsource the rest. But there is also a need for planning outsourcing to make it beneficial to all participants. In this increasingly global world, competitive advantage is often achieved via a move to international, multidomestic, global, or transnational strategies.

Effective use of resources, whether domestic or international, is the responsibility of the professional manager, and professional managers are among the few in our society who *can* achieve this performance. The challenge is great, and the rewards to the manager and to society are substantial.

Key Terms

Maquiladoras (p. 72)
World Trade Organization (WTO) (p. 72)
North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) (p. 72)
European Union (EU) (p. 72)
Mission (p. 74)
Strategy (p. 74)
Competitive advantage (p. 74)
Differentiation (p. 76)
Experience differentiation (p. 76)
Low-cost leadership (p. 76)
Response (p. 77)
Resources view (p. 78)
Value-chain analysis (p. 78)
Five forces model (p. 78)
SWOT analysis (p. 79)
Key success factors (KSFs) (p. 79)
Core competencies (p. 80)
Activity map (p. 81)
Outsourcing (p. 82)
Theory of comparative advantage (p. 84)
International business (p. 87)
Multinational corporation (MNC) (p. 87)
International strategy (p. 87)
Multidomestic strategy (p. 87)
Global strategy (p. 87)
Transnational strategy (p. 88)

Ethical Dilemma

As a manufacturer of athletic shoes whose image—indeed performance—is widely regarded as socially responsible, you find your costs increasing. Traditionally, your athletic shoes have been made in Indonesia and South Korea. Although the ease of doing business in those countries has been improving, wage rates have also been increasing. The labor-cost differential between your current suppliers and a contractor who will get the shoes made in China now exceeds $1 per pair. Your sales next year are projected to be 10 million pairs, and your analysis suggests that this cost differential is not offset by any other tangible costs; you face only the political risk and potential damage to your commitment to social responsibility. Thus, this $1 per pair savings should flow directly to your bottom line. There is no doubt that the Chinese government engages in censorship, remains repressive, and is a long way from a democracy. Moreover, you will have little or no control over working conditions, sexual harassment, and pollution. What do you do, and on what basis do you make your decision?

Michael S. Yamashita/Corbis

Discussion Questions

1. Based on the descriptions and analyses in this chapter, would Boeing be better described as a global firm or a transnational firm? Discuss.
2. List six reasons to internationalize operations.
3. Coca-Cola is called a global product. Does this mean that Coca-Cola is formulated in the same way throughout the world? Discuss.
4. Identify and explain the four strategies that operations managers of international and multinational firms use to approach global opportunities.
5. What is competitive advantage and what is the theory of comparative advantage.
6. Describe how an organization's *mission* and *strategy* have different purposes.
7. Identify the mission and strategy of your automobile repair garage. What are the manifestations of the 10 strategic OM decisions at the garage? That is, how is each of the 10 decisions accomplished?
8. As a library or Internet assignment, identify the mission of a firm and the strategy that supports that mission.
9. How does an OM strategy change during a product's life cycle?
10. There are three primary ways to achieve competitive advantage. Provide an example, not included in the text, of each. Support your choices.
11. Given the discussion of Southwest Airlines in the text, define an *operations* strategy for that firm now that it has purchased AirTran.
12. How must an operations strategy integrate with marketing and accounting?
13. How would you summarize outsourcing trends?
14. Can the operation function on its own provide competitive advantage?
15. Explain citing appropriate examples how flexibility saves time, and stimulates response.
16. How should a company select an outsourcing provider?
17. What are some of the possible consequences of poor outsourcing?
18. What global operations strategy is most descriptive of McDonald's?

Using Software to Solve Outsourcing Problems

Excel, Excel OM, and POM for Windows may be used to solve many of the problems in this chapter.

CREATING YOUR OWN EXCEL SPREADSHEETS

Program 2.1 illustrates how to build an Excel spreadsheet for the data in Example 1. In this example the factor rating method is used to compare National Architects' three potential outsourcing providers.

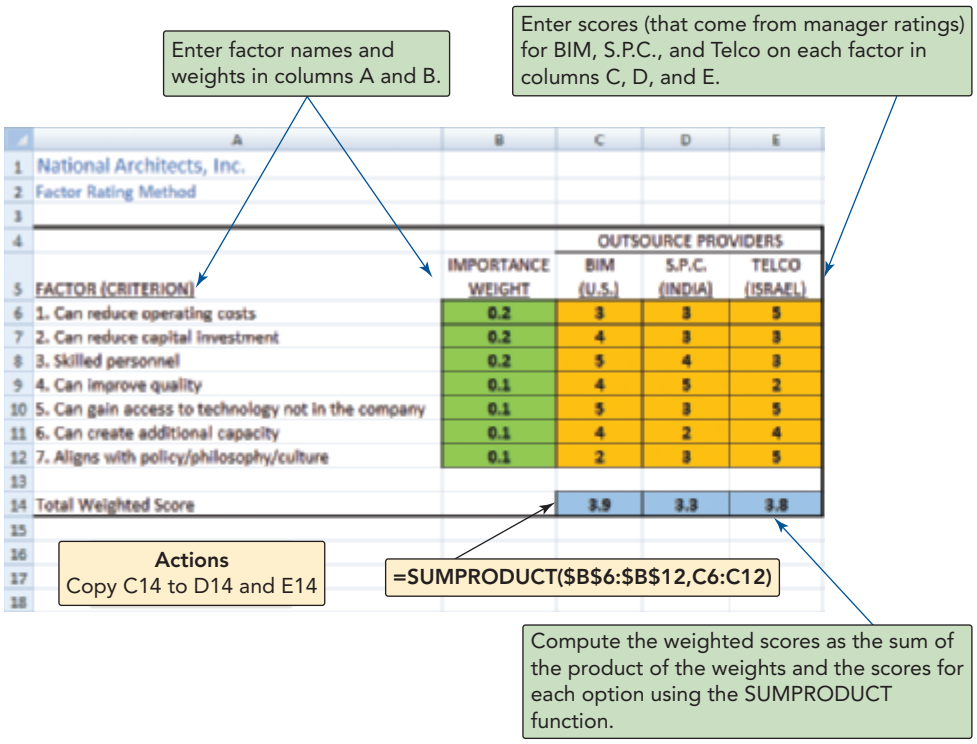
This program provides the data inputs for seven important factors, including their weights (0.0–1.0) and ratings (1–5 scale where 5 is the highest rating) for each country. As we see, BIM is most highly rated, with a 3.9 score, versus 3.3 for S.P.C. and 3.8 for Telco.

X USING EXCEL OM

Excel OM (free with your text and also found in MyOMLab) may be used to solve Example 1 (with the Factor Rating module).

P USING POM FOR WINDOWS

POM for Windows also includes a factor rating module. For details, refer to Appendix IV. POM for Windows is also found in MyOMLab and can solve all problems labeled with a P.



Program **2.1**

Using Excel to Develop a Factor Rating Analysis, With Data from Example 1.

Solved Problems

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM 2.1

The global tire industry continues to consolidate. Michelin buys Goodrich and Uniroyal and builds plants throughout the world. Bridgestone buys Firestone, expands its research budget, and focuses on world markets. Goodyear spends almost 4% of its sales revenue on research. These three aggressive firms have come to dominate the world tire market, with total market share approaching 60%. And the German tire maker Continental AG has strengthened its position as fourth in the world, with a dominant presence in Germany and a research budget of 6%. Against this formidable array, the old-line Italian tire company Pirelli SpA is challenged to respond effectively. Although Pirelli still has almost 5% of the market, it is a relatively small player in a tough, competitive business.

And although the business is reliable even in recessions, as motorists still need replacement tires, the competition is getting stronger. The business rewards companies that have large market shares and long production runs. Pirelli, with its small market share and 1,200 specialty tires, has neither. However, Pirelli has some strengths: an outstanding reputation for tire research and excellent high-performance tires, including supplying specially engineered tires for performance automobiles, Ducati motorcycles, and Formula 1 racing teams. In addition, Pirelli's operations managers complement the creative engineering with world-class innovative manufacturing processes that allow rapid changeover to different models and sizes of tires.

Use a SWOT analysis to establish a feasible strategy for Pirelli.

SOLUTION

First, find an opportunity in the world tire market that avoids the threat of the mass-market onslaught by the big-three tire makers. Second, use the internal marketing strength represented by Pirelli's strong brand name supplying Formula 1 racing and a history of winning World Rally Championships. Third, maximize the innovative capabilities of an outstanding operations function. This is a classic differentiation strategy, supported by activity mapping that ties Pirelli's marketing strength to research and its innovative operations function.

To implement this strategy, Pirelli is differentiating itself with a focus on higher-margin performance tires and away from the low-margin standard tire business. Pirelli has established deals with luxury brands Jaguar, BMW, Maserati, Ferrari, Bentley, and Lotus Elise and established itself as a provider of a large share of the tires on new Porsches and S-class Mercedes. Pirelli also made a strategic decision to divest itself of other businesses. As a result, the vast majority of the company's tire production is now high-performance tires. People are willing to pay a premium for Pirellis.

The operations function continued to focus its design efforts on performance tires and developing a system of modular tire manufacture that allows much faster switching between models. This modular system, combined with billions of dollars in new manufacturing investment, has driven batch sizes down to as small as 150 to 200, making small-lot performance tires economically feasible. Manufacturing innovations

at Pirelli have streamlined the production process, moving it from a 14-step process to a 3-step process.

Pirelli still faces a threat from the big three going after the performance market, but the company has bypassed its weakness of having a small market share with a substantial research budget and an innovative operations function. The firm now has 19 plants in 13 countries and a presence in more than 160 countries, with sales approaching $8 billion.

Sources: Based on *The Economist* (January 8, 2011): 65; **www.pirelli.com**; and **RubberNews.com**.

SOLVED PROBLEM 2.2

DeHoratius Electronics, Inc., is evaluating several options for sourcing a critical processor for its new modem. Three sources are being considered: Hi-Tech in Canada, Zia in Hong Kong, and Zaragoza in Spain. The owner, Nicole DeHoratius, has determined that only three criteria are critical. She has rated each firm on a 1–5 scale (with 5 being highest) and has also placed an importance weight on each of the factors, as shown below:

		OUTSOURCE PROVIDERS					
FACTOR (CRITERION)	IMPORTANCE WEIGHT	HI-TECH (CANADA)		ZIA (HONG KONG)		ZARAGOZA (SPAIN)	
		Rating	Wtd. Score	Rating	Wtd.score	Rating	Wtd. Score
1. Cost	.5	3	1.5	3	1.5	5	2.5
2. Reliability	.2	4	.8	3	.6	3	.6
3. Competence	.3	5	1.5	4	1.2	3	.9
Totals	1.0		3.8		3.3		4.0

SOLUTION

Nicole multiplies each rating by the weight and sums the products in each column to generate a total score for each outsourcing provider. For example the weighted score for Hi-Tech equals $(.5 \times 3) + (.2 \times 4) + (.3 \times 5) = 1.5 + .8 + 1.5 = 3.8$. She selects Zaragoza, which has the highest overall rating.

Problems

Note: PX means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel OM.

Problems 2.1–2.3 relate to A Global View of Operations and Supply Chains

•• **2.1** Match operational strategies with the proper companies or services that have successfully employed these strategies in the table below:

OPERATIONS STRATEGY	COMPANY OR SERVICE
After sales service	3M
Customization	Domino Pizza
Fast and reliable delivery	Easy Jet, Ryanair
High quality	Eurodisney
Innovation	Fast Food Restaurant, Couriers
Location	Lexus, Five-Stars Hotels
Low cost	PCs
Product feature	Rolex
Rapid innovation	Supermarkets, Banks, ATMs
Responsiveness (short processing time)	Tailor
Service	Toyota

•• **2.2** Based on the corruption perception index developed by Transparency International (**www.transparency.org**), rank the following countries from most corrupt to least: Venezuela, Denmark, the U.S., Switzerland, and China.

•• **2.3** Based on the competitiveness ranking developed by the Global Competitiveness Index (**www.weforum.org**), rank the following countries from most competitive to least: Mexico, Switzerland, the U.S., and China.

Problems 2.4 and 2.5 relate to Achieving Competitive Advantage Through Operations

• **2.4** If a company's products are commodities, e.g. grain, electricity, etc.; is it risky at staying commodities? Explain.

•• **2.5** What are the implications for operations management with respect to the following organizational strategies: (a) low price, (b) good quality, (c) response, (d) innovation, € variety, and (f) sustainability.

Problem 2.6 relates to Issues in Operations Strategy

••• **2.6** Identify how changes within an organization affect the OM strategy for a company. For instance, discuss what impact the following internal factors might have on OM strategy:

a) Maturing of a product.
b) Technology innovation in the manufacturing process.
c) Changes in laptop computer design that builds in wireless technology.

Problem 2.7 relates to Strategy Development and Implementation

••• **2.7** Identify how changes in the external environment affect the OM strategy for a company. For instance, discuss what impact the following external factors might have on OM strategy:

a) Major increases in oil prices.
b) Water- and air-quality legislation.

c) Fewer young prospective employees entering the labor market.
d) Inflation versus stable prices.
e) Legislation moving health insurance from a pretax benefit to taxable income.

Problems 2.8–2.12 relate to Strategic Planning, Core Competencies, and Outsourcing

•• **2.8** Claudia Pragram Technologies, Inc., has narrowed its choice of outsourcing provider to two firms located in different countries. Pragram wants to decide which one of the two countries is the better choice, based on risk-avoidance criteria. She has polled her executives and established four criteria. The resulting ratings for the two countries are presented in the table below, where 1 is a lower risk and 3 is a higher risk.

SELECTION CRITERION	ENGLAND	CANADA
Price of service from outsourcer	2	3
Nearness of facilities to client	3	1
Level of technology	1	3
History of successful outsourcing	1	2

The executives have determined four criteria weightings: Price, with a weight of 0.1; Nearness, with 0.6; Technology, with 0.2; and History, with 0.1.

a) Using the factor-rating method, which country would you select?
b) Double each of the weights used in part (a) (to 0.2, 1.2, 0.4, and 0.2, respectively). What effect does this have on your answer? Why? PX

•• **2.9** Ranga Ramasesh is the operations manager for a firm that is trying to decide which one of four countries it should research for possible outsourcing providers. The first step is to select a country based on cultural risk factors, which are critical to eventual business success with the provider. Ranga has reviewed outsourcing provider directories and found that the four countries in the table that follows have an ample number of providers from which they can choose. To aid in the country selection step, he has enlisted the aid of a cultural expert, John Wang, who has provided ratings of the various criteria in the table. The resulting ratings are on a 1 to 10 scale, where 1 is a low risk and 10 is a high risk.

John has also determined six criteria weightings: Trust, with a weight of 0.4; Quality, with 0.2; Religious, with 0.1; Individualism, with 0.1; Time, with 0.1; and Uncertainty, with 0.1. Using the factor-rating method, which country should Ranga select? PX

CULTURE SELECTION CRITERION	MEXICO	PANAMA	COSTA RICA	PERU
Trust	1	2	2	1
Society value of quality work	7	10	9	10
Religious attitudes	3	3	3	5
Individualism attitudes	5	2	4	8
Time orientation attitudes	4	6	7	3
Uncertainty avoidance attitudes	3	2	4	2

•• **2.10** Fernando Garza's firm wishes to use factor rating to help select an outsourcing provider of logistics services.

a) With weights from 1–5 (5 highest) and ratings 1–100 (100 highest), use the following table to help Garza make his decision:

		RATING OF LOGISTICS PROVIDERS		
CRITERION	WEIGHT	OVERNIGHT SHIPPING	WORLDWIDE DELIVERY	UNITED FREIGHT
Quality	5	90	80	75
Delivery	3	70	85	70
Cost	2	70	80	95

b) Garza decides to increase the weights for quality, delivery, and cost to 10, 6, and 4, respectively. How does this change your conclusions? Why?
c) If Overnight Shipping's ratings for each of the factors increase by 10%, what are the new results? PX

••• **2.11** Walker Accounting Software is marketed to small accounting firms throughout the U.S. and Canada. Owner George Walker has decided to outsource the company's help desk and is considering three providers: Manila Call Center (Philippines), Delhi Services (India), and Moscow Bell (Russia). The following table summarizes the data Walker has assembled. Which outsourcing firm has the best rating? (Higher weights imply higher importance and higher ratings imply more desirable providers.) PX

		PROVIDER RATINGS		
CRITERION	IMPORTANCE WEIGHT	MANILA	DELHI	MOSCOW
Flexibility	0.5	5	1	9
Trustworthiness	0.1	5	5	2
Price	0.2	4	3	6
Delivery	0.2	5	6	6

•••• **2.12** Discuss the make-or-buy decision in terms of cost, flexible response, speed and quality.

Problem 2.13 relates to Global Operations Strategy Options

•• **2.13** When does the application of a multidomestic strategy seem most appropriate? What kind of industries can this be applied to?

CASE STUDIES

Rapid-Lube

A huge market exists for automobile tune-ups, oil changes, and lubrication service for more than 250 million vehicles on U.S. roads. Some of this demand is filled by full-service auto dealerships, some by Walmart and Firestone, and some by other tire/service dealers. However, Rapid-Lube, Mobil-Lube, Jiffy-Lube and others have also developed strategies to accommodate this opportunity.

Rapid-Lube stations perform oil changes, lubrication, and interior cleaning in a spotless environment. The buildings are clean, usually painted white, and often surrounded by neatly trimmed landscaping. To facilitate fast service, cars can be driven through three abreast. At Rapid-Lube, the customer is greeted by service representatives who are graduates of Rapid-Lube U. The Rapid-Lube school is not unlike McDonald's Hamburger University near Chicago or Holiday Inn's training school in Memphis. The greeter takes the order, which typically includes fluid checks (oil, water, brake fluid, transmission fluid, differential grease) and the necessary lubrication, as well as filter changes for air and oil. Service personnel in neat uniforms then move into action. The standard three-person team has one person checking fluid levels under the hood, another assigned interior vacuuming and window cleaning, and the third in the garage pit, removing the oil filter, draining the oil, checking the differential and transmission, and lubricating as necessary. Precise task assignments and good training are designed to move the car into and out of the bay in 10 minutes. The business model is to charge no more, and hopefully less, than gas stations, automotive repair chains, and auto dealers, while providing better and faster service.

Discussion Questions

1. What constitutes the mission of Rapid-Lube?
2. How does the Rapid-Lube operations strategy provide competitive advantage? (*Hint:* Evaluate how Rapid-Lube's traditional competitors perform the 10 decisions of operations management vs. how Rapid-Lube performs them.)
3. Is it likely that Rapid-Lube has increased productivity over its more traditional competitors? Why? How would we measure productivity in this industry?

Strategy at Regal Marine

Video Case

Regal Marine, one of the U.S.'s 10 largest power-boat manufacturers, achieves its mission—providing luxury performance boats to customers worldwide—using the strategy of differentiation. It differentiates its products through constant innovation, unique features, and high quality. Increasing sales at the Orlando, Florida, family-owned firm suggest that the strategy is working.

As a quality boat manufacturer, Regal Marine starts with continuous innovation, as reflected in computer-aided design (CAD), high-quality molds, and close tolerances that are controlled through both defect charts and rigorous visual inspection. In-house quality is not enough, however. Because a product is only as good as the parts put into it, Regal has established close ties with a large number of its suppliers to ensure both flexibility and perfect parts. With the help of these suppliers, Regal can profitably produce a product line of 22 boats, ranging from the $14,000 19-foot boat to the $500,000 44-foot Commodore yacht.

"We build boats," says VP Tim Kuck, "but we're really in the 'fun' business. Our competition includes not only 300 other boat, canoe, and yacht manufacturers in our $17 billion industry, but home theaters, the Internet, and all kinds of alternative family entertainment." Fortunately Regal has been paying down debt and increasing market share.

Regal has also joined with scores of other independent boat makers in the American Boat Builders Association. Through economies of scale in procurement, Regal is able to navigate against billion-dollar competitor Brunswick (makers of the Sea Ray and Bayliner brands). The *Global Company Profile* featuring Regal Marine (which opens Chapter 5) provides further background on Regal and its strategy.

Discussion Questions*

1. State Regal Marine's mission in your own words.
2. Identify the strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and threats that are relevant to the strategy of Regal Marine.
3. How would you define Regal's strategy?
4. How would each of the 10 operations management decisions apply to operations decision making at Regal Marine?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies the case before addressing these questions.

Hard Rock Cafe's Global Strategy

Video Case

Hard Rock brings the concept of the "experience economy" to its cafe operation. The strategy incorporates a unique "experience" into its operations. This innovation is somewhat akin to mass customization in manufacturing. At Hard Rock, the experience concept is to provide not only a custom meal from the menu but a dining event that includes a unique visual and sound experience not duplicated anywhere else in the world. This strategy is succeeding. Other theme restaurants have come and gone while Hard Rock continues to grow. As Professor C. Markides of the London Business School says, "The trick is not to play the game better than the competition, but to develop and play an altogether different game."* At Hard Rock, the different game is the experience game.

From the opening of its first cafe in London in 1971, during the British rock music explosion, Hard Rock has been serving food and rock music with equal enthusiasm. Hard Rock Cafe has 40 U.S. locations, about a dozen in Europe, and the remainder

*Constantinos Markides, "Strategic Innovation," *MIT Sloan Management Review* 38, no. 3: 9.

scattered throughout the world, from Bangkok and Beijing to Beirut. New construction, leases, and investment in remodeling are long term; so a global strategy means special consideration of political risk, currency risk, and social norms in a context of a brand fit. Although Hard Rock is one of the most recognized brands in the world, this does not mean its cafe is a natural everywhere. Special consideration must be given to the supply chain for the restaurant and its accompanying retail store. About 48% of a typical cafe's sales are from merchandise.

The Hard Rock Cafe business model is well defined, but because of various risk factors and differences in business practices and employment law, Hard Rock elects to franchise about half of its cafes. Social norms and preferences often suggest some tweaking of menus for local taste. For instance, Hard Rock focuses less on hamburgers and beef and more on fish and lobster in its British cafes.

Because 70% of Hard Rock's guests are tourists, recent years have found it expanding to "destination" cities. While this has been a winning strategy for decades, allowing the firm to grow from one London cafe to 145 facilities in 60 countries, it has made Hard Rock susceptible to economic fluctuations that hit the tourist business hardest. So Hard Rock is signing a long-term lease for a new location in Nottingham, England, to join recently opened cafes in Manchester and Birmingham—cities that are not standard tourist destinations. At the same time, menus are being upgraded. Hopefully, repeat business from locals in these cities will smooth demand and make Hard Rock less dependent on tourists.

Discussion Questions*

1. Identify the strategy changes that have taken place at Hard Rock Cafe since its founding in 1971.
2. As Hard Rock Cafe has changed its strategy, how has its responses to some of the 10 decisions of OM changed?
3. Where does Hard Rock fit in the four international operations strategies outlined in Figure 2.9? Explain your answer.

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies the case before addressing these questions.

Outsourcing Offshore at Darden

Video Case

Darden Restaurants, owner of popular brands such as Olive Garden, Bahama Breeze, and Longhorn Grill, serves more than 320 million meals annually in over 1,500 restaurants across the U.S. and Canada. To achieve competitive advantage via its supply chain, Darden must achieve excellence at each step. With purchases from 35 countries, and seafood products with a shelf life as short as 4 days, this is a complex and challenging task.

Those 320 million meals annually mean 40 million pounds of shrimp and huge quantities of tilapia, swordfish, and other fresh purchases. Fresh seafood is typically flown to the U.S. and monitored each step of the way to ensure that 34°F is maintained.

Darden's purchasing agents travel the world to find competitive advantage in the supply chain. Darden personnel from supply chain and development, quality assurance, and environmental relations contribute to developing, evaluating, and checking suppliers. Darden also has seven native-speaking representatives living on other continents to provide continuing support and evaluation of suppliers. All suppliers must abide by Darden's food standards, which typically exceed FDA and other industry standards. Darden expects continuous improvement in durable relationships that increase quality and reduce cost.

Darden's aggressiveness and development of a sophisticated supply chain provide an opportunity for outsourcing. Much food preparation is labor intensive and is often more efficient when handled in bulk. This is particularly true where large volumes may justify capital investment. For instance, Tyson and Iowa Beef prepare meats to Darden's specifications much more economically than can individual restaurants. Similarly, Darden has found that it can outsource both the cutting of salmon to the proper portion size and the cracking/peeling of shrimp more cost-effectively offshore than in U.S. distribution centers or individual restaurants.

Discussion Questions*

1. What are some outsourcing opportunities in a restaurant?
2. What supply chain issues are unique to a firm sourcing from 35 countries?
3. Examine how other firms or industries develop international supply chains as compared to Darden.
4. Why does Darden outsource harvesting and preparation of much of its seafood?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case study before answering these questions.

- **Additional Case Study:** Visit MyOMLab for this free case study:
  Outsourcing to Tata: The Indian outsourcing firm is hired by New Mexico.

Endnotes

1. The 28 members of the European Union (EU) as of 2015 were Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, Cyprus, Croatia, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, the Netherlands, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, and United Kingdom. Not all have adopted the euro. In addition, Iceland, Macedonia, Montenegro, and Turkey are candidates for entry into the European Union.
2. M. E. Porter, *Competitive Advantage: Creating and Sustaining Superior Performance.* New York: The Free Press, 1985.
3. M. E. Porter, *Competitive Strategy: Techniques for Analyzing Industries and Competitors.* New York: The Free Press, 1980, 1998.
4. J. Whitaker, M. S. Krishnan, and C. Fornell. "How Offshore Outsourcing Affects Customer Satisfaction." *The Wall Street Journal* (July 7, 2008): R4.

Chapter 2 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
A GLOBAL VIEW OF OPERATIONS AND SUPPLY CHAINS (pp. 70–73)	Domestic business operations decide to change to some form of international operations for six main reasons: 1. Improve supply chain 2. Reduce costs and exchange rate risks 3. Improve operations 4. Understand markets 5. Improve products 6. Attract and retain global talent ■ **Maquiladoras**—Mexican factories located along the U.S.–Mexico border that receive preferential tariff treatment. ■ **World Trade Organization (WTO)**—An international organization that promotes world trade by lowering barriers to the free flow of goods across borders. ■ **NAFTA**—A free trade agreement between Canada, Mexico, and the United States. ■ **European Union (EU)**—A European trade group that has 28 member states.	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4 Problems: 2.1–2.3
DEVELOPING MISSIONS AND STRATEGIES (pp. 73–74)	An effective operations management effort must have a *mission* so it knows where it is going and a *strategy* so it knows how to get there. ■ **Mission**—The purpose or rationale for an organization's existence. ■ **Strategy**—How an organization expects to achieve its missions and goals. The three strategic approaches to competitive advantage are: **1.** Differentiation **2.** Cost leadership **3.** Response	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4 **VIDEO 2.1** Operations Strategy at Regal Marine
ACHIEVING COMPETITIVE ADVANTAGE THROUGH OPERATIONS (pp. 74–78)	■ **Competitive advantage**—The creation of a unique advantage over competitors. ■ **Differentiation**—Distinguishing the offerings of an organization in a way that the customer perceives as adding value. ■ **Experience differentiation**—Engaging the customer with a product through imaginative use of the five senses, so the customer "experiences" the product. ■ **Low-cost leadership**—Achieving maximum value, as perceived by the customer. ■ **Response**—A set of values related to rapid, flexible, and reliable performance.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4 Problems: 2.4–2.5 **VIDEO 2.2** Hard Rock's Global Strategy
ISSUES IN OPERATIONS STRATEGY (pp. 78–79)	■ **Resources view**—A view in which managers evaluate the resources at their disposal and manage or alter them to achieve competitive advantage. ■ **Value-chain analysis**—A way to identify the elements in the product/service chain that uniquely add value. ■ **Five forces model**—A way to analyze the five forces in the competitive environment. Forces in Porter's five forces model are (1) immediate rivals, (2) potential entrants, (3) customers, (4) suppliers, and (5) substitute products. Different issues are emphasized during different stages of the product life cycle: ■ ***Introduction***—Company strategy: Best period to increase market share, R&D engineering is critical. OM strategy: Product design and development critical, frequent product and process design changes, short production runs, high production costs, limited models, attention to quality. ■ ***Growth***—Company strategy: Practical to change price or quality image, strengthen niche. OM strategy: Forecasting critical, product and process reliability, competitive product improvements and options, increase capacity, shift toward product focus, enhance distribution. ■ ***Maturity***—Company strategy: Poor time to change image or price or quality, competitive costs become critical, defend market position. OM strategy: Standardization, less rapid product changes (more minor changes), optimum capacity, increasing stability of process, long production runs, product improvement and cost cutting. ■ ***Decline***—Company strategy: Cost control critical. OM strategy: Little product differentiation, cost minimization, overcapacity in the industry, prune line to eliminate items not returning good margin, reduce capacity.	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4 Problem: 2.6

Chapter 2 *Rapid* Review *continued*

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
STRATEGY DEVELOPMENT AND IMPLEMENTATION (pp. 79–82)	■ **SWOT analysis**—A method of determining internal strengths and weaknesses and external opportunities and threats. ■ **Key success factors (KSFs)**—Activities or factors that are key to achieving competitive advantage. ■ **Core competencies**—A set of unique skills, talents, and activities that a firm does particularly well. A core competence may be a combination of KSFs. ■ **Activity map**—A graphical link of competitive advantage, KSFs, and supporting activities.	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.4 Problem: 2.7 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 2.1
STRATEGIC PLANNING, CORE COMPETENCIES, AND OUTSOURCING (pp. 82–86)	■ **Outsourcing**—Procuring from external sources services or products that are normally part of an organization. ■ **Theory of comparative advantage**—The theory which states that countries benefit from specializing in (and exporting) products and services in which they have relative advantage and importing goods in which they have a relative disadvantage. Perhaps half of all outsourcing agreements fail because of inappropriate planning and analysis. Potential risks of outsourcing include: ■ A drop in quality or customer service ■ Political backlash that results from outsourcing to foreign countries ■ Negative impact on employees ■ Potential future competition ■ Increased logistics and inventory costs The most common reason given for outsourcing failure is that the decision was made without sufficient understanding and analysis. The factor-rating method is an excellent tool for dealing with both country risk assessment and provider selection problems.	Concept Questions: 6.1–6.4 Problems: 2.8–2.12 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 2.2 **VIDEO 2.3** Outsourcing Offshore at Darden
GLOBAL OPERATIONS STRATEGY OPTIONS (pp. 87–88)	■ **International business**—A firm that engages in cross-border transactions. ■ **Multinational corporation (MNC)**—A firm that has extensive involvement in international business, owning or controlling facilities in more than one country. The four operations strategies for approaching global opportunities can be classified according to local responsiveness and cost reduction: ■ **International strategy**—A strategy in which global markets are penetrated using exports and licenses with little local responsiveness. ■ **Multidomestic strategy**—A strategy in which operating decisions are decentralized to each country to enhance local responsiveness. ■ **Global strategy**—A strategy in which operating decisions are centralized and headquarters coordinates the standardization and learning between facilities. ■ **Transnational strategy**—A strategy that combines the benefits of global-scale efficiencies with the benefits of local responsiveness. These firms transgress national boundaries.	Concept Questions: 7.1–7.4 Problem 2.13

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 2.1 An ideal mission statement is sufficiently descriptive when:
- **a)** Identifies the firm's products/services
- **b)** Identifies the markets it is trying to serve
- **c)** Specifies the buyer requirements it pursues to satisfy
- **d)** Provides the firm's own identity
- **e)** All of the above

LO 2.2 The three strategic approaches to competitive advantage are ____, ____, and _____.

LO 2.3 Core competencies are those strengths in a firm that include:
- **a)** specialized skills.
- **b)** unique production methods.
- **c)** proprietary information/knowledge.
- **d)** things a company does better than others.
- **e)** all of the above.

LO 2.4 Outsourcing can improve a firm's effectiveness when:
- **a)** An operation can be performed better and/or more cheaply by an outsider
- **b)** It allows concentration on core activities
- **c)** It reduces the firm's exposure risk
- **d)** It creates potential future competition
- **e)** All of the above

LO 2.5 Companies that move material, people, or ideas across national boundaries, exploit economies of scale and learning as well as pressure for responsiveness pursue:
- **a)** An international strategy
- **b)** A multidomestic strategy
- **c)** A global strategy
- **d)** A transnational strategy

Answers: LO 2.1. e; LO 2.2. differentiation, cost leadership, response; LO 2.3. e; LO 2.4. e; LO 2.5. d.

Managing Projects

CHAPTER 3

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *Bechtel Group*

- The Importance of Project Management *100*
- Project Planning *100*
- Project Scheduling *103*
- Project Controlling *104*
- Project Management Techniques: PERT and CPM *105*
- Determining the Project Schedule *109*
- Variability in Activity Times *115*
- Cost-Time Trade-Offs and Project Crashing *120*
- A Critique of PERT and CPM *123*
- Using Microsoft Project to Manage Projects *124*

Alaska Airlines

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
Bechtel Group

Project Management Provides a Competitive Advantage for Bechtel

Over a century old, the San Francisco–based Bechtel Group (www.bechtel.com) is the world's premier manager of massive construction and engineering projects. Known for billion-dollar projects, Bechtel is famous for its construction feats on the Hoover Dam, the Boston Central Artery/Tunnel project, the Riyadh, Saudi Arabia Metro, and over 25,000 other projects in 160 countries. With 53,000 employees and revenues over $39 billion, Bechtel is the U.S.'s largest project manager.

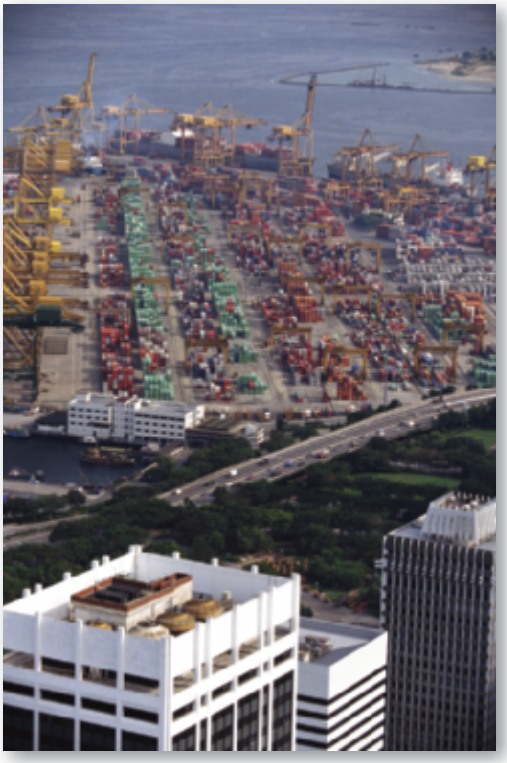
Philipus/Alamy

A massive dredge hired by Bechtel removes silt from Iraq's port at Umm Qasr. This paved the way for large-scale deliveries of U.S. food and the return of commercial shipping.

Conditions weren't what Bechtel expected when it won a series of billion-dollar contracts from the U.S. government to help reconstruct war-torn Iraq in the last decade. That country's defeat by Allied forces hadn't caused much war damage. Instead, what Bechtel found was a nation that had been crumbling for years. None of the sewage plants in Baghdad worked. Power flicked on and off. Towns and cities had been left to decay. And scavengers were stealing everything from museum artifacts to electric power lines. Bechtel's job was to oversee electric power, sewage, transportation, and airport repairs.

Bechtel's crews travelled under armed escort and slept in trailers surrounded by razor wire. But the company's efforts have paid off. Iraq's main seaport, Umm Qasr, has opened. Electrical generation is back to prewar levels, and Bechtel has refurbished more than 1,200 schools.

With a global procurement program, Bechtel easily tapped the company's network of suppliers and buyers worldwide to help rebuild Iraq's infrastructure.



Shutterstock

In addition to major construction projects, Bechtel used its project management skills to provide emergency response to major catastrophes as it did here in the wake of Hurricane Katrina.

Courtesy of Bechtel Corporation

Managing massive construction projects such as this is the strength of Bechtel. With large penalties for late completion and incentives for early completion, a good project manager is worth his or her weight in gold.

Other interesting recent Bechtel projects include:

- Constructing 30 high-security data centers worldwide for Equinix, Inc. ($1.2 billion).
- Building and running a rail line between London and the Channel Tunnel ($4.6 billion).
- Developing an oil pipeline from the Caspian Sea region to Russia ($850 million).
- Expanding the Dubai Airport in the United Arab Emirates ($600 million) and the Miami International Airport ($2 billion).
- Building liquefied natural gas plants in Trinidad, West Indies ($1 billion).
- Building a new subway for Athens, Greece ($2.6 billion).
- Constructing a natural gas pipeline in Thailand ($700 million).
- Building 30 plants for iMotors.com, a company that sells refurbished autos online ($300 million).
- Building a highway to link the north and south of Croatia ($303 million).

When companies or countries seek out firms to manage massive projects, they go to Bechtel, which, again and again, through outstanding project management, has demonstrated its competitive advantage.

Thomas Hartwell/U.S. Agency for International Development (USAID)

Reconstructed terminal at Baghdad International Airport.

Joe Cavaretta/AP Images

Bechtel was the construction contractor for the Hoover Dam. This dam, on the Colorado River, is the highest in the Western Hemisphere.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO 3.1 ***Use*** a Gantt chart for scheduling 103
LO 3.2 ***Draw*** AOA and AON networks 107
LO 3.3 ***Complete*** forward and backward passes for a project 110
LO 3.4 ***Determine*** a critical path 114
LO 3.5 ***Calculate*** the variance of activity times 116
LO 3.6 ***Crash*** a project 121

STUDENT TIP

Wherever your career takes you, one of the most useful tools you can have, as a manager, is the ability to manage a project.

The Importance of Project Management

When Bechtel, the subject of the opening Global Company Profile, begins a project, it quickly has to mobilize substantial resources, often consisting of manual workers, construction professionals, cooks, medical personnel, and even security forces. Its project management team develops a supply chain to access materials to build everything from ports to bridges, dams, and monorails. Bechtel is just one example of a firm that faces modern phenomena: growing project complexity and collapsing product/service life cycles. This change stems from awareness of the strategic value of time-based competition and a quality mandate for continuous improvement. Each new product/service introduction is a unique event—a project. In addition, projects are a common part of our everyday life. We may be planning a wedding or a surprise birthday party, remodeling a house, or preparing a semester-long class project.

VIDEO 3.1
Project Management at Hard Rock's Rockfest

Scheduling projects can be a difficult challenge for operations managers. The stakes in project management are high. Cost overruns and unnecessary delays occur due to poor scheduling and poor controls.

Projects that take months or years to complete are usually developed outside the normal production system. Project organizations within the firm may be set up to handle such jobs and are often disbanded when the project is complete. On other occasions, managers find projects just a part of their job. The management of projects involves three phases (see Figure 3.1):

1. *Planning:* This phase includes goal setting, defining the project, and team organization.
2. *Scheduling:* This phase relates people, money, and supplies to specific activities and relates activities to each other.
3. *Controlling:* Here the firm monitors resources, costs, quality, and budgets. It also revises or changes plans and shifts resources to meet time and cost demands.

We begin this chapter with a brief overview of these functions. Three popular techniques to allow managers to plan, schedule, and control—Gantt charts, PERT, and CPM—are also described.

Project Planning

Project organization
An organization formed to ensure that programs (projects) receive the proper management and attention.

Projects can be defined as a series of related tasks directed toward a major output. In some firms a project organization is developed to make sure existing programs continue to run smoothly on a day-to-day basis while new projects are successfully completed.

For companies with multiple large projects, such as a construction firm, a project organization is an effective way of assigning the people and physical resources needed. It is a temporary organization structure designed to achieve results by using specialists from throughout the firm.

The project organization may be most helpful when:

1. Work tasks can be defined with a specific goal and deadline.
2. The job is unique or somewhat unfamiliar to the existing organization.
3. The work contains complex interrelated tasks requiring specialized skills.

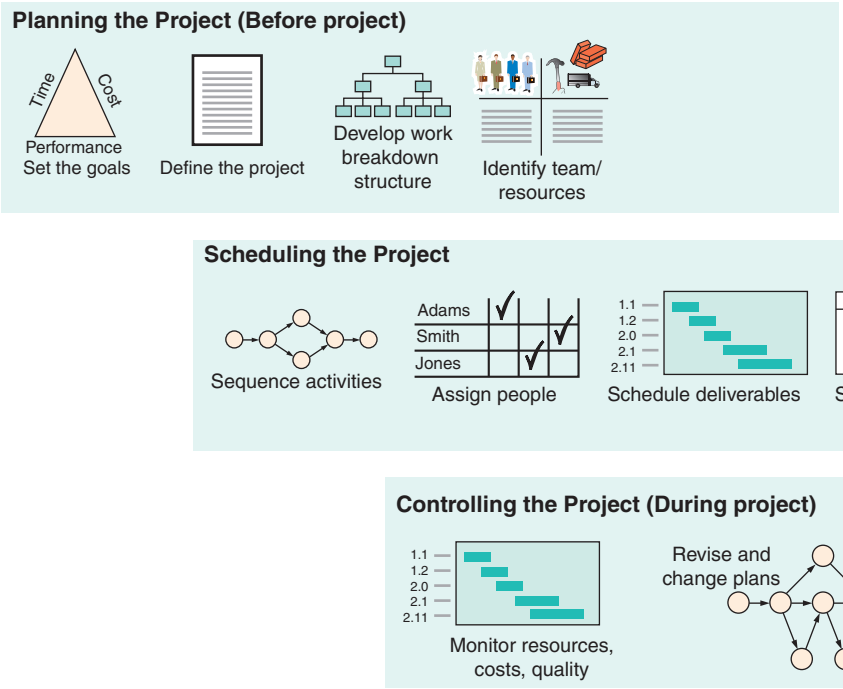


Figure 3.1

Project Planning, Scheduling, and Controlling

STUDENT TIP

Managers must "make the plan and then work the plan."

4. The project is temporary but critical to the organization.
5. The project cuts across organizational lines.

The Project Manager

An example of a project organization is shown in Figure 3.2. Project team members are temporarily assigned to a project and report to the project manager. The manager heading the project coordinates activities with other departments and reports directly to top management. Project managers receive high visibility in a firm and are responsible for making sure that (1) all necessary activities are finished in proper sequence and on time; (2) the project comes in within budget; (3) the project meets its quality goals; and (4) the people assigned to the project receive the motivation, direction, and information needed to do their jobs. This means that project managers should be good coaches and communicators, and be able to organize activities from a variety of disciplines.

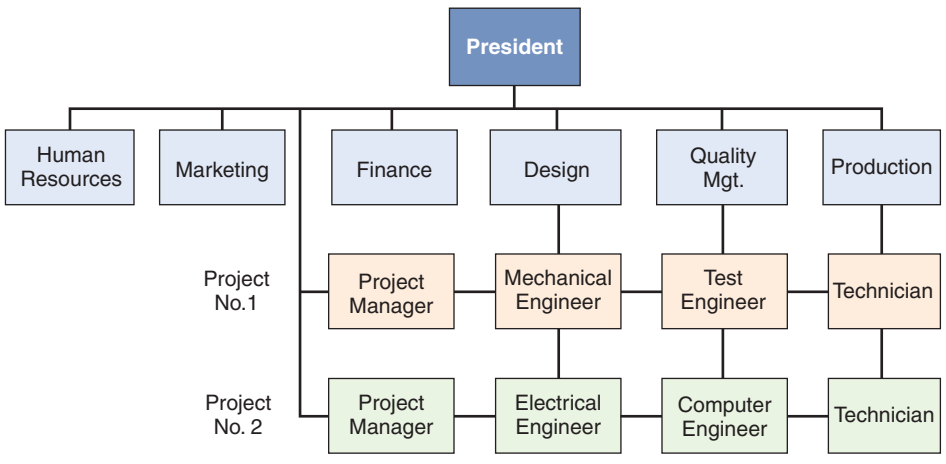


Figure 3.2

A Sample Project Organization

STUDENT TIP

Project organizations can be temporary or permanent. A permanent organization is usually called a *matrix organization.*

Ethical Issues Faced in Project Management Project managers not only have high visibility but they also face ethical decisions on a daily basis. How they act establishes the code of conduct for the project. Project managers often deal with (1) offers of gifts from contractors, (2) pressure to alter status reports to mask the reality of delays, (3) false reports for charges of time and expenses, and (4) pressures to compromise quality to meet bonuses or avoid penalties related to schedules.

Using the Project Management Institute's **(www.pmi.org)** ethical codes is one means of trying to establish standards. These codes need to be accompanied by good leadership and a strong organizational culture, with its ingrained ethical standards and values.

Work Breakdown Structure

Work breakdown structure (WBS)
A hierarchical description of a project into more and more detailed components.

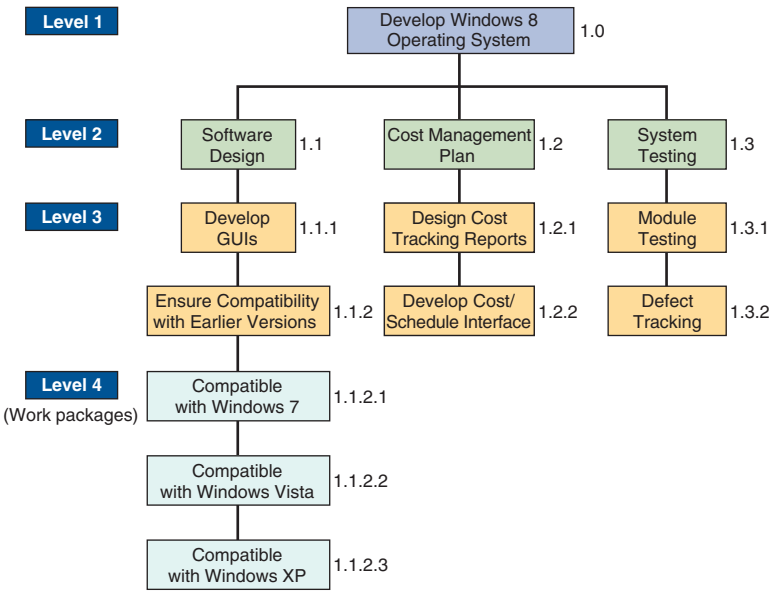
The project management team begins its task well in advance of project execution so that a plan can be developed. One of its first steps is to carefully establish the project's objectives, then break the project down into manageable parts. This **work breakdown structure (WBS)** defines the project by dividing it into its major subcomponents (or tasks), which are then subdivided into more detailed components, and finally into a set of activities and their related costs. The division of the project into smaller and smaller tasks can be difficult, but is critical to managing the project and to scheduling success. Gross requirements for people, supplies, and equipment are also estimated in this planning phase.

The work breakdown structure typically decreases in size from top to bottom and is indented like this:

Level
1. Project
2. Major tasks in the project
3. Subtasks in major tasks
4. Activities (or "work packages") to be completed

This hierarchical framework can be illustrated with the development of Microsoft's operating system Windows 8. As we see in Figure 3.3, the project, creating a new operating system, is labeled 1.0. The first step is to identify the major tasks in the project (level 2). Three examples would be software design (1.1), cost management plan (1.2), and system testing (1.3). Two major subtasks for 1.1 are development of graphical user interfaces (GUIs) (1.1.1) and creating compatibility with previous versions of Windows (1.1.2). The major subtasks for 1.1.2 are level-4 activities, such as creating a team to handle compatibility with Windows 7 (1.1.2.1),

Figure 3.3
Work Breakdown Structure



creating a team for Windows Vista (1.1.2.2), and creating a team for Windows XP (1.1.2.3). There are usually many level-4 activities.

Project Scheduling

Project scheduling involves sequencing and allotting time to all project activities. At this stage, managers decide how long each activity will take and compute the resources needed at each stage of production. Managers may also chart separate schedules for personnel needs by type of skill (management, engineering, or pouring concrete, for example) and material needs.

One popular project scheduling approach is the Gantt chart. **Gantt charts** are low-cost means of helping managers make sure that (1) activities are planned, (2) order of performance is documented, (3) activity time estimates are recorded, and (4) overall project time is developed. As Figure 3.4 shows, Gantt charts are easy to understand. Horizontal bars are drawn for each project activity along a time line. This illustration of a routine servicing of a Delta jetliner during a 40-minute layover shows that Gantt charts also can be used for scheduling repetitive operations. In this case, the chart helps point out potential delays. The *OM in Action* box on Delta provides additional insights.

Gantt charts
Planning charts used to schedule resources and allocate time.

On simple projects, scheduling charts such as these permit managers to observe the progress of each activity and to spot and tackle problem areas. Gantt charts, though, do not adequately illustrate the interrelationships between the activities and the resources.

STUDENT TIP
Gantt charts are simple and visual, making them widely used.

PERT and CPM, the two widely used network techniques that we shall discuss shortly, *do* have the ability to consider precedence relationships and interdependency of activities. On complex projects, the scheduling of which is almost always computerized, PERT and CPM thus have an edge over the simpler Gantt charts. Even on huge projects, though, Gantt charts can be used as summaries of project status and may complement the other network approaches.

LO 3.1 *Use* a Gantt chart for scheduling

To summarize, whatever the approach taken by a project manager, project scheduling serves several purposes:

1. It shows the relationship of each activity to others and to the whole project.
2. It identifies the precedence relationships among activities.
3. It encourages the setting of realistic time and cost estimates for each activity.
4. It helps make better use of people, money, and material resources by identifying critical bottlenecks in the project.

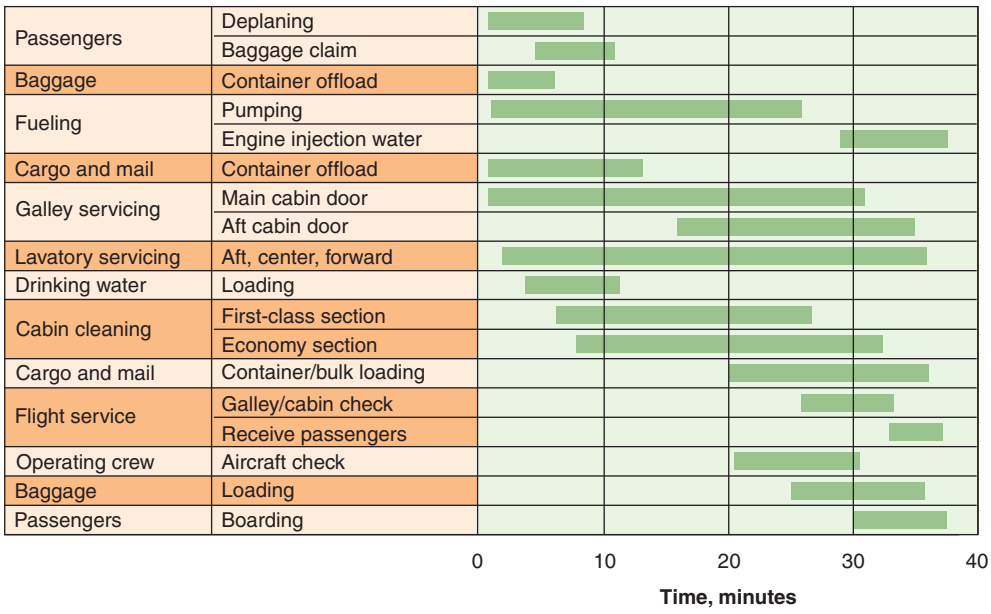


Figure **3.4**

Gantt Chart of Service Activities for a Delta Jet during a 40-Minute Layover

Delta saves $50 million a year with this turnaround time, which is a reduction from its traditional 60-minute routine.

OM in Action Delta's Ground Crew Orchestrates a Smooth Takeoff

Flight 574's engines screech its arrival as the jet lumbers down Richmond's taxiway with 140 passengers arriving from Atlanta. In 40 minutes, the plane is to be airborne again.

However, before this jet can depart, there is business to attend to: passengers, luggage, and cargo to unload and load; thousands of gallons of jet fuel and countless drinks to restock; cabin and restrooms to clean; toilet holding tanks to drain; and engines, wings, and landing gear to inspect.

The 10-person ground crew knows that a miscue anywhere—a broken cargo loader, lost baggage, misdirected passengers—can mean a late departure and trigger a chain reaction of headaches from Richmond to Atlanta to every destination of a connecting flight.

Carla Sutera, the operations manager for Delta's Richmond International Airport, views the turnaround operation like a pit boss awaiting a race car. Trained crews are in place for Flight 574 with baggage carts and tractors, hydraulic cargo loaders, a truck to load food and drinks, another to lift the cleanup crew, another to put fuel on, and a fourth to take water off. The "pit crew" usually performs so smoothly that most passengers never suspect the proportions of the effort. Gantt charts, such as the one in Figure 3.4, aid Delta and other airlines with the staffing and scheduling that are needed for this task.

Jeff Topping/Getty Images

Sources: Knight Ridder Tribune Business News (July 16, 2005) and (November 21, 2002).

Project Controlling

VIDEO 3.2
Project Management at Arnold Palmer Hospital

The control of projects, like the control of any management system, involves close monitoring of resources, costs, quality, and budgets. Control also means using a feedback loop to revise the project plan and having the ability to shift resources to where they are needed most. Computerized PERT/CPM reports and charts are widely available today from scores of competing software firms. Some of the more popular of these programs are Oracle Primavera (by Oracle), MindView (by Match Ware), HP Project (by Hewlett-Packard), Fast Track (by AEC Software), and Microsoft Project (by Microsoft Corp.), which we illustrate in this chapter.

STUDENT TIP
To use project management software, you first need to understand the next two sections in this chapter.

These programs produce a broad variety of reports, including (1) detailed cost breakdowns, (2) labor requirements, (3) cost and hour summaries, (4) raw material and expenditure forecasts, (5) variance reports, (6) time analysis reports, and (7) work status reports.

Courtesy Arnold Palmer Medical Center

Courtesy Arnold Palmer Medical Center

Construction of the new 11-story building at Arnold Palmer Hospital in Orlando, Florida, was an enormous project for the hospital administration. The photo on the left shows the first six floors under construction. The photo on the right shows the building as completed two years later. Prior to beginning actual construction, regulatory and funding issues added, as they do with most projects, substantial time to the overall project. Cities have zoning and parking issues; the EPA has drainage and waste issues; and regulatory authorities have their own requirements, as do issuers of bonds. The $100 million, 4-year project at Arnold Palmer Hospital is discussed in the Video Case Study at the end of this chapter.

OM in Action Agile Project Management at Mastek

Agile project management has changed the way that Mastek Corp., in Mumbai, India, develops its educational software products. On a traditional well-defined project, managers are actively involved in directing work and telling their team what needs to be done—a style often referred to as a step-by-step *waterfall* style of project management.

Agile project management is different. In the early stages, the project manager creates a high-level plan, based on outline requirements and a high-level view of the solution. From that point, the end project is created iteratively and incrementally, with each increment building on the output of steps preceding it.

The principles of agile are essentially communication and transparency. Instead of waiting for something to be delivered, with limited understanding of the desired end result, there are numerous checkpoints and feedback loops to track progress.

Agile provides Mastek the ability to keep costs under control. Without agile, the cost of quality increases. "It's much harder to correct mistakes when a software product is nearing its final phase of development," says a company executive. "It's much better to develop it as you go along. I think agile project management would help any software developer."

Sources: AMPG International (2015) and **www.cprime.com** (2012).

Controlling projects can be difficult. The stakes are high; cost overruns and unnecessary delays can occur due to poor planning, scheduling, and controls. Some projects are "well-defined," whereas others may be "ill-defined." Projects typically only become well-defined after detailed extensive initial planning and careful definition of required inputs, resources, processes, and outputs. Well-established projects where constraints are known (e.g., buildings and roads) and engineered products (e.g., airplanes and cars) with well-defined specifications and drawings may fall into this category. Well-defined projects are assumed to have changes small enough to be managed without substantially revising plans. They use what is called a *waterfall* approach, where the project progresses smoothly, in a step-by-step manner, through each phase to completion.

But many projects, such as software development (e.g., 3-D games) and new technology (e.g., landing the Mars land rover) are ill-defined. These projects require what is known as an *agile* style of management with collaboration and constant feedback to adjust to the many unknowns of the evolving technology and project specifications. The *OM in Action* box "Agile Project Management at Mastek" provides such an example. Most projects fall somewhere between waterfall and agile.

Project Management Techniques: PERT and CPM

Program evaluation and review technique (PERT) and the **critical path method (CPM)** were both developed in the 1950s to help managers schedule, monitor, and control large and complex projects. CPM arrived first, as a tool developed to assist in the building and maintenance of chemical plants at duPont. Independently, PERT was developed in 1958 for the U.S. Navy.

Program evaluation and review technique (PERT)
A project management technique that employs three time estimates for each activity.

Critical path method (CPM)
A project management technique that uses only one time factor per activity.

The Framework of PERT and CPM

PERT and CPM both follow six basic steps:

1. Define the project and prepare the work breakdown structure.
2. Develop the relationships among the activities. Decide which activities must precede and which must follow others.
3. Draw the network connecting all the activities.
4. Assign time and/or cost estimates to each activity.
5. Compute the *longest* time path through the network. This is called the **critical path**.
6. Use the network to help plan, schedule, monitor, and control the project.

Critical path
The computed *longest* time path(s) through a network.

Step 5, finding the critical path, is a major part of controlling a project. The activities on the critical path represent tasks that will delay the entire project if they are not completed on time. Managers can gain the flexibility needed to complete critical tasks by identifying

noncritical activities and replanning, rescheduling, and reallocating labor and financial resources.

Although PERT and CPM differ to some extent in terminology and in the construction of the network, their objectives are the same. Furthermore, the analysis used in both techniques is very similar. The major difference is that PERT employs three time estimates for each activity. These time estimates are used to compute expected values and standard deviations for the activity. CPM makes the assumption that activity times are known with certainty and hence requires only one time factor for each activity.

For purposes of illustration, the rest of this section concentrates on a discussion of PERT. Most of the comments and procedures described, however, apply just as well to CPM.

PERT and CPM are important because they can help answer questions such as the following about projects with thousands of activities:

1. When will the entire project be completed?
2. What are the critical activities or tasks in the project—that is, which activities will delay the entire project if they are late?
3. Which are the noncritical activities—the ones that can run late without delaying the whole project's completion?
4. What is the probability that the project will be completed by a specific date?
5. At any particular date, is the project on schedule, behind schedule, or ahead of schedule?
6. On any given date, is the money spent equal to, less than, or greater than the budgeted amount?
7. Are there enough resources available to finish the project on time?
8. If the project is to be finished in a shorter amount of time, what is the best way to accomplish this goal at the least cost?

Network Diagrams and Approaches

The first step in a PERT or CPM network is to divide the entire project into significant activities in accordance with the work breakdown structure. There are two approaches for drawing a project network: **activity on node (AON)** and **activity on arrow (AOA)**. Under the AON convention, *nodes* designate activities. Under AOA, *arrows* represent activities. Activities consume time and resources. The basic difference between AON and AOA is that the nodes in an AON diagram represent activities. In an AOA network, the nodes represent the starting and finishing times of an activity and are also called *events*. So nodes in AOA consume neither time nor resources.

Activity-on-node (AON)
A network diagram in which nodes designate activities.

Activity-on-arrow (AOA)
A network diagram in which arrows designate activities.

Although both AON and AOA are popular in practice, many of the project management software packages, including Microsoft Project, use AON networks. For this reason, although we illustrate both types of networks in the next examples, we focus on AON networks in subsequent discussions in this chapter.

Example 1

PREDECESSOR RELATIONSHIPS FOR POLLUTION CONTROL AT MILWAUKEE PAPER

Milwaukee Paper Manufacturing had long delayed the expense of installing advanced computerized air pollution control equipment in its facility. But when the board of directors adopted a new proactive policy on sustainability, it did not just *authorize* the budget for the state-of-the-art equipment. It directed the plant manager, Julie Ann Williams, to complete the installation in time for a major announcement of the policy, on Earth Day, exactly 16 weeks away! Under strict deadline from her bosses, Williams needs to be sure that installation of the filtering system progresses smoothly and on time.

Given the following information, develop a table showing activity precedence relationships.

APPROACH ► Milwaukee Paper has identified the eight activities that need to be performed in order for the project to be completed. When the project begins, two activities can be simultaneously started: building the internal components for the device (activity A) and the modifications necessary for the floor and roof (activity B). The construction of the collection stack (activity C) can begin when

the internal components are completed. Pouring the concrete floor and installation of the frame (activity D) can be started as soon as the internal components are completed and the roof and floor have been modified.

After the collection stack has been constructed, two activities can begin: building the high-temperature burner (activity E) and installing the pollution control system (activity F). The air pollution device can be installed (activity G) after the concrete floor has been poured, the frame has been installed, and the high-temperature burner has been built. Finally, after the control system and pollution device have been installed, the system can be inspected and tested (activity H).

SOLUTION ▶ Activities and precedence relationships may seem rather confusing when they are presented in this descriptive form. It is therefore convenient to list all the activity information in a table, as shown in Table 3.1. We see in the table that activity A is listed as an *immediate predecessor* of activity C. Likewise, both activities D and E must be performed prior to starting activity G.

TABLE 3.1 Milwaukee Paper Manufacturing's Activities and Predecessors

ACTIVITY	DESCRIPTION	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSORS
A	Build internal components	—
B	Modify roof and floor	—
C	Construct collection stack	A
D	Pour concrete and install frame	A, B
E	Build high-temperature burner	C
F	Install pollution control system	C
G	Install air pollution device	D, E
H	Inspect and test	F, G

INSIGHT ▶ To complete a network, all predecessors must be clearly defined.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ What is the impact on this sequence of activities if Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) approval is required after *Inspect and Test?* [Answer: The immediate predecessor for the new activity would be H, *Inspect and Test*, with *EPA approval* as the last activity.]

Activity-on-Node Example

Note that in Example 1, we only list the *immediate* predecessors for each activity. For instance, in Table 3.1, because activity A precedes activity C, and activity C precedes activity E, the fact that activity A precedes activity E is *implicit*. This relationship need not be explicitly shown in the activity precedence relationships.

LO 3.2 *Draw* AOA and AON networks

When there are many activities in a project with fairly complicated precedence relationships, it is difficult for an individual to comprehend the complexity of the project from just the tabular information. In such cases, a visual representation of the project, using a *project network*, is convenient and useful. A project network is a diagram of all the activities and the precedence relationships that exist between these activities in a project. Example 2 illustrates how to construct an AON project network for Milwaukee Paper Manufacturing.

It is convenient to have the project network start and finish with a unique node. In the Milwaukee Paper example, it turns out that a unique activity, H, is the last activity in the project. We therefore automatically have a unique ending node.

In situations in which a project has multiple ending activities, we include a "dummy" ending activity. We illustrate this type of situation in Solved Problem 3.1 at the end of this chapter.

Example 2

AON GRAPH FOR MILWAUKEE PAPER

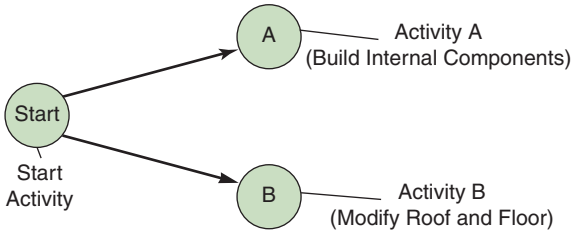
Draw the AON network for Milwaukee Paper, using the data in Example 1.

APPROACH ► In the AON approach, we denote each activity by a node. The lines, or arrows, represent the precedence relationships between the activities.

SOLUTION ► In this example, there are two activities (A and B) that do not have any predecessors. We draw separate nodes for each of these activities, as shown in Figure 3.5. Although not required, it is usually convenient to have a unique starting activity for a project. We have therefore included a *dummy activity* called *Start* in Figure 3.5. This **dummy activity** does not really exist and takes up zero time and resources. Activity *Start* is an immediate predecessor for both activities A and B, and it serves as the unique starting activity for the entire project.

Dummy activity
An activity having no time that is inserted into a network to maintain the logic of the network.

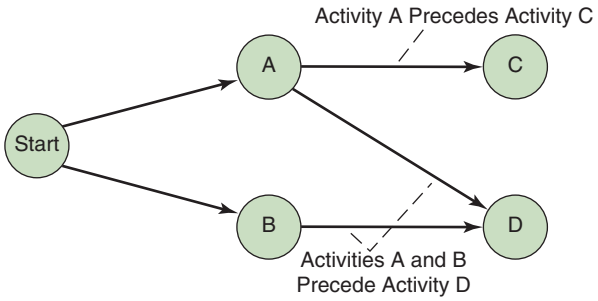
Figure 3.5
Beginning AON Network for Milwaukee Paper



We now show the precedence relationships using lines with arrow symbols. For example, an arrow from activity Start to activity A indicates that Start is a predecessor for activity A. In a similar fashion, we draw an arrow from Start to B.

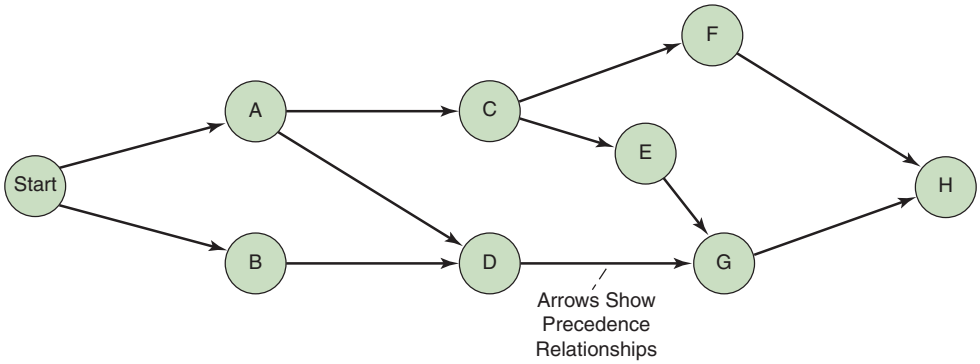
Next, we add a new node for activity C. Because activity A precedes activity C, we draw an arrow from node A to node C (see Figure 3.6). Likewise, we first draw a node to represent activity D. Then, because activities A and B both precede activity D, we draw arrows from A to D and from B to D (see Figure 3.6).

Figure 3.6
Intermediate AON Network for Milwaukee Paper



We proceed in this fashion, adding a separate node for each activity and a separate line for each precedence relationship that exists. The complete AON project network for the Milwaukee Paper Manufacturing project is shown in Figure 3.7.

Figure 3.7
Complete AON Network for Milwaukee Paper



INSIGHT ► Drawing a project network properly takes some time and experience. We would like the lines to be straight and arrows to move to the right when possible.

LEARNING EXERCISE ► If *EPA Approval* occurs after *Inspect and Test*, what is the impact on the graph? [Answer: A straight line is extended to the right beyond H (with a node I added) to reflect the additional activity.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ► 3.4a, 3.5, 3.8, 3.9, 3.10, 3.11a, 3.12 (3.13–3.14 are available in MyOMLab)

Activity-on-Arrow Example

In an AOA project network we can represent activities by arrows. A node represents an *event*, which marks the start or completion time of an activity. We usually identify an event (node) by a number.

Example 3

ACTIVITY-ON-ARROW FOR MILWAUKEE PAPER

Draw the complete AOA project network for Milwaukee Paper's problem.

APPROACH ▶ Using the data from Table 3.1 in Example 1, draw one activity at a time, starting with A.

SOLUTION ▶ We see that activity A starts at event 1 and ends at event 2. Likewise, activity B starts at event 1 and ends at event 3. Activity C, whose only immediate predecessor is activity A, starts at node 2 and ends at node 4. Activity D, however, has two predecessors (i.e., A and B). Hence, we need both activities A and B to end at event 3, so that activity D can start at that event. However, we cannot have multiple activities with common starting and ending nodes in an AOA network. To overcome this difficulty, in such cases, we may need to add a dummy line (activity) to enforce the precedence relationship. The dummy activity, shown in Figure 3.8 as a dashed line, is inserted between events 2 and 3 to make the diagram reflect the precedence between A and D. The remainder of the AOA project network for Milwaukee Paper's example is also shown.

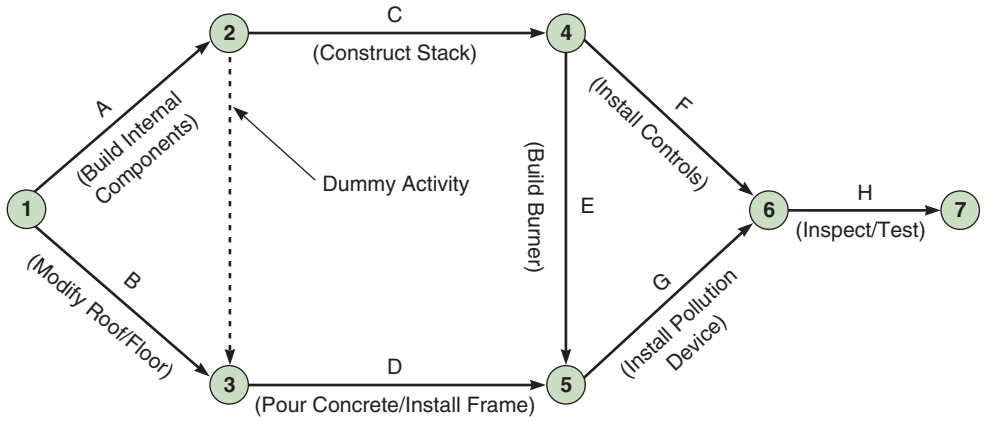


Figure **3.8**

Complete AOA Network (with Dummy Activity) for Milwaukee Paper

STUDENT TIP

The dummy activity consumes no time, but note how it changes precedence. Now activity D cannot begin until *both* B and the dummy are complete.

INSIGHT ▶ Dummy activities are common in AOA networks. They do not really exist in the project and take zero time.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ A new activity, *EPA Approval*, follows activity H. Add it to Figure 3.8. [Answer: Insert an arrowed line from node 7, which ends at a new node 8, and is labeled I (EPA Approval).]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 3.4b, 3.6, 3.7

Determining the Project Schedule

Look back at Figure 3.7 (in Example 2) for a moment to see Milwaukee Paper's completed AON project network. Once this project network has been drawn to show all the activities and their precedence relationships, the next step is to determine the project schedule. That is, we need to identify the planned starting and ending time for each activity.

Let us assume Milwaukee Paper estimates the time required for each activity, in weeks, as shown in Table 3.2. The table indicates that the total time for all eight of the company's activities is 25 weeks. However, because several activities can take place simultaneously, it is clear that the total project completion time may be less than 25 weeks. To find out just how long the project will take, we perform the **critical path analysis** for the network.

Critical path analysis

A process that helps determine a project schedule.

TABLE 3.2 Time Estimates for Milwaukee Paper Manufacturing

ACTIVITY	DESCRIPTION	TIME (WEEKS)
A	Build internal components	2
B	Modify roof and floor	3
C	Construct collection stack	2
D	Pour concrete and install frame	4
E	Build high-temperature burner	4
F	Install pollution control system	3
G	Install air pollution device	5
H	Inspect and test	2
	Total time (weeks)	25

STUDENT TIP

Does this mean the project will take 25 weeks to complete? No. Don't forget that several of the activities are being performed at the same time. It would take 25 weeks if they were done sequentially.

As mentioned earlier, the critical path is the *longest* time path through the network. To find the critical path, we calculate two distinct starting and ending times for each activity. These are defined as follows:

Earliest start (ES) = earliest time at which an activity can start, assuming all predecessors have been completed
Earliest finish (EF) = earliest time at which an activity can be finished
Latest start (LS) = latest time at which an activity can start so as to not delay the completion time of the entire project
Latest finish (LF) = latest time by which an activity has to finish so as to not delay the completion time of the entire project

We use a two-pass process, consisting of a forward pass and a backward pass, to determine these time schedules for each activity. The early start and finish times (ES and EF) are determined during the forward pass. The late start and finish times (LS and LF) are determined during the backward pass.

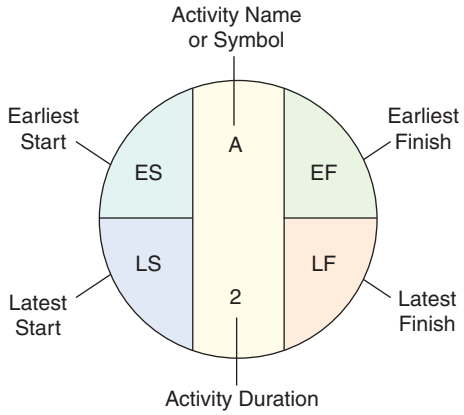
Forward pass
A process that identifies all the early times.

LO 3.3 *Complete* forward and backward passes for a project

Forward Pass

To clearly show the activity schedules on the project network, we use the notation shown in Figure 3.9. The ES of an activity is shown in the top left corner of the node denoting that activity. The EF is shown in the top right corner. The latest times, LS and LF, are shown in the bottom-left and bottom-right corners, respectively.

Figure 3.9
Notation Used in Nodes for Forward and Backward Pass



Earliest Start Time Rule Before an activity can start, *all* its immediate predecessors must be finished:

- If an activity has only a single immediate predecessor, its ES equals the EF of the predecessor.
- If an activity has multiple immediate predecessors, its ES is the maximum of all EF values of its predecessors. That is:

$$\text{ES} = \text{Max}\ \{\text{EF of all immediate predecessors}\} \quad (3\text{-}1)$$

STUDENT TIP

All predecessor activities must be completed before an acitivity can begin.

Earliest Finish Time Rule The earliest finish time (EF) of an activity is the sum of its earliest start time (ES) and its activity time. That is:

$$\text{EF} = \text{ES} + \text{Activity time} \quad (3\text{-}2)$$

Example 4

COMPUTING EARLIEST START AND FINISH TIMES FOR MILWAUKEE PAPER

Calculate the earliest start and finish times for the activities in the Milwaukee Paper Manufacturing project.

APPROACH ▶ Use Table 3.2, which contains the activity times. Complete the project network for the company's project, along with the ES and EF values for all activities.

SOLUTION ▶ With the help of Figure 3.10, we describe how these values are calculated.

Because activity Start has no predecessors, we begin by setting its ES to 0. That is, activity Start can begin at time 0, which is the same as the beginning of week 1. If activity Start has an ES of 0, its EF is also 0, since its activity time is 0.

Next, we consider activities A and B, both of which have only Start as an immediate predecessor. Using the earliest start time rule, the ES for both activities A and B equals zero, which is the EF of activity Start. Now, using the earliest finish time rule, the EF for A is 2 (= 0 + 2), and the EF for B is 3 (= 0 + 3).

Since activity A precedes activity C, the ES of C equals the EF of A (= 2). The EF of C is therefore 4 (= 2 + 2).

We now come to activity D. Both activities A and B are immediate predecessors for D. Whereas A has an EF of 2, activity B has an EF of 3. Using the earliest start time rule, we compute the ES of activity D as follows:

$$\text{ES of D} = \text{Max}\{\text{EF of A, EF of B}\} = \text{Max}\ (2, 3) = 3$$

The EF of D equals 7 (= 3 + 4). Next, both activities E and F have activity C as their only immediate predecessor. Therefore, the ES for both E and F equals 4 (= EF of C). The EF of E is 8 (= 4 + 4), and the EF of F is 7 (= 4 + 3).

Activity G has both activities D and E as predecessors. Using the earliest start time rule, its ES is therefore the maximum of the EF of D and the EF of E. Hence, the ES of activity G equals 8 (= maximum of 7 and 8), and its EF equals 13 (= 8 + 5).

Finally, we come to activity H. Because it also has two predecessors, F and G, the ES of H is the maximum EF of these two activities. That is, the ES of H equals 13 (= maximum of 13 and 7). This implies that the EF of H is 15 (= 13 + 2). Because H is the last activity in the project, this also implies that the earliest time in which the entire project can be completed is 15 weeks.

INSIGHT ▶ The ES of an activity that has only one predecessor is simply the EF of that predecessor. For an activity with more than one predecessor, we must carefully examine the EFs of all immediate predecessors and choose the largest one.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ A new activity I, *EPA Approval*, takes 1 week. Its predecessor is activity H. What are I's ES and EF? [Answer: 15, 16]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 3.15, 3.16, 3.19c

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch03Ex4.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

Although the forward pass allows us to determine the earliest project completion time, it does not identify the critical path. To identify this path, we need to now conduct the backward pass to determine the LS and LF values for all activities.

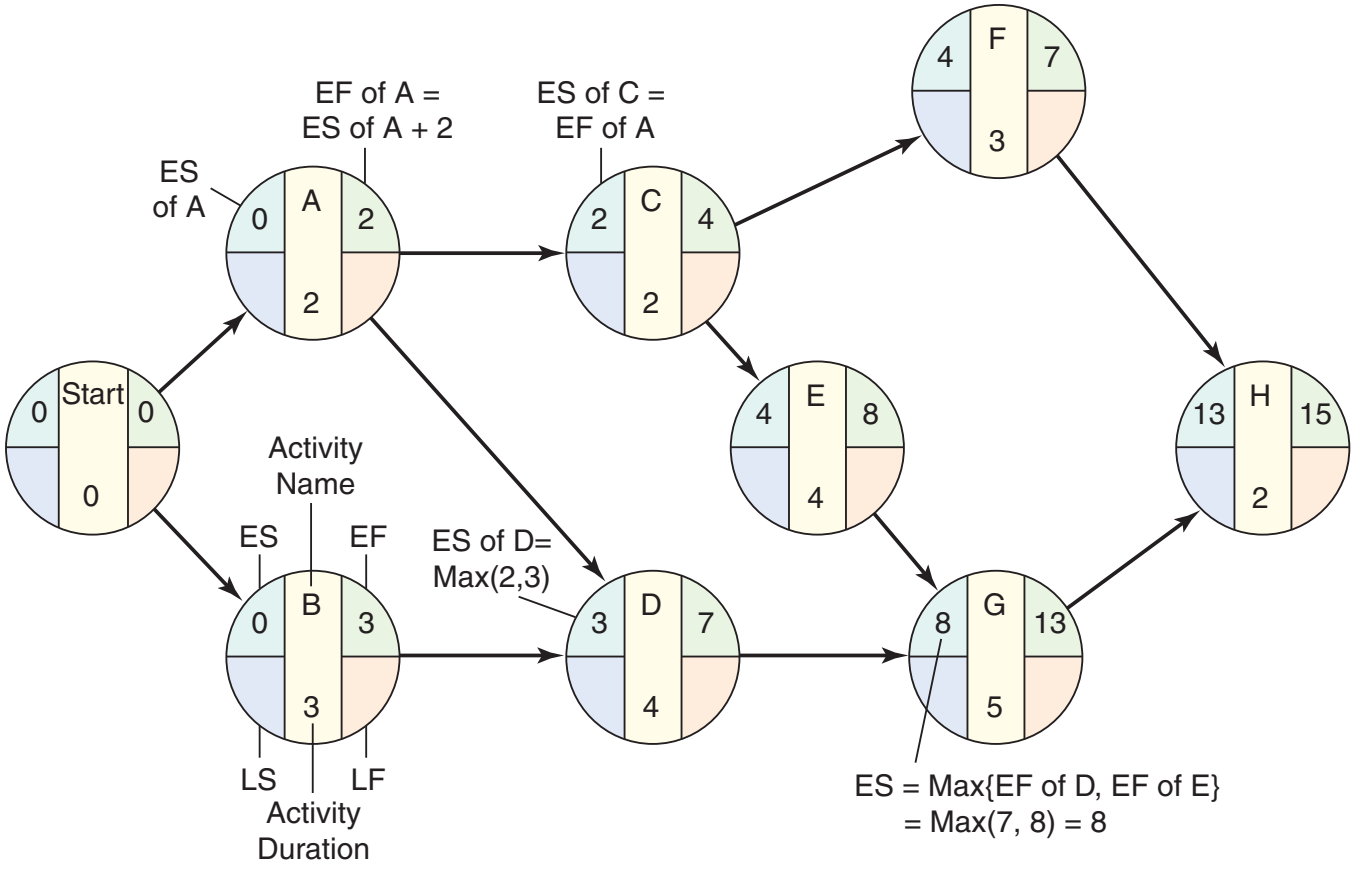


Figure **3.10** **Earliest Start and Earliest Finish Times for Milwaukee Paper**

Backward Pass

Backward pass
An activity that finds all the late start and late finish times.

Just as the forward pass began with the first activity in the project, the **backward pass** begins with the last activity in the project. For each activity, we first determine its LF value, followed by its LS value. The following two rules are used in this process.

Latest Finish Time Rule This rule is again based on the fact that before an activity can start, all its immediate predecessors must be finished:

- If an activity is an immediate predecessor for just a single activity, its LF equals the LS of the activity that immediately follows it.
- If an activity is an immediate predecessor to more than one activity, its LF is the minimum of all LS values of all activities that immediately follow it. That is:

$$\text{LF} = \text{Min}\{\text{LS of all immediate following activities}\} \quad (3\text{-}3)$$

Latest Start Time Rule The latest start time (LS) of an activity is the difference of its latest finish time (LF) and its activity time. That is:

$$\text{LS} = \text{LF} - \text{Activity time} \quad (3\text{-}4)$$

Example 5

COMPUTING LATEST START AND FINISH TIMES FOR MILWAUKEE PAPER

Calculate the latest start and finish times for each activity in Milwaukee Paper's pollution project.

APPROACH ► Use Figure 3.10 as a beginning point. Overlay 1 of Figure 3.10 shows the complete project network for Milwaukee Paper, along with added LS and LF values for all activities. In what follows, we see how these values were calculated.

SOLUTION ▶ We begin by assigning an LF value of 15 weeks for activity H. That is, we specify that the latest finish time for the entire project is the same as its earliest finish time. Using the latest start time rule, the LS of activity H is equal to 13 (= 15 − 2).

Because activity H is the lone succeeding activity for both activities F and G, the LF for both F and G equals 13. This implies that the LS of G is 8 (= 13 − 5), and the LS of F is 10 (= 13 − 3).

Proceeding in this fashion, we see that the LF of E is 8 (= LS of G), and its LS is 4 (= 8 − 4). Likewise, the LF of D is 8 (= LS of G), and its LS is 4 (= 8 − 4).

We now consider activity C, which is an immediate predecessor to two activities: E and F. Using the latest finish time rule, we compute the LF of activity C as follows:

$$\text{LF of C} = \text{Min}\{\text{LS of E, LS of F}\} = \text{Min}(4, 10) = 4$$

The LS of C is computed as 2 (= 4 − 2). Next, we compute the LF of B as 4 (= LS of D) and its LS as 1 (= 4 − 3).

We now consider activity A. We compute its LF as 2 (= minimum of LS of C and LS of D). Hence, the LS of activity A is 0 (= 2 − 2). Finally, both the LF and LS of activity Start are equal to 0.

INSIGHT ▶ The LF of an activity that is the predecessor of only one activity is just the LS of that following activity. If the activity is the predecessor to more than one activity, its LF is the smallest LS value of all activities that follow immediately.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ A new activity I, *EPA Approval*, takes 1 week. Its predecessor is activity H. What are I's LS and LF? [Answer: 15, 16]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 3.15, 3.19c

Calculating Slack Time and Identifying the Critical Path(s)

After we have computed the earliest and latest times for all activities, it is a simple matter to find the amount of **slack time** that each activity has. Slack is the length of time an activity can be delayed without delaying the entire project. Mathematically:

$$\text{Slack} = \text{LS} - \text{ES} \quad \text{or} \quad \text{Slack} = \text{LF} - \text{EF} \tag{3-5}$$

Slack time
Free time for an activity. Also referred to as free float or free slack.

Example 6

CALCULATING SLACK TIMES FOR MILWAUKEE PAPER

Calculate the slack for the activities in the Milwaukee Paper project.

APPROACH ▶ Start with the data in Overlay 1 of Figure 3.10 in Example 5 and develop Table 3.3 one line at a time.

SOLUTION ▶ Table 3.3 summarizes the ES, EF, LS, LF, and slack time for all of the firm's activities. Activity B, for example, has 1 week of slack time because its LS is 1 and its ES is 0 (alternatively, its LF is 4 and its EF is 3). This means that activity B can be delayed by up to 1 week, and the whole project can still be finished in 15 weeks.

On the other hand, activities A, C, E, G, and H have *no* slack time. This means that none of them can be delayed without delaying the entire project. Conversely, if plant manager Julie Ann Williams wants to reduce the total project times, she will have to reduce the length of one of these activities.

Overlay 2 of Figure 3.10 shows the slack computed for each activity.

INSIGHT ▶ Slack may be computed from either early/late starts or early/late finishes. The key is to find which activities have zero slack.

TABLE 3.3 Milwaukee Paper's Schedule and Slack Times

ACTIVITY	ACTIVITY TIME	EARLIEST START ES	EARLIEST FINISH EF	LATEST START LS	LATEST FINISH LF	SLACK LS – ES	ON CRITICAL PATH
A	2	0	2	0	2	0	Yes
B	3	0	3	1	4	1	No
C	2	2	4	2	4	0	Yes
D	4	3	7	4	8	1	No
E	4	4	8	4	8	0	Yes
F	3	4	7	10	13	6	No
G	5	8	13	8	13	0	Yes
H	2	13	15	13	15	0	Yes

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ A new activity I, *EPA Approval*, follows activity H and takes 1 week. Is it on the critical path? [Answer: Yes, it's LS – ES = 0]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 3.8d, 3.15d, 3.19c

ACTIVE MODEL 3.1 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 3.1 in MyOMLab.

LO 3.4 *Determine* a critical path

The activities with zero slack are called *critical activities* and are said to be on the critical path. The critical path is a continuous path through the project network that:

- Starts at the first activity in the project (Start in our example).
- Terminates at the last activity in the project (H in our example).
- Includes only critical activities (i.e., activities with no slack time).

Example 7

SHOWING CRITICAL PATH WITH BLUE ARROWS

Show Milwaukee Paper's critical path and find the project completion time.

APPROACH ▶ We use Table 3.3 and Overlay 3 of Figure 3.10. Overlay 3 of Figure 3.10 indicates that the total project completion time of 15 weeks corresponds to the longest path in the network. That path is Start-A-C-E-G-H in network form. It is shown with thick blue arrows.

INSIGHT ▶ The critical path follows the activities with slack = 0. This is considered the longest path through the network.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Why are activities B, D, and F not on the path with the thick blue line? [Answer: They are not critical and have slack values of 1, 1, and 6 weeks, respectively.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 3.5–3.11, 3.16, 3.19b, 3.21a

Total Slack Time Look again at the project network in Overlay 3 of Figure 3.10. Consider activities B and D, which have slack of 1 week each. Does it mean that we can delay *each* activity by 1 week, and still complete the project in 15 weeks? The answer is no.

Let's assume that activity B is delayed by 1 week. It has used up its slack of 1 week and now has an EF of 4. This implies that activity D now has an ES of 4 and an EF of 8. Note that these are also its LS and LF values, respectively. That is, activity D also has no slack time now. Essentially, the slack of 1 week that activities B and D had is, for that path, *shared* between them. Delaying either activity by 1 week causes not only that activity, but also the other activity, to lose its slack. This type of a slack time is referred to as *total slack*. Typically, when two or more noncritical activities appear successively in a path, they share total slack.

Tim Coggin/Alamy

To plan, monitor, and control the huge number of details involved in sponsoring a rock festival attended by more than 100,000 fans, managers use Microsoft Project and the tools discussed in this chapter. The *Video Case Study* "Managing Hard Rock's Rockfest," at the end of the chapter, provides more details of the management task.

Variability in Activity Times

In identifying all earliest and latest times so far, and the associated critical path(s), we have adopted the CPM approach of assuming that all activity times are known and fixed constants. That is, there is no variability in activity times. However, in practice, it is likely that activity completion times vary depending on various factors.

For example, building internal components (activity A) for Milwaukee Paper Manufacturing is estimated to finish in 2 weeks. Clearly, supply-chain issues such as late arrival of materials, absence of key personnel, and so on could delay this activity. Suppose activity A actually ends up taking 3 weeks. Because A is on the critical path, the entire project will now be delayed by 1 week to 16 weeks. If we had anticipated completion of this project in 15 weeks, we would obviously miss our Earth Day deadline.

Although some activities may be relatively less prone to delays, others could be extremely susceptible to delays. For example, activity B (modify roof and floor) could be heavily dependent on weather conditions. A spell of bad weather could significantly affect its completion time.

STUDENT TIP

PERT's ability to handle three time estimates for each activity enables us to compute the probability that we can complete the project by a target date.

This means that we cannot ignore the impact of variability in activity times when deciding the schedule for a project. PERT addresses this issue.

Three Time Estimates in PERT

In PERT, we employ a probability distribution based on three time estimates for each activity, as follows:

Optimistic time (a) = time an activity will take if everything goes as planned. In estimating this value, there should be only a small probability (say, 1/100) that the activity time will be $< a$.

Pessimistic time (b) = time an activity will take assuming very unfavorable conditions. In estimating this value, there should also be only a small probability (also 1/100) that the activity time will be $> b$.

Most likely time (m) = most realistic estimate of the time required to complete an activity.

Optimistic time
The "best" activity completion time that could be obtained in a PERT network.

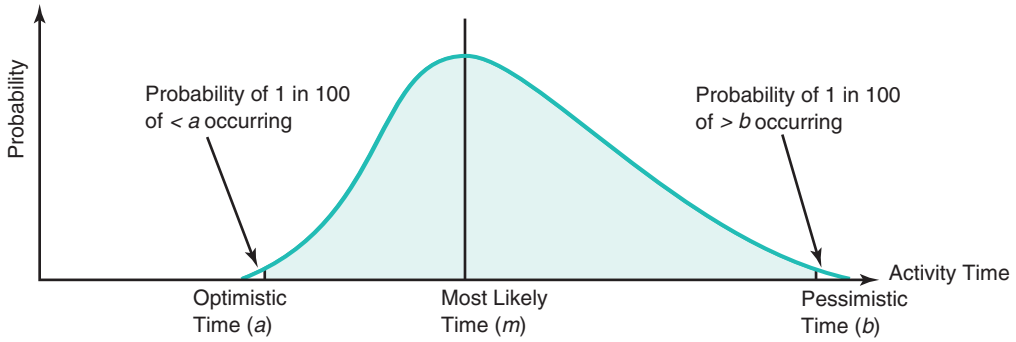
Pessimistic time
The "worst" activity time that could be expected in a PERT network.

Most likely time
The most probable time to complete an activity in a PERT network.

When using PERT, we often assume that activity time estimates follow the beta probability distribution (see Figure 3.11). This continuous distribution is often appropriate for determining the expected value and variance for activity completion times.

Figure 3.11

Beta Probability Distribution with Three Time Estimates



To find the *expected activity time*, t, the beta distribution weights the three time estimates as follows:

$$t = (a + 4m + b)/6 \tag{3-6}$$

That is, the most likely time (m) is given four times the weight as the optimistic time (a) and pessimistic time (b). The time estimate t computed using Equation (3-6) for each activity is used in the project network to compute all earliest and latest times.

To compute the *dispersion* or *variance of activity completion time*, we use the formula:[1]

$$\text{Variance} = [(b - a)/6]^2 \tag{3-7}$$

Example 8

EXPECTED TIMES AND VARIANCES FOR MILWAUKEE PAPER

Julie Ann Williams and the project management team at Milwaukee Paper want an expected time and variance for Activity F (Installing the Pollution Control System) where:

$$a = 1 \text{ week}, m = 2 \text{ weeks}, b = 9 \text{ weeks}$$

APPROACH ▶ Use Equations (3–6) and (3–7) to compute the expected time and variance for F.

SOLUTION ▶ The expected time for Activity F is:

$$t = \frac{a + 4m + b}{6} = \frac{1 + 4(2) + 9}{6} = \frac{18}{6} = 3 \text{ weeks}$$

LO 3.5 *Calculate* the variance of activity times

The variance for Activity F is:

$$\text{Variance} = \left[\frac{(b - a)}{6}\right]^2 = \left[\frac{(9 - 1)}{6}\right]^2 = \left(\frac{8}{6}\right)^2 = \frac{64}{36} = 1.78$$

INSIGHT ▶ Williams now has information that allows her to understand and manage Activity F. The expected time is, in fact, the activity time used in our earlier computation and identification of the critical path.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Review the expected times and variances for all of the other activities in the project. These are shown in Table 3.4.

TABLE 3.4 Time Estimates (in weeks) for Milwaukee Paper's Project

ACTIVITY	OPTIMISTIC a	MOST LIKELY m	PESSIMISTIC b	EXPECTED TIME $t = (a + 4m + b)/6$	VARIANCE $[(b - a)/6]^2$
A	1	2	3	2	$[(3 - 1)/6]^2 = 4/36 = .11$
B	2	3	4	3	$[(4 - 2)/6]^2 = 4/36 = .11$
C	1	2	3	2	$[(3 - 1)/6]^2 = 4/36 = .11$
D	2	4	6	4	$[(6 - 2)/6]^2 = 16/36 = .44$
E	1	4	7	4	$[(7 - 1)/6]^2 = 36/36 = 1.00$
F	1	2	9	3	$[(9 - 1)/6]^2 = 64/36 = 1.78$
G	3	4	11	5	$[(11 - 3)/6]^2 = 64/36 = 1.78$
H	1	2	3	2	$[(3 - 1)/6]^2 = 4/36 = .11$

STUDENT TIP

Can you see why the variance is higher in some activities than in others? Note the spread between the optimistic and pessimistic times.

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 3.17a, b, 3.18, 3.19a, 3.20a (3.26b, 3.27 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File Ch03Ex8.xls can be found in MyOMLab.

Kim Hong-Ji/Reuters

Here we see a ship being built at the Hyundai shipyard, Asia's largest shipbuilder, in Korea. Managing this project uses the same techniques as managing the remodeling of a store, installing a new production line, or implementing a new computer system.

Probability of Project Completion

The critical path analysis helped us determine that Milwaukee Paper's expected project completion time is 15 weeks. Julie Ann Williams knows, however, that there is significant variation in the time estimates for several activities. Variation in activities that are on the critical path can affect the overall project completion time—possibly delaying it. This is one occurrence that worries the plant manager considerably.

PERT uses the variance of critical path activities to help determine the variance of the overall project. Project variance is computed by summing variances of *critical* activities:

$$\sigma_p^2 = \text{Project variance} = \Sigma(\text{variances of activities on critical path}) \quad (3\text{-}8)$$

Example 9

COMPUTING PROJECT VARIANCE AND STANDARD DEVIATION FOR MILWAUKEE PAPER

Milwaukee Paper's managers now wish to know the project's variance and standard deviation.

APPROACH ▶ Because the activities are independent, we can add the variances of the activities on the critical path and then take the square root to determine the project's standard deviation.

SOLUTION ▶ From Example 8 (Table 3.4), we have the variances of all of the activities on the critical path. Specifically, we know that the variance of activity A is 0.11, variance of activity C is 0.11, variance of activity E is 1.00, variance of activity G is 1.78, and variance of activity H is 0.11.

Compute the total project variance and project standard deviation:

$$\text{Project variance}\,(\sigma_p^2) = 0.11 + 0.11 + 1.00 + 1.78 + 0.11 = 3.11$$

which implies:

$$\text{Project standard deviation}\,(\sigma_p) = \sqrt{\text{Project variance}} = \sqrt{3.11} = 1.76 \text{ weeks}$$

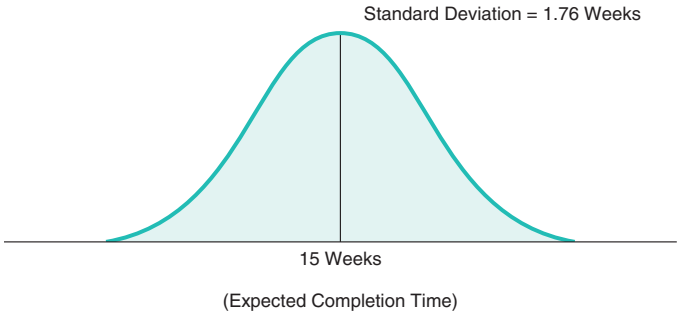
INSIGHT ▶ Management now has an estimate not only of expected completion time for the project but also of the standard deviation of that estimate.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the variance for activity A is actually 0.30 (instead of 0.11), what is the new project standard deviation? [Answer: 1.817.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 3.17e (3.24 is available in MyOMLab)

Figure 3.12

Probability Distribution for Project Completion Times at Milwaukee Paper



How can this information be used to help answer questions regarding the probability of finishing the project on time? PERT makes two more assumptions: (1) total project completion times follow a normal probability distribution, and (2) activity times are statistically independent. With these assumptions, the bell-shaped normal curve shown in Figure 3.12 can be used to represent project completion dates. This normal curve implies that there is a 50% chance that the manufacturer's project completion time will be less than 15 weeks and a 50% chance that it will exceed 15 weeks.

Example 10

PROBABILITY OF COMPLETING A PROJECT ON TIME

Julie Ann Williams would like to find the probability that her project will be finished on or before the 16-week Earth Day deadline.

APPROACH ▶ To do so, she needs to determine the appropriate area under the normal curve. This is the area to the left of the 16th week.

SOLUTION ▶ The standard normal equation can be applied as follows:

$$Z = (\text{Due date} - \text{Expected date of completion})/\sigma_p$$
$$= (16 \text{ weeks} - 15 \text{ weeks})/1.76 \text{ weeks} = 0.57 \quad (3\text{-}9)$$

STUDENT TIP

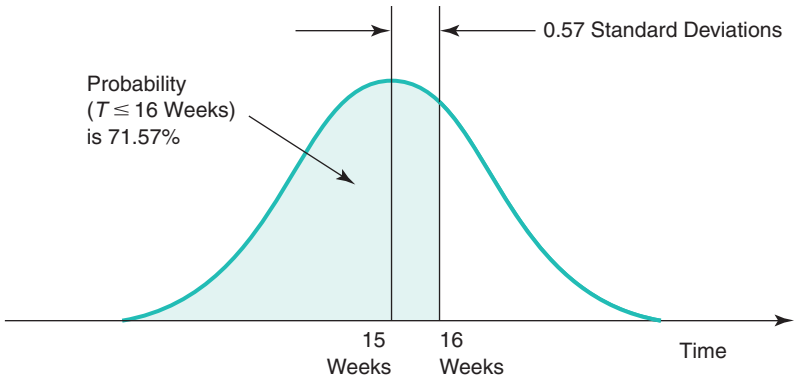
Here is a chance to review your statistical skills and use of a normal distribution table (Appendix I).

where Z is the number of standard deviations the due date or target date lies from the mean or expected date.

Referring to the Normal Table in Appendix I (alternatively using the Excel formula =NORMSDIST(0.57)), we find a Z-value of 0.57 to the right of the mean indicates a probability of 0.7157. Thus, there is a 71.57% chance that the pollution control equipment can be put in place in 16 weeks or less. This is shown in Figure 3.13.

Figure 3.13

Probability That Milwaukee Paper Will Meet the 16-Week Deadline



INSIGHT ▶ The shaded area to the left of the 16th week (71.57%) represents the probability that the project will be completed in less than 16 weeks.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ What is the probability that the project will be completed on or before the 17th week? [Answer: About 87.2%.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 3.17f, 3.19d, 3.20d, 3.21b, 3.23 (3.25, 3.26e,f,g are available in MyOMLab)

Determining Project Completion Time for a Given Confidence Level Let's say Julie Ann Williams is worried that there is only a 71.57% chance that the pollution control equipment can be put in place in 16 weeks or less. She thinks that it may be possible to plead with the board of directors for more time. However, before she approaches the board, she wants to arm herself with sufficient information about the project. Specifically, she wants to find the deadline by which she has a 99% chance of completing the project. She hopes to use her analysis to convince the board to agree to this extended deadline, even though she is aware of the public relations damage the delay will cause.

Clearly, this due date would be greater than 16 weeks. However, what is the exact value of this new due date? To answer this question, we again use the assumption that Milwaukee Paper's project completion time follows a normal probability distribution with a mean of 15 weeks and a standard deviation of 1.76 weeks.

Example 11

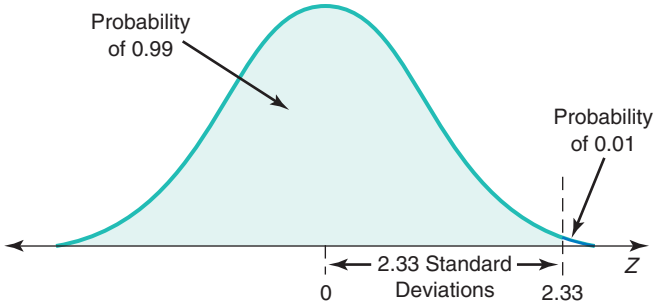
COMPUTING PROBABILITY FOR ANY COMPLETION DATE

Julie Ann Williams wants to find the due date that gives her company's project a 99% chance of *on-time* completion.

APPROACH ▶ She first needs to compute the Z-value corresponding to 99%, as shown in Figure 3.14. Mathematically, this is similar to Example 10, except the unknown is now the due date rather than Z.

Figure **3.14**

Z-Value for 99% Probability of Project Completion at Milwaukee Paper



SOLUTION ▶ Referring again to the Normal Table in Appendix I (alternatively using the Excel formula =NORMSINV(0.99)), we identify a Z-value of 2.33 as being closest to the probability of 0.99. That is, Julie Ann Williams's due date should be 2.33 standard deviations above the mean project completion time. Starting with the standard normal equation [see Equation (3-9)], we can solve for the due date and rewrite the equation as:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Due date} &= \text{Expected completion time} + (Z \times \sigma_p)\\ &= 15 + (2.33 \times 1.76) = 19.1 \text{ weeks}\end{aligned} \tag{3-10}$$

INSIGHT ▶ If Williams can get the board to agree to give her a new deadline of 19.1 weeks (or more), she can be 99% sure of finishing the project by that new target date.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ What due date gives the project a 95% chance of on-time completion? [Answer: About 17.9 weeks.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 3.21c, 3.23e

Variability in Completion Time of Noncritical Paths In our discussion so far, we have focused exclusively on the variability in the completion times of activities on the critical path. This seems logical because these activities are, by definition, the more important activities in a project network. However, when there is variability in activity times, it is important that we also investigate the variability in the completion times of activities on *noncritical* paths.

Consider, for example, activity D in Milwaukee Paper's project. Recall from Overlay 3 in Figure 3.10 (in Example 7) that this is a noncritical activity, with a slack time of 1 week. We have therefore not considered the variability in D's time in computing the probabilities of project completion times. We observe, however, that D has a variance of 0.44 (see Table 3.4 in

Example 8). In fact, the pessimistic completion time for D is 6 weeks. This means that if D ends up taking its pessimistic time to finish, the project will not finish in 15 weeks, even though D is not a critical activity.

For this reason, when we find probabilities of project completion times, it may be necessary for us to not focus only on the critical path(s). Indeed, some research has suggested that expending project resources to reduce the variability of activities not on the critical path can be an effective element in project management. We may need also to compute these probabilities for noncritical paths, especially those that have relatively large variances. It is possible for a noncritical path to have a smaller probability of completion within a due date, when compared with the critical path. Determining the variance and probability of completion for a noncritical path is done in the same manner as Examples 9 and 10.

What Project Management Has Provided So Far Project management techniques have thus far been able to provide Julie Ann Williams with several valuable pieces of management information:

1. The project's expected completion date is 15 weeks.
2. There is a 71.57% chance that the equipment will be in place within the 16-week deadline. PERT analysis can easily find the probability of finishing by any date Williams is interested in.
3. Five activities (A, C, E, G, and H) are on the critical path. If any one of these is delayed for any reason, the entire project will be delayed.
4. Three activities (B, D, F) are not critical and have some slack time built in. This means that Williams can borrow from their resources, and, if necessary, she may be able to speed up the whole project.
5. A detailed schedule of activity starting and ending dates, slack, and critical path activities has been made available (see Table 3.3 in Example 6).

Cost-Time Trade-Offs and Project Crashing

While managing a project, it is not uncommon for a project manager to be faced with either (or both) of the following situations: (1) the project is behind schedule, and (2) the scheduled project completion time has been moved forward. In either situation, some or all of the remaining activities need to be speeded up (usually by adding resources) to finish the project by the desired due date. The process by which we shorten the duration of a project in the cheapest manner possible is called project **crashing**.

Crashing
Shortening activity time in a network to reduce time on the critical path so total completion time is reduced.

CPM is a technique in which each activity has a *normal* or *standard* time that we use in our computations. Associated with this normal time is the *normal* cost of the activity. However, another time in project management is the *crash time*, which is defined as the shortest duration required to complete an activity. Associated with this crash time is the *crash cost* of the activity. Usually, we can shorten an activity by adding extra resources (e.g., equipment, people) to it. Hence, it is logical for the crash cost of an activity to be higher than its normal cost.

The amount by which an activity can be shortened (i.e., the difference between its normal time and crash time) depends on the activity in question. We may not be able to shorten some activities at all. For example, if a casting needs to be heat-treated in the furnace for 48 hours, adding more resources does not help shorten the time. In contrast, we may be able to shorten some activities significantly (e.g., frame a house in 3 days instead of 10 days by using three times as many workers).

Likewise, the cost of crashing (or shortening) an activity depends on the nature of the activity. Managers are usually interested in speeding up a project at the least additional cost. Hence, when choosing which activities to crash, and by how much, we need to ensure the following:

- The amount by which an activity is crashed is, in fact, permissible
- Taken together, the shortened activity durations will enable us to finish the project by the due date
- The total cost of crashing is as small as possible

LO 3.6 *Crash* a project

Crashing a project involves four steps:

STEP 1: Compute the crash cost per week (or other time period) for each activity in the network. If crash costs are linear over time, the following formula can be used:

$$\text{Crash cost per period} = \frac{(\text{Crash cost} - \text{Normal cost})}{(\text{Normal time} - \text{Crash time})} \tag{3-11}$$

STEP 2: Using the current activity times, find the critical path(s) in the project network. Identify the critical activities.

STEP 3: If there is only one critical path, then select the activity on this critical path that (a) can still be crashed and (b) has the smallest crash cost per period. Crash this activity by one period.

If there is more than one critical path, then select one activity from each critical path such that (a) each selected activity can still be crashed and (b) the total crash cost per period of *all* selected activities is the smallest. Crash each activity by one period. Note that the same activity may be common to more than one critical path.

STEP 4: Update all activity times. If the desired due date has been reached, stop. If not, return to Step 2.

We illustrate project crashing in Example 12.

Example 12

PROJECT CRASHING TO MEET A DEADLINE AT MILWAUKEE PAPER

Suppose the plant manager at Milwaukee Paper Manufacturing has been given only 13 weeks (instead of 16 weeks) to install the new pollution control equipment. As you recall, the length of Julie Ann Williams's critical path was 15 weeks, but she must now complete the project in 13 weeks.

APPROACH ▶ Williams needs to determine which activities to crash, and by how much, to meet this 13-week due date. Naturally, Williams is interested in speeding up the project by 2 weeks, at the least additional cost.

SOLUTION ▶ The company's normal and crash times, and normal and crash costs, are shown in Table 3.5. Note, for example, that activity B's normal time is 3 weeks (the estimate used in computing the critical path), and its crash time is 1 week. This means that activity B can be shortened by up to 2 weeks if extra resources are provided. The cost of these additional resources is $4,000 (= difference between the crash cost of $34,000 and the normal cost of $30,000). If we assume that the crashing cost is linear over time (i.e., the cost is the same each week), activity B's crash cost per week is $2,000 (= $4,000/2).

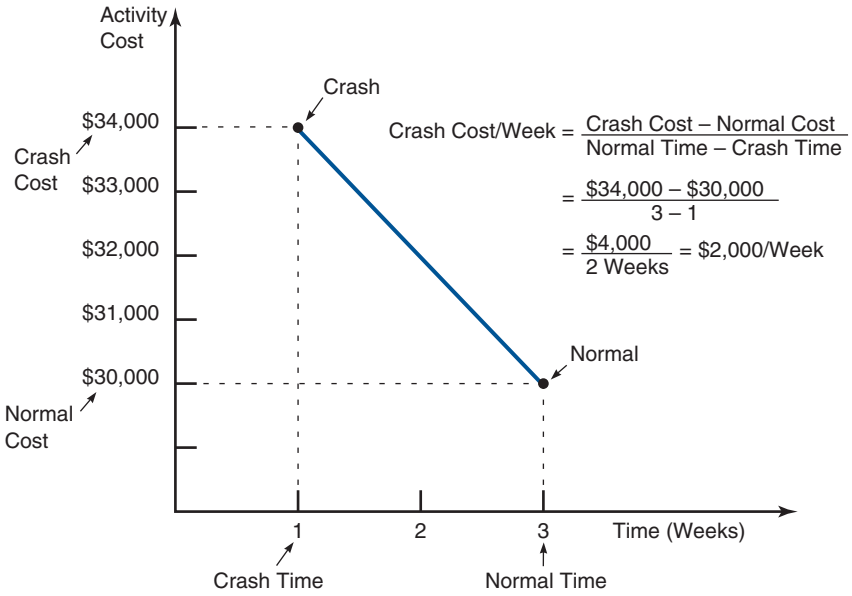
TABLE 3.5 Normal and Crash Data for Milwaukee Paper Manufacturing

	TIME (WEEKS)		*COST ($)*			
ACTIVITY	NORMAL	CRASH	NORMAL	CRASH	CRASH COST PER WEEK ($)	CRITICAL PATH?
A	2	1	22,000	22,750	750	Yes
B	3	1	30,000	34,000	2,000	No
C	2	1	26,000	27,000	1,000	Yes
D	4	3	48,000	49,000	1,000	No
E	4	2	56,000	58,000	1,000	Yes
F	3	2	30,000	30,500	500	No
G	5	2	80,000	84,500	1,500	Yes
H	2	1	16,000	19,000	3,000	Yes

This calculation for Activity B is shown in Figure 3.15. Crash costs for all other activities can be computed in a similar fashion.

Figure 3.15

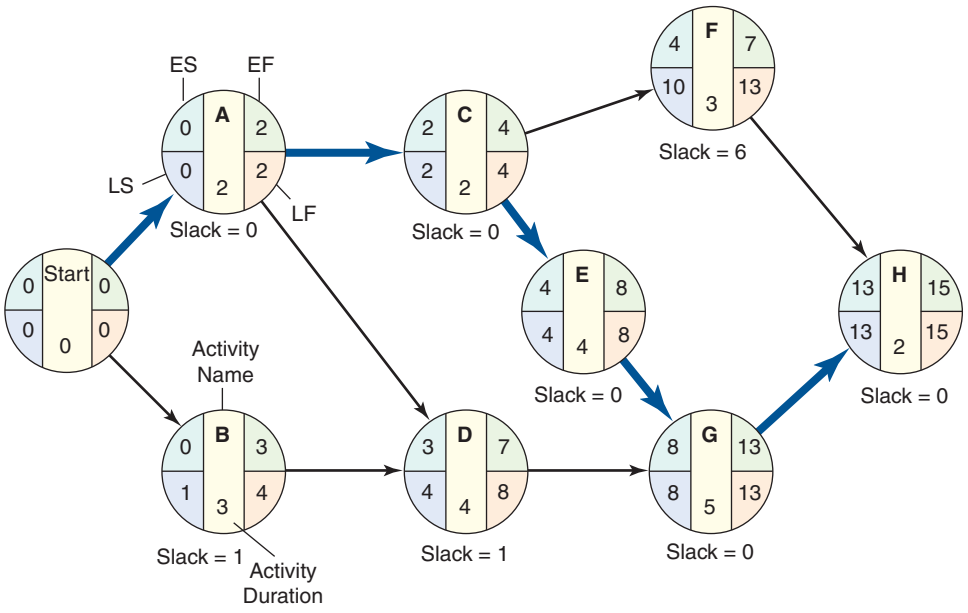
Crash and Normal Times and Costs for Activity B



Steps 2, 3, and 4 can now be applied to reduce Milwaukee Paper's project completion time at a minimum cost. We show the project network for Milwaukee Paper again in Figure 3.16.

Figure 3.16

Critical Path and Slack Times for Milwaukee Paper



The current critical path (using normal times) is Start–A–C–E–G–H, in which Start is just a dummy starting activity. Of these critical activities, activity A has the lowest crash cost per week of $750. Julie Ann Williams should therefore crash activity A by 1 week to reduce the project completion time to 14 weeks. The cost is an additional $750. Note that activity A cannot be crashed any further, since it has reached its crash limit of 1 week.

At this stage, the original path Start–A–C–E–G–H remains critical with a completion time of 14 weeks. However, a new path Start–B–D–G–H is also critical now, with a completion time of 14 weeks. Hence, any further crashing must be done to both critical paths.

On each of these critical paths, we need to identify one activity that can still be crashed. We also want the total cost of crashing an activity on each path to be the smallest. We might be tempted to simply pick the activities with the smallest crash cost per period in each path. If we did this, we would select activity C from the first path and activity D from the second path. The total crash cost would then be $2,000 (= $1,000 + $1,000).

But we spot that activity G is common to both paths. That is, by crashing activity G, we will simultaneously reduce the completion time of both paths. Even though the $1,500 crash cost for activity G is higher than that for activities C and D, we would still prefer crashing G because the total crashing cost will now be only $1,500 (compared with the $2,000 if we crash C and D).

INSIGHT ▶ To crash the project down to 13 weeks, Williams should crash activity A by 1 week and activity G by 1 week. The total additional cost will be $2,250 (= $750 + $1,500). This is important because many contracts for projects include bonuses or penalties for early or late finishes.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Say the crash cost for activity B is $31,000 instead of $34,000. How does this change the answer? [Answer: no change.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 3.28–3.32 (3.33 is available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch03Ex12.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

A Critique of PERT and CPM

As a critique of our discussions of PERT, here are some of its features about which operations managers need to be aware:

Advantages

1. Especially useful when scheduling and controlling large projects.
2. Straightforward concept and not mathematically complex.
3. Graphical networks help highlight relationships among project activities.
4. Critical path and slack time analyses help pinpoint activities that need to be closely watched.
5. Project documentation and graphs point out who is responsible for various activities.
6. Applicable to a wide variety of projects.
7. Useful in monitoring not only schedules but costs as well.

OM in Action — Behind the Tour de France

The large behind-the-scenes operations that support a football World Cup or Formula One racing team are well-known, but a Tour de France team also needs major support. "A Tour de France team is like a large traveling circus," says the coach of the Belkin team. "The public only sees the riders, but they could not function without the unseen support staff." The base to the team's cycling pyramid includes everything from osteopaths to mechanics, from logistics staff to PR people. Their project management skills require substantial know-how, as well as the ability to guarantee that riders are in peak physical, nutritional, and psychological condition. This can mean deciding which snack bars to give the cyclists before, during, and after race stages, while ensuring there are scientifically based cooling regimens in place for the riders. The team's huge truck, coach, three vans, and five cars resemble the sort of traveling convoy more associated with an international music act. Here are just some of the supplies the project management team for Belkin handles:

- 11 mattresses
- 36 aero suits, 45 bib shorts, 54 race jerseys, 250 podium caps
- 63 bikes
- 140 wheels, 220 tires
- 250 feeding bags, 3,000 water bottles
- 2,190 nutrition gels, 3,800 nutrition bars

Marc Pagani Photography/Shutterstock

- 10 jars of peanut butter, 10 boxes of chocolate sprinkles, 20 bags of wine gums, 20 jars of jam
- 80 kg of nuts, raisins, apricots, and figs, plus 50 kg of cereals

The project management behind a world-tour team is complex: These top teams often compete in two to three races simultaneously, in different countries and sometimes on different continents. Each team has 25–35 riders (9 compete in any single race), coming from different parts of the world, going to different races at different times, each with his own physique and strengths. They have customized bikes, uniforms, and food preferences. The support staff can include another 30 people.

Sources: BBC News (July 6, 2014) and *The Operations Room* (June 24,2013).

Limitations

1. Project activities have to be clearly defined, independent, and stable in their relationships.
2. Precedence relationships must be specified and networked together.
3. Time estimates tend to be subjective and are subject to fudging by managers who fear the dangers of being overly optimistic or not pessimistic enough.
4. There is the inherent danger of placing too much emphasis on the longest, or critical, path. Near-critical paths need to be monitored closely as well.

Using Microsoft Project to Manage Projects

The approaches discussed so far are effective for managing small projects. However, for large or complex projects, specialized project management software is much preferred. In this section, we provide a brief introduction to the most popular example of such specialized software, Microsoft Project. A time-limited version of Microsoft Project may be requested with this text.

Microsoft Project is extremely useful in drawing project networks, identifying the project schedule, and managing project costs and other resources.

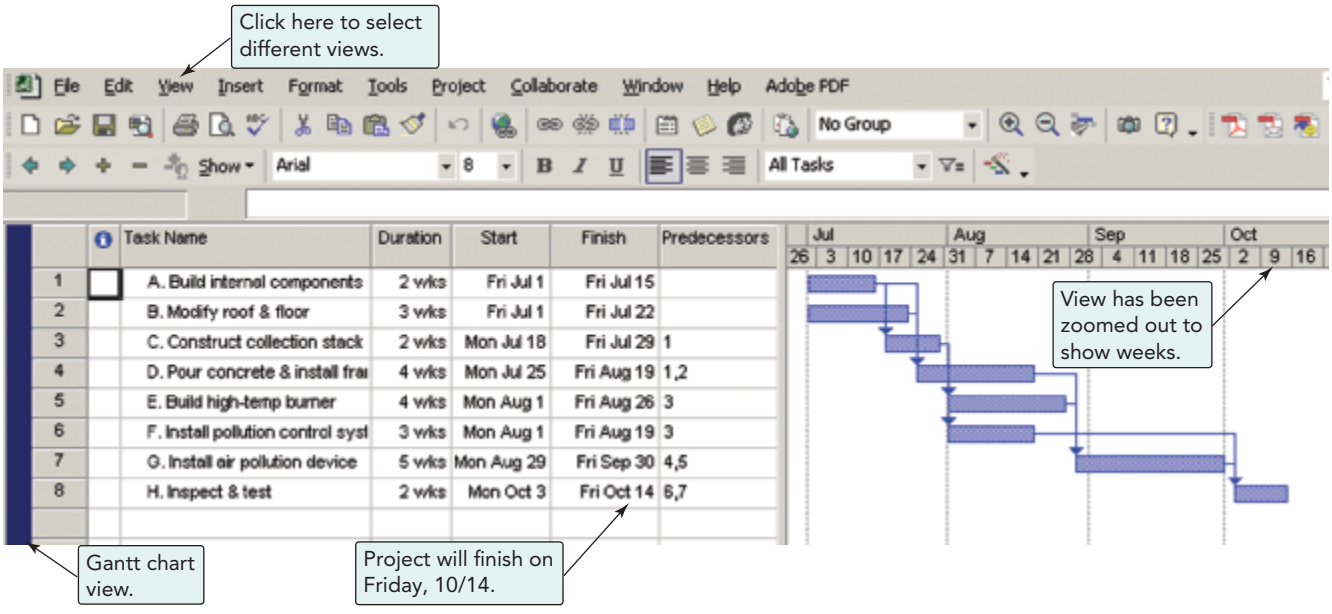
Milwaukee Paper Co. Activities

ACTIVITY	TIME (WKS)	PREDE-CESSORS
A	2	—
B	3	—
C	2	A
D	4	A, B
E	4	C
F	3	C
G	5	D, E
H	2	F, G

Entering Data Let us again consider the Milwaukee Paper Manufacturing project. Recall that this project has eight activities (repeated in the margin). The first step is to define the activities and their precedence relationships. To do so, we select **File|New** to open a blank project. We type the project start date (as July 1), then enter all activity information (see Program 3.1). For each activity (or task, as Microsoft Project calls it), we fill in the name and duration. The description of the activity is also placed in the ***Task Name*** column in Program 3.1. As we enter activities and durations, the software automatically inserts start and finish dates.

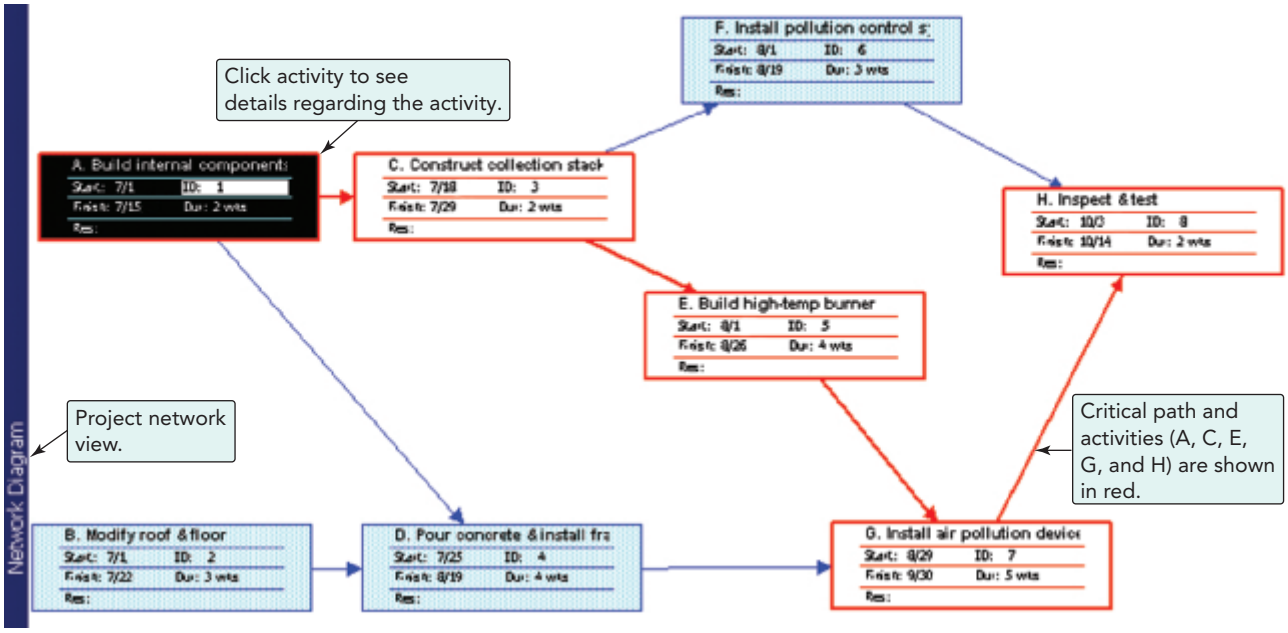
The next step is to define precedence relationships between these activities. To do so, we enter the relevant activity numbers (e.g., 1, 2) in the ***Predecessors*** column.

Viewing the Project Schedule When all links have been defined, the complete project schedule can be viewed as a Gantt chart. We can also select **View|Network Diagram** to view the schedule as a project network (shown in Program 3.2). The critical path is shown in red on the



Program 3.1

Gantt Chart in Microsoft Project for Milwaukee Paper Manufacturing



Program **3.2**

Project Network in Microsoft Project for Milwaukee Paper Manufacturing

screen in the network diagram. We can click on any of the activities in the project network to view details of the activities. Likewise, we can easily add or remove activities from the project network. Each time we do so, Microsoft Project automatically updates all start dates, finish dates, and the critical path(s). If desired, we can manually change the layout of the network (e.g., reposition activities) by changing the options in **Format|Layout**.

Programs 3.1 and 3.2 show that if Milwaukee Paper's project starts July 1, it can be finished on October 14. The start and finish dates for all activities are also clearly identified. Project management software, we see, can greatly simplify the scheduling procedures discussed earlier in this chapter.

STUDENT TIP

Now that you understand the workings of PERT and CPM, you are ready to master this useful program. Knowing such software gives you an edge over others in the job market.

PERT Analysis Microsoft Project does not perform the PERT probability calculations discussed in Examples 10 and 11. However, by clicking **View|Toolbars|PERT Analysis**, we can get Microsoft Project to allow us to enter optimistic, most likely, and pessimistic times for each activity. We can then choose to view Gantt charts based on any of these three times for each activity.

Tracking the Time Status of a Project Perhaps the biggest advantage of using software to manage projects is that it can track the progress of the project. In this regard, Microsoft Project has many features available to track individual activities in terms of time, cost, resource usage, and so on.

An easy way to track the time progress of tasks is to enter the percent of work completed for each task. One way to do so is to double-click on any activity in the *Task Name* column in Program 3.1. A window is displayed that allows us to enter the percent of work completed for each task.

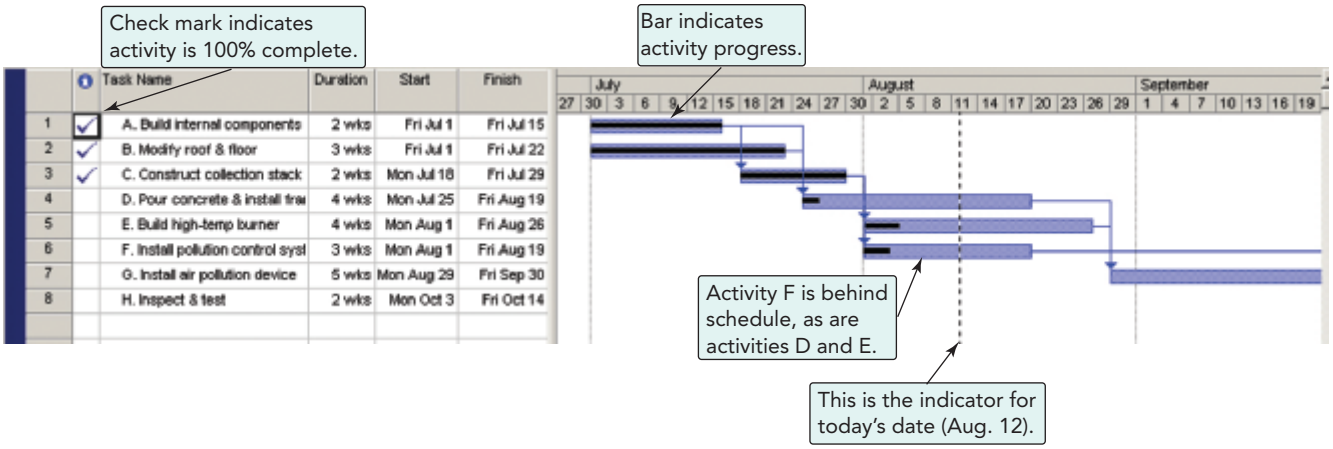
The table in the margin provides data regarding the percent of each of Milwaukee Paper's activities that are completed as of today. (Assume that today is Friday, August 12, i.e., the end of the sixth week of the project schedule.)

Pollution Project Percentage Completed on Aug. 12

ACTIVITY	COMPLETED
A	100
B	100
C	100
D	10
E	20
F	20
G	0
H	0

As shown in Program 3.3, the Gantt chart immediately reflects this updated information by drawing a thick line within each activity's bar. The length of this line is proportional to the percent of that activity's work that has been completed.

How do we know if we are on schedule? Notice that there is a vertical line shown on the Gantt chart corresponding to today's date. Microsoft Project will automatically move this line to correspond with the current date. If the project is on schedule, we should see all bars to the *left*



Program 3.3

Tracking Project Progress in Microsoft Project

of today's line indicate that they have been completed. For example, Program 3.3 shows that activities A, B, and C are on schedule. In contrast, activities D, E, and F appear to be behind schedule. These activities need to be investigated further to determine the reason for the delay. This type of easy *visual* information is what makes such software so useful in practice for project management.

We encourage you to load the copy of Microsoft Project that may be ordered with your text and to create a project network for work you are currently doing.

Summary

PERT, CPM, and other scheduling techniques have proven to be valuable tools in controlling large and complex projects. Managers use such techniques to segment projects into discrete activities (work breakdown structures), indentifying specific resources and time requirements for each. With PERT and CPM, managers can understand the status of each activity, including its earliest start, latest start, earliest finish, and latest finish (ES, LS, EF, and LF) times. By controlling the trade-off between ES and LS, managers can identify the activities that have slack and can address resource allocation, perhaps by smoothing resources. Effective project management also allows managers to focus on the activities that are critical to timely project completion. By understanding the project's critical path, they know where crashing makes the most economic sense.

Good project management also allows firms to efficiently create products and services for global markets and to respond effectively to global competition. Microsoft Project, illustrated in this chapter, is one of a wide variety of software packages available to help managers handle network modeling problems.

The models described in this chapter require good management practices, detailed work breakdown structures, clear responsibilities assigned to activities, and straightforward and timely reporting systems. All are critical parts of project management.

Key Terms

Project organization (p. 100)
Work breakdown structure (WBS) (p. 102)
Gantt charts (p. 103)
Program evaluation and review technique (PERT) (p. 105)
Critical path method (CPM) (p. 105)
Critical path (p. 105)
Activity-on-node (AON) (p. 106)
Activity-on-arrow (AOA) (p. 106)
Dummy activity (p. 108)
Critical path analysis (p. 109)
Forward pass (p. 110)
Backward pass (p. 112)
Slack time (p. 113)
Optimistic time (p. 115)
Pessimistic time (p. 115)
Most likely time (p. 115)
Crashing (p. 120)

Ethical Dilemma

Two examples of massively mismanaged projects are TAURUS and the "Big Dig." The first, formally called the London Stock Exchange Automation Project, cost $575 million before it was finally abandoned. Although most IT projects have a reputation for cost overruns, delays, and underperformance, TAURUS set a new standard.

But even TAURUS paled next to the biggest, most expensive public works project in U.S. history—Boston's 15-year-long Central Artery/Tunnel Project. Called the Big Dig, this was perhaps the poorest and most felonious case of project mismanagement in decades. From a starting $2 billion budget to a final price tag of $15 billion, the Big Dig cost more than the Panama Canal, Hoover Dam, or Interstate 95, the 1,919-mile highway between Maine and Florida.

Read about one of these two projects (or another of your choice) and explain why it faced such problems. How and why do project managers allow such massive endeavors to fall into such a state? What do you think are the causes?

Discussion Questions

1. Give an example of a situation in which project management is needed.
2. Explain the purpose of project organization.
3. What are the three phases involved in the management of a large project?
4. What are some of the questions that can be answered with PERT and CPM?
5. What is a project and why is it important is to understand the project environment?
6. What is the use of Gantt charts in project management?
7. What is the difference between an activity-on-arrow (AOA) network and an activity-on-node (AON) network? Which is primarily used in this chapter?
8. What are the ethical dilemmas that project managers faced with when dealing with projects?
9. While numerous trade-offs may be required during the life cycle of a project, the trade-offs between cost, time and performance are considered essential. Please discuss.
10. Describe how expected activity times and variances can be computed in a PERT network.
11. Define *earliest start, earliest finish, latest finish*, and *latest start* times.
12. Students are sometimes confused by the concept of critical path, and want to believe that it is the *shortest* path through a network. Convincingly explain why this is not so.
13. What are dummy activities? Why are they used in activity-on-arrow (AOA) project networks?
14. What are the three time estimates used with PERT?
15. Would a project manager ever consider crashing a noncritical activity in a project network? Explain convincingly.
16. How is the variance of the total project computed in PERT?
17. Describe the meaning of slack, and discuss how it can be determined.
18. How can we determine the probability that a project will be completed by a certain date? What assumptions are made in this computation?
19. Compare and contrast the Project Evaluation and Review Technique (PERT) with the Critical Path Method (CPM).
20. What is the difference between the *waterfall* approach and *agile* project management?

Using Software to Solve Project Management Problems

In addition to the Microsoft Project software illustrated earlier, both Excel OM and POM for Windows are available to readers of this text as project management tools.

USING EXCEL OM

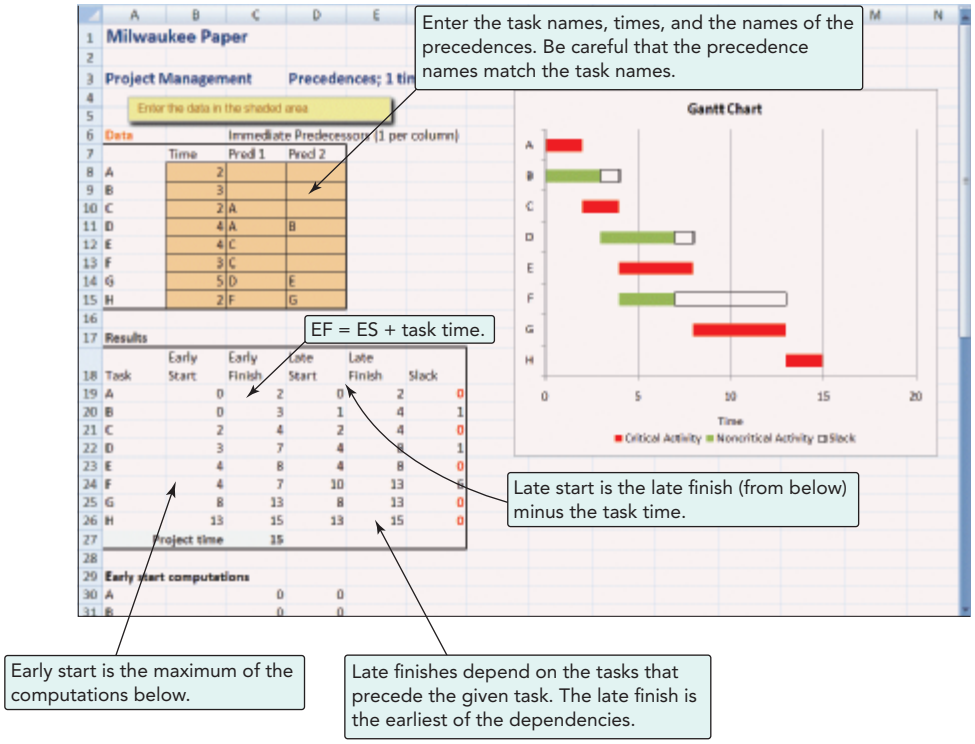
Excel OM has a Project Scheduling module. Program 3.4 uses the data from the Milwaukee Paper Manufacturing example in this chapter (see Examples 4 and 5). The PERT/CPM analysis also handles activities with three time estimates.

USING POM FOR WINDOWS

POM for Window's Project Scheduling module can also find the expected project completion time for a CPM and PERT network with either one or three time estimates. POM for Windows also performs project crashing. For further details refer to Appendix IV.

Program **3.4**

Excel OM's Use of Milwaukee Paper Manufacturing's Data from Examples 4 and 5



Solved Problems

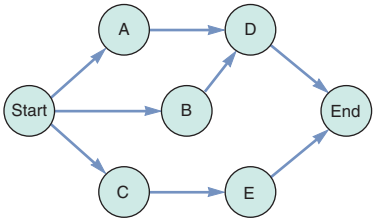
Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM 3.1

Construct an AON network based on the following:

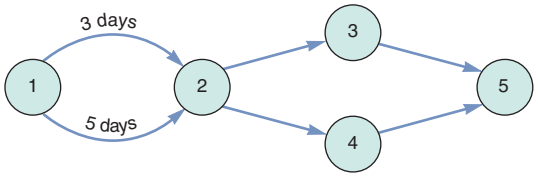
ACTIVITY	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)
A	—
B	—
C	—
D	A, B
E	C

SOLUTION



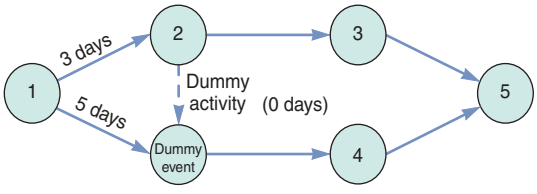
SOLVED PROBLEM 3.2

Insert a dummy activity and event to correct the following AOA network:



SOLUTION

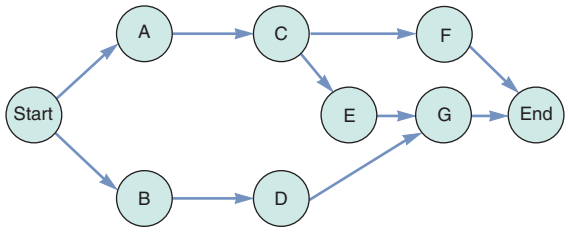
Because we cannot have two activities starting and ending at the same node, we add the following dummy activity and dummy event to obtain the correct AOA network:



SOLVED PROBLEM 3.3

Calculate the critical path, project completion time T, and project variance σ_p^2, based on the following AON network information:

ACTIVITY	TIME	VARIANCE	ES	EF	LS	LF	SLACK
A	2	$\frac{2}{6}$	0	2	0	2	0
B	3	$\frac{2}{6}$	0	3	1	4	1
C	2	$\frac{4}{6}$	2	4	2	4	0
D	4	$\frac{4}{6}$	3	7	4	8	1
E	4	$\frac{2}{6}$	4	8	4	8	0
F	3	$\frac{1}{6}$	4	7	10	13	6
G	5	$\frac{1}{6}$	8	13	8	13	0



SOLUTION

We conclude that the critical path is Start–A–C–E–G–End:

$$\text{Total project time} = T = 2 + 2 + 4 + 5 = 13$$

and

$$\sigma_p^2 = \sum \text{Variances on the critical path}$$

$$= \frac{2}{6} + \frac{4}{6} + \frac{2}{6} + \frac{1}{6} = \frac{9}{6} = 1.5$$

SOLVED PROBLEM 3.4

To complete the wing assembly for an experimental aircraft, Jim Gilbert has laid out the seven major activities involved. These activities have been labeled A through G in the following table, which also shows their estimated completion times (in weeks) and immediate predecessors. Determine the expected time and variance for each activity.

ACTIVITY	*a*	*m*	*b*	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSORS
A	1	2	3	—
B	2	3	4	—
C	4	5	6	A
D	8	9	10	B
E	2	5	8	C, D
F	4	5	6	D
G	1	2	3	E

SOLUTION

Expected times and variances can be computed using Equations (3–6) and (3–7) presented on page 78 in this chapter. The results are summarized in the following table:

ACTIVITY	EXPECTED TIME (IN WEEKS)	VARIANCE
A	2	$\frac{1}{9}$
B	3	$\frac{1}{9}$
C	5	$\frac{1}{9}$
D	9	$\frac{1}{9}$
E	5	1
F	5	$\frac{1}{9}$
G	2	$\frac{1}{9}$

SOLVED PROBLEM 3.5

Referring to Solved Problem 3.4, now Jim Gilbert would like to determine the critical path for the entire wing assembly project as well as the expected completion time for the total project. In addition, he would like to determine the earliest and latest start and finish times for all activities.

SOLUTION

The AON network for Gilbert's project is shown in Figure 3.17. Note that this project has multiple activities (A and B) with no immediate predecessors, and multiple activities (F and G) with no successors. Hence, in addition to a unique starting activity (Start), we have included a unique finishing activity (End) for the project.

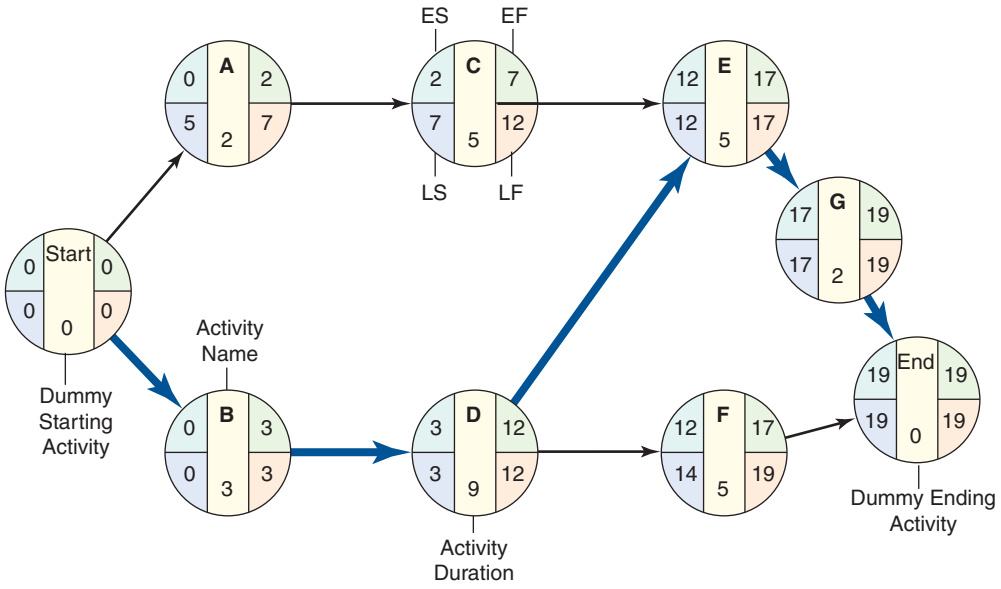
Figure 3.17 shows the earliest and latest times for all activities. The results are also summarized in the following table:

	ACTIVITY TIME				
ACTIVITY	ES	EF	LS	LF	SLACK
A	0	2	5	7	5
B	0	3	0	3	0
C	2	7	7	12	5
D	3	12	3	12	0
E	12	17	12	17	0
F	12	17	14	19	2
G	17	19	17	19	0

Expected project length = 19 weeks
Variance of the critical path = 1.333
Standard deviation of the critical path = 1.155 weeks

The activities along the critical path are B, D, E, and G. These activities have zero slack as shown in the table.

Figure 3.17
Critical Path for Solved Problem 3.5



SOLVED PROBLEM 3.6

The following information has been computed from a project:

$$\text{Expected total project time} = T = 62 \text{ weeks}$$

$$\text{Project variance } (\sigma_p^2) = 81$$

What is the probability that the project will be completed 18 weeks *before* its expected completion date?

SOLUTION

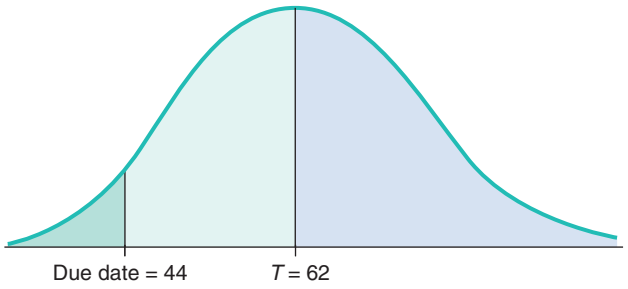
The desired completion date is 18 weeks before the expected completion date, 62 weeks. The desired completion date is 44 (or 62–18) weeks:

$$\sigma_p = \sqrt{\text{Project variance}}$$

$$Z = \frac{\text{Due date} - \text{Expected completion date}}{\sigma_p}$$

$$= \frac{44 - 62}{9} = \frac{-18}{9} = -2.0$$

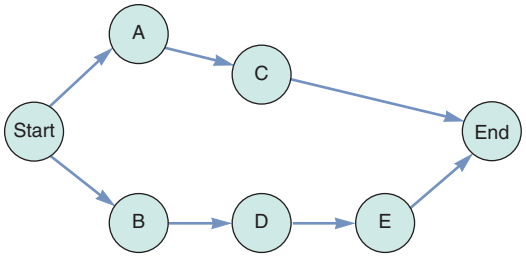
The normal curve appears as follows:



Because the normal curve is symmetrical and table values are calculated for positive values of Z, the area desired is equal to 1– (table value). For $Z = +2.0$ the area from the table is .97725. Thus, the area corresponding to a Z-value of −2.0 is .02275 (or 1 − .97725). Hence, the probability of completing the project 18 weeks before the expected completion date is approximately .023, or 2.3%.

SOLVED PROBLEM 3.7

Determine the least cost of reducing the project completion date by 3 months based on the following information:



ACTIVITY	NORMAL TIME (MONTHS)	CRASH TIME (MONTHS)	NORMAL COST	CRASH COST
A	6	4	$2,000	$2,400
B	7	5	3,000	3,500
C	7	6	1,000	1,300
D	6	4	2,000	2,600
E	9	8	8,800	9,000

SOLUTION

The first step in this problem is to compute ES, EF, LS, LF, and slack for each activity.

ACTIVITY	ES	EF	LS	LF	SLACK
A	0	6	9	15	9
B	0	7	0	7	0
C	6	13	15	22	9
D	7	13	7	13	0
E	13	22	13	22	0

The critical path consists of activities B, D, and E.

Next, crash cost/month must be computed for each activity:

ACTIVITY	NORMAL TIME–CRASH TIME	CRASH COST–NORMAL COST	CRASH COST/MONTH	CRITICAL PATH?
A	2	$400	$200/month	No
B	2	500	250/month	Yes
C	1	300	300/month	No
D	2	600	300/month	Yes
E	1	200	200/month	Yes

Finally, we will select that activity on the critical path with the smallest crash cost/month. This is activity E. Thus, we can reduce the total project completion date by 1 month for an additional cost of $200. We still need to reduce the project completion date by 2 more months. This reduction can be achieved at least cost along the critical path by reducing activity B by 2 months for an additional cost of $500. Neither reduction has an effect on noncritical activities. This solution is summarized in the following table:

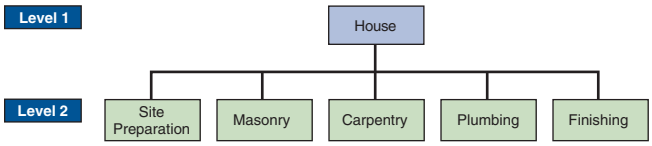
ACTIVITY	MONTHS REDUCED	COST
E	1	$200
B	2	500
		Total: $700

Problems

Note: Px means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel OM.

Problems 3.1–3.2 relate to Project Planning

• **3.1** The work breakdown structure (WBS) for building a house (levels 1 and 2) is shown below:



a) Add two level-3 activities to each of the level-2 activities to provide more detail to the WBS.
b) Select one of your level-3 activities and add two level-4 activities below it.

•• **3.2** You are the project manager for a project in which you are going to organize a conference. Develop a work breakdown structure (WBS) in the form of a hierarchical framework, similar to that of Figure 3.3, based on the partial list shown in the table with all major deliverables, component deliverables and component parts.

LEVEL	ACTIVITY
10	**Conference**
11	**Sessions**
11.01	Papers
11.01.01	Topic A
11.01.02	Topic B
11.02	Panels
11.02.01	Panel A
12	**Location & Dates**
12.01	Site X
12.02	Site Y
12.03	Date A
12.04	Date B
13	**Facilities**
13.01	Buildings
13.01.01	Building East
13.01.02	Building West
13.02	Equipment
13.03	Food
13.03.01	Breakfast
13.03.02	Coffee

Problem 3.3 relates to Project Scheduling

•• **3.3** The PotamiaConstruction Co. (PCC) is developing plans to erect a new hospital building. PCC has established the project activities, their immediate predecessor activities together with their estimated activity durations according to the information described in the following table. Prepare a Gant chart (horizontal bar chart) for the whole construction activity based on the information.

CODE	ACTIVITY	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR (S)	DURATION (DAYS)
A	Buy the land	None	40
B	Get the construction permission	A	30
C	Excavate	B	10
D	Erect building	C	100
E	Electrical work	D	10
F	Plumbing work	D	20
G	Paint interior	D	10
H	Clean up building	E, F, G	5
I	Move in furniture	H	5

Problems 3.4–3.14 relate to Project Management Techniques

•• **3.4** Using the project information listed in the table below:
a) draw the AON networkfor the construction activity.
b) draw the AOA for the construction activity.

ACTIVITY	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR (S)	DURATION (DAYS)
A	—	4
B	—	2
C	—	2
D	A	2
E	B	3
F	B	4
G	C	2
H	D, E	5
I	F, G	3

• **3.5** Table below shows the activities, immediate predecessors and activity durations of a project. Draw the AON project network. How long would it take to complete this project? What is the length of the critical path?

ACTIVITY	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)	TIME (DAYS)
A	—	2
B	A	4
C	A	4
D	B	6
E	D	9
F	C	8
G	E, F	2
H	G	2
I	G	3
J	H, I	4
K	J	4

• **3.6** A project has the following activities, precedence relationships, and activity duration. Draw the AOA project network. How long would it take to complete this project? What is the length of the critical path?

ACTIVITY	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)	DURATION (WEEKS)
A	None	18
B	A	8
C	B	6
D	A	9
E	C,D	5
F	E	4
G	D	10
H	E	11
I	G, H	3

• **3.7** Draw the AON project network using the following information:

ACTIVITY	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)	DURATION (WEEKS)
A	—	4
B	—	35
C	—	5
D	A	9
E	B	3
F	C,E	1
G	D	2
H	F	3
I	G,H	15
J	G	1

How long would it take to complete this project? Which activities are included on the critical path?

•• **3.8** Roger Ginde is developing a program in supply chain management certification for managers. Ginde has listed a number of activities that must be completed before a training program of this nature could be conducted. The activities, immediate predecessors, and times appear in the accompanying table:

ACTIVITY	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)	TIME (DAYS)
A	—	2
B	—	5
C	—	1
D	B	10
E	A, D	3
F	C	6
G	E, F	8

a) Develop an AON network for this problem.
b) What is the critical path?
c) What is the total project completion time?
d) What is the slack time for each individual activity? POM

•• **3.9** Task time estimates for the modification of an assembly line at Jim Goodale's Carbondale, Illinois, factory are as follows:

ACTIVITY	TIME (IN HOURS)	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSORS
A	6.0	—
B	7.2	—
C	5.0	A
D	6.0	B, C
E	4.5	B, C
F	7.7	D
G	4.0	E, F

a) Draw the project network using AON.
b) Identify the critical path.
c) What is the expected project length?
d) Draw a Gantt chart for the project. POM

• **3.10** The activities described by the following table are given for the Howard Corporation in Kansas:

ACTIVITY	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)	TIME
A	—	9
B	A	7
C	A	3
D	B	6
E	B	9
F	C	4
G	E, F	6
H	D	5
I	G, H	3

a) Draw the appropriate AON PERT diagram for J.C. Howard's management team.
b) Find the critical path.
c) What is the project completion time? POM

••**3.11** Draw the AON project network using the following information:

ACTIVITY	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)	DURATION (WEEKS)
A	—	4
B	A	3
C	A	6
D	B	2
E	B	3
F	C,D	5
G	E,F	1

a) Draw an AON diagram of the project, including activity durations.
b) Define the critical path, listing all critical activities in chronological order.
c) What is the project duration (in weeks)?
d) What is the slack (in weeks) associated with any and all noncritical paths through the project?

• **3.12** The activities needed to build a prototype laser scanning machine at Dave Fletcher Corp. are listed in the following table. Construct an AON network for these activities.

ACTIVITY	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)	ACTIVITY	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)
A	—	E	B
B	—	F	B
C	A	G	C, E
D	A	H	D, F

Additional problems **3.13–3.14** *are available in* MyOMLab.

Problems 3.15–3.16 relate to Determining the Project Schedule

• **3.15** Dave Fletcher (see Problem 3.12) was able to determine the activity times for constructing his laser scanning machine. Fletcher would like to determine ES, EF, LS, LF, and slack for each activity. The total project completion time and the critical path should also be determined. Here are the activity times:

ACTIVITY	TIME (WEEKS)	ACTIVITY	TIME (WEEKS)
A	6	E	4
B	7	F	6
C	3	G	10
D	2	H	7

•••**3.16** The Rover 6 is a new custom-designed sports car. An analysis of the task of building the Rover 6 reveals the following list of relevant activities, their immediate predecessors, and their duration:[2]

JOB LETTER	DESCRIPTION	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)	NORMAL TIME (DAYS)
A	Start	—	0
B	Design	A	8
C	Order special accessories	B	0.1
D	Build frame	B	1
E	Build doors	B	1
F	Attach axles, wheels, gas tank	D	1
G	Build body shell	B	2
H	Build transmission and drivetrain	B	3
I	Fit doors to body shell	G, E	1
J	Build engine	B	4
K	Bench-test engine	J	2
L	Assemble chassis	F, H, K	1
M	Road-test chassis	L	0.5
N	Paint body	I	2
O	Install wiring	N	1
P	Install interior	N	1.5
Q	Accept delivery of special accessories	C	5
R	Mount body and accessories on chassis	M, O, P, Q	1
S	Road test car	R	0.5
T	Attach exterior trim	S	1
U	Finish	T	0

a) Draw a network diagram for the project.
b) Mark the critical path and state its length.
c) If the Rover 6 had to be completed 2 days earlier, would it help to:
   i) Buy preassembled transmissions and drivetrains?
   ii) Install robots to halve engine-building time?
   iii) Speed delivery of special accessories by 3 days?
d) How might resources be borrowed from activities on the noncritical path to speed activities on the critical path? PX

Problems 3.17–3.27 relate to Variability in Activity Times

••• **3.17** Ross Hopkins, president of Hopkins Hospitality, has developed the tasks, durations, and predecessor relationships in the following table for building new motels. Draw the AON network and answer the questions that follow.

ACTIVITY	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)	TIME ESTIMATES (IN WEEKS)		
		OPTIMISTIC	MOST LIKELY	PESSIMISTIC
A	—	4	8	10
B	A	2	8	24
C	A	8	12	16
D	A	4	6	10
E	B	1	2	3
F	E, C	6	8	20
G	E, C	2	3	4
H	F	2	2	2
I	F	6	6	6
J	D, G, H	4	6	12
K	I, J	2	2	3

a) What is the expected (estimated) time for activity C?
b) What is the variance for activity C?
c) Based on the calculation of estimated times, what is the critical path?
d) What is the estimated time of the critical path?
e) What is the activity variance along the critical path?
f) What is the probability of completion of the project before week 36? PX

• **3.18** A renovation of the gift shop at Orlando Amway Center has six activities (in hours). For the following estimates of *a*, *m*, and *b*, calculate the expected time and the standard deviation for each activity:

ACTIVITY	*a*	*m*	*b*
A	11	15	19
B	27	31	41
C	18	18	18
D	8	13	19
E	17	18	20
F	16	19	22

PX

•• **3.19** Kelle Carpet and Trim installs carpet in commercial offices. Peter Kelle has been very concerned with the amount of time it took to complete several recent jobs. Some of his workers are very unreliable. A list of activities and their optimistic completion time, the most likely completion time, and the pessimistic completion time (all in days) for a new contract are given in the following table:

ACTIVITY	TIME (DAYS)			IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)
	a	*m*	*b*	
A	3	6	8	—
B	2	4	4	—
C	1	2	3	—
D	6	7	8	C
E	2	4	6	B, D
F	6	10	14	A, E
G	1	2	4	A, E
H	3	6	9	F
I	10	11	12	G
J	14	16	20	C
K	2	8	10	H, I

a) Determine the expected completion time and variance for each activity.
b) Determine the total project completion time and the critical path for the project.
c) Determine ES, EF, LS, LF, and slack for each activity.
d) What is the probability that Kelle Carpet and Trim will finish the project in 40 days or less? PX

••• **3.20** The estimated times and immediate predecessors for the activities in a project at George Kyparis's retinal scanning company are given in the following table. Assume that the activity times are independent.

ACTIVITY	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR	TIME (WEEKS)		
		a	*m*	*b*
A	—	9	10	11
B	—	4	10	16
C	A	9	10	11
D	B	5	8	11

a) Calculate the expected time and variance for each activity.
b) What is the expected completion time of the critical path? What is the expected completion time of the other path in the network?
c) What is the variance of the critical path? What is the variance of the other path in the network?
d) If the time to complete path A–C is normally distributed, what is the probability that this path will be finished in 22 weeks or less?
e) If the time to complete path B–D is normally distributed, what is the probability that this path will be finished in 22 weeks or less?
f) Explain why the probability that the *critical path* will be finished in 22 weeks or less is not necessarily the probability that the *project* will be finished in 22 weeks or less. PX

•••**3.21** Rich Cole Control Devices, Inc., produces custom-built relay devices for auto makers. The most recent project undertaken by Cole requires 14 different activities. Cole's managers would like to determine the total project completion time (in days) and those activities that lie along the critical path. The appropriate data are shown in the following table.

a) What is the probability of being done in 53 days?
b) What date results in a 99% probability of completion?

ACTIVITY	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)	OPTIMISTIC TIME	MOST LIKELY TIME	PESSIMISTIC TIME
A	—	4	6	7
B	—	1	2	3
C	A	6	6	6
D	A	5	8	11
E	B, C	1	9	18
F	D	2	3	6
G	D	1	7	8
H	E, F	4	4	6
I	G, H	1	6	8
J	I	2	5	7
K	I	8	9	11
L	J	2	4	6
M	K	1	2	3
N	L, M	6	8	10

PX

•••**3.22** Four Squares Productions, a firm hired to coordinate the release of the movie *Pirates of the Caribbean: On Stranger Tides* (starring Johnny Depp), identified 16 activities to be completed before the release of the film.

a) How many weeks in advance of the film release should Four Squares have started its marketing campaign? What is the critical path? The tasks (in time units of weeks) are as follows:

ACTIVITY	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)	OPTIMISTIC TIME	MOST LIKELY TIME	PESSIMISTIC TIME
A	—	1	2	4
B	—	3	3.5	4
C	—	10	12	13
D	—	4	5	7
E	—	2	4	5
F	A	6	7	8
G	B	2	4	5.5
H	C	5	7.7	9
I	C	9.9	10	12
J	C	2	4	5
K	D	2	4	6
L	E	2	4	6
M	F, G, H	5	6	6.5
N	J, K, L	1	1.1	2
O	I, M	5	7	8
P	N	5	7	9

b) What is the probability of completing the marketing campaign in the time (in weeks) noted in part a?
c) If activities I and J were not necessary, what impact would this have on the critical path and the number of weeks needed to complete the marketing campaign? PX

••**3.23** Using PERT, Adam Munson was able to determine that the expected project completion time for the construction of a pleasure yacht is 21 months, and the project variance is 4.

a) What is the probability that the project will be completed in 17 months?
b) What is the probability that the project will be completed in 20 months?
c) What is the probability that the project will be completed in 23 months?
d) What is the probability that the project will be completed in 25 months?
e) What is the due date that yields a 95% chance of completion? PX

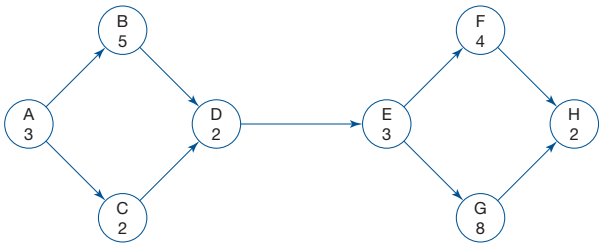
Additional problems **3.24–3.27** *are available in* MyOMLab.

Problems 3.28–3.33 relate to Cost-Time Trade-Offs and Project Crashing

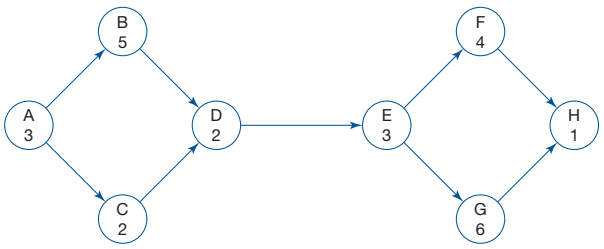
••**3.28** Given the project diagram that follows, see graph (a), and the details of the accompanying table reduce the completion time of the project by 4 weeks in the most economical way:

TASK	DURATION (WEEKS)	CRASH TIME	MAXIMUM WEEKS CRASHED	NORMAL COST (€)	CRASH COST (€)	CRASH COST (€)/ WEEK
A	3	2	1	4,000	5,000	1000
B	5	5	0	10,000	10,000	0
C	2	1	1	1,500	2,000	500
D	2	1	1	6,000	10,000	4,000
E	3	2	1	8,000	15,000	7,000
F	4	3	1	3,000	4,000	1000
G	8	6	2	4,000	7,000	3,000
H	2	1	1	3,000	5,000	2,000

(a) Before



(b) After crashing



••• **3.29** What is the minimum cost of crashing the following project that Roger Solano manages at Slippery Rock University by 4 days?

ACTIVITY	NORMAL TIME (DAYS)	CRASH TIME (DAYS)	NORMAL COST	CRASH COST	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)
A	6	5	$ 900	$1,000	—
B	8	6	300	400	—
C	4	3	500	600	—
D	5	3	900	1,200	A
E	8	5	1,000	1,600	C

PX

•• **3.30** Three activities are candidates for crashing on a project network for a large computer installation (all are, of course, critical). Activity details are in the following table:

ACTIVITY	PREDE-CESSOR	NORMAL TIME	NORMAL COST	CRASH TIME	CRASH COST
A	—	7 days	$6,000	6 days	$6,600
B	A	4 days	1,200	2 days	3,000
C	B	11 days	4,000	9 days	6,000

a) What action would you take to reduce the critical path by 1 day?
b) Assuming no other paths become critical, what action would you take to reduce the critical path one additional day?
c) What is the total cost of the 2-day reduction? PX

••• **3.31** Development of Version 2.0 of a particular accounting software product is being considered by Jose Noguera's technology firm in Baton Rouge. The activities necessary for the completion of this project are listed in the following table:

ACTIVITY	NORMAL TIME (WEEKS)	CRASH TIME (WEEKS)	NORMAL COST	CRASH COST	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)
A	4	3	$2,000	$2,600	—
B	2	1	2,200	2,800	—
C	3	3	500	500	—
D	8	4	2,300	2,600	A
E	6	3	900	1,200	B
F	3	2	3,000	4,200	C
G	4	2	1,400	2,000	D, E

a) What is the project completion date?
b) What is the total cost required for completing this project on normal time?
c) If you wish to reduce the time required to complete this project by 1 week, which activity should be crashed, and how much will this increase the total cost?
d) What is the maximum time that can be crashed? How much would costs increase? PX

••• **3.32** Kimpel Products makes pizza ovens for commercial use. James Kimpel, CEO, is contemplating producing smaller ovens for use in high school and college kitchens. The activities necessary to build an experimental model and related data are given in the following table:

ACTIVITY	NORMAL TIME (WEEKS)	CRASH TIME (WEEKS)	NORMAL COST ($)	CRASH COST ($)	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSOR(S)
A	3	2	1,000	1,600	—
B	2	1	2,000	2,700	—
C	1	1	300	300	—
D	7	3	1,300	1,600	A
E	6	3	850	1,000	B
F	2	1	4,000	5,000	C
G	4	2	1,500	2,000	D, E

a) What is the project completion date?
b) Crash this project to 10 weeks at the least cost.
c) Crash this project to 7 weeks (which is the maximum it can be crashed) at the least cost. PX

Additional problem **3.33** *is available in* MyOMLab.

CASE STUDIES

Southwestern University: (A)*

Southwestern University (SWU), a large state college in Stephenville, Texas, 30 miles southwest of the Dallas/Fort Worth metroplex, enrolls close to 20,000 students. In a typical town–gown relationship, the school is a dominant force in the small city, with more students during fall and spring than permanent residents.

A longtime football powerhouse, SWU is a member of the Big Eleven conference and is usually in the top 20 in college football rankings. To bolster its chances of reaching the elusive and long-desired number-one ranking, in 2009, SWU hired the legendary Phil Flamm as its head coach.

* This integrated study runs throughout the text. Other issues facing Southwestern's football expansion include (B) forecasting game attendance (Chapter 4); (C) quality of facilities (Chapter 6); (D) break-even analysis for food services (Supplement 7); (E) location of the new stadium (Chapter 8); (F) inventory planning of football programs (Chapter 12); and (G) scheduling of campus security officers/staff for game days (Chapter 13).

TABLE 3.6 Southwestern University Project

			TIME ESTIMATES (DAYS)			
ACTIVITY	DESCRIPTION	PREDECESSOR(S)	OPTIMISTIC	MOST LIKELY	PESSIMISTIC	CRASH COST/DAY
A	Bonding, insurance, tax structuring	—	20	30	40	$1,500
B	Foundation, concrete footings for boxes	A	20	65	80	3,500
C	Upgrading skybox stadium seating	A	50	60	100	4,000
D	Upgrading walkways, stairwells, elevators	C	30	50	100	1,900
E	Interior wiring, lathes	B	25	30	35	9,500
F	Inspection approvals	E	0.1	0.1	0.1	0
G	Plumbing	D, F	25	30	35	2,500
H	Painting	G	10	20	30	2,000
I	Hardware/AC/metal workings	H	20	25	60	2,000
J	Tile/carpet/windows	H	8	10	12	6,000
K	Inspection	J	0.1	0.1	0.1	0
L	Final detail work/cleanup	I, K	20	25	60	4,500

One of Flamm's demands on joining SWU had been a new stadium. With attendance increasing, SWU administrators began to face the issue head-on. After 6 months of study, much political arm wrestling, and some serious financial analysis, Dr. Joel Wisner, president of Southwestern University, had reached a decision to expand the capacity at its on-campus stadium.

Adding thousands of seats, including dozens of luxury skyboxes, would not please everyone. The influential Flamm had argued the need for a first-class stadium, one with built-in dormitory rooms for his players and a palatial office appropriate for the coach of a future NCAA champion team. But the decision was made, and *everyone*, including the coach, would learn to live with it.

The job now was to get construction going immediately after the 2015 season ended. This would allow exactly 270 days until the 2016 season opening game. The contractor, Hill Construction (Bob Hill being an alumnus, of course), signed his contract. Bob Hill looked at the tasks his engineers had outlined and looked President Wisner in the eye. "I guarantee the team will be able to take the field on schedule next year," he said with a sense of confidence. "I sure hope so," replied Wisner. "The contract penalty of $10,000 per day for running late is nothing compared to what Coach Flamm will do to you if our opening game with Penn State is delayed or canceled." Hill, sweating slightly, did not need to respond. In football-crazy Texas, Hill Construction would be *mud* if the 270-day target was missed.

Back in his office, Hill again reviewed the data (see Table 3.6) and noted that optimistic time estimates can be used as crash times. He then gathered his foremen. "Folks, if we're not 75% sure we'll finish this stadium in less than 270 days, I want this project crashed! Give me the cost figures for a target date of 250 days—also for 240 days. I want to be *early*, not just on time!"

Discussion Questions

1. Develop a network drawing for Hill Construction and determine the critical path. How long is the project expected to take?
2. What is the probability of finishing in 270 days?
3. If it is necessary to crash to 250 or 240 days, how would Hill do so, and at what costs? As noted in the case, assume that optimistic time estimates can be used as crash times.

Project Management at Arnold Palmer Hospital

Video Case

The equivalent of a new kindergarten class is born every day at Orlando's Arnold Palmer Hospital. With more than 13,000 births in the mid-2000s in a hospital that was designed 15 years earlier for a capacity of 6,500 births a year, the newborn intensive care unit was stretched to the limit. Moreover, with continuing strong population growth in central Florida, the hospital was often full. It was clear that new facilities were needed. After much analysis, forecasting, and discussion, the management team decided to build a new 273-bed building across the street from the existing hospital. But the facility had to be built in accordance with the hospital's Guiding Principles and its uniqueness as a health center dedicated to the specialized needs of women and infants. Those Guiding Principles are: *Family-centered focus, a healing environment where privacy and dignity are respected, sanctuary of caring that includes warm, serene surroundings with natural lighting, sincere and dedicated staff providing the highest quality care, and patient-centered flow and function.*

The vice president of business development, Karl Hodges, wanted a hospital that was designed from the inside out by the people who understood the Guiding Principles, who knew most about the current system, and who were going to use the new system, namely, the doctors and nurses. Hodges and his staff spent 13 months discussing expansion needs with this group, as well as with patients and the community, before developing a proposal

TABLE 3.7 Expansion Planning and Arnold Palmer Hospital Construction Activities and Times[a]

ACTIVITY	SCHEDULED TIME	PRECEDENCE ACTIVITY(IES)
1. Proposal and review	1 month	—
2. Establish master schedule	2 weeks	1
3. Architect selection process	5 weeks	1
4. Survey whole campus and its needs	1 month	1
5. Conceptual architect's plans	6 weeks	3
6. Cost estimating	2 months	2, 4, 5
7. Deliver plans to board for consideration/decision	1 month	6
8. Surveys/regulatory review	6 weeks	6
9. Construction manager selection	9 weeks	6
10. State review of need for more hospital beds ("Certificate of Need")	3.5 months	7, 8
11. Design drawings	4 months	10
12. Construction documents	5 months	9, 11
13. Site preparation/demolish existing building	9 weeks	11
14. Construction start/building pad	2 months	12, 13
15. Relocate utilities	6 weeks	12
16. Deep foundations	2 months	14
17. Building structure in place	9 months	16
18. Exterior skin/roofing	4 months	17
19. Interior buildout	12 months	17
20. Building inspections	5 weeks	15, 19
21. Occupancy	1 month	20

[a]This list of activities is abbreviated for purposes of this case study. For simplification, assume each week = .25 months (i.e., 2 weeks = .5 month, 6 weeks = 1.5 months, etc.).

for the new facility. An administrative team created 35 user groups, which held over 1,000 planning meetings (lasting from 45 minutes to a whole day). They even created a "Supreme Court" to deal with conflicting views on the multifaceted issues facing the new hospital.

Funding and regulatory issues added substantial complexity to this major expansion, and Hodges was very concerned that the project stay on time and within budget. Tom Hyatt, director of facility development, was given the task of onsite manager of the $100 million project, in addition to overseeing ongoing renovations, expansions, and other projects. The activities in the multiyear project for the new building at Arnold Palmer are shown in Table 3.7.

Discussion Questions*

1. Develop the network for planning and construction of the new hospital at Arnold Palmer.
2. What is the critical path, and how long is the project expected to take?
3. Why is the construction of this 11-story building any more complex than construction of an equivalent office building?
4. What percent of the whole project duration was spent in planning that occurred prior to the proposal and reviews? Prior to the actual building construction? Why?

*You may wish to view the video accompanying this case before addressing these questions.

Managing Hard Rock's Rockfest

Video Case

At the Hard Rock Cafe, like many organizations, project management is a key planning tool. With Hard Rock's constant growth in hotels and cafes, remodeling of existing cafes, scheduling for Hard Rock Live concert and event venues, and planning the annual Rockfest, managers rely on project management techniques and software to maintain schedule and budget performance.

"Without Microsoft Project," says Hard Rock Vice-President Chris Tomasso, "there is no way to keep so many people on the same page." Tomasso is in charge of the Rockfest event, which is attended by well over 100,000 enthusiastic fans. The challenge is pulling it off within a tight 9-month planning horizon. As the event approaches, Tomasso devotes greater energy to its

activities. For the first 3 months, Tomasso updates his Microsoft Project charts monthly. Then at the 6-month mark, he updates his progress weekly. At the 9-month mark, he checks and corrects his schedule twice a week.

Early in the project management process, Tomasso identifies 10 major tasks (called level-2 activities in a work breakdown structure, or WBS):† talent booking, ticketing, marketing/PR, online promotion, television, show production, travel, sponsorships, operations, and merchandising. Using a WBS, each of these is further divided into a series of subtasks. Table 3.8 identifies 26 of the major activities and subactivities, their immediate predecessors, and time estimates. Tomasso enters all these into the Microsoft Project software.‡ Tomasso alters the Microsoft Project document and the time line as the project progresses. "It's okay to change it as long as you keep on track," he states.

The day of the rock concert itself is not the end of the project planning. "It's nothing but surprises. A band not being able to get to the venue because of traffic jams is a surprise, but an 'anticipated' surprise. We had a helicopter on stand-by ready to fly the band in," says Tomasso.

On completion of Rockfest in July, Tomasso and his team have a 3-month reprieve before starting the project planning process again.

†The level-1 activity is the Rockfest concert itself.
‡There are actually 127 activities used by Tomasso; the list is abbreviated for this case study.

TABLE 3.8 Some of the Major Activities and Subactivities in the Rockfest Plan

ACTIVITY	DESCRIPTION	PREDECESSOR(S)	TIME (WEEKS)
A	Finalize site and building contracts	—	7
B	Select local promoter	A	3
C	Hire production manager	A	3
D	Design promotional Web site	B	5
E	Set TV deal	D	6
F	Hire director	E	4
G	Plan for TV camera placement	F	2
H	Target headline entertainers	B	4
I	Target support entertainers	H	4
J	Travel accommodations for talent	I	10
K	Set venue capacity	C	2
L	Ticketmaster contract	D, K	3
M	On-site ticketing	L	8
N	Sound and staging	C	6
O	Passes and stage credentials	G, R	7
P	Travel accommodations for staff	B	20
Q	Hire sponsor coordinator	B	4
R	Finalize sponsors	Q	4
S	Define/place signage for sponsors	R, X	3
T	Hire operations manager	A	4
U	Develop site plan	T	6
V	Hire security director	T	7
W	Set police/fire security plan	V	4
X	Power, plumbing, AC, toilet services	U	8
Y	Secure merchandise deals	B	6
Z	Online merchandise sales	Y	6

Discussion Questions[§]

1. Identify the critical path and its activities for Rockfest. How long does the project take?
2. Which activities have a slack time of 8 weeks or more?
3. Identify five major challenges a project manager faces in events such as this one.
4. Why is a work breakdown structure useful in a project such as this? Take the 26 activities and break them into what you think should be level-2, level-3, and level-4 tasks.

[§]You may wish to view the video accompanying this case before addressing these questions.

- **Additional Case Study:** Visit MyOMLab for this free case study:
  Shale Oil Company: This oil refinery must shut down for maintenance of a major piece of equipment.

Endnotes

1. This formula is based on the statistical concept that from one end of the beta distribution to the other is 6 standard deviations (±3 standard deviations from the mean). Because $(b - a)$ is 6 standard deviations, the variance is $[(b - a)/6]^2$.
2. *Source:* Adapted from James A. D. Stoner, *Management*, 6th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson).

Chapter 3 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
THE IMPORTANCE OF PROJECT MANAGEMENT (p. 100)	The management of projects involves three phases: 1. *Planning*—This phase includes goal setting, defining the project, and team organization. 2. *Scheduling*—This phase relates people, money, and supplies to specific activities and relates activities to each other. 3. *Controlling*—Here the firm monitors resources, costs, quality, and budgets. It also revises or changes plans and shifts resources to meet time and cost demands.	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4 **VIDEO 3.1** Project Management at Hard Rock's Rockfest
PROJECT PLANNING (pp. 100–103)	Projects can be defined as a series of related tasks directed toward a major output. ■ **Project organization**—An organization formed to ensure that programs (projects) receive the proper management and attention. ■ **Work breakdown structure (WBS)**—Defines a project by dividing it into more and more detailed components.	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4 Problems: 3.1–3.2
PROJECT SCHEDULING (pp. 103–104)	■ **Gantt charts**—Planning charts used to schedule resources and allocate time. Project scheduling serves several purposes: 1. It shows the relationship of each activity to others and to the whole project. 2. It identifies the precedence relationships among activities. 3. It encourages the setting of realistic time and cost estimates for each activity. 4. It helps make better use of people, money, and material resources by identifying critical bottlenecks in the project.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4 Problem: 3.3
PROJECT CONTROLLING (pp. 104–105)	Computerized programs produce a broad variety of PERT/CPM reports, including (1) detailed cost breakdowns for each task, (2) total program labor curves, (3) cost distribution tables, (4) functional cost and hour summaries, (5) raw material and expenditure forecasts, (6) variance reports, (7) time analysis reports, and (8) work status reports.	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.2 **VIDEO 3.2** Project Management at Arnold Palmer Hospital
PROJECT MANAGEMENT TECHNIQUES: PERT AND CPM (pp. 105–109)	■ **Program evaluation and review technique (PERT)**—A project management technique that employs three time estimates for each activity. ■ **Critical path method (CPM)**—A project management technique that uses only one estimate per activity. ■ **Critical path**—The computed *longest* time path(s) through a network. PERT and CPM both follow six basic steps. The activities on the critical path will delay the entire project if they are not completed on time. ■ **Activity-on-node (AON)**—A network diagram in which nodes designate activities. ■ **Activity-on-arrow (AOA)**—A network diagram in which arrows designate activities. In an AOA network, the nodes represent the starting and finishing times of an activity and are also called *events*. ■ **Dummy activity**—An activity having no time that is inserted into a network to maintain the logic of the network. A dummy ending activity can be added to the end of an AON diagram for a project that has multiple ending activities.	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.4 Problems: 3.4–3.14 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problems: 3.1, 3.2
DETERMINING THE PROJECT SCHEDULE (pp. 109–115)	■ **Critical path analysis**—A process that helps determine a project schedule. To find the critical path, we calculate two distinct starting and ending times for each activity: ■ *Earliest start (ES)* = Earliest time at which an activity can start, assuming that all predecessors have been completed ■ *Earliest finish (EF)* = Earliest time at which an activity can be finished ■ *Latest start (LS)* = Latest time at which an activity can start, without delaying the completion time of the entire project ■ *Latest finish (LF)* = Latest time by which an activity has to finish so as to not delay the completion time of the entire project ■ **Forward pass**—A process that identifies all the early start and early finish times. $ES = \text{Max}\{EF \text{ of all immediate predecessors}\}$ (3-1) $EF = ES + \text{Activity time}$ (3-2) ■ **Backward pass**—A process that identifies all the late start and late finish times. $LF = \text{Min}\{LS \text{ of all immediate following activities}\}$ (3-3) $LS = LF - \text{Activity time}$ (3-4)	Concept Questions: 6.1–6.4 Problems: 3.15, 3.16

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
	■ **Slack time**—Free time for an activity. $$\text{Slack} = \text{LS} - \text{ES} \quad \text{or} \quad \text{Slack} = \text{LF} - \text{EF} \qquad (3\text{-}5)$$ The activities with zero slack are called *critical activities* and are said to be on the critical path. The critical path is a continuous path through the project network that starts at the first activity in the project, terminates at the last activity in the project, and includes only critical activities.	Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 3.3 ACTIVE MODEL 3.1
VARIABILITY IN ACTIVITY TIMES (pp. 115–120)	■ **Optimistic time** (a)—The "best" activity completion time that could be obtained in a PERT network. ■ **Pessimistic time** (b)—The "worst" activity time that could be expected in a PERT network. ■ **Most likely time** (m)—The most probable time to complete an activity in a PERT network. When using PERT, we often assume that activity time estimates follow the beta distribution. $$\text{Expected activity time } t = (a + 4m + b)/6 \qquad (3\text{-}6)$$ $$\text{Variance of activity completion time} = [(b - a)/6]^2 \qquad (3\text{-}7)$$ $$\sigma_p^2 = \text{Project variance} = \Sigma \text{ (variances of activities on critical path)} \qquad (3\text{-}8)$$ $$Z = (\text{Due date} - \text{Expected date of completion})/\sigma_p \qquad (3\text{-}9)$$ $$\text{Due date} = \text{Expected completion time} + (Z \times \sigma_p) \qquad (3\text{-}10)$$	Concept Questions: 7.1–7.4 Problems: 3.17–3.27 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problems: 3.4, 3.5, 3.6
COST-TIME TRADE-OFFS AND PROJECT CRASHING (pp. 120–123)	■ **Crashing**—Shortening activity time in a network to reduce time on the critical path so total completion time is reduced. $$\text{Crash cost per period} = \frac{(\text{Crash cost} - \text{Normal cost})}{(\text{Normal time} - \text{Crash time})} \qquad (3\text{-}11)$$	Concept Questions: 8.1–8.4 Problems: 3.28–3.33 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 3.7
A CRITIQUE OF PERT AND CPM (pp. 123–124)	As with every technique for problem solving, PERT and CPM have a number of advantages as well as several limitations.	Concept Questions: 9.1–9.4
USING MICROSOFT PROJECT TO MANAGE PROJECTS (pp. 124–126)	Microsoft Project, the most popular example of specialized project management software, is extremely useful in drawing project networks, identifying the project schedule, and managing project costs and other resources.	Concept Questions: 10.1–10.4

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 3.1 A well designed WBS helps the project manager in that:
- **a)** It defines all the elements of the project in a hierarchical outline (map)
- **b)** It defines the relationship of the projectto its sub-deliverables, and in turn, their relationships to work packages
- **c)** It serves as a framework for tracking cost and work performance
- **d)** All the above

LO 3.2 There are the following advantages to AON method:
- **a)** No dummy activities are used
- **b)** Nodes designate activities
- **c)** Events are not used
- **d)** Easy to draw if dependencies are not intense
- **e)** All of the above

LO 3.3 Slack time equals:
- **a)** ES + t.
- **b)** LS − ES.
- **c)** zero.
- **d)** EF − ES.

LO 3.4 The critical path of a network is the:
- **a)** shortest-time path through the network.
- **b)** path with the fewest activities.
- **c)** path with the most activities.
- **d)** longest-time path through the network.

LO 3.5 When an activity has to be crashed, the following have to be considered:
- **a)** the inherent risks involved in crashing particular activities need to be considered, as some activities are riskier to crash than others
- **b)** the timing of activities needs to be considered
- **c)** crashing frequently results in overallocation of resources and impacts the morale and motivation of the project team
- **d)** all of the above

LO 3.6 The crash cost per period:
- **a)** is the difference in costs divided by the difference in times (crash and normal).
- **b)** is considered to be linear in the range between normal and crash.
- **c)** needs to be determined so that the smallest cost values on the critical path can be considered for time reduction first.
- **d)** all of the above.

Answers: LO 3.1. d; LO 3.2. e; LO 3.3. b; LO 3.4. d; LO 3.5. d; LO 3.6. d.

Forecasting Demand

CHAPTER 4

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *Walt Disney Parks & Resorts*

- What Is Forecasting? *146*
- The Strategic Importance of Forecasting *147*
- Seven Steps in the Forecasting System *148*
- Forecasting Approaches *149*
- Time-Series Forecasting *150*
- Associative Forecasting Methods: Regression and Correlation Analysis *169*
- Monitoring and Controlling Forecasts *176*
- Forecasting in the Service Sector *178*

Alaska Airlines

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
Walt Disney Parks & Resorts

Forecasting Provides a Competitive Advantage for Disney

When it comes to the world's most respected global brands, Walt Disney Parks & Resorts is a visible leader. Although the monarch of this magic kingdom is no man but a mouse—Mickey Mouse—it's CEO Robert Iger who daily manages the entertainment giant. Disney's global portfolio includes Shanghai Disney (2016), Hong Kong Disneyland (2005), Disneyland Paris (1992), and Tokyo Disneyland (1983). But it is Walt Disney World Resort (in Florida) and Disneyland Resort (in California) that drive profits in this $50 billion corporation, which is ranked in the top 100 in both the *Fortune* 500 and *Financial Times* Global 500.

Travelshots/Peter Phipp/Travelshots.com/Alamy

Donald Duck, Goofy, and Mickey Mouse provide the public image of Disney to the world. Forecasts drive the work schedules of 72,000 cast members working at Walt Disney World Resort near Orlando.

Revenues at Disney are all about people—how many visit the parks and how they spend money while there. When Iger receives a daily report from his four theme parks and two water parks near Orlando, the report contains only two numbers: the *forecast* of yesterday's attendance at the parks (Magic Kingdom, Epcot, Disney's Animal Kingdom, Disney-Hollywood Studios, Typhoon Lagoon, and Blizzard Beach) and the *actual* attendance. An error close to zero is expected. Iger takes his forecasts very seriously.

The forecasting team at Walt Disney World Resort doesn't just do a daily prediction, however, and Iger is not its only customer. The team also provides daily, weekly, monthly, annual, and 5-year forecasts to the labor management, maintenance, operations, finance, and park scheduling departments. Forecasters use judgmental models, econometric models, moving-average models, and regression analysis.

The giant sphere is the symbol of Epcot, one of Disney's four Orlando parks, for which forecasts of meals, lodging, entertainment, and transportation must be made. This Disney monorail moves guests among parks and the 28 hotels on the massive 47-square-mile property (about the size of San Francisco and twice the size of Manhattan).

Nicolas Chan/Alamy

Kevin Fleming/Corbis

A daily forecast of attendance is made by adjusting Disney's annual operating plan for weather forecasts, the previous day's crowds, conventions, and seasonal variations. One of the two water parks at Walt Disney World Resort, Typhoon Lagoon, is shown here.

Melvyn Longhurst/Corbis

Cinderella's iconic castle is a focal point for meeting up with family and friends in the massive park. The statue of Walt Disney greets visitors to the open plaza.

With 20% of Walt Disney World Resort's customers coming from outside the United States, its economic model includes such variables as gross domestic product (GDP), cross-exchange rates, and arrivals into the U.S. Disney also uses 35 analysts and 70 field people to survey 1 million people each year. The surveys, administered to guests at the parks and its 20 hotels, to employees, and to travel industry professionals, examine future travel plans and experiences at the parks. This helps forecast not only attendance but also behavior at each ride (e.g., how long people will wait, how many times they will ride). Inputs to the monthly forecasting model include airline specials, speeches by the chair of the Federal Reserve, and Wall Street trends. Disney even monitors 3,000 school districts inside and outside the U.S. for holiday/vacation schedules. With this approach, Disney's 5-year attendance forecast yields just a 5% error on average. Its annual forecasts have a 0% to 3% error.

Attendance forecasts for the parks drive a whole slew of management decisions. For example, capacity on any day can be increased by opening at 8 A.M. instead of the usual 9 A.M., by opening more shows or rides, by adding more food/beverage carts (9 million hamburgers and 50 million Cokes are sold per year!), and by bringing in more employees (called "cast members"). Cast members are scheduled in 15-minute intervals throughout the parks for flexibility. Demand can be managed by limiting the number of guests admitted to the parks, with the "FAST PASS" reservation system, and by shifting crowds from rides to more street parades.

dmac/Alamy

Forecasts are critical to making sure rides are not overcrowded. Disney is good at "managing demand" with techniques such as adding more street activities to reduce long lines for rides. On slow days, Disney calls fewer cast members to work.

At Disney, forecasting is a key driver in the company's success and competitive advantage.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **LO 4.1** ***Understand*** the three time horizons and which models apply for each 146
- **LO 4.2** ***Explain*** when to use each of the four qualitative models 149
- **LO 4.3** ***Apply*** the naive, moving-average, exponential smoothing, and trend methods 151
- **LO 4.4** ***Compute*** three measures of forecast accuracy 156
- **LO 4.5** ***Develop*** seasonal indices 165
- **LO 4.6** ***Conduct*** a regression and correlation analysis 169
- **LO 4.7** ***Use*** a tracking signal 176

What Is Forecasting?

Every day, managers like those at Disney make decisions without knowing what will happen in the future. They order inventory without knowing what sales will be, purchase new equipment despite uncertainty about demand for products, and make investments without knowing what profits will be. Managers are always trying to make better estimates of what will happen in the future in the face of uncertainty. Making good estimates is the main purpose of forecasting.

STUDENT TIP An increasingly complex world economy makes forecasting challenging.

In this chapter, we examine different types of forecasts and present a variety of forecasting models. Our purpose is to show that there are many ways for managers to forecast. We also provide an overview of business sales forecasting and describe how to prepare, monitor, and judge the accuracy of a forecast. Good forecasts are an *essential* part of efficient service and manufacturing operations.

Forecasting
The art and science of predicting future events.

Forecasting is the art and science of predicting future events. Forecasting may involve taking historical data (such as past sales) and projecting them into the future with a mathematical model. It may be a subjective or an intuitive prediction (e.g., "this is a great new product and will sell 20% more than the old one"). It may be based on demand-driven data, such as customer plans to purchase, and projecting them into the future. Or the forecast may involve a combination of these, that is, a mathematical model adjusted by a manager's good judgment.

As we introduce different forecasting techniques in this chapter, you will see that there is seldom one superior method. Forecasts may be influenced by a product's position in its life cycle—whether sales are in an introduction, growth, maturity, or decline stage. Other products can be influenced by the demand for a related product—for example, navigation systems may track with new car sales. Because there are limits to what can be expected from forecasts, we develop error measures. Preparing and monitoring forecasts can also be costly and time consuming.

Few businesses, however, can afford to avoid the process of forecasting by just waiting to see what happens and then taking their chances. Effective planning in both the short run and long run depends on a forecast of demand for the company's products.

Forecasting Time Horizons

LO 4.1 *Understand* the three time horizons and which models apply for each

A forecast is usually classified by the *future time horizon* that it covers. Time horizons fall into three categories:

1. *Short-range forecast:* This forecast has a time span of up to 1 year but is generally less than 3 months. It is used for planning purchasing, job scheduling, workforce levels, job assignments, and production levels.
2. *Medium-range forecast:* A medium-range, or intermediate, forecast generally spans from 3 months to 3 years. It is useful in sales planning, production planning and budgeting, cash budgeting, and analysis of various operating plans.
3. *Long-range forecast:* Generally 3 years or more in time span, long-range forecasts are used in planning for new products, capital expenditures, facility location or expansion, and research and development.

Medium- and long-range forecasts are distinguished from short-range forecasts by three features:

1. First, intermediate and long-range forecasts *deal with more comprehensive issues* supporting management decisions regarding planning and products, plants, and processes. Implementing some facility decisions, such as GM's decision to open a new Brazilian manufacturing plant, can take 5 to 8 years from inception to completion.
2. Second, short-term forecasting usually *employs different methodologies* than longer-term forecasting. Mathematical techniques, such as moving averages, exponential smoothing, and trend extrapolation (all of which we shall examine shortly), are common to short-run projections. Broader, *less* quantitative methods are useful in predicting such issues as whether a new product, like the optical disk recorder, should be introduced into a company's product line.
3. Finally, as you would expect, short-range forecasts *tend to be more accurate* than longer-range forecasts. Factors that influence demand change every day. Thus, as the time horizon lengthens, it is likely that forecast accuracy will diminish. It almost goes without saying, then, that sales forecasts must be updated regularly to maintain their value and integrity. After each sales period, forecasts should be reviewed and revised.

Types of Forecasts

Organizations use three major types of forecasts in planning future operations:

1. **Economic forecasts** address the business cycle by predicting inflation rates, money supplies, housing starts, and other planning indicators.
2. **Technological forecasts** are concerned with rates of technological progress, which can result in the birth of exciting new products, requiring new plants and equipment.
3. **Demand forecasts** are projections of demand for a company's products or services. Forecasts drive decisions, so managers need immediate and accurate information about real demand. They need *demand-driven forecasts*, where the focus is on rapidly identifying and tracking customer desires. These forecasts may use recent point-of-sale (POS) data, retailer-generated reports of customer preferences, and any other information that will help to forecast with the most current data possible. Demand-driven forecasts drive a company's production, capacity, and scheduling systems and serve as inputs to financial, marketing, and personnel planning. In addition, the payoff in reduced inventory and obsolescence can be huge.

Economic forecasts
Planning indicators that are valuable in helping organizations prepare medium- to long-range forecasts.

Technological forecasts
Long-term forecasts concerned with the rates of technological progress.

Demand forecasts
Projections of a company's sales for each time period in the planning horizon.

Economic and technological forecasting are specialized techniques that may fall outside the role of the operations manager. The emphasis in this chapter will therefore be on demand forecasting.

The Strategic Importance of Forecasting

Good forecasts are of critical importance in all aspects of a business: *The forecast is the only estimate of demand until actual demand becomes known.* Forecasts of demand therefore drive decisions in many areas. Let's look at the impact of product demand forecast on three activities: (1) supply-chain management, (2) human resources, and (3) capacity.

Supply-Chain Management

Good supplier relations and the ensuing advantages in product innovation, cost, and speed to market depend on accurate forecasts. Here are just three examples:

- Apple has built an effective global system where it controls nearly every piece of the supply chain, from product design to retail store. With rapid communication and accurate data shared up and down the supply chain, innovation is enhanced, inventory costs are reduced, and speed to market is improved. Once a product goes on sale, Apple tracks demand by the

hour for each store and adjusts production forecasts daily. At Apple, forecasts for its supply chain are a strategic weapon.

- Toyota develops sophisticated car forecasts with input from a variety of sources, including dealers. But forecasting the demand for accessories such as navigation systems, custom wheels, spoilers, and so on is particularly difficult. And there are over 1,000 items that vary by model and color. As a result, Toyota not only reviews reams of data with regard to vehicles that have been built and wholesaled but also looks in detail at vehicle forecasts before it makes judgments about the future accessory demand. When this is done correctly, the result is an efficient supply chain and satisfied customers.
- Walmart collaborates with suppliers such as Sara Lee and Procter & Gamble to make sure the right item is available at the right time in the right place and at the right price. For instance, in hurricane season, Walmart's ability to analyze 700 million store–item combinations means it can forecast that not only flashlights but also Pop-Tarts and beer sell at seven times the normal demand rate. These forecasting systems are known as *collaborative planning, forecasting, and replenishment* (CPFR). They combine the intelligence of multiple supply-chain partners. The goal of CPFR is to create significantly more accurate information that can power the supply chain to greater sales and profits.

Human Resources

Hiring, training, and laying off workers all depend on anticipated demand. If the human resources department must hire additional workers without warning, the amount of training declines, and the quality of the workforce suffers. A large Louisiana chemical firm almost lost its biggest customer when a quick expansion to around-the-clock shifts led to a total breakdown in quality control on the second and third shifts.

Capacity

When capacity is inadequate, the resulting shortages can lead to loss of customers and market share. This is exactly what happened to Nabisco when it underestimated the huge demand for its new Snackwell Devil's Food Cookies. Even with production lines working overtime, Nabisco could not keep up with demand, and it lost customers. Nintendo faced this problem when its Wii was introduced and exceeded all forecasts for demand. Amazon made the same error with its Kindle. On the other hand, when excess capacity exists, costs can skyrocket.

Seven Steps in the Forecasting System

Forecasting follows seven basic steps. We use Disney World, the focus of this chapter's *Global Company Profile*, as an example of each step:

1. *Determine the use of the forecast:* Disney uses park attendance forecasts to drive decisions about staffing, opening times, ride availability, and food supplies.
2. *Select the items to be forecasted:* For Disney World, there are six main parks. A forecast of daily attendance at each is the main number that determines labor, maintenance, and scheduling.
3. *Determine the time horizon of the forecast:* Is it short, medium, or long term? Disney develops daily, weekly, monthly, annual, and 5-year forecasts.
4. *Select the forecasting model(s):* Disney uses a variety of statistical models that we shall discuss, including moving averages, econometrics, and regression analysis. It also employs judgmental, or nonquantitative, models.
5. *Gather the data needed to make the forecast:* Disney's forecasting team employs 35 analysts and 70 field personnel to survey 1 million people/businesses every year. Disney also uses a firm called Global Insights for travel industry forecasts and gathers data on exchange rates, arrivals into the U.S., airline specials, Wall Street trends, and school vacation schedules.

6. *Make the forecast.*
7. *Validate and implement the results:* At Disney, forecasts are reviewed daily at the highest levels to make sure that the model, assumptions, and data are valid. Error measures are applied; then the forecasts are used to schedule personnel down to 15-minute intervals.

These seven steps present a systematic way of initiating, designing, and implementing a forecasting system. When the system is to be used to generate forecasts regularly over time, data must be routinely collected. Then actual computations are usually made by computer.

Regardless of the system that firms like Disney use, each company faces several realities:

- Outside factors that we cannot predict or control often impact the forecast.
- Most forecasting techniques assume that there is some underlying stability in the system. Consequently, some firms automate their predictions using computerized forecasting software, then closely monitor only the product items whose demand is erratic.
- Both product family and aggregated forecasts are more accurate than individual product forecasts. Disney, for example, aggregates daily attendance forecasts by park. This approach helps balance the over- and underpredictions for each of the six attractions.

Forecasting Approaches

There are two general approaches to forecasting, just as there are two ways to tackle all decision modeling. One is a quantitative analysis; the other is a qualitative approach. **Quantitative forecasts** use a variety of mathematical models that rely on historical data and/or associative variables to forecast demand. Subjective or **qualitative forecasts** incorporate such factors as the decision maker's intuition, emotions, personal experiences, and value system in reaching a forecast. Some firms use one approach and some use the other. In practice, a combination of the two is usually most effective.

Quantitative forecasts
Forecasts that employ mathematical modeling to forecast demand.

Qualitative forecasts
Forecasts that incorporate such factors as the decision maker's intuition, emotions, personal experiences, and value system.

Overview of Qualitative Methods

In this section, we consider four different *qualitative* forecasting techniques:

1. **Jury of executive opinion**: Under this method, the opinions of a group of high-level experts or managers, often in combination with statistical models, are pooled to arrive at a group estimate of demand. Bristol-Myers Squibb Company, for example, uses 220 well-known research scientists as its jury of executive opinion to get a grasp on future trends in the world of medical research.
2. **Delphi method**: There are three different types of participants in the Delphi method: decision makers, staff personnel, and respondents. Decision makers usually consist of a group of 5 to 10 experts who will be making the actual forecast. Staff personnel assist decision makers by preparing, distributing, collecting, and summarizing a series of questionnaires and survey results. The respondents are a group of people, often located in different places, whose judgments are valued. This group provides inputs to the decision makers before the forecast is made.

   The state of Alaska, for example, has used the Delphi method to develop its long-range economic forecast. A large part of the state's budget is derived from the million-plus barrels of oil pumped daily through a pipeline at Prudhoe Bay. The large Delphi panel of experts had to represent all groups and opinions in the state and all geographic areas.
3. **Sales force composite**: In this approach, each salesperson estimates what sales will be in his or her region. These forecasts are then reviewed to ensure that they are realistic. Then they are combined at the district and national levels to reach an overall forecast. A variation of this approach occurs at Lexus, where every quarter Lexus dealers have a "make meeting." At this meeting, they talk about what is selling, in what colors, and with what options, so the factory knows what to build.
4. **Market survey**: This method solicits input from customers or potential customers regarding future purchasing plans. It can help not only in preparing a forecast but also in improving

Jury of executive opinion
A forecasting technique that uses the opinion of a small group of high-level managers to form a group estimate of demand.

Delphi method
A forecasting technique using a group process that allows experts to make forecasts.

LO 4.2 *Explain* when to use each of the four qualitative models

Sales force composite
A forecasting technique based on salespersons' estimates of expected sales.

Market survey
A forecasting method that solicits input from customers or potential customers regarding future purchasing plans.

product design and planning for new products. The consumer market survey and sales force composite methods can, however, suffer from overly optimistic forecasts that arise from customer input.

Overview of Quantitative Methods[1]

Five quantitative forecasting methods, all of which use historical data, are described in this chapter. They fall into two categories:

1. Naive approach
2. Moving averages
3. Exponential smoothing
4. Trend projection

} **Time-series models**

5. Linear regression } **Associative model**

Time series
A forecasting technique that uses a series of past data points to make a forecast.

Time-Series Models Time-series models predict on the assumption that the future is a function of the past. In other words, they look at what has happened over a period of time and use a series of past data to make a forecast. If we are predicting sales of lawn mowers, we use the past sales for lawn mowers to make the forecasts.

Associative Models Associative models, such as linear regression, incorporate the variables or factors that might influence the quantity being forecast. For example, an associative model for lawn mower sales might use factors such as new housing starts, advertising budget, and competitors' prices.

STUDENT TIP
Here is the meat of this chapter. We now show you a wide variety of models that use time-series data.

Time-Series Forecasting

A time series is based on a sequence of evenly spaced (weekly, monthly, quarterly, and so on) data points. Examples include weekly sales of Nike Air Jordans, quarterly earnings reports of Microsoft stock, daily shipments of Coors beer, and annual consumer price indices. Forecasting time-series data implies that future values are predicted *only* from past values and that other variables, no matter how potentially valuable, may be ignored.

Decomposition of a Time Series

Analyzing time series means breaking down past data into components and then projecting them forward. A time series has four components:

1. *Trend* is the gradual upward or downward movement of the data over time. Changes in income, population, age distribution, or cultural views may account for movement in trend.

STUDENT TIP
The peak "seasons" for sales of Frito-Lay chips are the Super Bowl, Memorial Day, Labor Day, and the Fourth of July.

2. *Seasonality* is a data pattern that repeats itself after a period of days, weeks, months, or quarters. There are six common seasonality patterns:

PERIOD LENGTH	"SEASON" LENGTH	NUMBER OF "SEASONS" IN PATTERN
Week	Day	7
Month	Week	4–4$\frac{1}{2}$
Month	Day	28–31
Year	Quarter	4
Year	Month	12
Year	Week	52

Restaurants and barber shops, for example, experience weekly seasons, with Saturday being the peak of business. See the *OM in Action* box "Forecasting at Olive Garden." Beer distributors forecast yearly patterns, with monthly seasons. Three "seasons"—May, July, and September—each contain a big beer-drinking holiday.

OM in Action Forecasting at Olive Garden

It's Friday night in the college town of Gainesville, Florida, and the local Olive Garden restaurant is humming. Customers may wait an average of 30 minutes for a table, but they can sample new wines and cheeses and admire scenic paintings of Italian villages on the Tuscan-style restaurant's walls. Then comes dinner with portions so huge that many people take home a doggie bag. The typical bill: under $15 per person.

Crowds flock to the Darden restaurant chain's Olive Garden, Seasons 52, and Bahama Breeze for value and consistency—*and* they get it.

Every night, Darden's computers crank out forecasts that tell store managers what demand to anticipate the next day. The forecasting software generates a total meal forecast and breaks that down into specific menu items. The system tells a manager, for instance, that if 625 meals will be served the next day, "you will serve these items in these quantities. So before you go home, pull 25 pounds of shrimp and 30 pounds of crab out, and tell your operations people to prepare 42 portion packs of chicken, 75 scampi dishes, 8 stuffed flounders, and so on." Managers often fine-tune the quantities based on local conditions, such as weather or a convention, but they know what their customers are going to order.

Bob Pardue - Signs/Alamy

By relying on demand history, the forecasting system has cut millions of dollars of waste out of the system. The forecast also reduces labor costs by providing the necessary information for improved scheduling. Labor costs decreased almost a full percent in the first year, translating into additional millions in savings for the Darden chain. In the low-margin restaurant business, every dollar counts.

Sources: InformationWeek (April 1, 2014); *USA Today* (Oct. 13, 2014); and *FastCompany* (July-August 2009).

3. *Cycles* are patterns in the data that occur every several years. They are usually tied into the business cycle and are of major importance in short-term business analysis and planning. Predicting business cycles is difficult because they may be affected by political events or by international turmoil.
4. *Random variations* are "blips" in the data caused by chance and unusual situations. They follow no discernible pattern, so they cannot be predicted.

LO 4.3 *Apply* the naive, moving-average, exponential smoothing, and trend methods

Figure 4.1 illustrates a demand over a 4-year period. It shows the average, trend, seasonal components, and random variations around the demand curve. The average demand is the sum of the demand for each period divided by the number of data periods.

Naive Approach

The simplest way to forecast is to assume that demand in the next period will be equal to demand in the most recent period. In other words, if sales of a product—say, Nokia cell phones—were 68 units in January, we can forecast that February's sales will also be 68 phones.

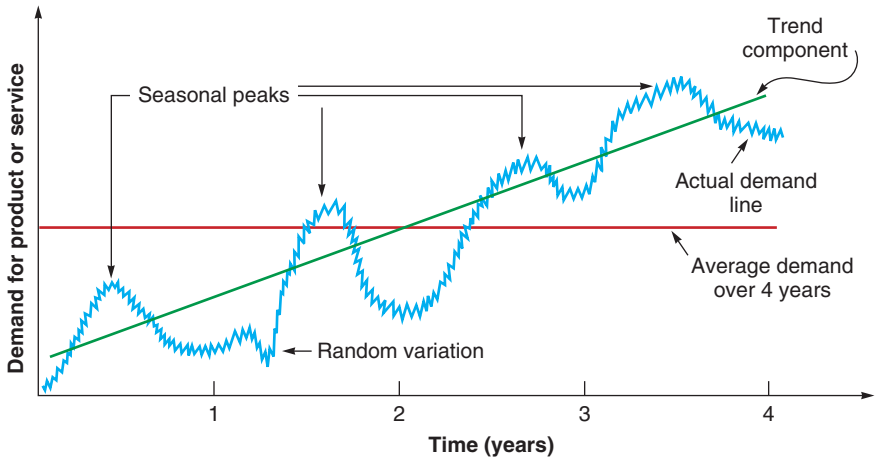


Figure 4.1
Demand Charted over 4 Years, with a Growth Trend and Seasonality Indicated

STUDENT TIP
Forecasting is easy when demand is stable. But with trend, seasonality, and cycles considered, the job is a lot more interesting.

Naive approach
A forecasting technique that assumes that demand in the next period is equal to demand in the most recent period.

Does this make any sense? It turns out that for some product lines, this **naive approach** is the most cost-effective and efficient objective forecasting model. At least it provides a starting point against which more sophisticated models that follow can be compared.

Moving Averages

Moving averages
A forecasting method that uses an average of the *n* most recent periods of data to forecast the next period.

A **moving-average** forecast uses a number of historical actual data values to generate a forecast. Moving averages are useful *if we can assume that market demands will stay fairly steady over time*. A 4-month moving average is found by simply summing the demand during the past 4 months and dividing by 4. With each passing month, the most recent month's data are added to the sum of the previous 3 months' data, and the earliest month is dropped. This practice tends to smooth out short-term irregularities in the data series.

Mathematically, the simple moving average (which serves as an estimate of the next period's demand) is expressed as:

$$\text{Moving average} = \frac{\Sigma \text{ demand in previous } n \text{ periods}}{n} \tag{4-1}$$

where n is the number of periods in the moving average—for example, 4, 5, or 6 months, respectively, for a 4-, 5-, or 6-period moving average.

Example 1 shows how moving averages are calculated.

Example 1

DETERMINING THE MOVING AVERAGE

Donna's Garden Supply wants a 3-month moving-average forecast, including a forecast for next January, for shed sales.

APPROACH ▶ Storage shed sales are shown in the middle column of the following table. A 3-month moving average appears on the right.

MONTH	ACTUAL SHED SALES	3-MONTH MOVING AVERAGE
January	10	
February	12	
March	13	
April	16	$(10 + 12 + 13)/3 = 11\frac{2}{3}$
May	19	$(12 + 13 + 16)/3 = 13\frac{2}{3}$
June	23	$(13 + 16 + 19)/3 = 16$
July	26	$(16 + 19 + 23)/3 = 19\frac{1}{3}$
August	30	$(19 + 23 + 26)/3 = 22\frac{2}{3}$
September	28	$(23 + 26 + 30)/3 = 26\frac{1}{3}$
October	18	$(26 + 30 + 28)/3 = 28$
November	16	$(30 + 28 + 18)/3 = 25\frac{1}{3}$
December	14	$(28 + 18 + 16)/3 = 20\frac{2}{3}$

SOLUTION ▶ The forecast for December is $20\frac{2}{3}$. To project the demand for sheds in the coming January, we sum the October, November, and December sales and divide by 3: January forecast $= (18 + 16 + 14)/3 = 16$.

INSIGHT ▶ Management now has a forecast that averages sales for the last 3 months. It is easy to use and understand.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If actual sales in December were 18 (rather than 14), what is the new January forecast? [Answer: $17\frac{1}{3}$.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 4.1a, 4.2b, 4.5a, 4.6, 4.8a, b, 4.10a, 4.13b, 4.15, 4.33 (4.35, 4.38 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch04Ex1.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

ACTIVE MODEL 4.1 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 4.1 in MyOMLab.

When a detectable trend or pattern is present, *weights* can be used to place more emphasis on recent values. This practice makes forecasting techniques more responsive to changes because more recent periods may be more heavily weighted. Choice of weights is somewhat arbitrary because there is no set formula to determine them. Therefore, deciding which weights to use requires some experience. For example, if the latest month or period is weighted too heavily, the forecast may reflect a large unusual change in the demand or sales pattern too quickly.

A weighted moving average may be expressed mathematically as:

$$\text{Weighted moving average} = \frac{\sum((\text{Weight for period } n)(\text{Demand in period } n))}{\sum \text{Weights}} \quad (4\text{-}2)$$

Example 2 shows how to calculate a weighted moving average.

Example 2

DETERMINING THE WEIGHTED MOVING AVERAGE

Donna's Garden Supply (see Example 1) wants to forecast storage shed sales by weighting the past 3 months, with more weight given to recent data to make them more significant.

APPROACH ▶ Assign more weight to recent data, as follows:

WEIGHTS APPLIED	PERIOD
3	Last month
2	Two months ago
1	Three months ago
6	Sum of weights

$$\text{Forecast for this month} = \frac{3 \times \text{Sales last mo.} + 2 \times \text{Sales 2 mos. ago} + 1 \times \text{Sales 3 mos. ago}}{\text{Sum of the weights}}$$

SOLUTION ▶ The results of this weighted-average forecast are as follows:

MONTH	ACTUAL SHED SALES	3-MONTH WEIGHTED MOVING AVERAGE
January	10	
February	12	
March	13	
April	16	$[(3 \times 13) + (2 \times 12) + (10)]/6 = 12\frac{1}{6}$
May	19	$[(3 \times 16) + (2 \times 13) + (12)]/6 = 14\frac{1}{3}$
June	23	$[(3 \times 19) + (2 \times 16) + (13)]/6 = 17$
July	26	$[(3 \times 23) + (2 \times 19) + (16)]/6 = 20\frac{1}{2}$
August	30	$[(3 \times 26) + (2 \times 23) + (19)]/6 = 23\frac{5}{6}$
September	28	$[(3 \times 30) + (2 \times 26) + (23)]/6 = 27\frac{1}{2}$
October	18	$[(3 \times 28) + (2 \times 30) + (26)]/6 = 28\frac{1}{3}$
November	16	$[(3 \times 18) + (2 \times 28) + (30)]/6 = 23\frac{1}{3}$
December	14	$[(3 \times 16) + (2 \times 18) + (28)]/6 = 18\frac{2}{3}$

The forecast for January is $15\frac{1}{3}$. Do you see how this number is computed?

INSIGHT ▶ In this particular forecasting situation, you can see that more heavily weighting the latest month provides a more accurate projection.

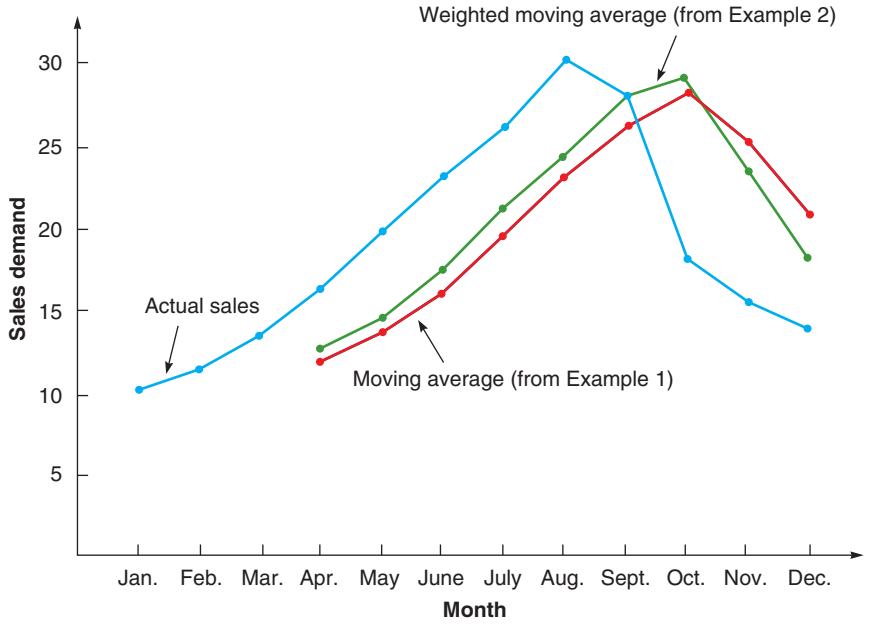
LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the assigned weights were 0.50, 0.33, and 0.17 (instead of 3, 2, and 1), what is the forecast for January's weighted moving average? Why? [Answer: There is no change. These are the same *relative* weights. Note that $\sum$ weights = 1 now, so there is no need for a denominator. When the weights sum to 1, calculations tend to be simpler.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 4.1b, 4.2c, 4.5c, 4.6, 4.7, 4.10b (4.38 is available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch04Ex2.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

Figure 4.2

Actual Demand vs. Moving-Average and Weighted-Moving-Average Methods for Donna's Garden Supply



STUDENT TIP

Moving-average methods always lag behind when there is a trend present, as shown by the blue line (actual sales) for January through August.

Both simple and weighted moving averages are effective in smoothing out sudden fluctuations in the demand pattern to provide stable estimates. Moving averages do, however, present three problems:

1. Increasing the size of n (the number of periods averaged) does smooth out fluctuations better, but it makes the method less sensitive to changes in the data.
2. Moving averages cannot pick up trends very well. Because they are averages, they will always stay within past levels and will not predict changes to either higher or lower levels. That is, they *lag* the actual values.
3. Moving averages require extensive records of past data.

Figure 4.2, a plot of the data in Examples 1 and 2, illustrates the lag effect of the moving-average models. Note that both the moving-average and weighted-moving-average lines lag the actual demand. The weighted moving average, however, usually reacts more quickly to demand changes. Even in periods of downturn (see November and December), it more closely tracks the demand.

Exponential Smoothing

Exponential smoothing
A weighted-moving-average forecasting technique in which data points are weighted by an exponential function.

Exponential smoothing is another weighted-moving-average forecasting method. It involves very *little* record keeping of past data and is fairly easy to use. The basic exponential smoothing formula can be shown as follows:

$$\text{New forecast} = \text{Last period's forecast} + \alpha(\text{Last period's actual demand} - \text{Last period's forecast}) \quad (4\text{-}3)$$

Smoothing constant
The weighting factor used in an exponential smoothing forecast, a number greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to 1.

where α is a weight, or **smoothing constant**, chosen by the forecaster, that has a value greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to 1. Equation (4-3) can also be written mathematically as:

$$F_t = F_{t-1} + \alpha(A_{t-1} - F_{t-1}) \quad (4\text{-}4)$$

where
F_t = new forecast
F_{t-1} = previous period's forecast
α = smoothing (or weighting) constant ($0 \le \alpha \le 1$)
A_{t-1} = previous period's actual demand

The concept is not complex. The latest estimate of demand is equal to the old forecast adjusted by a fraction of the difference between the last period's actual demand and last period's forecast. Example 3 shows how to use exponential smoothing to derive a forecast.

Example 3

DETERMINING A FORECAST VIA EXPONENTIAL SMOOTHING

In January, a car dealer predicted February demand for 142 Ford Mustangs. Actual February demand was 153 autos. Using a smoothing constant chosen by management of $\alpha = .20$, the dealer wants to forecast March demand using the exponential smoothing model.

APPROACH ▶ The exponential smoothing model in Equations (4-3) and (4-4) can be applied.

SOLUTION ▶ Substituting the sample data into the formula, we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{New forecast (for March demand)} &= 142 + .2(153 - 142) = 142 + 2.2\\ &= 144.2\end{aligned}$$

Thus, the March demand forecast for Ford Mustangs is rounded to 144.

INSIGHT ▶ Using just two pieces of data, the forecast and the actual demand, plus a smoothing constant, we developed a forecast of 144 Ford Mustangs for March.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the smoothing constant is changed to .30, what is the new forecast? [Answer: 145.3]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 4.1c, 4.3, 4.4, 4.5d, 4.6, 4.9d, 4.11, 4.12, 4.13a, 4.17, 4.18, 4.31, 4.33, 4.34 (4.36, 4.61a are available in MyOMLab)

The *smoothing constant*, α, is generally in the range from .05 to .50 for business applications. It can be changed to give more weight to recent data (when α is high) or more weight to past data (when α is low). When α reaches the extreme of 1.0, then in Equation (4-4), $F_t = 1.0A_{t-1}$. All the older values drop out, and the forecast becomes identical to the naive model mentioned earlier in this chapter. That is, the forecast for the next period is just the same as this period's demand.

The following table helps illustrate this concept. For example, when $\alpha = .5$, we can see that the new forecast is based almost entirely on demand in the last three or four periods. When $\alpha = .1$, the forecast places little weight on recent demand and takes many periods (about 19) of historical values into account.

	WEIGHT ASSIGNED TO				
SMOOTHING CONSTANT	MOST RECENT PERIOD (α)	2ND MOST RECENT PERIOD $\alpha(1-\alpha)$	3RD MOST RECENT PERIOD $\alpha(1-\alpha)^2$	4TH MOST RECENT PERIOD $\alpha(1-\alpha)^3$	5TH MOST RECENT PERIOD $\alpha(1-\alpha)^4$
$\alpha = .1$	.1	.09	.081	.073	.066
$\alpha = .5$	.5	.25	.125	.063	.031

Selecting the Smoothing Constant Exponential smoothing has been successfully applied in virtually every type of business. However, the appropriate value of the smoothing constant, α, can make the difference between an accurate forecast and an inaccurate forecast. High values of α are chosen when the underlying average is likely to change. Low values of α are used when the underlying average is fairly stable. In picking a value for the smoothing constant, the objective is to obtain the most accurate forecast.

STUDENT TIP

Forecasts tend to be more accurate as they become shorter. Therefore, forecast error also tends to drop with shorter forecasts.

Measuring Forecast Error

The overall accuracy of any forecasting model—moving average, exponential smoothing, or other—can be determined by comparing the forecasted values with the actual or observed

values. If F_t denotes the forecast in period t, and A_t denotes the actual demand in period t, the *forecast error* (or deviation) is defined as:

$$\text{Forecast error} = \text{Actual demand} - \text{Forecast value}$$
$$= A_t - F_t$$

LO 4.4 *Compute* three measures of forecast accuracy

Several measures are used in practice to calculate the overall forecast error. These measures can be used to compare different forecasting models, as well as to monitor forecasts to ensure they are performing well. Three of the most popular measures are mean absolute deviation (MAD), mean squared error (MSE), and mean absolute percent error (MAPE). We now describe and give an example of each.

Mean Absolute Deviation The first measure of the overall forecast error for a model is the **mean absolute deviation (MAD)**. This value is computed by taking the sum of the absolute values of the individual forecast errors (deviations) and dividing by the number of periods of data (n):

Mean absolute deviation (MAD)
A measure of the overall forecast error for a model.

$$\text{MAD} = \frac{\Sigma|\text{Actual} - \text{Forecast}|}{n} \tag{4-5}$$

Example 4 applies MAD, as a measure of overall forecast error, by testing two values of α.

Example 4

DETERMINING THE MEAN ABSOLUTE DEVIATION (MAD)

During the past 8 quarters, the Port of Baltimore has unloaded large quantities of grain from ships. The port's operations manager wants to test the use of exponential smoothing to see how well the technique works in predicting tonnage unloaded. He guesses that the forecast of grain unloaded in the first quarter was 175 tons. Two values of α are to be examined: $\alpha = .10$ and $\alpha = .50$.

APPROACH ▶ Compare the actual data with the data we forecast (using each of the two α values) and then find the absolute deviation and MADs.

SOLUTION ▶ The following table shows the *detailed* calculations for $\alpha = .10$ only:

QUARTER	ACTUAL TONNAGE UNLOADED	FORECAST WITH $\alpha = .10$	FORECAST WITH $\alpha = .50$
1	180	175	175
2	168	175.50 = 175.00 + .10(180 − 175)	177.50
3	159	174.75 = 175.50 + .10(168 − 175.50)	172.75
4	175	173.18 = 174.75 + .10(159 − 174.75)	165.88
5	190	173.36 = 173.18 + .10(175 − 173.18)	170.44
6	205	175.02 = 173.36 + .10(190 − 173.36)	180.22
7	180	178.02 = 175.02 + .10(205 − 175.02)	192.61
8	182	178.22 = 178.02 + .10(180 − 178.02)	186.30
9	?	178.59 = 178.22 + .10(182 − 178.22)	184.15

To evaluate the accuracy of each smoothing constant, we can compute forecast errors in terms of absolute deviations and MADs:

QUARTER	ACTUAL TONNAGE UNLOADED	FORECAST WITH $\alpha = .10$	ABSOLUTE DEVIATION FOR $\alpha = .10$	FORECAST WITH $\alpha = .50$	ABSOLUTE DEVIATION FOR $\alpha = .50$
1	180	175	5.00	175	5.00
2	168	175.50	7.50	177.50	9.50
3	159	174.75	15.75	172.75	13.75
4	175	173.18	1.82	165.88	9.12
5	190	173.36	16.64	170.44	19.56
6	205	175.02	29.98	180.22	24.78
7	180	178.02	1.98	192.61	12.61
8	182	178.22	3.78	186.30	4.30
	Sum of absolute deviations:		82.45		98.62
	$\text{MAD} = \frac{\Sigma\lvert\text{Deviations}\rvert}{n}$		10.31		12.33

INSIGHT ▶ On the basis of this comparison of the two MADs, a smoothing constant of $\alpha = .10$ is preferred to $\alpha = .50$ because its MAD is smaller.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the smoothing constant is changed from $\alpha = .10$ to $\alpha = .20$, what is the new MAD? [Answer: 10.21.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 4.5b, 4.8c, 4.9c, 4.14, 4.23, 4.59b (4.35d, 4.37a, 4.38c, 4.61b are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch04Ex4a.xls** and **Ch04Ex4b.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

ACTIVE MODEL 4.2 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 4.2 in MyOMLab.

Most computerized forecasting software includes a feature that automatically finds the smoothing constant with the lowest forecast error. Some software modifies the α value if errors become larger than acceptable.

Mean Squared Error The mean squared error (MSE) is a second way of measuring overall forecast error. MSE is the average of the squared differences between the forecasted and observed values. Its formula is:

Mean squared error (MSE)
The average of the squared differences between the forecasted and observed values.

$$\text{MSE} = \frac{\Sigma(\text{Forecast errors})^2}{n} \tag{4-6}$$

Example 5 finds the MSE for the Port of Baltimore problem introduced in Example 4.

Example 5

DETERMINING THE MEAN SQUARED ERROR (MSE)

The operations manager for the Port of Baltimore now wants to compute MSE for $\alpha = .10$.

APPROACH ▶ Using the same forecast data for $\alpha = .10$ from Example 4, compute the MSE with Equation (4-6).

SOLUTION ▶

QUARTER	ACTUAL TONNAGE UNLOADED	FORECAST FOR $\alpha = .10$	$(\text{ERROR})^2$
1	180	175	$5^2 = 25$
2	168	175.50	$(-7.5)^2 = 56.25$
3	159	174.75	$(-15.75)^2 = 248.06$
4	175	173.18	$(1.82)^2 = 3.31$
5	190	173.36	$(16.64)^2 = 276.89$
6	205	175.02	$(29.98)^2 = 898.80$
7	180	178.02	$(1.98)^2 = 3.92$
8	182	178.22	$(3.78)^2 = 14.29$
			Sum of errors squared = 1,526.52

$$\text{MSE} = \frac{\Sigma(\text{Forecast errors})^2}{n} = 1{,}526.52/8 = 190.8$$

INSIGHT ▶ Is this MSE = 190.8 good or bad? It all depends on the MSEs for other forecasting approaches. A low MSE is better because we want to minimize MSE. MSE exaggerates errors because it squares them.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Find the MSE for $\alpha = .50$. [Answer: MSE = 195.24. The result indicates that $\alpha = .10$ is a better choice because we seek a lower MSE. Coincidentally, this is the same conclusion we reached using MAD in Example 4.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 4.8d, 4.11c, 4.14, 4.15c, 4.16c, 4.20 (4.35d, 4.37b are available in MyOMLab)

The MSE tends to accentuate large deviations due to the squared term. For example, if the forecast error for period 1 is twice as large as the error for period 2, the squared error in period 1 is four times as large as that for period 2. Hence, using MSE as the measure of forecast error typically indicates that we prefer to have several smaller deviations rather than even one large deviation.

Mean Absolute Percent Error A problem with both the MAD and MSE is that their values depend on the magnitude of the item being forecast. If the forecast item is measured in thousands, the MAD and MSE values can be very large. To avoid this problem, we can use the **mean absolute percent error (MAPE)**. This is computed as the average of the absolute difference between the forecasted and actual values, expressed as a percentage of the actual values. That is, if we have forecasted and actual values for n periods, the MAPE is calculated as:

Mean absolute percent error (MAPE)
The average of the absolute differences between the forecast and actual values, expressed as a percent of actual values.

$$\text{MAPE} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} 100\,|\text{Actual}_i - \text{Forecast}_i|\,/\text{Actual}_i}{n} \tag{4-7}$$

Example 6 illustrates the calculations using the data from Examples 4 and 5.

Example 6

DETERMINING THE MEAN ABSOLUTE PERCENT ERROR (MAPE)

The Port of Baltimore wants to now calculate the MAPE when $\alpha = .10$.

APPROACH ▶ Equation (4-7) is applied to the forecast data computed in Example 4.

SOLUTION ▶

QUARTER	ACTUAL TONNAGE UNLOADED	FORECAST FOR $\alpha = .10$	ABSOLUTE PERCENT ERROR 100 (|ERROR|/ACTUAL)
1	180	175.00	100(5/180) = 2.78%
2	168	175.50	100(7.5/168) = 4.46%
3	159	174.75	100(15.75/159) = 9.90%
4	175	173.18	100(1.82/175) = 1.05%
5	190	173.36	100(16.64/190) = 8.76%
6	205	175.02	100(29.98/205) = 14.62%
7	180	178.02	100(1.98/180) = 1.10%
8	182	178.22	100(3.78/182) = 2.08%
			Sum of % errors = 44.75%

$$\text{MAPE} = \frac{\Sigma\,\text{absolute percent error}}{n} = \frac{44.75\%}{8} = 5.59\%$$

INSIGHT ▶ MAPE expresses the error as a percent of the actual values, undistorted by a single large value.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ What is MAPE when α is .50? [Answer: MAPE = 6.75%. As was the case with MAD and MSE, the $\alpha = .1$ was preferable for this series of data.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 4.8e, 4.29c

The MAPE is perhaps the easiest measure to interpret. For example, a result that the MAPE is 6% is a clear statement that is not dependent on issues such as the magnitude of the input data.

Table 4.1 summarizes how MAD, MSE, and MAPE differ.

Exponential Smoothing with Trend Adjustment

Simple exponential smoothing, the technique we just illustrated in Examples 3 to 6, is like any other moving-average technique: It fails to respond to trends. Other forecasting techniques that can deal with trends are certainly available. However, because exponential smoothing is such a popular modeling approach in business, let us look at it in more detail.

TABLE 4.1 Comparison of Measures of Forecast Error

MEASURE	MEANING	EQUATION	APPLICATION TO CHAPTER EXAMPLE
Mean absolute deviation (MAD)	How much the forecast missed the target	$\text{MAD} = \dfrac{\sum\lvert\text{Actual} - \text{Forecast}\rvert}{n}$ (4-5)	For $\alpha = .10$ in Example 4, the forecast for grain unloaded was off by an average of 10.31 tons.
Mean squared error (MSE)	The square of how much the forecast missed the target	$\text{MSE} = \dfrac{\sum(\text{Forecast errors})^2}{n}$ (4-6)	For $\alpha = .10$ in Example 5, the square of the forecast error was 190.8. This number does not have a physical meaning but is useful when compared to the MSE of another forecast.
Mean absolute percent error (MAPE)	The average percent error	$\text{MAPE} = \dfrac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} 100\lvert\text{Actual}_i - \text{Forecast}_i\rvert/\text{Actual}_i}{n}$ (4-7)	For $\alpha = .10$ in Example 6, the forecast is off by 5.59% on average. As in Examples 4 and 5, some forecasts were too high, and some were low.

Here is why exponential smoothing must be modified when a trend is present. Assume that demand for our product or service has been increasing by 100 units per month and that we have been forecasting with $\alpha = 0.4$ in our exponential smoothing model. The following table shows a severe lag in the second, third, fourth, and fifth months, even when our initial estimate for month 1 is perfect:

MONTH	ACTUAL DEMAND	FORECAST (F_t) FOR MONTHS 1–5
1	100	$F_1 = 100$ (given)
2	200	$F_2 = F_1 + \alpha(A_1 - F_1) = 100 + .4(100 - 100) = 100$
3	300	$F_3 = F_2 + \alpha(A_2 - F_2) = 100 + .4(200 - 100) = 140$
4	400	$F_4 = F_3 + \alpha(A_3 - F_3) = 140 + .4(300 - 140) = 204$
5	500	$F_5 = F_4 + \alpha(A_4 - F_4) = 204 + .4(400 - 204) = 282$

To improve our forecast, let us illustrate a more complex exponential smoothing model, one that adjusts for trend. The idea is to compute an exponentially smoothed average of the data and then adjust for positive or negative lag in trend. The new formula is:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Forecast including trend } (FIT_t) &= \text{Exponentially smoothed forecast average } (F_t) \\ &\quad + \text{Exponentially smoothed trend } (T_t)\end{aligned} \tag{4-8}$$

With trend-adjusted exponential smoothing, estimates for both the average and the trend are smoothed. This procedure requires two smoothing constants: α for the average and β for the trend. We then compute the average and trend each period:

$F_t = \alpha(\text{Actual demand last period}) + (1 - \alpha)(\text{Forecast last period} + \text{Trend estimate last period})$

or:

$$F_t = \alpha(A_{t-1}) + (1 - \alpha)(F_{t-1} + T_{t-1}) \tag{4-9}$$

$T_t = \beta(\text{Forecast this period} - \text{Forecast last period}) + (1 - \beta)(\text{Trend estimate last period})$

or:

$$T_t = \beta(F_t - F_{t-1}) + (1 - \beta)T_{t-1} \tag{4-10}$$

where F_t = exponentially smoothed forecast average of the data series in period t
T_t = exponentially smoothed trend in period t
A_t = actual demand in period t
α = smoothing constant for the average ($0 \le \alpha \le 1$)
β = smoothing constant for the trend ($0 \le \beta \le 1$)

So the three steps to compute a trend-adjusted forecast are:

STEP 1: Compute F_t, the exponentially smoothed forecast average for period t, using Equation (4-9).

STEP 2: Compute the smoothed trend, T_t, using Equation (4-10).

STEP 3: Calculate the forecast including trend, FIT_t, by the formula $FIT_t = F_t + T_t$ [from Equation (4-8)].

Example 7 shows how to use trend-adjusted exponential smoothing.

Example 7

COMPUTING A TREND-ADJUSTED EXPONENTIAL SMOOTHING FORECAST

A large Portland manufacturer wants to forecast demand for a piece of pollution-control equipment. A review of past sales, as shown below, indicates that an increasing trend is present:

MONTH (t)	ACTUAL DEMAND (A_t)	MONTH (t)	ACTUAL DEMAND (A_t)
1	12	6	21
2	17	7	31
3	20	8	28
4	19	9	36
5	24	10	?

Smoothing constants are assigned the values of $\alpha = .2$ and $\beta = .4$. The firm assumes the initial forecast average for month 1 (F_1) was 11 units and the trend over that period (T_1) was 2 units.

APPROACH ▶ A trend-adjusted exponential smoothing model, using Equations (4-9), (4-10), and (4-8) and the three steps above, is employed.

SOLUTION ▶

Step 1: Forecast average for month 2:

$$F_2 = \alpha A_1 + (1 - \alpha)(F_1 + T_1)$$
$$F_2 = (.2)(12) + (1 - .2)(11 + 2)$$
$$= 2.4 + (.8)(13) = 2.4 + 10.4 = 12.8 \text{ units}$$

Step 2: Compute the trend in period 2:

$$T_2 = \beta(F_2 - F_1) + (1 - \beta)T_1$$
$$= .4(12.8 - 11) + (1 - .4)(2)$$
$$= (.4)(1.8) + (.6)(2) = .72 + 1.2 = 1.92$$

Step 3: Compute the forecast including trend (FIT_t):

$$FIT_2 = F_2 + T_2$$
$$= 12.8 + 1.92$$
$$= 14.72 \text{ units}$$

We will also do the same calculations for the third month:

Step 1: $F_3 = \alpha A_2 + (1 - \alpha)(F_2 + T_2) = (.2)(17) + (1 - .2)(12.8 + 1.92)$
$= 3.4 + (.8)(14.72) = 3.4 + 11.78 = 15.18$

Step 2: $T_3 = \beta(F_3 - F_2) + (1 - \beta)T_2 = (.4)(15.18 - 12.8) + (1 - .4)(1.92)$
$= (.4)(2.38) + (.6)(1.92) = .952 + 1.152 = 2.10$

Step 3: $FIT_3 = F_3 + T_3$
$= 15.18 + 2.10 = 17.28.$

Table 4.2 completes the forecasts for the 10-month period.

TABLE 4.2 Forecast with $\alpha = .2$ and $\beta = .4$

MONTH	ACTUAL DEMAND	SMOOTHED FORECAST AVERAGE, F_t	SMOOTHED TREND, T_t	FORECAST INCLUDING TREND, FIT_t
1	12	11	2	13.00
2	17	12.80	1.92	14.72
3	20	15.18	2.10	17.28
4	19	17.82	2.32	20.14
5	24	19.91	2.23	22.14
6	21	22.51	2.38	24.89
7	31	24.11	2.07	26.18
8	28	27.14	2.45	29.59
9	36	29.28	2.32	31.60
10	—	32.48	2.68	35.16

INSIGHT ▶ Figure 4.3 compares actual demand (A_t) to an exponential smoothing forecast that includes trend (FIT_t). *FIT* picks up the trend in actual demand. A simple exponential smoothing model (as we saw in Examples 3 and 4) trails far behind.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Using the data for actual demand for the 9 months, compute the exponentially smoothed forecast average *without* trend [using Equation (4-4) as we did earlier in Examples 3 and 4]. Apply $\alpha = .2$, and assume an initial forecast average for month 1 of 11 units. Then plot the months 2–10 forecast values on Figure 4.3. What do you notice? [Answer: Month 10 forecast = 24.65. All the points are below and lag the trend-adjusted forecast.]

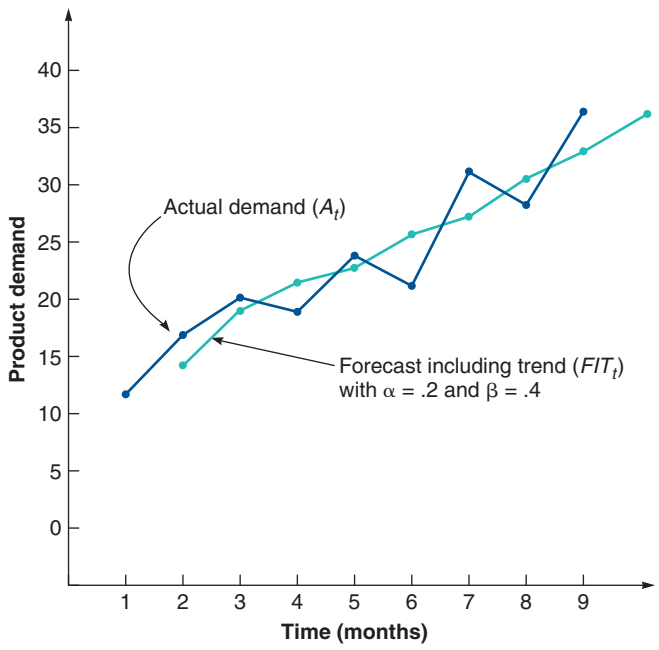
RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 4.19, 4.20, 4.21, 4.22, 4.32

ACTIVE MODEL 4.3 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 4.3 in MyOMLab.

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch04Ex7.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

Figure 4.3

Exponential Smoothing with Trend-Adjustment Forecasts Compared to Actual Demand Data



The value of the trend-smoothing constant, β, resembles the α constant because a high β is more responsive to recent changes in trend. A low β gives less weight to the most recent trends and tends to smooth out the present trend. Values of β can be found by the trial-and-error approach or by using sophisticated commercial forecasting software, with the MAD used as a measure of comparison.

Simple exponential smoothing is often referred to as *first-order smoothing*, and trend-adjusted smoothing is called *second-order smoothing* or *double smoothing*. Other advanced exponential-smoothing models are also used, including seasonal-adjusted and triple smoothing.

Trend Projections

Trend projection
A time-series forecasting method that fits a trend line to a series of historical data points and then projects the line into the future for forecasts.

The last time-series forecasting method we will discuss is **trend projection**. This technique fits a trend line to a series of historical data points and then projects the slope of the line into the future for medium- to long-range forecasts. Several mathematical trend equations can be developed (for example, exponential and quadratic), but in this section, we will look at *linear* (straight-line) trends only.

If we decide to develop a linear trend line by a precise statistical method, we can apply the *least-squares method*. This approach results in a straight line that minimizes the sum of the squares of the vertical differences or deviations from the line to each of the actual observations. Figure 4.4 illustrates the least-squares approach.

A least-squares line is described in terms of its y-intercept (the height at which it intercepts the y-axis) and its expected change (slope). If we can compute the y-intercept and slope, we can express the line with the following equation:

$$\hat{y} = a + bx \tag{4-11}$$

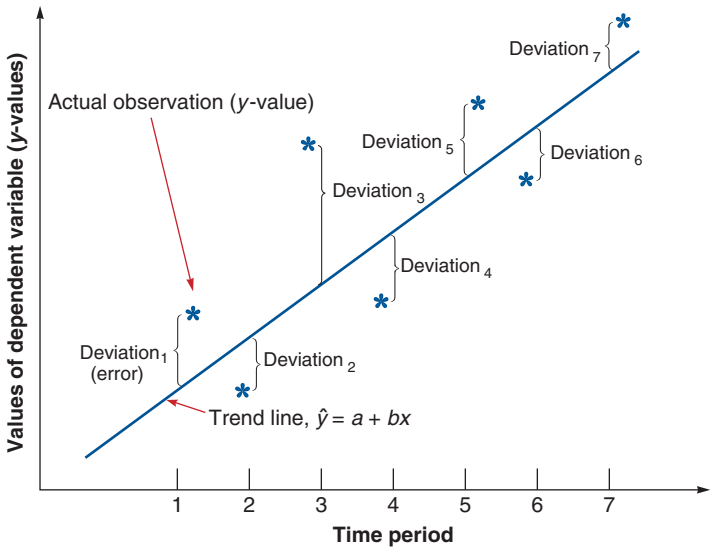
where $\hat{y}$ (called "y hat") = computed value of the variable to be predicted (called the *dependent variable*)
a = y-axis intercept
b = slope of the regression line (or the rate of change in y for given changes in x)
x = the independent variable (which in this case is *time*)

Statisticians have developed equations that we can use to find the values of a and b for any regression line. The slope b is found by:

$$b = \frac{\sum xy - n\bar{x}\bar{y}}{\sum x^2 - n\bar{x}^2} \tag{4-12}$$

Figure 4.4

The Least-Squares Method for Finding the Best-Fitting Straight Line, Where the Asterisks Are the Locations of the Seven Actual Observations or Data Points



where b = slope of the regression line
Σ = summation sign
x = known values of the independent variable
y = known values of the dependent variable
$\bar{x}$ = average of the x-values
$\bar{y}$ = average of the y-values
n = number of data points or observations

We can compute the y-intercept a as follows:

$$a = \bar{y} - b\bar{x} \tag{4-13}$$

Example 8 shows how to apply these concepts.

Example 8

FORECASTING WITH LEAST SQUARES

The demand for electric power at N.Y. Edison over the past 7 years is shown in the following table, in megawatts. The firm wants to forecast next year's demand by fitting a straight-line trend to these data.

YEAR	ELECTRICAL POWER DEMAND	YEAR	ELECTRICAL POWER DEMAND
1	74	5	105
2	79	6	142
3	80	7	122
4	90		

APPROACH ▶ Equations (4-12) and (4-13) can be used to create the trend projection model.

SOLUTION ▶

YEAR (x)	ELECTRIC POWER DEMAND (y)	x^2	xy
1	74	1	74
2	79	4	158
3	80	9	240
4	90	16	360
5	105	25	525
6	142	36	852
7	122	49	854
$\Sigma x = 28$	$\Sigma y = 692$	$\Sigma x^2 = 140$	$\Sigma xy = 3{,}063$

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\Sigma x}{n} = \frac{28}{7} = 4 \quad \bar{y} = \frac{\Sigma y}{n} = \frac{692}{7} = 98.86$$

$$b = \frac{\Sigma xy - n\bar{x}\bar{y}}{\Sigma x^2 - n\bar{x}^2} = \frac{3{,}063 - (7)(4)(98.86)}{140 - (7)(4^2)} = \frac{295}{28} = 10.54$$

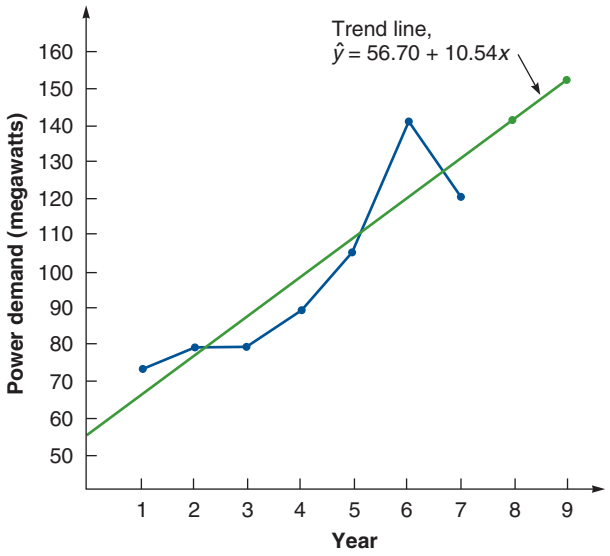
$$a = \bar{y} - b\bar{x} = 98.86 - 10.54(4) = 56.70$$

Thus, the least-squares trend equation is $\hat{y} = 56.70 + 10.54x$. To project demand next year, $x = 8$:

$$\text{Demand in year 8} = 56.70 + 10.54(8)$$
$$= 141.02, \text{ or } 141 \text{ megawatts}$$

INSIGHT ▶ To evaluate the model, we plot both the historical demand and the trend line in Figure 4.5. In this case, we may wish to be cautious and try to understand the year 6 to year 7 swing in demand.

Figure 4.5
Electrical Power and the Computed Trend Line



LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Estimate demand for year 9. [Answer: 151.56, or 152 megawatts.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 4.6, 4.13c, 4.16, 4.24, 4.30, 4.34 (4.39, 4.42 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch04Ex8.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

ACTIVE MODEL 4.4 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 4.4 in MyOMLab.

Notes on the Use of the Least-Squares Method Using the least-squares method implies that we have met three requirements:

1. We always plot the data because least-squares data assume a linear relationship. If a curve appears to be present, curvilinear analysis is probably needed.
2. We do not predict time periods far beyond our given database. For example, if we have 20 months' worth of average prices of Microsoft stock, we can forecast only 3 or 4 months into the future. Forecasts beyond that have little statistical validity. Thus, you cannot take 5 years' worth of sales data and project 10 years into the future. The world is too uncertain.
3. Deviations around the least-squares line (see Figure 4.4) are assumed to be random and normally distributed, with most observations close to the line and only a smaller number farther out.

Seasonal Variations in Data

Seasonal variations
Regular upward or downward movements in a time series that tie to recurring events.

Seasonal variations in data are regular movements in a time series that relate to recurring events such as weather or holidays. Demand for coal and fuel oil, for example, peaks during cold winter months. Demand for golf clubs or sunscreen may be highest in summer.

Seasonality may be applied to hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, or other recurring patterns. Fast-food restaurants experience *daily* surges at noon and again at 5 P.M. Movie theaters see higher demand on Friday and Saturday evenings. The post office, Toys "Я" Us, The Christmas Store, and Hallmark Card Shops also exhibit seasonal variation in customer traffic and sales.

STUDENT TIP
John Deere understands seasonal variations: It has been able to obtain 70% of its orders in advance of seasonal use so it can smooth production.

Similarly, understanding seasonal variations is important for capacity planning in organizations that handle peak loads. These include electric power companies during extreme cold and warm periods, banks on Friday afternoons, and buses and subways during the morning and evening rush hours.

CityFiles/Getty Images

Dick Loek/Getty Images

Demand for many products is seasonal. Yamaha, the manufacturer of this jet ski and snowmobile, produces products with complementary demands to address seasonal fluctuations.

Time-series forecasts like those in Example 8 involve reviewing the trend of data over a series of time periods. The presence of seasonality makes adjustments in trend-line forecasts necessary. Seasonality is expressed in terms of the amount that actual values differ from average values in the time series. Analyzing data in monthly or quarterly terms usually makes it easy for a statistician to spot seasonal patterns. Seasonal indices can then be developed by several common methods.

In what is called a *multiplicative seasonal model*, seasonal factors are multiplied by an estimate of average demand to produce a seasonal forecast. Our assumption in this section is that trend has been removed from the data. Otherwise, the magnitude of the seasonal data will be distorted by the trend.

Here are the steps we will follow for a company that has "seasons" of 1 month:

LO 4.5 *Develop* seasonal indices

1. Find the *average historical demand each season* (or month in this case) by summing the demand for that month in each year and dividing by the number of years of data available. For example, if, in January, we have seen sales of 8, 6, and 10 over the past 3 years, average January demand equals $(8 + 6 + 10)/3 = 8$ units.
2. Compute the *average demand over all months* by dividing the total average annual demand by the number of seasons. For example, if the total average demand for a year is 120 units and there are 12 seasons (each month), the average monthly demand is $120/12 = 10$ units.
3. Compute a *seasonal index* for each season by dividing that *month's* historical average demand (from Step 1) by the average demand over all months (from Step 2). For example, if the average historical January demand over the past 3 years is 8 units and the average demand over all months is 10 units, the seasonal index for January is $8/10 = .80$. Likewise, a seasonal index of 1.20 for February would mean that February's demand is 20% larger than the average demand over all months.
4. Estimate next year's total annual demand.
5. Divide this estimate of total annual demand by the number of seasons, then multiply it by the seasonal index for each month. This provides the *seasonal forecast*.

Example 9 illustrates this procedure as it computes seasonal indices from historical data.

Example 9

DETERMINING SEASONAL INDICES

A Des Moines distributor of Sony laptop computers wants to develop monthly indices for sales. Data from the past 3 years, by month, are available.

APPROACH ▶ Follow the five steps listed above.

SOLUTION ▶

	DEMAND					
MONTH	YEAR 1	YEAR 2	YEAR 3	AVERAGE PERIOD DEMAND	AVERAGE MONTHLY DEMAND[a]	SEASONAL INDEX[b]
Jan.	80	85	105	90	94	.957 (= 90/94)
Feb.	70	85	85	80	94	.851 (= 80/94)
Mar.	80	93	82	85	94	.904 (= 85/94)
Apr.	90	95	115	100	94	1.064 (= 100/94)
May	113	125	131	123	94	1.309 (= 123/94)
June	110	115	120	115	94	1.223 (= 115/94)
July	100	102	113	105	94	1.117 (= 105/94)
Aug.	88	102	110	100	94	1.064 (= 100/94)
Sept.	85	90	95	90	94	.957 (= 90/94)
Oct.	77	78	85	80	94	.851 (= 80/94)
Nov.	75	82	83	80	94	.851 (= 80/94)
Dec.	82	78	80	80	94	.851 (= 80/94)
				Total average annual demand = 1,128		

[a] Average monthly demand $= \frac{1{,}128}{12 \text{ months}} = 94.$ [b] Seasonal index $= \frac{\text{Average monthly demand for past 3 years}}{\text{Average monthly demand}}$.

If we expect the annual demand for computers to be 1,200 units next year, we would use these seasonal indices to forecast the monthly demand as follows:

MONTH	DEMAND	MONTH	DEMAND
Jan.	$\frac{1{,}200}{12} \times .957 = 96$	July	$\frac{1{,}200}{12} \times 1.117 = 112$
Feb.	$\frac{1{,}200}{12} \times .851 = 85$	Aug.	$\frac{1{,}200}{12} \times 1.064 = 106$
Mar.	$\frac{1{,}200}{12} \times .904 = 90$	Sept.	$\frac{1{,}200}{12} \times .957 = 96$
Apr.	$\frac{1{,}200}{12} \times 1.064 = 106$	Oct.	$\frac{1{,}200}{12} \times .851 = 85$
May	$\frac{1{,}200}{12} \times 1.309 = 131$	Nov.	$\frac{1{,}200}{12} \times .851 = 85$
June	$\frac{1{,}200}{12} \times 1.223 = 122$	Dec.	$\frac{1{,}200}{12} \times .851 = 85$

INSIGHT ▶ Think of these indices as percentages of average sales. The average sales (without seasonality) would be 94, but with seasonality, sales fluctuate from 85% to 131% of average.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If next year's annual demand is 1,150 laptops (instead of 1,200), what will the January, February, and March forecasts be? [Answer: 91.7, 81.5, and 86.6, which can be rounded to 92, 82, and 87.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 4.26, 4.27 (4.40, 4.41a are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch04Ex9.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

For simplicity, only 3 periods (years) are used for each monthly index in the preceding example. Example 10 illustrates how indices that have already been prepared can be applied to adjust trend-line forecasts for seasonality.

Example 10

APPLYING BOTH TREND AND SEASONAL INDICES

San Diego Hospital wants to improve its forecasting by applying both trend and seasonal indices to 66 months of data it has collected. It will then forecast "patient-days" over the coming year.

APPROACH ▶ A trend line is created; then monthly seasonal indices are computed. Finally, a multiplicative seasonal model is used to forecast months 67 to 78.

SOLUTION ▶ Using 66 months of adult inpatient hospital days, the following equation was computed:

$$\hat{y} = 8{,}090 + 21.5x$$

where

$\hat{y}$ = patient days
x = time, in months

Based on this model, which reflects only trend data, the hospital forecasts patient days for the next month (period 67) to be:

$$\text{Patient days} = 8{,}090 + (21.5)(67) = 9{,}530 \text{ (trend only)}$$

While this model, as plotted in Figure 4.6, recognized the upward trend line in the demand for inpatient services, it ignored the seasonality that the administration knew to be present.

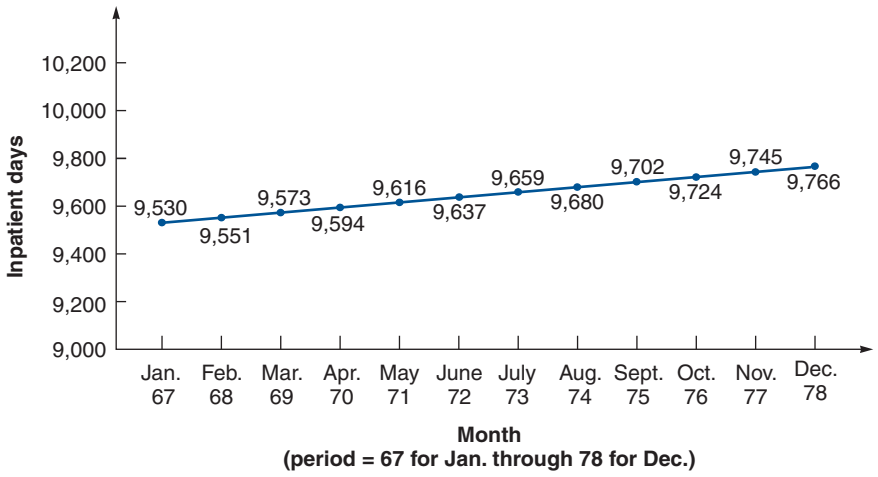


Figure **4.6**

Trend Data for San Diego Hospital

Source: From "Modern Methods Improve Hospital Forecasting" by W. E. Sterk and E. G. Shryock from *Healthcare Financial Management* 41, no. 3, p. 97. Reprinted by permission of Healthcare Financial Management Association.

The following table provides seasonal indices based on the same 66 months. Such seasonal data, by the way, were found to be typical of hospitals nationwide.

Seasonality Indices for Adult Inpatient Days at San Diego Hospital

MONTH	SEASONALITY INDEX	MONTH	SEASONALITY INDEX
January	1.04	July	1.03
February	0.97	August	1.04
March	1.02	September	0.97
April	1.01	October	1.00
May	0.99	November	0.96
June	0.99	December	0.98

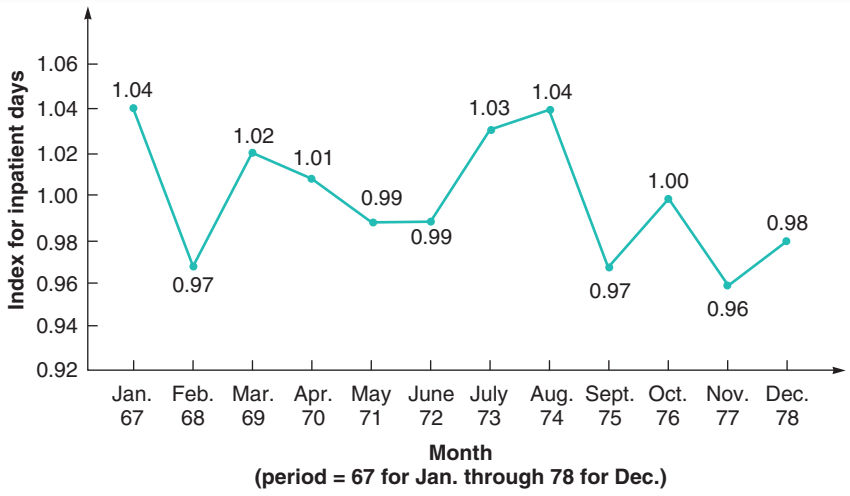
These seasonal indices are graphed in Figure 4.7. Note that January, March, July, and August seem to exhibit significantly higher patient days on average, while February, September, November, and December experience lower patient days.

However, neither the trend data nor the seasonal data alone provide a reasonable forecast for the hospital. Only when the hospital multiplied the trend-adjusted data by the appropriate seasonal index did it obtain good forecasts. Thus, for period 67 (January):

$$\text{Patient days} = (\text{Trend-adjusted forecast})(\text{Monthly seasonal index}) = (9{,}530)(1.04) = 9{,}911$$

Figure 4.7

Seasonal Index for San Diego Hospital



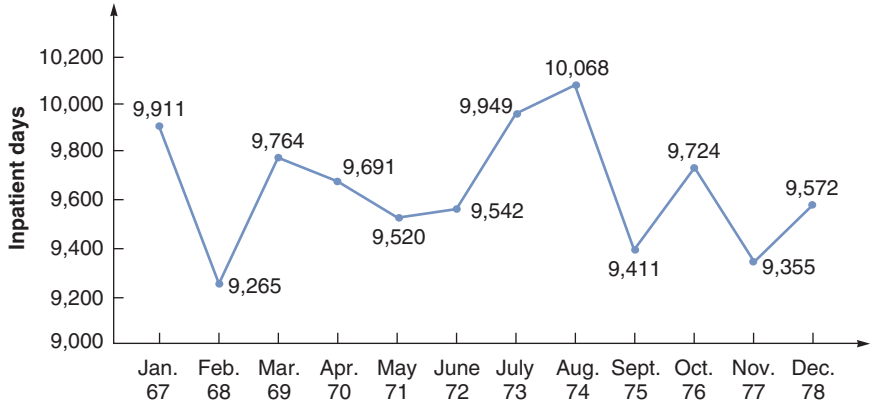
The patient-days for each month are:

Period	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78
Month	Jan.	Feb.	March	April	May	June	July	Aug.	Sept.	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.
Forecast with Trend & Seasonality	9,911	9,265	9,764	9,691	9,520	9,542	9,949	10,068	9,411	9,724	9,355	9,572

A graph showing the forecast that combines both trend and seasonality appears in Figure 4.8.

Figure 4.8

Combined Trend and Seasonal Forecast



INSIGHT ▶ Notice that with trend only, the September forecast is 9,702, but with both trend and seasonal adjustments, the forecast is 9,411. By combining trend and seasonal data, the hospital was better able to forecast inpatient days and the related staffing and budgeting vital to effective operations.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the slope of the trend line for patient-days is 22.0 (rather than 21.5) and the index for December is .99 (instead of .98), what is the new forecast for December inpatient days? [Answer: 9,708.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 4.25, 4.28

Example 11 further illustrates seasonality for quarterly data at a wholesaler.

Example 11

ADJUSTING TREND DATA WITH SEASONAL INDICES

Management at Jagoda Wholesalers, in Calgary, Canada, has used time-series regression based on point-of-sale data to forecast sales for the next 4 quarters. Sales estimates are $100,000, $120,000, $140,000, and $160,000 for the respective quarters. Seasonal indices for the four quarters have been found to be 1.30, .90, .70, and 1.10, respectively.

APPROACH ▶ To compute a seasonalized or adjusted sales forecast, we just multiply each seasonal index by the appropriate trend forecast:

$$\hat{y}_{\text{seasonal}} = \text{Index} \times \hat{y}_{\text{trend forecast}}$$

SOLUTION ▶

Quarter I: $\hat{y}_{\text{I}} = (1.30)(\$100{,}000) = \$130{,}000$
Quarter II: $\hat{y}_{\text{II}} = (.90)(\$120{,}000) = \$108{,}000$
Quarter III: $\hat{y}_{\text{III}} = (.70)(\$140{,}000) = \$98{,}000$
Quarter IV: $\hat{y}_{\text{IV}} = (1.10)(\$160{,}000) = \$176{,}000$

INSIGHT ▶ The straight-line trend forecast is now adjusted to reflect the seasonal changes.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the sales forecast for Quarter IV was $180,000 (rather than $160,000), what would be the seasonally adjusted forecast? [Answer: $198,000.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 4.25, 4.28 (4.41b is available in MyOMLab)

Cyclical Variations in Data

Cycles are like seasonal variations in data but occur every several *years*, not weeks, months, or quarters. Forecasting cyclical variations in a time series is difficult. This is because cycles include a wide variety of factors that cause the economy to go from recession to expansion to recession over a period of years. These factors include national or industrywide overexpansion in times of euphoria and contraction in times of concern. Forecasting demand for individual products can also be driven by product life cycles—the stages products go through from introduction through decline. Life cycles exist for virtually all products; striking examples include floppy disks, video recorders, and the original Game Boy. We leave cyclical analysis to forecasting texts.

Cycles
Patterns in the data that occur every several years.

Developing associative techniques of variables that affect one another is our next topic.

Associative Forecasting Methods: Regression and Correlation Analysis

Unlike time-series forecasting, *associative forecasting* models usually consider *several* variables that are related to the quantity being predicted. Once these related variables have been found, a statistical model is built and used to forecast the item of interest. This approach is more powerful than the time-series methods that use only the historical values for the forecast variable.

STUDENT TIP
We now deal with the same mathematical model that we saw earlier, the least-squares method. But we use any potential "cause-and-effect" variable as x.

Many factors can be considered in an associative analysis. For example, the sales of Dell PCs may be related to Dell's advertising budget, the company's prices, competitors' prices and promotional strategies, and even the nation's economy and unemployment rates. In this case, PC sales would be called the *dependent variable*, and the other variables would be called *independent variables*. The manager's job is to develop *the best statistical relationship between PC sales and the independent variables*. The most common quantitative associative forecasting model is **linear-regression analysis**.

Linear-regression analysis
A straight-line mathematical model to describe the functional relationships between independent and dependent variables.

Using Regression Analysis for Forecasting

We can use the same mathematical model that we employed in the least-squares method of trend projection to perform a linear-regression analysis. The dependent variables that we want to forecast will still be $\hat{y}$. But now the independent variable, x, need no longer be time. We use the equation:

$$\hat{y} = a + bx$$

where
$\hat{y}$ = value of the dependent variable (in our example, sales)
a = y-axis intercept
b = slope of the regression line
x = independent variable

LO 4.6 *Conduct a* regression and correlation analysis

Example 12 shows how to use linear regression.

Example 12

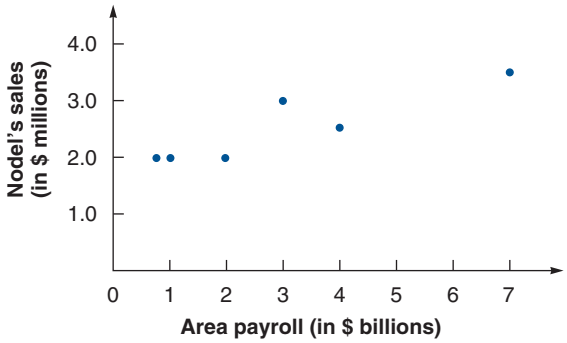
COMPUTING A LINEAR REGRESSION EQUATION

Nodel Construction Company renovates old homes in West Bloomfield, Michigan. Over time, the company has found that its dollar volume of renovation work is dependent on the West Bloomfield area payroll. Management wants to establish a mathematical relationship to help predict sales.

APPROACH ▶ Nodel's VP of operations has prepared the following table, which lists company revenues and the amount of money earned by wage earners in West Bloomfield during the past 6 years:

NODEL'S SALES (IN $ MILLIONS), y	AREA PAYROLL (IN $ BILLIONS), x	NODEL'S SALES (IN $ MILLIONS), y	AREA PAYROLL (IN $ BILLIONS), x
2.0	1	2.0	2
3.0	3	2.0	1
2.5	4	3.5	7

The VP needs to determine whether there is a straight-line (linear) relationship between area payroll and sales. He plots the known data on a scatter diagram:



STUDENT TIP
A scatter diagram is a powerful data analysis tool. It helps quickly size up the relationship between two variables.

From the six data points, there appears to be a slight positive relationship between the independent variable (payroll) and the dependent variable (sales): As payroll increases, Nodel's sales tend to be higher.

SOLUTION ▶ We can find a mathematical equation by using the least-squares regression approach:

VIDEO 4.1
Forecasting Ticket Revenue for Orlando Magic Basketball Games

SALES, y	PAYROLL, x	x^2	xy
2.0	1	1	2.0
3.0	3	9	9.0
2.5	4	16	10.0
2.0	2	4	4.0
2.0	1	1	2.0
3.5	7	49	24.5
$\Sigma y = 15.0$	$\Sigma x = 18$	$\Sigma x^2 = 80$	$\Sigma xy = 51.5$

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\Sigma x}{6} = \frac{18}{6} = 3$$

$$\bar{y} = \frac{\Sigma y}{6} = \frac{15}{6} = 2.5$$

$$b = \frac{\Sigma xy - n\bar{x}\bar{y}}{\Sigma x^2 - n\bar{x}^2} = \frac{51.5 - (6)(3)(2.5)}{80 - (6)(3^2)} = .25$$

$$a = \bar{y} - b\bar{x} = 2.5 - (.25)(3) = 1.75$$

The estimated regression equation, therefore, is:

$$\hat{y} = 1.75 + .25x$$

or:

$$\text{Sales} = 1.75 + .25\,(\text{payroll})$$

If the local chamber of commerce predicts that the West Bloomfield area payroll will be \$6 billion next year, we can estimate sales for Nodel with the regression equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Sales (in \$ millions)} &= 1.75 + .25(6)\\ &= 1.75 + 1.50 = 3.25\end{aligned}$$

or:

$$\text{Sales} = \$3{,}250{,}000$$

INSIGHT ▶ Given our assumptions of a straight-line relationship between payroll and sales, we now have an indication of the slope of that relationship: on average, sales increase at the rate of $\frac{1}{4}$ million dollars for every billion dollars in the local area payroll. This is because $b = .25$.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ What are Nodel's sales when the local payroll is \$8 billion? [Answer: \$3.75 million.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 4.34, 4.43–4.48, 4.50–4.54 (4.56a, 4.57, 4.58 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch04Ex12.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

The final part of Example 12 shows a central weakness of associative forecasting methods like regression. Even when we have computed a regression equation, we must provide a forecast of the independent variable x—in this case, payroll—before estimating the dependent variable y for the next time period. Although this is not a problem for all forecasts, you can imagine the difficulty of determining future values of *some* common independent variables (e.g., unemployment rates, gross national product, price indices, and so on).

Standard Error of the Estimate

The forecast of \$3,250,000 for Nodel's sales in Example 12 is called a *point estimate* of y. The point estimate is really the *mean*, or *expected value*, of a distribution of possible values of sales. Figure 4.9 illustrates this concept.

To measure the accuracy of the regression estimates, we must compute the **standard error of the estimate**, $S_{y,x}$. This computation is called the *standard deviation of the regression:* It measures the error from the dependent variable, y, to the regression line, rather than to the mean. Equation (4-14) is a similar expression to that found in most statistics books for computing the standard deviation of an arithmetic mean:

Standard error of the estimate
A measure of variability around the regression line—its standard deviation.

$$S_{y,x} = \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma(y - y_c)^2}{n - 2}} \tag{4-14}$$

where y = y-value of each data point
y_c = computed value of the dependent variable, from the regression equation
n = number of data points

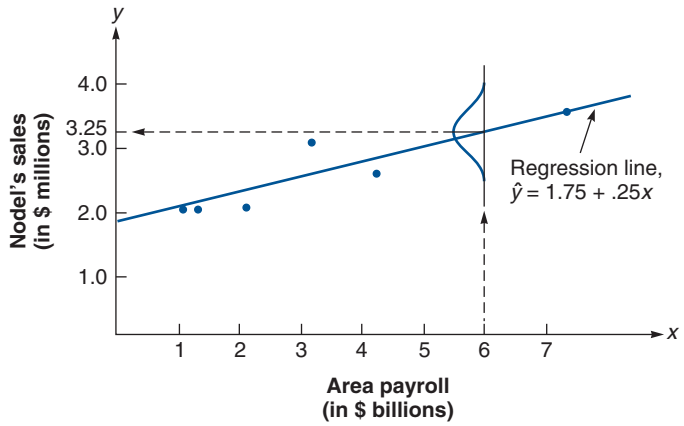


Figure 4.9
Distribution about the Point Estimate of \$3.25 Million Sales

Michael Rosenfeld/Maximilian S/RGB Ventures/SuperStock/Alamy

Glidden Paints' assembly lines require thousands of gallons every hour. To predict demand, the firm uses associative forecasting methods such as linear regression, with independent variables such as disposable personal income and GNP. Although housing starts would be a natural variable, Glidden found that it correlated poorly with past sales. It turns out that most Glidden paint is sold through retailers to customers who already own homes or businesses.

Equation (4-15) may look more complex, but it is actually an easier-to-use version of Equation (4-14). Both formulas provide the same answer and can be used in setting up prediction intervals around the point estimate:[2]

$$S_{y,x} = \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma y^2 - a\Sigma y - b\Sigma xy}{n - 2}} \tag{4-15}$$

Example 13 shows how we would calculate the standard error of the estimate in Example 12.

Example 13

COMPUTING THE STANDARD ERROR OF THE ESTIMATE

Nodel's VP of operations now wants to know the error associated with the regression line computed in Example 12.

APPROACH ▶ Compute the standard error of the estimate, $S_{y,x}$, using Equation (4-15).

SOLUTION ▶ The only number we need that is not available to solve for $S_{y,x}$ is Σy^2. Some quick addition reveals $\Sigma y^2 = 39.5$. Therefore:

$$S_{y,x} = \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma y^2 - a\Sigma y - b\Sigma xy}{n - 2}}$$

$$= \sqrt{\frac{39.5 - 1.75(15.0) - .25(51.5)}{6 - 2}}$$

$$= \sqrt{.09375} = .306 \text{ (in \$ millions)}$$

The standard error of the estimate is then \$306,000 in sales.

INSIGHT ▶ The interpretation of the standard error of the estimate is similar to the standard deviation; namely, ± 1 standard deviation = .6827. So there is a 68.27% chance of sales being $\pm$\$306,000 from the point estimate of \$3,250,000.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ What is the probability sales will exceed \$3,556,000? [Answer: About 16%.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 4.52e, 4.54b (4.56c, 4.57 are available in MyOMLab)

Correlation Coefficients for Regression Lines

Coefficient of correlation
A measure of the strength of the relationship between two variables.

The regression equation is one way of expressing the nature of the relationship between two variables. Regression lines are not "cause-and-effect" relationships. They merely describe the relationships among variables. The regression equation shows how one variable relates to the value and changes in another variable.

Another way to evaluate the relationship between two variables is to compute the **coefficient of correlation**. This measure expresses the degree or strength of the linear relationship (but note

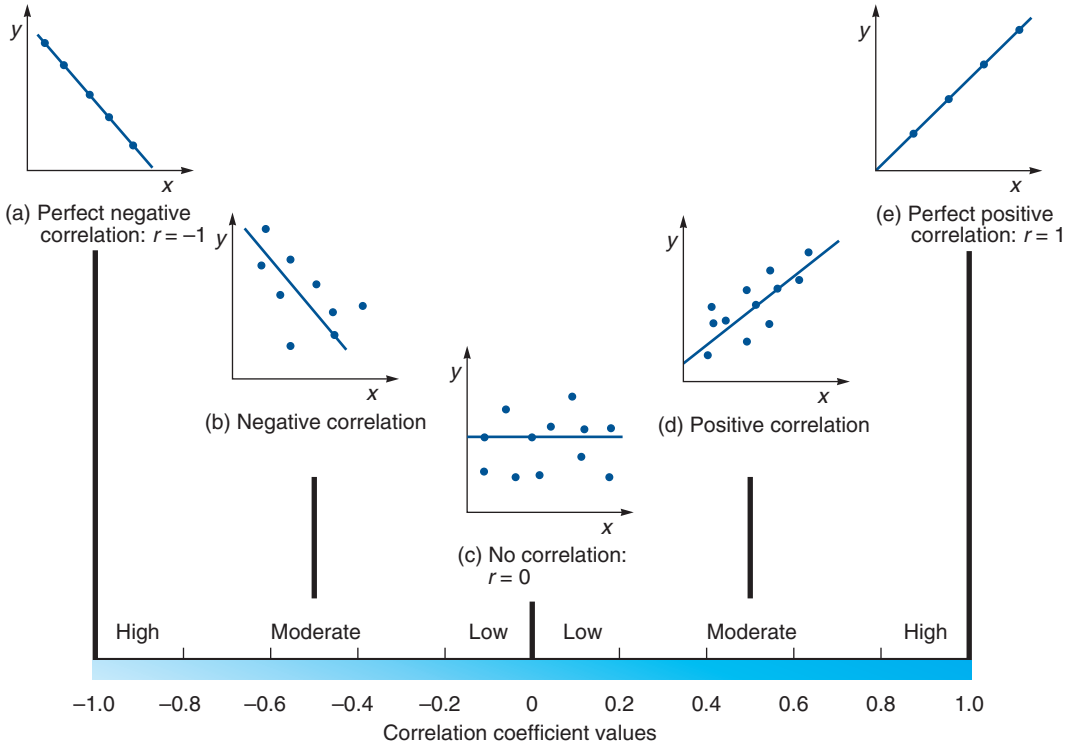


Figure 4.10

Five Values of the Correlation Coefficient

that correlation does not necessarily imply causality). Usually identified as r, the coefficient of correlation can be any number between +1 and −1. Figure 4.10 illustrates what different values of r might look like.

To compute r, we use much of the same data needed earlier to calculate a and b for the regression line. The rather lengthy equation for r is:

$$r = \frac{n\Sigma xy - \Sigma x \Sigma y}{\sqrt{[n\Sigma x^2 - (\Sigma x)^2][n\Sigma y^2 - (\Sigma y)^2]}} \tag{4-16}$$

Example 14 shows how to calculate the coefficient of correlation for the data given in Examples 12 and 13.

Example 14

DETERMINING THE COEFFICIENT OF CORRELATION

In Example 12, we looked at the relationship between Nodel Construction Company's renovation sales and payroll in its hometown of West Bloomfield. The VP now wants to know the strength of the association between area payroll and sales.

APPROACH ▶ We compute the r value using Equation (4-16). We need to first add one more column of calculations—for y^2.

SOLUTION ▶ The data, including the column for y^2 and the calculations, are shown here:

y	x	x^2	xy	y^2
2.0	1	1	2.0	4.0
3.0	3	9	9.0	9.0
2.5	4	16	10.0	6.25
2.0	2	4	4.0	4.0
2.0	1	1	2.0	4.0
3.5	7	49	24.5	12.25
$\Sigma y = 15.0$	$\Sigma x = 18$	$\Sigma x^2 = 80$	$\Sigma xy = 51.5$	$\Sigma y^2 = 39.5$

$$r = \frac{(6)(51.5) - (18)(15.0)}{\sqrt{[(6)(80) - (18)^2][(6)(39.5) - (15.0)^2]}}$$
$$= \frac{309 - 270}{\sqrt{(156)(12)}} = \frac{39}{\sqrt{1{,}872}}$$
$$= \frac{39}{43.3} = .901$$

INSIGHT ▶ This r of .901 appears to be a significant correlation and helps confirm the closeness of the relationship between the two variables.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the coefficient of correlation was −.901 rather than +.901, what would this tell you? [Answer: The negative correlation would tell you that as payroll went up, Nodel's sales went down—a rather unlikely occurrence that would suggest you recheck your math.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 4.43d, 4.48d, 4.50c, 4.52f, 4.54b (4.56b, 4.57 are available in MyOMLab)

Coefficient of determination
A measure of the amount of variation in the dependent variable about its mean that is explained by the regression equation.

Although the coefficient of correlation is the measure most commonly used to describe the relationship between two variables, another measure does exist. It is called the **coefficient of determination** and is simply the square of the coefficient of correlation—namely, r^2. The value of r^2 will always be a positive number in the range $0 \leq r^2 \leq 1$. The coefficient of determination is the percent of variation in the dependent variable (y) that is explained by the regression equation. In Nodel's case, the value of r^2 is .81, indicating that 81% of the total variation is explained by the regression equation.

Multiple-Regression Analysis

Multiple regression
An associative forecasting method with more than one independent variable.

Multiple regression is a practical extension of the simple regression model we just explored. It allows us to build a model with several independent variables instead of just one variable. For example, if Nodel Construction wanted to include average annual interest rates in its model for forecasting renovation sales, the proper equation would be:

$$\hat{y} = a + b_1x_1 + b_2x_2 \tag{4-17}$$

where y = dependent variable, sales
a = a constant, the y intercept
x_1 and x_2 = values of the two independent variables, area payroll and interest rates, respectively
b_1 and b_2 = coefficients for the two independent variables

The mathematics of multiple regression becomes quite complex (and is usually tackled by computer), so we leave the formulas for a, b_1, and b_2 to statistics textbooks. However, Example 15 shows how to interpret Equation (4-17) in forecasting Nodel's sales.

Example 15

USING A MULTIPLE-REGRESSION EQUATION

Nodel Construction wants to see the impact of a second independent variable, interest rates, on its sales.

APPROACH ▶ The new multiple-regression line for Nodel Construction, calculated by computer software, is:

$$\hat{y} = 1.80 + .30x_1 - 5.0x_2$$

We also find that the new coefficient of correlation is .96, implying the inclusion of the variable x_2, interest rates, adds even more strength to the linear relationship.

SOLUTION ▶ We can now estimate Nodel's sales if we substitute values for next year's payroll and interest rate. If West Bloomfield's payroll will be \$6 billion and the interest rate will be .12 (12%), sales will be forecast as:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Sales(\$ millions)} &= 1.80 + .30(6) - 5.0(.12)\\ &= 1.8 + 1.8 - .6\\ &= 3.00\end{aligned}$$

or:

$$\text{Sales} = \$3{,}000{,}000$$

INSIGHT ▶ By using both variables, payroll and interest rates, Nodel now has a sales forecast of \$3 million and a higher coefficient of correlation. This suggests a stronger relationship between the two variables and a more accurate estimate of sales.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If interest rates were only 6%, what would be the sales forecast? [Answer: $1.8 + 1.8 - 5.0(.06) = 3.3$, or \$3,300,000.]

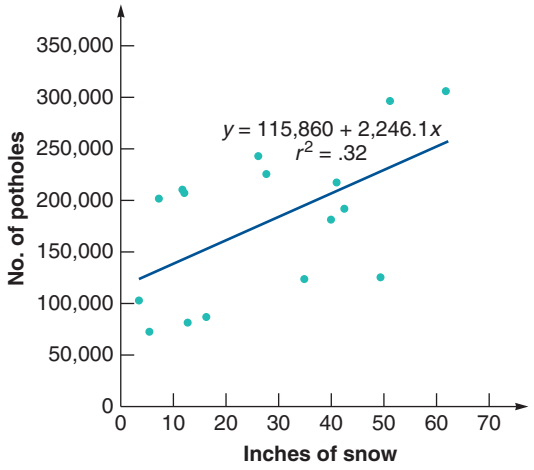
RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 4.47, 4.49 (4.59 is available in MyOMLab)

The *OM in Action* box, "NYC's Potholes and Regression Analysis," provides an interesting example of one city's use of regression and multiple regression.

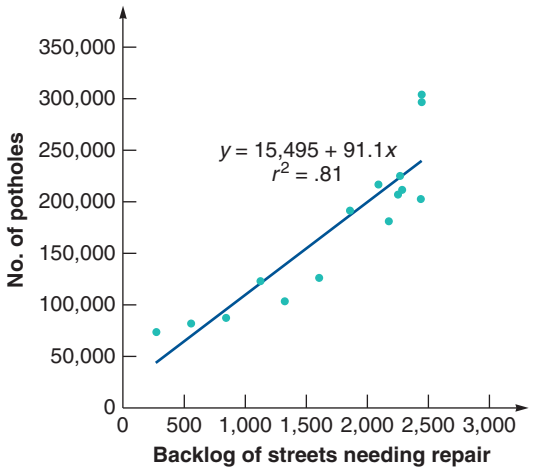
OM in Action NYC's Potholes and Regression Analysis

New York is famous for many things, but one it does not like to be known for is its large and numerous potholes. David Letterman used to joke: "There is a pothole so big on 8th Avenue, it has its own Starbucks in it." When it comes to potholes, some years seem to be worse than others. The winter of 2014 was an exceptionally bad year. City workers filled a record 300,000 potholes during the first 4 months of the year. That's an astounding accomplishment.

But potholes are to some extent a measure of municipal competence—and they are costly. NYC's poor streets cost the average motorist an estimated \$800 per year in repair work and new tires. There has been a steady and dramatic increase in potholes from around 70,000–80,000 in the 1990s to the devastatingly high 200,000–300,000 range in recent years. One theory is that bad weather causes the potholes. Using inches of snowfall as a measure of the severity of the winter, the graph below shows a plot of the number of potholes versus the inches of snow each winter.



Research showed that the city would need to resurface at least 1,000 miles of roads per year just to stay even with road deterioration. Any amount below that would contribute to a "gap" or backlog of streets needing repair. The graph below shows the plot of potholes versus the gap. With an r^2 of .81, there is a very strong relationship between the increase in the "gap" and the number of potholes. It is obvious that the real reason for the steady and substantial increase in the number of potholes is due to the increasing gap in road resurfacing.



A third model performs a regression analysis using the resurfacing gap and inches of snow as two independent variables and number of potholes as the dependent variable. That regression model's r^2 is .91.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Potholes} &= 7{,}801.5 + 80.6 \times \text{Resurfacing gap}\\ &\quad + 930.1 \times \text{Inches of snow}\end{aligned}$$

Sources: OR/MS Today (June, 2014) and *New York Daily News* (March 5, 2014).

Monitoring and Controlling Forecasts

Once a forecast has been completed, it should not be forgotten. No manager wants to be reminded that his or her forecast is horribly inaccurate, but a firm needs to determine why actual demand (or whatever variable is being examined) differed significantly from that projected. If the forecaster is accurate, that individual usually makes sure that everyone is aware of his or her talents. Very seldom does one read articles in *Fortune*, *Forbes*, or *The Wall Street Journal*, however, about money managers who are consistently off by 25% in their stock market forecasts.

Tracking signal
A measurement of how well a forecast is predicting actual values.

One way to monitor forecasts to ensure that they are performing well is to use a tracking signal. A **tracking signal** is a measurement of how well a forecast is predicting actual values. As forecasts are updated every week, month, or quarter, the newly available demand data are compared to the forecast values.

The tracking signal is computed as the cumulative error divided by the *mean absolute deviation (MAD)*:

$$\text{Tracking signal} = \frac{\text{Cumulative error}}{\text{MAD}} \tag{4-18}$$

$$= \frac{\Sigma(\text{Actual demand in period } i - \text{Forecast demand in period } i)}{\text{MAD}}$$

$$\text{where} \qquad \text{MAD} = \frac{\Sigma\,|\text{Actual} - \text{Forecast}|}{n}$$

as seen earlier, in Equation (4-5).

STUDENT TIP
Using a tracking signal is a good way to make sure the forecasting system is continuing to do a good job.

Positive tracking signals indicate that demand is *greater* than forecast. *Negative* signals mean that demand is *less* than forecast. A good tracking signal—that is, one with a low cumulative error—has about as much positive error as it has negative error. In other words, small deviations are okay, but positive and negative errors should balance one another so that the tracking signal centers closely around zero. A consistent tendency for forecasts to be greater or less than the actual values (that is, for a high absolute cumulative error) is called a **bias** error. Bias can occur if, for example, the wrong variables or trend line are used or if a seasonal index is misapplied.

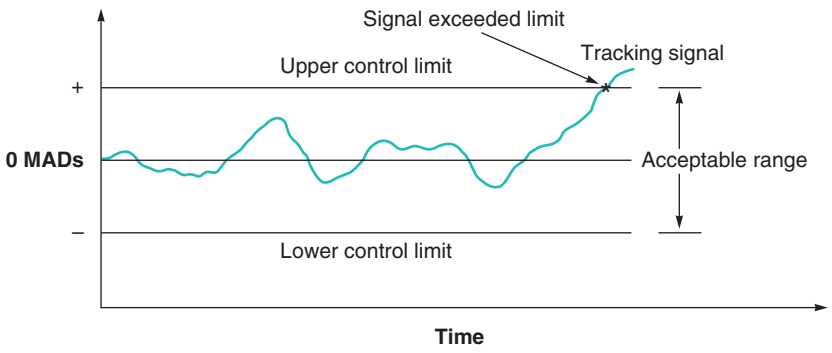
Bias
A forecast that is consistently higher or consistently lower than actual values of a time series.

Once tracking signals are calculated, they are compared with predetermined control limits. When a tracking signal exceeds an upper or lower limit, there is a problem with the forecasting method, and management may want to reevaluate the way it forecasts demand. Figure 4.11 shows the graph of a tracking signal that is exceeding the range of acceptable variation. If the model being used is exponential smoothing, perhaps the smoothing constant needs to be readjusted.

LO 4.7 *Use* a tracking signal

How do firms decide what the upper and lower tracking limits should be? There is no single answer, but they try to find reasonable values—in other words, limits not so low as to be triggered with every small forecast error and not so high as to allow bad forecasts to be regularly overlooked. One MAD is equivalent to approximately .8 standard deviations,

Figure 4.11
A Plot of Tracking Signals



± 2 MADs $= \pm 1.6$ standard deviations, ± 3 MADs $= \pm 2.4$ standard deviations, and ± 4 MADs $= \pm 3.2$ standard deviations. This fact suggests that for a forecast to be "in control," 89% of the errors are expected to fall within ± 2 MADs, 98% within ± 3 MADs, or 99.9% within ± 4 MADs.[3]

Example 16 shows how the tracking signal and cumulative error can be computed.

Example 16

COMPUTING THE TRACKING SIGNAL AT CARLSON'S BAKERY

Carlson's Bakery wants to evaluate performance of its croissant forecast.

APPROACH ▶ Develop a tracking signal for the forecast, and see if it stays within acceptable limits, which we define as ± 4 MADs.

SOLUTION ▶ Using the forecast and demand data for the past 6 quarters for croissant sales, we develop a tracking signal in the following table:

QUARTER	ACTUAL DEMAND	FORECAST DEMAND	ERROR	CUMULATIVE ERROR	ABSOLUTE FORECAST ERROR	CUMULATIVE ABSOLUTE FORECAST ERROR	MAD	TRACKING SIGNAL (CUMULATIVE ERROR/MAD)
1	90	100	−10	−10	10	10	10.0	−10/10 = −1
2	95	100	−5	−15	5	15	7.5	−15/7.5 = −2
3	115	100	+15	0	15	30	10.0	0/10 = 0
4	100	110	−10	−10	10	40	10.0	−10/10 = −1
5	125	110	+15	+5	15	55	11.0	+5/11 = +0.5
6	140	110	+30	+35	30	85	14.2	+35/14.2 = +2.5

$$\text{At the end of quarter 6, MAD} = \frac{\sum |\text{Forecast errors}|}{n} = \frac{85}{6} = 14.2$$

$$\text{and Tracking signal} = \frac{\text{Cumulative error}}{\text{MAD}} = \frac{35}{14.2} = 2.5 \text{ MADs}$$

INSIGHT ▶ Because the tracking signal drifted from −2 MAD to +2.5 MAD (between 1.6 and 2.0 standard deviations), we can conclude that it is within acceptable limits.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If actual demand in quarter 6 was 130 (rather than 140), what would be the MAD and resulting tracking signal? [Answer: MAD for quarter 6 would be 12.5, and the tracking signal for period 6 would be 2 MADs.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 4.59, 4.60 (4.61c is available in MyOMLab)

Adaptive Smoothing

Adaptive forecasting refers to computer monitoring of tracking signals and self-adjustment if a signal passes a preset limit. For example, when applied to exponential smoothing, the α and β coefficients are first selected on the basis of values that minimize error forecasts and then adjusted accordingly whenever the computer notes an errant tracking signal. This process is called **adaptive smoothing**.

Adaptive smoothing
An approach to exponential smoothing forecasting in which the smoothing constant is automatically changed to keep errors to a minimum.

Focus Forecasting

Rather than adapt by choosing a smoothing constant, computers allow us to try a variety of forecasting models. Such an approach is called focus forecasting. **Focus forecasting** is based on two principles:

1. Sophisticated forecasting models are not always better than simple ones.
2. There is no single technique that should be used for all products or services.

Focus forecasting
Forecasting that tries a variety of computer models and selects the best one for a particular application.

Bernard Smith, inventory manager for American Hardware Supply, coined the term *focus forecasting*. Smith's job was to forecast quantities for 100,000 hardware products purchased by American's 21 buyers.[4] He found that buyers neither trusted nor understood the exponential smoothing model then in use. Instead, they used very simple approaches of their own. So Smith developed his new computerized system for selecting forecasting methods.

Smith chose to test seven forecasting methods. They ranged from the simple ones that buyers used (such as the naive approach) to statistical models. Every month, Smith applied the forecasts of all seven models to each item in stock. In these simulated trials, the forecast values were subtracted from the most recent actual demands, giving a simulated forecast error. The forecast method yielding the least error is selected by the computer, which then uses it to make next month's forecast. Although buyers still have an override capability, American Hardware finds that focus forecasting provides excellent results.

Forecasting in the Service Sector

STUDENT TIP
Forecasting at McDonald's, FedEx, and Walmart is as important and complex as it is for manufacturers such as Toyota and Dell.

Forecasting in the service sector presents some unusual challenges. A major technique in the retail sector is tracking demand by maintaining good short-term records. For instance, a barbershop catering to men expects peak flows on Fridays and Saturdays. Indeed, most barbershops are closed on Sunday and Monday, and many call in extra help on Friday and Saturday. A downtown restaurant, on the other hand, may need to track conventions and holidays for effective short-term forecasting.

Specialty Retail Shops Specialty retail facilities, such as flower shops, may have other unusual demand patterns, and those patterns will differ depending on the holiday. When Valentine's Day falls on a weekend, for example, flowers can't be delivered to offices, and those romantically inclined are likely to celebrate with outings rather than flowers. If a holiday falls on a Monday, some of the celebration may also take place on the weekend, reducing flower sales. However, when Valentine's Day falls in midweek, busy midweek schedules often make flowers the optimal way to celebrate. Because flowers for Mother's Day are to be delivered on Saturday or Sunday, this holiday forecast varies less. Due to special demand patterns, many service firms maintain records of sales, noting not only the day of the week but also unusual events, including the weather, so that patterns and correlations that influence demand can be developed.

VIDEO 4.2
Forecasting at Hard Rock Cafe

Fast-Food Restaurants Fast-food restaurants are well aware not only of weekly, daily, and hourly but even 15-minute variations in demands that influence sales. Therefore, detailed forecasts of demand are needed. Figure 4.12(a) shows the hourly forecast for a typical

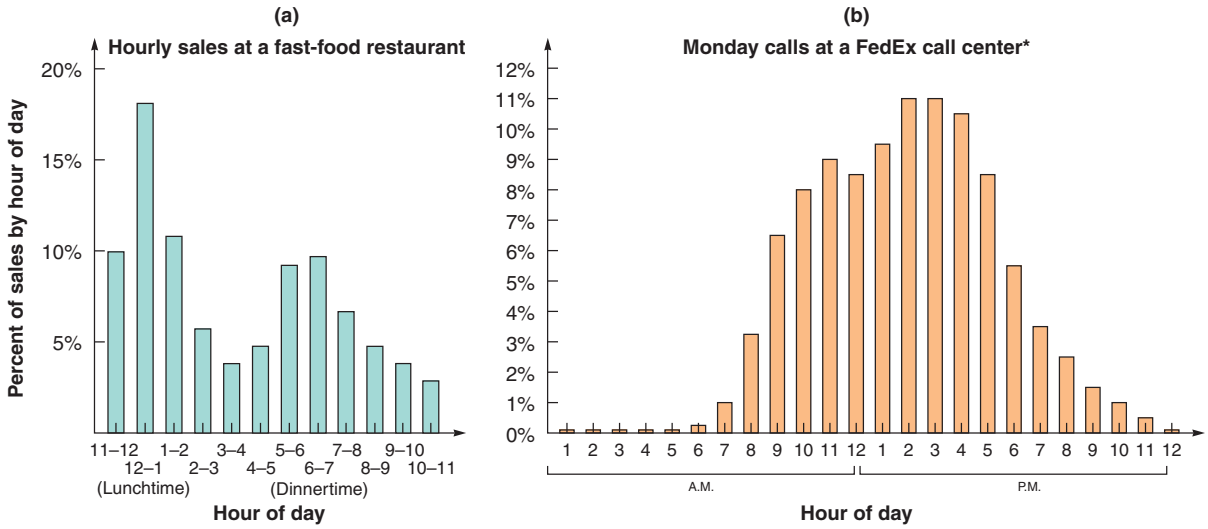


Figure 4.12

Forecasts Are Unique: Note the Variations between (a) Hourly Sales at a Fast-Food Restaurant and (b) Hourly Call Volume at FedEx

*Based on historical data: see *Journal of Business Forecasting* (Winter 1999–2000): 6–11.

fast-food restaurant. Note the lunchtime and dinnertime peaks. This contrasts to the mid-morning and mid-afternoon peaks at FedEx's call center in Figure 4.12(b).

Firms like Taco Bell now use point-of-sale computers that track sales every quarter hour. Taco Bell found that a 6-week moving average was the forecasting technique that minimized its mean squared error (MSE) of these quarter-hour forecasts. Building this forecasting methodology into each of Taco Bell's 6,500 U.S. stores' computers, the model makes weekly projections of customer transactions. These in turn are used by store managers to schedule staff, who begin in 15-minute increments, not 1-hour blocks as in other industries. The forecasting model has been so successful that Taco Bell has increased customer service while documenting more than $50 million in labor cost savings in 4 years of use.

Summary

Forecasts are a critical part of the operations manager's function. Demand forecasts drive a firm's production, capacity, and scheduling systems and affect the financial, marketing, and personnel planning functions.

There are a variety of qualitative and quantitative forecasting techniques. Qualitative approaches employ judgment, experience, intuition, and a host of other factors that are difficult to quantify. Quantitative forecasting uses historical data and causal, or associative, relations to project future demands.

Key Terms

Forecasting (p. 176)
Economic forecasts (p. 147)
Technological forecasts (p. 147)
Demand forecasts (p. 147)
Quantitative forecasts (p. 149)
Qualitative forecasts (p. 149)
Jury of executive opinion (p. 149)
Delphi method (p. 149)
Sales force composite (p. 149)
Market survey (p. 149)
Time series (p. 150)
Naive approach (p. 152)
Moving averages (p. 152)
Exponential smoothing (p. 154)
Smoothing constant (p. 154)
Mean absolute deviation (MAD) (p. 156)
Mean squared error (MSE) (p. 157)
Mean absolute percent error (MAPE) (p. 158)
Trend projection (p. 162)
Seasonal variations (p. 164)
Cycles (p. 169)
Linear-regression analysis (p. 169)
Standard error of the estimate (p. 171)
Coefficient of correlation (p. 172)
Coefficient of determination (p. 174)
Multiple regression (p. 174)
Tracking signal (p. 176)
Bias (p. 176)
Adaptive smoothing (p. 177)
Focus forecasting (p. 177)

Ethical Dilemma

Croatian Transmission System Operator, Ltd. is one of national electricity grid operators in the EU. As a state-owned enterprise, and as a relatively big employer of university graduals (mostly electrical engineers, lawyers and economists), the company strives to provide equal opportunities for job seekers. Once they get the jobs and work a while, their university scores can be compared to job performance evaluations. Recently, the company asked three levels of managers superior to each of 30 entrants with master degree from the last ten years to grade them. The average grades were then compared to the university scores from the HR records (not available to the managers). The 32 interviewed managers were not told what the purpose of the exercise was. The result was surprising: r^2 between the two grades was as low as 0.014, meaning that merely 1.4 percent of person's subjective evaluation by her/his superiors is explainable by university scores. Even more, the *F*-test revealed that probability of wrongful rejection of the hypothesis $r^2 = 0$ was as high as 75%. This example opens a lot of ethical questions: Can University scores be used as (one of) legitimate selection criteria in equal-opportunity job contests? Can companies rely on these scores as a reasonable forecast of future job performance? Is it OK to teach students that they would get better jobs with higher university scores? Is it even important to score students with more detailed grades than just pass/fail? Will persons graduated with honors do better than their less successful colleagues or is it just a reflection of modern obsession with test scores and best performance?

Robert Kneschke/Fotolia

Discussion Questions

1. What is a qualitative forecasting model, and when is its use appropriate?
2. Identify and briefly describe the two general forecasting approaches.
3. Suppose you need to forecast the amount of relief aid needed following an earthquake. What type of forecast do you think is the most appropriate: qualitative or quantitative, and why? Is CPFR applicable in this case?
4. Briefly describe the steps that are used to develop a forecasting system.
5. A skeptical manager asks what medium-range forecasts can be used for. Give the manager three possible uses/purposes.
6. Explain why such forecasting devices as moving averages, weighted moving averages, and exponential smoothing are not well suited for data series that have trends.
7. What is the basic difference between a weighted moving average and exponential smoothing?
8. What three methods are used to determine the accuracy of any given forecasting method? How would you determine whether time-series regression or exponential smoothing is better in a specific application?
9. Research and briefly describe the Delphi technique. How would it be used by an employer you have worked for?
10. What is the primary difference between a time-series model and an associative model?
11. What type of forecasting method would you recommend to a start-up retailer in terms of quantities, number of products, etc.? Will you use the same method after say five years of operation? Explain.
12. What effect does the value of the smoothing constant have on the weight given to the recent values?
13. Explain the value of seasonal indices in forecasting. How are seasonal patterns different from cyclical patterns?
14. Which forecasting technique can place the most emphasis on recent values? How does it do this?
15. How could an exponential smoothing model be made more responsive?
16. What is the purpose of a tracking signal?
17. Explain, in your own words, the meaning of the correlation coefficient. Discuss the meaning of a negative value of the correlation coefficient.
18. If the benefits of implementing CPFR are so evident, why are companies reticent to commit to this concept?
19. Give examples of industries that are affected by seasonality. Why would these businesses want to filter out seasonality?
20. Summarize in the form of a table (a) the characteristics, (b) the strengths, and (c) the weakness for the following qualitative methods: (i) Jury of executive opinion, (ii) Delphi method, and (iii) Market survey.
21. What happens to the ability to forecast for periods farther into the future?
22. Li & Fung is a global trading company with clients being major retailers such as Wal-Mart, Target and Disney World serving a network of 12,000 suppliers. Li & Fung is engaged in collaborative planning, relying on collaborative technology to forecast forthcoming trends. Being an intermediary between customers and suppliers, collaborative planning is critical for the company. Li & Fung used to deal with its clients mostly by phone and fax, with e-mail counting as high technology. But thanks to a new web-services platform, its processes have speeded up. One of the most important technologies has turned out to be videoconferencing. It allows buyers and manufacturers to examine the colour of a material or the stitching on a garment. The information system also allows Li & Fung to make changes fast as well as to look across its operations to identify trends.
    a) Explain the organizational objectives that CPFR is trying to achieve. Stress its advantages and disadvantages.
    b) A complementary process that is intended to match supply and demand planning is Sales and Operations Planning (S&OP) through functional collaboration. Initially, S&OP has been used for internal company planning, while recently has extended to include inputs from their collaboration trading partners.

    Recognize the differences between the CPFR and S&OP. Explain the differences in the organizational objectives they are trying to accomplish.

Using Software in Forecasting

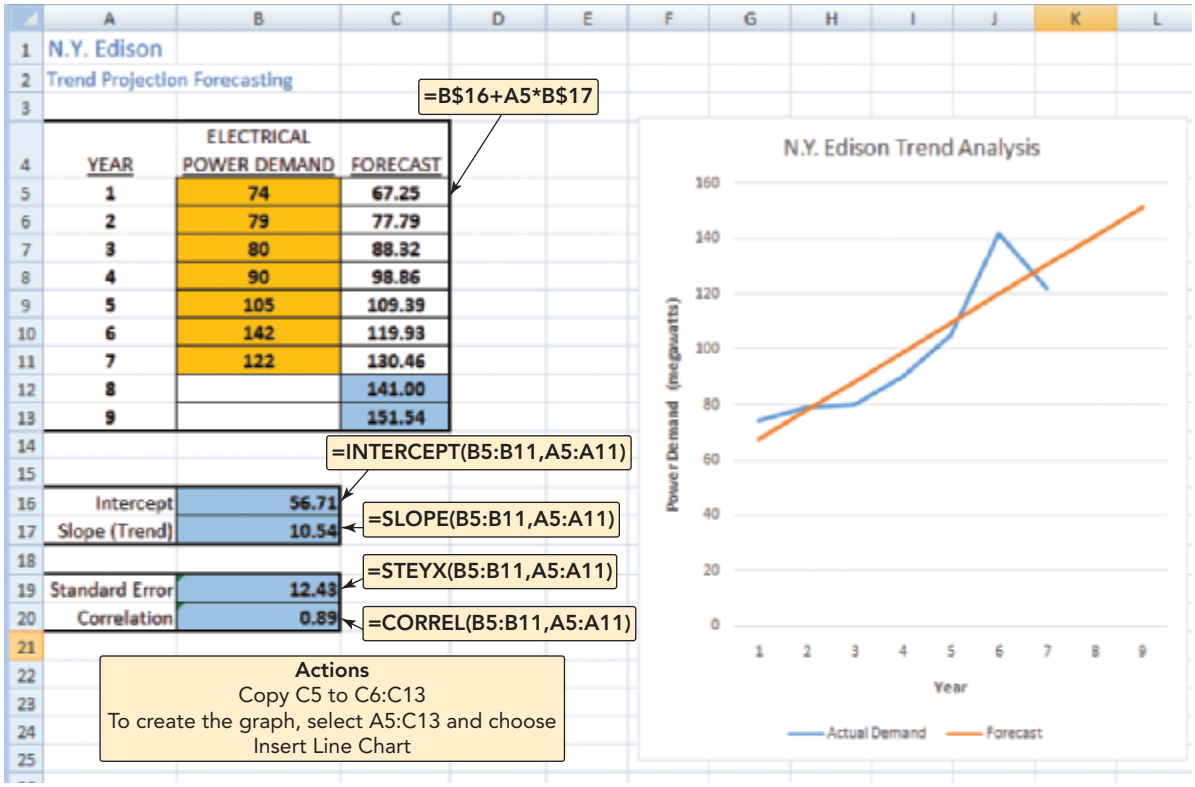
This section presents three ways to solve forecasting problems with computer software. First, you can create your own Excel spreadsheets to develop forecasts. Second, you can use the Excel OM software that comes with the text. Third, POM for Windows is another program that is located in MyOMLab.

CREATING YOUR OWN EXCEL SPREADSHEETS

Excel spreadsheets (and spreadsheets in general) are frequently used in forecasting. Exponential smoothing, trend analysis, and regression analysis (simple and multiple) are supported by built-in Excel functions.

Program 4.1 illustrates how to build an Excel forecast for the data in Example 8. The goal for N.Y. Edison is to create a trend analysis of the year 1 to year 7 data.

As an alternative, you may want to experiment with Excel's built-in regression analysis. To do so, under the **Data** menu bar selection choose **Data Analysis**, then **Regression**. Enter your Y and X data into two columns (say A and B). When the regression window appears, enter the Y and X ranges, then select **OK**. Excel offers several plots and tables to those interested in more rigorous analysis of regression problems.



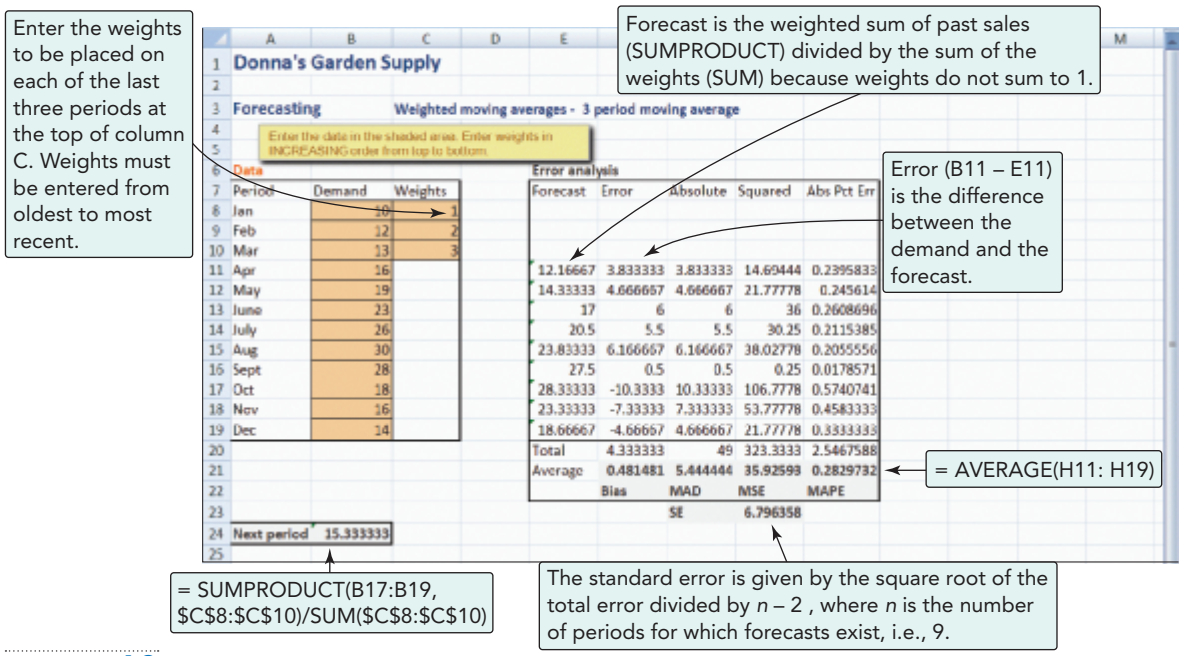
Program **4.1**

Using Excel to Develop Your Own Forecast, with Data from Example 8

USING EXCEL OM

Excel OM's forecasting module has five components: (1) moving averages, (2) weighted moving averages, (3) exponential smoothing, (4) regression (with one variable only), and (5) decomposition. Excel OM's error analysis is much more complete than that available with the Excel add-in.

Program 4.2 illustrates Excel OM's input and output, using Example 2's weighted-moving-average data.



Program **4.2**

Analysis of Excel OM's Weighted-Moving-Average Program, Using Data from Example 2 as Input

P USING POM FOR WINDOWS

POM for Windows can project moving averages (both simple and weighted), handle exponential smoothing (both simple and trend adjusted), forecast with least squares trend projection, and solve linear regression (associative) models. A summary screen of error analysis and a graph of the data can also be generated. As a special example of exponential smoothing adaptive forecasting, when using an α of 0, POM for Windows will find the α value that yields the minimum MAD.

Appendix IV provides further details.

Solved Problems

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM 4.1

Sales of Volkswagen's popular Beetle have grown steadily at auto dealerships in Nevada during the past 5 years (see table below). The sales manager had predicted before the new model was introduced that first year sales would be 410 VWs. Using exponential smoothing with a weight of $\alpha = .30$, develop forecasts for years 2 through 6.

YEAR	SALES	FORECAST
1	450	410
2	495	
3	518	
4	563	
5	584	
6	?	

SOLUTION

YEAR	FORECAST
1	410.0
2	422.0 = 410 + .3 (450 − 410)
3	443.9 = 422 + .3 (495 − 422)
4	466.1 = 443.9 + .3 (518 − 443.9)
5	495.2 = 466.1 + .3 (563 − 466.1)
6	521.8 = 495.2 + .3 (584 − 495.2)

SOLVED PROBLEM 4.2

In Example 7, we applied trend-adjusted exponential smoothing to forecast demand for a piece of pollution-control equipment for months 2 and 3 (out of 9 months of data provided). Let us now continue this process for month 4. We want to confirm the forecast for month 4 shown in Table 4.2 (p. 161) and Figure 4.3 (p. 161).

For month 4, $A_4 = 19$, with $\alpha = .2$, and $\beta = .4$.

SOLUTION

$$
\begin{aligned}
F_4 &= \alpha A_3 + (1 - \alpha)(F_3 + T_3) \\
&= (.2)(20) + (1 - .2)(15.18 + 2.10) \\
&= 4.0 + (.8)(17.28) \\
&= 4.0 + 13.82 \\
&= 17.82 \\
T_4 &= \beta(F_4 - F_3) + (1 - \beta)T_3 \\
&= (.4)(17.82 - 15.18) + (1 - .4)(2.10) \\
&= (.4)(2.64) + (.6)(2.10) \\
&= 1.056 + 1.26 \\
&= 2.32 \\
FIT_4 &= 17.82 + 2.32 \\
&= 20.14
\end{aligned}
$$

SOLVED PROBLEM 4.3

Sales of hair dryers at the Walgreens stores in Youngstown, Ohio, over the past 4 months have been 100, 110, 120, and 130 units (with 130 being the most recent sales).

Develop a moving-average forecast for next month, using these three techniques:

a) 3-month moving average.
b) 4-month moving average.
c) Weighted 4-month moving average with the most recent month weighted 4, the preceding month 3, then 2, and the oldest month weighted 1.
d) If next month's sales turn out to be 140 units, forecast the following month's sales (months) using a 4-month moving average.

SOLUTION

a) 3-month moving average

$$= \frac{110 + 120 + 130}{3} = \frac{360}{3} = 120 \text{ dryers}$$

b) 4-month moving average

$$= \frac{100 + 110 + 120 + 130}{4} = \frac{460}{4} = 115 \text{ dryers}$$

c) Weighted moving average

$$= \frac{4(130) + 3(120) + 2(110) + 1(100)}{10}$$

$$= \frac{1{,}200}{10} = 120 \text{ dryers}$$

d) *Now* the four most recent sales are 110, 120, 130, and 140.

$$\text{4-month moving average} = \frac{110 + 120 + 130 + 140}{4}$$

$$= \frac{500}{4} = 125 \text{ dryers}$$

We note, of course, the lag in the forecasts, as the moving-average method does not immediately recognize trends.

SOLVED PROBLEM 4.4

The following data come from regression line projections:

PERIOD	FORECAST VALUES	ACTUAL VALUES
1	410	406
2	419	423
3	428	423
4	435	440

Compute the MAD and MSE.

SOLUTION

$$\text{MAD} = \frac{\Sigma\,|\text{Actual} - \text{Forecast}|}{n}$$

$$= \frac{|406-410| + |423-419| + |423-428| + |440-435|}{4}$$

$$= \frac{4+4+5+5}{4} = \frac{18}{4} = 4.5$$

$$\text{MSE} = \frac{\Sigma(\text{Forecast errors})^2}{n}$$

$$= \frac{(406-410)^2+(423-419)^2+(423-428)^2+(440-435)^2}{4}$$

$$= \frac{4^2+4^2+5^2+5^2}{4} = \frac{16+16+25+25}{4} = 20.5$$

SOLVED PROBLEM 4.5

Room registrations in the Toronto Towers Plaza Hotel have been recorded for the past 9 years. To project future occupancy, management would like to determine the mathematical trend of guest registration. This estimate will help the hotel determine whether future expansion will be needed. Given the following time-series data, develop a regression equation relating registrations to time (e.g., a trend equation). Then forecast year 11 registrations. Room registrations are in the thousands:

Year 1: 17	Year 2: 16	Year 3: 16	Year 4: 21	Year 5: 20
Year 6: 20	Year 7: 23	Year 8: 25	Year 9: 24	

SOLUTION

YEAR	REGISTRANTS, y (IN THOUSANDS)	x^2	xy
1	17	1	17
2	16	4	32
3	16	9	48
4	21	16	84
5	20	25	100
6	20	36	120
7	23	49	161
8	25	64	200
9	24	81	216
$\Sigma x = 45$	$\Sigma y = 182$	$\Sigma x^2 = 285$	$\Sigma xy = 978$

$$b = \frac{\Sigma xy - n\bar{x}\bar{y}}{\Sigma x^2 - n\bar{x}^2} = \frac{978 - (9)(5)(20.22)}{285 - (9)(25)}$$

$$= \frac{978 - 909.9}{285 - 225} = \frac{68.1}{60} = 1.135$$

$a = \bar{y} - b\bar{x} = 20.22 - (1.135)(5) = 20.22 - 5.675 = 14.545$

$\hat{y}$ = (registrations) = $14.545 + 1.135x$

The projection of registrations in year 11 is:

$\hat{y} = 14.545 + (1.135)(11) = 27.03$ or 27,030 guests in year 11.

SOLVED PROBLEM 4.6

Quarterly demand for Ford F150 pickups at a New York auto dealer is forecast with the equation:

$$\hat{y} = 10 + 3x$$

where x = quarters, and:

Quarter I of year 1 = 0
Quarter II of year 1 = 1
Quarter III of year 1 = 2
Quarter IV of year 1 = 3
Quarter I of year 2 = 4
and so on

and:

$\hat{y}$ = quarterly demand

The demand for trucks is seasonal, and the indices for Quarters I, II, III, and IV are 0.80, 1.00, 1.30, and 0.90, respectively. Forecast demand for each quarter of year 3. Then, seasonalize each forecast to adjust for quarterly variations.

SOLUTION

Quarter II of year 2 is coded $x = 5$; Quarter III of year 2, $x = 6$; and Quarter IV of year 2, $x = 7$. Hence, Quarter I of year 3 is coded $x = 8$; Quarter II, $x = 9$; and so on.

$\hat{y}$(Year 3 Quarter I) = $10 + 3(8) = 34$
$\hat{y}$(Year 3 Quarter II) = $10 + 3(9) = 37$
$\hat{y}$(Year 3 Quarter III) = $10 + 3(10) = 40$
$\hat{y}$(Year 3 Quarter IV) = $10 + 3(11) = 43$

Adjusted forecast = (.80)(34) = 27.2
Adjusted forecast = (1.00)(37) = 37
Adjusted forecast = (1.30)(40) = 52
Adjusted forecast = (.90)(43) = 38.7

SOLVED PROBLEM 4.7

Cengiz Haksever runs an Istanbul high-end jewelry shop. He advertises weekly in local Turkish newspapers and is thinking of increasing his ad budget. Before doing so, he decides to evaluate the past effectiveness of these ads. Five weeks are sampled, and the data are shown in the table below:

SALES ($1,000s)	AD BUDGET THAT WEEK ($100s)
11	5
6	3
10	7
6	2
12	8

Develop a regression model to help Cengiz evaluate his advertising.

SOLUTION

We apply the least-squares regression model as we did in Example 12.

SALES, y	ADVERTISING, x	x^2	xy
11	5	25	55
6	3	9	18
10	7	49	70
6	2	4	12
12	8	64	96
$\Sigma y = 45$	$\Sigma x = 25$	$\Sigma x^2 = 151$	$\Sigma xy = 251$
$\bar{y} = \frac{45}{5} = 9$	$\bar{x} = \frac{25}{5} = 5$		

$$b = \frac{\Sigma xy - n\bar{x}\bar{y}}{\Sigma x^2 - n\bar{x}^2} = \frac{251 - (5)(5)(9)}{151 - (5)(5^2)}$$

$$= \frac{251 - 225}{151 - 125} = \frac{26}{26} = 1$$

$$a = \bar{y} - b\bar{x} = 9 - (1)(5) = 4$$

So the regression model is $\hat{y} = 4 + 1x$, or

Sales (in $1,000s) = 4 + 1 (Ad budget in $100s)

This means that for each 1-unit increase in x (or $100 in ads), sales increase by 1 unit (or $1,000).

SOLVED PROBLEM 4.8

Using the data in Solved Problem 4.7, find the coefficient of determination, r^2, for the model.

SOLUTION

To find r^2, we need to also compute Σy^2.

$$\Sigma y^2 = 11^2 + 6^2 + 10^2 + 6^2 + 12^2$$
$$= 121 + 36 + 100 + 36 + 144 = 437$$

The next step is to find the coefficient of correlation, r:

$$r = \frac{n\Sigma xy - \Sigma x \Sigma y}{\sqrt{[n\Sigma x^2 - (\Sigma x)^2][n\Sigma y^2 - (\Sigma y)^2]}}$$

$$= \frac{5(251) - (25)(45)}{\sqrt{[5(151) - (25)^2][5(437) - (45)^2]}}$$

$$= \frac{1{,}255 - 1{,}125}{\sqrt{(130)(160)}} = \frac{130}{\sqrt{20{,}800}} = \frac{130}{144.22}$$

$$= .9014$$

Thus, $r^2 = (.9014)^2 = .8125$, meaning that about 81% of the variability in sales can be explained by the regression model with advertising as the independent variable.

Problems

Note: PX means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel OM.

Problems 4.1–4.42 relate to Time-Series Forecasting

• **4.1** The following gives the number of pints of type B blood used at Woodlawn Hospital in the past 6 weeks:

WEEK OF	PINTS USED
August 31	360
September 7	389
September 14	410
September 21	381
September 28	368
October 5	374

a) Forecast the demand for the week of October 12 using a 3-week moving average.

b) Use a 3-week weighted moving average, with weights of .1, .3, and .6, using .6 for the most recent week. Forecast demand for the week of October 12.

c) Compute the forecast for the week of October 12 using exponential smoothing with a forecast for August 31 of 360 and $\alpha = .2$. PX

•• **4.2**

YEAR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
DEMAND	7	9	5	9	13	8	12	13	9	11	7

a) Plot the above data on a graph. Do you observe any trend, cycles, or random variations?

b) Starting in year 4 and going to year 12, forecast demand using a 3-year moving average. Plot your forecast on the same graph as the original data.

c) Starting in year 4 and going to year 12, forecast demand using a 3-year moving average with weights of .1, .3, and .6, using .6 for the most recent year. Plot this forecast on the same graph.
d) As you compare forecasts with the original data, which seems to give the better results? PX

•• **4.3** Refer to Problem 4.2. Develop a forecast for years 2 through 12 using exponential smoothing with $\alpha = .4$ and a forecast for year 1 of 6. Plot your new forecast on a graph with the actual data and the naive forecast. Based on a visual inspection, which forecast is better? PX

• **4.4** A check-processing center uses exponential smoothing to forecast the number of incoming checks each month. The number of checks received in June was 40 million, while the forecast was 42 million. A smoothing constant of .2 is used.
a) What is the forecast for July?
b) If the center received 45 million checks in July, what would be the forecast for August?
c) Why might this be an inappropriate forecasting method for this situation? PX

•• **4.5** The Carbondale Hospital is considering the purchase of a new ambulance. The decision will rest partly on the anticipated mileage to be driven next year. The miles driven during the past 5 years are as follows:

YEAR	MILEAGE
1	3,000
2	4,000
3	3,400
4	3,800
5	3,700

a) Forecast the mileage for next year (6th year) using a 2-year moving average.
b) Find the MAD based on the 2-year moving average. (*Hint:* You will have only 3 years of matched data.)
c) Use a weighted 2-year moving average with weights of .4 and .6 to forecast next year's mileage. (The weight of .6 is for the most recent year.) What MAD results from using this approach to forecasting? (*Hint:* You will have only 3 years of matched data.)
d) Compute the forecast for year 6 using exponential smoothing, an initial forecast for year 1 of 3,000 miles, and $\alpha = .5$. PX

•• **4.6** The monthly sales for Yazici Batteries, Inc., were as follows:

MONTH	SALES
January	20
February	21
March	15
April	14
May	13
June	16
July	17
August	18
September	20
October	20
November	21
December	23

a) Plot the monthly sales data.
b) Forecast January sales using each of the following:
   i) Naive method.
   ii) A 3-month moving average.
   iii) A 6-month weighted average using .1, .1, .1, .2, .2, and .3, with the heaviest weights applied to the most recent months.
   iv) Exponential smoothing using an $\alpha = .3$ and a September forecast of 18.
   v) A trend projection.
c) With the data given, which method would allow you to forecast next March's sales? PX

•• **4.7** The actual demand for the patients at Omaha Emergency Medical Clinic for the first 6 weeks of this year follows:

WEEK	ACTUAL NO. OF PATIENTS
1	65
2	62
3	70
4	48
5	63
6	52

Clinic administrator Marc Schniederjans wants you to forecast patient demand at the clinic for week 7 by using this data. You decide to use a weighted moving average method to find this forecast. Your method uses four actual demand levels, with weights of 0.333 on the present period, 0.25 one period ago, 0.25 two periods ago, and 0.167 three periods ago.
a) What is the value of your forecast? PX
b) If instead the weights were 20, 15, 15, and 10, respectively, how would the forecast change? Explain why.
c) What if the weights were 0.40, 0.30, 0.20, and 0.10, respectively? Now what is the forecast for week 7?

• **4.8** Daily high temperatures in St. Louis for the last week were as follows: 93, 94, 93, 95, 96, 88, 90 (yesterday).
a) Forecast the high temperature today, using a 3-day moving average.
b) Forecast the high temperature today, using a 2-day moving average.
c) Calculate the mean absolute deviation based on a 2-day moving average.
d) Compute the mean squared error for the 2-day moving average.
e) Calculate the mean absolute percent error for the 2-day moving average. PX

••• **4.9** Lenovo uses the ZX-81 chip in some of its laptop computers. The prices for the chip during the past 12 months were as follows:

MONTH	PRICE PER CHIP	MONTH	PRICE PER CHIP
January	$1.80	July	1.80
February	1.67	August	1.83
March	1.70	September	1.70
April	1.85	October	1.65
May	1.90	November	1.70
June	1.87	December	1.75

a) Use a 2-month moving average on all the data and plot the averages and the prices.
b) Use a 3-month moving average and add the 3-month plot to the graph created in part (a).
c) Which is better (using the mean absolute deviation): the 2-month average or the 3-month average?
d) Compute the forecasts for each month using exponential smoothing, with an initial forecast for January of $1.80. Use $\alpha = .1$, then $\alpha = .3$, and finally $\alpha = .5$. Using MAD, which α is the best? PX

••**4.10** Data collected on the yearly registrations for a Six Sigma seminar at the Quality College are shown in the following table:

YEAR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
REGISTRATIONS (000)	4	6	4	5	10	8	7	9	12	14	15

a) Develop a 3-year moving average to forecast registrations from year 4 to year 12.
b) Estimate demand again for years 4 to 12 with a 3-year weighted moving average in which registrations in the most recent year are given a weight of 2, and registrations in the other 2 years are each given a weight of 1.
c) Graph the original data and the two forecasts. Which of the two forecasting methods seems better? PX

• **4.11** Use exponential smoothing with a smoothing constant of 0.3 to forecast the registrations at the seminar given in Problem 4.10. To begin the procedure, assume that the forecast for year 1 was 5,000 people signing up.
a) What is the MAD? PX
b) What is the MSE?

••**4.12** Consider the following actual and forecast demand levels for Big Mac hamburgers at a local McDonald's restaurant:

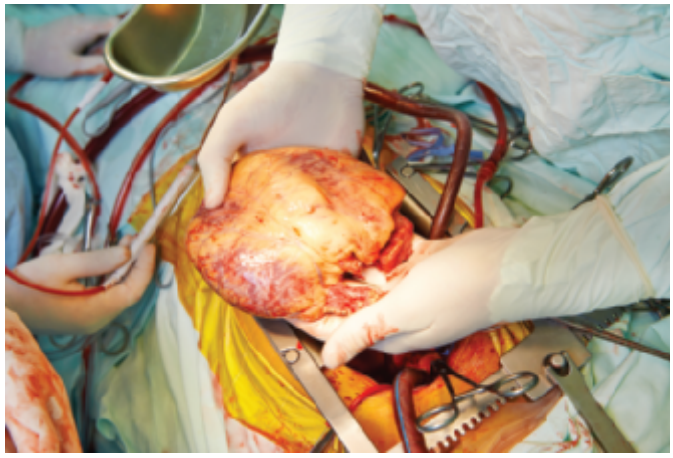
DAY	ACTUAL DEMAND	FORECAST DEMAND
Monday	88	88
Tuesday	72	88
Wednesday	68	84
Thursday	48	80
Friday		

The forecast for Monday was derived by observing Monday's demand level and setting Monday's forecast level equal to this demand level. Subsequent forecasts were derived by using exponential smoothing with a smoothing constant of 0.25. Using this exponential smoothing method, what is the forecast for Big Mac demand for Friday? PX

•••**4.13** As you can see in the following table, demand for heart transplant surgery at Washington General Hospital has increased steadily in the past few years:

YEAR	1	2	3	4	5	6
HEART TRANSPLANTS	45	50	52	56	58	?

The director of medical services predicted 6 years ago that demand in year 1 would be 41 surgeries.
a) Use exponential smoothing, first with a smoothing constant of .6 and then with one of .9, to develop forecasts for years 2 through 6.
b) Use a 3-year moving average to forecast demand in years 4, 5, and 6.


Dmitry Kalinovsky/Shutterstock

c) Use the trend-projection method to forecast demand in years 1 through 6.
d) With MAD as the criterion, which of the four forecasting methods is best? PX

••**4.14** A local retailer is thinking to use exponential smoothing to forecast one of his well selling products. His problem is that he is not sure if he has to use a low or high value of α. For this reason, he uses the historical data available and tries with values for $\alpha = 0.1$ and $\alpha = 0.2$ to find which α will give smaller MAD.

WEEK	ACTUAL SALES
1	95
2	110
3	120
4	98
5	112
6	95
7	105
8	130
9	70
10	80
11	110

• **4.15** Refer to Solved Problem 4.1 on page 144.
a) Use a 3-year moving average to forecast the sales of Volkswagen Beetles in Nevada through year 6.
b) What is the MAD? PX
c) What is the MSE?

• **4.16** Refer to Solved Problem 4.1 on page 144.
a) Using the trend projection (regression) method, develop a forecast for the sales of Volkswagen Beetles in Nevada through year 6.
b) What is the MAD? PX
c) What is the MSE?

• **4.17** Refer to Solved Problem 4.1 on page 144. Using smoothing constants of .6 and .9, develop forecasts for the sales of VW Beetles. What effect did the smoothing constant have on the forecast? Use MAD to determine which of the three smoothing constants (.3, .6, or .9) gives the most accurate forecast. PX

••••**4.18** Consider the following actual (A_t) and forecast (F_t) demand levels for a commercial multiline telephone at Office Max:

TIME PERIOD, t	ACTUAL DEMAND, A_t	FORECAST DEMAND, F_t
1	50	50
2	42	50
3	56	48
4	46	50
5		

The first forecast, F_1, was derived by observing A_1 and setting F_1 equal to A_1. Subsequent forecast averages were derived by exponential smoothing. Using the exponential smoothing method, find the forecast for time period 5. (*Hint:* You need to first find the smoothing constant, α.)

••• **4.19** Income at the architectural firm Spraggins and Yunes for the period February to July was as follows:

MONTH	FEBRUARY	MARCH	APRIL	MAY	JUNE	JULY
Income (in $ thousand)	70.0	68.5	64.8	71.7	71.3	72.8

Use trend-adjusted exponential smoothing to forecast the firm's August income. Assume that the initial forecast average for February is $65,000 and the initial trend adjustment is 0. The smoothing constants selected are $\alpha = .1$ and $\beta = .2$. PX

••• **4.20** Resolve Problem 4.19 with $\alpha = .1$ and $\beta = .8$. Using MSE, determine which smoothing constants provide a better forecast. PX

• **4.21** Refer to the trend-adjusted exponential smoothing illustration in Example 7 on pages 122–123. Using $\alpha = .2$ and $\beta = .4$, we forecast sales for 9 months, showing the detailed calculations for months 2 and 3. In Solved Problem 4.2, we continued the process for month 4.

In this problem, show your calculations for months 5 and 6 for F_t, T_t, and FIT_t. PX

• **4.22** Refer to Problem 4.21. Complete the trend-adjusted exponential-smoothing forecast computations for periods 7, 8, and 9. Confirm that your numbers for F_t, T_t, and FIT_t match those in Table 4.2 (p. 161). PX

•• **4.23** A warehouse manager wants through forecasting to estimate the inventory moving in and out of his warehouse each week. An analyst suggests using a 3-, 5- , or 7 week moving average. However, before deciding, he wants to compare the accuracy of each for the most recent 10-week period.

WEEK	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
ACTUAL INVENTORY (in thousands Euro)	99	98	96	109	104	129	80	100	111	88
WEEK	11	12	13	14	15	16	17			
ACTUAL INVENTORY (in thousands Euro)	107	97	114	121	78	94	99			

a) Calculate the 3-. 5- and 7- week moving average.
b) Calculate MAD for each forecast, which is the best choice?
c) Calculate the cash demand for week 18th, based on question (b)

• **4.24** The following gives the number of accidents that occurred on Florida State Highway 101 during the past 4 months:

MONTH	NUMBER OF ACCIDENTS
January	30
February	40
March	60
April	90

Forecast the number of accidents that will occur in May, using least-squares regression to derive a trend equation. PX

• **4.25** The University athletic department works on its budget for the next year basketball attendance. Table below shows the accumulated number of seasonal basketball attendance for the two last years. The University, due to the good performance of the basketball team last year, expects the annual ticket sales to increase by 25%. What will be the seasonal demand?

	ATTENDANCE			
SEASON	FALL	WINTER	SPRING	SUMMER
Year 1	3000	4000	3500	3800
Year 2 (last)	3500	4500	2000	3500

•• **4.26** A logistics company has been in business for four years and wants to develop monthly indices. Inventory monthly quantities for these years are shown below.
a) Develop monthly indices
b) Estimate next year forecast for the months: April, July and December, assuming that the annual inventory quantity will be 1500.

	INVENTORY QUANTITIES (Thousands of Units)			
MONTH	YEAR 1	YEAR 2	YEAR 3	YEAR 4
Jan	82	82	82	82
Feb	70	78	84	89
Mar	85	90	82	77
Apr	91	90	90	88
May	90	90	123	119
Jun	89	120	99	99
Jul	100	99	78	89
Aug	89	103	93	100
Sept	86	92	120	86
Oct	80	84	78	84
Nov	75	83	99	80
Dec	78	82	100	82

•• **4.27** Attendance at Orlando's newest Disneylike attraction, Lego World, has been as follows:

QUARTER	GUESTS (IN THOUSANDS)	QUARTER	GUESTS (IN THOUSANDS)
Winter Year 1	73	Summer Year 2	124
Spring Year 1	104	Fall Year 2	52
Summer Year 1	168	Winter Year 3	89
Fall Year 1	74	Spring Year 3	146
Winter Year 2	65	Summer Year 3	205
Spring Year 2	82	Fall Year 3	98

Compute seasonal indices using all of the data. PX

• **4.28** North Dakota Electric Company estimates its demand trend line (in millions of kilowatt hours) to be:

$$D = 77 + 0.43Q$$

where Q refers to the sequential quarter number and $Q = 1$ for winter of Year 1. In addition, the multiplicative seasonal factors are as follows:

QUARTER	FACTOR (INDEX)
Winter	.8
Spring	1.1
Summer	1.4
Fall	.7

Forecast energy use for the four quarters of year 26 (namely quarters 101 to 104), beginning with winter.

• **4.29** The number of disk drives (in millions) made at a plant in Taiwan during the past 5 years follows:

YEAR	DISK DRIVES
1	140
2	160
3	190
4	200
5	210

a) Forecast the number of disk drives to be made next year, using linear regression.
b) Compute the mean squared error (MSE) when using linear regression.
c) Compute the mean absolute percent error (MAPE). PX

•• **4.30** Dr. Lillian Fok, a New Orleans psychologist, specializes in treating patients who are agoraphobic (i.e., afraid to leave their homes). The following table indicates how many patients Dr. Fok has seen each year for the past 10 years. It also indicates what the robbery rate was in New Orleans during the same year:

YEAR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
NUMBER OF PATIENTS	36	33	40	41	40	55	60	54	58	61
ROBBERY RATE PER 1,000 POPULATION	58.3	61.1	73.4	75.7	81.1	89.0	101.1	94.8	103.3	116.2

Using trend (linear regression) analysis, predict the number of patients Dr. Fok will see in years 11 and 12 as a function of time. How well does the model fit the data? PX

••• **4.31** Emergency calls to the 911 system of Durham, North Carolina, for the past 24 weeks are shown in the following table:

WEEK	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
CALLS	50	35	25	40	45	35	20	30	35	20	15	40
WEEK	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
CALLS	55	35	25	55	55	40	35	60	75	50	40	65

a) Compute the exponentially smoothed forecast of calls for each week. Assume an initial forecast of 50 calls in the first week, and use $\alpha = .2$. What is the forecast for week 25?
b) Reforecast each period using $\alpha = .6$.
c) Actual calls during week 25 were 85. Which smoothing constant provides a superior forecast? Explain and justify the measure of error you used. PX

••• **4.32** Using the 911 call data in Problem 4.31, forecast calls for weeks 2 through 25 with a trend-adjusted exponential smoothing model. Assume an initial forecast for 50 calls for week 1 and an initial trend of zero. Use smoothing constants of $\alpha = .3$ and $\beta = .2$. Is this model better than that of Problem 4.31? What adjustment might be useful for further improvement? (Again, assume that actual calls in week 25 were 85.) PX

••• **4.33** Storrs Cycles has just started selling the new Cyclone mountain bike, with monthly sales as shown in the table. First, co-owner Bob Day wants to forecast by exponential smoothing by initially setting February's forecast equal to January's sales with $\alpha = .1$. Co-owner Sherry Snyder wants to use a three-period moving average.

	SALES	BOB	SHERRY	BOB'S ERROR	SHERRY'S ERROR
JANUARY	400	—			
FEBRUARY	380	400			
MARCH	410				
APRIL	375				
MAY					

a) Is there a strong linear trend in sales over time?
b) Fill in the table with what Bob and Sherry each forecast for May and the earlier months, as relevant.
c) Assume that May's actual sales figure turns out to be 405. Complete the table's columns and then calculate the mean absolute deviation for both Bob's and Sherry's methods.
d) Based on these calculations, which method seems more accurate? PX

•••• **4.34** Boulanger Savings and Loan is proud of its long tradition in Winter Park, Florida. Begun by Michelle Boulanger 22 years after World War II, the S&L has bucked the trend of financial and liquidity problems that has repeatedly plagued the industry. Deposits have increased slowly but surely over the years, despite recessions in 1983, 1988, 1991, 2001, and 2010. Ms. Boulanger believes it is necessary to have a long-range strategic plan for her firm, including a 1-year forecast and preferably even a 5-year forecast of deposits. She examines the past deposit data and also peruses Florida's gross state product (GSP) over the same 44 years. (GSP is analogous to gross national product [GNP] but on the state level.) The resulting data are in the following table.

YEAR	DEPOSITS[a]	GSP[b]	YEAR	DEPOSITS[a]	GSP[b]
1	.25	.4	13	.50	1.2
2	.24	.4	14	.95	1.2
3	.24	.5	15	1.70	1.2
4	.26	.7	16	2.3	1.6
5	.25	.9	17	2.8	1.5
6	.30	1.0	18	2.8	1.6
7	.31	1.4	19	2.7	1.7
8	.32	1.7	20	3.9	1.9
9	.24	1.3	21	4.9	1.9
10	.26	1.2	22	5.3	2.3
11	.25	1.1	23	6.2	2.5
12	.33	.9	24	4.1	2.8

(*continued*)

YEAR	DEPOSITS[a]	GSP[b]	YEAR	DEPOSITS[a]	GSP[b]
25	4.5	2.9	35	31.1	4.1
26	6.1	3.4	36	31.7	4.1
27	7.7	3.8	37	38.5	4.0
28	10.1	4.1	38	47.9	4.5
29	15.2	4.0	39	49.1	4.6
30	18.1	4.0	40	55.8	4.5
31	24.1	3.9	41	70.1	4.6
32	25.6	3.8	42	70.9	4.6
33	30.3	3.8	43	79.1	4.7
34	36.0	3.7	44	94.0	5.0

[a] In $ millions.
[b] In $ billions.

a) Using exponential smoothing, with $\alpha = .6$, then trend analysis, and finally linear regression, discuss which forecasting model fits best for Boulanger's strategic plan. Justify the selection of one model over another.
b) Carefully examine the data. Can you make a case for excluding a portion of the information? Why? Would that change your choice of model? PX

Additional problems **4.35–4.42** *are available in* MyOMLab.

Problems 4.43–4.58 relate to Associative Forecasting Methods

••**4.43** Mark Gershon, owner of a musical instrument distributorship, thinks that demand for guitars may be related to the number of television appearances by the popular group Maroon 5 during the previous month. Mark has collected the data shown in the following table:

DEMAND FOR GUITARS	3	6	7	5	10	7
MAROON 5 TV APPEARANCES	3	4	7	6	8	5

a) Graph these data to see whether a linear equation might describe the relationship between the group's television shows and guitar sales.
b) Use the least-squares regression method to derive a forecasting equation.
c) What is your estimate for guitar sales if Maroon 5 performed on TV nine times last month?
d) What are the correlation coefficient (r) and the coefficient of determination (r^2) for this model, and what do they mean? PX

• **4.44** Lori Cook has developed the following forecasting model:

$$\hat{y} = 36 + 4.3x$$

where $\hat{y}$ = demand for Kool Air conditioners and
x = the outside temperature (°F) PX

a) Forecast demand for the Kool Air when the temperature is 70°F.
b) What is demand when the temperature is 80°F?
c) What is demand when the temperature is 90°F? PX

••**4.45** Café Michigan's manager, Gary Stark, suspects that demand for mocha latte coffees depends on the price being charged. Based on historical observations, Gary has gathered the following data, which show the numbers of these coffees sold over six different price values:

PRICE	NUMBER SOLD
$2.70	760
$3.50	510
$2.00	980
$4.20	250
$3.10	320
$4.05	480

Using these data, how many mocha latte coffees would be forecast to be sold according to simple linear regression if the price per cup were $2.80? PX

• **4.46** The following data relate the sales figures of the bar in Mark Kaltenbach's small bed-and-breakfast inn in Portand, to the number of guests registered that week:

WEEK	GUESTS	BAR SALES
1	16	$330
2	12	270
3	18	380
4	14	300

a) Perform a linear regression that relates bar sales to guests (not to time).
b) If the forecast is for 20 guests next week, what are the sales expected to be? PX

• **4.47** Kalamia Company tries to forecast the value of its business based on the money that has spent on advertisement. The company has been tracking the relationship between sales and money spent on advertising, where the results are as follows (all numbers expressed in thousands Euro).

SALES	Y	42	6	35	1	3	8	4	5	1	2
ADVERTISING	X	750	150	701	41	97	167	110	254	51	90
SALES	Y	9	2	6	25	14	2	17	7	13	32
ADVERTISING	X	191	92	142	377	197	63	265	92	232	548

Use linear regression analysis to find out the value sales for next year, if the company decides to budget €150,000 in advertisements expenses.

••**4.48** Rhonda Clark, a Slippery Rock, Pennsylvania, real estate developer, has devised a regression model to help determine residential housing prices in northwestern Pennsylvania. The model was developed using recent sales in a particular neighborhood. The price (Y) of the house is based on the size (square footage = X) of the house. The model is:

$$Y = 13{,}473 + 37.65X$$

The coefficient of correlation for the model is 0.63.
a) Use the model to predict the selling price of a house that is 1,860 square feet.
b) An 1,860-square-foot house recently sold for $95,000. Explain why this is not what the model predicted.

c) If you were going to use multiple regression to develop such a model, what other quantitative variables might you include?
d) What is the value of the coefficient of determination in this problem? PX

• **4.49** Accountants at the Tucson firm, Larry Youdelman, CPAs, believed that several traveling executives were submitting unusually high travel vouchers when they returned from business trips. First, they took a sample of 200 vouchers submitted from the past year. Then they developed the following multiple-regression equation relating expected travel cost to number of days on the road (x_1) and distance traveled (x_2) in miles:

$$\hat{y} = \$90.00 + \$48.50x_1 + \$.40x_2$$

The coefficient of correlation computed was .68.
a) If Donna Battista returns from a 300-mile trip that took her out of town for 5 days, what is the expected amount she should claim as expenses?
b) Battista submitted a reimbursement request for $685. What should the accountant do?
c) Should any other variables be included? Which ones? Why? PX

•• **4.50** City government has collected the following data on annual sales tax collections and new car registrations:

ANNUAL SALES TAX COLLECTIONS (IN MILLIONS)	1.0	1.4	1.9	2.0	1.8	2.1	2.3
NEW CAR REGISTRATIONS (IN THOUSANDS)	10	12	15	16	14	17	20

Determine the following:
a) The least-squares regression equation.
b) Using the results of part (a), find the estimated sales tax collections if new car registrations total 22,000.
c) The coefficients of correlation and determination. PX

••**4.51** Using the data in Problem 4.30, apply linear regression to study the relationship between the robbery rate and Dr. Fok's patient load. If the robbery rate increases to 131.2 in year 11, how many phobic patients will Dr. Fok treat? If the robbery rate drops to 90.6, what is the patient projection? PX

•••**4.52** Bus and subway ridership for the summer months in London, England, is believed to be tied heavily to the number of tourists visiting the city. During the past 12 years, the data on the next page have been obtained:

Light Thru My Lens Photography/Getty Images

YEAR (SUMMER MONTHS)	NUMBER OF TOURISTS (IN MILLIONS)	RIDERSHIP (IN MILLIONS)
1	7	1.5
2	2	1.0
3	6	1.3
4	4	1.5
5	14	2.5
6	15	2.7
7	16	2.4
8	12	2.0
9	14	2.7
10	20	4.4
11	15	3.4
12	7	1.7

a) Plot these data and decide if a linear model is reasonable.
b) Develop a regression relationship.
c) What is expected ridership if 10 million tourists visit London in a year?
d) Explain the predicted ridership if there are no tourists at all.
e) What is the standard error of the estimate?
f) What is the model's correlation coefficient and coefficient of determination? PX

•• **4.53** Using the date in problem 4.47, the company wants to find out how closely sales are related to the money spend on advertisements.

a) Calculate the coefficient of correlation for the data given in problem 4.47, and comment on the degree of the linear relationship
b) If the correlation coefficient was the same but negative what would it tell you?
c) List some advantages and disadvantages of the correlation coefficient
d) Calculate the model's coefficient of determination
e) Identify the differences between correlation coefficient and coefficient of determination. How are they similar and how are they different? Explain the differences in the organizational objectives they are trying to achieve.

••**4.54** Dave Fletcher, the general manager of North Carolina Engineering Corporation (NCEC), thinks that his firm's engineering services contracted to highway construction firms are directly related to the volume of highway construction business contracted with companies in his geographic area. He wonders if this is really so, and if it is, can this information help him plan his operations better by forecasting the quantity of his engineering services required by construction firms in each quarter of the year? The following table presents the sales of his services and total amounts of contracts for highway construction over the past eight quarters:

QUARTER	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Sales of NCEC Services (in $ thousands)	8	10	15	9	12	13	12	16
Contracts Released (in $ thousands)	153	172	197	178	185	199	205	226

a) Using this data, develop a regression equation for predicting the level of demand of NCEC's services.

b) Determine the coefficient of correlation and the standard error of the estimate. Px

Additional problems **4.55-4.58** *are available in* MyOMLab.

Problems 4.59–4.61 relate to Monitoring and Controlling Forecasts

••**4.59** Sales of tablet computers at Ted Glickman's electronics store in Washington, D.C., over the past 10 weeks are shown in the table below:

WEEK	DEMAND	WEEK	DEMAND
1	20	6	29
2	21	7	36
3	28	8	22
4	37	9	25
5	25	10	28

a) Forecast demand for each week, including week 10, using exponential smoothing with $\alpha = .5$ (initial forecast = 20).

b) Compute the MAD.

c) Compute the tracking signal. Px

•••**4.60** The table below compares the accuracy of two forecasting methods used by company XYZ to forecast its monthly sales of one of its product. The data pertain to the forecast and actual sales levels over a period of five months. What is the value of the tracking signal as of the end of May? Which method provides better forecast accuracy?

MONTH	ACTUAL SALES	FORECAST	
		METHOD A	METHOD B
Jan	39	43	43
Feb	30	26	22
Mar	40	39	37
Apr	40	37	37
May	39	41	43

Additional problem **4.61** *is available in* MyOMLab.

CASE STUDIES

Southwestern University: (B)*

Southwestern University (SWU), a large state college in Stephenville, Texas, enrolls close to 20,000 students. The school is a dominant force in the small city, with more students during fall and spring than permanent residents.

Always a football powerhouse, SWU is usually in the top 20 in college football rankings. Since the legendary Phil Flamm was hired as its head coach in 2009 (in hopes of reaching the elusive number 1 ranking), attendance at the five Saturday home games each year increased. Prior to Flamm's arrival, attendance generally averaged 25,000 to 29,000 per game. Season ticket sales bumped up by 10,000 just with the announcement of the new coach's arrival. Stephenville and SWU were ready to move to the big time!

Southwestern University Football Game Attendance, 2010–2015

	2010		2011		2012	
GAME	ATTENDEES	OPPONENT	ATTENDEES	OPPONENT	ATTENDEES	OPPONENT
1	34,200	Rice	36,100	Miami	35,900	USC
2[a]	39,800	Texas	40,200	Nebraska	46,500	Texas Tech
3	38,200	Duke	39,100	Ohio State	43,100	Alaska
4[b]	26,900	Arkansas	25,300	Nevada	27,900	Arizona
5	35,100	TCU	36,200	Boise State	39,200	Baylor

	2013		2014		2015	
GAME	ATTENDEES	OPPONENT	ATTENDEES	OPPONENT	ATTENDEES	OPPONENT
1	41,900	Arkansas	42,500	Indiana	46,900	LSU
2[a]	46,100	Missouri	48,200	North Texas	50,100	Texas
3	43,900	Florida	44,200	Texas A&M	45,900	South Florida
4[b]	30,100	Central Florida	33,900	Southern	36,300	Montana
5	40,500	LSU	47,800	Oklahoma	49,900	Arizona State

[a] Homecoming games.

[b] During the fourth week of each season, Stephenville hosted a hugely popular southwestern crafts festival. This event brought tens of thousands of tourists to the town, especially on weekends, and had an obvious negative impact on game attendance.

The immediate issue facing SWU, however, was not NCAA ranking. It was capacity. The existing SWU stadium, built in 1953, has seating for 54,000 fans. The following table indicates attendance at each game for the past 6 years.

One of Flamm's demands upon joining SWU had been a stadium expansion, or possibly even a new stadium. With attendance increasing, SWU administrators began to face the issue head-on. Flamm had wanted dormitories solely for his athletes in the stadium as an additional feature of any expansion.

SWU's president, Dr. Joel Wisner, decided it was time for his vice president of development to forecast when the existing stadium would "max out." The expansion was, in his mind, a given. But Wisner needed to know how long he could wait. He also sought a revenue projection, assuming an average ticket price of $50 in 2016 and a 5% increase each year in future prices.

Discussion Questions

1. Develop a forecasting model, justifying its selection over other techniques, and project attendance through 2017.
2. What revenues are to be expected in 2016 and 2017?
3. Discuss the school's options.

*This integrated case study runs throughout the text. Other issues facing Southwestern's football stadium include (A) managing the stadium project (Chapter 3); (C) quality of facilities (Chapter 6); (D) break-even analysis of food services (Supplement 7 Web site); (E) locating the new stadium (Chapter 8 Web site); (F) inventory planning of football programs (Chapter 12 Web site); and (G) scheduling of campus security officers/staff for game days (Chapter 13 Web site).

Forecasting Ticket Revenue for Orlando Magic Basketball Games

Video Case

For its first 2 decades of existence, the NBA's Orlando Magic basketball team set seat prices for its 41-game home schedule the same for each game. If a lower-deck seat sold for $150, that was the price charged, regardless of the opponent, day of the week, or time of the season. If an upper-deck seat sold for $10 in the first game of the year, it likewise sold for $10 for every game.

But when Anthony Perez, director of business strategy, finished his MBA at the University of Florida, he developed a valuable database of ticket sales. Analysis of the data led him to build a forecasting model he hoped would increase ticket revenue. Perez hypothesized that selling a ticket for similar seats should differ based on demand.

Studying individual sales of Magic tickets on the open Stub Hub marketplace during the prior season, Perez determined the additional potential sales revenue the Magic could have made had they charged prices the fans had proven they were willing to pay on Stub Hub. This became his dependent variable, y, in a multiple-regression model.

He also found that three variables would help him build the "true market" seat price for every game. With his model, it was possible that the same seat in the arena would have as many as seven different prices created at season onset—sometimes higher than expected on average and sometimes lower.

The major factors he found to be statistically significant in determining how high the demand for a game ticket, and hence, its price, would be were:

- The day of the week (x_1)
- A rating of how popular the opponent was (x_2)
- The time of the year (x_3)

For the day of the week, Perez found that Mondays were the least-favored game days (and he assigned them a value of 1). The rest of the weekdays increased in popularity, up to a Saturday game, which he rated a 6. Sundays and Fridays received 5 ratings, and holidays a 3 (refer to the footnote in Table 4.3).

His ratings of opponents, done just before the start of the season, were subjective and range from a low of 0 to a high of 8. A very high-rated team in that particular season may have had one or more superstars on its roster, or have won the NBA finals the prior season, making it a popular fan draw.

Fernando Medina

Finally, Perez believed that the NBA season could be divided into four periods in popularity:

- Early games (which he assigned 0 scores)
- Games during the Christmas season (assigned a 3)
- Games until the All-Star break (given a 2)
- Games leading into the play-offs (scored with a 3)

The first year Perez built his multiple-regression model, the dependent variable y, which was a "potential premium revenue score," yielded an $r^2 = .86$ with this equation:

$$y = 14{,}996 + 10{,}801x_1 + 23{,}397x_2 + 10{,}784x_3$$

Table 4.3 illustrates, for brevity in this case study, a sample of 12 games that year (out of the total 41 home game regular season), including the potential extra revenue per game (y) to be expected using the variable pricing model.

A leader in NBA variable pricing, the Orlando Magic have learned that regression analysis is indeed a profitable forecasting tool.

Discussion Questions*

1. Use the data in Table 4.3 to build a regression model with day of the week as the only independent variable.

TABLE 4.3 Data for Last Year's Magic Ticket Sales Pricing Model

TEAM	DATE*	DAY OF WEEK*	TIME OF YEAR	RATING OF OPPONENT	ADDITIONAL SALES POTENTIAL
Phoenix Suns	November 4	Wednesday	0	0	$12,331
Detroit Pistons	November 6	Friday	0	1	$29,004
Cleveland Cavaliers	November 11	Wednesday	0	6	$109,412
Miami Heat	November 25	Wednesday	0	3	$75,783
Houston Rockets	December 23	Wednesday	3	2	$42,557
Boston Celtics	January 28	Thursday	1	4	$120,212
New Orleans Pelicans	February 3	Monday	1	1	$20,459
L. A. Lakers	March 7	Sunday	2	8	$231,020
San Antonio Spurs	March 17	Wednesday	2	1	$28,455
Denver Nuggets	March 23	Sunday	2	1	$110,561
NY Knicks	April 9	Friday	3	0	$44,971
Philadelphia 76ers	April 14	Wednesday	3	1	$30,257

*Day of week rated as 1 = Monday, 2 = Tuesday, 3 = Wednesday, 4 = Thursday, 5 = Friday, 6 = Saturday, 5 = Sunday, 3 = holiday.

2. Use the data to build a model with rating of the opponent as the sole independent variable.
3. Using Perez's multiple-regression model, what would be the additional sales potential of a Thursday Miami Heat game played during the Christmas holiday?
4. What additional independent variables might you suggest to include in Perez's model?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before answering these questions.

Forecasting at Hard Rock Cafe

Video Case

With the growth of Hard Rock Cafe—from one pub in London in 1971 to more than 145 restaurants in 60 countries today—came a corporatewide demand for better forecasting. Hard Rock uses long-range forecasting in setting a capacity plan and intermediate-term forecasting for locking in contracts for leather goods (used in jackets) and for such food items as beef, chicken, and pork. Its short-term sales forecasts are conducted each month, by cafe, and then aggregated for a headquarters view.

The heart of the sales forecasting system is the point-of-sale (POS) system, which, in effect, captures transaction data on nearly every person who walks through a cafe's door. The sale of each entrée represents one customer; the entrée sales data are transmitted daily to the Orlando corporate headquarters' database. There, the financial team, headed by Todd Lindsey, begins the forecast process. Lindsey forecasts monthly guest counts, retail sales, banquet sales, and concert sales (if applicable) at each cafe. The general managers of individual cafes tap into the same database to prepare a daily forecast for their sites. A cafe manager pulls up prior years' sales for that day, adding information from the local Chamber of Commerce or Tourist Board on upcoming events such as a major convention, sporting event, or concert in the city where the cafe is located. The daily forecast is further broken into hourly sales, which drives employee scheduling. An hourly forecast of $5,500 in sales translates into 19 workstations, which are further broken down into a specific number of waitstaff, hosts, bartenders, and kitchen staff. Computerized scheduling software plugs in people based on their availability. Variances between forecast and actual sales are then examined to see why errors occurred.

Hard Rock doesn't limit its use of forecasting tools to sales. To evaluate managers and set bonuses, a 3-year weighted moving average is applied to cafe sales. If cafe general managers exceed their targets, a bonus is computed. Todd Lindsey, at corporate headquarters, applies weights of 40% to the most recent year's sales, 40% to the year before, and 20% to sales 2 years ago in reaching his moving average.

An even more sophisticated application of statistics is found in Hard Rock's menu planning. Using multiple regression, managers can compute the impact on demand of other menu items if the price of one item is changed. For example, if the price of a cheeseburger increases from $7.99 to $8.99, Hard Rock can predict the effect this will have on sales of chicken sandwiches, pork sandwiches, and salads. Managers do the same analysis on menu placement, with the center section driving higher sales volumes. When an item such as a hamburger is moved off the center to one of the side flaps, the corresponding effect on related items, say french fries, is determined.

HARD ROCK'S MOSCOW CAFE[a]										
MONTH	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Guest count (in thousands)	21	24	27	32	29	37	43	43	54	66
Advertising (in $ thousand)	14	17	25	25	35	35	45	50	60	60

[a] These figures are used for purposes of this case study.

Discussion Questions*

1. Describe three different forecasting applications at Hard Rock. Name three other areas in which you think Hard Rock could use forecasting models.
2. What is the role of the POS system in forecasting at Hard Rock?
3. Justify the use of the weighting system used for evaluating managers for annual bonuses.
4. Name several variables besides those mentioned in the case that could be used as good predictors of daily sales in each cafe.
5. At Hard Rock's Moscow restaurant, the manager is trying to evaluate how a new advertising campaign affects guest counts. Using data for the past 10 months (see the table), develop a least-squares regression relationship and then forecast the expected guest count when advertising is $65,000.

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before answering these questions.

- **Additional Case Studies:** Visit MyOMLab for these free case studies:
  North-South Airlines: Reflects the merger of two airlines and addresses their maintenance costs.
  Digital Cell Phone, Inc.: Uses regression analysis and seasonality to forecast demand at a cell phone manufacturer.

Endnotes

1. For a good review of statistical terms, refer to Tutorial 1, "Statistical Review for Managers," in MyOMLab.
2. When the sample size is large ($n > 30$), the prediction interval value of y can be computed using normal tables. When the number of observations is small, the t-distribution is appropriate. See D. Groebner et al., *Business Statistics*, 9th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2014).
3. To prove these three percentages to yourself, just set up a normal curve for ± 1.6 standard deviations (z-values). Using the normal table in Appendix I, you find that the area under the curve is .89. This represents ± 2 MADs. Likewise, ± 3 MADs $= \pm 2.4$ standard deviations encompass 98% of the area, and so on for ± 4 MADs.
4. Bernard T. Smith, *Focus Forecasting: Computer Techniques for Inventory Control* (Boston: CBI Publishing, 1978).

Chapter 4 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
WHAT IS FORECASTING? (pp. 146–147)	■ **Forecasting—**The art and science of predicting future events. ■ **Economic forecasts**—Planning indicators that are valuable in helping organizations prepare medium- to long-range forecasts. ■ **Technological forecasts**—Long-term forecasts concerned with the rates of technological progress. ■ **Demand forecasts**—Projections of a company's sales for each time period in the planning horizon.	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4
THE STRATEGIC IMPORTANCE OF FORECASTING (pp. 147–148)	*The forecast is the only estimate of demand until actual demand becomes known.* Forecasts of demand drive decisions in many areas, including: human resources, capacity, and supply chain management.	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.3
SEVEN STEPS IN THE FORECASTING SYSTEM (pp. 148–149)	■ Forecasting follows seven basic steps: (1) Determine the use of the forecast; (2) Select the items to be forecasted; (3) Determine the time horizon of the forecast; (4) Select the forecasting model(s); (5) Gather the data needed to make the forecast; (6) Make the forecast; (7) Validate and implement the results.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4
FORECASTING APPROACHES (pp. 149–150)	■ **Quantitative forecasts**—Forecasts that employ mathematical modeling to forecast demand. ■ **Qualitative forecast**—Forecasts that incorporate such factors as the decision maker's intuition, emotions, personal experiences, and value system. ■ **Jury of executive opinion**—Takes the opinion of a small group of high-level managers and results in a group estimate of demand. ■ **Delphi method**—Uses an interactive group process that allows experts to make forecasts. ■ **Sales force composite**—Based on salespersons' estimates of expected sales. ■ **Market survey**—Solicits input from customers or potential customers regarding future purchasing plans. ■ **Time series**—Uses a series of past data points to make a forecast.	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4
TIME-SERIES FORECASTING (pp. 150–169)	■ **Naive approach**—Assumes that demand in the next period is equal to demand in the most recent period. ■ **Moving average**—Uses an average of the n most recent periods of data to forecast the next period. $$\text{Moving average} = \frac{\Sigma \text{demand in previous } n \text{ periods}}{n} \quad (4\text{-}1)$$ $$\text{Weighted moving average} = \frac{\Sigma((\text{Weight for period } n)(\text{Demand in period } n))}{\Sigma \text{Weights}} \quad (4\text{-}2)$$ ■ **Exponential smoothing**—A weighted-moving-average forecasting technique in which data points are weighted by an exponential function. ■ **Smoothing constant**—The weighting factor, α, used in an exponential smoothing forecast, a number between 0 and 1. Exponential smoothing formula: $$F_t = F_{t-1} + \alpha(A_{t-1} - F_{t-1}) \quad (4\text{-}4)$$ ■ **Mean absolute deviation (MAD)**—A measure of the overall forecast error for a model. $$\text{MAD} = \frac{\Sigma|\text{Actual} - \text{Forecast}|}{n} \quad (4\text{-}5)$$ ■ **Mean squared error (MSE)**—The average of the squared differences between the forecast and observed values. $$\text{MSE} = \frac{\Sigma(\text{Forecast errors})^2}{n} \quad (4\text{-}6)$$ ■ **Mean absolute percent error (MAPE)**—The average of the absolute differences between the forecast and actual values, expressed as a percentage of actual values. $$\text{MAPE} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} 100|\text{Actual}_i - \text{Forecast}_i|/\text{Actual}_i}{n} \quad (4\text{-}7)$$	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.4 Problems: 4.1–4.42 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problems: 4.1–4.4 **ACTIVE MODELS 4.1–4.4**

Chapter 4 *Rapid* Review *continued*

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
	Exponential smoothing with trend adjustment Forecast including trend (FIT_t) = Exponentially smoothed forecast average (F_t) + Exponentially smoothed trend (T_t) (4-8) ■ **Trend projection**—A time-series forecasting method that fits a trend line to a series of historical data points and then projects the line into the future for forecasts. Trend projection and regression analysis $\hat{y} = a + bx$, where $b = \frac{\sum xy - n\bar{x}\bar{y}}{\sum x^2 - n\bar{x}^2}$ and $a = \bar{y} - b\bar{x}$ (4-11), (4-12), (4-13) ■ **Seasonal variations**—Regular upward or downward movements in a time series that tie to recurring events. ■ **Cycles**—Patterns in the data that occur every several years.	Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problems: 4.5–4.6
ASSOCIATIVE FORECASTING METHODS: REGRESSION AND CORRELATION ANALYSIS (pp. 169–175)	■ **Linear-regression analysis**—A straight-line mathematical model to describe the functional relationships between independent and dependent variables. ■ **Standard error of the estimate**—A measure of variability around the regression line. ■ **Coefficient of correlation**—A measure of the strength of the relationship between two variables. ■ **Coefficient of determination**—A measure of the amount of variation in the dependent variable about its mean that is explained by the regression equation. ■ **Multiple regression**—An associative forecasting method with > 1 independent variable. Multiple regression forecast: $\hat{y} = a + b_1x_1 + b_2x_2$ (4-17)	Concept Questions: 6.1–6.4 Problems: 4.43-4.58 **VIDEO 4.1** Forecasting Ticket Revenue for Orlando Magic Basketball Games Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problems: 4.7–4.8
MONITORING AND CONTROLLING FORECASTS (pp. 176–178)	■ **Tracking signal**—A measurement of how well the forecast is predicting actual values. Tracking signal = $\frac{\sum(\text{Actual demand in period } i - \text{ Forecast demand in period } i)}{\text{MAD}}$ (4-18) ■ **Bias**—A forecast that is consistently higher or lower than actual values of a time series. ■ **Adaptive smoothing**—An approach to exponential smoothing forecasting in which the smoothing constant is automatically changed to keep errors to a minimum. ■ **Focus forecasting**—Forecasting that tries a variety of computer models and selects the best one for a particular application.	Concept Questions: 7.1–7.4 Problems: 4.59–4.61
FORECASTING IN THE SERVICE SECTOR (pp. 178–179)	Service-sector forecasting may require good short-term demand records, even per 15-minute intervals. Demand during holidays or specific weather events may also need to be tracked.	Concept Question: 8.1 **VIDEO 4.2** Forecasting at Hard Rock Cafe

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 4.1 Forecasting time horizons include:
a) long range. **b)** medium range.
c) short range. **d)** all of the above.

LO 4.2 The moving average forecasting method is typically best for _____ products:
a) Functional **b)** Innovative
c) Mature **d)** New

LO 4.3 Market research is a _____ forecasting method:
a) Naïve approach **b)** Jury of executive opinion
c) Qualitative **d)** Quantitative
e) Moving average

LO 4.4 Three popular measures of forecast accuracy are:
a) total error, average error, and mean error.
b) average error, median error, and maximum error.
c) median error, minimum error, and maximum absolute error.
d) mean absolute deviation, mean squared error, and mean absolute percent error.

LO 4.5 Average demand for iPods in the Rome, Italy, Apple store is 800 units per month. The May monthly index is 1.25. What is the seasonally adjusted sales forecast for May?
a) 640 units **b)** 798.75 units
c) 800 units **d)** 1,000 units
e) cannot be calculated with the information given

LO 4.6 Developing joint forecasting with supply chain partners offers the following benefits:
a) Reduce inventory **b)** Increase sales
c) Bring value to the customer **d)** Share risks
e) All of the above

LO 4.7 The tracking signal is the:
a) standard error of the estimate.
b) cumulative error.
c) mean absolute deviation (MAD).
d) ratio of the cumulative error to MAD.
e) mean absolute percent error (MAPE).

Answers: LO 4.1. d; LO 4.2. c; LO 4.3. c; LO 4.4. d; LO 4.5. d; LO 4.6. e; LO 4.7. d.

Product Design

CHAPTER 5

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *Regal Marine*

- Goods and Services Selection *200*
- Generating New Products *203*
- Product Development *204*
- Issues for Product Design *209*
- Product Development Continuum *211*
- Defining a Product *213*
- Documents for Production *216*
- Service Design *217*
- Application of Decision Trees to Product Design *220*
- Transition to Production *222*

Alaska Airlines

Alaska Airlines

10 OM STRATEGY DECISIONS

- *Design of Goods and Services*
- Managing Quality
- Process Strategy
- Location Strategies
- Layout Strategies
- Human Resources
- Supply-Chain Management
- Inventory Management
- Scheduling
- Maintenance

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
Regal Marine

Product Strategy Provides Competitive Advantage at Regal Marine

Forty years after its founding by potato farmer Paul Kuck, Regal Marine has become a powerful force on the waters of the world. The world's third-largest boat manufacturer (by global sales), Regal exports to 30 countries, including Russia and China. Almost one-third of its sales are overseas.

Product design is critical in the highly competitive pleasure boat business: It is crucial to keep in touch with customers and respond to the market place, as stated by Kuck. "We're introducing six new models this year alone. I'd say we're definitely on the aggressive end of the spectrum."

With changing consumer tastes, compounded by material changes and ever–improving marine engineering, the design function is under constant pressure. Added to these pressures

Barry Render

CAD/CAM is used to design the rain cover of a new product. This process results in faster and more efficient design and production.

Barry Render

Here the deck, suspended from ceiling cranes, is being finished prior to being moved to join the hull. Regal is one of the first boat builders in the world to earn the ISO 9001 quality certification.

Barry Render

Here the finishing touches are being put on a mold used for forming the hull.

Barry Render

Once a hull has been pulled from the mold, it travels down a monorail assembly path. JIT inventory delivers engines, wiring, seats, flooring, and interiors when needed.

is the constant issue of cost competitiveness combined with the need to provide good value for customers.

Consequently, Regal Marine is a frequent user of computer-aided design (CAD). New designs come to life via Regal's three-dimensional CAD system, borrowed from automotive technology. Regal's naval architect's goal is to continue to reduce the time from concept to prototype to production. The sophisticated CAD system not only has reduced product development time and cost, but also has reduced problems with tooling and production, resulting in a superior product.

All of Regal's products, from its $14,000 19-foot boat to the $500,000 52-foot Sports yacht, follow a similar production process. Hulls and decks are separately hand-produced by spraying preformed molds with three to five layers of a fiberglass laminate. The hulls and decks harden and are removed to become the lower and upper structure of the boat. As they move to the assembly line, they are joined and components added at each workstation.

Wooden components, precut in-house by computer-driven routers, are delivered on a just-in-time basis for installation at one station. Engines—one of the few purchased components—are installed at another. Racks of electrical wiring harnesses, engineered and rigged in-house, are then installed. An in-house upholstery department delivers customized seats, beds, dashboards, or other cushioned components. Finally, chrome fixtures are put in place, and the boat is sent to Regal's test tank for watertight, gauge, and system inspection.

Barry Render

At the final stage, smaller boats, such as this one, are placed in this test tank, where a rain machine ensures watertight fits.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO 5.1 ***Define*** product life cycle 202

LO 5.2 ***Describe*** a product development system 204

LO 5.3 ***Build*** a house of quality 205

LO 5.4 ***Explain*** how time-based competition is implemented by OM 211

LO 5.5 ***Describe*** how goods and services are defined by OM 213

LO 5.6 ***Describe*** the documents needed for production 217

LO 5.7 ***Explain*** how the customer participates in the design and delivery of services 218

LO 5.8 ***Apply*** decision trees to product issues 220

Goods and Services Selection

Global firms like Regal Marine know that the basis for an organization's existence is the good or service it provides society. Great products are the keys to success. Anything less than an excellent product strategy can be devastating to a firm. To maximize the potential for success, many companies focus on only a few products and then concentrate on those products. For instance, Honda's focus, its core competency, is engines. Virtually all of Honda's sales (autos, motorcycles, generators, lawn mowers) are based on its outstanding engine technology. Likewise, Intel's focus is on microprocessors, and Michelin's is on tires.

STUDENT TIP Product strategy is critical to achieving competitive advantage.

However, because most products have a limited and even predictable life cycle, companies must constantly be looking for new products to design, develop, and take to market. Operations managers insist on strong communication among customer, product, processes, and suppliers that results in a high success rate for their new products. 3M's goal is to produce 30% of its profit from products introduced in the past 4 years. Apple generates almost 60% of its revenue from products launched in the past 4 years. Benchmarks, of course, vary by industry; Regal introduces six new boats a year, and Rubbermaid introduces a new product each day!

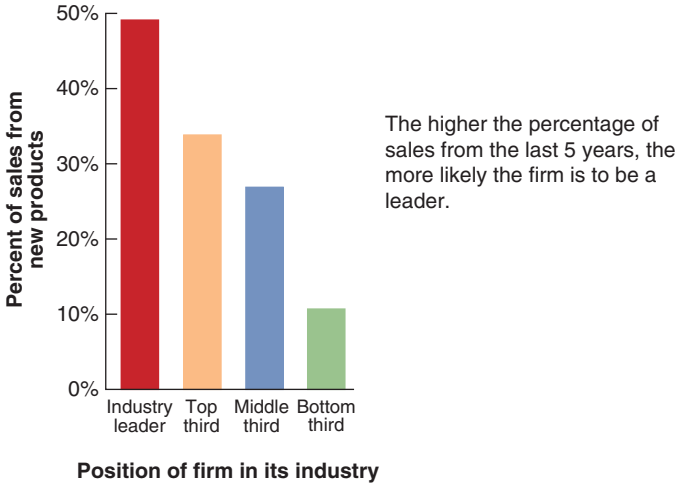
VIDEO 5.1 Product Strategy at Regal Marine

The importance of new products cannot be overestimated. As Figure 5.1 shows, leading companies generate a substantial portion of their sales from products less than 5 years old. The need for new products is why Gillette developed its multiblade razors, in spite of continuing high sales of its phenomenally successful Sensor razor, and why Disney continues to innovate with new rides and new parks even though it is already the world's leading family entertainment company.

Despite constant efforts to introduce viable new products, many new products do not succeed. Product selection, definition, and design occur frequently—perhaps hundreds of times

Figure **5.1**

Innovation and New Products



for each financially successful product. DuPont estimates that it takes 250 ideas to yield one *marketable* product. Operations managers and their organizations build cultures that accept this risk and tolerate failure. They learn to accommodate a high volume of new product ideas while maintaining the production activities to which they are already committed.

STUDENT TIP
Motorola went through 3,000 working models before it developed its first pocket cell phone.

Although the term *products* often refers to tangible goods, it also refers to offerings by service organizations. For instance, when Allstate Insurance offers a new homeowner's policy, it is referred to as a new "product." Similarly, when Citicorp opens a mortgage department, it offers a number of new mortgage "products."

An effective product strategy links product decisions with investment, market share, and product life cycle, and defines the breadth of the product line. The *objective of the* **product decision** *is to develop and implement a product strategy that meets the demands of the marketplace with a competitive advantage*. As one of the 10 decisions of OM, product strategy may focus on developing a competitive advantage via differentiation, low cost, rapid response, or a combination of these.

Product decision
The selection, definition, and design of products.

Product Strategy Options Support Competitive Advantage

A world of options exists in the selection, definition, and design of products. Product selection is choosing the good or service to provide customers or clients. For instance, hospitals specialize in various types of patients and medical procedures. A hospital's management may decide to operate a general-purpose hospital or a maternity hospital or, as in the case of the Canadian hospital Shouldice, to specialize in hernias. Hospitals select their products when they decide what kind of hospital to be. Numerous other options exist for hospitals, just as they exist for Taco Bell and Toyota.

Service organizations like Shouldice Hospital *differentiate* themselves through their product. Shouldice differentiates itself by offering a distinctly unique and high-quality product. Its world-renowned specialization in hernia-repair service is so effective it allows patients to return

Radu Razvan/Shutterstock

(a) Markets: In its creative way, the market has moved athletic shoes from utilitarian footwear into fashionable accessories.

Gang/Fotolia

(b) Technology: Samsung's latest technology: radical new smart phones that are bendable.

Dutch Boy Paints/Sherwin Williams

(c) Packaging: Sherwin-Williams' Dutch Boy has revolutionized the paint industry with its square Twist & Pour paint container.

Product Innovation Can Be Driven By Markets, Technology, and Packaging. Whether it is design focused on changes in the market (a), the application of technology at Samsung (b), or a new container at Sherwin-Williams (c), operations managers need to remind themselves that the creative process is ongoing with major production implications.

to normal living in 8 days as opposed to the average 2 weeks—and with very few complications. The entire production system is designed for this one product. Local anesthetics are used; patients enter and leave the operating room on their own; meals are served in a common dining room, encouraging patients to get out of bed for meals and join fellow patients in the lounge. As Shouldice demonstrates, product selection affects the entire production system.

Taco Bell has developed and executed a *low-cost* strategy through product design. By designing a product (its menu) that can be produced with a minimum of labor in small kitchens, Taco Bell has developed a product line that is both low cost and high value. Successful product design has allowed Taco Bell to increase the food content of its products from 27¢ to 45¢ of each sales dollar.

Toyota's strategy is *rapid response* to changing consumer demand. By executing the fastest automobile design in the industry, Toyota has driven the speed of product development down to well under 2 years in an industry whose standard is still over 2 years. The shorter design time allows Toyota to get a car to market before consumer tastes change and to do so with the latest technology and innovations.

Product decisions are fundamental to an organization's strategy and have major implications throughout the operations function. For instance, GM's steering columns are a good example of the strong role product design plays in both quality and efficiency. The redesigned steering column is simpler, with about 30% fewer parts than its predecessor. The result: Assembly time is one-third that of the older column, and the new column's quality is about seven times higher. As an added bonus, machinery on the new line costs a third less than that on the old line.

Product Life Cycles

Products are born. They live and they die. They are cast aside by a changing society. It may be helpful to think of a product's life as divided into four phases. Those phases are introduction, growth, maturity, and decline.

Product life cycles may be a matter of a few days (a concert t-shirt), months (seasonal fashions), years (Madden NFL football video game), or decades (Boeing 737). Regardless of the length of the cycle, the task for the operations manager is the same: to design a system that helps introduce new products successfully. If the operations function cannot perform effectively at this stage, the firm may be saddled with losers—products that cannot be produced efficiently and perhaps not at all.

LO 5.1 *Define* product life cycle

Figure 5.2 shows the four life cycle stages and the relationship of product sales, cash flow, and profit over the life cycle of a product. Note that typically a firm has a negative cash flow while it develops a product. When the product is successful, those losses may be recovered. Eventually, the successful product may yield a profit prior to its decline. However, the profit is fleeting—hence, the constant demand for new products.

Life Cycle and Strategy

Just as operations managers must be prepared to develop new products, they must also be prepared to develop *strategies* for new and *existing* products. Periodic examination of

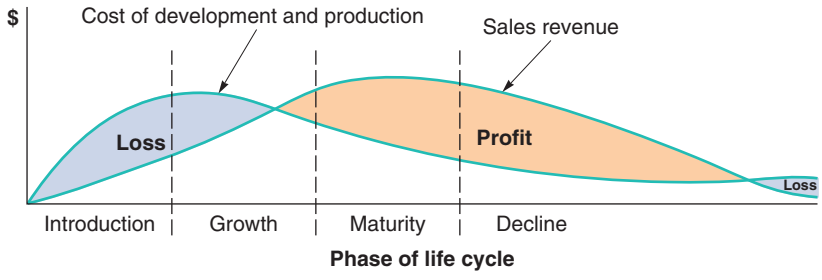


Figure 5.2
Product Life Cycle, Sales, Cost, Profit, and Loss

products is appropriate because *strategies change as products move through their life cycle*. Successful product strategies require determining the best strategy for each product based on its position in its life cycle. A firm, therefore, identifies products or families of products and their position in the life cycle. Let us review some strategy options as products move through their life cycles.

Introductory Phase Because products in the introductory phase are still being "fine-tuned" for the market, as are their production techniques, they may warrant unusual expenditures for (1) research, (2) product development, (3) process modification and enhancement, and (4) supplier development. For example, when the iPhone was first introduced, the features desired by the public were still being determined. At the same time, operations managers were still groping for the best manufacturing techniques.

Growth Phase In the growth phase, product design has begun to stabilize, and effective forecasting of capacity requirements is necessary. Adding capacity or enhancing existing capacity to accommodate the increase in product demand may be necessary.

Maturity Phase By the time a product is mature, competitors are established. So high-volume, innovative production may be appropriate. Improved cost control, reduction in options, and a paring down of the product line may be effective or necessary for profitability and market share.

Decline Phase Management may need to be ruthless with those products whose life cycle is at an end. Dying products are typically poor products in which to invest resources and managerial talent. Unless dying products make some unique contribution to the firm's reputation or its product line or can be sold with an unusually high contribution, their production should be terminated.[1]

Product-by-Value Analysis

The effective operations manager selects items that show the greatest promise. This is the Pareto principle applied to product mix: Resources are to be invested in the critical few and not the trivial many. **Product-by-value analysis** lists products in descending order of their *individual dollar contribution* to the firm. It also lists the *total annual dollar contribution* of the product. Low contribution on a per-unit basis by a particular product may look substantially different if it represents a large portion of the company's sales.

Product-by-value analysis
A list of products, in descending order of their individual dollar contribution to the firm, as well as the *total annual dollar contribution* of the product.

A product-by-value report allows management to evaluate possible strategies for each product. These may include increasing cash flow (e.g., increasing contribution by raising selling price or lowering cost), increasing market penetration (improving quality and/or reducing cost or price), or reducing costs (improving the production process). The report may also tell management which product offerings should be eliminated and which fail to justify further investment in research and development or capital equipment. Product-by-value analysis focuses attention on the strategic direction for each product.

Generating New Products

STUDENT TIP
Societies reward those who supply new products that reflect their needs.

Because products die; because products must be weeded out and replaced; because firms generate most of their revenue and profit from new products—product selection, definition, and design take place on a continuing basis. Consider recent product changes: DVDs to video streaming, coffee shops to Starbucks lifestyle coffee, traveling circuses to Cirque du Soleil, landlines to cell phones, cell phone to smart phones, and an Internet of digital information to an Internet of "things" that connects you and your smart phone to your home, car, and doctor. And the list goes on. Knowing how to successfully find and develop new products is a requirement.

Aggressive new product development requires that organizations build structures internally that have open communication with customers, innovative product development cultures, aggressive R&D, strong leadership, formal incentives, and training. Only then can a firm profitably and energetically focus on specific opportunities such as the following:

1. *Understanding the customer* is the premier issue in new-product development. Many commercially important products are initially thought of and even prototyped by users rather than producers. Such products tend to be developed by "lead users"—companies, organizations, or individuals that are well ahead of market trends and have needs that go far beyond those of average users. The operations manager must be "tuned in" to the market and particularly these innovative lead users.
2. *Economic change* brings increasing levels of affluence in the long run but economic cycles and price changes in the short run. In the long run, for instance, more and more people can afford automobiles, but in the short run, a recession may weaken the demand for automobiles.
3. *Sociological and demographic change* may appear in such factors as decreasing family size. This trend alters the size preference for homes, apartments, and automobiles.
4. *Technological change* makes possible everything from smart phones to iPads to artificial hearts.
5. *Political and legal change* brings about new trade agreements, tariffs, and government requirements.
6. Other changes may be brought about through *market practice, professional standards, suppliers*, and *distributors*.

Operations managers must be aware of these dynamics and be able to anticipate changes in product opportunities, the products themselves, product volume, and product mix.

Product Development

Product Development System

LO 5.2 *Describe* a product development system

An effective product strategy links product decisions with other business functions, such as R&D, engineering, marketing, and finance. A firm requires cash for product development, an understanding of the marketplace, and the necessary human talents. The product development system may well determine not only product success but also the firm's future. Figure 5.3 shows the stages of product development. In this system, product options go through a series of steps, each having its own screening and evaluation criteria, but providing a continuing flow of information to prior steps.

Optimum product development depends not only on support from other parts of the firm but also on the successful integration of all 10 of the OM decisions, from product design to maintenance. Identifying products that appear likely to capture market share, be cost-effective, and be profitable but are, in fact, very difficult to produce may lead to failure rather than success.

Quality function deployment (QFD)
A process for determining customer requirements (customer "wants") and translating them into the attributes (the "hows") that each functional area can understand and act on.

House of quality
A part of the quality function deployment process that utilizes a planning matrix to relate customer "wants" to "how" the firm is going to meet those "wants."

Quality Function Deployment (QFD)

Quality function deployment (QFD) refers to both (1) determining what will satisfy the customer and (2) translating those customer desires into the target design. The idea is to capture a rich understanding of customer wants and to identify alternative process solutions. This information is then integrated into the evolving product design. QFD is used early in the design process to help determine *what will satisfy the customer* and *where to deploy quality efforts*.

One of the tools of QFD is the **house of quality**, a graphic technique for defining the relationship between customer desires and product (or service). Only by defining this relationship in a rigorous way can managers design products and processes with features desired by customers.

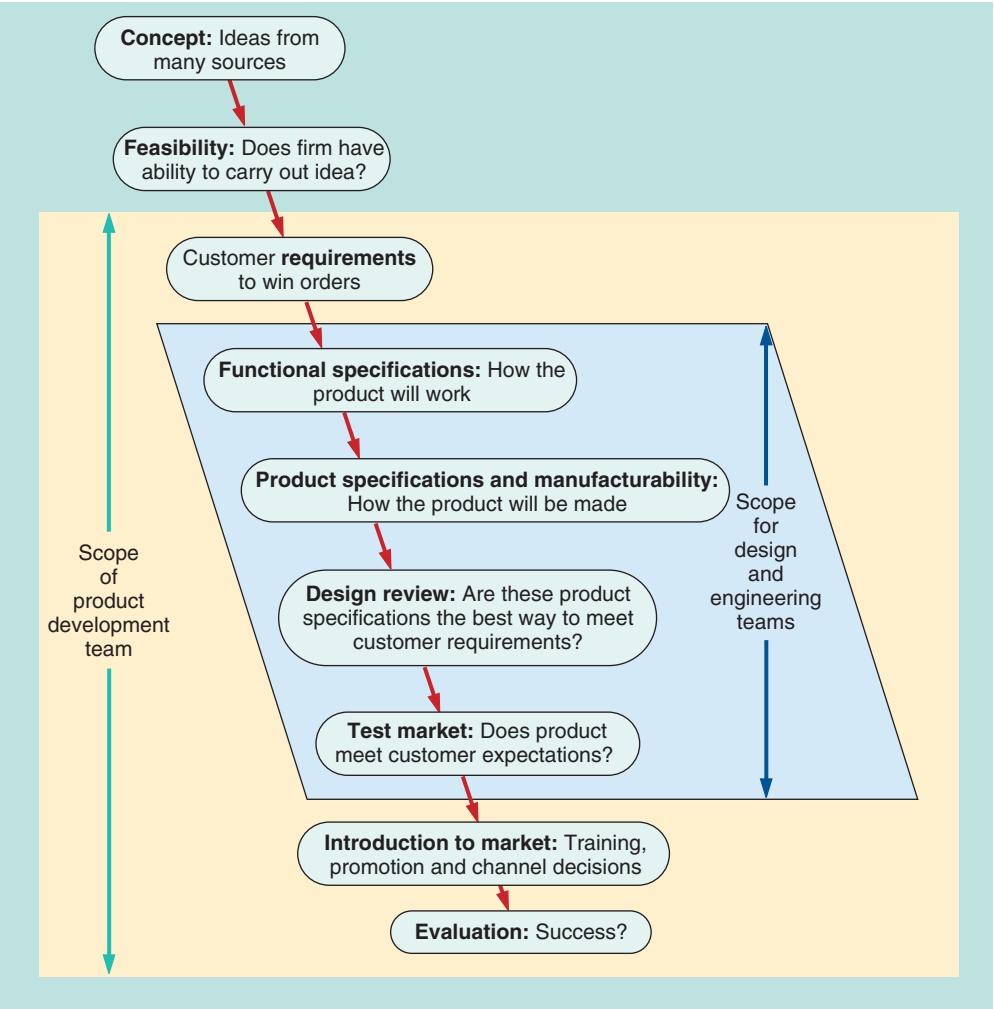


Figure 5.3

Product Development Stages

Product concepts are developed from a variety of sources, both external and internal to the firm. Concepts that survive the product idea stage progress through various stages, with nearly constant review, feedback, and evaluation in a highly participative environment to minimize failure.

Defining this relationship is the first step in building a world-class production system. To build the house of quality, we perform seven basic steps:

1. Identify customer *wants*. (What do customers want in this product?)
2. Identify *how* the good/service will satisfy customer wants. (Identify specific product characteristics, features, or attributes and show how they will satisfy customer *wants*.)
3. Relate customer *wants* to product *hows*. (Build a matrix, as in Example 1, that shows this relationship.)
4. Identify relationships between the firm's *hows*. (How do our *hows* tie together? For instance, in the following example, there is a high relationship between low electricity requirements and auto focus, auto exposure, and number of pixels because they all require electricity. This relationship is shown in the "roof" of the house in Example 1.)
5. Develop importance ratings. (Using the *customer's* importance ratings and weights for the relationships shown in the matrix, compute *our* importance ratings, as in Example 1.)
6. Evaluate competing products. (How well do competing products meet customer wants? Such an evaluation, as shown in the two columns on the right of the figure in Example 1, would be based on market research.)
7. Determine the desirable technical attributes, your performance, and the competitor's performance against these attributes. (This is done at the bottom of the figure in Example 1.)

LO 5.3 *Build* a house of quality

The following series of overlays for Example 1 show how to construct a house of quality.

Example 1

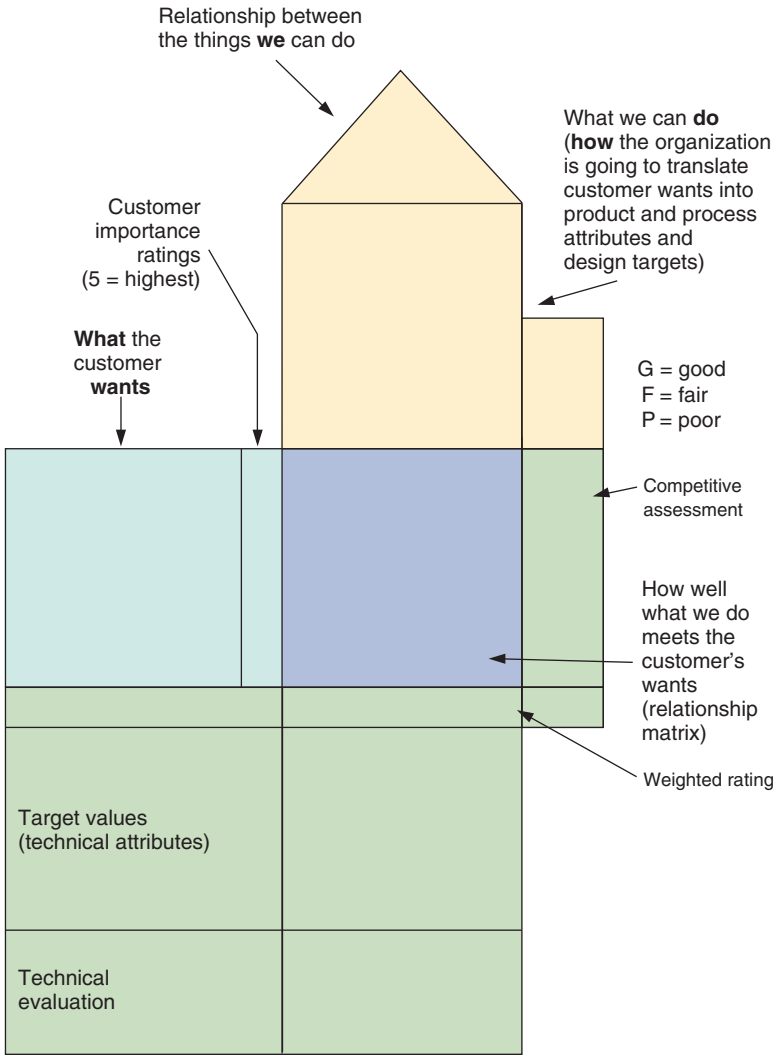
CONSTRUCTING A HOUSE OF QUALITY

Great Cameras, Inc., wants a methodology that strengthens its ability to meet customer desires with its new digital camera.

APPROACH ▶ Use QFD's house of quality.

SOLUTION ▶ Build the house of quality for Great Cameras, Inc. We do so here using Overlays 1, 2, 3, and 4.

Quality Function Deployment's (QFD) House of Quality



INSIGHT ▶ QFD provides an analytical tool that structures design features and technical issues, as well as providing importance rankings and competitor comparison.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the market research for another country indicates that "lightweight" has the most important customer ranking (5), and reliability a 3, what is the new total importance ranking for low electricity requirements, aluminum components, and ergonomic design? [Answer: 18, 15, 27, respectively.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 5.4, 5.5, 5.6, 5.7, 5.8

Another use of quality function deployment (QFD) is to show how the quality effort will be *deployed*. As Figure 5.4 shows, *design characteristics* of House 1 become the inputs to House 2, which are satisfied by *specific components* of the product. Similarly, the concept is carried to House 3, where the specific components are to be satisfied through particular *production processes*. Once those production processes are defined, they become requirements of House 4 to be satisfied by a *quality plan* that will ensure conformance of those processes. The quality plan is a set of specific tolerances, procedures, methods, and sampling techniques that will ensure that the production process meets the customer requirements.

The QFD effort is devoted to meeting customer requirements. The *sequence* of houses is a very effective way of identifying, communicating, and deploying production resources. In this way we produce quality products, meet customer requirements, and win orders.

Organizing for Product Development

Let's look at four approaches to organizing for product development. *First*, the traditional U.S. approach to product development is an organization with distinct departments: a research and development department to do the necessary research; an engineering department to design the product; a manufacturing engineering department to design a product that can be produced; and a production department that produces the product. The distinct advantage of this approach is that fixed duties and responsibilities exist. The distinct disadvantage is lack of forward thinking: How will downstream departments in the process deal with the concepts, ideas, and designs presented to them, and ultimately what will the customer think of the product?

A *second* and popular approach is to assign a product manager to "champion" the product through the product development system and related organizations. However, a *third*, and perhaps the best, product development approach used in the U.S. seems to be the use of teams.

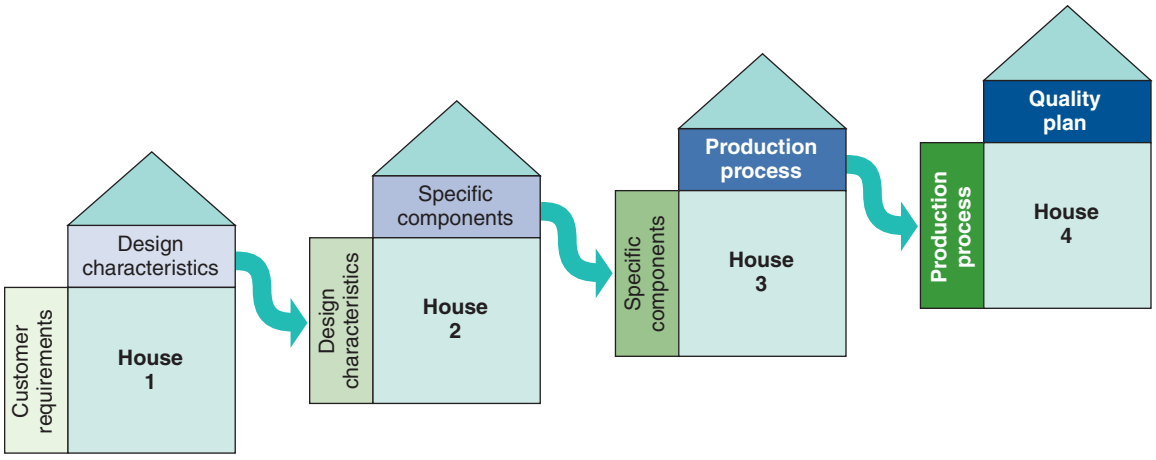


Figure **5.4**

House of Quality Sequence Indicates How to Deploy Resources to Achieve Customer Requirements

Such teams are known variously as *product development teams, design for manufacturability teams*, and *value engineering teams*.

The Japanese use a *fourth* approach. They bypass the team issue by not subdividing organizations into research and development, engineering, production, and so forth. Consistent with the Japanese style of group effort and teamwork, these activities are all in one organization. Japanese culture and management style are more collegial and the organization less structured than in most Western countries. Therefore, the Japanese find it unnecessary to have "teams" provide the necessary communication and coordination. However, the typical Western style, and the conventional wisdom, is to use teams.

Product development teams
Teams charged with moving from market requirements for a product to achieving product success.

Product development teams are charged with the responsibility of moving from market requirements for a product to achieving a product success (refer to Figure 5.3 on page 167). Such teams often include representatives from marketing, manufacturing, purchasing, quality assurance, and field service personnel. Many teams also include representatives from vendors. Regardless of the formal nature of the product development effort, research suggests that success is more likely in an open, highly participative environment where those with potential contributions are allowed to make them. The objective of a product development team is to make the good or service a success. This includes marketability, manufacturability, and serviceability.

Concurrent engineering
Simultaneous performance of the various stages of product development.

Concurrent engineering implies speedier product development through simultaneous performance of the various stages of product development (as we saw earlier in Figure 5.3). Often the concept is expanded to include all elements of a product's life cycle, from customer requirements to disposal and recycling. Concurrent engineering is facilitated by teams representing all affected areas (known as *cross-functional* teams).

Manufacturability and Value Engineering

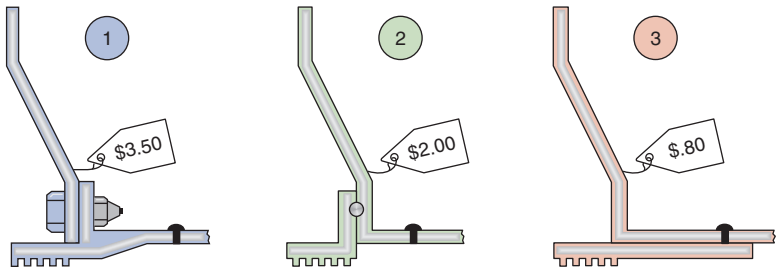
Manufacturability and value engineering
Activities that help improve a product's design, production, maintainability, and use.

Manufacturability and value engineering activities are concerned with improvement of design and specifications at the research, development, design, and preproduction stages of product development. In addition to immediate, obvious cost reduction, design for manufacturability and value engineering may produce other benefits. These include:

1. Reduced complexity of the product.
2. Reduction of environmental impact.
3. Additional standardization of components.
4. Improvement of functional aspects of the product.
5. Improved job design and job safety.
6. Improved maintainability (serviceability) of the product.
7. Robust design.

Manufacturability and value engineering activities may be the best cost-avoidance technique available to operations management. They yield value improvement by focusing on achieving the functional specifications necessary to meet customer requirements in an optimal way. Value engineering programs typically reduce costs between 15% and 70% without reducing quality, with every dollar spent yielding $10 to $25 in savings. The cost reduction achieved for a specific bracket via value engineering is shown in Figure 5.5.

Figure 5.5
Cost Reduction of a Bracket via Value Engineering



STUDENT TIP
Each time the bracket is redesigned and simplified, we are able to produce it for less.

Issues for Product Design

In addition to developing an effective system and organization structure for product development, several considerations are important to the design of a product. We will now review six of these: (1) robust design, (2) modular design, (3) computer-aided design/computer-aided manufacturing (CAD/CAM), (4) virtual reality technology, (5) value analysis, and (6) sustainability/life cycle assessment (LCA).

Robust Design

Robust design means that the product is designed so that small variations in production or assembly do not adversely affect the product. For instance, Lucent developed an integrated circuit that could be used in many products to amplify voice signals. As originally designed, the circuit had to be manufactured very expensively to avoid variations in the strength of the signal. But after testing and analyzing the design, Lucent engineers realized that if the resistance of the circuit was reduced—a minor change with no associated costs—the circuit would be far less sensitive to manufacturing variations. The result was a 40% improvement in quality.

Robust design
A design that can be produced to requirements even with unfavorable conditions in the production process.

Modular Design

Products designed in easily segmented components are known as **modular designs**. Modular designs offer flexibility to both production and marketing. Operations managers find modularity helpful because it makes product development, production, and subsequent changes easier. Marketing may like modularity because it adds flexibility to the ways customers can be satisfied. For instance, virtually all premium high-fidelity sound systems are produced and sold this way. The customization provided by modularity allows customers to mix and match to their own taste. This is also the approach taken by Harley-Davidson, where relatively few different engines, chassis, gas tanks, and suspension systems are mixed to produce a huge variety of motorcycles. It has been estimated that many automobile manufacturers can, by mixing the available modules, never make two cars alike. This same concept of modularity is carried over to many industries, from airframe manufacturers to fast-food restaurants. Airbus uses the same wing modules on several planes, just as McDonald's and Burger King use relatively few modules (cheese, lettuce, buns, sauces, pickles, meat patties, french fries, etc.) to make a variety of meals.

Modular design
A design in which parts or components of a product are subdivided into modules that are easily interchanged or replaced.

Computer-Aided Design (CAD) and Computer-Aided Manufacturing (CAM)

Computer-aided design (CAD) is the use of computers to interactively design products and prepare engineering documentation. CAD uses three-dimensional drawing to save time and money by shortening development cycles for virtually all products (see the 3-D design photo in the Regal Marine Global Company Profile that opens this chapter). The speed and ease with which sophisticated designs can be manipulated, analyzed, and modified with CAD makes review of numerous options possible before final commitments are made. Faster development, better products, and accurate flow of information to other departments all contribute to a tremendous payoff for CAD. The payoff is particularly significant because most product costs are determined at the design stage.

Computer-aided design (CAD)
Interactive use of a computer to develop and document a product.

One extension of CAD is **design for manufacture and assembly (DFMA)** software, which focuses on the effect of design on assembly. For instance, DFMA allows Ford to build new vehicles in a virtual factory where designers examine how to put a transmission in a car on the production line, even while both the transmission and the car are still in the design stage.

Design for manufacture and assembly (DFMA)
Software that allows designers to look at the effect of design on manufacturing of the product.

CAD systems have moved to the Internet through e-commerce, where they link computerized design with purchasing, outsourcing, manufacturing, and long-term maintenance. This move also speeds up design efforts, as staff around the world can work on their unique work schedules. Rapid product change also supports the trend toward "mass customization" and,

when carried to an extreme, allows customers to enter a supplier's design libraries and make changes. The result is faster and less expensive customized products. As product life cycles shorten, designs become more complex, and global collaboration has grown, the European Community (EU) has developed a **standard for the exchange of product data (STEP; ISO 10303)**. STEP permits 3-D product information to be expressed in a standard format so it can be exchanged internationally.

Standard for the exchange of product data (STEP)
A standard that provides a format allowing the electronic transmission of three-dimensional data.

Computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) refers to the use of specialized computer programs to direct and control manufacturing equipment. When CAD information is translated into instructions for CAM, the result of these two technologies is CAD/CAM. The combination is a powerful tool for manufacturing efficiency. Fewer defective units are produced, translating into less rework and lower inventory. More precise scheduling also contributes to less inventory and more efficient use of personnel.

Computer-aided manufacturing (CAM)
The use of information technology to control machinery.

A related extension of CAD is **3-D printing**. This technology is particularly useful for prototype development and small lot production (as shown in the photo above). 3-D printing speeds development by avoiding a more lengthy and formal manufacturing process, as we see in the *OM in Action* box "3-D Printers Hit the Mainstream."

3-D printing
An extension of CAD that builds prototypes and small lots.

Virtual Reality Technology

Virtual reality is a visual form of communication in which images substitute for the real thing but still allow the user to respond interactively. The roots of virtual reality technology in operations are in CAD. Once design information is in a CAD system, it is also in electronic digital form for other uses, such as developing 3-D layouts of everything from retail stores and restaurant layouts to amusement parks. Procter & Gamble, for instance, builds walk-in virtual

Virtual reality
A visual form of communication in which images substitute for reality and typically allow the user to respond interactively.

OM in Action 3-D Printers Hit the Mainstream

3-D printers are revolutionizing the product design process. With instructions from 3-D CAD models, these printers "build" products by laying down successive thin layers of plastic, metal, glass, or ceramics. Indeed, for many firms, 3-D printers have become indispensable.

The medical field uses the machines to make custom hearing aids. Invisalign Corp. produces individualized braces for teeth. Architects use the technology to produce models of buildings, and consumer electronics companies build prototypes of their latest gadgets. Microsoft uses 3-D printers to help design computer mouse devices and keyboards, while Mercedes, Honda, Boeing, and Lockheed Martin use them to fashion prototypes and to make parts that go into final products. Eventually, "a person who buys a BMW will want a part of the car with their name on it or to customize the seats to the contours of their bodies," says 3-D Systems's CEO. And currently 3-D printing at Hershey's Chocolate World attraction means customers can order their likeness or wedding cake decoration in chocolate.

The cost of 3-D printing continues to drop. Now anyone can buy a 3-D printer, hook it up to a Wi-Fi network, and begin downloading files that will turn into real objects. Another beauty and value of 3-D printing is that it has the power to unleash a world of creative energy: People who previously only thought about an invention or improved product can now quickly make it real.

Sources: Advertising Age (January 28, 2015); *BusinessWeek* (April 30, 2012); and *The Wall Street Journal* (July 16, 2011).

stores to rapidly generate and test ideas. Changes to mechanical design, layouts, and even amusement park rides are much less expensive at the design stage than they are later.

Value Analysis

Although value engineering (discussed on page 170) focuses on *preproduction* design and manufacturing issues, value analysis, a related technique, takes place *during* the production process, when it is clear that a new product is a success. **Value analysis** seeks improvements that lead to either a better product, or a product made more economically, or a product with less environmental impact. The techniques and advantages for value analysis are the same as for value engineering, although minor changes in implementation may be necessary because value analysis is taking place while the product is being produced.

Value analysis
A review of successful products that takes place during the production process.

Sustainability and Life Cycle Assessment (LCA)

Product design requires that managers evaluate product options. Addressing sustainability and life cycle assessment (LCA) are two ways of doing this. *Sustainability* means meeting the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their needs. An LCA is a formal evaluation of the environmental impact of a product. Both sustainability and LCA are discussed in depth in the supplement to this chapter.

Product Development Continuum

STUDENT TIP
Fast communication, rapid technological change, and short product life cycles push product development.

As product life cycles shorten, the need for faster product development increases. And as technological sophistication of new products increases, so do the expense and risk. For instance, drug firms invest an average of 12 to 15 years and $1 billion before receiving regulatory approval for a new drug. And even then, only 1 of 5 will actually be a success. Those operations managers who master this art of product development continually gain on slower product developers. To the swift goes the competitive advantage. This concept is called **time-based competition**.

Time-based competition
Competition based on time; rapidly developing products and moving them to market.

Often, the first company into production may have its product adopted for use in a variety of applications that will generate sales for years. It may become the "standard." Consequently, there is often more concern with getting the product to market than with optimum product design or process efficiency. Even so, rapid introduction to the market may be good management because until competition begins to introduce copies or improved versions, the product can sometimes be priced high enough to justify somewhat inefficient production design and methods.

LO 5.4 *Explain* how time-based competition is implemented by OM

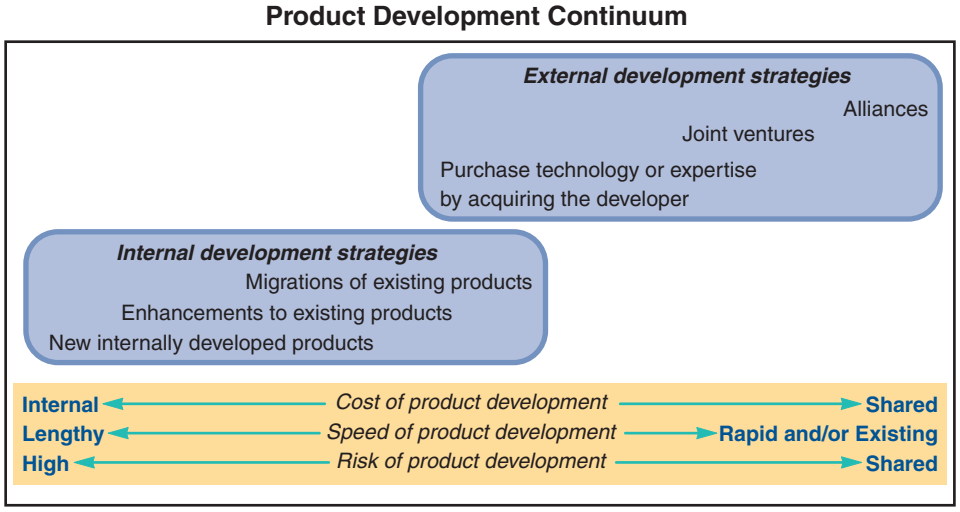
Because time-based competition is so important, instead of developing new products from scratch (which has been the focus thus far in this chapter), a number of other strategies can be used. Figure 5.6 shows a continuum that goes from new, internally developed products (on the lower left) to "alliances." *Enhancements* and *migrations* use the organization's existing product strengths for innovation and therefore are typically faster while at the same time being less risky than developing entirely new products.

Enhancements may be changes in color, size, weight, taste, or features, such as are taking place in fast-food menu items (see the *OM in Action* box "Product Development at Lego" on the next page), or even changes in commercial aircraft. Boeing's enhancements of the 737 since its introduction in 1967 has made the 737 the largest-selling commercial aircraft in history.

Boeing also uses its engineering prowess in air frames to *migrate* from one model to the next. This allows Boeing to speed development while reducing both cost and risk for new designs. This approach is also referred to as building on *product platforms*. Similarly, Volkswagen is using a versatile automobile platform (the MQB chassis) for small to midsize front-wheel-drive cars. This includes VW's Polo, Golf, Passat, Tiguan, and Skoda Octavia, and it may eventually include 44 different vehicles. The advantages are downward pressure on cost as well as faster development. Hewlett-Packard has done the same in the printer business. Enhancements and platform migrations are a way of building on existing expertise, speeding product development, and extending a product's life cycle.

The product development strategies on the lower left of Figure 5.6 are *internal* development strategies, while the three approaches we now introduce can be thought of as *external*

Figure 5.6
Product Development Continuum



STUDENT TIP

Managers seek a variety of approaches to obtain speed to market. As the president of one U.S. firm said: "If I miss one product cycle, I'm dead."

development strategies. Firms use both. The external strategies are (1) purchase the technology, (2) establish joint ventures, and (3) develop alliances.

Purchasing Technology by Acquiring a Firm

Microsoft and Cisco Systems are examples of companies on the cutting edge of technology that often speed development by *acquiring entrepreneurial firms* that have already developed the technology that fits their mission. The issue then becomes fitting the purchased organization, its technology, its product lines, and its culture into the buying firm, rather than a product development issue.

Joint ventures
Firms establishing joint ownership to pursue new products or markets.

Joint Ventures

In an effort to reduce the weight of new cars, GM is in a joint venture with Tokyo-based Teijin Ltd. to bring lightweight carbon fiber to GM's customers. Joint ventures such as this are

OM in Action Product Development at Lego

Companies such as Lego are dependent upon having a steady base of products combined with at more trend-based portfolio of products. The steady base of products has been refined through decades, and has by now achieved a market de facto standard within edutainment for kids.

When developing new cutting edge products, Lego are in deep dialogue with their customers, even co-creating products. The MD Jørgen Vig Knudstorp even argues that their loyal user bases should direct Lego in regards of future products.

Lego has integrated co-creation as an integral part of their product development processes, and they have made formal platforms to handle the processes.

An example of how Lego thoroughly has been working with their community is "The Lego Movie," which is based upon more than 100 video clips sent to Lego from loyal Lego fans. Several of these videos had ideas that were integrated into the film.

Another example is the platform www.rebrick.lego.com, where users can upload and rate potential new products. At the platform the users are able to upload pictures, discuss them, and finally rate them. On that base Lego is able to find out which directions the community's interests develops.

When Lego has to decide which products and ideas they should select, there are a number of criteria. Firstly, it needs to align with Lego values. It needs to be a good business case, we need to have the bricks for it, because believe it or not, we don't have indefinite bricks. It also needs to fit our current product portfolio and it needs to be a good build. If it's not a good experience, it doesn't work.

Jonathan Leibson/Getty Images

Taco Bell's New Waffle Taco

Try to make a search at YouTube for "Lego co-creation," and see all the various contributions from their user community.

Sources: Stralfors (October 30, 2015), *The Guardian* (November 15, 2015), YouTube (October 15, 2015).

combined ownership, usually between just two firms, to form a new entity. Ownership can be 50–50, or one owner can assume a larger portion to ensure tighter control. Joint ventures are often appropriate for exploiting specific product opportunities that may not be central to the firm's mission. Such ventures are more likely to work when the risks are known and can be equitably shared.

Alliances

When new products are central to the mission, but substantial resources are required and sizable risk is present, then alliances may be a good strategy for product development. **Alliances** are cooperative agreements that allow firms to remain independent but use complementing strengths to pursue strategies consistent with their individual missions. Alliances are particularly beneficial when the products to be developed also have technologies that are in ferment. For example, Microsoft is pursuing alliances with a variety of companies to deal with the convergence of computing, the Internet, and television broadcasting. Alliances in this case are appropriate because the technological unknowns, capital demands, and risks are significant. Similarly, three firms, Mercedes-Benz, Ford Motor, and Ballard Power Systems, have formed an alliance to develop "green" cars powered by fuel cells. Alliances are much more difficult to achieve and maintain than joint ventures because of the ambiguities associated with them. It may be helpful to think of an alliance as an incomplete contract between the firms. The firms remain separate.

Alliances
Cooperative agreements that allow firms to remain independent, but pursue strategies consistent with their individual missions.

Enhancements, migration, acquisitions, joint ventures, and alliances are all strategies for speeding product development. Moreover, they typically reduce the risk associated with product development while enhancing the human and capital resources available.

Defining a Product

STUDENT TIP
Before anything can be produced, a product's functions and attributes must be defined.

Once new goods or services are selected for introduction, they must be defined. First, a good or service is defined in terms of its *functions*—that is, what it is to *do*. The product is then designed, and the firm determines how the functions are to be achieved. Management typically has a variety of options as to how a product should achieve its functional purpose. For instance, when an alarm clock is produced, aspects of design such as the color, size, or location of buttons may make substantial differences in ease of manufacture, quality, and market acceptance.

LO 5.5 *Describe* how products and services are defined by OM

Rigorous specifications of a product are necessary to ensure efficient production. Equipment, layout, and human resources cannot be determined until the product is defined, designed, and documented. Therefore, every organization needs documents to define its products. This is true of everything from meat patties, to cheese, to computers, to a medical procedure. In the case of cheese, a written specification is typical. Indeed, written specifications or standard grades exist and provide the definition for many products. For instance, Monterey Jack cheese has a written description that specifies the characteristics necessary for each Department of Agriculture grade. A portion of the Department of Agriculture grade for Monterey Jack Grade AA is shown in Figure 5.7. Similarly, McDonald's Corp. has 60 specifications for potatoes that are to be made into french fries.

Most manufactured items, as well as their components, are defined by a drawing, usually referred to as an engineering drawing. An **engineering drawing** shows the dimensions, tolerances, materials, and finishes of a component. The engineering drawing will be an item on a bill of material. An engineering drawing is shown in Figure 5.8. The **bill of material (BOM)** lists the hierarchy of components, their description, and the quantity of each required to make one unit of a product. A bill of material for a manufactured item is shown in Figure 5.9(a). Note that subassemblies and components (lower-level items) are indented at each level to indicate their subordinate position. An engineering drawing shows how to make one item on the bill of material.

Engineering drawing
A drawing that shows the dimensions, tolerances, materials, and finishes of a component.

Bill of material (BOM)
A list of the hierarchy of components, their description, and the quantity of each required to make one unit of a product.

Figure 5.7

Monterey Jack

A portion of the general requirements for the U.S. grades of Monterey Jack cheese is shown here.

Source: Based on 58.2469 Specifications for U.S. grades of Monterey (Monterey Jack) cheese, (May 10, 1996).

§ 58.2469 Specifications for U.S. grades of Monterey (Monterey Jack) cheese

(a) *U.S. grade AA.* Monterey Cheese shall conform to the following requirements:

(1) *Flavor.* Is fine and highly pleasing, free from undesirable flavors and odors. May possess a very slight acid or feed flavor.

(2) *Body and texture.* A plug drawn from the cheese shall be reasonably firm. It shall have numerous small mechanical openings evenly distributed throughout the plug. It shall not possess sweet holes, yeast holes, or other gas holes.

(3) *Color.* Shall have a natural, uniform, bright, attractive appearance.

(4) *Finish and appearance—bandaged and paraffin-dipped.* The rind shall be sound, firm, and smooth, providing a good protection to the cheese.

Code of Federal Regulation, Parts 53 to 109, General Service Administration.

David Murray/Dorling Kindersley, Ltd.

In the food-service industry, bills of material manifest themselves in *portion-control standards*. The portion-control standard for Hard Rock Cafe's hickory BBQ bacon cheeseburger is shown in Figure 5.9(b). In a more complex product, a bill of material is referenced on other bills of material of which they are a part. In this manner, subunits (subassemblies) are part of the next higher unit (their parent bill of material) that ultimately makes a final product. In addition to being defined by written specifications, portion-control documents, or bills of material, products can be defined in other ways. For example, products such as chemicals, paints, and petroleums may be defined by formulas or proportions that describe how they are to be made. Movies are defined by scripts, and insurance coverage by legal documents known as policies.

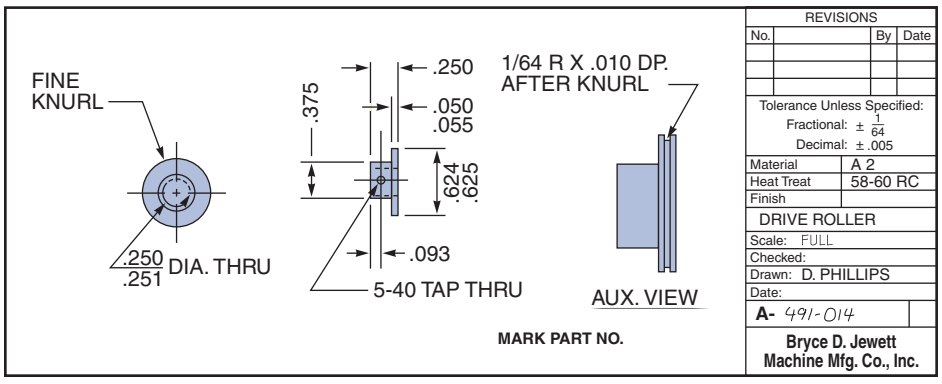
Make-or-Buy Decisions

Make-or-buy decision
The choice between producing a component or a service and purchasing it from an outside source.

For many components of products, firms have the option of producing the components themselves or purchasing them from outside sources. Choosing between these options is known as the make-or-buy decision. The **make-or-buy decision** distinguishes between what the firm wants to *produce* and what it wants to *purchase*. Because of variations in quality, cost, and delivery schedules, the make-or-buy decision is critical to product definition. Many items can be purchased as a "standard item" produced by someone else. Examples are the standard bolts listed twice on the bill of material shown in Figure 5.9(a), for which there will be SAE (Society

Figure 5.8

Engineering Drawings Such as This One Show Dimensions, Tolerances, Materials, and Finishes



(a) Bill of Material for a Panel Weldment

NUMBER	DESCRIPTION	QTY
A 60-71	PANEL WELDM'T	1
A 60-7	LOWER ROLLER ASSM.	1
R 60-17	ROLLER	1
R 60-428	PIN	1
P 60-2	LOCKNUT	1
A 60-72	GUIDE ASSM. REAR	1
R 60-57-1	SUPPORT ANGLE	1
A 60-4	ROLLER ASSEM.	1
02-50-1150	BOLT	1
A 60-73	GUIDE ASSM. FRONT	1
A 60-74	SUPPORT WELDM'T	1
R 60-99	WEAR PLATE	1
02-50-1150	BOLT	1

(b) Hard Rock Cafe's Hickory BBQ Bacon Cheeseburger

DESCRIPTION	QTY
Bun	1
Hamburger patty	8 oz.
Cheddar cheese	2 slices
Bacon	2 strips
BBQ onions	1/2 cup
Hickory BBQ sauce	1 oz.
Burger set	
Lettuce	1 leaf
Tomato	1 slice
Red onion	4 rings
Pickle	1 slice
French fries	5 oz.
Seasoned salt	1 tsp.
11-inch plate	1
HRC flag	1

Figure 5.9

Bills of Material Take Different Forms in a (a) Manufacturing Plant and (b) Restaurant, but in Both Cases, the Product Must Be Defined

STUDENT TIP

Hard Rock's recipe here serves the same purpose as a bill of material in a factory: It defines the product for production.

of Automotive Engineers) specifications. Therefore, there typically is no need for the firm to duplicate this specification in another document.

Group Technology

Engineering drawings may also include codes to facilitate group technology. **Group technology** identifies components by a coding scheme that specifies size, shape, and the type of processing (such as drilling). This facilitates standardization of materials, components, and processes as well as the identification of families of parts. As families of parts are identified, activities and machines can be grouped to minimize setups, routings, and material handling. An example of how families of parts may be grouped is shown in Figure 5.10. Group technology provides a systematic way to review a family of components to see if an existing component might suffice on a new project. Using existing or standard components eliminates all the costs connected with the design and development of the new part, which is a major cost reduction.

Group technology

A product and component coding system that specifies the size, shape, and type of processing; it allows similar products to be grouped.

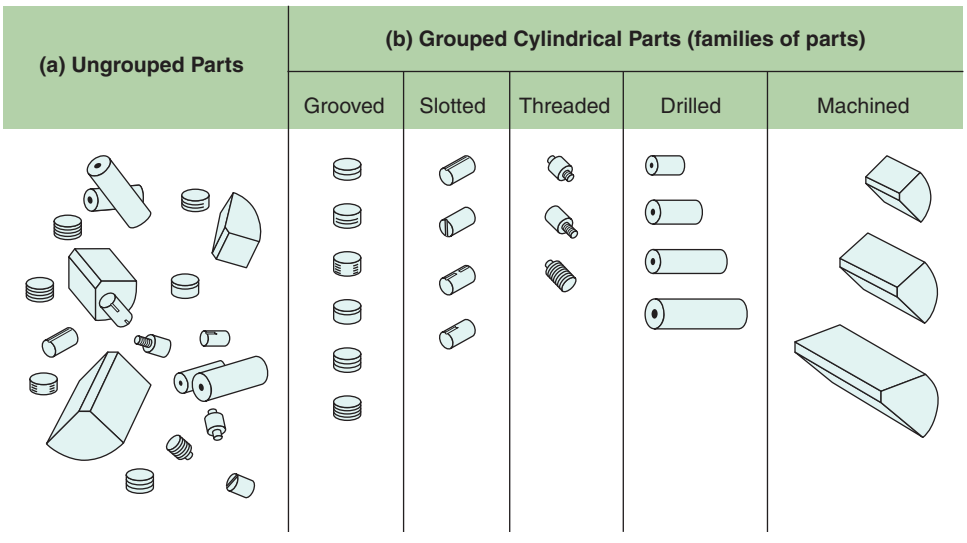


Figure 5.10

A Variety of Group Technology Coding Schemes Move Manufactured Components from (a) Ungrouped to (b) Grouped (families of parts)

STUDENT TIP Production personnel need clear, specific documents to help them make the product.

Documents for Production

Once a product is selected, designed, and ready for production, production is assisted by a variety of documents. We will briefly review some of these.

Assembly drawing
An exploded view of the product.

An **assembly drawing** simply shows an exploded view of the product. An assembly drawing is usually a three-dimensional drawing, known as an *isometric drawing*; the relative locations of components are drawn in relation to each other to show how to assemble the unit [see Figure 5.11(a)].

Assembly chart
A graphic means of identifying how components flow into subassemblies and final products.

The **assembly chart** shows in schematic form how a product is assembled. Manufactured components, purchased components, or a combination of both may be shown on an assembly chart. The assembly chart identifies the point of production at which components flow into subassemblies and ultimately into a final product. An example of an assembly chart is shown in Figure 5.11(b).

Route sheet
A listing of the operations necessary to produce a component with the material specified in the bill of material.

The **route sheet** lists the operations necessary to produce the component with the material specified in the bill of material. The route sheet for an item will have one entry for each operation to be performed on the item. When route sheets include specific methods of operation and labor standards, they are often known as *process sheets*.

Work order
An instruction to make a given quantity of a particular item.

The **work order** is an instruction to make a given quantity of a particular item, usually to a given schedule. The ticket that a waiter writes in your favorite restaurant is a work order. In a hospital or factory, the work order is a more formal document that provides authorization to draw items from inventory, to perform various functions, and to assign personnel to perform those functions.

Engineering change notice (ECN)
A correction or modification of an engineering drawing or bill of material.

Engineering change notices (ECNs) change some aspect of the product's definition or documentation, such as an engineering drawing or a bill of material. For a complex product that has a long manufacturing cycle, such as a Boeing 777, the changes may be so numerous that no two 777s are built exactly alike—which is indeed the case. Such dynamic design change has fostered the development of a discipline known as configuration management, which is concerned with product identification, control, and documentation. **Configuration management** is the system by which a product's planned and changing configurations are accurately identified and for which control and accountability of change are maintained.

Configuration management
A system by which a product's planned and changing components are accurately identified.

Product life-cycle management (PLM)
Software programs that tie together many phases of product design and manufacture.

Product Life-Cycle Management (PLM)

Product life-cycle management (PLM) is an umbrella of software programs that attempts to bring together phases of product design and manufacture—including tying together many of

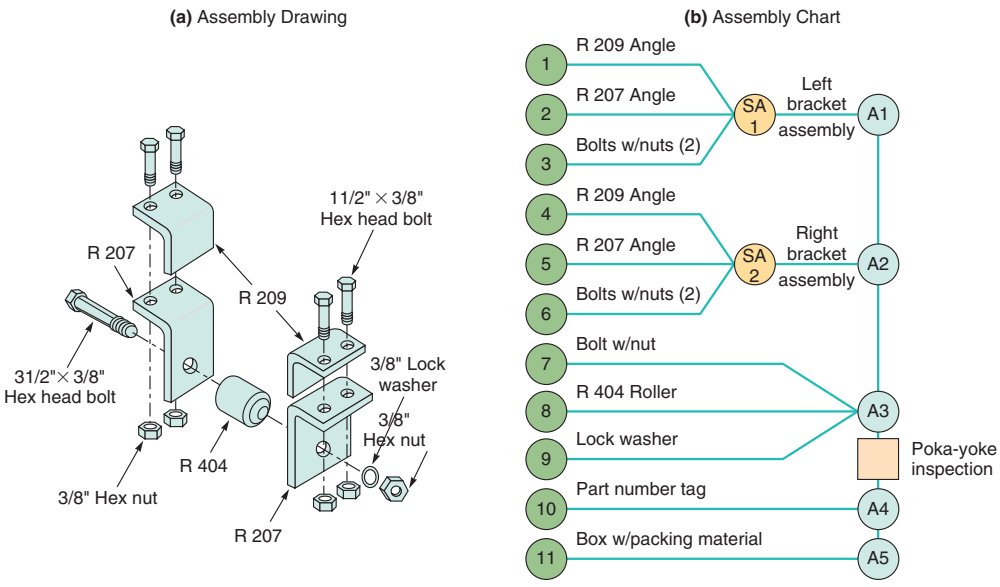


Figure **5.11**

Assembly Drawing and Assembly Chart

Source: Assembly drawing and assembly chart produced by author.

J.R. Simplot Company

J.R. Simplot Company

Each year the JR Simplot potato-processing facility in Caldwell, Idaho, produces billions of french fries for quick-service restaurant chains and many other customers, both domestically and overseas (left photo). Sixty specifications (including a special blend of frying oil, a unique steaming process, and exact time and temperature for prefrying and drying) define how these potatoes become french fries. Further, 40% of all french fries must be 2 to 3 inches long, 40% must be over 3 inches long, and a few stubby ones constitute the final 20%. Quality control personnel use a micrometer to measure the fries (right photo).

the techniques discussed in the prior two sections, *Defining a Product* and *Documents for Production*. The idea behind PLM software is that product design and manufacture decisions can be performed more creatively, faster, and more economically when the data are integrated and consistent.

LO 5.6 *Describe* the documents needed for production

Although there is not one standard, PLM products often start with product design (CAD/CAM); move on to design for manufacture and assembly (DFMA); and then into product routing, materials, layout, assembly, maintenance, and even environmental issues. Integration of these tasks makes sense because many of these decision areas require overlapping pieces of data. PLM software is now a tool of many large organizations, including Lockheed Martin, GE, Procter & Gamble, Toyota, and Boeing. Boeing estimates that PLM will cut final assembly of its 787 jet from 2 weeks to 3 days. PLM is now finding its way into medium and small manufacture as well.

Shorter life cycles, more technologically challenging products, more regulations regarding materials and manufacturing processes, and more environmental issues all make PLM an appealing tool for operations managers. Major vendors of PLM software include SAP PLM (www.mySAP.com), Parametric Technology Corp. (www.ptc.com), Siemens (www.plm.automation.siemens.com), and Proplanner (www.proplanner.com).

Service Design

STUDENT TIP
Services also need to be defined and documented.

Much of our discussion so far has focused on what we can call tangible products—that is, goods. On the other side of the product coin are, of course, services. Service industries include banking, finance, insurance, transportation, and communications. The products offered by service firms range from a medical procedure that leaves only the tiniest scar after an appendectomy, to a shampoo and cut at a hair salon, to a great sandwich. Designing services is challenging because they have a unique characteristic—customer interaction.

Process–Chain–Network (PCN) Analysis

Process–chain–network (PCN) analysis
Analysis that focuses on the ways in which processes can be designed to optimize interaction between firms and their customers.

Process–chain–network (PCN) analysis, developed by Professor Scott Sampson, focuses on the ways in which processes can be designed to optimize interaction between firms and

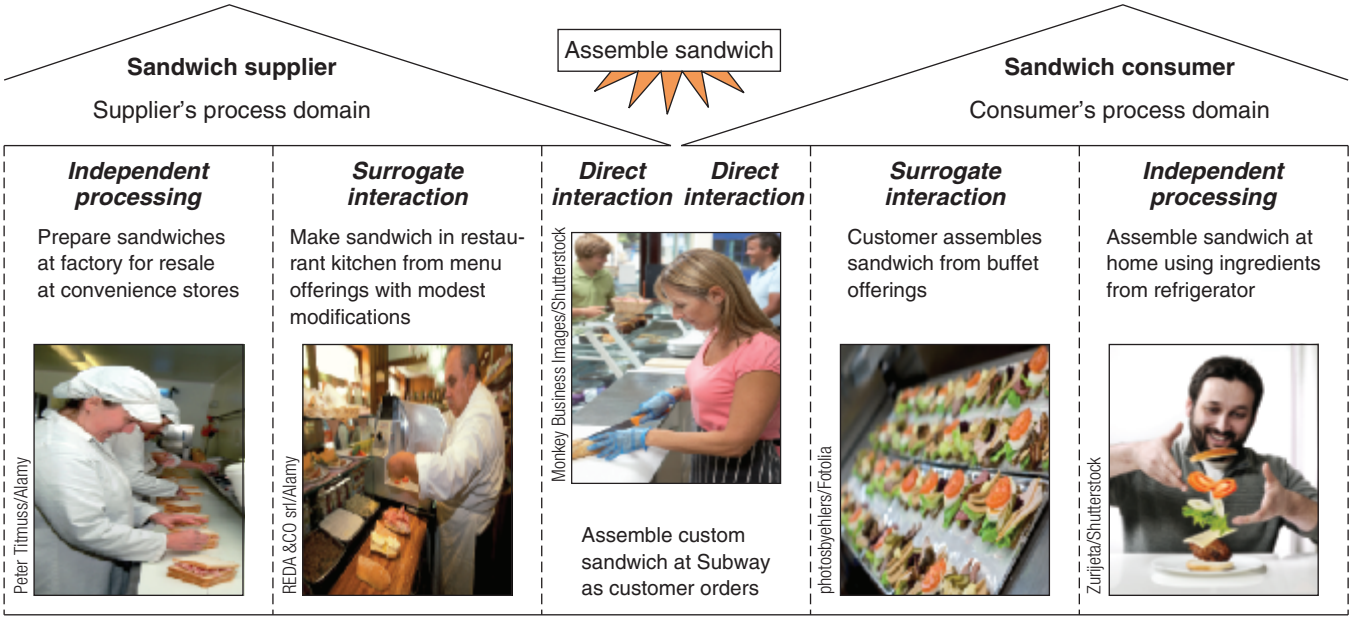


Figure **5.12**

Customer Interaction Is a Strategic Choice

Process chain
A sequence of steps that accomplishes an identifiable purpose (of providing value to process participants).

their customers.[2] A **process chain** is a sequence of steps that accomplishes an activity, such as building a home, completing a tax return, or preparing a sandwich. A process participant can be a manufacturer, a service provider, or a customer. A network is a set of participants.

Each participant has a *process domain* that includes the set of activities over which it has control. The domain and interactions between two participants for sandwich preparation are shown in the PCN diagram (Figure 5.12). The activities are organized into three *process regions* for each participant:

1. The *direct interaction* region includes process steps that involve interaction between participants. For example, a sandwich buyer directly interacts with employees of a sandwich store (e.g., Subway, in the middle of Figure 5.12).
2. The *surrogate (substitute) interaction* region includes process steps in which one participant is acting on another participant's resources, such as their information, materials, or technologies. This occurs when the sandwich *supplier* is making sandwiches in the restaurant kitchen (left side of Figure 5.12) or, alternately, when the *customer* has access to buffet ingredients and assembles the sandwich himself (right side of the figure). Under surrogate interaction, *direct* interaction is limited.
3. The *independent processing* region includes steps in which the sandwich supplier and/or the sandwich customer is acting on resources where each has maximum control. Most make-to-stock production fits in this region (left side of Figure 5.12; think of the firm that assembles all those prepackaged sandwiches available in vending machines and convenience stores). Similarly, those sandwiches built at home occur to the right, in the customer's independent processing domain.

LO 5.7 *Explain* how the customer participates in the design and delivery of services

All three process regions have similar operating issues—quality control, facility location and layout, job design, inventory, and so on—but the appropriate way of handling the issues differs across regions. Service operations exist only within the area of *direct* and *surrogate interaction*.

From the operations manager's perspective, the valuable aspect of PCN analysis is insight to aid in positioning and designing processes that can achieve strategic objectives. A firm's operations are strategic in that they can define what type of business the firm is in and what value proposition it desires to provide to customers. For example, a firm may assume a low-cost strategy, operating on the left of Figure 5.12 as a manufacturer of premade sandwiches. Other firms (e.g., Subway) adopt a differentiation strategy with high customer interaction. Each of the process regions depicts a unique operational strategy.

Firms wanting to achieve high economies of scale or more control in their operations should probably position toward the independent processing region of their process domain. Firms intending to provide a value offering that focuses on customization should be positioned more toward the consumer's process domain. PCN analysis can be applied in a wide variety of business settings.

Adding Service Efficiency

Service productivity is notoriously low, in part because of customer involvement in the *design* or *delivery* of the service, or both. This complicates the product design challenge. We will now discuss a number of ways to increase service efficiency and, among these, several ways to limit this interaction.

Limit the Options Because customers may participate in the *design* of the service (e.g., for a funeral or a hairstyle), design specifications may take the form of everything from a menu (in a restaurant), to a list of options (for a funeral), to a verbal description (a hairstyle). However, by providing a list of options (in the case of the funeral) or a series of photographs (in the case of the hairstyle), ambiguity may be reduced. An early resolution of the product's definition can aid efficiency as well as aid in meeting customer expectations.

Delay Customization Design the product so that *customization is delayed* as late in the process as possible. This is the way a hair salon operates. Although shampoo and condition are done in a standard way with lower-cost labor, the color and styling (customizing) are done last. It is also the way most restaurants operate: How would you like that cooked? Which dressing would you prefer with your salad?

Modularization *Modularize* the service so that customization takes the form of changing modules. This strategy allows for "custom" services to be designed as standard modular entities. Just as modular design allows you to buy a high-fidelity sound system with just the features you want, modular flexibility also lets you buy meals, clothes, and insurance on a mix-and-match (modular) basis. Investments (portfolios of stocks and bonds) and education (college curricula) are examples of how the modular approach can be used to customize a service.

Automation Divide the service into small parts, and identify those parts that lend themselves to automation. For instance, by isolating check-cashing activity via ATM, banks have been very effective at designing a product that both increases customer service and reduces costs. Similarly, airlines have moved to ticketless service via kiosks. A technique such as kiosks reduces both costs and lines at airports—thereby increasing customer satisfaction—and providing a win–win "product" design.

Moment of Truth High customer interaction means that in the service industry there is a *moment of truth* when the relationship between the provider and the customer is crucial. At that moment, the customer's satisfaction with the service is defined. The moment of truth is the moment that exemplifies, enhances, or detracts from the customer's expectations. That moment may be as simple as a smile from a Starbucks barista or having the checkout clerk focus on you rather than talking over his shoulder to the clerk at the next counter. Moments of truth can occur when you order at McDonald's, get a haircut, or register for college courses. The operations manager's task is to identify moments of truth and design operations that meet or exceed the customer's expectations.

Documents for Services

Because of the high customer interaction of most services, the documents for moving the product to production often take the form of explicit *job instructions* or *script*. For instance, regardless of how good a bank's products may be in terms of checking, savings, trusts, loans, mortgages, and so forth, if the interaction between participants is not done well, the product may be poorly received. Example 2 shows the kind of documentation a bank may use to move

a product (drive-up window banking) to "production." Similarly, a telemarketing service has the product design communicated to production personnel in the form of a *telephone script*, while a *manuscript* is used for books, and a *storyboard* is used for movie and TV production.

Example 2

SERVICE DOCUMENTATION FOR PRODUCTION

First Bank Corp. wants to ensure effective delivery of service to its drive-up customers.

APPROACH ▶ Develop a "production" document for the tellers at the drive-up window that provides the information necessary to do an effective job.

SOLUTION ▶

Documentation for Tellers at Drive-up Windows

Customers who use the drive-up teller windows rather than walk-in lobbies require a different customer relations technique. The distance and machinery between the teller and the customer raises communication barriers. Guidelines to ensure good customer relations at the drive-up window are:

- Be especially discreet when talking to the customer through the microphone.
- Provide written instructions for customers who must fill out forms you provide.
- Mark lines to be completed or attach a note with instructions.
- Always say "please" and "thank you" when speaking through the microphone.
- Establish eye contact with the customer if the distance allows it.
- If a transaction requires that the customer park the car and come into the lobby, apologize for the inconvenience.

Source: Adapted with permission from *Teller Operations* (Chicago, IL: The Institute of Financial Education, 1999): 32.

INSIGHT ▶ By providing documentation in the form of a script/guideline for tellers, the likelihood of effective communication and a good product/service is improved.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Modify the guidelines above to show how they would be different for a drive-through restaurant. [Answer: Written instructions, marking lines to be completed, or coming into the store are seldom necessary, but techniques for making change and proper transfer of the order should be included.]

RELATED PROBLEM ▶ 5.11

Application of Decision Trees to Product Design

STUDENT TIP A decision tree is a great tool for thinking through a problem.

Decision trees can be used for new-product decisions as well as for a wide variety of other management problems when uncertainty is present. They are particularly helpful when there are a series of decisions and various outcomes that lead to *subsequent* decisions followed by other outcomes. To form a decision tree, we use the following procedure:

LO 5.8 *Apply* decision trees to product issues

1. Be sure that all possible alternatives and states of nature (beginning on the left and moving right) are included in the tree. This includes an alternative of "doing nothing."
2. Payoffs are entered at the end of the appropriate branch. This is the place to develop the payoff of achieving this branch.
3. The objective is to determine the expected monetary value (EMV) of each course of action. We accomplish this by starting at the end of the tree (the right-hand side) and working toward the beginning of the tree (the left), calculating values at each step and "pruning" alternatives that are not as good as others from the same node.

Example 3 shows the use of a decision tree applied to product design.

Example 3

DECISION TREE APPLIED TO PRODUCT DESIGN

Silicon, Inc., a semiconductor manufacturer, is investigating the possibility of producing and marketing a microprocessor. Undertaking this project will require either purchasing a sophisticated CAD system or hiring and training several additional engineers. The market for the product could be either favorable or unfavorable. Silicon, Inc., of course, has the option of not developing the new product at all.

With favorable acceptance by the market, sales would be 25,000 processors selling for $100 each. With unfavorable acceptance, sales would be only 8,000 processors selling for $100 each. The cost of CAD equipment is $500,000, but that of hiring and training three new engineers is only $375,000. However, manufacturing costs should drop from $50 each when manufacturing without CAD to $40 each when manufacturing with CAD.

The probability of favorable acceptance of the new microprocessor is .40; the probability of unfavorable acceptance is .60.

APPROACH ► Use of a decision tree seems appropriate as Silicon, Inc., has the basic ingredients: a choice of decisions, probabilities, and payoffs.

SOLUTION ► In Figure 5.13 we draw a decision tree with a branch for each of the three decisions, assign the respective probabilities and payoff for each branch, and then compute the respective EMVs. The expected monetary values (EMVs) have been circled at each step of the decision tree. For the top branch:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{EMV (Purchase CAD system)} &= (.4)(\$1{,}000{,}000) + (.6)(-\$20{,}000)\\ &= \$388{,}000\end{aligned}$$

This figure represents the results that will occur if Silicon, Inc., purchases CAD.

The expected value of hiring and training engineers is the second series of branches:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{EMV (Hire/train engineers)} &= (.4)(\$875{,}000) + (.6)(\$25{,}000)\\ &= \$365{,}000\end{aligned}$$

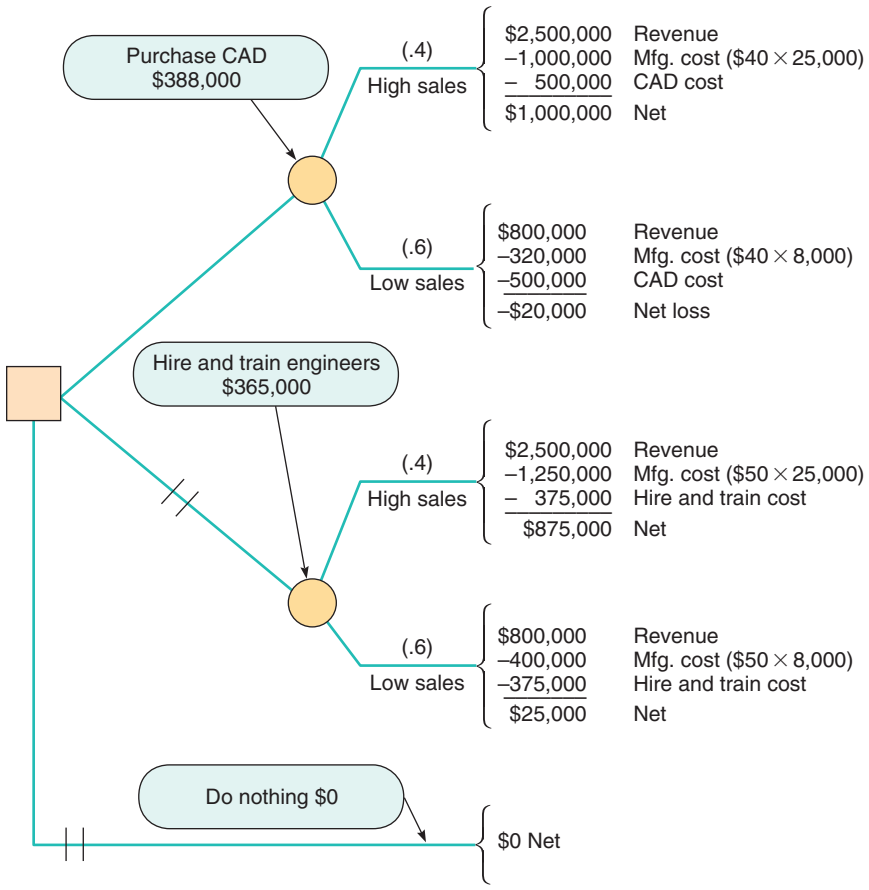


Figure **5.13**
Decision Tree for Development of a New Product

STUDENT TIP
The manager's options are to purchase CAD, hire/train engineers, or do nothing. Purchasing CAD has the highest EMV.

The EMV of doing nothing is $0.

Because the top branch has the highest expected monetary value (an EMV of $388,000 vs. $365,000 vs. $0), it represents the best decision. Management should purchase the CAD system.

INSIGHT ▶ Use of the decision tree provides both objectivity and structure to our analysis of the Silicon, Inc., decision.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If Silicon, Inc., thinks the probabilities of high sales and low sales may be equal, at .5 each, what is the best decision? [Answer: Purchase CAD remains the best decision, but with an EMV of $490,000.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 5.21–5.27 (5.28 is available in MyOMLab)

ACTIVE MODEL 5.1 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 5.1 in MyOMLab.

STUDENT TIP One of the arts of management is knowing when a product should move from development to production.

Transition to Production

Eventually, a product, whether a good or service, has been selected, designed, and defined. It has progressed from an idea to a functional definition, and then perhaps to a design. Now, management must make a decision as to further development and production or termination of the product idea. One of the arts of management is knowing when to move a product from development to production; this move is known as *transition to production*. The product development staff is always interested in making improvements in a product. Because this staff tends to see product development as evolutionary, they may never have a completed product, but as we noted earlier, the cost of late product introduction is high. Although these conflicting pressures exist, management must make a decision—more development or production.

Once this decision is made, there is usually a period of trial production to ensure that the design is indeed producible. This is the manufacturability test. This trial also gives the operations staff the opportunity to develop proper tooling, quality control procedures, and training of personnel to ensure that production can be initiated successfully. Finally, when the product is deemed both marketable and producible, line management will assume responsibility.

To ensure that the transition from development to production is successful, some companies appoint a *project manager*; others use *product development teams*. Both approaches allow a wide range of resources and talents to be brought to bear to ensure satisfactory production of a product that is still in flux. A third approach is *integration of the product development and manufacturing organizations*. This approach allows for easy shifting of resources between the two organizations as needs change. The operations manager's job is to make the transition from R&D to production seamless.

Summary

Effective product strategy requires selecting, designing, and defining a product and then transitioning that product to production. Only when this strategy is carried out effectively can the production function contribute its maximum to the organization. The operations manager must build a product development system that has the ability to conceive, design, and produce products that will yield a competitive advantage for the firm. As products move through their life cycle (introduction, growth, maturity, and decline), the options that the operations manager should pursue change. Both manufactured and service products have a variety of techniques available to aid in performing this activity efficiently.

Written specifications, bills of material, and engineering drawings aid in defining products. Similarly, assembly drawings, assembly charts, route sheets, and work orders are often used to assist in the actual production of the product. Once a product is in production, value analysis is appropriate to ensure maximum product value. Engineering change notices and configuration management provide product documentation.

Key Terms

Product decision (p. 201)
Product-by-value analysis (p. 203)
Quality function deployment (QFD) (p. 204)
House of quality (p. 204)
Product development teams (p. 208)
Concurrent engineering (p. 208)
Manufacturability and value engineering (p. 208)
Robust design (p. 209)
Modular design (p. 209)
Computer-aided design (CAD) (p. 209)
Design for manufacture and assembly (DFMA) (p. 209)
Standard for the exchange of product data (STEP) (p. 210)
Computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) (p. 210)
3-D printing (p. 210)
Virtual reality (p. 210)
Value analysis (p. 211)
Time-based competition (p. 211)
Joint ventures (p. 212)
Alliances (p. 213)
Engineering drawing (p. 213)
Bill of material (BOM) (p. 213)
Make-or-buy decision (p. 214)
Group technology (p. 215)
Assembly drawing (p. 216)
Assembly chart (p. 216)
Route sheet (p. 216)
Work order (p. 216)
Engineering change notice (ECN) (p. 216)
Configuration management (p. 216)
Product life-cycle management (PLM) (p. 216)
Process–chain–network (PCN) analysis (p. 217)
Process chain (p. 217)

Ethical Dilemma—Plasticallity Right . . .

Donna Canova is the environmental compliance manager for a small plastics manufacturing company Plasticallity Inc. She is currently faced with the decision whether or not to spend money on new technology that will reduce the level of a particular toxin in the wastewater that flows out the back of the factory and into a lake.

The factory's emission levels are already within legal limits. However, Donna knows that environmental regulations for this particular toxin are lagging behind scientific evidence. In fact, a scientist from the university had been quoted in the newspaper recently, saying that if emission levels stayed at this level, the fish in the lakes and rivers in the area might soon have to be declared unsafe for human consumption.

Further, if companies in the region don't engage in some self-regulation on this issue, there is reason to fear that the government — backed by public opinion — may force companies to begin using the new technology, and may also begin requiring monthly emission level reports (which would be both expensive and time consuming).

But the company's environmental compliance budget is tight. Asking for this new technology to be installed would put Donna's department over-budget, and could jeopardize the company's ability to show a profit this year.

Which dilemmas and challenges do you see for the company "Plasticallity" after they have been aware of the potential damage the specific toxin could create on the environment?

What should Donna Canova do?

Nikolay Stefanvo Dimitrov/ Shutterstock

Discussion Questions

1. Why is it necessary to document a product explicitly?
2. What techniques do we use to define a product?
3. In what ways is product strategy linked to product decisions?
4. Once a product is defined, what documents are used to assist production personnel in its manufacture?
5. What is Concurrent Engineering and why is it considered to be adopted by companies?
6. Describe the differences between joint ventures and alliances.
7. Describe four organizational approaches to product development. Which of these is generally thought to be best?
8. Explain what is meant by robust design.
9. What are three specific ways in which computer-aided design (CAD) benefits the design engineer?
10. From the manufacturing, organizational, and supply chain management point of view, what kind of challenges might a firm face in shifting its designing strategy from integrality to modularity?
11. What information is contained in an engineering drawing?
12. How can the voice of the customer be incorporated in the design of products and services?
13. Explain what is meant in service design by the "moment of truth."
14. Explain how the house of quality translates customer desires into product/service attributes.
15. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of involving customers fairly early in the product design process.
16. What is a process chain?
17. Why are the direct interaction and surrogate interaction regions in a PCN diagram important in service design?
18. Think of three products or services that employ:
    a) Interchangeability
    b) Standardisation
    c) Modular design

Solved Problem

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM 5.1

Sarah King, president of King Electronics, Inc., has two design options for her new line of high-resolution monitors for CAD workstations. The production run is for 100,000 units.

Design option A has a .90 probability of yielding 60 good monitors per 100 and a .10 probability of yielding 65 good monitors per 100. This design will cost $1,000,000.

Design option B has a .80 probability of yielding 64 good units per 100 and a .20 probability of yielding 59 good units per 100. This design will cost $1,350,000.

Good or bad, each monitor will cost $75. Each good monitor will sell for $150. Bad monitors are destroyed and have no salvage value. We ignore any disposal costs in this problem.

SOLUTION

We draw the decision tree to reflect the two decisions and the probabilities associated with each decision. We then determine the payoff associated with each branch. The resulting tree is shown in Figure 5.14.

For design A:

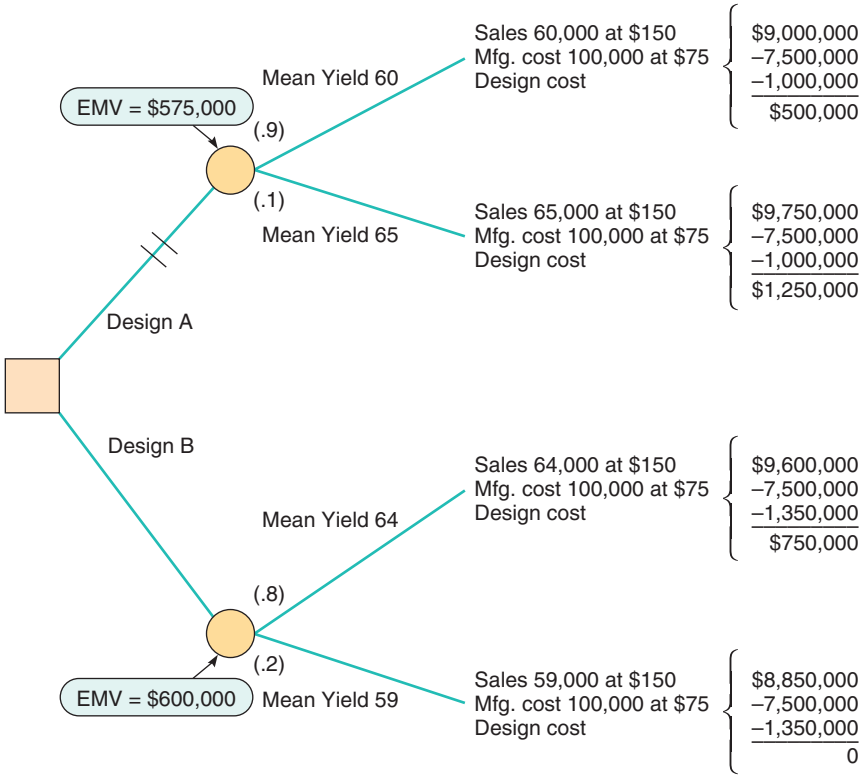
$$\text{EMV(design A)} = (.9)(\$500{,}000) + (.1)(\$1{,}250{,}000)$$
$$= \$575{,}000$$

For design B:

$$\text{EMV(design B)} = (.8)(\$750{,}000) + (.2)(\$0)$$
$$= \$600{,}000$$

The highest payoff is design option B, at $600,000.

Figure 5.14
Decision Tree for Solved Problem 5.1



Problems

Note: PX means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel OM.

Problems 5.1–5.3 relate to Goods and Services Selection

••• **5.1** A system consisting of two identical components A & B. (a) Under what conditions does the system fail? (b) If the reliability (i.e. the ability of the system to perform its intended function satisfactorily) of components A & B are 90% and 80%, respectively, under what conditions does the system fail?

•• **5.2** Given the contribution made on each of the three products in the following table and their position in the life cycle, identify a reasonable operations strategy for each:

PRODUCT	PRODUCT CONTRIBUTION (% OF SELLING PRICE)	COMPANY CONTRIBUTION (%: TOTAL ANNUAL CONTRIBUTION DIVIDED BY TOTAL ANNUAL SALES)	POSITION IN LIFE CYCLE
Smart watch	30	40	Introduction
Tablet	30	50	Growth
Hand calculator	50	10	Decline

Problem **5.3** *is available in* MyOMLab.

Problems 5.4–5.8 relate to Product Development

•• **5.4** An automobile company has budgeted €650 million to invest in new car models, where €100 million will go for the development of a new car platform, and €20 million will be allocated for the development of each new model. Suppose that the company wants to develop 15 new models, how many platforms can be developed?

•• **5.5** Using the house of quality, pick a real product (a good or service) and analyze how an existing organization satisfies customer requirements.

•• **5.6** Prepare a house of quality for a mousetrap.

•• **5.7** Discuss and compare sequential approach and simultaneous (or concurrent) engineering during the various stages of product development. List some important advantages and disadvantages of each approach.

•••• **5.8** Using the house of quality sequence, as described in Figure 5.4 on page 169, determine how you might deploy resources to achieve the desired quality for a product or service whose production process you understand.

Problems 5.9–5.17 relate to Defining a Product

•• **5.9** A company is investigating the "make or buy" decision for a new item, with the following cost structure:

DECISION	FIXED COST/YEAR	VARIABLE COST/UNIT
Make	€100,000	€25
Buy	0	€50

a) At what volumes would each decision be preferred?
b) What is the most economical decision for a volume of 15,000 per year?

•• **5.10** Draw an assembly chart for a pair of eyeglasses and its case.

•• **5.11** Explain why companies outsource and rationalize their vendor base.

•• **5.12** Develop the BOM for product XYZ made from two units of B, five C and four D. B is sub-assembled from six E and two F; C from four E and three D, and D from two G and four H.

Problems **5.13–5.17** *are available in* MyOMLab.

Problems 5.18–5.20 relate to Service Design

•• **5.18** Draw a two-participant PCN diagram (similar to Figure 5.12) for one of the following processes:
a) The process of having your computer repaired.
b) The process of pizza preparation.
c) The process of procuring tickets for a concert.

•• **5.19** Review strategic process positioning options for the regions in Figure 5.12, discussing the operational impact (in terms of the 10 strategic OM decisions) for:
a) Manufacturing the sandwiches.
b) Direct interaction.
c) Establishing a sandwich buffet.

••• **5.20** Select a service business that involves interaction between customers and service providers, and create a PCN diagram similar to Figure 5.12. Pick a key step that could be performed either by the service provider or by the customers. Show process positioning options for the step. Describe how the options compare in terms of efficiency, economies of scale, and opportunity for customization.

Problems 5.21–5.28 relate to the Application of Decision Trees to Product Design

•• **5.21** The product design group of Iyengar Electric Supplies, Inc., has determined that it needs to design a new series of switches. It must decide on one of three design strategies. The market forecast is for 200,000 units. The better and more sophisticated the design strategy and the more time spent on value engineering, the less will be the variable cost. The chief of engineering design, Dr. W. L. Berry, has decided that the following costs are a good estimate of the initial and variable costs connected with each of the three strategies:
a) *Low-tech:* A low-technology, low-cost process consisting of hiring several new junior engineers. This option has a fixed cost of $45,000 and variable-cost probabilities of .3 for $.55 each, .4 for $.50, and .3 for $.45.
b) *Subcontract:* A medium-cost approach using a good outside design staff. This approach would have a fixed cost of $65,000 and variable-cost probabilities of .7 of $.45, .2 of $.40, and .1 of $.35.
c) *High-tech:* A high-technology approach using the very best of the inside staff and the latest computer-aided design technology. This approach has a fixed cost of $75,000 and variable-cost probabilities of .9 of $.40 and .1 of $.35.

What is the best decision based on an expected monetary value (EMV) criterion? (*Note:* We want the lowest EMV, as we are dealing with costs in this problem.) PX

•• **5.22** MacDonald Products, Inc., of Clarkson, New York, has the option of (a) proceeding immediately with production of a new top-of-the-line stereo TV that has just completed prototype testing or (b) having the value analysis team complete a study. If Ed Lusk, VP for operations, proceeds with the existing prototype (option a), the firm can expect sales to be 100,000 units at $550 each, with a probability of .6, and a .4 probability of 75,000 at $550. If, however, he uses the value analysis team (option b), the firm expects sales of 75,000 units at $750, with a probability of .7, and a .3 probability of 70,000 units at $750. Value analysis, at a cost of $100,000, is only used in option b. Which option has the highest expected monetary value (EMV)? PX

Romanchuck Dimitry/Shutterstock

••5.23 Residents of Mill River have fond memories of ice skating at a local park. An artist has captured the experience in a drawing and is hoping to reproduce it and sell framed copies to current and former residents. He thinks that if the market is good he can sell 400 copies of the elegant version at $125 each. If the market is not good, he will sell only 300 at $90 each. He can make a deluxe version of the same drawing instead. He feels that if the market is good he can sell 500 copies of the deluxe version at $100 each. If the market is not good, he will sell only 400 copies at $70 each. In either case, production costs will be approximately $35,000. He can also choose to do nothing. If he believes there is a 50% probability of a good market, what should he do? Why? PX

••5.24 Ritz Products's materials manager, Tej Dhakar, must determine whether to make or buy a new semiconductor for the wrist TV that the firm is about to produce. One million units are expected to be produced over the life cycle. If the product is made, start-up and production costs of the *make* decision total $1 million, with a probability of .4 that the product will be satisfactory and a .6 probability that it will not. If the product is not satisfactory, the firm will have to reevaluate the decision. If the decision is reevaluated, the choice will be whether to spend another $1 million to redesign the semiconductor or to purchase. Likelihood of success the second time that the make decision is made is .9. If the second *make* decision also fails, the firm must purchase. Regardless of when the purchase takes place, Dhakar's best judgment of cost is that Ritz will pay $.50 for each purchased semiconductor plus $1 million in vendor development cost.

a) Assuming that Ritz must have the semiconductor (stopping or doing without is not a viable option), what is the best decision?
b) What criteria did you use to make this decision?
c) What is the worst that can happen to Ritz as a result of this particular decision? What is the best that can happen? PX

••5.25 Sox Engineering designs and constructs air conditioning and heating systems for hospitals and clinics. Currently, the company's staff is overloaded with design work. There is a major design project due in 8 weeks. The penalty for completing the design late is $14,000 per week, since any delay will cause the facility to open later than anticipated and cost the client significant revenue. If the company uses its inside engineers to complete the design, it will have to pay them overtime for all work. Sox has estimated that it will cost $12,000 per week (wages and overhead), including late weeks, to have company engineers complete the design. Sox is also considering having an outside engineering firm do the design. A bid of $92,000 has been received for the completed design. Yet another option for completing the design is to conduct a joint design by having a third engineering company complete all electromechanical components of the design at a cost of $56,000. Sox would then complete the rest of the design and control systems at an estimated cost of $30,000.

Sox has estimated the following probabilities of completing the project within various time frames when using each of the three options. Those estimates are shown in the following table:

	PROBABILITY OF COMPLETING THE DESIGN			
OPTION	ON TIME	1 WEEK LATE	2 WEEKS LATE	3 WEEKS LATE
Internal Engineers	.4	.5	.1	—
External Engineers	.2	.4	.3	.1
Joint Design	.1	.3	.4	.2

What is the best decision based on an expected monetary value criterion? (*Note:* You want the lowest EMV because we are dealing with costs in this problem.) PX

•••5.26 Use the data in Solved Problem 5.1 to examine what happens to the decision if Sarah King can increase all of Design B yields from 59,000 to 64,000 by applying an expensive phosphorus to the screen at an added manufacturing cost of $250,000. Prepare the modified decision tree. What are the payoffs, and which branch has the greatest EMV?

••••5.27 A company has developed a promising new product and examines the following three alternatives of manufacturing. Alternative No. 1 is to buy a semi-automatic machine with an initial cost of €130,000, alternative No. 2 is to buy a full automatic machine with an initial cost of €180,000, while alternative No. 3 is to outsource production (buy). With alternative No. 1, there is a 75 percent chance that 80 out of each 100 products will produced without defects and a 25 percent chance that 70 out of each 100 products will produced without defects. With alternative No. 2, there is an 85 percent chance that 90 out of each 100 products will produced without defects and a 15 percent chance that 80 out of each 100 products will produced without defects. With alternative No. 3, there is a 60 percent chance that 70 out of each 100 products will produced without defects and a 40 percent chance that there is about 50:50 chance the non-defective will be produced. The company operates on a 12 months basis with a monthly production of 6,000 units. The price per unit has been estimated to be €12 based on a production cost of €8. Draw a decision tree to reflect the three alternatives, calculate the payoff associated with each, and point the alternative with the greatest EMV.

Problem **5.28** *is available in* MyOMLab.

CASE STUDIES

De Mar's Product Strategy

De Mar, a plumbing, heating, and air-conditioning company located in Fresno, California, has a simple but powerful product strategy: *Solve the customer's problem no matter what, solve the problem when the customer needs it solved, and make sure the customer feels good when you leave*. De Mar offers guaranteed, same-day service for customers requiring it. The company provides 24-hour-a-day, 7-day-a-week service at no extra charge for customers whose air conditioning dies on a hot summer Sunday or whose toilet overflows at 2:30 A.M. As assistant service coordinator Janie Walter puts it: "We will be there to fix your A/C on the fourth of July, and it's not a penny extra. When our competitors won't get out of bed, we'll be there!"

De Mar guarantees the price of a job to the penny before the work begins. Whereas most competitors guarantee their work for 30 days, De Mar guarantees all parts and labor for one year. The company assesses no travel charge because "it's not fair to charge customers for driving out." Owner Larry Harmon says: "We are in an industry that doesn't have the best reputation. If we start making money our main goal, we are in trouble. So I stress customer satisfaction; money is the by-product."

De Mar uses selective hiring, ongoing training and education, performance measures, and compensation that incorporate customer satisfaction, strong teamwork, peer pressure, empowerment, and aggressive promotion to implement its strategy. Says credit manager Anne Semrick: "The person who wants a nine-to-five job needs to go somewhere else."

De Mar is a premium pricer. Yet customers respond because De Mar delivers value—that is, benefits for costs. In 8 years, annual sales increased from about $200,000 to more than $3.3 million.

Discussion Questions

1. What is De Mar's product? Identify the tangible parts of this product and its service components.
2. How should other areas of De Mar (marketing, finance, personnel) support its product strategy?
3. Even though De Mar's product is primarily a service product, how should each of the 10 strategic OM decisions in the text be managed to ensure that the product is successful?

Source: Reprinted with the permission of The Free Press, from *On Great Service: A Framework for Action* by Leonard L. Berry.

Product Design at Regal Marine

Video Case

With hundreds of competitors in the boat business, Regal Marine must work to differentiate itself from the flock. As we saw in the *Global Company Profile* that opened this chapter, Regal continuously introduces innovative, high-quality new boats. Its differentiation strategy is reflected in a product line consisting of 22 models.

To maintain this stream of innovation, and with so many boats at varying stages of their life cycles, Regal constantly seeks design input from customers, dealers, and consultants. Design ideas rapidly find themselves in the styling studio, where they are placed onto CAD machines in order to speed the development process. Existing boat designs are always evolving as the company tries to stay stylish and competitive. Moreover, with life cycles as short as 3 years, a steady stream of new products is required. A few years ago, the new product was the three-passenger $11,000 Rush, a small but powerful boat capable of pulling a water-skier. This was followed with a 20-foot inboard–outboard performance boat with so many innovations that it won prize after prize in the industry. Another new boat is a redesigned 52-foot sports yacht that sleeps six in luxury staterooms. With all these models and innovations, Regal designers and production personnel are under pressure to respond quickly.

By getting key suppliers on board early and urging them to participate at the design stage, Regal improves both innovations and quality while speeding product development. Regal finds that the sooner it brings suppliers on board, the faster it can bring new boats to the market. After a development stage that constitutes concept and styling, CAD designs yield product specifications. The first stage in actual production is the creation of the "plug," a foam-based carving used to make the molds for fiberglass hulls and decks. Specifications from the CAD system drive the carving process. Once the plug is carved, the permanent molds for each new hull and deck design are formed. Molds take about 4 to 8 weeks to make and are all handmade. Similar molds are made for many of the other features in Regal boats—from galley and

Barry Render

stateroom components to lavatories and steps. Finished molds can be joined and used to make thousands of boats.

Discussion Questions*

1. How does the concept of product life cycle apply to Regal Marine products?
2. What strategy does Regal use to stay competitive?
3. What kind of engineering savings is Regal achieving by using CAD technology rather than traditional drafting techniques?
4. What are the likely benefits of the CAD design technology?

*You may wish to view the video accompanying this case before addressing these questions.

Endnotes

1. *Contribution* is defined as the difference between direct cost and selling price. Direct costs are directly attributable to the product, namely labor and material that go into the product.
2. See Scott Sampson, "Visualizing Service Operations," *Journal of Service Research* (May 2012). More details about PCN analysis are available at **services.byu.edu.**

Chapter 5 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
GOODS AND SERVICES SELECTION (pp. 200–203)	Although the term *products* may often refer to tangible goods, it also refers to offerings by service organizations. *The objective of the product decision is to develop and implement a product strategy that meets the demands of the marketplace with a competitive advantage.* ■ **Product Decision**—The selection, definition, and design of products. The four phases of the product life cycle are introduction, growth, maturity, and decline. ■ **Product-by-value analysis**—A list of products, in descending order of their individual dollar contribution to the firm, as well as the *total annual dollar* contribution of the product.	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4 Problems: 5.1–5.3 **VIDEO 5.1** Product Strategy at Regal Marine
GENERATING NEW PRODUCTS (pp. 203–204)	Product selection, definition, and design take place on a continuing basis. Changes in product opportunities, the products themselves, product volume, and product mix may arise due to understanding the customer, economic change, sociological and demographic change, technological change, political/legal change, market practice, professional standards, suppliers, or distributors.	Concept Question: 2.1
PRODUCT DEVELOPMENT (pp. 204–208)	■ **Quality function deployment (QFD)**—A process for determining customer requirements (customer "wants") and translating them into attributes (the "hows") that each functional area can understand and act on. ■ **House of quality**—A part of the quality function deployment process that utilizes a planning matrix to relate customer wants to how the firm is going to meet those wants. ■ **Product development teams**—Teams charged with moving from market requirements for a product to achieving product success. ■ **Concurrent engineering**—Simultaneous performance of the various stages of product development. ■ **Manufacturability and value engineering**—Activities that help improve a product's design, production, maintainability, and use.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4
ISSUES FOR PRODUCT DESIGN (pp. 209–211)	■ **Robust design**—A design that can be produced to requirements even with unfavorable conditions in the production process. ■ **Modular design**—A design in which parts or components of a product are subdivided into modules that are easily interchanged or replaced. ■ **Computer-aided design (CAD)**—Interactive use of a computer to develop and document a product. ■ **Design for manufacture and assembly (DFMA)**—Software that allows designers to look at the effect of design on manufacturing of a product. ■ **Standard for the exchange of product data (STEP)**—A standard that provides a format allowing the electronic transmission of three-dimensional data. ■ **Computer-aided manufacturing (CAM)**—The use of information technology to control machinery. ■ **3-D printing**—An extension of CAD that builds prototypes and small lots. ■ **Virtual reality**—A visual form of communication in which images substitute for reality and typically allow the user to respond interactively. ■ **Value analysis**—A review of successful products that takes place during the production process. Sustainability is meeting the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their needs. Life cycle assessment (LCA) is part of ISO 14000; it assesses the environmental impact of a product from material and energy inputs to disposal and environmental releases. Both sustainability and LCA are discussed in depth in Supplement 5.	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4
PRODUCT DEVELOPMENT CONTINUUM (pp. 211–213)	■ **Time-based competition**—Competition based on time; rapidly developing products and moving them to market. *Internal development strategies* include (1) new internally developed products, (2) enhancements to existing products, and (3) migrations of existing products. *External development strategies* include (1) purchase the technology or expertise by acquiring the developer, (2) establish joint ventures, and (3) develop alliances. ■ **Joint ventures**—Firms establishing joint ownership to pursue new products or markets. ■ **Alliances**—Cooperative agreements that allow firms to remain independent but pursue strategies consistent with their individual missions.	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.4

Chapter 5 *Rapid* Review *continued*

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
DEFINING A PRODUCT (pp. 213–215)	■ **Engineering drawing**—A drawing that shows the dimensions, tolerances, materials, and finishes of a component. ■ **Bill of material (BOM)**—A list of the components, their description, and the quantity of each required to make one unit of a product. ■ **Make-or-buy decision**—The choice between producing a component or a service and purchasing it from an outside source. ■ **Group technology**—A product and component coding system that specifies the size, shape, and type of processing; it allows similar products to be grouped.	Concept Questions: 6.1–6.4 Problems: 5.9, 5.10, 5.12–5.17
DOCUMENTS FOR PRODUCTION (pp. 216–217)	■ **Assembly drawing**—An exploded view of a product. ■ **Assembly chart**—A graphic means of identifying how components flow into subassemblies and final products. ■ **Route sheet**—A list of the operations necessary to produce a component with the material specified in the bill of material. ■ **Work order**—An instruction to make a given quantity of a particular item. ■ **Engineering change notice (ECN)**—A correction or modification of an engineering drawing or bill of material. ■ **Configuration management**—A system by which a product's planned and changing components are accurately identified. ■ **Product life cycle management (PLM)**—Software programs that tie together many phases of product design and manufacture.	Concept Questions: 7.1–7.4
SERVICE DESIGN (pp. 217–220)	■ **Process-chain-network (PCN) analysis**—A way to design processes to optimize interaction between firms and their customers. ■ **Process chain**—A sequence of steps that provide value to process participants. To enhance service efficiency, companies: (1) limit options, (2) delay customization, (3) modularize, (4) automate, and (5) design for the "moment of truth."	Concept Questions: 8.1–8.4
APPLICATION OF DECISION TREES TO PRODUCT DESIGN (pp. 220–220)	To form a decision tree, (1) include all possible alternatives (including "do nothing") and states of nature; (2) enter payoffs at the end of the appropriate branch; and (3) determine the expected value of each course of action by starting at the end of the tree and working toward the beginning, calculating values at each step and "pruning" inferior alternatives.	Concept Questions: 9.1–9.2 Problems: 5.21–5.25, 5.27–5.28 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 5.1 **ACTIVE MODEL 5.1**
TRANSITION TO PRODUCTION (p. 222)	One of the arts of management is knowing when to move a product from development to production; this move is known as *transition to production*.	Concept Questions: 10.1–10.2

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 5.1 A product's life cycle is divided into four stages, including:
a) introduction.
b) growth.
c) maturity.
d) all of the above.

LO 5.2 Which of the following are the requirements of an aggressive new product development strategy:
a) open communication with customers
b) innovative product development cultures
c) aggressive R&D **d)** strong leadership
e) formal incentives **f)** Training
g) All of the above **h)** Only (a) and (e)

LO 5.3 A house of quality is:
a) a matrix relating customer "wants" to the firm's "hows."
b) a schematic showing how a product is put together.
c) a list of the operations necessary to produce a component.
d) an instruction to make a given quantity of a particular item.
e) a set of detailed instructions about how to perform a task.

LO 5.4 Time-based competition focuses on:
a) moving new products to market more quickly.
b) reducing the life cycle of a product.
c) linking QFD to PLM.
d) design database availability.
e) value engineering.

LO 5.5 Service efficiency can be increased if:
a) customization is delayed as late in the process as possible
b) the service is modularized
c) the service is automated
d) in the service industry there is a moment of truth
e) all of the above

LO 5.6 The documents that assist production, once the product is ready to launch into the market are:
a) An assembly drawing **b)** The assembly chart
c) The route sheet **d)** The work order
e) Engineering change notices (ECNs) **f)** Value analysis review
g) All of the above **h)** Only (a) – (e)

LO 5.7 The three process regions in a process–chain–network diagram are:
a) manufacture, supplier, customer
b) direct and surrogate, customer, provider
c) independent, dependent, customer interaction
d) direct interaction, surrogate interaction, independent processing

LO 5.8 Decision trees use:
a) probabilities.
b) payoffs.
c) logic.
d) options.
e) all of the above.

Answers: LO 5.1. d; LO 5.2. g; LO 5.3. a; LO 5.4. a; LO 5.5. e; LO 5.6. h; LO 5.7. d; LO 5.8. e.

Sustainability

5 SUPPLEMENT

SUPPLEMENT OUTLINE

- Corporate Social Responsibility *232*
- Sustainability *233*
- Design and Production for Sustainability *236*
- Regulations and Industry Standards *241*

Alaska Airlines

Alaska Airlines

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **LO S5.1** ***Describe*** corporate social responsibility 232
- **LO S5.2** ***Describe*** sustainability 233
- **LO S5.3** ***Explain*** the 3*R*s for sustainability 236
- **LO S5.4** ***Calculate*** design for disassembly 237
- **LO S5.5** ***Explain*** the impact of sustainable regulations on operations 241

Lex Van Lieshout/EPA/Newscom

Airlines from around the world, including Air China, Virgin Atlantic Airways, KLM, Alaska, Air New Zealand, and Japan Airlines, are experimenting with alternative fuels to power their jets in an effort to reduce greenhouse gas emissions and to reduce their dependence on traditional petroleum-based jet fuel. Alternative biofuels are being developed from recycled cooking oil, sewage sludge, municipal waste, coconuts, sugar cane, and genetically modified algae that feed on plant waste.

Corporate Social Responsibility[1]

LO S5.1 *Describe* corporate social responsibility

Managers must consider how the products and services they provide affect both people and the environment. Certainly, firms must provide products and services that are innovative and attractive to buyers. But today's technologies allow consumers, communities, public interest groups, and regulators to be well informed about all aspects of an organization's performance. As a result, stakeholders can have strong views about firms that fail to respect the environment or that engage in unethical conduct. Firms need to consider all the implications of a product—from design to disposal.

Many companies now realize that "doing what's right" and doing it properly can be beneficial to all stakeholders. Companies that practice **corporate social responsibility (CSR)** introduce policies that consider environmental, societal, and financial impacts in their decision making. As managers consider approaches to CSR, they find it helpful to consider the concept of creating **shared value**. *Shared value* suggests finding policies and practices that enhance the organization's competitiveness while simultaneously advancing the economic and social conditions in the communities in which it operates. For instance, note how automakers Tesla, Toyota, and Nissan find shared value in low-emission vehicles . . . vehicles that enhance their competiveness in a global market while meeting society's interest in low-emission vehicles. Similarly, Dow Chemical finds social benefits and profit in Nexera canola and sunflower seeds. These seeds yield twice as much cooking oil as soybeans, enhancing profitability to the grower. They also have a longer shelf life, which reduces operating costs throughout the supply chain. As an added bonus, the oils have lower levels of saturated fat than traditional products and contain no trans fats. A win–win for Dow and society.

Operations functions—from supply chain management to product design to production to packaging and logistics—provide an opportunity for finding shared value and meeting CSR goals.[2]

Corporate social responsibility (CSR)
Managerial decision making that considers environmental, societal, and financial impacts.

Shared value
Developing policies and practices that enhance the competitiveness of an organization while advancing the economic and social conditions in the communities in which it operates.

Sustainability

Sustainability is often associated with corporate social responsibility. The term **sustainability** refers to meeting the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their needs. Many people who hear of sustainability for the first time think of green products or "going green"—recycling, global warming, and saving rainforests. This is certainly part of it. However, it is more than this. True sustainability involves thinking not only about environmental resources but also about employees, customers, community, and the company's reputation. Three concepts may be helpful as managers consider sustainability decisions: a *systems* view, the *commons*, and the *triple bottom line*.

Sustainability
Meeting the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their needs.

LO S5.2 *Describe* sustainability

Systems View

Managers may find that their decisions regarding sustainability improve when they take a *systems* view. This means looking at a product's life from design to disposal, including all the resources required. Recognizing that both raw materials and human resources are subsystems of any production process may provide a helpful perspective. Similarly, the product or service itself is a small part of much larger social, economic, and environmental systems. Indeed, managers need to understand the inputs and interfaces between the interacting systems and identify how changes in one system affect others. For example, hiring or laying off employees can be expected to have morale implications for internal systems (within an organization), as well as socioeconomic implications for external systems. Similarly, dumping chemicals down the drain has implications on systems beyond the firm. Once managers understand that the systems immediately under their control have interactions with systems below them and above them, more informed judgments regarding sustainability can be made.

VIDEO S5.1
Building Sustainability at the Orlando Magic's Amway Center

Commons

Many inputs to a production system have market prices, but others do not. Those that do not are those held by the public, or in the *common*. Resources held in the *common* are often misallocated. Examples include depletion of fish in international waters and polluted air and waterways. The attitude seems to be that just a little more fishing or a little more pollution will not matter, or the adverse results may be perceived as someone else's problem. Society is still groping for solutions for use of those resources in the *common*. The answer is slowly being found in a number of ways: (1) moving some of the *common* to private property (e.g., selling radio frequency spectrum), (2) allocation of rights (e.g., establishing fishing boundaries), and (3) allocation of yield (e.g., only a given quantity of fish can be harvested). As managers understand the issues of the *commons*, they have further insight about sustainability and the obligation of caring for the *commons*.

Triple Bottom Line

Firms that do not consider the impact of their decisions on all their stakeholders see reduced sales and profits. Profit maximization is not the only measure of success. A one-dimensional bottom line, profit, will not suffice; the larger socioeconomic systems beyond the firm demand more. One way to think of sustainability is to consider the systems necessary to support the triple bottom line of the three *P*s: *people, planet*, and *profit* (see Figure S5.1), which we will now discuss.

STUDENT TIP
Profit is now just one of the three *P*s: people, planet, and profit.

People Companies are becoming more aware of how their decisions affect people—not only their employees and customers but also those who live in the communities in which they operate. Most employers want to pay fair wages, offer educational opportunities, and provide a safe and healthy workplace. So do their suppliers. But globalization and the reliance on outsourcing to suppliers around the world complicate the task. This means companies must create policies that guide supplier selection and performance. Sustainability suggests that supplier selection and performance criteria evaluate safety in the work environment, whether living wages are paid, if child labor is used, and whether work hours are excessive. Apple, GE, Procter & Gamble, and Walmart are examples of companies that conduct supplier audits to uncover any harmful or exploitative business practices that are counter to their sustainability goals and objectives.

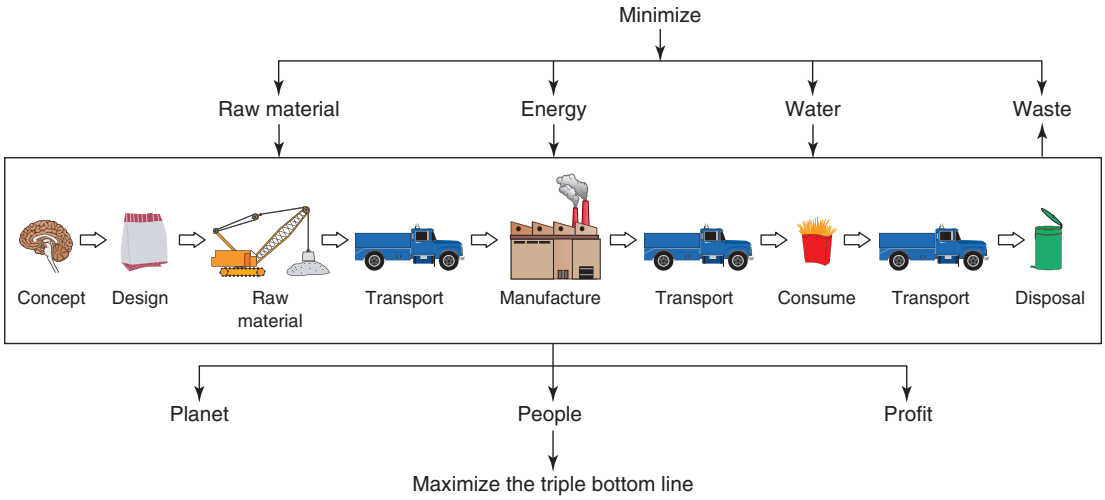


Figure **S5.1**

Improving the Triple Bottom Line with Sustainability

Recognizing that customers increasingly want to know that the materials in the products they buy are safe and produced in a responsible way, Walmart initiated the development of the worldwide sustainable product index for evaluating the sustainability of products. The goals of that initiative are to create a more transparent supply chain, accelerate the adoption of best practices, and drive product innovation.

STUDENT TIP Walmart has become a global leader in sustainability. Read *Force of Nature: The Unlikely Story of Walmart's Green Revolution.*

Walmart found a correlation between supply-chain transparency, positive labor practices, community involvement, *and* quality, efficiency, and cost. Walmart is committed to working with its suppliers to sell quality products that are safe, that create value for customers, and that are produced in a sustainable way. The firm is accomplishing this in four ways:

1. Improving livelihoods through the creation of productive, healthy, and safe workplaces and promoting quality of life
2. Building strong communities through access to affordable, high-quality services such as education and job training that support workers and their families
3. Preventing exposure to substances that are considered harmful or toxic to human health
4. Promoting health and wellness by increasing access to nutritious products, encouraging healthy lifestyles, and promoting access to health care

Walmart's CEO has said that companies that are unfair to their people are also likely to skimp on quality and that he will not continue to do business with those suppliers. Accordingly, operations managers must consider the working conditions in which they place their employees. This includes training and safety orientations, before-shift exercises, earplugs, safety goggles, and rest breaks to reduce the possibility of worker fatigue and injury. Operations managers must also make decisions regarding the disposal of material and chemical waste, including hazardous materials, so they don't harm employees or the community.

Planet When discussing the subject of sustainability, our planet's environment is the first thing that comes to mind, so it understandably gets the most attention from managers. Operations managers look for ways to reduce the environmental impact of their operations, whether from raw material selection, process innovation, alternative product delivery methods, or disposal of products at their end-of-life. The overarching objective for operations managers is to conserve scarce resources, thereby reducing the negative impact on the environment. Here are a few examples of how organizations creatively make their operations more environmentally friendly:

- S.C. Johnson, the company that makes Windex, Saran Wrap, Pledge, Ziploc bags, and Raid, developed *Greenlist*, a classification system that evaluates the impact of raw materials on human and environmental health. By using *Greenlist*, S.C. Johnson has eliminated millions of pounds of pollutants from its products.

- Thirty-one public school districts across the state of Kentucky operate hybrid electric school buses. They estimate fuel savings as high as 40%, with fuel mileage of 7.5 mpg increasing to 12 miles per gallon, relative to standard diesel buses.
- Levi has started a campaign to save water in the creation of jeans, as seen in the *OM in Action* box "Cameroonian Ebony Sustainably Managed by Taylor Guitars."

To gauge their environmental impact on the planet, many companies are measuring their carbon footprint. **Carbon footprint** is a measure of the total greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions caused directly and indirectly by an organization, a product, an event, or a person. A substantial portion of greenhouse gases are released naturally by farming, cattle, and decaying forests and, to a lesser degree, by manufacturing and services. The most common greenhouse gas produced by human activities is carbon dioxide, primarily from burning fossil fuels for electricity generation, heating, and transport. Operations managers are being asked to do their part to reduce GHG emissions.

Carbon footprint
A measure of total greenhouse gas emissions caused directly or indirectly by an organization, a product, an event, or a person.

Industry leaders such as Frito-Lay have been able to break down the carbon emissions from various stages in the production process. For instance, in potato chip production, a 34.5-gram (1.2-ounce) bag of chips is responsible for about twice its weight in emissions—75 grams per bag (see Figure S5.2).

VIDEO S5.2
Green Manufacturing and Sustainability at Frito-Lay

Profit Social and environmental sustainability do not exist without economic sustainability. **Economic sustainability** refers to how companies remain in business. Staying in business requires making investments, and investments require making profits. Though profits may be relatively easy to determine, other measures can also be used to gauge economic sustainability. The alternative measures that point to a successful business include risk profile, intellectual property, employee morale, and company valuation. To support economic sustainability, firms may supplement standard financial accounting and reporting with some version of *social accounting*. Social accounting can include brand equity, management talent, human capital development and benefits, research and development, productivity, philanthropy, and taxes paid.

Economic sustainability
Appropriately allocating scarce resources to make a profit.

OM in Action Cameroonian Ebony Sustainably Managed by Taylor Guitars

One of the world's leading manufacturer of quality guitars, Taylor Guitars from El Cajon, California, found a way to secure a sustainable chain of supply for ebony, one of the most endangered wood species, as well as to enable economy and people of Cameroon to gain fair share of economic benefits from their native resource, in contrast to many other examples around the world.

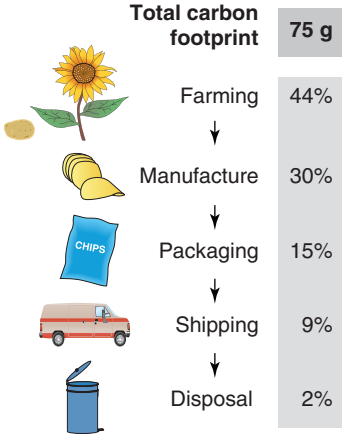
After Madagascar banned harvesting of ebony, the only country left as a possible legal source of the hard black wood was Cameroon. In 2011, Taylor Guitars and Madinter Trade (an international distributor of guitars and tonewoods) were able to acquire Crelicam, a large Cameroonian ebony mill. Taylor-Madinter now controls about 75% of total country's legal ebony production. While visiting production plants, and forests, the cofounder and president of Taylor Guitars, Bob Taylor, learned that about 90% of all ebony logs were just left in the forest because their wood was not perfectly black, and market price for such wood was not sufficient to even cover the lumbering and sawmilling costs. Realizing it was a tremendous waste, Taylor decided to actively promote use of ebony as it naturally is, with spurs of brown, gray or vanilla-colored material. As one of the world's most reputable guitar manufacturer, Taylor's word means something in the industry and among the guitarists around the world. The availability of legally harvested ebony increased tenfold virtually overnight.

By improving forest management, employing local workers under the U.S. labor law conditions, doubling their wages, training local staff for better processing of ebony into more worthy semi-final products, and using Taylor's world-wide reputation to advocate for stopping the irresponsible waste of ebony, Taylor Guitars secured supply in an economical, environmental, and ethically sustainable manner.

Sources: Taylor Guitars (12 November, 2015), YouTube (13 November, 2015)

Figure S5.2

Carbon Footprint of a 34.5-gram Bag of Frito-Lay Chips



Design and Production for Sustainability

Life cycle assessment
Analysis of environmental impacts of products from the design stage through end-of-life.

The operations manager's greatest opportunity to make substantial contributions to the company's environmental objectives occurs during product life cycle assessment. **Life cycle assessment** evaluates the environmental impact of a product, from raw material and energy inputs all the way to the disposal of the product at its end-of-life. The goal is to make decisions that help reduce the environmental impact of a product throughout its entire life. Focusing on the 3*R*s—*reduce, reuse,* and *recycle*— can help accomplish this goal. By incorporating the 3*R*s, product design teams, process managers, and supply-chain personnel can make great strides toward reducing the environmental impact of products—to the benefit of all stakeholders.

Product Design

LO S5.3 *Explain* the 3*R*s for sustainability

Product design is the most critical phase in product life cycle assessment. The decisions that are made during this phase greatly affect materials, quality, cost, processes, related packaging and logistics, and ultimately how the product will be processed when discarded. During design, one of the goals is to incorporate a systems view in the product or service design that lowers the environmental impact. This is the first *R*. Such an approach reduces waste and energy costs at the supplier, in the logistics system, and for the end user. For instance, by taking a systems view, Procter & Gamble developed *Tide Coldwater*, a detergent that gets clothes clean with cold water, saving the consumer about three-fourths of the energy used in a typical wash.

Other successful design efforts include:

- Boston's Park Plaza Hotel eliminated bars of soap and bottles of shampoo by installing pump dispensers in its bathrooms, saving the need for 1 million plastic containers a year.
- UPS reduced the amount of materials it needs for its envelopes by developing its *reusable express envelopes,* which are made from 100% recycled fiber. These envelopes are designed to be used twice, and after the second use, the envelope can be recycled.
- Coca-Cola's redesigned Dasani bottle reduced the amount of plastic needed and is now 30% lighter than when it was introduced.

Product design teams also look for *alternative* materials from which to make their products. Innovating with alternative materials can be expensive, but it may make autos, trucks, and aircraft more environmentally friendly while improving payload and fuel efficiency. Aircraft and auto makers, for example, constantly seek lighter materials to use in their products. Lighter materials translate into better fuel economy, fewer carbon emissions, and reduced operating cost. For instance:

- Mercedes is building some car exteriors from a banana fiber that is both biodegradable and lightweight.
- Some Fords have seat upholstery made from recycled plastic soda bottles and old clothing.

Dan Bates/The Herald/AP Images

Alaska Airlines

An excellent place for operations managers to begin the sustainability challenge is with good product design. Here Tom Malone, CEO, of MicroGreen Polymers, discusses the company's new ultra light cup with production personnel (left). The cup can be recycled over and over and never go to a landfill. Another new design is the "winglet" (right). These wing tip extensions increase climb speed, reduce noise by 6.5%, cut CO_2 emissions by 5%, and save 6% in fuel costs. Alaska Air has retrofitted its entire 737 fleet with winglets, saving $20 million annually.

- Boeing is using carbon fiber, epoxy composites, and titanium graphite laminate to reduce weight in its new 787 Dreamliner.

Product designers often must decide between two or more environmentally friendly design alternatives. Example S1 deals with a *design for disassembly* cost–benefit analysis. This process focuses on the second and third *R*s: reuse and recycle. The design team analyzes the amount of revenue that might be reclaimed against the cost of disposing of the product at its end-of-life.

STUDENT TIP

A fourth *R*, *improved reputation,* follows the success of reduce, reuse, and recycle.

Example S1

LO S5.4 *Calculate* design for disassembly

DESIGN FOR DISASSEMBLY

Sound Barrier, Inc., needs to decide which of two speaker designs is better environmentally.

APPROACH ▶ The design team collected the following information for two audio speaker designs, the *Harmonizer* and the *Rocker:*

1. Resale value of the components minus the cost of transportation to the disassembly facility
2. Revenue collected from recycling
3. Processing costs, which include disassembly, sorting, cleaning, and packaging
4. Disposal costs, including transportation, fees, taxes, and processing time

SOLUTION ▶ The design team developed the following revenue and cost information for the two speaker design alternatives:

Harmonizer

PART	RESALE REVENUE PER UNIT	RECYCLING REVENUE PER UNIT	PROCESSING COST PER UNIT	DISPOSAL COST PER UNIT
Printed circuit board	$5.93	$1.54	$3.46	$0.00
Laminate back	0.00	0.00	4.53	1.74
Coil	8.56	5.65	6.22	0.00
Processor	9.17	2.65	3.12	0.00
Frame	0.00	0.00	2.02	1.23
Aluminum case	11.83	2.10	2.98	0.00
Total	$35.49	$11.94	$22.33	$2.97

Rocker

PART	RESALE REVENUE PER UNIT	RECYCLING REVENUE PER UNIT	PROCESSING COST PER UNIT	DISPOSAL COST PER UNIT
Printed circuit board	$7.88	$3.54	$2.12	$0.00
Coil	6.67	4.56	3.32	0.00
Frame	0.00	0.00	4.87	1.97
Processor	8.45	4.65	3.43	0.00
Plastic case	0.00	0.00	4.65	3.98
Total	$23.00	$12.75	$18.39	$5.95

Using the Equation (S5-1), the design team can compare the two design alternatives:

$$\text{Revenue retrieval} = \text{Total resale revenue} + \text{Total recycling revenue} - \text{Total processing cost} - \text{Total disposal cost} \quad \text{(S5-1)}$$

Revenue retrieval for Harmonizer = $35.49 + $11.94 − $22.33 − $2.97 = $22.13

Revenue retrieval for Rocker = $23.00 + $12.75 − $18.39 − $5.95 = $11.41

INSIGHT ▶ After analyzing both environmental revenue and cost components of each speaker design, the design team finds that the Harmonizer is the better environmental design alternative as it achieves a higher revenue retrieval opportunity. Note that the team is assuming that both products have the same market acceptance, profitability, and environmental impact.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ What would happen if there was a change in the supply chain that caused the processing and disposal costs to triple for the laminate back part of the Harmonizer? [Answer: The revenue retrieval from the Harmonizer is $35.49 + $11.94 − $31.39 − $6.45 = $9.59. This is less than the Rocker's revenue retrieval of $11.41, so the Rocker becomes the better environmental design alternative, as it achieves a higher revenue retrieval opportunity.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S5.1, S5.2, S5.3, S5.9, S5.12, S5.13, S5.14

Production Process

Manufacturers look for ways to reduce the amount of resources in the production process. Opportunities to reduce environmental impact during production typically revolve around the themes of energy, water, and environmental contamination. Conservation of energy and improving energy efficiency come from the use of alternative energy and more energy-efficient machinery. For example:

- S.C. Johnson built its own power plant that runs on natural gas and methane piped in from a nearby landfill, cutting back its reliance on coal-fired power.
- PepsiCo developed *Resource Conservation (ReCon)*, a diagnostic tool for understanding and reducing in-plant water and energy usage. In its first 2 years, *ReCon* helped sites across the world identify 2.2 billion liters of water savings, with a corresponding cost savings of nearly $2.7 million.
- Frito-Lay decided to extract water from potatoes, which are 80% water. Each year, a single factory processes 350,000 tons of potatoes, and as those potatoes are processed, the company reuses the extracted water for that factory's daily production.

STUDENT TIP Las Vegas, always facing a water shortage, pays residents $40,000 an acre to take out lawns and replace them with rocks and native plants.

These and similar successes in the production process reduce both costs and environmental concerns. Less energy is consumed, and less material is going to landfills.

Logistics

As products move along in the supply chain, managers strive to achieve efficient route and delivery networks, just as they seek to drive down operating cost. Doing so reduces environmental impact. Management analytics (such as linear programming, queuing, and vehicle routing software) help firms worldwide optimize elaborate supply-chain and distribution networks. Networks of container ships, airplanes, trains, and trucks are being analyzed to

NG Images/Alamy

Ted Foxx/Alamy

Three key success factors in the trucking industry are (1) getting shipments to customers promptly (rapid response), (2) keeping trucks busy (capacity utilization), and (3) buying inexpensive fuel (driving down costs). Many firms have now developed devices like the one shown on the right to track location of trucks and facilitate communication between drivers and dispatchers. Some systems use global positioning satellites (shown on the left), to speed shipment response, maximize utilization of the truck, and ensure purchase of fuel at the most economical location. Sensors are also being added inside trailers. These sensors communicate whether the trailer is empty or full and detect if the trailer is connected to a truck or riding on a railroad car.

reduce the number of miles traveled or the number of hours required to make deliveries. For example:

- UPS has found that making left turns increases the time it takes to make deliveries. This in turn increases fuel usage and carbon emissions. So UPS plans its delivery truck routes with the fewest possible left turns. Likewise, airplanes fly at different altitudes and routes to take advantage of favorable wind conditions in an effort to reduce fuel use and carbon emissions.
- Food distribution companies now have trucks with three temperature zones (frozen, cool, and nonrefrigerated) instead of using three different types of trucks.
- Whirlpool radically revised its packaging to reduce "dings and dents" of appliances during delivery, generating huge savings in transportation and warranty costs.

To further enhance logistic efficiency, operations managers also evaluate equipment alternatives, taking into account cost, payback period, and the firm's stated environmental objectives. Example S2 deals with decision making that takes into account life cycle ownership costs. A firm must decide whether to pay *more* up front for vehicles to further its sustainability goals or to pay *less* up front for vehicles that do not.

Example S2

LIFE CYCLE OWNERSHIP AND CROSSOVER ANALYSIS

Blue Star is starting a new distribution service that delivers auto parts to the service departments of auto dealerships in the local area. Blue Star has found two light-duty trucks that would do the job well, so now it needs to pick one to perform this new service. The Ford TriVan costs $28,000 to buy and uses regular unleaded gasoline, with an average fuel efficiency of 24 miles per gallon. The TriVan has an operating cost of $.20 per mile. The Honda CityVan, a hybrid truck, costs $32,000 to buy and uses regular unleaded gasoline and battery power; it gets an average of 37 miles per gallon. The CityVan has an operating cost of $.22 per mile. The distance traveled annually is estimated to be 22,000 miles, with the life of either truck expected to be 8 years. The average gas price is $4.25 per gallon.

APPROACH ► Blue Star applies Equation (S5-2) to evaluate total life cycle cost for each vehicle:

$$\text{Total life cycle cost} = \text{Cost of vehicle} + \text{Life cycle cost of fuel} + \text{Life cycle operating cost} \quad \text{(S5-2)}$$

a) Based on life cycle cost, which model truck is the best choice?
b) How many miles does Blue Star need to put on a truck for the costs to be equal?
c) What is the crossover point in years?

SOLUTION ▶

a) Ford TriVan:

$$\text{Total life-cycle cost} = \$28{,}000 + \left[\frac{22{,}000\frac{miles}{year}}{24\frac{miles}{gallon}}\right](\$4.25/gallon)(8\ years) + \left(22{,}000\frac{miles}{year}\right)(\$.20/mile)(8\ years)$$

$$= \$28{,}000 + \$31{,}167 + \$35{,}200 = \$94{,}367$$

Honda CityVan:

$$\text{Total life-cycle cost} = \$32{,}000 + \left[\frac{22{,}000\frac{miles}{year}}{37\frac{miles}{gallon}}\right](\$4.25/gallon)(8\ years) + \left(22{,}000\frac{miles}{year}\right)(\$.22/mile)(8\ years)$$

$$= \$32{,}000 + \$20{,}216 + \$38{,}720 = \$90{,}936$$

b) Blue Star lets M be the crossover (break-even) point in miles, sets the two life cycle cost equations equal to each other, and solves for M:

$$\text{Total cost for Ford TriVan} = \text{Total cost for Honda CityVan}$$

$$\$28{,}000 + \left[\frac{4.25\frac{\$}{gallon}}{24\frac{miles}{gallon}} + .20\frac{\$}{mile}\right](M\ miles) = \$32{,}000 + \left[\frac{4.25\frac{\$}{gallon}}{37\frac{miles}{gallon}} + .22\frac{\$}{mile}\right](M\ miles)$$

or,

$$\$28{,}000 + \left(.3770\frac{\$}{mile}\right)(M) = \$32{,}000 + \left(.3349\frac{\$}{mile}\right)(M)$$

or,

$$\left(.0421\frac{\$}{mile}\right)(M) = \$4{,}000$$

$$M = \frac{\$4{,}000}{.0421\frac{\$}{mile}} = 95{,}012\ miles$$

c) The crossover point in years is:

$$\text{Crossover point} = \frac{95{,}012\ miles}{22{,}000\frac{miles}{year}} = 4.32\ years$$

INSIGHTS ▶

a) Honda CityVan is the best choice, even though the initial fixed cost and variable operating cost per mile are higher. The savings comes from the better fuel mileage (more miles per gallon) for the Honda CityVan.
b) The crossover (break-even) point is at 95,012 miles, which indicates that at this mileage point, the cost for either truck is the same.
c) It will take 4.32 years to recoup the cost of purchasing and operating either vehicle. It will cost Blue Star approximately $.03 per mile less to operate the Honda CityVan than the Ford TriVan over the 8-year expected life.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the cost of gasoline drops to $3.25, what will be the total life-cycle cost of each van, the break-even point in miles, and the crossover point in years? [Answer: The cost of the Ford TriVan is $87,033; the Honda CityVan costs $86,179; the break-even is 144,927 miles; and the crossover point is 6.59 years.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S5.4, S5.5, S5.6, S5.10, S5.11, S5.15, S5.16, S5.17, S5.18, S5.19

End-of-Life Phase

We noted earlier that during product design, managers need to consider what happens to a product or its materials after the product reaches its end-of-life stage. Products with less material, with recycled material, or with recyclable materials all contribute to sustainability efforts, reducing the need for the "burn or bury" decision and conserving scarce natural resources.

Innovative and sustainability-conscious companies are now designing **closed-loop supply chains**, also called *reverse logistics*. Firms can no longer sell a product and then forget about it. They need to design and implement end-of-life systems for the physical return of products that facilitate recycling or reuse.

Closed-loop supply chains
Supply chains that consider forward and reverse product flows over the entire life cycle.

Caterpillar, through its expertise in remanufacturing technology and processes, has devised *Cat Reman,* a remanufacturing initiative, in an effort to show its commitment to sustainability. Caterpillar remanufactures parts and components that provide same-as-new performance and reliability at a fraction of new cost, while reducing the impact on the environment. The remanufacturing program is based on an exchange system where customers return a used component in exchange for a remanufactured product. The result is lower operating costs for the customer, reduced material waste, and less need for raw material to make new products. In a 1-year period, Caterpillar took back 2.1 million end-of-life units and remanufactured over 130 million pounds of material from recycled iron.

The *OM in Action* box "From Assembly Lines to Green Disassembly Lines" describes one automaker's car design philosophy to facilitate the disassembly, recycling, and reuse of its autos that have reached their end-of-life.

Regulations and Industry Standards

LO S5.5 *Explain* the impact of sustainable regulations on operations

Government, industry standards, and company policies are all important factors in operational decisions. Failure to recognize these constraints can be costly. Over the last 100 years, we have seen development of regulations, standards, and policies to guide managers in product design, manufacturing/assembly, and disassembly/disposal.

To guide decisions in *product design*, U.S. laws and regulations, such as those of the Food and Drug Administration, Consumer Product Safety Commission, and National Highway Safety Administration, provide guidance and often explicit regulations.

Manufacturing and assembly activities have their own set of regulatory agencies providing guidance and standards of operations. These include the Occupational Safety and Health

OM in Action From Assembly Lines to Green Disassembly Lines

A century has passed since assembly lines were developed to make automobiles—and now we're developing *disassembly* lines to take them apart. So many automobiles are disassembled that recycling is the 16th-largest industry in the U.S. The motivation for this comes from many sources, including mandated industry recycling standards and a growing consumer interest in purchasing cars based on how "green" they are.

New car designs have traditionally been unfriendly to recyclers, with little thought given to disassembly. Some components, such as air bags, are hard to handle and dangerous, and they take time to disassemble. However, manufacturers now design in such a way that materials can be easily reused in the next generation of cars. The 2015 Mercedes S-class is 95% recyclable. BMW has disassembly plants in Europe, Japan, New York, Los Angeles, and Orlando.

A giant 200,000-square-foot facility in Baltimore (called CARS) can disassemble up to 30,000 vehicles per year. At CARS's initial "greening station," special tools puncture tanks and drain fluids and remove the battery and gas tank. Then wheels, doors, hood, and trunk are removed; next come the interior items; plastic parts are removed and sorted for recycling; then glass and interior and trunk materials. Eventually the chassis is a bale and sold as a commodity to minimills that use scrap steel. Reusable parts are bar-coded and entered into a database. The photo shows an operator controlling the car recycling plant.

Ton Koene/Alamy

Sources: Wall Street Journal (April 29, 2008) and *Time* (February 4, 2010).

Administration (OSHA), Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), and many state and local agencies that regulate workers' rights and employment standards.

STUDENT TIP

A group of 100 apparel brands and retailers have created the Eco Index to display an eco-value on a tag, like the Energy Star rating does for appliances.

U.S. agencies that govern the *disassembly and disposal of hazardous products* include the EPA and the Department of Transportation. As product life spans shorten due to ever-changing trends and innovation, product designers are under added pressure to *design for disassembly*. This encourages designers to create products that can be disassembled and whose components can be recovered, minimizing impact on the environment.

Organizations are obliged by society and regulators to reduce harm to consumers, employees, and the environment. The result is a proliferation of community, state, federal, and even international laws that often complicate compliance. The lack of coordination of regulations and reporting requirements between jurisdictions adds not just complexity but cost.

From the following examples it is apparent that nearly all industries must abide by regulations in some form or another:

- Commercial homebuilders are required not just to manage water runoff but to have a pollution prevention plan for each site.
- Public drinking water systems must comply with the Federal Safe Drinking Water Act's arsenic standard, even for existing facilities.
- Hospitals are required to meet the terms of the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act, which governs the storage and handling of hazardous material.

The consequences of ignoring regulations can be disastrous and even criminal. The EPA investigates environmental crimes in which companies and individuals are held accountable. Prison time and expensive fines can be handed down. (British Petroleum paid billions of dollars in fines in the past few years for breaking U.S. environmental and safety laws.) Even if a crime has not been committed, the financial impacts and customer upheaval can be disastrous to companies that do not comply with regulations. Due to lack of supplier oversight, Mattel, Inc., the largest U.S. toymaker, has recalled over 10 million toys in recent years because of consumer health hazards such as lead paint.

International Environmental Policies and Standards

Organizations such as the U.N. Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC), International Organization for Standardization (ISO), and governments around the globe are guiding businesses to reduce environmental impacts from disposal of materials to reductions in greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions. Some governments are implementing laws that mandate the outright reduction of GHG emissions by forcing companies to pay taxes based on the amount of GHG emissions that are emitted. We now provide an overview of some of the international standards that apply to how businesses operate, manufacture, and distribute goods and services.

European Union Emissions Trading System The European Union has developed and implemented the EU Emissions Trading System (EUETS) to combat climate change. This is the key tool for reducing industrial greenhouse gas emissions in the EU. The EUETS works on the "cap-and-trade" principle. This means there is a cap, or limit, on the total amount of certain greenhouse gases that can be emitted by factories, power plants, and airlines in EU airspace. Within this cap, companies receive emission allowances, which they can sell to, or buy from, one another as needed.

ISO 14000

A series of environmental management standards established by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO).

ISO 14000 The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) is widely known for its contributions in ISO 9000 quality assurance standards (discussed in Chapter 6). The ISO 14000 family grew out of the ISO's commitment to support the 1992 U.N. objective of sustainable development. ISO 14000 is a series of environmental management standards that contain five core elements: (1) environmental management, (2) auditing, (3) performance evaluation, (4) labeling, and (5) life cycle assessment. Companies that demonstrate these elements may apply for certification. ISO 14000 has several advantages:

- Positive public image and reduced exposure to liability
- Good systematic approach to pollution prevention through minimization of ecological impact of products and activities

OM in Action Subaru's Clean, Green Set of Wheels with ISO 14001

"Going green" had humble beginnings. First, it was newspapers, soda cans and bottles, and corrugated packaging—the things you typically throw into your own recycling bins. Similarly, at Subaru's Lafayette, Indiana, plant, the process of becoming the first completely waste-free auto plant in North America began with employees dropping these items in containers throughout the plant. Then came employee empowerment. "We had 268 suggestions for different things to improve our recycling efforts," said Denise Coogan, plant ISO 14001 environmental compliance leader.

Some ideas were easy to handle. "With plastic shrink wrap, we found some (recyclers) wouldn't take colored shrink wrap. So we went back to our vendors and asked for only clear shrink wrap," Coogan said. Some suggestions were a lot dirtier. "We went dumpster diving to see what we were throwing away and see what we could do with it."

The last load of waste generated by Subaru made its way to a landfill 7 years ago. Since then, everything that enters the plant eventually exits as a usable product. Coogan adds, "We didn't redefine 'zero.' Zero means zero. Nothing from our manufacturing process goes to the landfill."

Last year alone, the Subaru plant recycled 13,142 tons of steel, 1,448 tons of paper products, 194 tons of plastics, 10 tons of solvent-soaked rags, and 4 tons of light bulbs. Doing so conserved 29,200 trees, 670,000 gallons of oil, 34,700 gallons of gas, 10 million gallons of water, and 53,000 million watts of electricity. "Going green" isn't easy, but it can be done!

Sources: IndyStar (May 10, 2014) and *BusinessWeek* (June 6, 2011).

- Compliance with regulatory requirements and opportunities for competitive advantage
- Reduction in the need for multiple audits

ISO 14000 standards have been implemented by more than 200,000 organizations in 155 countries. Companies that have implemented ISO 14000 standards report environmental and economic benefits such as reduced raw material/resource use, reduced energy consumption, lower distribution costs, improved corporate image, improved process efficiency, reduced waste generation and disposal costs, and better utilization of recoverable resources.

Summary

If a firm wants to be viable and competitive, it must have a strategy for corporate social responsibility and sustainability. Operations and supply-chain managers understand that they have a critical role in a firm's sustainability objectives. Their actions impact all the stakeholders. They must continually seek new and innovative ways to design, produce, deliver, and dispose of profitable, customer-satisfying products while adhering to many environmental regulations. Without the expertise and commitment of operations and supply-chain managers, firms are unable to meet their sustainability obligations.

Key Terms

Corporate social responsibility (CSR) (p. 232)
Shared value (p. 232)
Sustainability (p. 233)
Carbon footprint (p. 235)
Economic sustainability (p. 235)
Life cycle assessment (p. 236)
Closed-loop supply chains (p. 241)
ISO 14000 (p. 242)

Discussion Questions

1. Why must companies practice corporate social responsibility?
2. Find statements of sustainability for a well-known company online and analyze that firm's policy.
3. Explain sustainability.
4. Discuss the 3*R*s.
5. For ISO 14000 list (a) its five core elements, (b) its advantages, and (c) its environmental and economic benefits.
6. How would you classify a company as green?
7. Why are sustainable business practices important?

Solved Problems

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM S5.1

The design team for Superior Electronics is creating a mobile audio player and must choose between two design alternatives. Which is the better environmental design alternative, based on achieving a higher revenue retrieval opportunity?

SOLUTION

Collecting the resale revenue per unit, recycling revenue per unit, processing cost per unit, and the disposal cost per unit, the design team computes the revenue retrieval for each design:

Design 1

PART	RESALE REVENUE PER UNIT	RECYCLING REVENUE PER UNIT	PROCESSING COST PER UNIT	DISPOSAL COST PER UNIT
Tuner	$4.93	$2.08	$2.98	$0.56
Speaker	0.00	0.00	4.12	1.23
Case	6.43	7.87	4.73	0.00
Total	$11.36	$9.95	$11.83	$1.79

Design 2

PART	RESALE REVENUE PER UNIT	RECYCLING REVENUE PER UNIT	PROCESSING COST PER UNIT	DISPOSAL COST PER UNIT
Tuner	$6.91	$4.92	$3.41	$2.13
Case	5.83	3.23	2.32	1.57
Amplifier	1.67	2.34	4.87	0.00
Speaker	0.00	0.00	3.43	1.97
Total	$14.41	$10.49	$14.03	$5.67

Using the following formula [Equation (S5-1)], compare the two design alternatives:

Revenue retrieval = Total resale revenue + Total recycling revenue − Total processing cost − Total disposal cost

Revenue retrieval Design 1 = $11.36 + $9.95 − $11.83 − $1.79 = $7.69

Revenue retrieval Design 2 = $14.41 + $10.49 − $14.03 − $5.67 = $5.20

Design 1 brings in the most revenue from its design when the product has reached its end-of-life.

SOLVED PROBLEM S5.2

The City of High Point is buying new school buses for the local school system. High Point has found two models of school buses that it is interested in. Eagle Mover costs $80,000 to buy and uses diesel fuel, with an average fuel efficiency of 10 miles per gallon. Eagle Mover has an operating cost of $.28 per mile. Yellow Transport, a hybrid bus, costs $105,000 to buy and uses diesel fuel and battery power, getting an average of 22 miles per gallon. Yellow Transport has an operating cost of $.32 per mile. The distance traveled annually is determined to be 25,000 miles, with the expected life of either bus to be 10 years. The average diesel price is $3.50 per gallon.

SOLUTION

a) Based on life cycle cost, which bus is the better choice?

Eagle Mover:

$$\$80{,}000 + \left[\frac{25{,}000\frac{miles}{year}}{10\frac{miles}{gallon}}\right](\$3.50/gallon)(10\ years) + \left(25{,}000\frac{miles}{year}\right)(\$.28/mile)(10\ years)$$
$$= \$80{,}000 + \$87{,}500 + \$70{,}000 = \$237{,}500$$

Yellow Transport:

$$\$105{,}000 + \left[\frac{25{,}000\frac{miles}{year}}{22\frac{miles}{gallon}}\right](\$3.50/gallon)(10\ years) + \left(25{,}000\frac{miles}{year}\right)(\$.32/mile)(10\ years)$$
$$= \$105{,}000 + \$39{,}773 + \$80{,}000 = \$224{,}773$$

Yellow Transport is the better choice.

b) How many miles does the school district need to put on a bus for costs to be equal?

Let M be the break-even point in miles, set the equations equal to each other, and solve for M:

Total cost for Eagle Mover = Total cost for Yellow Transport

$$\$80{,}000 + \left[\frac{3.50\frac{\$}{gallon}}{10\frac{miles}{gallon}} + .28\frac{\$}{mile}\right](M\ miles) = \$105{,}000 + \left[\frac{3.50\frac{\$}{gallon}}{22\frac{miles}{gallon}} + .32\frac{\$}{mile}\right](M\ miles)$$

$$\$80{,}000 + \left(.630\frac{\$}{mile}\right)(M) = \$105{,}000 + \left(.479\frac{\$}{mile}\right)(M)$$

$$\left(.151\frac{\$}{mile}\right)(M) = \$25{,}000$$

$$M = \frac{\$25{,}000}{.151\frac{\$}{mile}} = 165{,}563\ miles$$

c) What is the crossover point in years?

$$\text{Crossover point} = \frac{165{,}563\ miles}{25{,}000\frac{miles}{year}} = 6.62\ years$$

Problems

Problems S5.1–S5.19 relate to Design and Production for Sustainability

••**S5.1** The Brew House needs to decide which of two coffee maker designs is better environmentally. Using the following tables, determine which model is the better design alternative.

Brew Master

PART	RESALE REVENUE PER UNIT	RECYCLING REVENUE PER UNIT	PROCESSING COST PER UNIT	DISPOSAL COST PER UNIT
Metal frame	$1.65	$2.87	$1.25	$0.75
Timer	0.50	0.00	1.53	1.45
Plug/cord	4.25	5.65	6.22	0.00
Coffee pot	2.50	2.54	2.10	1.35

Brew Mini

PART	RESALE REVENUE PER UNIT	RECYCLING REVENUE PER UNIT	PROCESSING COST PER UNIT	DISPOSAL COST PER UNIT
Plastic frame	$1.32	$3.23	$0.95	$0.95
Plug/cord	3.95	4.35	5.22	0.00
Coffee pot	2.25	2.85	2.05	1.25

••**S5.2** Using the information in Problem S5.1, which design alternative is the better environmental choice if the Brew House decided to add a timer to the Brew Mini model? The timer revenue and costs are identical to those of the Brew Master.

••**S5.3** Using the information in Problem S5.1, which design alternative is the better environmental choice if the Brew House decided to remove the timer from the Brew Master model?

••**S5.4** A small commercial company is about to buy cars for the sales people. After an extensive market research the company is about to decide which one of the following two alternatives to choose based on the information provided in the following table.

CHARACTERISTICS	CAR 1	CAR 2
Purchase cost (€)	21,000	23,000
Operating cost (€ per mile)	0,14	0,10
Average fuel efficiency (miles per gallon)	33	36
Average fuel price	4.1 € per gallon	
Annual distance	16000 miles	
Useful life of car	4 years	

Compare the two car alternatives and estimate:
a) the total life cycle cost of each alternative
b) the crossover point in miles, and
c) the crossover point in years

••**S5.5** In problem S5.4, fuel efficiency was based in using the cars in city traffic. Estimate the total life cycle cost of each alternative, the crossover point in both miles and years, if the cars are used for motorway travelling where the average efficiencies becomes 44 and 47 miles per gallon for Car 1 and Car 2, respectively?

••**S5.6** Repeat Problem S5.4 but now the average fuel price drops to $3.8 per mile.

••**S5.7** In a municipality where a significant amount of recyclable waste is generated, the city has granted permits to waste collectors to take charge of the recyclables and have an additional sources of income by selling them. Now the city wants to establish an environmental waste management program where all the waste will be collected in a systematic way. In this way it will generate sales from a number of sources, such as sale of recyclables, sale of compost, etc.

The investment needed is estimated to be €100,000. To run the business the city management investigates the following four alternatives:

Alternative One: City takes total responsibility for the program and no waste collectors are employed. Costs and sales are as follows:
- Fixed Cost = €100,000
- Variable cost = €5000 per month
- Sales generated by selling the compost = €7,000 per month

Alternative Two: City takes total responsibility for the program and employees the waste collectors too. Now variable costs reduces to €2000 per month (2nd job for waste collectors)

Alternative Three: City takes total responsibility for the program and employees the waste collectors too. Central government subsidizes the program contributing €1000 per month.

••**S5.8** In Problem S5.7, another alternative (Alternative Four) is investigated, where:City takes total responsibility for the program and employees a number of local people with a variable cost of €1000 per month. Also in the spirit of social responsibility, it initiates a scheme where the local people enjoy all the profits but they pay a monthly levy to City of €2000. How is this alternative compared with the others?

••**S5.9** Mercedes is assessing which of two windshield suppliers provides a better environmental design for disassembly. Using the tables below, select between PG Glass and Glass Unlimited.

PG Glass

PART	RESALE REVENUE PER UNIT	RECYCLING REVENUE PER UNIT	PROCESSING COST PER UNIT	DISPOSAL COST PER UNIT
Glass	$12	$10	$6	$2
Steel frame	2	1	1	1
Rubber insulation	1	2	1	1

Glass Unlimited

PART	RESALE REVENUE PER UNIT	RECYCLING REVENUE PER UNIT	PROCESSING COST PER UNIT	DISPOSAL COST PER UNIT
Reflective glass	$15	$12	$7	$3
Aluminium frame	4	3	2	2
Rubber insulation	2	2	1	1

••**S5.10** Environmentally conscious Susan has been told that a new electric car will only generate 6 ounces of greenhouse gases (GHG) per mile, but that a standard internal combustion car is double that at 12 ounces per mile. However, the nature of electric cars is such that the new technology and electric batteries generate 30,000 lbs. of GHG to manufacture and another 10,000 lbs. to recycle. A standard car generates only 14,000 lbs. of GHG to manufacture, and recycling with established technology is only 1,000 lbs. Susan is interested in taking a systems approach that considers the life-cycle impact of her decision. How many miles must she drive the electric car for it to be the preferable decision in terms of reducing greenhouse gases?

•••**S5.11** A Southern Georgia school district is considering ordering 53 propane-fueled school buses. "They're healthier, they're cleaner burning, and they're much quieter than the diesel option," said a school administrator. Propane-powered buses also reduce greenhouse gasses by 22% compared to gasoline-powered buses and 6% compared to diesel ones. But they come at a premium—$103,000 for a propane model, $15,000 more than the diesel equivalent.

The propane bus operating cost (above and beyond fuel cost) is 30 cents/mile, compared to 40 cents for the diesel. Diesel fuel costs about $2/gallon in Georgia, about $1 more than propane.

Bus mileage is 12 mpg for the propane model vs. 10 mpg for diesel. The life of a school bus in the district averages 9 years, and each bus travels an average of 30,000 miles per year because the district is so large and rural.

Which bus is the better choice based on a life-cycle analysis?

••**S5.12** Green Forever, a manufacturer of lawn equipment, has preliminary drawings for two grass trimmer designs. Charla Fraley's job is to determine which is better environmentally. Specifically, she is to use the following data to help the company determine:

a) The revenue retrieval for the GF Deluxe
b) The revenue retrieval for the Premium Mate
c) Which model is the better design alternative based on revenue retrieval

GF Deluxe

PART	RESALE REVENUE PER UNIT	RECYCLING REVENUE PER UNIT	PROCESSING COST PER UNIT	DISPOSAL COST PER UNIT
Metal drive	$3.27	$4.78	$1.05	$0.85
Battery	0.00	3.68	6.18	3.05
Motor housing	3.93	2.95	2.05	1.25
Trimmer head	1.25	0.75	1.00	0.65

Premium Mate

PART	RESALE REVENUE PER UNIT	RECYCLING REVENUE PER UNIT	PROCESSING COST PER UNIT	DISPOSAL COST PER UNIT
Metal drive	$3.18	$3.95	$1.15	$0.65
Battery	0.00	2.58	4.98	2.90
Motor housing	4.05	3.45	2.45	1.90
Trimmer head	1.05	0.85	1.10	0.75

••**S5.13** Green Forever (see Problem S5.12) has decided to add an automatic string feeder system with cost and revenue estimates as shown below to the GF Deluxe model.

a) What is the new revenue retrieval value for each model?
b) Which model is the better environmental design alternative?

PART	RESALE REVENUE PER UNIT	RECYCLING REVENUE PER UNIT	PROCESSING COST PER UNIT	DISPOSAL COST PER UNIT
String feeder system	$1.05	$1.25	$1.50	$1.40

••**S5.14** Green Forever's challenge (see Problem S5.12) is to determine which design alternative is the better environmental choice if it uses a different battery for the Premium Mate. The alternate battery revenue and costs are as follows:

PART	RESALE REVENUE PER UNIT	RECYCLING REVENUE PER UNIT	PROCESSING COST PER UNIT	DISPOSAL COST PER UNIT
Battery	$0.00	$3.68	$4.15	$3.00

a) What is the revenue retrieval for the GF Deluxe?
b) What is the revenue retrieval for the Premium Mate?
c) Which is the better environmental design alternative?

••**S5.15** Hartley Auto Supply delivers parts to area auto service centers and is replacing its fleet of delivery vehicles. What is the total vehicle life-cycle cost of this gasoline engine truck given the information provided in the following table?

VEHICLE PURCHASE COST	$25,000
VEHICLE OPERATING COST PER MILE	$0.13
USEFUL LIFE OF VEHICLE	10 years
MILES PER YEAR	18,000
MILES PER GALLON	25
AVERAGE FUEL PRICE PER GALLON	$2.55

••**S5.16** Given the data in Problem S5.15 and an alternative hybrid vehicle with the specifications shown below:

a) What is the crossover point in miles?
b) Which vehicle is has the lowest cost until the crossover point is reached?

VEHICLE PURCHASE COST	$29,000
VEHICLE OPERATING COST PER MILE	$0.08
USEFUL LIFE OF VEHICLE	10 years
MILES PER YEAR	18,000
MILES PER GALLON	40
AVERAGE FUEL PRICE PER GALLON	$2.55

•**S5.17** Based the crossover point in miles found in Problem S5.16, what is this point in years?

••**S5.18** Using the data from Problem S5.16, if gas prices rose to $3.00 per gallon, what would be the new crossover point in miles?

•**S5.19** Using the new crossover point in Problem S5.18, how many years does it take to reach that point?

CASE STUDIES

Building Sustainability at the Orlando Magic's Amway Center

Video Case

When the Amway Center opened in Orlando in 2011, it became the first LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design) gold–certified professional basketball arena in the country. It took 10 years for Orlando Magic's management to develop a plan for the new state-of-the-art sports and entertainment center. The community received not only an entertainment center but an environmentally sustainable building to showcase in its revitalized downtown location. "We wanted to make sure we brought the most sustainable measures to the construction, so in operation we can be a good partner to our community and our environment," states CEO Alex Martins. The new 875,000-square foot facility—almost triple the size of the Amway Arena it replaced—is now the benchmark for other sports facilities.

Here are a few of the elements in the Amway Center project that helped earn the LEED certification:

- The roof of the building is designed to minimize daytime heat gain by using reflective and insulated materials.
- Rainwater and air-conditioning condensation are captured and used for irrigation.
- There is 40% less water usage than in similar arenas (saving 800,000 gallons per year), mostly through use of high-efficiency restrooms, including low-flow, dual-flush toilets.
- There is 20% energy savings (about $750,000 per year) with the use of high-efficiency heating and cooling systems.
- The center used environmentally friendly building materials and recycled 83% of the wood, steel, and concrete construction waste that would have ended up in a landfill.
- There is preferred parking for hybrids and other energy-efficient cars.
- The center is maintained using green-friendly cleaning products.

LEED certification means five environmental measures and one design measure must be met when a facility is graded by the U.S. Green Building Council, which is a nationally accepted benchmark program. The categories are sustainability of site, water efficiency, energy, materials/resources, indoor environmental quality, and design innovation.

Other Amway Center design features include efficient receiving docks, food storage layouts, and venue change-over systems. Massive LED electronic signage controlled from a central control room also contributes to lower operating costs. From an operations management perspective, combining these savings with the significant ongoing savings from reduced water and energy usage will yield a major reduction in annual operating expenses. "We think the LEED certification is not only great for the environment but good business overall," says Martins.

Fernando Medina

Discussion Questions*

1. Find a LEED-certified building in your area and compare its features to those of the Amway Center.
2. What does a facility need to do to earn the gold LEED rating? What other ratings exist?
3. Why did the Orlando Magic decide to "go green" in its new building?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before addressing these questions.

Green Manufacturing and Sustainability at Frito-Lay

Video Case

Frito-Lay, the multi-billion-dollar snack food giant, requires vast amounts of water, electricity, natural gas, and fuel to produce its 41 well-known brands. In keeping with growing environmental concerns, Frito-Lay has initiated ambitious plans to produce environmentally friendly snacks. But even environmentally friendly snacks require resources. Recognizing the environmental impact, the firm is an aggressive "green manufacturer," with major initiatives in resource reduction and sustainability.

For instance, the company's energy management program includes a variety of elements designed to engage employees in reducing energy consumption. These elements include scorecards and customized action plans that empower employees and recognize their achievements.

At Frito-Lay's factory in Casa Grande, Arizona, more than 500,000 pounds of potatoes arrive every day to be washed, sliced, fried, seasoned, and portioned into bags of Lay's and Ruffles chips. The process consumes enormous amounts of energy and creates vast amounts of wastewater, starch, and potato peelings. Frito-Lay plans to take the plant off the power grid and run it almost entirely on renewable fuels and recycled water. The managers at the Casa Grande plant have also installed skylights in conference rooms, offices, and a finished goods warehouse to reduce the need for artificial light. More fuel-efficient ovens recapture heat from exhaust stacks. Vacuum hoses that pull moisture from potato slices to recapture the water and to reduce the amount of heat needed to cook the potato chips are also being used.

Frito-Lay has also built over 50 acres of solar concentrators behind its Modesto, California, plant to generate solar power. The solar power is being converted into heat and used to cook Sun Chips. A biomass boiler, which will burn agricultural waste, is also planned to provide additional renewable fuel.

Frito-Lay is installing high-tech filters that recycle most of the water used to rinse and wash potatoes. It also recycles corn by-products to make Doritos and other snacks; starch is reclaimed and sold, primarily as animal feed, and leftover sludge is burned to create methane gas to run the plant boiler.

There are benefits besides the potential energy savings. Like many other large corporations, Frito-Lay is striving to establish its green credentials as consumers become more focused on environmental issues. There are marketing opportunities, too. The company, for example, advertises that its popular Sun Chips snacks are made using solar energy.

At Frito-Lay's Florida plant, only 3.5% of the waste goes to landfills, but that is still 1.5 million pounds annually. The goal is zero waste to landfills. The snack food maker earned its spot in the National Environmental Performance Task Program by maintaining a sustained environmental compliance record and

making new commitments to reduce, reuse, and recycle at this facility.

Substantial resource reductions have been made in the production process, with an energy reduction of 21% across Frito-Lay's 34 U.S. plants. But the continuing battle for resource reduction continues. The company is also moving toward biodegradable packaging and seasoning bags and cans and bottles. While these multiyear initiatives are expensive, they have the backing at the highest levels of Frito-Lay as well as corporate executives at PepsiCo, the parent company.

Discussion Questions*

1. What are the sources of pressure on firms such as Frito-Lay to reduce their environmental footprint?
2. Identify the specific techniques that Frito-Lay is using to become a "green manufacturer."
3. Select another company and compare its green policies to those of Frito-Lay.

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before answering these questions.

- **Additional Case Study:** Visit MyOMLab for this free case study:
  Environmental Sustainability at Walmart: Walmart's experiment with global sustainability.

Endnotes

1. The authors wish to thank Dr. Steve Leon, University of Central Florida, for his contributions to this supplement.
2. See related discussions in M. E. Porter and M. R. Kramer, "Creating Shared Value," *Harvard Business Review* (Jan.–Feb. 2011) and M. Pfitzer, V. Bockstette, and M. Stamp, "Innovating for Shared Values," *Harvard Business Review* (Sept. 2013).

Supplement 5 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
CORPORATE SOCIAL RESPONSIBILITY (p. 232)	Managers must consider how the products and services they make affect people and the environment in which they operate. ■ **Corporate social responsibility (CSR)**—Managerial decision making that considers environmental, societal, and financial impacts. ■ **Shared value**—Developing policies and practices that enhance the competitiveness of an organization, while advancing the economic and social conditions in the communities in which it operates.	Concept Question: 1.1
SUSTAINABILITY (pp. 233–235)	■ **Sustainability**—Meeting the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their needs. Systems view—Looking at a product's life from design to disposal, including all of the resources required. The commons—Inputs or resources for a production system that are held by the public. Triple bottom line—Systems needed to support the three *Ps: people, planet*, and *profit*. To support their *people,* many companies evaluate safety in the work environment, the wages paid, work hours/week. Apple, GE, P&G, and Walmart conduct audits of their suppliers to make sure sustainability goals are met. To support the *planet,* operation managers look for ways to reduce the environmental impact of their operations. ■ **Carbon footprint**—A measure of the total GHG emissions caused directly and indirectly by an organization, product, event or person. To support their *profits,* company investments must be sustainable economically. Firms may supplement standard accounting with social accounting.	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4 **VIDEO S5.1** Building Sustainability at the Orlando Magic's Amway Center **VIDEO S5.2** Green Manufacturing and Sustainability at Frito-Lay
DESIGN AND PRODUCTION FOR SUSTAINABILITY (pp. 236–241)	■ **Life cycle assessment**—Analysis of environmental impacts of products from the design stage through end-of-life. The 3*R*s: *reduce, reuse,* and *recycle*. These must be incorporated by design teams, process managers, and supply-chain personnel. Product design is the most critical phase in the product life cycle assessment. Design for disassembly focuses on reuse and recycle. Revenue retrieval = Total resale revenue + Total recycling revenue − Total processing cost − Total disposal cost (S5-1) Manufacturers also look for ways to reduce the amount of scarce resources in the production process. As products move along the supply chain, logistics managers strive to achieve efficient route and delivery networks, which reduce environmental impact. Vehicles are also evaluated on a life cycle ownership cost basis. A firm must decide whether to pay more up front for sustainable vehicles or pay less up front for vehicles that may be less sustainable. Total life cycle cost = Cost of vehicle + Life cycle cost of fuel + Life cycle operating cost (S5-2) ■ **Closed-loop supply chains,** also called *reverse logistics*—Supply chains that consider the product or its materials after the product reaches its end-of-life stage. This includes forward and reverse product flows. Green disassembly lines help take cars apart so that parts can be recycled. Recycling is the 16th-largest industry in the U.S.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4 Problems: S5.1–S5.19 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problems S5.1–S5.2
REGULATIONS AND INDUSTRY STANDARDS (pp. 241–243)	To guide *product design* decisions, U.S. laws and regulations often provide explicit regulations. *Manufacturing and assembly activities* are guided by OSHA, EPA, and many state and local agencies. There are also U.S. agencies that govern the *disassembly and disposal of hazardous products.* International environmental policies and standards come from the U.N., ISO, the EU, and governments around the globe. The EU has implemented the Emissions Trading System to help reduce greenhouse gas emissions. It works on a "cap-and-trade" principle. ■ **ISO 14000**—The International Organization of Standardization family of guidelines for sustainable development. ISO 14000 has been implemented by more than 200,000 organizations in 155 countries. ISO 14001 addresses environmental management systems.	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the supplement and the key terms listed at the end of the supplement.

LO S5.1 Corporate social responsibility includes:
- **a)** doing what's right.
- **b)** having policies that consider environmental, societal, and financial impact.
- **c)** considering a product from design to disposal.
- **d)** all of the above.
- **e)** a and b only.

LO S5.2 Sustainability deals:
- **a)** solely with green products, recycling, global warming, and rain forests.
- **b)** with keeping products that are not recyclable.
- **c)** with meeting the needs of present and future generations.
- **d)** with three views—systems, commons, and defects.
- **e)** with not laying off older workers.

LO S5.3 The sustainability metric that measures the total greenhouse gas emissions caused directly or indirectly by an organization, a product, an event, or a person is known as:
- **a)** Life-cycle assessment
- **b)** Ecological footprint
- **c)** Carbon footprint
- **d)** Food mile
- **e)** Total cost of ownership

LO S5.4 Design for disassembly is:
- **a)** cost–benefit analysis for old parts.
- **b)** analysis of the amount of revenue that might be reclaimed versus the cost of disposing of a product.
- **c)** a means of recycling plastic parts in autos.
- **d)** the use of lightweight materials in products.

LO S5.5 The ISO 14000 is a series of environmental management standards that contain the following core elements:
- **a)** environmental management
- **b)** auditing
- **c)** performance evaluation
- **d)** labeling
- **e)** life cycle assessment
- **f)** all of the above
- **g)** (a) – (d)

Answers: LO S5.1. d; LO S5.2. c; LO S5.3. c; LO S5.4. b; LO S5.5. f.

Quality Management and International Standards

CHAPTER 6

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *Arnold Palmer Hospital*

- Quality and Strategy *254*
- Defining Quality *255*
- Total Quality Management *257*
- Tools of TQM *264*
- The Role of Inspection *268*
- TQM in Services *271*

Alaska Air lines

Alaska Air lines

10 OM STRATEGY DECISIONS

- Design of Goods and Services
- *Managing Quality*
- Process Strategy
- Location Strategies
- Layout Strategies
- Human Resources
- Supply-Chain Management
- Inventory Management
- Scheduling
- Maintenance

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
Arnold Palmer Hospital

Managing Quality Provides a Competitive Advantage at Arnold Palmer Hospital

Since 1989, Arnold Palmer Hospital, named after its famous golfing benefactor, has touched the lives of over 7 million children and women and their families. Its patients come not only from its Orlando location but from all 50 states and around the world. More than 12,000 babies are delivered every year at Arnold Palmer, and its huge neonatal intensive care unit boasts one of the highest survival rates in the U.S.

Every hospital professes quality health care, but at Arnold Palmer quality is the mantra—practiced in a fashion like the Ritz-Carlton practices it in the hotel industry. The hospital typically scores in the top 10% of national benchmark studies in terms of patient satisfaction. And its managers follow patient questionnaire results daily. If anything is amiss, corrective action takes place immediately.

Virtually every quality management technique we present in this chapter is employed at Arnold Palmer Hospital:

- *Continuous improvement:* The hospital constantly seeks new ways to lower infection rates, readmission rates, deaths, costs, and hospital stay times.

Courtesy Arnold Palmer Medical Center

The lobby of Arnold Palmer Hospital, with its 20-foot-high Genie, is clearly intended as a warm and friendly place for children.

Courtesy Arnold Palmer Medical Center

The Storkboard is a visible chart of the status of each baby about to be delivered, so all nurses and doctors are kept up to date at a glance.

Courtesy Arnold Palmer Medical Center

This PYXIS inventory station gives nurses quick access to medicines and supplies needed in their departments. When the nurse removes an item for patient use, the item is automatically billed to that account, and usage is noted at the main supply area.

The hospital has redesigned its neonatal rooms. In the old system, there were 16 neonatal beds in an often noisy and large room. The new rooms are semiprivate, with a quiet simulated-night atmosphere. These rooms have proven to help babies develop and improve more quickly.

Courtesy Arnold Palmer Medical Center

- *Employee empowerment:* When employees see a problem, they are trained to take care of it; staff are empowered to give gifts to patients displeased with some aspect of service.
- *Benchmarking:* The hospital belongs to a 2,000-member organization that monitors standards in many areas and provides monthly feedback to the hospital.

Courtesy Arnold Palmer Medical Center

When Arnold Palmer Hospital began planning for a new 11-story hospital across the street from its existing building, it decided on a circular pod design, creating a patient-centered environment. Rooms use warm colors, have pull-down Murphy beds for family members, 14-foot ceilings, and natural lighting with oversized windows. The pod concept also means there is a nursing station within a few feet of each 10-bed pod, saving much wasted walking time by nurses to reach the patient. The Video Case Study in Chapter 9 examines this layout in detail.

- *Just-in-time:* Supplies are delivered to Arnold Palmer on a JIT basis. This keeps inventory costs low and keeps quality problems from hiding.
- *Tools such as Pareto charts and flowcharts:* These tools monitor processes and help the staff graphically spot problem areas and suggest ways they can be improved.

From their first day of orientation, employees from janitors to nurses learn that the patient comes first. Staff standing in hallways will never be heard discussing their personal lives or commenting on confidential issues of health care. This culture of quality at Arnold Palmer Hospital makes a hospital visit, often traumatic to children and their parents, a warmer and more comforting experience.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO 6.1 ***Define*** quality and TQM 255

LO 6.2 ***Describe*** the ISO international quality standards 256

LO 6.3 ***Explain*** Six Sigma 259

LO 6.4 ***Explain*** how benchmarking is used in TQM 261

LO 6.5 ***Explain*** quality robust products and Taguchi concepts 263

LO 6.6 ***Use*** the seven tools of TQM 264

Quality and Strategy

VIDEO 6.1
The Culture of Quality at Arnold Palmer Hospital

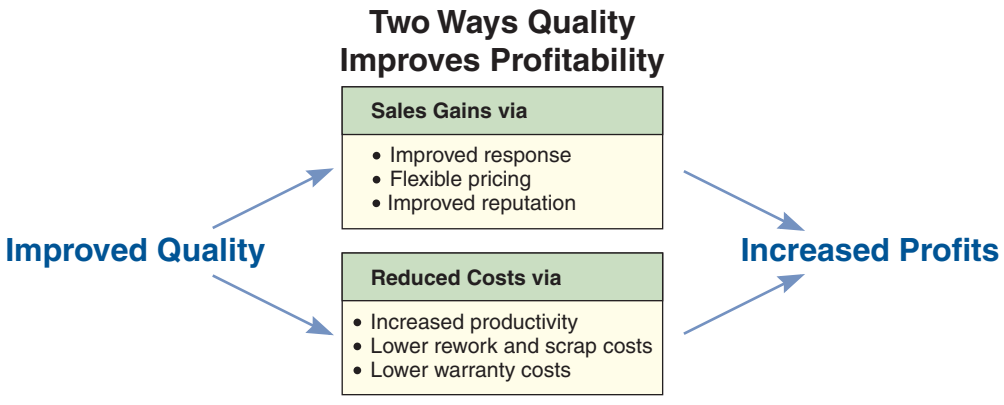
As Arnold Palmer Hospital and many other organizations have found, quality is a wonderful tonic for improving operations. Managing quality helps build successful strategies of *differentiation*, *low cost*, and *response*. For instance, defining customer quality expectations has helped Bose Corp. successfully *differentiate* its stereo speakers as among the best in the world. Nucor has learned to produce quality steel at *low cost* by developing efficient processes that produce consistent quality. And Dell Computers rapidly *responds* to customer orders because quality systems, with little rework, have allowed it to achieve rapid throughput in its plants. Indeed, quality may be the key success factor for these firms, just as it is at Arnold Palmer Hospital.

STUDENT TIP
High-quality products and services are the most profitable.

As Figure 6.1 suggests, improvements in quality help firms increase sales and reduce costs, both of which can increase profitability. Increases in sales often occur as firms speed response, increase or lower selling prices, and improve their reputation for quality products. Similarly, improved quality allows costs to drop as firms increase productivity and lower rework, scrap, and warranty costs. One study found that companies with the highest quality were five times as productive (as measured by units produced per labor-hour) as companies with the poorest quality. Indeed, when the implications of an organization's long-term costs and the potential for increased sales are considered, total costs may well be at a minimum when 100% of the goods or services are perfect and defect free.

Quality, or the lack of quality, affects the entire organization from supplier to customer and from product design to maintenance. Perhaps more important, *building* an organization that can achieve quality is a demanding task. Figure 6.2 lays out the flow of activities for an organization to use to achieve total quality management (TQM). A successful quality strategy begins with an organizational culture that fosters quality, followed by an understanding of the principles of quality, and then engaging employees in the necessary activities to implement quality. When these things are done well, the organization typically satisfies its customers and obtains a competitive advantage. The ultimate goal is to win customers. Because quality causes so many other good things to happen, it is a great place to start.

Figure 6.1
Ways Quality Improves Profitability



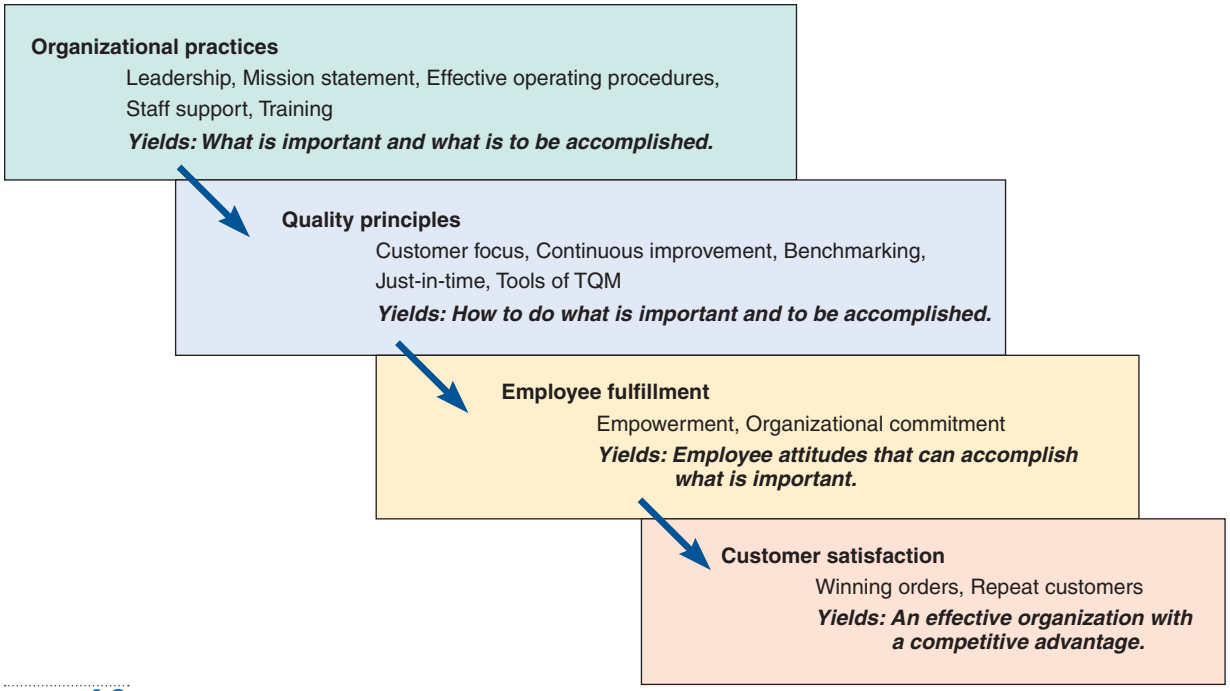


Figure 6.2

The Flow of Activities Necessary to Achieve Total Quality Management

Defining Quality

The operations manager's objective is to build a total quality management system that identifies and satisfies customer needs. Total quality management takes care of the customer. Consequently, we accept the definition of quality as adopted by the American Society for Quality (ASQ; **www.asq.org**): "The totality of features and characteristics of a product or service that bears on its ability to satisfy stated or implied needs."

Quality
The ability of a product or service to meet customer needs.

LO 6.1 *Define* quality and TQM

Others, however, believe that definitions of quality fall into several categories. Some definitions are *user based*. They propose that quality "lies in the eyes of the beholder." Marketing people like this approach and so do customers. To them, higher quality means better performance, nicer features, and other (sometimes costly) improvements. To production managers, quality is *manufacturing based*. They believe that quality means conforming to standards and "making it right the first time." Yet a third approach is *product based*, which views quality as a precise and measurable variable. In this view, for example, really good ice cream has high butterfat levels.

This text develops approaches and techniques to address all three categories of quality. The characteristics that connote quality must first be identified through research (a user-based approach to quality). These characteristics are then translated into specific product attributes (a product-based approach to quality). Then, the manufacturing process is organized to ensure that products are made precisely to specifications (a manufacturing-based approach to quality). A process that ignores any one of these steps will not result in a quality product.

STUDENT TIP
To create a quality good or service, operations managers need to know what the customer expects.

Implications of Quality

In addition to being a critical element in operations, quality has other implications. Here are three other reasons why quality is important:

1. *Company reputation:* An organization can expect its reputation for quality—be it good or bad—to follow it. Quality will show up in perceptions about the firm's new products, employment practices, and supplier relations. Self-promotion is not a substitute for quality products.

2. *Product liability:* The courts increasingly hold organizations that design, produce, or distribute faulty products or services liable for damages or injuries resulting from their use. Legislation such as the Consumer Product Safety Act sets and enforces product standards by banning products that do not reach those standards. Impure foods that cause illness, nightgowns that burn, tires that fall apart, or auto fuel tanks that explode on impact can all lead to huge legal expenses, large settlements or losses, and terrible publicity.
3. *Global implications:* In this technological age, quality is an international, as well as OM, concern. For both a company and a country to compete effectively in the global economy, products must meet global quality, design, and price expectations. Inferior products harm a firm's profitability and a nation's balance of payments.

Malcolm Baldrige National Quality Award

The global implications of quality are so important that the U.S. has established the *Malcolm Baldrige National Quality Award* for quality achievement. The award is named for former Secretary of Commerce Malcolm Baldrige. Winners include such firms as Motorola, Milliken, Xerox, FedEx, Ritz-Carlton Hotels, AT&T, Cadillac, and Texas Instruments. (For details about the Baldrige Award and its 1,000-point scoring system, visit **www.nist.gov/baldrige/**.)

The Japanese have a similar award, the Deming Prize, named after an American, Dr. W. Edwards Deming.

ISO 9000 International Quality Standards

ISO 9000
A set of quality standards developed by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO).

The move toward global supply chains has placed so much emphasis on quality that the world has united around a single quality standard, ISO 9000. ISO 9000 is *the* quality standard with international recognition. Its focus is to enhance success through eight quality management principles: (1) top management leadership, (2) customer satisfaction, (3) continual improvement, (4) involvement of people, (5) process analysis, (6) use of data-driven decision making, (7) a systems approach to management, and (8) mutually beneficial supplier relationships.

LO 6.2 *Describe* the ISO international quality standards

The ISO standard encourages establishment of quality management procedures, detailed documentation, work instructions, and recordkeeping. Like the Baldrige Awards, the assessment includes self-appraisal and problem identification. Unlike the Baldrige, ISO certified organizations must be reaudited every three years.

The latest modification of the standard, ISO 9001: 2015, follows a structure that makes it more compatible with other management systems. This version gives greater emphasis to risk-based thinking, attempting to prevent undesirable outcomes.

STUDENT TIP International quality standards grow in prominence every year. See **www.iso.ch**.

Over one million certifications have been awarded to firms in 206 countries, including about 30,000 in the U.S. To do business globally, it is critical for a firm to be certified and listed in the ISO directory.

Cost of Quality (COQ)

Cost of quality (COQ)
The cost of doing things wrong—that is, the price of nonconformance.

Four major categories of costs are associated with quality. Called the cost of quality (COQ), they are:

- *Prevention costs:* costs associated with reducing the potential for defective parts or services (e.g., training, quality improvement programs).
- *Appraisal costs:* costs related to evaluating products, processes, parts, and services (e.g., testing, labs, inspectors).
- *Internal failure costs:* costs that result from production of defective parts or services before delivery to customers (e.g., rework, scrap, downtime).
- *External failure costs:* costs that occur after delivery of defective parts or services (e.g., rework, returned goods, liabilities, lost goodwill, costs to society).

TABLE 6.1 Leaders in the Field of Quality Management

LEADER	PHILOSOPHY/CONTRIBUTION
W. Edwards Deming	Deming insisted management accept responsibility for building good systems. The employee cannot produce products that on average exceed the quality of what the process is capable of producing. His 14 points for implementing quality improvement are presented in this chapter.
Joseph M. Juran	A pioneer in teaching the Japanese how to improve quality, Juran believed strongly in top-management commitment, support, and involvement in the quality effort. He was also a believer in teams that continually seek to raise quality standards. Juran varies from Deming somewhat in focusing on the customer and defining quality as fitness for use, not necessarily the written specifications.
Armand Feigenbaum	His 1961 book *Total Quality Control* laid out 40 steps to quality improvement processes. He viewed quality not as a set of tools but as a total field that integrated the processes of a company. His work in how people learn from each other's successes led to the field of cross-functional teamwork.
Philip B. Crosby	*Quality Is Free* was Crosby's attention-getting book published in 1979. Crosby believed that in the traditional trade-off between the cost of improving quality and the cost of poor quality, the cost of poor quality is understated. The cost of poor quality should include all of the things that are involved in not doing the job right the first time. Crosby coined the term *zero defects* and stated, "There is absolutely no reason for having errors or defects in any product or service."

Source: Based on *Quality Is Free* by Philip B. Crosby (New York, McGraw-Hill, 1979) p. 96.

The first three costs can be reasonably estimated, but external costs are very hard to quantify. When GE had to recall 3.1 million dishwashers (because of a defective switch alleged to have started seven fires), the cost of repairs exceeded the value of all the machines. This leads to the belief by many experts that the cost of poor quality is consistently underestimated.

Observers of quality management believe that, on balance, the cost of quality products is only a fraction of the benefits. They think the real losers are organizations that fail to work aggressively at quality. For instance, Philip Crosby stated that quality is free. "What costs money are the unquality things—all the actions that involve not doing it right the first time."[1]

Takumi is a Japanese character that symbolizes a broader dimension than quality, a deeper process than education, and a more perfect method than persistence.

Leaders in Quality Besides Crosby there are several other giants in the field of quality management, including Deming, Feigenbaum, and Juran. Table 6.1 summarizes their philosophies and contributions.

Ethics and Quality Management

For operations managers, one of the most important jobs is to deliver healthy, safe, and quality products and services to customers. The development of poor-quality products, because of inadequate design and production processes, not only results in higher production costs but also leads to injuries, lawsuits, and increased government regulation.

If a firm believes that it has introduced a questionable product, ethical conduct must dictate the responsible action. This may be a worldwide recall, as conducted by both Johnson & Johnson (for Tylenol) and Perrier (for sparkling water), when each of these products was found to be contaminated. A manufacturer must accept responsibility for any poor-quality product released to the public.

There are many stakeholders involved in the production and marketing of poor-quality products, including stockholders, employees, customers, suppliers, distributors, and creditors. As a matter of ethics, management must ask if any of these stakeholders are being wronged. Every company needs to develop core values that become day-to-day guidelines for everyone from the CEO to production-line employees.

Total Quality Management

Total quality management (TQM)
Management of an entire organization so that it excels in all aspects of products and services that are important to the customer.

Total quality management (TQM) refers to a quality emphasis that encompasses the entire organization, from supplier to customer. TQM stresses a commitment by management to have a continuing companywide drive toward excellence in all aspects of products and services that are

TABLE 6.2 Deming's 14 Points for Implementing Quality Improvement

1. Create consistency of purpose.
2. Lead to promote change.
3. Build quality into the product; stop depending on inspections to catch problems.
4. Build long-term relationships based on performance instead of awarding business on the basis of price.
5. Continuously improve product, quality, and service.
6. Start training.
7. Emphasize leadership.
8. Drive out fear.
9. Break down barriers between departments.
10. Stop haranguing workers.
11. Support, help, and improve.
12. Remove barriers to pride in work.
13. Institute a vigorous program of education and self-improvement.
14. Put everybody in the company to work on the transformation.

Source: Deming, W. Edwards. *Out of the Crisis*, pp. 61–62, © 2000 W. Edwards Deming Institute, published by The MIT Press. Reprinted by permission.

important to the customer. Each of the 10 decisions made by operations managers deals with some aspect of identifying and meeting customer expectations. Meeting those expectations requires an emphasis on TQM if a firm is to compete as a leader in world markets.

STUDENT TIP Here are 7 concepts that make up the heart of an effective TQM program.

Quality expert W. Edwards Deming used 14 points (see Table 6.2) to indicate how he implemented TQM. We develop these into seven concepts for an effective TQM program: (1) continuous improvement, (2) Six Sigma, (3) employee empowerment, (4) benchmarking, (5) just-in-time (JIT), (6) Taguchi concepts, and (7) knowledge of TQM tools.

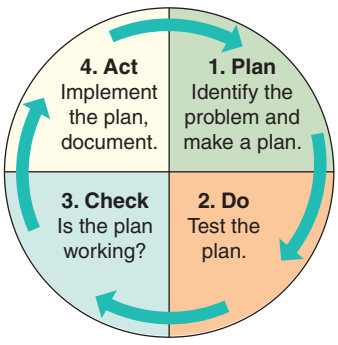
Continuous Improvement

Total quality management requires a never-ending process of continuous improvement that covers people, equipment, suppliers, materials, and procedures. The basis of the philosophy is that every aspect of an operation can be improved. The end goal is perfection, which is never achieved but always sought.

PDCA A continuous improvement model of plan, do, check. act.

Plan-Do-Check-Act Walter Shewhart, another pioneer in quality management, developed a circular model known as **PDCA** (plan, do, check, act) as his version of continuous improvement. Deming later took this concept to Japan during his work there after World War II. The PDCA cycle (also called a Deming circle or a Shewhart circle) is shown in Figure 6.3 as a circle to stress the continuous nature of the improvement process.

Figure 6.3
PDCA Cycle



The Japanese use the word *kaizen* to describe this ongoing process of unending improvement—the setting and achieving of ever-higher goals. In the U.S., *TQM* and *zero defects* are also used to describe continuous improvement efforts. But whether it's PDCA, kaizen, TQM, or zero defects, the operations manager is a key player in building a work culture that endorses continuous improvement.

Six Sigma

Six Sigma
A program to save time, improve quality, and lower costs.

The term **Six Sigma**, popularized by Motorola, Honeywell, and General Electric, has two meanings in TQM. In a *statistical* sense, it describes a process, product, or service with an extremely high capability (99.9997% accuracy). For example, if 1 million passengers pass through the St. Louis Airport with checked baggage each month, a Six Sigma program for baggage handling will result in only 3.4 passengers with misplaced luggage. The more common *three-sigma* program (which we address in the supplement to this chapter) would result in 2,700 passengers with misplaced bags every month. See Figure 6.4.

The second TQM definition of Six Sigma is a *program* designed to reduce defects to help lower costs, save time, and improve customer satisfaction. Six Sigma is a comprehensive system—a strategy, a discipline, and a set of tools—for achieving and sustaining business success:

LO 6.3 *Explain* Six Sigma

- It is a *strategy* because it focuses on total customer satisfaction.
- It is a *discipline* because it follows the formal Six Sigma Improvement Model known as **DMAIC**. This five-step process improvement model (1) ***D*efines** the project's purpose, scope, and outputs and then identifies the required process information, keeping in mind the customer's definition of quality; (2) ***M*easures** the process and collects data; (3) ***A*nalyzes** the data, ensuring repeatability (the results can be duplicated) and reproducibility (others get the same result); (4) ***I*mproves**, by modifying or redesigning, existing processes and procedures; and (5) ***C*ontrols** the new process to make sure performance levels are maintained.
- It is a *set of seven tools* that we introduce shortly in this chapter: check sheets, scatter diagrams, cause-and-effect diagrams, Pareto charts, flowcharts, histograms, and statistical process control.

Motorola developed Six Sigma in the 1980s, in response to customer complaints about its products and in response to stiff competition. The company first set a goal of reducing defects by 90%. Within one year, it had achieved such impressive results—through benchmarking competitors, soliciting new ideas from employees, changing reward plans, adding training, and revamping critical processes—that it documented the procedures into what it called Six Sigma. Although the concept was rooted in manufacturing, GE later expanded Six Sigma into services, including human resources, sales, customer services, and financial/credit services. The concept of wiping out defects turns out to be the same in both manufacturing and services.

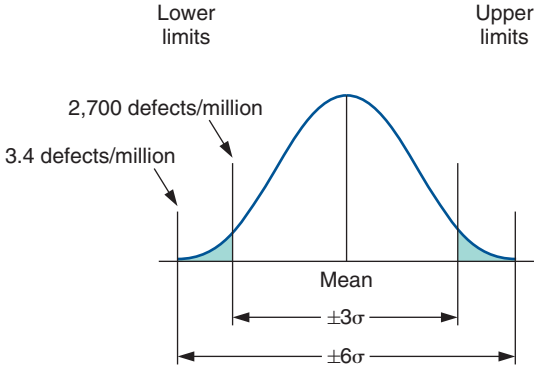


Figure 6.4
Defects per Million for ±3σ vs. ±6σ

STUDENT TIP
Recall that ±3σ provides 99.73% accuracy, while ±6σ is 99.9997%.

Implementing Six Sigma Implementing Six Sigma is a big commitment. Indeed, successful Six Sigma programs in every firm, from GE to Motorola to DuPont to Texas Instruments, require a major time commitment, especially from top management. These leaders have to formulate the plan, communicate their buy-in and the firm's objectives, and take a visible role in setting the example for others.

Successful Six Sigma projects are clearly related to the strategic direction of a company. It is a management-directed, team-based, and expert-led approach.[2]

Employee Empowerment

Employee empowerment
Enlarging employee jobs so that the added responsibility and authority is moved to the lowest level possible in the organization.

Employee empowerment means involving employees in every step of the production process. Consistently, research suggests that some 85% of quality problems have to do with materials and processes, not with employee performance. Therefore, the task is to design equipment and processes that produce the desired quality. This is best done with a high degree of involvement by those who understand the shortcomings of the system. Those dealing with the system on a daily basis understand it better than anyone else. One study indicated that TQM programs that delegate responsibility for quality to shop-floor employees tend to be twice as likely to succeed as those implemented with "top-down" directives.[3]

When nonconformance occurs, the worker is seldom at fault. Either the product was designed wrong, the process that makes the product was designed wrong, or the employee was improperly trained. Although the employee may be able to help solve the problem, the employee rarely causes it.

Techniques for building employee empowerment include (1) building communication networks that include employees; (2) developing open, supportive supervisors; (3) moving responsibility from both managers and staff to production employees; (4) building high-morale organizations; and (5) creating such formal organization structures as teams and quality circles.

Quality circle
A group of employees meeting regularly with a facilitator to solve work-related problems in their work area.

Teams can be built to address a variety of issues. One popular focus of teams is quality. Such teams are often known as quality circles. A **quality circle** is a group of employees who meet regularly to solve work-related problems. The members receive training in group planning, problem solving, and statistical quality control. They generally meet once a week (usually after work but sometimes on company time). Although the members are not rewarded financially, they do receive recognition from the firm. A specially trained team member, called the *facilitator*, usually helps train the members and keeps the meetings running smoothly. Teams with a quality focus have proven to be a cost-effective way to increase productivity as well as quality.

Benchmarking

Benchmarking
Selecting a demonstrated standard of performance that represents the very best performance for a process or an activity.

Benchmarking is another ingredient in an organization's TQM program. **Benchmarking** involves selecting a demonstrated standard of products, services, costs, or practices that represent

TRW Automotive/General Manley Ford

Workers at this TRW airbag manufacturing plant in Marshall, Illinois, are their own inspectors. Empowerment is an essential part of TQM. This man is checking the quality of a crash sensor he built.

TABLE 6.3 Best Practices for Resolving Customer Complaints

BEST PRACTICE	JUSTIFICATION
Make it easy for clients to complain.	It is free market research.
Respond quickly to complaints.	It adds customers and loyalty.
Resolve complaints on the first contact.	It reduces cost.
Use computers to manage complaints.	Discover trends, share them, and align your services.
Recruit the best for customer service jobs.	It should be part of formal training and career advancement.

Source: Based on Canadian Government Guide on Complaint Mechanism.

the very best performance for processes or activities very similar to your own. The idea is to develop a target at which to shoot and then to develop a standard or benchmark against which to compare your performance. The steps for developing benchmarks are:

1. Determine what to benchmark.
2. Form a benchmark team.
3. Identify benchmarking partners.
4. Collect and analyze benchmarking information.
5. Take action to match or exceed the benchmark.

LO 6.4 *Explain* how benchmarking is used in TQM

Typical performance measures used in benchmarking include percentage of defects, cost per unit or per order, processing time per unit, service response time, return on investment, customer satisfaction rates, and customer retention rates.

In the ideal situation, you find one or more similar organizations that are leaders in the particular areas you want to study. Then you compare yourself (benchmark yourself) against them. The company need not be in your industry. Indeed, to establish world-class standards, it may be best to look outside your industry. If one industry has learned how to compete via rapid product development while yours has not, it does no good to study your industry.

This is exactly what Xerox and Mercedes-Benz did when they went to L.L. Bean for order-filling and warehousing benchmarks. Xerox noticed that L.L. Bean was able to "pick" orders three times faster. After benchmarking, Xerox was immediately able to pare warehouse costs by 10%. Mercedes-Benz observed that L.L. Bean warehouse employees used flowcharts to spot wasted motions. The auto giant followed suit and now relies more on problem solving at the worker level.

Benchmarks often take the form of "best practices" found in other firms or in other divisions. Table 6.3 illustrates best practices for resolving customer complaints.

Likewise, Britain's Great Ormond Street Hospital benchmarked the Ferrari Racing Team's pit stops to improve one aspect of medical care. (See the *OM in Action* box "A Hospital Benchmarks Against the Ferrari Racing Team?")

Internal Benchmarking When an organization is large enough to have many divisions or business units, a natural approach is the internal benchmark. Data are usually much more accessible than from outside firms. Typically, one internal unit has superior performance worth learning from.

Xerox's almost religious belief in benchmarking has paid off not only by looking outward to L.L. Bean but by examining the operations of its various country divisions. For example, Xerox Europe, a $6 billion subsidiary of Xerox Corp., formed teams to see how better sales could result through internal benchmarking. Somehow, France sold five times as many color copiers as did other divisions in Europe. By copying France's approach, namely, better sales training and use of dealer channels to supplement direct sales, Norway increased sales by 152%, Holland by 300%, and Switzerland by 328%!

Benchmarks can and should be established in a variety of areas. Total quality management requires no less.

OM in Action A Hospital Benchmarks Against the Ferrari Racing Team?

After surgeons successfully completed a 6-hour operation to fix a hole in a 3-year-old boy's heart, Dr. Angus McEwan supervised one of the most dangerous phases of the procedure: the boy's transfer from surgery to the intensive care unit.

Thousands of such "handoffs" occur in hospitals every day, and devastating mistakes can happen during them. In fact, at least 35% of preventable hospital mishaps take place because of handoff problems. Risks come from many sources: using temporary nursing staff, frequent shift changes for interns, surgeons working in larger teams, and an ever-growing tangle of wires and tubes connected to patients.

Using an unlikely benchmark, Britain's largest children's hospital turned to Italy's Formula One Ferrari racing team for help in revamping patient handoff techniques. Armed with videos and slides, the racing team described how they analyze pit crew performance. It also explained how its system for recording errors stressed the small ones that go unnoticed in pit-stop handoffs.

To move forward, Ferrari invited a team of doctors to attend practice sessions at the British Grand Prix in order to get closer looks at pit stops. Ferrari's technical director, Nigel Stepney, then watched a video of a hospital handoff. Stepney was not impressed. "In fact, he was amazed at how clumsy, chaotic, and informal the process appeared," said one hospital official. At that meeting, Stepney described how each Ferrari crew member is required to do a specific job, in a specific sequence, and in silence.

Oliver Multhaup/AP Images

The hospital handoff, in contrast, had several conversations going on at once, while different members of its team disconnected or reconnected patient equipment, but in no particular order.

Results of the benchmarking process: handoff errors fell over 40%, with a bonus of faster handoff time.

Sources: The Wall Street Journal (December 3, 2007) and (November 14, 2006).

Just-in-Time (JIT)

The philosophy behind just-in-time (JIT) is one of continuing improvement and enforced problem solving. JIT systems are designed to produce or deliver goods just as they are needed. JIT is related to quality in three ways:

- *JIT cuts the cost of quality:* This occurs because scrap, rework, inventory investment, and damage costs are directly related to inventory on hand. Because there is less inventory on hand with JIT, costs are lower. In addition, inventory hides bad quality, whereas JIT immediately *exposes* bad quality.
- *JIT improves quality:* As JIT shrinks lead time, it keeps evidence of errors fresh and limits the number of potential sources of error. JIT creates, in effect, an early warning system for quality problems, both within the firm and with vendors.
- *Better quality means less inventory and a better, easier-to-employ JIT system:* Often the purpose of keeping inventory is to protect against poor production performance resulting from unreliable quality. If consistent quality exists, JIT allows firms to reduce all the costs associated with inventory.

Taguchi Concepts

Most quality problems are the result of poor product and process design. Genichi Taguchi has provided us with three concepts aimed at improving both product and process quality: *quality robustness*, *target-oriented quality,* and the *quality loss function*.

Quality robust
Products that are consistently built to meet customer needs despite adverse conditions in the production process.

Quality robust products are products that can be produced uniformly and consistently in adverse manufacturing and environmental conditions. Taguchi's idea is to remove the *effects* of adverse conditions instead of removing the causes. Taguchi suggests that removing the effects

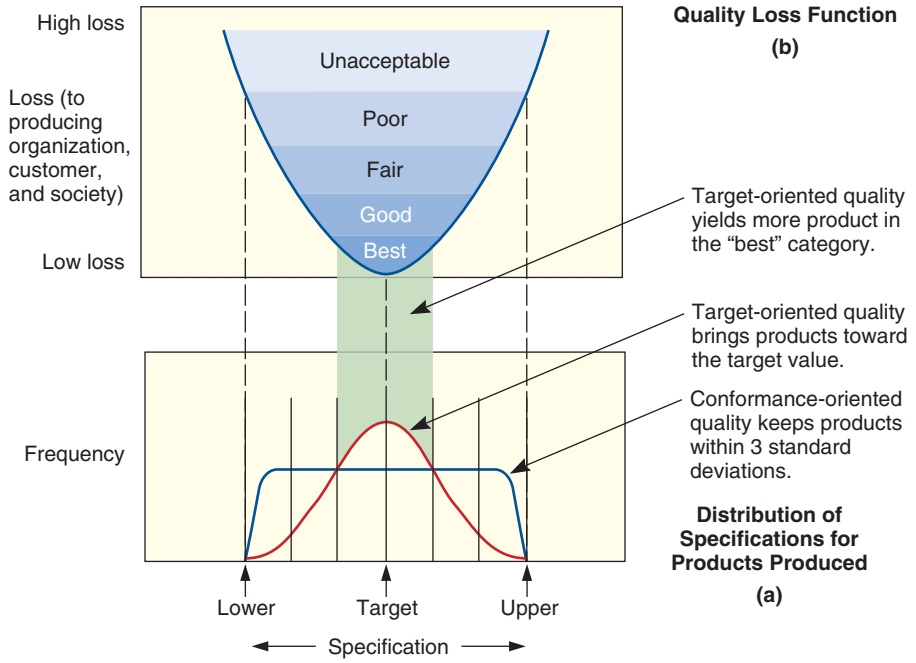


Figure 6.5

(a) Distribution of Products Produced and (b) Quality Loss Function

Taguchi aims for the target because products produced near the upper and lower acceptable specifications result in a higher quality loss.

is often cheaper than removing the causes and more effective in producing a robust product. In this way, small variations in materials and process do not destroy product quality.

A study found that U.S. consumers preferred Sony TVs made in Japan to Sony TVs made in the U.S., even though both factories used the exact same designs and specifications. The difference in approaches to quality generated the difference in consumer preferences. In particular, the U.S. factory was *conformance-oriented*, accepting all components that were produced within specification limits. On the other hand, the Japanese factory strove to produce as many components as close to the actual target as possible (see Figure 6.5(a)).

LO 6.5 *Explain* quality robust products and Taguchi concepts

This suggests that even though components made close to the boundaries of the specification limits may technically be acceptable, they may still create problems. For example, TV screens produced near their diameter's lower spec limit may provide a loose fit with screen frames produced near their upper spec limit, and vice versa. This implies that a final product containing many parts produced near their specification boundaries may contain numerous loose and tight fits, which could cause assembly, performance, or aesthetic concerns. Customers may be dissatisfied, resulting in possible returns, service work, or decreased future demand.

Taguchi introduced the concept of **target-oriented quality** as a philosophy of continuous improvement to bring the product exactly on target. As a measure, Taguchi's **quality loss function (QLF)** attempts to estimate the cost of deviating from the target value. Even though the item is produced within specification limits, the variation in quality can be expected to increase costs as the item output moves away from its target value. (These quality-related costs are estimates of the average cost over many such units produced.)

Target-oriented quality
A philosophy of continuous improvement to bring a product exactly on target.

Quality loss function (QLF)
A mathematical function that identifies all costs connected with poor quality and shows how these costs increase as output moves away from the target value.

The QLF is an excellent way to estimate quality costs of different processes. A process that produces closer to the actual target value may be more expensive, but it may yield a more valuable product. The QLF is the tool that helps the manager determine if this added cost is worthwhile. The QLF takes the general form of a simple quadratic equation (see Figure 6.5(b)).

Knowledge of TQM Tools

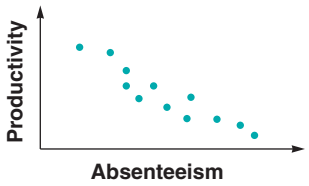
To empower employees and implement TQM as a continuing effort, everyone in the organization must be trained in the techniques of TQM. In the following section, we focus on some of the diverse and expanding tools that are used in the TQM crusade.

Tools for Generating Ideas

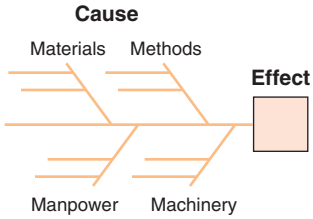
(a) *Check Sheet:* An organized method of recording data

	Hour							
Defect	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
A	///	/		/	/	/	///	/
B	//	/	/	/			//	///
C	/	//					//	////

(b) *Scatter Diagram:* A graph of the value of one variable vs. another variable

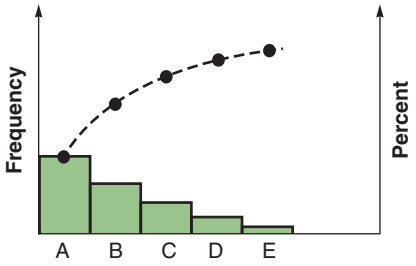


(c) *Cause-and-Effect Diagram:* A tool that identifies process elements (causes) that may affect an outcome

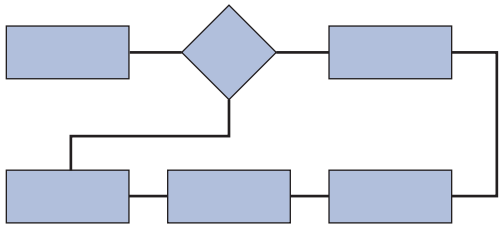


Tools for Organizing the Data

(d) *Pareto Chart:* A graph that identifies and plots problems or defects in descending order of frequency

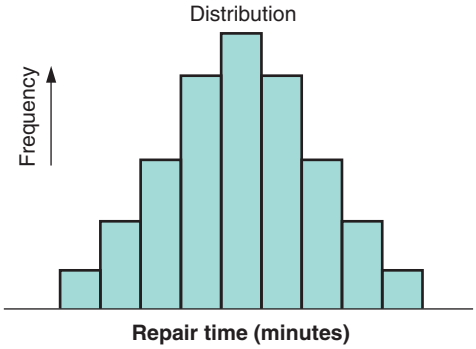


(e) *Flowchart (Process Diagram):* A chart that describes the steps in a process



Tools for Identifying Problems

(f) *Histogram:* A distribution that shows the frequency of occurrences of a variable



(g) *Statistical Process Control Chart:* A chart with time on the horizontal axis for plotting values of a statistic

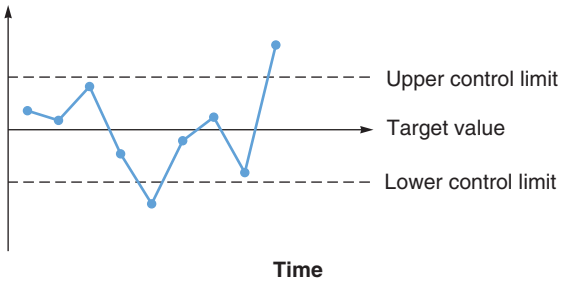


Figure 6.6

Seven Tools of TQM

STUDENT TIP These tools will prove useful in many of your courses and throughout your career.

Tools of TQM

Seven tools that are particularly helpful in the TQM effort are shown in Figure 6.6. We will now introduce these tools.

LO 6.6 *Use* the seven tools of TQM

Check Sheets

A check sheet is any kind of a form that is designed for recording data. In many cases, the recording is done so the patterns are easily seen while the data are being taken [see Figure 6.6(a)]. Check sheets help analysts find the facts or patterns that may aid subsequent analysis. An example might be a drawing that shows a tally of the areas where defects are occurring or a check sheet showing the type of customer complaints.

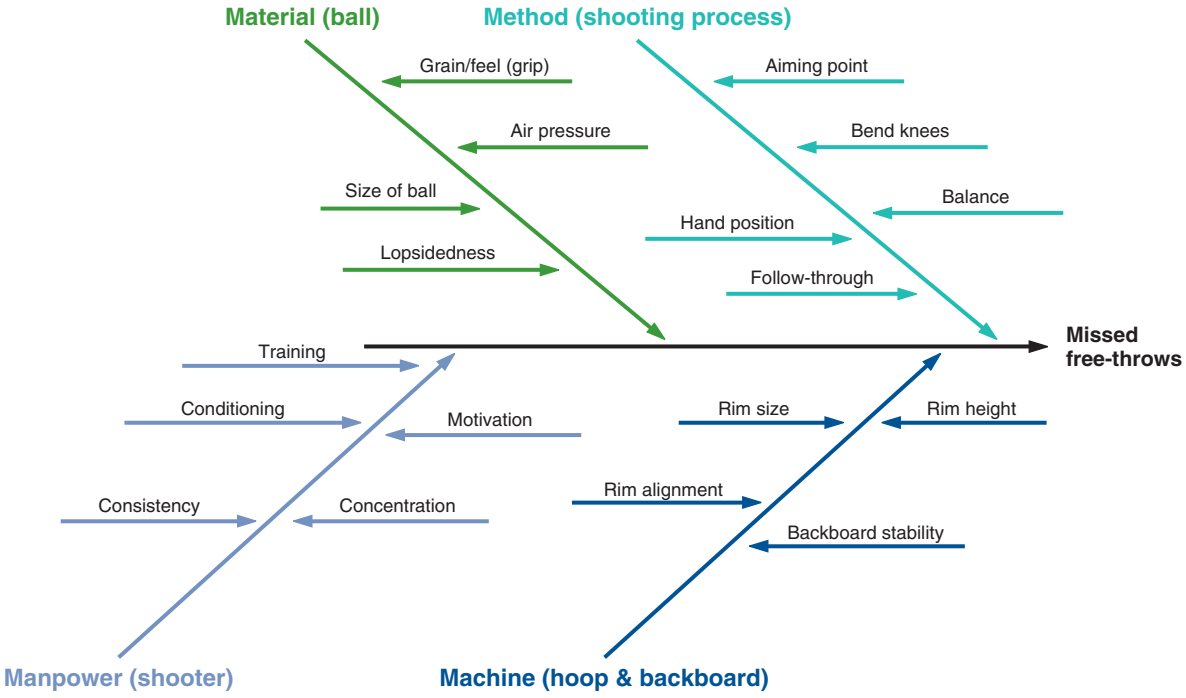


Figure 6.7

Fish-Bone Chart (or Cause-and-Effect Diagram) for Problems with Missed Free-Throws

Source: Adapted from MoreSteam.com, 2007.

Scatter Diagrams

Scatter diagrams show the relationship between two measurements. An example is the positive relationship between length of a service call and the number of trips a repair person makes back to the truck for parts. Another example might be a plot of productivity and absenteeism, as shown in Figure 6.6(b). If the two items are closely related, the data points will form a tight band. If a random pattern results, the items are unrelated.

Cause-and-Effect Diagrams

Cause-and-effect diagram
A schematic technique used to discover possible locations of quality problems.

Another tool for identifying quality issues and inspection points is the **cause-and-effect diagram**, also known as an **Ishikawa diagram** or a **fish-bone chart**. Figure 6.7 illustrates a chart (note the shape resembling the bones of a fish) for a basketball quality control problem—missed free-throws. Each "bone" represents a possible source of error.

The operations manager starts with four categories: material, machinery/equipment, manpower, and methods. These four *M*s are the "causes." They provide a good checklist for initial analysis. Individual causes associated with each category are tied in as separate bones along that branch, often through a brainstorming process. For example, the method branch in Figure 6.7 has problems caused by hand position, follow-through, aiming point, bent knees, and balance. When a fish-bone chart is systematically developed, possible quality problems and inspection points are highlighted.

Pareto Charts

Pareto charts
A graphic way of classifying problems by their level of importance, often referred to as the 80–20 rule.

Pareto charts are a method of organizing errors, problems, or defects to help focus on problem-solving efforts. They are based on the work of Vilfredo Pareto, a 19th-century economist. Joseph M. Juran popularized Pareto's work when he suggested that 80% of a firm's problems are a result of only 20% of the causes.

Example 1 indicates that of the five types of complaints identified, the vast majority were of one type—poor room service.

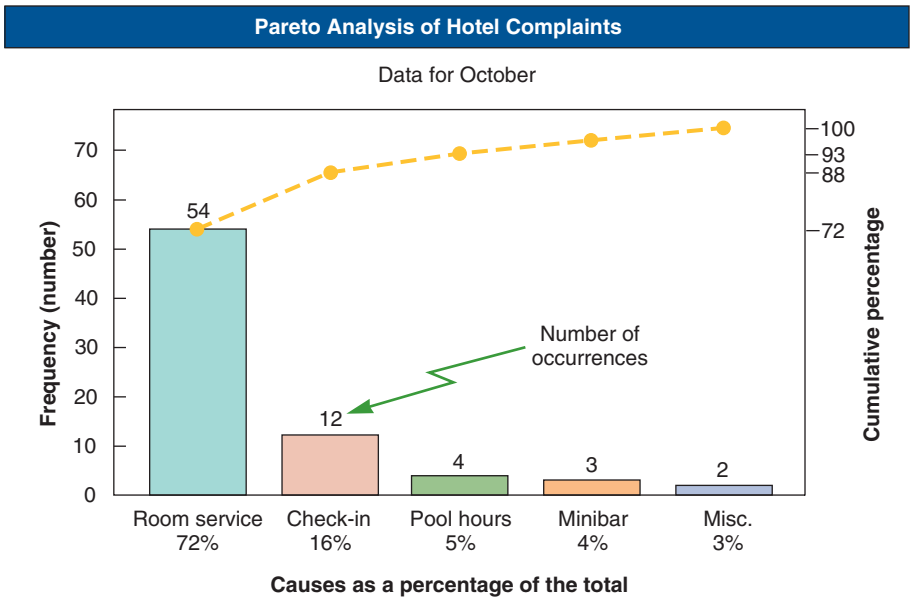
Example 1

A PARETO CHART AT THE HARD ROCK HOTEL

The Hard Rock Hotel in Bali has just collected the data from 75 complaint calls to the general manager during the month of October. The manager wants to prepare an analysis of the complaints. The data provided are room service, 54; check-in delays, 12; hours the pool is open, 4; minibar prices, 3; and miscellaneous, 2.

APPROACH ▶ A Pareto chart is an excellent choice for this analysis.

SOLUTION ▶ The Pareto chart shown below indicates that 72% of the calls were the result of one cause: room service. The majority of complaints will be eliminated when this one cause is corrected.



INSIGHT ▶ This visual means of summarizing data is very helpful—particularly with large amounts of data, as in the Southwestern University case study at the end of this chapter. We can immediately spot the top problems and prepare a plan to address them.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Hard Rock's bar manager decides to do a similar analysis on complaints she has collected over the past year: too expensive, 22; weak drinks, 15; slow service, 65; short hours, 8; unfriendly bartender, 12. Prepare a Pareto chart. [Answer: slow service, 53%; expensive, 18%; drinks, 12%; bartender, 10%; hours, 7%.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 6.1, 6.3, 6.7b, 6.12, 6.13, 6.16c, 6.17b

ACTIVE MODEL 6.1 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 6.1 in MyOMLab.

Pareto analysis indicates which problems may yield the greatest payoff. Pacific Bell discovered this when it tried to find a way to reduce damage to buried phone cable, the number-one cause of phone outages. Pareto analysis showed that 41% of cable damage was caused by construction work. Armed with this information, Pacific Bell was able to devise a plan to reduce cable cuts by 24% in one year, saving $6 million.

Likewise, Japan's Ricoh Corp., a copier maker, used the Pareto principle to tackle the "callback" problem. Callbacks meant the job was not done right the first time and that a second visit, at Ricoh's expense, was needed. Identifying and retraining only the 11% of the customer engineers with the most callbacks resulted in a 19% drop in return visits.

Flowcharts

Flowcharts
Block diagrams that graphically describe a process or system.

Flowcharts graphically present a process or system using annotated boxes and interconnected lines [see Figure 6.6(e)]. They are a simple but great tool for trying to make sense of a process or explain a process. Example 2 uses a flowchart to show the process of completing an MRI at a hospital.

Example 2

A FLOWCHART FOR HOSPITAL MRI SERVICE

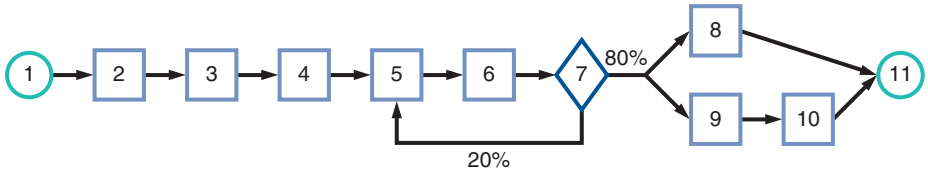
Arnold Palmer Hospital has undertaken a series of process improvement initiatives. One of these is to make the MRI service efficient for patient, doctor, and hospital. The first step, the administrator believes, is to develop a flowchart for this process.

APPROACH ▶ A process improvement staffer observed a number of patients and followed them (and information flow) from start to end. Here are the 11 steps:

1. Physician schedules MRI after examining patient (START).
2. Patient taken from the examination room to the MRI lab with test order and copy of medical records.
3. Patient signs in, completes required paperwork.
4. Patient is prepped by technician for scan.
5. Technician carries out the MRI scan.
6. Technician inspects film for clarity.
7. If MRI not satisfactory (20% of time), Steps 5 and 6 are repeated.
8. Patient taken back to hospital room.
9. MRI is read by radiologist and report is prepared.
10. MRI and report are transferred electronically to physician.
11. Patient and physician discuss report (END).

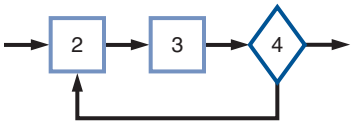
SOLUTION ▶ Here is the flowchart:

STUDENT TIP Flowcharting any process is an excellent way to understand and then try to improve that process.



INSIGHT ▶ With the flowchart in hand, the hospital can analyze each step and identify value-added activities and activities that can be improved or eliminated.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ A new procedure requires that if the patient's blood pressure is over 200/120 when being prepped for the MRI, she is taken back to her room for 2 hours and the process returns to Step 2. How does the flowchart change? Answer:



RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 6.6, 6.15

Histograms

Histograms show the range of values of a measurement and the frequency with which each value occurs [see Figure 6.6(f)]. They show the most frequently occurring readings as well as the variations in the measurements. Descriptive statistics, such as the average and standard deviation, may be calculated to describe the distribution. However, the data should always be plotted so the shape of the distribution can be "seen." A visual presentation of the distribution may also provide insight into the cause of the variation.

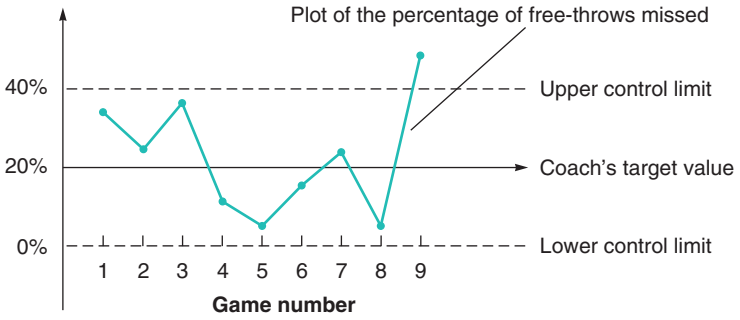
Statistical Process Control (SPC)

Statistical process control (SPC) monitors standards, makes measurements, and takes corrective action as a product or service is being produced. Samples of process outputs are examined; if they are within acceptable limits, the process is permitted to continue. If they fall outside certain specific ranges, the process is stopped and, typically, the assignable cause located and removed.

Statistical process control (SPC) A process used to monitor standards, make measurements, and take corrective action as a product or service is being produced.

Figure 6.8

Control Chart for Percentage of Free-throws Missed by the Orlando Magic in Their First Nine Games of the New Season



McClatchy/Tribune Content Agency LLC/Alamy

Control charts
Graphic presentations of process data over time, with predetermined control limits.

Control charts are graphic presentations of data over time that show upper and lower limits for the process we want to control [see Figure 6.6(g)]. Control charts are constructed in such a way that new data can be quickly compared with past performance data. We take samples of the process output and plot the average of each of these samples on a chart that has the limits on it. The upper and lower limits in a control chart can be in units of temperature, pressure, weight, length, and so on.

Figure 6.8 shows the plot of sample averages in a control chart. When the samples fall within the upper and lower control limits and no discernible pattern is present, the process is said to be in control with only natural variation present. Otherwise, the process is out of control or out of adjustment.

The supplement to this chapter details how control charts of different types are developed. It also deals with the statistical foundation underlying the use of this important tool.

The Role of Inspection

Inspection
A means of ensuring that an operation is producing at the quality level expected.

To make sure a system is producing as expected, control of the process is needed. The best processes have little variation from the standard expected. In fact, if variation were completely eliminated, there would be no need for inspection because there would be no defects. The operations manager's challenge is to build such systems. However, inspection must often be performed to ensure that processes are performing to standard. This **inspection** can involve measurement, tasting, touching, weighing, or testing of the product (sometimes even destroying it when doing so). Its goal is to detect a bad process immediately. Inspection does not correct deficiencies in the system or defects in the products, nor does it change a product or increase its value. Inspection only finds deficiencies and defects. Moreover, inspections are expensive and do not add value to the product.

Inspection should be thought of as a vehicle for improving the system. Operations managers need to know critical points in the system: (1) *when to inspect* and (2) *where to inspect*.

When and Where to Inspect

Deciding when and where to inspect depends on the type of process and the value added at each stage. Inspections can take place at any of the following points:

1. At your supplier's plant while the supplier is producing.
2. At your facility upon receipt of goods from your supplier.
3. Before costly or irreversible processes.
4. During the step-by-step production process.
5. When production or service is complete.
6. Before delivery to your customer.
7. At the point of customer contact.

Matthias Schrader/dpa picture alliance archive/Alamy

Good methods analysis and the proper tools can result in poka-yokes that improve both quality and speed. Here, two poka-yokes are demonstrated. First, the aluminum scoop automatically positions the french fries vertically, and second, the properly sized container ensures that the portion served is correct. McDonald's thrives by bringing rigor and consistency to the restaurant business.

The seven tools of TQM discussed in the previous section aid in this "when and where to inspect" decision. However, inspection is not a substitute for a robust product produced by well-trained employees in a good process. In one well-known experiment conducted by an independent research firm, 100 defective pieces were added to a "perfect" lot of items and then subjected to 100% inspection. The inspectors found only 68 of the defective pieces in their first inspection. It took another three passes by the inspectors to find the next 30 defects. The last two defects were never found. So the bottom line is that there is variability in the inspection process. In addition, inspectors are only human: They become bored, they become tired, and the inspection equipment itself has variability. Even with 100% inspection, inspectors cannot guarantee perfection. Therefore, good processes, employee empowerment, and source control are a better solution than trying to find defects by inspection. You cannot inspect quality into the product.

STUDENT TIP

One of our themes of quality is that "quality cannot be inspected into a product."

For example, at Velcro Industries, as in many other organizations, quality was viewed by machine operators as the job of "those quality people." Inspections were based on random sampling, and if a part showed up bad, it was thrown out. The company decided to pay more attention to the system (operators, machine repair and design, measurement methods, communications, and responsibilities) and to invest more money in training. Over time as defects declined, Velcro was able to pull half its quality control people out of the process.

Source Inspection

The best inspection can be thought of as no inspection at all; this "inspection" is always done at the source—it is just doing the job properly with the operator ensuring that this is so. This may be called **source inspection** (or source control) and is consistent with the concept of employee empowerment, where individual employees self-check their own work. The idea is that each supplier, process, and employee *treats the next step in the process as the customer*, ensuring perfect product to the next "customer." This inspection may be assisted by the use of checklists and controls such as a fail-safe device called a *poka-yoke*, a name borrowed from the Japanese.

Source inspection

Controlling or monitoring at the point of production or purchase—at the source.

A **poka-yoke** is a foolproof device or technique that ensures production of good units every time. These special devices avoid errors and provide quick feedback of problems. A simple example of a poka-yoke device is the diesel gas pump nozzle that will not fit into the "unleaded" gas tank opening on your car. In McDonald's, the french fry scoop and standard-size container used to measure the correct quantity are poka-yokes. Similarly, in a hospital, the prepackaged surgical coverings that contain exactly the items needed for a medical procedure are poka-yokes.

Poka-yoke

Literally translated, "mistake proofing"; it has come to mean a device or technique that ensures the production of a good unit every time.

Checklists are a type of poka-yoke to help ensure consistency and completeness in carrying out a task. A basic example is a to-do list. This tool may take the form of preflight checklists used by airplane pilots, surgical safety checklists used by doctors, or software quality assurance lists used by programmers. The *OM in Action* box "Smart Students–Great Teachers–Relevant Courses" illustrates the important role checklists have in hospital quality.

Checklist

A type of poka-yoke that lists the steps needed to ensure consistency and completeness in a task.

The idea of source inspection, poka-yokes, and checklists is to guarantee 100% good product or service at each step of a process.

OM in Action Smart Students—Great Teachers—Relevant Courses

At VIA University College in the central region of Jutland, Denmark various specialities are trained. There is a range from training engineers over business administration to teachers amongst others. All in all more than 35 different educations are scattered around the more than 15 addresses. To ensure high quality across all educations and locations a thorough quality assurance system has been put in place.

The system is build up upon two primary pillars, evaluation of the relevance and quality of the courses, and the teaching capabilities of the professors. When it comes to assuring the relevance and quality of the courses, digital questionnaires are sent to the students. In the questionnaires the students are asked if they can understand the topics/theory in the course, can see the relevance to the profession. All questionnaires are summoned up in a report, which are being evaluated by the professor, which is responsible for the course. All evaluations are supposed to lead to a small report from the professor evaluating the responses. The report should name three specific things, which should be changed, and 3 specific things, which should remain in the course.

When it comes to the evaluation of the professor's capabilities within teaching the discussion arises, who should see these evaluations? In Denmark there is a high professional pride being a professor, the professors believe they know best about teaching, and think it's a very personal choice how they choose to structure the students learning processes. It's generally accepted that the

David Joel/Getty Images

lecturers are fully capable of defining the learning processes, best suited for the students". This general understanding leads to the fact that evaluation of the learning process in the classroom is a matter between the students and the professor. The only requirements to the professor is, that he should store the results from his survey, so the quality department from Via University College can validate that the professor have a continuous quality assurance process.

Sources: Interview with Professor Hans Trautner, Via University College.

Service Industry Inspection

VIDEO 6.2
Quality Counts at Alaska Airlines

In *service*-oriented organizations, inspection points can be assigned at a wide range of locations, as illustrated in Table 6.4. Again, the operations manager must decide where inspections are justified and may find the seven tools of TQM useful when making these judgments.

TABLE 6.4 Examples of Inspection in Services

ORGANIZATION	WHAT IS INSPECTED	STANDARD
Alaska Airlines	Last bag on carousel	Less than 20 minutes after arrival at the gate
	Airplane door opened	Less than 2 minutes after arrival at the gate
Jones Law Offices	Receptionist performance	Phone answered by the second ring
	Billing	Accurate, timely, and correct format
	Attorney	Promptness in returning calls
Hard Rock Hotel	Reception desk	Use customer's name
	Doorman	Greet guest in less than 30 seconds
	Room	All lights working, spotless bathroom
	Minibar	Restocked and charges accurately posted to bill
Arnold Palmer Hospital	Billing	Accurate, timely, and correct format
	Pharmacy	Prescription accuracy, inventory accuracy
	Lab	Audit for lab-test accuracy
	Nurses	Charts immediately updated
	Admissions	Data entered correctly and completely
Olive Garden Restaurant	Busboy	Serves water and bread within one minute
	Busboy	Clears all entrée items and crumbs prior to dessert
	Waiter	Knows and suggests specials, desserts
Nordstrom Department Store	Display areas	Attractive, well organized, stocked, good lighting
	Stockrooms	Rotation of goods, organized, clean
	Salesclerks	Neat, courteous, very knowledgeable

Inspection of Attributes versus Variables

When inspections take place, quality characteristics may be measured as either *attributes* or *variables*. **Attribute inspection** classifies items as being either good or defective. It does not address the *degree* of failure. For example, the lightbulb burns or it does not. **Variable inspection** measures such dimensions as weight, speed, size, or strength to see if an item falls within an acceptable range. If a piece of electrical wire is supposed to be 0.01 inch in diameter, a micrometer can be used to see if the product is close enough to pass inspection.

Attribute inspection
An inspection that classifies items as being either good or defective.

Variable inspection
Classifications of inspected items as falling on a continuum scale, such as dimension or strength.

Knowing whether attributes or variables are being inspected helps us decide which statistical quality control approach to take, as we will see in the supplement to this chapter.

TQM in Services

The personal component of services is more difficult to measure than the quality of the tangible component. Generally, the user of a service, like the user of a good, has features in mind that form a basis for comparison among alternatives. Lack of any one feature may eliminate the service from further consideration. Quality also may be perceived as a bundle of attributes in which many lesser characteristics are superior to those of competitors. This approach to product comparison differs little between goods and services. However, what is very different about the selection of services is the poor definition of the (1) *intangible differences between products* and (2) *the intangible expectations customers have of those products*. Indeed, the intangible attributes may not be defined at all. They are often unspoken images in the purchaser's mind. This is why all of those marketing issues such as advertising, image, and promotion can make a difference.

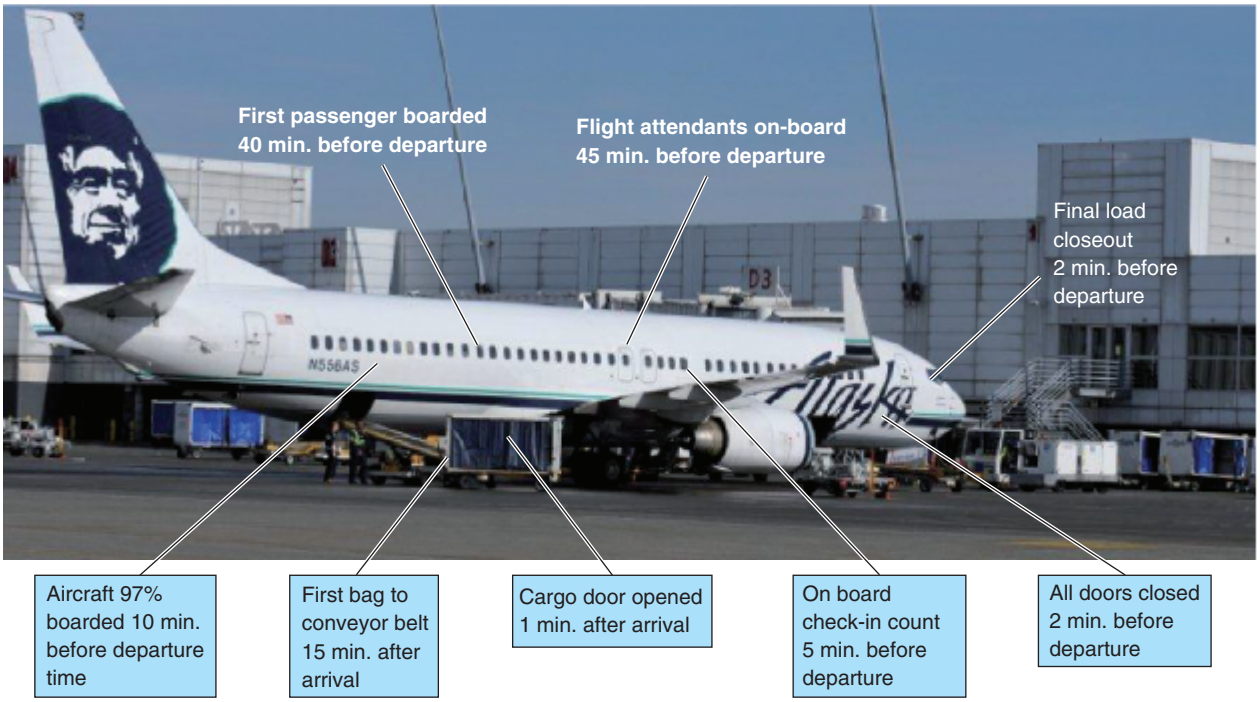
The operations manager plays a significant role in addressing several major aspects of service quality. First, the *tangible component of many services is important*. How well the service is designed and produced does make a difference. This might be how accurate, clear, and complete your checkout bill at the hotel is, how warm the food is at Taco Bell, or how well your car runs after you pick it up at the repair shop.

Second, another aspect of service and service quality is the process. Notice in Table 6.5 that 9 out of 10 of the determinants of service quality are related to *the service process*. Such things as reliability and courtesy are part of the process. An operations manager can

TABLE 6.5 Determinants of Service Quality

Reliability involves consistency of performance and dependability. It means that the firm performs the service right the first time and that the firm honors its promises.
Responsiveness concerns the willingness or readiness of employees to provide service. It involves timeliness of service.
Competence means possession of the required skills and knowledge to perform the service.
Access involves approachability and ease of contact.
Courtesy involves politeness, respect, consideration, and friendliness of contact personnel (including receptionists, telephone operators, etc.).
Communication means keeping customers informed in language they can understand and listening to them. It may mean that the company has to adjust its language for different consumers—increasing the level of sophistication with a well-educated customer and speaking simply and plainly with a novice.
Credibility involves trustworthiness, believability, and honesty. It involves having the customer's best interests at heart.
Security is the freedom from danger, risk, or doubt.
Understanding/knowing the customer involves making the effort to understand the customer's needs.
Tangibles include the physical evidence of the service.

Sources: Adapted from A. Parasuranam, Valarie A. Zeithaml, and Leonard L. Berry, "A Conceptual Model of Service Quality and Its Implications for Future Research," *Journal of Marketing* (1985): 49. Copyright © 1985 by the American Marketing Association. Reprinted with permission.



Alaska Airlines

Like many service organizations, Alaska Airlines sets quality standards in areas such as courtesy, appearance, and time. Shown here are some of Alaska Airlines 50 quality checkpoints, based on a timeline for each departure.

design processes that have these attributes and can ensure their quality through the TQM techniques discussed in this chapter. (See the Alaska Airlines photo.)

Third, the operations manager should realize that the customer's expectations are the standard against which the service is judged. Customers' perceptions of service quality result from a comparison of their "before-service expectations" with their "actual-service experience." In other words, service quality is judged on the basis of whether it meets expectations. *The manager may be able to influence both the quality of the service and the expectation*. Don't promise more than you can deliver.

Fourth, the manager must expect exceptions. There is a standard quality level at which the regular service is delivered, such as the bank teller's handling of a transaction. However, there are "exceptions" or "problems" initiated by the customer or by less-than-optimal operating conditions (e.g., the computer "crashed"). This implies that the quality control system must recognize and *have a set of alternative plans for less-than-optimal operating conditions*.

Service recovery
Training and empowering frontline workers to solve a problem immediately.

Well-run companies have **service recovery** strategies. This means they train and empower frontline employees to immediately solve a problem. For instance, staff at Marriott Hotels are drilled in the **LEARN** routine—Listen, Empathize, Apologize, React, Notify—with the final step ensuring that the complaint is fed back into the system. And at the Ritz-Carlton, staff members are trained not to say merely "sorry" but "please accept my apology." The Ritz gives them a budget for reimbursing upset guests. Similarly, employees at Alaska Airlines are empowered to soothe irritated travelers by drawing from a "toolkit" of options at their disposal.

SERVQUAL
A popular measurement scale for service quality that compares service expectations with service performance.

Managers of service firms may find **SERVQUAL** useful when evaluating performance. SERVQUAL is a widely used instrument that provides direct comparisons between customer service expectations and the actual service provided. SERVQUAL focuses on the *gaps* between the customer service expectations and the service provided on 10 service quality determinants. The most common version of the scale collapses the 10 service quality determinants shown in Table 6.5 into five factors for measurement: reliability, assurance, tangibles, empathy, and responsiveness.

Designing the product, managing the service process, matching customer expectations to the product, and preparing for the exceptions are keys to quality services. The *OM in Action* box "Richey International's Spies" provides another glimpse of how OM managers improve quality in services.

VIDEO 6.3
TQM at Ritz-Carlton Hotels

OM in Action Richey International's Spies

How do luxury hotels maintain quality? They inspect. But when the product is one-on-one service, largely dependent on personal behavior, how do you inspect? You hire spies!

Richey International is the spy. Preferred Hotels and Resorts Worldwide and Intercontinental Hotels have both hired Richey to do quality evaluations via spying. Richey employees posing as customers perform the inspections. However, even then management must have established what the customer expects and specific services that yield customer satisfaction. Only then do managers know where and how to inspect. Aggressive training and objective inspections reinforce behavior that will meet those customer expectations.

The hotels use Richey's undercover inspectors to ensure performance to exacting standards. The hotels do not know when the evaluators will arrive. Nor what aliases they will use. Over 50 different standards are evaluated before the inspectors even check in at a luxury hotel. Over the next 24 hours, using checklists, tape recordings, and photos, written reports are prepared. The reports include evaluation of standards such as:

- Does the doorman greet each guest in less than 30 seconds?
- Does the front-desk clerk use the guest's name during check-in?
- Are the bathroom tub and shower spotlessly clean?
- How many minutes does it take to get coffee after the guest sits down for breakfast?
- Did the waiter make eye contact?
- Were minibar charges posted correctly on the bill?

Established standards, aggressive training, and inspections are part of the TQM effort at these hotels. Quality does not happen by accident.

Sources: Hotelier (Feb. 6, 2010); *Hotel and Motel Management* (August 2002); and *The Wall Street Journal* (May 12, 1999).

Summary

Quality is a term that means different things to different people. We define quality as "the totality of features and characteristics of a product or service that bears on its ability to satisfy stated or implied needs." Defining quality expectations is critical to effective and efficient operations.

Quality requires building a total quality management (TQM) environment because quality cannot be inspected into a product. The chapter also addresses seven TQM *concepts*: continuous improvement, Six Sigma, employee empowerment, benchmarking, just-in-time, Taguchi concepts, and knowledge of TQM tools. The seven TQM *tools* introduced in this chapter are check sheets, scatter diagrams, cause-and-effect diagrams, Pareto charts, flowcharts, histograms, and statistical process control (SPC).

Key Terms

Quality (p. 255)
ISO 9000 (p. 256)
Cost of quality (COQ) (p. 256)
Total quality management (TQM) (p. 257)
PDCA (p. 258)
Six Sigma (p. 259)
Employee empowerment (p. 260)
Quality circle (p. 260)
Benchmarking (p. 260)
Quality robust (p. 262)
Target-oriented quality (p. 263)
Quality loss function (QLF) (p. 263)
Cause-and-effect diagram, Ishikawa diagram, or fish-bone chart (p. 265)
Pareto charts (p. 265)
Flowcharts (p. 266)
Statistical process control (SPC) (p. 267)
Control charts (p. 268)
Inspection (p. 268)
Source inspection (p. 269)
Poka-yoke (p. 269)
Checklist (p. 269)
Attribute inspection (p. 271)
Variable inspection (p. 271)
Service recovery (p. 272)
SERVQUAL (p. 272)

Ethical Dilemma

A lawsuit a few years ago made headlines worldwide when a McDonald's drive-through customer spilled a cup of scalding hot coffee on herself. Claiming the coffee was too hot to be safely consumed in a car, the badly burned 80-year-old woman won $2.9 million in court. (The judge later reduced the award to $640,000.) McDonald's claimed the product was served to the correct specifications and was of proper quality. Further, the cup read "Caution—Contents May Be Hot." McDonald's coffee, at 180°, is substantially hotter (by corporate rule) than typical restaurant coffee, despite hundreds of coffee-scalding complaints in the past 10 years. Similar court cases, incidentally, resulted in smaller verdicts, but again in favor of the plaintiffs. For example, Motor City Bagel Shop was sued for a spilled cup of coffee by a drive-through patron, and Starbucks by a customer who spilled coffee on her own ankle.

Are McDonald's, Motor City, and Starbucks at fault in situations such as these? How do quality and ethics enter into these cases?

Discussion Questions

1. Explain how improving quality can lead to reduced costs.
2. As an Internet exercise, explain the rationale behind the creation of EFQM, and the fundamental concept defining the Enablers in the model. See www.efqm.org.
3. Which 3 of Deming's 14 points do you think are most critical to the success of a TQM program? Why?
4. List the seven concepts that are necessary for an effective TQM program. How are these related to Deming's 14 points?
5. Name three of the important people associated with the quality concepts of this chapter. In each case, write a sentence about each one summarizing his primary contribution to the field of quality management.
6. What are seven tools of TQM?
7. How does fear in the workplace (and in the classroom) inhibit learning?
8. How can a university control the quality of its output (that is, its graduates)?
9. Philip Crosby said that quality is free. Why?
10. List the three concepts central to Taguchi's approach.
11. What is the purpose of using a Pareto chart for a given problem?
12. What are the four broad categories of "causes" to help initially structure an Ishikawa diagram or cause-and-effect diagram?
13. Where would the checklists for employees be beneficial in a service company, such as McDonalds?
14. In which way do you think the operations managers' role may change with regards to quality in the future?
15. Explain, in your own words, what is meant by *source inspection*.
16. What are 10 determinants of service quality?
17. How would you define high quality?
18. In this chapter, we have suggested that building quality into a process and its people is difficult. Inspections are also difficult. To indicate just how difficult inspections are, count the number of *E*s (both capital *E* and lowercase *e*) in the *OM in Action* box "Richey International's Spies" on page 235 (include the title but not the source note). How many did you find? If each student does this individually, you are very likely to find a distribution rather than a single number!

Solved Problems

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

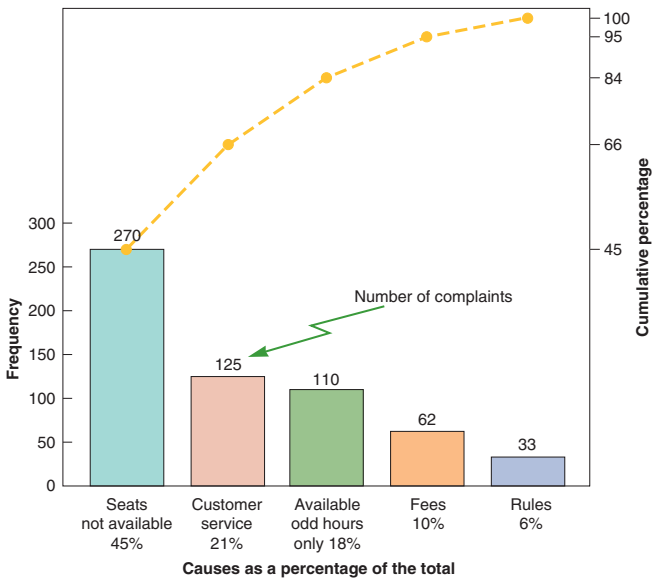
SOLVED PROBLEM 6.1

Northern Airlines's frequent flyer complaints about redeeming miles for free, discounted, and upgraded travel are summarized below, in five categories, from 600 letters received this year.

COMPLAINT	FREQUENCY
Could not get through to customer service to make requests	125
Seats not available on date requested	270
Had to pay fees to get "free" seats	62
Seats were available but only on flights at odd hours	110
Rules kept changing whenever customer called	33

Develop a Pareto chart for the data.

SOLUTION



Problems

Problems 6.1–6.20 relate to Tools of TQM

• **6.1** An avant-garde clothing manufacturer runs a series of high-profile, risqué ads on a billboard on Highway 101 and regularly collects protest calls from people who are offended by them. The company has no idea how many people in total see the ads, but it has been collecting statistics on the number of phone calls from irate viewers:

TYPE	DESCRIPTION	NUMBER OF COMPLAINTS
R	Offensive racially/ethnically	10
M	Demeaning to men	4
W	Demeaning to women	14
I	Ad is incomprehensible	6
O	Other	2

a) Depict this data with a Pareto chart. Also depict the cumulative complaint line.
b) What percent of the total complaints can be attributed to the most prevalent complaint?

• **6.2** Develop a scatter diagram for two variables of interest [say pages in the newspaper by day of the week; see the example in Figure 6.6(b)].

• **6.3** Develop a Pareto Chart of the following causes for defectives in Lloyds shoe production.

REASON FOR DEFECTIVE	FREQUENCY
Lack of training of production staff	12
Poor leather quality	7
No process descriptions	9
Difficulties understanding the processes	11
Divergent glue quality	3
Variable production quantities	5
Uneven dying of leather	4

• **6.4** Develop a histogram of the transportation time you have spend the last ten times you have vent to school.

•• **6.5** You are going to help an friend which is working in a garage, where he repair car brakes. You have observed the following pattern in 7 repairs he did during a day:

REPAIR NO.	MINUTES PR. REPAIR	NO. OF TRIPS TO TOOLBOX
1	50	5
2	34	2
3	43	4
4	56	6
5	38	4
6	49	5
7	36	3

a) Make a scatter diagram based upon the observed data.
b) What can you deduct on the basis of the diagram?

•• **6.6** Develop a flowchart [as in Figure 6.6(e) and Example 2] showing all the steps involved in planning a party.

•• **6.7** Consider the types of poor driving habits that might occur at a traffic light. Make a list of the 10 you consider most likely to happen. Add the category of "other" to that list.
a) Compose a check sheet [like that in Figure 6.6(a)] to collect the frequency of occurrence of these habits. Using your check sheet, visit a busy traffic light intersection at four different times of the day, with two of these times being during high-traffic periods (rush hour, lunch hour). For 15 to 20 minutes each visit, observe the frequency with which the habits you listed occurred.
b) Construct a Pareto chart showing the relative frequency of occurrence of each habit.

•• **6.8** Draw a fish-bone chart detailing reasons why an airline customer might be dissatisfied.

•• **6.9** Consider the everyday task of getting to work on time or arriving at your first class on time in the morning. Draw a fish-bone chart showing reasons why you might arrive late in the morning.

••**6.10** Develop a Ishikawa diagram to reflect "guest dissatisfaction with Pizza restaurant experience" You should use the 4M approach.

••**6.11** Draw a fish-bone chart depicting the reasons that might give rise to an incorrect fee statement at the time you go to pay for your registration at school.

•••**6.12** Mary Beth Marrs, the manager of an apartment complex, feels overwhelmed by the number of complaints she is receiving. Below is the check sheet she has kept for the past 12 weeks. Develop a Pareto chart using this information. What recommendations would you make?

WEEK	GROUNDS	PARKING/ DRIVES	POOL	TENANT ISSUES	ELECTRICAL/ PLUMBING
1	✓✓✓	✓✓	✓	✓✓✓	
2	✓	✓✓✓	✓✓	✓✓	✓
3	✓✓✓	✓✓✓	✓✓	✓	
4	✓	✓✓✓✓	✓	✓	✓✓
5	✓✓	✓✓✓	✓✓✓✓	✓✓	
6	✓	✓✓✓✓	✓✓		
7		✓✓✓	✓✓	✓✓	
8	✓	✓✓✓✓	✓✓	✓✓✓	✓
9	✓	✓✓	✓		
10	✓	✓✓✓✓	✓✓	✓✓	
11		✓✓✓	✓✓	✓	
12	✓✓	✓✓✓	✓✓✓	✓	

• **6.13** Use Pareto analysis to investigate the following data collected on a printed-circuit-board assembly line:

DEFECT	NUMBER OF DEFECT OCCURRENCES
Components not adhering	143
Excess adhesive	71
Misplaced transistors	601
Defective board dimension	146
Mounting holes improperly positioned	12
Circuitry problems on final test	90
Wrong component	212

a) Prepare a graph of the data.
b) What conclusions do you reach?

••**6.14** A list of 15 issues, which have led to poor quality in the production of Bosch powerdrills are provided below. Create a fish-bone diagram using the 4M method.

Long Hours	No ISO certifications	No formalised training procedures
Inadequate tools	Materials get warm during production	No management focus
Not specialised equipment	High churn amongst employees	Random quality checks
Poor design of product	Insufficient capacity	Low educational level amongst employees
No documentation	Noisy production	Uneven quality in raw material

••**6.15** Develop a flowchart for one of the following:
a) Filling up with gasoline at a self-serve station.
b) Determining your account balance and making a withdrawal at an ATM.
c) Getting a cone of yogurt or ice cream from an ice cream store.

••••**6.16** Brand Fashion Consultancy, which provides fashion advice (clothing) as well as fashion products (clothes), has experienced complaints from its customers regarding the service in their French shop. The country manager Gerard DiPaul wishes to find out what the problem is, and have asked his shop managers to record the complaints. The complaints are having the following pattern over the past 6 weeks:

WEEK	NO OF CUSTOMERS	NO. OF COMPLAINTS	*REASON FOR COMPLAINT*			
			POOR SERVICE	PRODUCT FAILURE	FOUND PRODUCT CHEAPER ELSEWHER	PRODUCT LOOSES THE COLOUR
1	120	6	2	1		3
2	118	5	1	1	1	2
3	144	8	3	2	2	1
4	132	7	3	1	2	1
5	157	9	2		3	4
6	147	9		3	2	4

DiPaul has increased the staff to handle the growing amount of customers from his normal staff of 5 up to 9 to handle the growth in the amount of customers.

WEEK	NO. OF NEW HIRES	NO. OF TERMINATIONS	TOTAL NO. OF WORKERS
1	1	0	5
2	2	1	6
3	2	1	7
4	3	2	8
5	2	1	9
6	1	1	9

a) Develop a scatter diagram, using amount of customers and number of complaints. Does there appear to be any relationship?
b) Develop a scatter diagram using the variable "turnover" (number of new hires plus the number of terminations) and the number of complaints. Does the diagram depict a relationship between the two variables?
c) Develop a Pareto chart for the type of complaints that have occurred
d) Create a Check sheet, which could help DiPaul to lower the amount of complaints regarding service in the shop.

•••**6.17** New World Theatre follow the customer satisfaction in their cinema. In a recent research they asked for feedback from the customers, each customer having the opportunity to mention one thing they were displeased with. The outcome was that 734 customers answered the question with the following result: cramped seats (76); poor sound (21); bad selection in the candy shop (29); limited view to the stage (45); poor comfort in the seats (48); too high temperature (32), Other (63); None (483).
a) How many percent hadn't got any complaints?
b) Create a Pareto chart summarizing the responses
c) If you were the owner of the theatre, which 2 or 3 issues would you deal with?
d) Which other tool would you as theatre owner use to better understand the quality issues?

Christophe Testi/Shutterstock

Problems **6.18–6.20** *are available in* MyOMLab.

Problem 6.21 (available in MyOMLab) relates to TQM in Services

CASE STUDIES

Southwestern University: (C)*

The popularity of Southwestern University's football program under its new coach Phil Flamm surged in each of the 5 years since his arrival at the Stephenville, Texas, college. (See Southwestern University: (A) in Chapter 3 and (B) in Chapter 4.) With a football stadium close to maxing out at 54,000 seats and a vocal coach pushing for a new stadium, SWU president Joel Wisner faced some difficult decisions. After a phenomenal upset victory over its archrival, the University of Texas, at the homecoming game in the fall, Dr. Wisner was not as happy as one would think. Instead of ecstatic alumni, students, and faculty, all Wisner heard were complaints. "The lines at the concession stands were too long"; "Parking was harder to find and farther away than in the old days" (that is, before the team won regularly); "Seats weren't comfortable"; "Traffic was backed up halfway to Dallas"; and on and on. "A college president just can't win," muttered Wisner to himself.

At his staff meeting the following Monday, Wisner turned to his VP of administration, Leslie Gardner. "I wish you would take care of these football complaints, Leslie," he said. "See what the *real* problems are and let me know how you've resolved them." Gardner wasn't surprised at the request. "I've already got a handle on it, Joel," she replied. "We've been randomly surveying 50 fans per game for the past year to see what's on their minds. It's all part of my campuswide TQM effort. Let me tally things up and I'll get back to you in a week."

When she returned to her office, Gardner pulled out the file her assistant had compiled (see Table 6.6). "There's a lot of information here," she thought.

TABLE 6.6 Fan Satisfaction Survey Results (*N* = 250)

		OVERALL GRADE				
		A	B	C	D	F
Game Day	A. Parking	90	105	45	5	5
	B. Traffic	50	85	48	52	15
	C. Seating	45	30	115	35	25
	D. Entertainment	160	35	26	10	19
	E. Printed Program	66	34	98	22	30
Tickets	A. Pricing	105	104	16	15	10
	B. Season Ticket Plans	75	80	54	41	0
Concessions	A. Prices	16	116	58	58	2
	B. Selection of Foods	155	60	24	11	0
	C. Speed of Service	35	45	46	48	76
Respondents						
Alumnus	113					
Student	83					
Faculty/Staff	16					
None of the above	38					

Open-Ended Comments on Survey Cards:

Parking a mess	More hot dog stands	Put in bigger seats	My company will buy a skybox—build it!
Add a skybox	Seats are all metal	Friendly ushers	Programs overpriced
Get better cheerleaders	Need skyboxes	Need better seats	Want softer seats
Double the parking attendants	Seats stink	Expand parking lots	Beat those Longhorns!
Everything is okay	Go SWU!	Hate the bleacher seats	I'll pay for a skybox
Too crowded	Lines are awful	Hot dogs cold	Seats too small
Seats too narrow	Seats are uncomfortable	$3 for a coffee? No way!	Band was terrific
Great food	I will pay more for better view	Get some skyboxes	Love Phil Flamm
Phil F. for President!	Get a new stadium	Love the new uniforms	Everything is great
I smelled drugs being smoked	Student dress code needed	Took an hour to park	Build new stadium
Stadium is ancient	I want cushioned seats	Coach is terrific	Move games to Dallas
Seats are like rocks	Not enough police	More water fountains	No complaints
Not enough cops for traffic	Students too rowdy	Better seats	Dirty bathroom
Game starts too late	Parking terrible	Seats not comfy	
Hire more traffic cops	Toilets weren't clean	Bigger parking lot	
Need new band	Not enough handicap spots in lot	I'm too old for bench seats	
Great!	Well done, SWU	Cold coffee served at game	

Discussion Questions

1. Using at least two different quality tools, analyze the data and present your conclusions.
2. How could the survey have been more useful?
3. What is the next step?

*This integrated case study runs throughout the text. Other issues facing Southwestern's football stadium include: (A) Managing the renovation project (Chapter 3); (B) Forecasting game attendance (Chapter 4); (D) Break-even analysis of food services (Supplement 7 Web site); (E) Locating the new stadium (Chapter 8 Web site); (F) Inventory planning of football programs (Chapter 12 Web site); and (G) Scheduling of campus security officers/staff for game days (Chapter 13 Web site).

The Culture of Quality at Arnold Palmer Hospital

Video Case

Founded in 1989, Arnold Palmer Hospital is one of the largest hospitals for women and children in the U.S., with 431 beds in two facilities totaling 676,000 square feet. Located in downtown Orlando, Florida, and named after its famed golf benefactor, the hospital, with more than 2,000 employees, serves an 18-county area in central Florida and is the only Level 1 trauma center for children in that region. Arnold Palmer Hospital provides a broad range of medical services including neonatal and pediatric intensive care, pediatric oncology and cardiology, care for high-risk pregnancies, and maternal intensive care.

The Issue of Assessing Quality Health Care

Quality health care is a goal all hospitals profess, but Arnold Palmer Hospital has actually developed comprehensive and scientific means of asking customers to judge the quality of care they receive. Participating in a national benchmark comparison against other hospitals, Arnold Palmer Hospital consistently scores in the top 10% in overall patient satisfaction. Executive Director Kathy Swanson states, "Hospitals in this area will be distinguished largely on the basis of their customer satisfaction. We must have accurate information about how our patients and their families judge the quality of our care, so I follow the questionnaire results daily. The in-depth survey helps me and others on my team to gain quick knowledge from patient feedback." Arnold Palmer Hospital employees are empowered to provide gifts in value up to $200 to patients who find reason to complain about any hospital service such as food, courtesy, responsiveness, or cleanliness.

Swanson doesn't focus just on the customer surveys, which are mailed to patients one week after discharge, but also on a variety of internal measures. These measures usually start at the grassroots level, where the staff sees a problem and develops ways to track performance. The hospital's longstanding philosophy supports the concept that each patient is important and respected as a person. That patient has the right to comprehensive, compassionate family-centered health care provided by a knowledgeable physician-directed team.

Some of the measures Swanson carefully monitors for continuous improvement are morbidity, infection rates, readmission rates, costs per case, and length of stays. The tools she uses daily include Pareto charts, flowcharts, and process charts, in addition to benchmarking against hospitals both nationally and in the southeast region.

The result of all of these efforts has been a quality culture as manifested in Arnold Palmer's high ranking in patient satisfaction and one of the highest survival rates of critically ill babies.

Discussion Questions*

1. Why is it important for Arnold Palmer Hospital to get a patient's assessment of health care quality? Does the patient have the expertise to judge the health care she receives?
2. How would you build a culture of quality in an organization such as Arnold Palmer Hospital?
3. What techniques does Arnold Palmer Hospital practice in its drive for quality and continuous improvement?
4. Develop a fish-bone diagram illustrating the quality variables for a patient who just gave birth at Arnold Palmer Hospital (or any other hospital).

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before answering these questions.

Quality Counts at Alaska Airlines

Video Case

Alaska Airlines, with nearly 100 destinations, including regular service to Alaska, Hawaii, Canada, and Mexico, is the seventh-largest U.S. carrier. Alaska Airlines has won the J.D. Power and Associates Award for highest customer satisfaction in the industry for eight years in a row while being the number one on-time airline for five years in a row.

Management's unwavering commitment to quality has driven much of the firm's success and generated an extremely loyal customer base. Executive V.P. Ben Minicucci exclaims, "We have rewritten our DNA." Building an organization that can achieve quality is a demanding task, and the management at Alaska Airlines accepted the challenge. This is a highly participative quality culture, reinforced by leadership training, constant process improvement, comprehensive metrics, and frequent review of those metrics. The usual training of flight crews and pilots is supplemented with

Alaska Air lines

ELEMENTS	WEIGHTING	PERFORMANCE	SCORE	BONUS POINTS	TOTAL	GRADE
Process Compliance	20		15		15	B
Staffing	15		15	5	20	A+
MAP Rate (for bags)	20		15		15	B
Delays	10		9		9	A
Time to Carousel (total weight = 10)			10		10	A
Percentage of flights scanned	2	98.7%				
Percentage of bags scanned	2	70.9%				
20 Minutes all bags dropped (% compliance)	4	92.5%				
Outliers (>25mins)	2	2				
Safety Compliance	15		15	5	20	A+
Quality Compliance	10		10		10	A
Total - 100%	**100**		**89**	**10**	**99**	**A+**

Time to Carousel

Points	2	1.5	1	0
Percentage of flights scanned	95%–100%	90%–94.9%	89.9%–85%	< 84.9%

Points	2	0
Percentage of bags scanned	60% or above	≤ 59.9%

Points	0	4
Last bag percent compliance	Below 89.9%	90%–100%

Points	0	1	1.5	2
Last Bag >25 min. (Outliers)	20	15	10	5

classroom training in areas such as Six Sigma. Over 200 managers have obtained Six Sigma Green Belt certification.

Alaska collects more than 100 quality and performance metrics every day. For example, the accompanying picture tells the crew that it has 6 minutes to close the door and back away from the gate to meet the "time to pushback" target. Operations personnel review each airport hub's performance scorecard daily and the overall operations scorecard weekly. As Director of System Operations Control, Wayne Newton proclaims, "If it is not measured, it is not managed." The focus is on identifying problem areas or trends, determining causes, and working on preventive measures.

Within the operations function there are numerous detailed input metrics for station operations (such as the percentage of time that hoses are free of twists, the ground power cord is stowed, and no vehicles are parked in prohibited zones). Management operates under the assumption that if all the detailed input metrics are acceptable, the major key performance indicators, such as Alaska's on-time performance and 20-minute luggage guarantee, will automatically score well.

The accompanying table displays a sample monthly scorecard for Alaska's ground crew provider in Seattle. The major evaluation categories include process compliance, staffing (degree that crew members are available when needed), MAP rate (minimum acceptable performance for mishandled bags), delays, time to carousel, safety compliance, and quality compliance. The quality compliance category alone tracks 64 detailed input metrics using approximately 30,000 monthly observations. Each of the major categories on the scorecard has an importance weight, and the provider is assigned a weighted average score at the end of each month. The contract with the supplier provides for up to a 3.7% bonus for outstanding performance and as much as a 5.0% penalty for poor performance. The provider's line workers receive a portion of the bonus when top scores are achieved.

As a company known for outstanding customer service, service recovery efforts represent a necessary area of emphasis. When things go wrong, employees mobilize to first communicate with, and in many cases compensate, affected customers. "It doesn't matter if it's not our fault," says Minicucci. Front-line workers are empowered with a "toolkit" of options to offer to inconvenienced customers, including the ability to provide up to 5,000 frequent flyer miles and/or vouchers for meals, hotels, luggage, and tickets. When an Alaska flight had to make an emergency landing in Eugene, Oregon, due to a malfunctioning oven, passengers were immediately texted with information about what happened and why, and they were told that a replacement plane would be arriving within one hour. Within that hour, an apology letter along with a $450 ticket voucher were already in the mail to each passenger's home. No customer complaints subsequently appeared on Twitter or Facebook. It's no wonder why Alaska's customers return again and again.

Discussion Questions*

1. What are some ways that Alaska can ensure that quality and performance metric standards are met when the company outsources its ground operations to a contract provider?
2. Identify several quality metrics, in addition to those identified earlier, that you think Alaska tracks or should be tracking.
3. Think about a previous problem that you had when flying, for example, a late flight, a missed connection, or lost luggage. How, if at all, did the airline respond? Did the airline adequately address your situation? If not, what else should they

have done? Did your experience affect your desire (positively or negative) to fly with that airline in the future?

4. See the accompanying table. The contractor received a perfect Time to Carousel score of 10 total points, even though its performance was not "perfect." How many total points would the contractor have received with the following performance scores: 93.2% of flights scanned, 63.5% of bags scanned, 89.6% of all bags dropped within 20 minutes, and 15 bags arriving longer than 25 minutes?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before addressing these questions.

Quality at the Ritz-Carlton Hotel Company

Video Case

Ritz-Carlton. The name alone evokes images of luxury and quality. As the first hotel company to win the Malcolm Baldrige National Quality Award, the Ritz treats quality as if it is the heartbeat of the company. This means a daily commitment to meeting customer expectations and making sure that each hotel is free of any deficiency.

In the hotel industry, quality can be hard to quantify. Guests do not purchase a product when they stay at the Ritz: They buy an experience. Thus, creating the right combination of elements to make the experience stand out is the challenge and goal of every employee, from maintenance to management.

Before applying for the Baldrige Award, company management undertook a rigorous self-examination of its operations in an attempt to measure and quantify quality. Nineteen processes were studied, including room service delivery, guest reservation and registration, message delivery, and breakfast service. This period of self-study included statistical measurement of process work flows and cycle times for areas ranging from room service delivery times and reservations to valet parking and housekeeping efficiency. The results were used to develop performance benchmarks against which future activity could be measured.

With specific, quantifiable targets in place, Ritz-Carlton managers and employees now focus on continuous improvement. The goal is 100% customer satisfaction: If a guest's experience does not meet expectations, the Ritz-Carlton risks losing that guest to competition.

One way the company has put more meaning behind its quality efforts is to organize its employees into "self-directed" work teams. Employee teams determine work scheduling, what work needs to be done, and what to do about quality problems in their own areas. In order to see the relationship of their specific area to the overall goals, employees are also given the opportunity to take additional training in hotel operations. Ritz-Carlton believes that a more educated and informed employee is in a better position to make decisions in the best interest of the organization.

Discussion Questions*

1. In what ways could the Ritz-Carlton monitor its success in achieving quality?
2. Many companies say that their goal is to provide quality products or services. What actions might you expect from a company that intends quality to be more than a slogan or buzzword?
3. Why might it cost the Ritz-Carlton less to "do things right" the first time?
4. How could control charts, Pareto diagrams, and cause-and-effect diagrams be used to identify quality problems at a hotel?
5. What are some nonfinancial measures of customer satisfaction that might be used by the Ritz-Carlton?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before addressing these questions.

Source: Adapted from C. T. Horngren, S. M. Datar, and G. Foster, *Cost Accounting*, 15th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2014).

- **Additional Case Study:** Visit MyOMLab for this free case study:
  Westover Electrical, Inc.: This electric motor manufacturer has a large log of defects in its wiring process.

Endnotes

1. Philip B. Crosby, *Quality Is Free* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1979). Further, J. M. Juran states, in his book *Juran on Quality by Design* (The Free Press 1992, p. 157), that costs of poor quality "are huge, but the amounts are not known with precision. In most companies the accounting system provides only a minority of the information needed to quantify this cost of poor quality. It takes a great deal of time and effort to extend the accounting system so as to provide full coverage."
2. To train employees in how to improve quality and its relationship to customers, there are three other key players in the Six Sigma program: Master Black Belts, Black Belts, and Green Belts.
3. "The Straining of Quality," *The Economist* (January 14, 1995): 55. We also see that this is one of the strengths of Southwest Airlines, which offers bare-bones domestic service but whose friendly and humorous employees help it obtain number-one ranking for quality. (See *Fortune* [March 6, 2006]: 65–69.)

Chapter 6 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
QUALITY AND STRATEGY (pp. 254–255)	Managing quality helps build successful strategies of differentiation, low cost, and *response.* Two ways that quality improves profitability are: ■ *Sales gains* via improved response, price flexibility, increased market share, and/or improved reputation ■ *Reduced costs* via increased productivity, lower rework and scrap costs, and/or lower warranty costs	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4 **VIDEO 6.1** The Culture and Quality at Arnold Palmer Hospital
DEFINING QUALITY (pp. 255–257)	An operations manager's objective is to build a total quality management system that identifies and satisfies customer needs. ■ **Quality**—The ability of a product or service to meet customer needs. The American Society for Quality (ASQ) defines quality as "the totality of features and characteristics of a product or service that bears on its ability to satisfy stated or implied needs." The two most well-known quality awards are: ■ *U.S.*: Malcolm Baldrige National Quality Award, named after a former secretary of commerce ■ *Japan*: Deming Prize, named after an American, Dr. W. Edwards Deming ■ **ISO 9000**—A set of quality standards developed by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO). ISO 9000 is the only quality standard with international recognition. To do business globally, being listed in the ISO directory is critical. ■ **Cost of quality (COQ)**—The cost of doing things wrong; that is, the price of nonconformance. The four major categories of costs associated with quality are *prevention costs, appraisal costs, internal failure costs,* and *external failure costs.* Four leaders in the field of quality management are W. Edwards Deming, Joseph M. Juran, Armand Feigenbaum, and Philip B. Crosby.	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4
TOTAL QUALITY MANAGEMENT (pp. 257–264)	■ **Total quality management (TQM)**—Management of an entire organization so that it excels in all aspects of products and services that are important to the customer. Seven concepts for an effective TQM program are (1) continuous improvement, (2) Six Sigma, (3) employee empowerment, (4) benchmarking, (5) just-in-time (JIT), (6) Taguchi concepts, and (7) knowledge of TQM tools. ■ **PDCA**—A continuous improvement model that involves four stages: plan, do, check, and act. The Japanese use the word *kaizen* to describe the ongoing process of unending improvement—the setting and achieving of ever-higher goals. ■ **Six Sigma**—A program to save time, improve quality, and lower costs. In a statistical sense, Six Sigma describes a process, product, or service with an extremely high capability—99.9997% accuracy, or 3.4 defects per million. ■ **Employee empowerment**—Enlarging employee jobs so that the added responsibility and authority are moved to the lowest level possible in the organization. Business literature suggests that some 85% of quality problems have to do with materials and processes, not with employee performance. ■ **Quality circle**—A group of employees meeting regularly with a facilitator to solve work-related problems in their work area. ■ **Benchmarking**—Selecting a demonstrated standard of performance that represents the very best performance for a process or an activity. The philosophy behind just-in-time (JIT) involves continuing improvement and enforced problem solving. JIT systems are designed to produce or deliver goods just as they are needed. ■ **Quality robust**—Products that are consistently built to meet customer needs, despite adverse conditions in the production process. ■ **Target-oriented quality**—A philosophy of continuous improvement to bring the product exactly on target. ■ **Quality loss function (QLF)**—A mathematical function that identifies all costs connected with poor quality and shows how these costs increase as output moves away from the target value.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4

Chapter 6 *Rapid* Review *continued*

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
TOOLS OF TQM (pp. 264–268)	TQM tools that generate ideas include the *check sheet* (organized method of recording data), *scatter diagram* (graph of the value of one variable vs. another variable), and *cause-and-effect diagram*. Tools for organizing the data are the *Pareto chart* and *flowchart*. Tools for identifying problems are the *histogram* (distribution showing the frequency of occurrences of a variable) and *statistical process control chart*. ■ **Cause-and-effect diagram**—A schematic technique used to discover possible locations of quality problems. (Also called an Ishikawa diagram or a fish-bone chart.) The 4 *M*s (material, machinery/equipment, manpower, and methods) may be broad "causes." ■ **Pareto chart**—A graphic that identifies the few critical items as opposed to many less important ones. ■ **Flowchart**—A block diagram that graphically describes a process or system. ■ **Statistical process control (SPC)**—A process used to monitor standards, make measurements, and take corrective action as a product or service is being produced. ■ **Control chart**—A graphic presentation of process data over time, with predetermined control limits.	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4 Problems: 6.1, 6.3, 6.5, 6.8–6.14, 6.16–6.20 **ACTIVE MODEL 6.1** Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 6.1
THE ROLE OF INSPECTION (pp. 268–271)	■ **Inspection**—A means of ensuring that an operation is producing at the quality level expected. ■ **Source inspection**—Controlling or monitoring at the point of production or purchase: at the source. ■ **Poka-yoke**—Literally translated, "mistake proofing"; it has come to mean a device or technique that ensures the production of a good unit every time. ■ **Checklist**—A type of poka-yoke that lists the steps needed to ensure consistency and completeness in a task. ■ **Attribute inspection**—An inspection that classifies items as being either good or defective. ■ **Variable inspection**—Classifications of inspected items as falling on a continuum scale, such as dimension, size, or strength.	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.4 **VIDEO 6.2** Quality Counts at Alaska Airlines
TQM IN SERVICES (pp. 271–273)	Determinants of service quality: reliability, responsiveness, competence, access, courtesy, communication, credibility, security, understanding/knowing the customer, and tangibles. ■ **Service recovery**—Training and empowering frontline workers to solve a problem immediately. ■ **SERVQUAL**—A popular measurement scale for service quality that compares service expectations with service performance.	Concept Questions: 6.1–6.4 Problem: 6.21 **VIDEO 6.3** TQM at Ritz-Carlton Hotels

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 6.1 In this chapter, *quality* is defined as:
- **a)** the degree of excellence at an acceptable price and the control of variability at an acceptable cost.
- **b)** how well a product fits patterns of consumer preferences.
- **c)** the totality of features and characteristics of a product or service that bears on its ability to satisfy stated or implied needs.
- **d)** being impossible to define, but you know what it is.

LO 6.2 ISO 9000 is an international standard that addresses _____.

LO 6.3 Explain Six Sigma
If Ukrainian beer brand Obolon ships 1 million pallets of beer, a Six Sigma program would require at maximum how many misplaced pallets?
- **a)** 100
- **b)** 150
- **c)** 10
- **d)** 6,8
- **e)** 3,4

LO 6.4 Internal benchmarking is optimal for companies which?
- **a)** Have a diverse platform of wholly owned subsidiaries
- **b)** Have a range of international divisions, producing different products
- **c)** Have a range of similar subsidiaries, producing similar products at similar market conditions

LO 6.5 The Taguchi method includes all except which of the following major concepts?
- **a)** Employee involvement
- **b)** Remove the effects of adverse conditions
- **c)** Quality loss function
- **d)** Target specifications

LO 6.6 Zara see's several quality problems with the production in China. The dominant problem is lack of performance, conformance and durability. Which TQM tool would you suggest?
- **a)** Scatter diagrams
- **b)** Histograms
- **c)** Cause-and-Effect diagram
- **d)** Statistical Process Control

Answers: LO 6.1. c; LO 6.2. quality management systems; LO 6.3. e; LO 6.4. c; LO 6.5. a; LO 6.6. c.

Statistical Process Control

SUPPLEMENT 6

SUPPLEMENT OUTLINE

- Statistical Process Control (SPC) *284*
- Process Capability *298*
- Acceptance Sampling *300*

Alaska Airlines

Alaska Airlines

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO S6.1 ***Explain*** the purpose of a control chart 285
LO S6.2 ***Explain*** the role of the central limit theorem in SPC 286
LO S6.3 ***Build*** $\bar{x}$-charts and *R*-charts 288
LO S6.4 ***List*** the five steps involved in building control charts 292
LO S6.5 ***Build*** *p*-charts and *c*-charts 294
LO S6.6 ***Explain*** process capability and compute C_p and C_{pk} 298
LO S6.7 ***Explain*** acceptance sampling 300

As part of its statistical process control system, Flowers Bakery, in Georgia, uses a digital camera to inspect just-baked sandwich buns as they move along the production line. Items that don't measure up in terms of color, shape, seed distribution, or size are identified and removed automatically from the conveyor.

Georgia Tech

Statistical Process Control (SPC)

Statistical process control (SPC)
A process used to monitor standards by taking measurements and corrective action as a product or service is being produced.

Control chart
A graphical presentation of process data over time.

In this supplement, we address statistical process control—the same techniques used at BetzDearborn, at Arnold Palmer Hospital, at GE, and at Southwest Airlines to achieve quality standards. Statistical process control (SPC) is the application of statistical techniques to ensure that processes meet standards. All processes are subject to a certain degree of variability. While studying process data in the 1920s, Walter Shewhart of Bell Laboratories made the distinction between the common (natural) and special (assignable) causes of variation. He developed a simple but powerful tool to separate the two—the control chart.

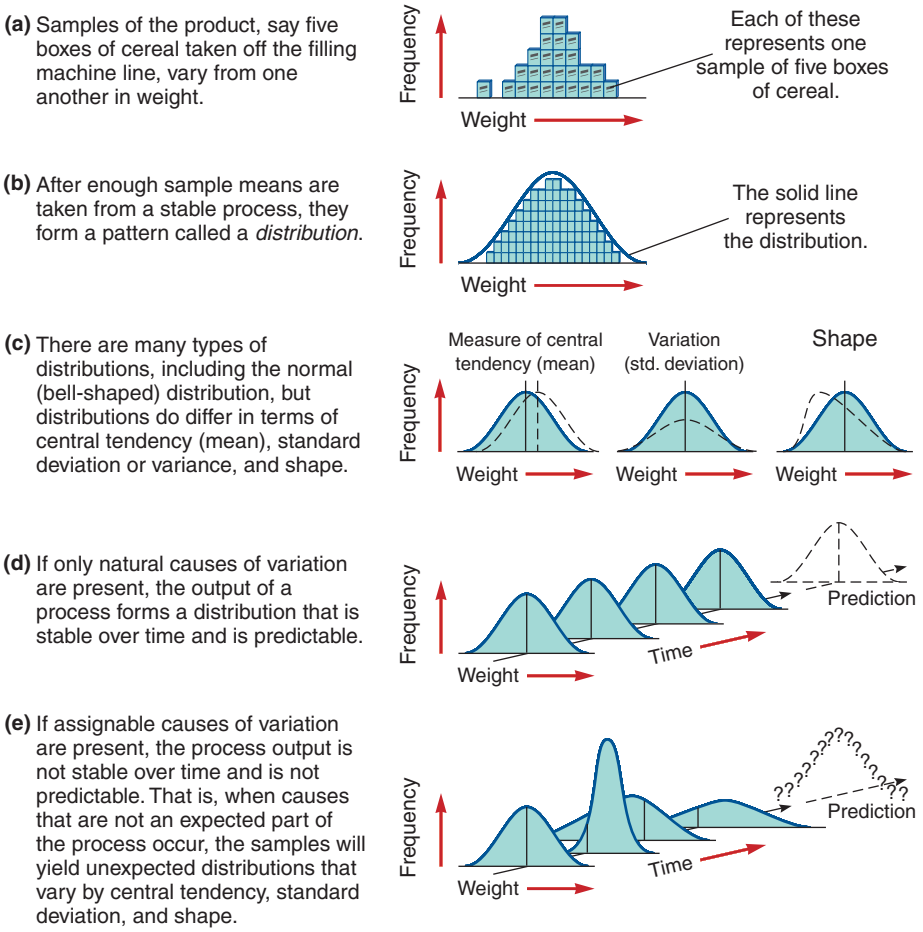
A process is said to be operating *in statistical control* when the only source of variation is common (natural) causes. The process must first be brought into statistical control by detecting and eliminating special (assignable) causes of variation.[1] Then its performance is predictable, and its ability to meet customer expectations can be assessed. The *objective* of a process control system is to *provide a statistical signal when assignable causes of variation are present*. Such a signal can quicken appropriate action to eliminate assignable causes.

Natural variations
Variability that affects every production process to some degree and is to be expected; also known as common cause.

Natural Variations Natural variations affect almost every process and are to be expected. Natural variations are the many sources of variation that occur within a process, even one that is in statistical control. Natural variations form a pattern that can be described as a *distribution*.

As long as the distribution (output measurements) remains within specified limits, the process is said to be "in control," and natural variations are tolerated.

Figure S6.1
Natural and Assignable Variation



Assignable Variations Assignable variation in a process can be traced to a specific reason. Factors such as machine wear, misadjusted equipment, fatigued or untrained workers, or new batches of raw material are all potential sources of assignable variations.

Assignable variation
Variation in a production process that can be traced to specific causes.

Natural and assignable variations distinguish two tasks for the operations manager. The first is to *ensure that the process is capable* of operating under control with only natural variation. The second is, of course, to *identify and eliminate assignable variations* so that the processes will remain under control.

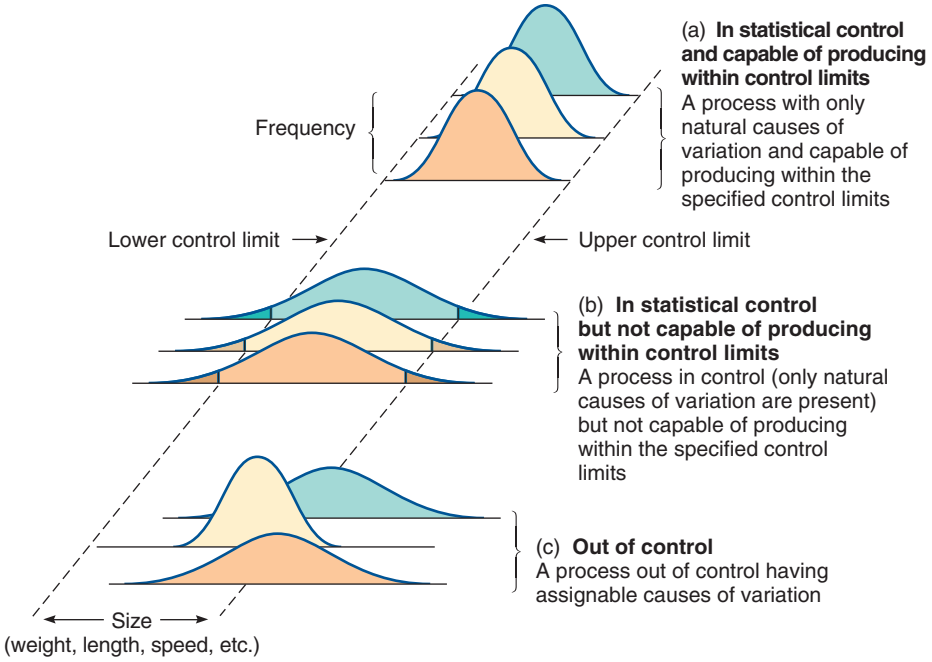
Samples Because of natural and assignable variation, statistical process control uses averages of small samples (often of four to eight items) as opposed to data on individual parts. Individual pieces tend to be too erratic to make trends quickly visible.

Figure S6.1 provides a detailed look at the important steps in determining process variation. The horizontal scale can be weight (as in the number of ounces in boxes of cereal) or length (as in fence posts) or any physical measure. The vertical scale is frequency. The samples of five boxes of cereal in Figure S6.1 **(a)** are weighed, **(b)** form a distribution, and **(c)** can vary. The distributions formed in **(b)** and **(c)** will fall in a predictable pattern **(d)** if only natural variation is present. If assignable causes of variation are present, then we can expect either the mean to vary or the dispersion to vary, as is the case in **(e)**.

LO S6.1 *Explain* the purpose of a control chart

Control Charts The process of building control charts is based on the concepts presented in Figure S6.2. This figure shows three distributions that are the result of outputs from three types of processes. We plot small samples and then examine characteristics of the resulting data to see if the process is within "control limits." The purpose of control charts is to help distinguish between natural variations and variations due to assignable causes. As seen in Figure S6.2, a process is **(a)** in control *and the process is capable of producing within established control limits*, **(b)** in control *but the process is not capable of producing within established*

Figure S6.2
Process Control: Three Types of Process Outputs



limits, or **(c)** out of control. We now look at ways to build control charts that help the operations manager keep a process under control.

Control Charts for Variables

The variables of interest here are those that have continuous dimensions. They have an infinite number of possibilities. Examples are weight, speed, length, or strength. Control charts for the mean, $\bar{x}$ or x-bar, and the range, R, are used to monitor processes that have continuous dimensions. The $\bar{x}$-chart tells us whether changes have occurred in the central tendency (the mean, in this case) of a process. These changes might be due to such factors as tool wear, a gradual increase in temperature, a different method used on the second shift, or new and stronger materials. The R-chart values indicate that a gain or loss in dispersion has occurred. Such a change may be due to worn bearings, a loose tool, an erratic flow of lubricants to a machine, or to sloppiness on the part of a machine operator. The two types of charts go hand in hand when monitoring variables because they measure the two critical parameters: central tendency and dispersion.

$\bar{x}$-chart
A quality control chart for variables that indicates when changes occur in the central tendency of a production process.

R-chart
A control chart that tracks the "range" within a sample; it indicates that a gain or loss in uniformity has occurred in dispersion of a production process.

Central limit theorem
The theoretical foundation for $\bar{x}$-charts, which states that regardless of the distribution of the population of all parts or services, the distribution of $\bar{x}$s tends to follow a normal curve as the number of samples increases.

The Central Limit Theorem

The theoretical foundation for $\bar{x}$-charts is the central limit theorem. This theorem states that regardless of the distribution of the population, the distribution of $\bar{x}$s (each of which is a mean of a sample drawn from the population) will tend to follow a normal curve as the number of samples increases. Fortunately, even if each sample (n) is fairly small (say, 4 or 5), the distributions of the averages will still roughly follow a normal curve. The theorem also states that: (1) the mean of the distribution of the $\bar{x}$s (called $\bar{\bar{x}}$) will equal the mean of the overall population (called μ); and (2) the standard deviation of the *sampling distribution*, $\sigma_{\bar{x}}$, will be the *population (process) standard deviation*, divided by the square root of the sample size, n. In other words:[2]

LO S6.2 *Explain* the role of the central limit theorem in SPC

$$\bar{\bar{x}} = \mu \tag{S6-1}$$

and

$$\sigma_{\bar{x}} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} \tag{S6-2}$$

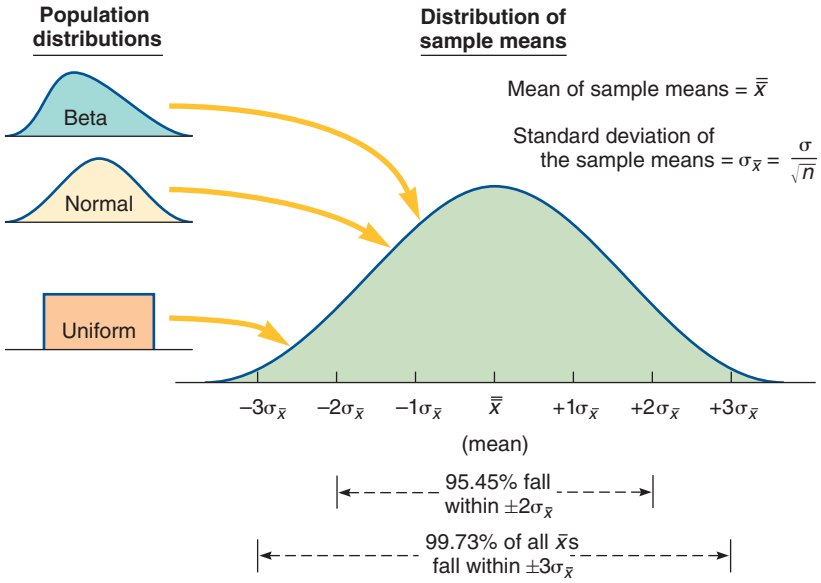


Figure **S6.3**

The Relationship Between Population and Sampling Distributions

Even though the population distributions will differ (e.g., normal, beta, uniform), each with its own mean (μ) and standard deviation (σ), the distribution of sample means always approaches a normal distribution.

Figure S6.3 shows three possible population distributions, each with its own mean, μ, and standard deviation, σ. If a series of random samples ($\bar{x}_1$, $\bar{x}_2$, $\bar{x}_3$, $\bar{x}_4$, and so on), each of size n, is drawn from any population distribution (which could be normal, beta, uniform, and so on), the resulting distribution of $\bar{x}_i$s will approximate a normal distribution (see Figure S6.3).

Moreover, the sampling distribution, as is shown in Figure S6.4(a), will have less variability than the process distribution. Because the sampling distribution is normal, we can state that:

- 95.45% of the time, the sample averages will fall within $\pm 2\sigma_{\bar{x}}$ if the process has only natural variations.
- 99.73% of the time, the sample averages will fall within $\pm 3\sigma_{\bar{x}}$ if the process has only natural variations.

If a point on the control chart falls outside of the $\pm 3\sigma_{\bar{x}}$ control limits, then we are 99.73% sure the process has changed. Figure S6.4(b) shows that as the sample size increases, the sampling distribution becomes narrower. So the sample statistic is closer to the true value of the population for larger sample sizes. This is the theory behind control charts.

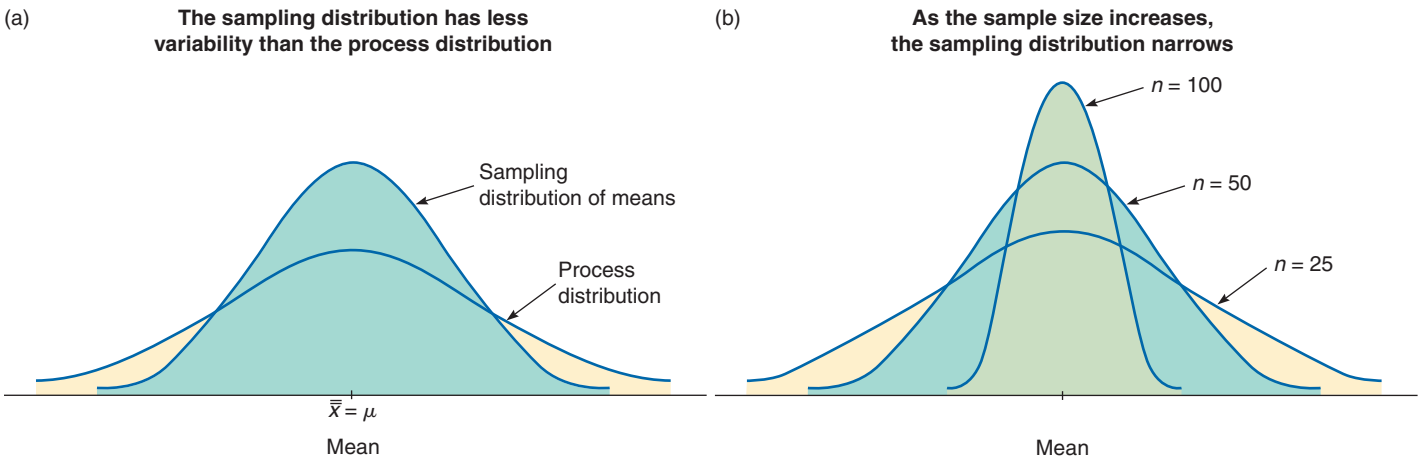


Figure **S6.4**

The Sampling Distribution of Means Is Normal

The process distribution from which the sample was drawn was also normal, but it could have been any distribution.

Setting Mean Chart Limits ($\bar{x}$-Charts)

If we know, through past data, the standard deviation of the population (process), σ, we can set upper and lower control limits[3] by using these formulas:

$$\text{Upper control limit (UCL)} = \bar{\bar{x}} + z\sigma_{\bar{x}} \quad \text{(S6-3)}$$

$$\text{Lower control limit (LCL)} = \bar{\bar{x}} - z\sigma_{\bar{x}} \quad \text{(S6-4)}$$

LO S6.3 *Build $\bar{x}$-charts and R-charts*

where

$\bar{\bar{x}}$ = mean of the sample means or a target value set for the process
z = number of normal standard deviations (2 for 95.45% confidence, 3 for 99.73%)
$\sigma_{\bar{x}}$ = standard deviation of the sample means $= \sigma/\sqrt{n}$
σ = population (process) standard deviation
n = sample size

Example S1 shows how to set control limits for sample means using standard deviations.

Example S1

SETTING CONTROL LIMITS USING SAMPLES

The weights of boxes of Oat Flakes within a large production lot are sampled each hour. Managers want to set control limits that include 99.73% of the sample means.

APPROACH ▶ Randomly select and weigh nine ($n = 9$) boxes each hour. Then find the overall mean and use Equations (S6-3) and (S6-4) to compute the control limits. Here are the nine boxes chosen for Hour 1:

STUDENT TIP

If you want to see an example of such variability in your supermarket, go to the soft drink section and line up a few 2-liter bottles of Coke or Pepsi.

SOLUTION ▶

$$\text{The average weight in the first hourly sample} = \frac{17 + 13 + 16 + 18 + 17 + 16 + 15 + 17 + 16}{9}$$
$$= 16.1 \text{ ounces.}$$

Also, the *population (process)* standard deviation (σ) is known to be 1 ounce. We do not show each of the boxes randomly selected in hours 2 through 12, but here are all 12 hourly samples:

WEIGHT OF SAMPLE		WEIGHT OF SAMPLE		WEIGHT OF SAMPLE	
HOUR	(AVG. OF 9 BOXES)	HOUR	(AVG. OF 9 BOXES)	HOUR	(AVG. OF 9 BOXES)
1	16.1	5	16.5	9	16.3
2	16.8	6	16.4	10	14.8
3	15.5	7	15.2	11	14.2
4	16.5	8	16.4	12	17.3

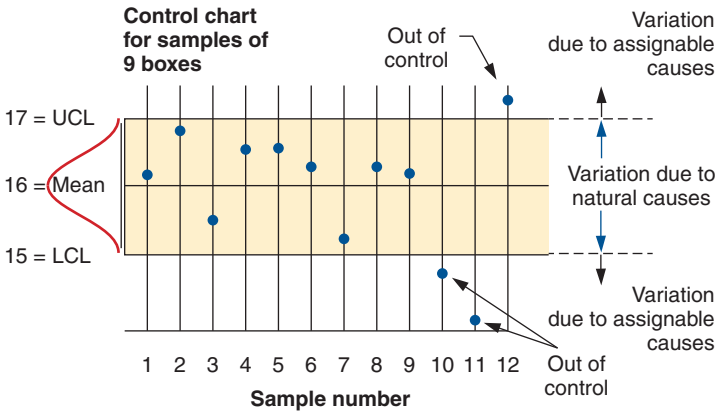
The average mean $\bar{\bar{x}}$ of the 12 samples is calculated to be exactly 16 ounces $\left[\bar{\bar{x}} = \dfrac{\sum_{i=1}^{12} (\text{Avg. of 9 Boxes})}{12}\right]$.

We therefore have $\bar{\bar{x}} = 16$ ounces, $\sigma = 1$ ounce, $n = 9$, and $z = 3$. The control limits are:

$$\text{UCL}_{\bar{x}} = \bar{\bar{x}} + z\sigma_{\bar{x}} = 16 + 3\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{9}}\right) = 16 + 3\left(\frac{1}{3}\right) = 17 \text{ ounces}$$

$$\text{LCL}_{\bar{x}} = \bar{\bar{x}} - z\sigma_{\bar{x}} = 16 - 3\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{9}}\right) = 16 - 3\left(\frac{1}{3}\right) = 15 \text{ ounces}$$

The 12 samples are then plotted on the following control chart:



INSIGHT ▶ Because the means of recent sample averages fall outside the upper and lower control limits of 17 and 15, we can conclude that the process is becoming erratic and is *not* in control.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If Oat Flakes's population standard deviation (σ) is 2 (instead of 1), what is your conclusion? [Answer: LCL = 14, UCL = 18; the process would be in control.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S6.1, S6.2, S6.4, S6.8, S6.10a,b (S6.28 is available in MyOMLab)

ACTIVE MODEL S6.1 This example is further illustrated in Active Model S6.1 in MyOMLab.

EXCEL OM Data File **CH06ExS1.XLS** can be found in MyOMLab.

Because process standard deviations are often not available, we usually calculate control limits based on the average *range* values rather than on standard deviations. Table S6.1 provides the necessary conversion for us to do so. The *range* (R_i) is defined as the difference between the largest and smallest items in one sample. For example, the heaviest box of Oat Flakes in Hour 1 of Example S1 was 18 ounces and the lightest was 13 ounces, so the range for that hour is 5 ounces. We use Table S6.1 and the equations:

$$\text{UCL}_{\bar{x}} = \bar{\bar{x}} + A_2\bar{R} \tag{S6-5}$$

and:

$$\text{LCL}_{\bar{x}} = \bar{\bar{x}} - A_2\bar{R} \tag{S6-6}$$

where $\bar{R} = \dfrac{\sum_{i=1}^{k} R_i}{k}$ = average range of all the samples; R_i = range for sample i

A_2 = value found in Table S6.1 $\qquad$ k = total number of samples

$\bar{\bar{x}}$ = mean of the sample means

Example S2 shows how to set control limits for sample means by using Table S6.1 and the average range.

TABLE S6.1 Factors for Computing Control Chart Limits (3 sigma)

SAMPLE SIZE, n	MEAN FACTOR, A_2	UPPER RANGE, D_4	LOWER RANGE, D_3
2	1.880	3.268	0
3	1.023	2.574	0
4	.729	2.282	0
5	.577	2.115	0
6	.483	2.004	0
7	.419	1.924	0.076
8	.373	1.864	0.136
9	.337	1.816	0.184
10	.308	1.777	0.223
12	.266	1.716	0.284

Source: Reprinted by permission of American Society for Testing Materials. Copyright 1951. Taken from Special Technical Publication 15–C, "Quality Control of Materials," pp. 101 and 110. Copyright ASTM INTERNATIONAL. Reprinted with permission.

Example S2

SETTING MEAN LIMITS USING TABLE VALUES

Super Cola bottles soft drinks labeled "net weight 12 ounces." Indeed, an overall process average of 12 ounces has been found by taking 10 samples, in which each sample contained 5 bottles. The OM team wants to determine the upper and lower control limits for averages in this process.

APPROACH ▶ Super Cola first examines the 10 samples to compute the average range of the process. Here are the data and calculations:

SAMPLE	WEIGHT OF LIGHTEST BOTTLE IN SAMPLE OF $n = 5$	WEIGHT OF HEAVIEST BOTTLE IN SAMPLE OF $n = 5$	RANGE (R_i) = DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THESE TWO
1	11.50	11.72	.22
2	11.97	12.00	.03
3	11.55	12.05	.50
4	12.00	12.20	.20
5	11.95	12.00	.05
6	10.55	10.75	.20
7	12.50	12.75	.25
8	11.00	11.25	.25
9	10.60	11.00	.40
10	11.70	12.10	.40
			$\sum R_i = 2.50$

$$\text{Average Range} = \frac{2.50}{10 \text{ samples}} = .25 \text{ ounces}$$

Now Super Cola applies Equations (S6-5) and (S6-6) and uses the A_2 column of Table S6.1.

SOLUTION ▶ Looking in Table S6.1 for a sample size of 5 in the mean factor A_2 column, we find the value .577. Thus, the upper and lower control chart limits are:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{UCL}_{\bar{x}} &= \bar{\bar{x}} + A_2\bar{R} \\ &= 12 + (.577)(.25) \\ &= 12 + .144 \\ &= 12.144 \text{ ounces} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{LCL}_{\bar{x}} = \bar{\bar{x}} - A_2\bar{R}$$
$$= 12 - .144$$
$$= 11.856 \text{ ounces}$$

INSIGHT ▶ The advantage of using this range approach, instead of the standard deviation, is that it is easy to apply and may be less confusing.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the sample size was $n = 4$ and the average range $= .20$ ounces, what are the revised $\text{UCL}_{\bar{x}}$ and $\text{LCL}_{\bar{x}}$? [Answer: 12.146, 11.854.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S6.3a, S6.5, S6.6, S6.7, S6.9, S6.10b,c,d, S6.11, S6.26 (S6.29a, S6.30a, S6.31a, S6.32a, S6.33a are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **CH06ExS2.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

Setting Range Chart Limits (*R*-Charts)

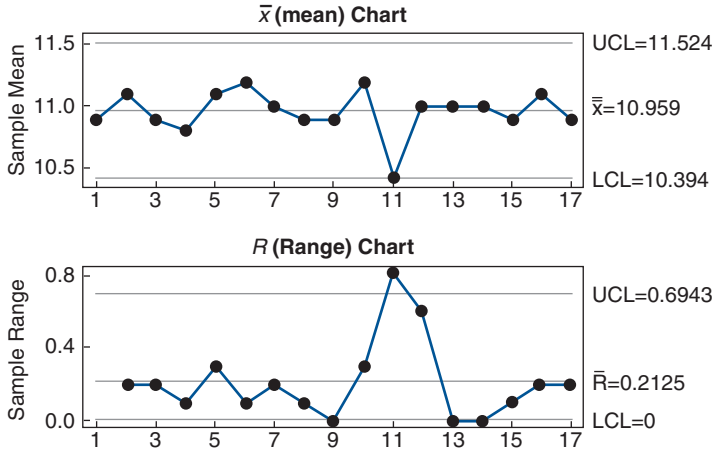
In Examples S1 and S2, we determined the upper and lower control limits for the process *average*. In addition to being concerned with the process average, operations managers are interested in the process *dispersion*, or *range*. Even though the process average is under control, the dispersion of the process may not be. For example, something may have worked itself loose in a piece of equipment that fills boxes of Oat Flakes. As a result, the average of the samples may remain the same, but the variation within the samples could be entirely too large. For this reason, operations managers use control charts for ranges to monitor the process variability, as well as control charts for averages, which monitor the process central tendency. The theory behind the control charts for ranges is the same as that for process average control charts. Limits are established that contain ± 3 standard deviations of the distribution for the average range $\bar{R}$. We can use the following equations to set the upper and lower control limits for ranges:

$$\text{UCL}_R = D_4\bar{R} \tag{S6-7}$$

$$\text{LCL}_R = D_3\bar{R} \tag{S6-8}$$

where

UCL_R = upper control chart limit for the range
LCL_R = lower control chart limit for the range
D_4 and D_3 = values from Table S6.1



Salmon filets are monitored by Darden Restaurant's SPC software, which includes $\bar{x}$-(mean) charts and *R*-(range) charts. Darden uses average weight as a measure of central tendency for salmon filets. The range is the difference between the heaviest and the lightest filets in each sample. The video case study "Farm to Fork," at the end of this supplement, asks you to interpret these figures.

VIDEO S6.1
Farm to Fork: Quality of Darden Restaurants

Example S3 shows how to set control limits for sample ranges using Table S6.1 and the average range.

Example S3

SETTING RANGE LIMITS USING TABLE VALUES

Roy Clinton's mail-ordering business wants to measure the response time of its operators in taking customer orders over the phone. Clinton lists below the time recorded (in minutes) from five different samples of the ordering process with four customer orders per sample. He wants to determine the upper and lower range control chart limits.

APPROACH ▶ Looking in Table S6.1 for a sample size of 4, he finds that $D_4 = 2.282$ and $D_3 = 0$.

SOLUTION ▶

SAMPLE	OBSERVATIONS (MINUTES)	SAMPLE RANGE (R_i)
1	5, 3, 6, 10	10 – 3 = 7
2	7, 5, 3, 5	7 – 3 = 4
3	1, 8, 3, 12	12 – 1 = 11
4	7, 6, 2, 1	7 – 1 = 6
5	3, 15, 6, 12	15 – 3 = 12
		$\sum R_i = 40$

$$\overline{R} = \frac{40}{5} = 8$$

$$\text{UCL}_R = 2.282(8) = 18.256 \text{ minutes}$$

$$\text{LCL}_R = 0(8) = 0 \text{ minutes}$$

INSIGHT ▶ Computing ranges with Table S6.1 is straightforward and an easy way to evaluate dispersion. No sample ranges are out of control.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Clinton decides to increase the sample size to $n = 6$ (with no change in average range, $\overline{R}$). What are the new UCL_R and LCL_R values? [Answer: 16.032, 0.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S6.3b, S6.5, S6.6, S6.7, S6.9, S6.10c, S6.11, S6.12, S6.26 (S6.29b, S6.30b, S6.31b, S6.32b, S6.33b are available in MyOMLab)

Using Mean and Range Charts

The normal distribution is defined by two parameters, the *mean* and *standard deviation*. The $\overline{x}$ (mean)-chart and the *R*-chart mimic these two parameters. The $\overline{x}$-chart is sensitive to shifts in the process mean, whereas the *R*-chart is sensitive to shifts in the process standard deviation. Consequently, by using both charts we can track changes in the process distribution.

For instance, the samples and the resulting $\overline{x}$-chart in Figure S6.5(a) show the shift in the process mean, but because the dispersion is constant, no change is detected by the *R*-chart. Conversely, the samples and the $\overline{x}$-chart in Figure S6.5(b) detect no shift (because none is present), but the *R*-chart does detect the shift in the dispersion. Both charts are required to track the process accurately.

LO S6.4 *List* the five steps involved in building control charts

Steps to Follow When Building Control Charts There are five steps that are generally followed in building $\overline{x}$- and *R*-charts:

1. Collect 20 to 25 samples, often of $n = 4$ or $n = 5$ observations each, from a stable process, and compute the mean and range of each.
2. Compute the overall means ($\overline{\overline{x}}$ and $\overline{R}$), set appropriate control limits, usually at the 99.73% level, and calculate the preliminary upper and lower control limits. Refer to Table S6.2 for other control limits. *If the process is not currently stable and in control*, use the desired mean, μ, instead of $\overline{\overline{x}}$ to calculate limits.

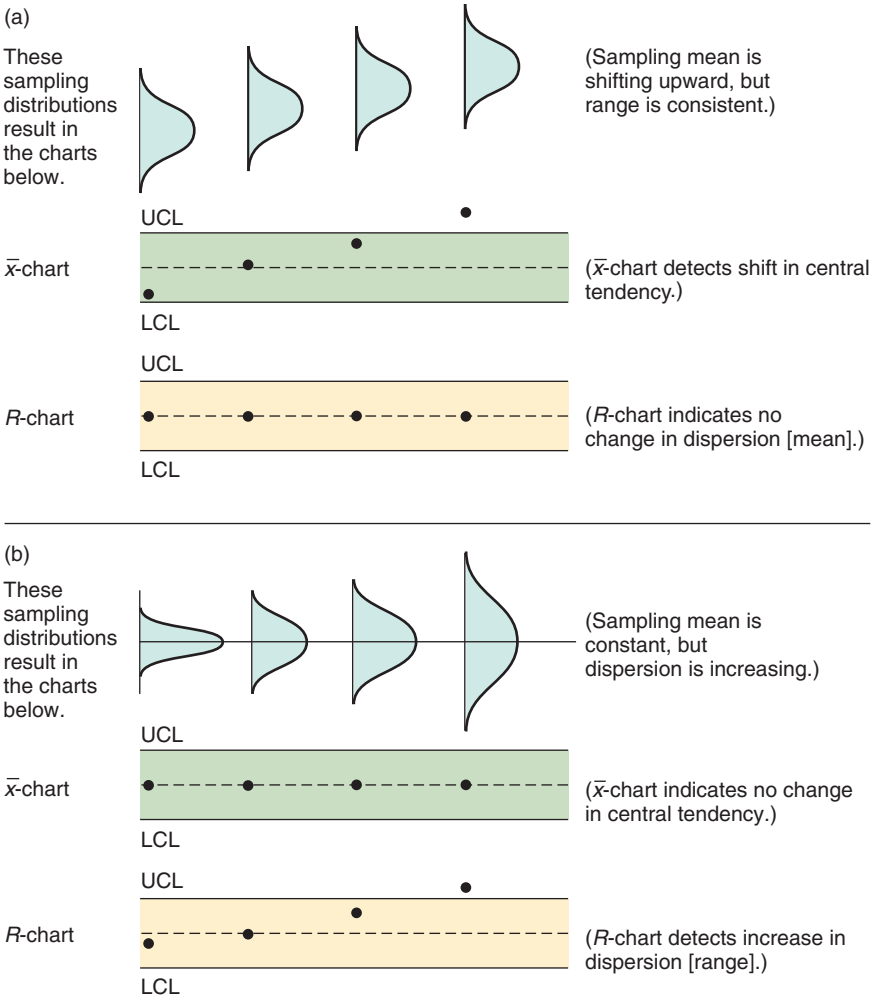


Figure S6.5

Mean and Range Charts Complement Each Other by Showing the Mean and Dispersion of the Normal Distribution

STUDENT TIP

Mean ($\bar{x}$) charts are a measure of *central tendency*, while range (R) charts are a measure of *dispersion*. SPC requires both charts for a complete assessment because a sample mean could be out of control while the range is in control and vice versa.

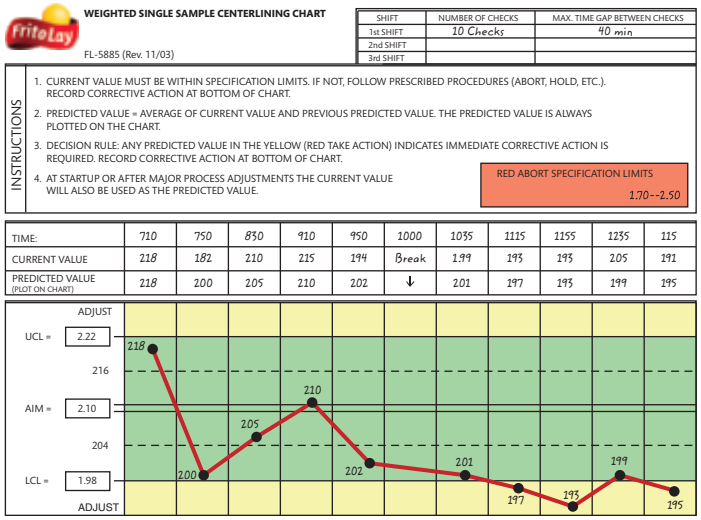
3. Graph the sample means and ranges on their respective control charts, and determine whether they fall outside the acceptable limits.
4. Investigate points or patterns that indicate the process is out of control. Try to assign causes for the variation, address the causes, and then resume the process.
5. Collect additional samples and, if necessary, revalidate the control limits using the new data.

TABLE S6.2

Common *z* Values

DESIRED CONTROL LIMIT (%)	*Z*-VALUE (STANDARD DEVIATION REQUIRED FOR DESIRED LEVEL OF CONFIDENCE)
90.0	1.65
95.0	1.96
95.45	2.00
99.0	2.58
99.73	3.00

Donna McWilliam/AP Images



Frito-Lay uses $\bar{x}$ charts to control production quality at critical points in the process. About every 40 minutes, three batches of chips are taken from the conveyor (on the left) and analyzed electronically to get an average salt content, which is plotted on an $\bar{x}$-chart (on the right). Points plotted in the green zone are "in control," while those in the yellow zone are "out of control." The SPC chart is displayed where all production employees can monitor process stability.

Control Charts for Attributes

LO S6.5 *Build p-charts and c-charts*

Control charts for $\bar{x}$ and R do not apply when we are sampling *attributes*, which are typically classified as *defective* or *nondefective*. Measuring defectives involves counting them (for example, number of bad lightbulbs in a given lot, or number of letters or data entry records typed with errors), whereas *variables* are usually measured for length or weight. There are two kinds of attribute control charts: (1) those that measure the *percent* defective in a sample—called *p*-charts—and (2) those that count the *number* of defects—called *c*-charts.

***p*-chart**
A quality control chart that is used to control attributes.

p-Charts Using *p*-charts is the chief way to control attributes. Although attributes that are either good or bad follow the binomial distribution, the normal distribution can be used to calculate *p*-chart limits when sample sizes are large. The procedure resembles the $\bar{x}$-chart approach, which is also based on the central limit theorem.

The formulas for *p*-chart upper and lower control limits follow:

VIDEO S6.2
Frito-Lay's Quality-Controlled Potato Chips

$$\text{UCL}_p = \bar{p} + z\sigma_p \quad \text{(S6-9)}$$

$$\text{LCL}_p = \bar{p} - z\sigma_p \quad \text{(S6-10)}$$

where $\bar{p}$ = mean fraction (percent) defective in the samples $= \dfrac{\text{total number of defects}}{\text{sample size} \times \text{number of samples}}$

z = number of standard deviations ($z = 2$ for 95.45% limits; $z = 3$ for 99.73% limits)

σ_p = standard deviation of the sampling distribution

σ_p is estimated by the formula:

$$\hat{\sigma}_p = \sqrt{\frac{\bar{p}(1-\bar{p})}{n}} \quad \text{(S6-11)}$$

where n = number of observations in *each* sample[4]

Example S4 shows how to set control limits for *p*-charts for these standard deviations.

Example S4

SETTING CONTROL LIMITS FOR PERCENT DEFECTIVE

Clerks at Mosier Data Systems key in thousands of insurance records each day for a variety of client firms. CEO Donna Mosier wants to set control limits to include 99.73% of the random variation in the data entry process when it is in control.

APPROACH ▶ Samples of the work of 20 clerks are gathered (and shown in the table). Mosier carefully examines 100 records entered by each clerk and counts the number of errors. She also computes the fraction defective in each sample. Equations (S6-9), (S6-10), and (S6-11) are then used to set the control limits.

SAMPLE NUMBER	NUMBER OF ERRORS	FRACTION DEFECTIVE	SAMPLE NUMBER	NUMBER OF ERRORS	FRACTION DEFECTIVE
1	6	.06	11	6	.06
2	5	.05	12	1	.01
3	0	.00	13	8	.08
4	1	.01	14	7	.07
5	4	.04	15	5	.05
6	2	.02	16	4	.04
7	5	.05	17	11	.11
8	3	.03	18	3	.03
9	3	.03	19	0	.00
10	2	.02	20	4	.04
				80	

SOLUTION ▶

$$\bar{p} = \frac{\text{Total number of errors}}{\text{Total number of records examined}} = \frac{80}{(100)\,(20)} = .04$$

$$\hat{\sigma}_p = \sqrt{\frac{(.04)(1 - .04)}{100}} = .02 \text{ (rounded up from .0196)}$$

(*Note:* 100 is the size of *each* sample $= n$.)

$$\text{UCL}_p = \bar{p} + z\hat{\sigma}_p = .04 + 3(.02) = .10$$

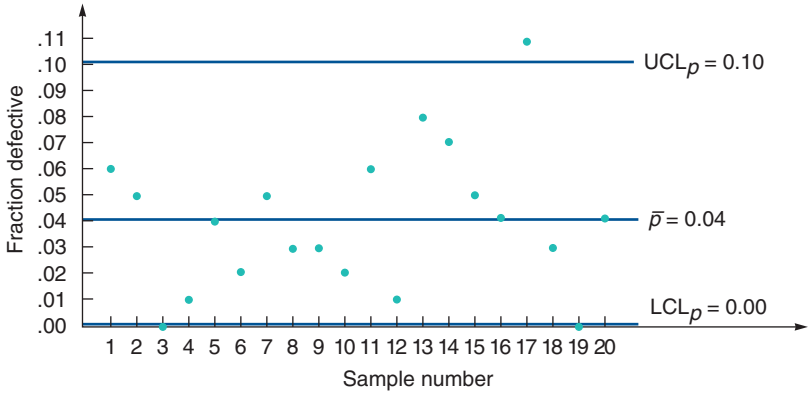
$$\text{LCL}_p = \bar{p} - z\hat{\sigma}_p = .04 - 3(.02) = 0$$

(because we cannot have a negative percentage defective)

INSIGHT ▶ When we plot the control limits and the sample fraction defectives, we find that only one data-entry clerk (number 17) is out of control. The firm may wish to examine that individual's work a bit more closely to see if a serious problem exists (see Figure S6.6).

Figure **S6.6**

***p*-Chart for Data Entry for Example S4**



STUDENT TIP

We are always pleased to be at zero or below the center line in a *p*-chart.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Mosier decides to set control limits at 95.45% instead. What are the new UCL_p and LCL_p? [Answer: 0.08, 0]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S6.13–S6.20, S6.25, S6.27 (S6.35–S6.39 are available in MyOMLab)

ACTIVE MODEL S6.2 This example is further illustrated in Active Model S6.2 in MyOMLab.

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch06ExS4.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

The *OM in Action* box "Trying to Land a Seat with Frequent Flyer Miles" provides a real-world follow-up to Example S4.

***c*-Charts** In Example S4, we counted the number of defective records entered. A defective record was one that was not exactly correct because it contained at least one defect. However, a bad record may contain more than one defect. We use ***c*-charts** to control the *number* of defects per unit of output (or per insurance record, in the preceding case).

***c*-chart**

A quality control chart used to control the number of defects per unit of output.

OM in Action — Trying to Land a Seat with Frequent Flyer Miles

How hard is it to redeem your 25,000 frequent flyer points for airline tickets? That depends on the airline. (It also depends on the city. Don't try to get into or out of San Francisco!) When the consulting firm Idea Works made 280 requests for a standard mileage award to each of 24 airlines' Web sites (a total of 6,720 requests), the success rates ranged from a low of 25.7% and 27.1% (at US Airways and Delta, respectively) to a high of 100% at GOL-Brazil and 99.3% at Southwest.

The overall average of 68.6% for the two dozen carriers provides the center line in a *p*-chart. With 3-sigma upper and lower control limits of 82.5% and 54.7%, the other top and bottom performers are easily spotted. "Out of control" (but in a positive *outperforming* way) are GOL and Southwest, Lufthansa (85.0%), Singapore (90.7%), Virgin Australia (91.4%), and Air Berlin (96.4%).

Out of control *on the negative side* are US Airways and Delta, plus Emirates (35.7%), AirTran (47.1%), Turkish (49.3%), and SAS (52.9%).

Control charts can help airlines see where they stand relative to competitors in such customer service activities as lost bags, on-time rates, and ease of redeeming mileage points. "I think airlines are getting the message that availability is important. Are airlines where they need to be? I don't think so," says the president of Idea Works.

Sources: Wall Street Journal (May 26, 2011); and *Consumer Reports* (November 2014).

Sampling wine from these wooden barrels, to make sure it is aging properly, uses both SPC (for alcohol content and acidity) and subjective measures (for taste).

Control charts for defects are helpful for monitoring processes in which a large number of potential errors can occur, but the actual number that do occur is relatively small. Defects may be errors in newspaper words, bad circuits in a microchip, blemishes on a table, or missing pickles on a fast-food hamburger.

The Poisson probability distribution,[5] which has a variance equal to its mean, is the basis for c-charts. Because $\bar{c}$ is the mean number of defects per unit, the standard deviation is equal to $\sqrt{\bar{c}}$. To compute 99.73% control limits for $\bar{c}$, we use the formula:

$$\text{Control limits} = \bar{c} \pm 3\sqrt{\bar{c}} \qquad \text{(S6-12)}$$

Example S5 shows how to set control limits for a $\bar{c}$-chart.

Example S5

SETTING CONTROL LIMITS FOR NUMBER OF DEFECTS

Red Top Cab Company receives several complaints per day about the behavior of its drivers. Over a 9-day period (where days are the units of measure), the owner, Gordon Hoft, received the following numbers of calls from irate passengers: 3, 0, 8, 9, 6, 7, 4, 9, 8, for a total of 54 complaints. Hoft wants to compute 99.73% control limits.

APPROACH ▶ He applies Equation (S6–12).

SOLUTION ▶ $\bar{c} = \dfrac{54}{9} = 6$ complaints per day

Thus:

$$\text{UCL}_c = \bar{c} + 3\sqrt{\bar{c}} = 6 + 3\sqrt{6} = 6 + 3(2.45) = 13.35, \text{ or } 13$$

$$\text{LCL}_c = \bar{c} - 3\sqrt{\bar{c}} = 6 - 3\sqrt{6} = 6 - 3(2.45) = 0 \leftarrow \text{(since it cannot be negative)}$$

INSIGHT ▶ After Hoft plotted a control chart summarizing these data and posted it prominently in the drivers' locker room, the number of calls received dropped to an average of three per day. Can you explain why this occurred?

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Hoft collects 3 more days' worth of complaints (10, 12, and 8 complaints) and wants to combine them with the original 9 days to compute updated control limits. What are the revised UCL_c and LCL_c? [Answer: 14.94, 0.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S6.21, S6.22, S6.23, S6.24

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch06SExS5.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

TABLE S6.3 Helping You Decide Which Control Chart to Use

VARIABLE DATA USING AN $\bar{x}$-CHART AND AN *R*-CHART
1. Observations are *variables*, which are usually products measured for size or weight. Examples are the width or length of a wire and the weight of a can of Campbell's soup. **2.** Collect 20 to 25 samples, usually of $n = 4$, $n = 5$, or more, each from a stable process, and compute the means for an $\bar{x}$-chart and the ranges for an *R*-chart. **3.** We track samples of n observations each, as in Example S1.
ATTRIBUTE DATA USING A *p*-CHART
1. Observations are *attributes* that can be categorized as good or bad (or pass–fail, or functional–broken); that is, in two states. **2.** We deal with fraction, proportion, or percent defectives. **3.** There are several samples, with many observations in each. For example, 20 samples of $n = 100$ observations in each, as in Example S4.
ATTRIBUTE DATA USING A *c*-CHART
1. Observations are *attributes* whose defects per unit of output can be counted. **2.** We deal with the number counted, which is a small part of the possible occurrences. **3.** Defects may be: number of blemishes on a desk; flaws in a bolt of cloth; crimes in a year; broken seats in a stadium; typos in a chapter of this text; or complaints in a day, as is shown in Example S5.

STUDENT TIP

This is a really useful table. When you are not sure which control chart to use, turn here for clarification.

Managerial Issues and Control Charts

In an ideal world, there is no need for control charts. Quality is uniform and so high that employees need not waste time and money sampling and monitoring variables and attributes. But because most processes have not reached perfection, managers must make three major decisions regarding control charts.

First, managers must select the points in their process that need SPC. They may ask "Which parts of the job are critical to success?" or "Which parts of the job have a tendency to become out of control?"

Second, managers need to decide if variable charts (i.e., $\bar{x}$ and R) or attribute charts (i.e., p and c) are appropriate. Variable charts monitor weights or dimensions. Attribute charts are more of a "yes–no" or "go–no go" gauge and tend to be less costly to implement. Table S6.3 can help you understand when to use each of these types of control charts.

Third, the company must set clear and specific SPC policies for employees to follow. For example, should the data-entry process be halted if a trend is appearing in percent defective records being keyed? Should an assembly line be stopped if the average length of five successive samples is above the centerline? Figure S6.7 illustrates some of the patterns to look for over time in a process.

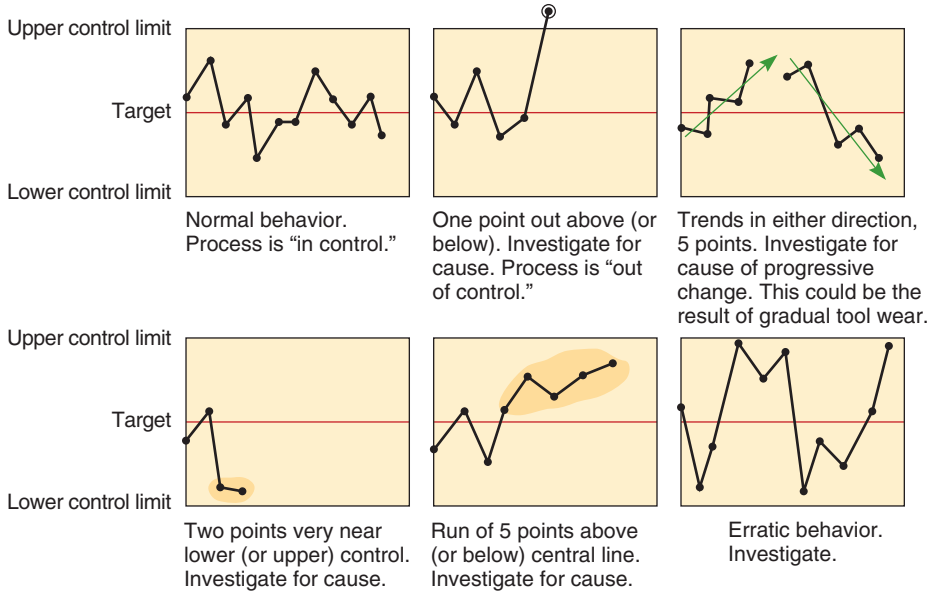


Figure **S6.7**

Patterns to Look for on Control Charts

Source: Adapted from Bertrand L. Hansen, *Quality Control: Theory and Applications* (1991): 65. Reprinted by permission of Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ.

STUDENT TIP

Workers in companies such as Frito-Lay are trained to follow rules like these.

Run test
A test used to examine the points in a control chart to see if nonrandom variation is present.

A tool called a **run test** is available to help identify the kind of abnormalities in a process that we see in Figure S6.7. In general, a run of 5 points above or below the target or centerline may suggest that an assignable, or nonrandom, variation is present. When this occurs, even though all the points may fall inside the control limits, a flag has been raised. This means the process may not be statistically in control. A variety of run tests are described in books on the subject of quality methods.

STUDENT TIP Here we deal with whether a process meets the specification it was *designed* to yield.

Process Capability

Statistical process control means keeping a process in control. This means that the natural variation of the process must be stable. However, a process that is in statistical control may not yield goods or services that meet their *design specifications* (tolerances). In other words, the variation should be small enough to produce consistent output within specifications. The ability of a process to meet design specifications, which are set by engineering design or customer requirements, is called **process capability**. Even though that process may be statistically in control (stable), the output of that process may not conform to specifications.

Process capability
The ability to meet design specifications.

For example, let's say the time a customer expects to wait for the completion of a lube job at Quik Lube is 12 minutes, with an acceptable tolerance of ± 2 minutes. This tolerance gives an upper specification of 14 minutes and a lower specification of 10 minutes. The lube process has to be capable of operating within these design specifications—if not, some customers will not have their requirements met. As a manufacturing example, the tolerances for Harley-Davidson cam gears are extremely low, only 0.0005 inch—and a process must be designed that is capable of achieving this tolerance.

LO S6.6 *Explain* process capability and compute C_p and C_{pk}

There are two popular measures for quantitatively determining if a process is capable: process capability ratio (C_p) and process capability index (C_{pk}).

Process Capability Ratio (C_p)

For a process to be capable, its values must fall within upper and lower specifications. This typically means the process capability is within ± 3 standard deviations from the process mean. Because this range of values is 6 standard deviations, a capable process tolerance, which is the difference between the upper and lower specifications, must be greater than or equal to 6.

C_p
A ratio for determining whether a process meets design specifications; a ratio of the specification to the process variation.

The process capability ratio, C_p, is computed as:

$$C_p = \frac{\text{Upper specification} - \text{Lower specification}}{6\sigma} \qquad \text{(S6-13)}$$

Example S6 shows the computation of C_p.

Example S6

PROCESS CAPABILITY RATIO (C_p)

In a GE insurance claims process, $\bar{x} = 210.0$ minutes, and $\sigma = .516$ minutes.

The design specification to meet customer expectations is 210 ± 3 minutes. So the Upper Specification is 213 minutes and the lower specification is 207 minutes. The OM manager wants to compute the process capability ratio.

APPROACH ▶ GE applies Equation (S6-13).

SOLUTION ▶ $$C_p = \frac{\text{Upper specification} - \text{Lower specification}}{6\sigma} = \frac{213 - 207}{6(.516)} = 1.938$$

INSIGHT ▶ Because a ratio of 1.00 means that 99.73% of a process's outputs are within specifications, this ratio suggests a very capable process, with nonconformance of less than 4 claims per million.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If $\sigma = .60$ (instead of .516), what is the new C_p? [Answer: 1.667, a very capable process still.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S6.40, S6.41 (S6.50 is available in MyOMLab)

ACTIVE MODEL S6.3 This example is further illustrated in Active Model S6.3 in MyOMLab.

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch06SExS6.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

A capable process has a C_p of at least 1.0. If the C_p is less than 1.0, the process yields products or services that are outside their allowable tolerance. With a C_p of 1.0, 2.7 parts in 1,000 can be expected to be "out of spec."[6] The higher the process capability ratio, the greater the likelihood the process will be within design specifications. Many firms have chosen a C_p of 1.33 (a 4-sigma standard) as a target for reducing process variability. This means that only 64 parts per million can be expected to be out of specification.

Recall that in Chapter 6 we mentioned the concept of *Six Sigma* quality, championed by GE and Motorola. This standard equates to a C_p of 2.0, with only 3.4 defective parts per million (very close to zero defects) instead of the 2.7 parts per 1,000 with 3-sigma limits.

Although C_p relates to the spread (dispersion) of the process output relative to its tolerance, it does not look at how well the process average is centered on the target value.

Process Capability Index (C_{pk})

The process capability index, C_{pk}, measures the difference between the desired and actual dimensions of goods or services produced.

C_{pk}
A proportion of variation (3σ) between the center of the process and the nearest specification limit.

The formula for C_{pk} is:

$$C_{pk} = \text{Minimum of}\left[\frac{\text{Upper specification limit} - \overline{X}}{3\sigma}, \frac{\overline{X} - \text{Lower specification limit}}{3\sigma}\right] \quad \text{(S6-14)}$$

where $\overline{X}$ = process mean

σ = standard deviation of the process population

When the C_{pk} index for both the upper and lower specification limits equals 1.0, the process variation is centered and the process is capable of producing within ± 3 standard deviations (fewer than 2,700 defects per million). A C_{pk} of 2.0 means the process is capable of producing fewer than 3.4 defects per million. For C_{pk} to exceed 1, σ must be less than $\frac{1}{3}$ of the difference between the specification and the process mean ($\overline{X}$). Figure S6.8 shows the meaning of various measures of C_{pk}, and Example S7 shows an application of C_{pk}.

Example S7

PROCESS CAPABILITY INDEX (C_{pk})

You are the process improvement manager and have developed a new machine to cut insoles for the company's top-of-the-line running shoes. You are excited because the company's goal is no more than 3.4 defects per million, and this machine may be the innovation you need. The insoles cannot be more than $\pm .001$ of an inch from the required thickness of .250″. You want to know if you should replace the existing machine, which has a C_{pk} of 1.0.

Mean of the new process $\overline{X} = .250$ inches.
Standard deviation of the new process $= \sigma = .0005$ inches.

APPROACH ▶ You decide to determine the C_{pk}, using Equation (S6-14), for the new machine and make a decision on that basis.

SOLUTION ▶

Upper specification limit = .251 inches

Lower specification limit = .249 inches

$$C_{pk} = \text{Minimum of}\left[\frac{\text{Upper specification limit} - \overline{X}}{3\sigma}, \frac{\overline{X} - \text{Lower specification limit}}{3\sigma}\right]$$

$$C_{pk} = \text{Minimum of}\left[\frac{.251 - .250}{(3).0005}, \frac{.250 - .249}{(3).0005}\right]$$

Both calculations result in: $\frac{.001}{.0015} = .67$.

INSIGHT ▶ Because the new machine has a C_{pk} of only 0.67, the new machine should *not* replace the existing machine.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the insoles can be $\pm .002''$ (instead of $.001''$) from the required $.250''$, what is the new C_{pk}? [Answer: 1.33 and the new machine *should* replace the existing one.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S6.41–S6.45 (S6.46–S6.49 are available in MyOMLab)

ACTIVE MODEL S6.2 This example is further illustrated in Active Model S6.2 in MyOMLab.

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch06SExS7.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

Note that C_p and C_{pk} will be the same when the process is centered. However, if the mean of the process is not centered on the desired (specified) mean, then the smaller numerator in Equation (S6-14) is used (the minimum of the difference between the upper specification limit and the mean or the lower specification limit and the mean). This application of C_{pk} is shown in Solved Problem S6.4. C_{pk} is the standard criterion used to express process performance.

Acceptance Sampling[7]

Acceptance sampling
A method of measuring random samples of lots or batches of products against predetermined standards.

LO S6.7 *Explain* acceptance sampling

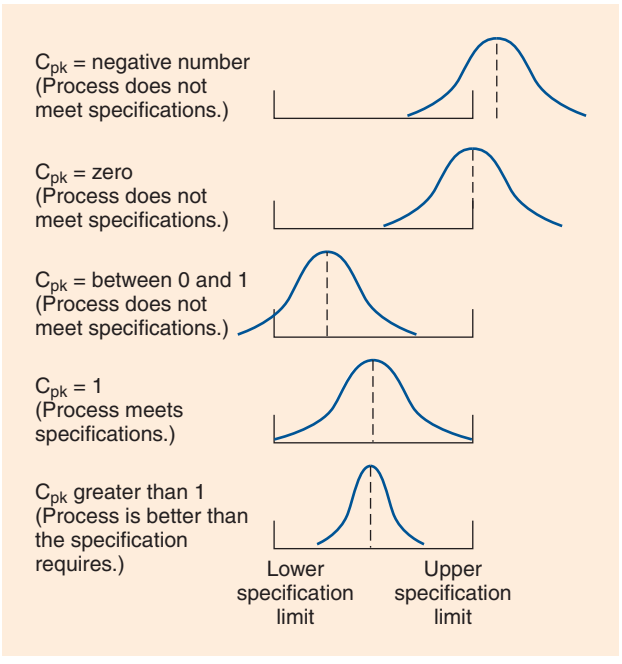
Acceptance sampling is a form of testing that involves taking random samples of "lots," or batches, of finished products and measuring them against predetermined standards. Sampling is more economical than 100% inspection. The quality of the sample is used to judge the quality of all items in the lot. Although both attributes and variables can be inspected by acceptance sampling, attribute inspection is more commonly used, as illustrated in this section.

Acceptance sampling can be applied either when materials arrive at a plant or at final inspection, but it is usually used to control incoming lots of purchased products. A lot of items rejected, based on an unacceptable level of defects found in the sample, can (1) be returned to the supplier or (2) be 100% inspected to cull out all defects, with the cost of this screening usually billed to the supplier. However, acceptance sampling is not a substitute for adequate process controls. In fact, the current approach is to build statistical quality controls at suppliers so that acceptance sampling can be eliminated.

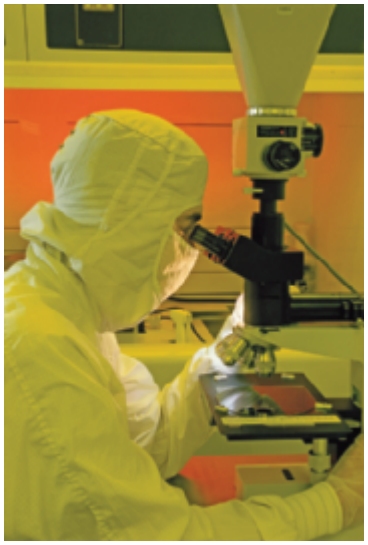
Figure **S6.8**

Meanings of C_{pk} Measures

A C_{pk} index of 1.0 for both the upper and lower specification limits indicates that the process variation is within the upper and lower specification limits. As the C_{pk} index goes above 1.0, the process becomes increasingly target oriented, with fewer defects. If the C_{pk} is less than 1.0, the process will not produce within the specified tolerance. Because a process may not be centered, or may "drift," a C_{pk} above 1 is desired.



Lyroky/Alamy



Richard T. Nowitz/Flirt/Alamy

Raw data for Statistical Process Control is collected in a wide variety of ways. Here physical measures using a micrometer (on the left) and a microscope (on the right) are being made.

Operating Characteristic Curve

The **operating characteristic (OC) curve** describes how well an acceptance plan discriminates between good and bad lots. A curve pertains to a specific plan—that is, to a combination of n (sample size) and c (acceptance level). It is intended to show the probability that the plan will accept lots of various quality levels.

Operating characteristic (OC) curve
A graph that describes how well an acceptance plan discriminates between good and bad lots.

With acceptance sampling, two parties are usually involved: the producer of the product and the consumer of the product. In specifying a sampling plan, each party wants to avoid costly mistakes in accepting or rejecting a lot. The producer usually has the responsibility of replacing all defects in the rejected lot or of paying for a new lot to be shipped to the customer. The producer, therefore, wants to avoid the mistake of having a good lot rejected (**producer's risk**). On the other hand, the customer or consumer wants to avoid the mistake of accepting a bad lot because defects found in a lot that has already been accepted are usually the responsibility of the customer (**consumer's risk**). The OC curve shows the features of a particular sampling plan, including the risks of making a wrong decision. The steeper the curve, the better the plan distinguishes between good and bad lots.[8]

Producer's risk
The mistake of having a producer's good lot rejected through sampling.

Consumer's risk
The mistake of a customer's acceptance of a bad lot overlooked through sampling.

Figure S6.9 can be used to illustrate one sampling plan in more detail. Four concepts are illustrated in this figure.

The **acceptable quality level (AQL)** is the poorest level of quality that we are willing to accept. In other words, we wish to accept lots that have this or a better level of quality, but no worse. If an acceptable quality level is 20 defects in a lot of 1,000 items or parts, then AQL is $20/1{,}000 = 2\%$ defectives.

Acceptable quality level (AQL)
The quality level of a lot considered good.

The **lot tolerance percentage defective (LTPD)** is the quality level of a lot that we consider bad. We wish to reject lots that have this or a poorer level of quality. If it is agreed that an unacceptable quality level is 70 defects in a lot of 1,000, then the LTPD is $70/1{,}000 = 7\%$ defective.

Lot tolerance percentage defective (LTPD)
The quality level of a lot considered bad.

To derive a sampling plan, producer and consumer must define not only "good lots" and "bad lots" through the AQL and LTPD, but they must also specify risk levels.

Producer's risk (α) is the probability that a "good" lot will be rejected. This is the risk that a random sample might result in a much higher proportion of defects than the population of all items. A lot with an acceptable quality level of AQL still has an α chance of being rejected. Sampling plans are often designed to have the producer's risk set at $\alpha = .05$, or 5%.

Consumer's risk (β) is the probability that a "bad" lot will be accepted. This is the risk that a random sample may result in a lower proportion of defects than the overall population of items. A common value for consumer's risk in sampling plans is $\beta = .10$, or 10%.

The probability of rejecting a good lot is called a **type I error**. The probability of accepting a bad lot is a **type II error**.

Type I error
Statistically, the probability of rejecting a good lot.

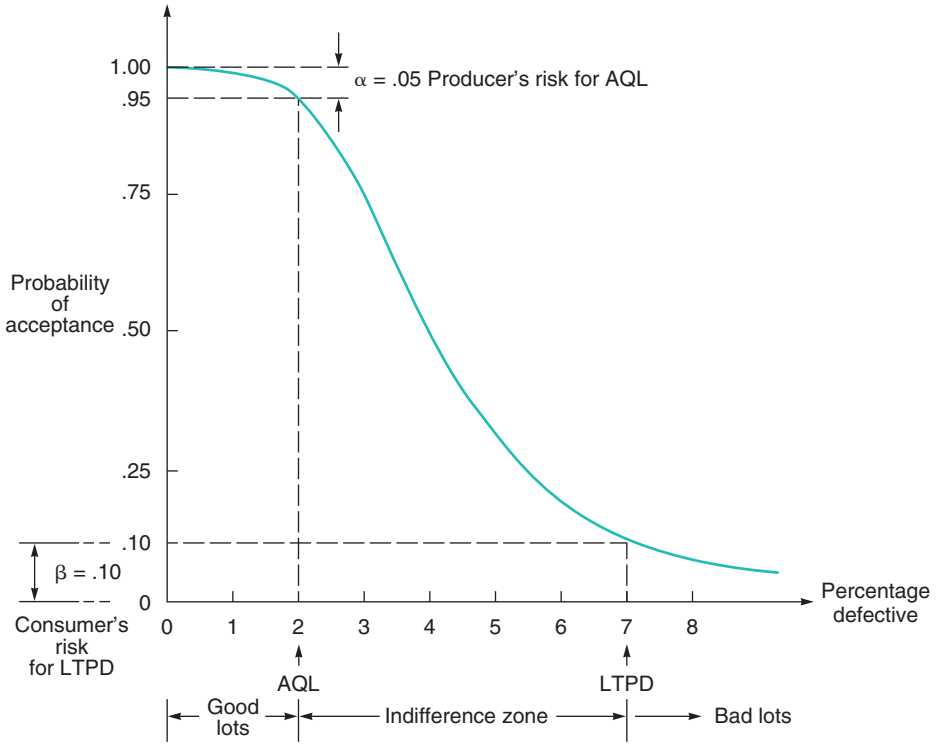
Type II error
Statistically, the probability of accepting a bad lot.

Sampling plans and OC curves may be developed by computer (as seen in the software available with this text), by published tables, or by calculation, using binomial or Poisson distributions.

Figure S6.9

An Operating Characteristic (OC) Curve Showing Producer's and Consumer's Risks

A good lot for this particular acceptance plan has less than or equal to 2% defectives. A bad lot has 7% or more defectives.



Average Outgoing Quality

In most sampling plans, when a lot is rejected, the entire lot is inspected and all defective items replaced. Use of this replacement technique improves the average outgoing quality in terms of percent defective. In fact, given (1) any sampling plan that replaces all defective items encountered and (2) the true incoming percent defective for the lot, it is possible to determine the **average outgoing quality (AOQ)** in percentage defective. The equation for AOQ is:

Average outgoing quality (AOQ)

The percentage defective in an average lot of goods inspected through acceptance sampling.

$$\text{AOQ} = \frac{(P_d)(P_a)(N - n)}{N} \qquad \text{(S6-15)}$$

where

P_d = true percentage defective of the lot
P_a = probability of accepting the lot for a given sample size and quantity defective
N = number of items in the lot
n = number of items in the sample

The maximum value of AOQ corresponds to the highest average percentage defective or the lowest average quality for the sampling plan. It is called the *average outgoing quality limit (AOQL)*.

This laser tracking device, by Faro Technologies, enables quality control personnel to measure and inspect parts and tools during production. The portable tracker can measure objects from 262 feet away and takes to up 1,000 accurate readings per second.

Faro Technologies

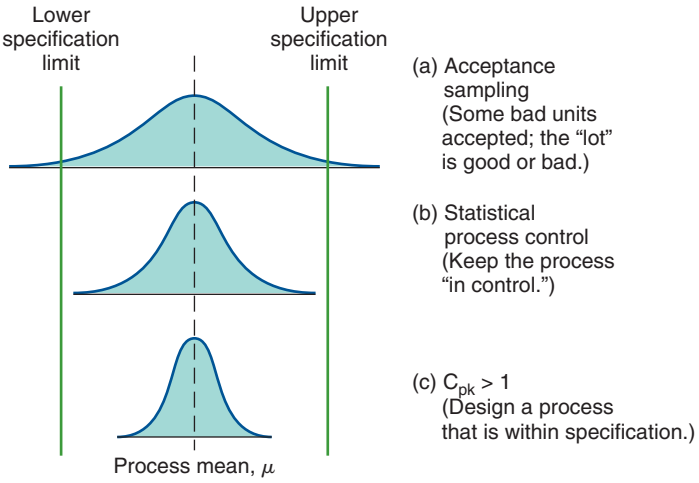


Figure **S6.10**

The Application of Statistical Process Control Techniques Contributes to the Identification and Systematic Reduction of Process Variability

Acceptance sampling is useful for screening incoming lots. When the defective parts are replaced with good parts, acceptance sampling helps to increase the quality of the lots by reducing the outgoing percent defective.

Figure S6.10 compares acceptance sampling, SPC, and C_{pk}. As the figure shows, (a) acceptance sampling by definition accepts some bad units, (b) control charts try to keep the process in control, but (c) the C_{pk} index places the focus on improving the process. As operations managers, that is what we want to do—improve the process.

Summary

Statistical process control is a major statistical tool of quality control. Control charts for SPC help operations managers distinguish between natural and assignable variations. The $\bar{x}$-chart and the *R*-chart are used for variable sampling, and the *p*-chart and the *c*-chart for attribute sampling. The C_{pk} index is a way to express process capability. Operating characteristic (OC) curves facilitate acceptance sampling and provide the manager with tools to evaluate the quality of a production run or shipment.

Key Terms

Statistical process control (SPC) (p. 284)
Control chart (p. 284)
Natural variations (p. 284)
Assignable variation (p. 285)
$\bar{x}$-chart (p. 286)
R-chart (p. 286)
Central limit theorem (p. 286)
p-chart (p. 293)
c-chart (p. 295)
Run test (p. 298)
Process capability (p. 298)
C_p (p. 298)
C_{pk} (p. 299)
Acceptance sampling (p. 300)
Operating characteristic (OC) curve (p. 301)
Producer's risk (p. 301)
Consumer's risk (p. 301)
Acceptable quality level (AQL) (p. 301)
Lot tolerance percentage defective (LTPD) (p. 301)
Type I error (p. 301)
Type II error (p. 301)
Average outgoing quality (AOQ) (p. 302)

Discussion Questions

1. List Shewhart's two types of variation. What are they also called?
2. Define "in statistical control."
3. Can the X-bar chart be used in order to see if the number of defectives in a production timeslot is randomly distributed? Explain.
4. What might cause a process to be out of control?
5. List five steps in developing and using $\bar{x}$-charts and *R*-charts.
6. List some possible causes of assignable variation.
7. Explain how a person using 2-sigma control charts will more easily find samples "out of bounds" than 3-sigma control charts. What are some possible consequences of this fact?
8. When is the desired mean, μ, used in establishing the centerline of a control chart instead of $\bar{\bar{x}}$?
9. Why is a process termed "out of control" if it temporarily produces less defectives?
10. In a control chart, what would be the effect on the control limits if the sample size varied from one sample to the next?
11. Define C_{pk} and explain what a C_{pk} of 1.0 means. What is C_p?
12. Even if the population distribution isn't normal (eg. Beta or Uniform), can the distribution of sample means be normal?
13. What are the acceptable quality level (AQL) and the lot tolerance percentage defective (LTPD)? How are they used?
14. What is a run test, and when is it used?
15. Discuss the managerial issues regarding the use of control charts.
16. What is a P-chart used for?

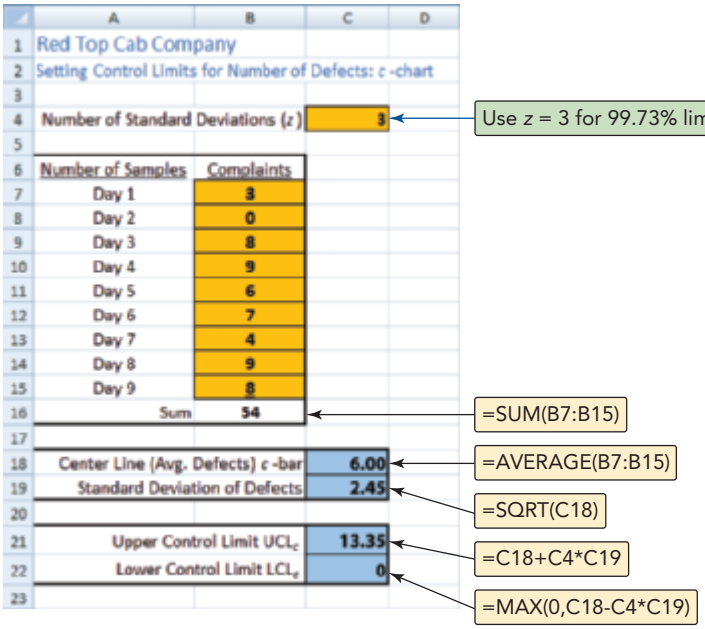
17. What is the purpose of acceptance sampling?
18. In the ideal world, we would like our processes to have a high process capability. Discuss.
19. Is a *capable* process a *perfect* process? That is, does a capable process generate only output that meets specifications? Explain.

Using Software for SPC

Excel, Excel OM, and POM for Windows may be used to develop control charts for most of the problems in this chapter.

CREATING YOUR OWN EXCEL SPREADSHEETS TO DETERMINE CONTROL LIMITS FOR A C-CHART

Excel and other spreadsheets are extensively used in industry to maintain control charts. Program S6.1 is an example of how to use Excel to determine the control limits for a *c*-chart. A *c*-chart is used when the number of defects per unit of output is known. The data from Example S5 are used here. In this example, 54 complaints occurred over 9 days. Excel also contains a built-in graphing ability with Chart Wizard.

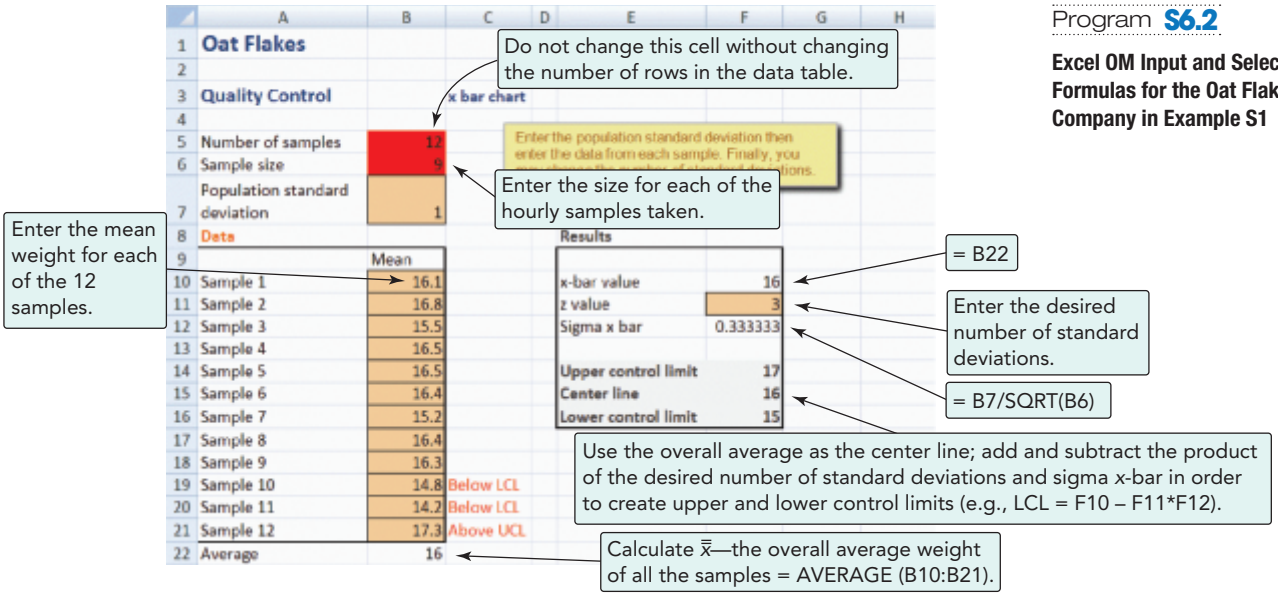


Program **S6.1**

An Excel Spreadsheet for Creating a *c*-Chart for Example S5

USING EXCEL OM

Excel OM's Quality Control module has the ability to develop $\bar{x}$-charts, *p*-charts, and *c*-charts. It also handles OC curves, acceptance sampling, and process capability. Program S6.2 illustrates Excel OM's spreadsheet approach to computing the $\bar{x}$ control limits for the Oat Flakes company in Example S1.



Program **S6.2**

Excel OM Input and Selected Formulas for the Oat Flakes Company in Example S1

P USING POM FOR WINDOWS

The POM for Windows Quality Control module has the ability to compute all the SPC control charts we introduced in this supplement, as well as OC curves, acceptance sampling, and process capability. See Appendix IV for further details.

Solved Problems

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM S6.1

A manufacturer of precision machine parts produces round shafts for use in the construction of drill presses. The average diameter of a shaft is .56 inch. Inspection samples contain 6 shafts each. The average range of these samples is .006 inch. Determine the upper and lower $\bar{x}$ control chart limits.

SOLUTION

The mean factor A_2 from Table S6.1, where the sample size is 6, is seen to be .483. With this factor, you can obtain the upper and lower control limits:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{UCL}_{\bar{x}} &= .56 + (.483)(.006) \\ &= .56 + .0029 \\ &= .5629 \text{ inch} \\ \text{LCL}_{\bar{x}} &= .56 - .0029 \\ &= .5571 \text{ inch} \end{aligned}$$

SOLVED PROBLEM S6.2

Nocaf Drinks, Inc., a producer of decaffeinated coffee, bottles Nocaf. Each bottle should have a net weight of 4 ounces. The machine that fills the bottles with coffee is new, and the operations manager wants to make sure that it is properly adjusted. Bonnie Crutcher, the operations manager, randomly selects and weighs $n = 8$ bottles and records the average and range in ounces for each sample. The data for several samples is given in the following table. Note that every sample consists of 8 bottles.

SAMPLE	SAMPLE RANGE	SAMPLE AVERAGE	SAMPLE	SAMPLE RANGE	SAMPLE AVERAGE
A	.41	4.00	E	.56	4.17
B	.55	4.16	F	.62	3.93
C	.44	3.99	G	.54	3.98
D	.48	4.00	H	.44	4.01

Is the machine properly adjusted and in control?

SOLUTION

We first find that $\bar{\bar{x}} = 4.03$ and $\bar{R} = .505$. Then, using Table S6.1, we find:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{UCL}_{\bar{x}} &= \bar{\bar{x}} + A_2\bar{R} = 4.03 + (.373)(.505) = 4.22 \\ \text{LCL}_{\bar{x}} &= \bar{\bar{x}} - A_2\bar{R} = 4.03 - (.373)(.505) = 3.84 \\ \text{UCL}_R &= D_4\bar{R} = (1.864)(.505) = .94 \\ \text{LCL}_R &= D_3\bar{R} = (.136)(.505) = .07 \end{aligned}$$

It appears that the process average and range are both in statistical control.

The operations manager needs to determine if a process with a mean (4.03) slightly above the desired mean of 4.00 is satisfactory; if it is not, the process will need to be changed.

SOLVED PROBLEM S6.3

Altman Distributors, Inc., fills catalog orders. Samples of size $n = 100$ orders have been taken each day over the past 6 weeks. The average defect rate was .05. Determine the upper and lower limits for this process for 99.73% confidence.

SOLUTION

$z = 3, \bar{p} = .05$. Using Equations (S6-9), (S6-10), and (S6-11):

$$\begin{aligned} \text{UCL}_p &= \bar{p} + 3\sqrt{\frac{\bar{p}(1-\bar{p})}{n}} = .05 + 3\sqrt{\frac{(.05)(1-.05)}{100}} \\ &= .05 + 3(0.0218) = .1154 \\ \text{LCL}_p &= \bar{p} - 3\sqrt{\frac{\bar{p}(1-\bar{p})}{n}} = .05 - 3(0.0218) \\ &= .05 - .0654 = 0 \quad \text{(because percentage defective cannot be negative)} \end{aligned}$$

SOLVED PROBLEM S6.4

Ettlie Engineering has a new catalyst injection system for your countertop production line. Your process engineering department has conducted experiments and determined that the mean is 8.01 grams with a standard deviation of .03. Your specifications are: $\mu = 8.0$ and $\sigma = .04$, which means an upper specification limit of 8.12 [$= 8.0 + 3(.04)$] and a lower specification limit of 7.88 [$= 8.0 - 3(.04)$].

What is the C_{pk} performance of the injection system?

SOLUTION

Using Equation (S6-14):

$$C_{pk} = \text{Minimum of}\left[\frac{\text{Upper specification limit} - \overline{X}}{3\sigma}, \frac{\overline{X} - \text{Lower specification limit}}{3\sigma}\right]$$

where

$\overline{X}$ = process mean
σ = standard deviation of the process population

$$C_{pk} = \text{Minimum of}\left[\frac{8.12 - 8.01}{(3)(.03)}, \frac{8.01 - 7.88}{(3)(.03)}\right]$$

$$\left[\frac{.11}{.09} = 1.22, \frac{.13}{.09} = 1.44\right]$$

The minimum is 1.22, so the C_{pk} is within specifications and has an implied error rate of less than 2,700 defects per million.

SOLVED PROBLEM S6.5

Airlines lose thousands of checked bags every day, and America South Airlines is no exception to the industry rule. Over the past 6 weeks, the number of bags "misplaced" on America South flights has been 18, 10, 4, 6, 12, and 10. The head of customer service wants to develop a *c*-chart at 99.73% levels.

SOLUTION

She first computes $\overline{c} = \dfrac{18 + 10 + 4 + 6 + 12 + 10}{6} = \dfrac{60}{6} = 10$ bags/week

Then, using Equation (S6-12):

$$UCL_c = \overline{c} + 3\sqrt{\overline{c}} = 10 + 3\sqrt{10} = 10 + 3(3.16) = 19.48 \text{ bags}$$

$$LCL_c = \overline{c} - 3\sqrt{\overline{c}} = 10 - 3\sqrt{10} = 10 - 3(3.16) = .52 \text{ bag}$$

Problems

Note: PX means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel OM/Excel.

Problems S6.1–S6.39 relate to Statistical Process Control (SPC)

• **S6.1** Boxes of Honey-Nut Oatmeal are produced to contain 14 ounces, with a standard deviation of .1 ounce. Set up the 3-sigma $\bar{x}$-chart for a sample size of 36 boxes. PX

• **S6.2** The overall average on a process you are attempting to monitor is 50 units. The process population standard deviation is 1.72. Determine the upper and lower control limits for a mean chart, if you choose to use a sample size of 5. PX

a) Set $z = 3$.
b) Now set $z = 2$. How do the control limits change?

• **S6.3** Thirty-five samples of size 7 each were taken from a fertilizer-bag-filling machine. The results were overall mean = 57.75 lb; average range = 1.78 lb.

a) Determine the upper and lower control limits of the $\bar{x}$-chart, where $\sigma = 3$.
b) Determine the upper and lower control limits of the R-chart, where $\sigma = 3$. PX

• **S6.4** Rosters Chicken advertises "lite" chicken with 30% fewer calories than standard chicken. When the process for "lite" chicken breast production is in control, the average chicken breast contains 420 calories, and the standard deviation in caloric content of the chicken breast population is 25 calories.

Rosters wants to design an $\bar{x}$-chart to monitor the caloric content of chicken breasts, where 25 chicken breasts would be chosen at random to form each sample.

a) What are the lower and upper control limits for this chart if these limits are chosen to be *four* standard deviations from the target?
b) What are the limits with three standard deviations from the target? PX

• **S6.5** Ross Hopkins is attempting to monitor a filling process that has an overall average of 705 cc. The average range is 6 cc. If you use a sample size of 10, what are the upper and lower control limits for the mean and range?

•• **S6.6** Sampling four pieces of precision-cut wire (to be used in computer assembly) every hour for the past 24 hours has produced the following results:

HOUR	$\bar{X}$	R	HOUR	$\bar{X}$	R
1	3.25″	.71″	13	3.11″	.85″
2	3.10	1.18	14	2.83	1.31
3	3.22	1.43	15	3.12	1.06
4	3.39	1.26	16	2.84	.50
5	3.07	1.17	17	2.86	1.43
6	2.86	.32	18	2.74	1.29
7	3.05	.53	19	3.41	1.61
8	2.65	1.13	20	2.89	1.09
9	3.02	.71	21	2.65	1.08
10	2.85	1.33	22	3.28	.46
11	2.83	1.17	23	2.94	1.58
12	2.97	.40	24	2.64	.97

Develop appropriate control charts and determine whether there is any cause for concern in the cutting process. Plot the information and look for patterns. PX

•• **S6.7** Auto pistons at Wemming Chung's plant in Shanghai are produced in a forging process, and the diameter is a critical factor that must be controlled. From sample sizes of 10 pistons produced each day, the mean and the range of this diameter have been as follows:

DAY	MEAN (MM)	RANGE (MM)
1	156.9	4.2
2	153.2	4.6
3	153.6	4.1
4	155.5	5.0
5	156.6	4.5

a) What is the value of $\bar{\bar{x}}$?
b) What is the value of $\bar{R}$?
c) What are the $UCL_{\bar{x}}$ and $LCL_{\bar{x}}$, using 3σ? Plot the data.
d) What are the UCL_R and LCL_R, using 3σ? Plot the data.
e) If the true diameter mean should be 155 mm and you want this as your center (nominal) line, what are the new $UCL_{\bar{x}}$ and $LCL_{\bar{x}}$? PX

•• **S6.8** A. Choudhury's bowling ball factory in Illinois makes bowling balls of adult size and weight only. The standard deviation in the weight of a bowling ball produced at the factory is known to be 0.12 pounds. Each day for 24 days, the average weight, in pounds, of nine of the bowling balls produced that day has been assessed as follows:

DAY	AVERAGE (lb)	DAY	AVERAGE (lb)
1	16.3	13	16.3
2	15.9	14	15.9
3	15.8	15	16.3
4	15.5	16	16.2
5	16.3	17	16.1
6	16.2	18	15.9
7	16.0	19	16.2
8	16.1	20	15.9
9	15.9	21	15.9
10	16.2	22	16.0
11	15.9	23	15.5
12	15.9	24	15.8

a) Establish a control chart for monitoring the average weights of the bowling balls in which the upper and lower control limits are each two standard deviations from the mean. What are the values of the control limits?
b) If three standard deviations are used in the chart, how do these values change? Why? PX

••**S6.9** Organic Grains LLC uses statistical process control to ensure that its health-conscious, low-fat, multigrain sandwich loaves have the proper weight. Based on a previously stable and in-control process, the control limits of the $\bar{x}$- and R-charts are $UCL_{\bar{x}} = 6.56$. $LCL_{\bar{x}} = 5.84$, $UCL_R = 1.141$, $LCL_R = 0$. Over the past few days, they have taken five random samples of four loaves each and have found the following:

	NET WEIGHT			
SAMPLE	LOAF #1	LOAF #2	LOAF #3	LOAF #4
1	6.3	6.0	5.9	5.9
2	6.0	6.0	6.3	5.9
3	6.3	4.8	5.6	5.2
4	6.2	6.0	6.2	5.9
5	6.5	6.6	6.5	6.9

Is the process still in control? Explain why or why not. PX

•••**S6.10** A process that is considered to be in control measures an ingredient in ounces. Below are the last 10 samples (each of size $n = 5$) taken. The population process standard deviation, σ, is 1.36.

SAMPLES									
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
10	9	13	10	12	10	10	13	8	10
9	9	9	10	10	10	11	10	8	12
10	11	10	11	9	8	10	8	12	9
9	11	10	10	11	12	8	10	12	8
12	10	9	10	10	9	9	8	9	12

a) What is $\sigma_{\bar{x}}$?
b) If $z = 3$, what are the control limits for the mean chart?
c) What are the control limits for the range chart?
d) Is the process in control? PX

•••**S6.11** Twelve samples, each containing five parts, were taken from a process that produces steel rods at Emmanuel Kodzi's factory. The length of each rod in the samples was determined. The results were tabulated and sample means and ranges were computed. The results were:

SAMPLE	SAMPLE MEAN (in.)	RANGE (in.)
1	10.002	0.011
2	10.002	0.014
3	9.991	0.007
4	10.006	0.022
5	9.997	0.013
6	9.999	0.012
7	10.001	0.008
8	10.005	0.013
9	9.995	0.004
10	10.001	0.011
11	10.001	0.014
12	10.006	0.009

a) Determine the upper and lower control limits and the overall means for $\bar{x}$-charts and R-charts.
b) Draw the charts and plot the values of the sample means and ranges.
c) Do the data indicate a process that is in control?
d) Why or why not? PX

••**S6.12** Eagletrons are all-electric automobiles produced by Mogul Motors, Inc. One of the concerns of Mogul Motors is that the Eagletrons be capable of achieving appropriate maximum speeds. To monitor this, Mogul executives take samples of eight Eagletrons at a time. For each sample, they determine the average maximum speed and the range of the maximum speeds within the sample. They repeat this with 35 samples to obtain 35 sample means and 35 ranges. They find that the average sample mean is 88.50 miles per hour, and the average range is 3.25 miles per hour. Using these results, the executives decide to establish an R chart. They would like this chart to be established so that when it shows that the range of a sample is not within the control limits, there is only approximately a 0.0027 probability that this is due to natural variation. What will be the upper control limit (UCL) and the lower control limit (LCL) in this chart? PX

••**S6.13** The defect rate for data entry of insurance claims has historically been about 1.5%.
a) What are the upper and lower control chart limits if you wish to use a sample size of 100 and 3-sigma limits?
b) What if the sample size used were 50, with 3σ?
c) What if the sample size used were 100, with 2σ?
d) What if the sample size used were 50, with 2σ?
e) What happens to $\hat{\sigma}_p$ when the sample size is larger?
f) Explain why the lower control limit cannot be less than 0. PX

••**S6.14** You are attempting to develop a quality monitoring system for some parts purchased from Charles Sox Manufacturing Co. These parts are either good or defective. You have decided to take a sample of 100 units. Develop a table of the appropriate upper and lower control chart limits for various values of the average fraction defective in the samples taken. The values for $\bar{p}$ in this table should range from 0.02 to 0.10 in increments of 0.02. Develop the upper and lower control limits for a 99.73% confidence level.

$N = 100$		
$\bar{P}$	UCL	LCL
0.02		
0.04		
0.06		
0.08		
0.10		

PX

••**S6.15** The results of an inspection of DNA samples taken over the past 10 days are given below. Sample size is 100.

DAY	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
DEFECTIVES	7	6	6	9	5	6	0	8	9	1

a) Construct a 3-sigma p-chart using this information.
b) Using the control chart in part (a), and finding that the number of defectives on the next three days are 12, 5, and 13, is the process in control? PX

•**S6.16** In the past, the defective rate for your product has been 1.5%. What are the upper and lower control chart limits if you wish to use a sample size of 500 and $z = 3$? PX

•**S6.17** Refer to Problem S6.16. If the defective rate was 3.5% instead of 1.5%, what would be the control limits ($z = 3$)? PX

••**S6.18** Five data entry operators work at the data processing department of the Birmingham Bank. Each day for 30 days, the number of defective records in a sample of 250 records typed by these operators has been noted, as follows:

SAMPLE NO.	NO. DEFECTIVE	SAMPLE NO.	NO. DEFECTIVE	SAMPLE NO.	NO. DEFECTIVE
1	7	11	18	21	17
2	5	12	5	22	12
3	19	13	16	23	6
4	10	14	4	24	7
5	11	15	11	25	13
6	8	16	8	26	10
7	12	17	12	27	14
8	9	18	4	28	6
9	6	19	6	29	12
10	13	20	16	30	3

a) Establish 3σ upper and lower control limits.
b) Why can the lower control limit not be a negative number?
c) The industry standards for the upper and lower control limits are 0.10 and 0.01, respectively. What does this imply about Birmingham Bank's own standards? Px

••**S6.19** Houston North Hospital is trying to improve its image by providing a positive experience for its patients and their relatives. Part of the "image" program involves providing tasty, inviting patient meals that are also healthful. A questionnaire accompanies each meal served, asking the patient, among other things, whether he or she is satisfied or unsatisfied with the meal. A 100-patient sample of the survey results over the past 7 days yielded the following data:

DAY	NO. OF UNSATISFIED PATIENTS	SAMPLE SIZE
1	24	100
2	22	100
3	8	100
4	15	100
5	10	100
6	26	100
7	17	100

Construct a *p*-chart that plots the percentage of patients unsatisfied with their meals. Set the control limits to include 99.73% of the random variation in meal satisfaction. Comment on your results. Px

Corbis Super RF/Alamy

••**S6.20** Jamison Kovach Supply Company manufactures paper clips and other office products. Although inexpensive, paper clips have provided the firm with a high margin of profitability. Sample size is 200. Results are given for the last 10 samples:

SAMPLE	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
DEFECTIVES	5	7	4	4	6	3	5	6	2	8

a) Establish upper and lower control limits for the control chart and graph the data.
b) Has the process been in control?
c) If the sample size were 100 instead, how would your limits and conclusions change? Px

•**S6.21** Peter Ittig's department store, Ittig Brothers, is Amherst's largest independent clothier. The store receives an average of six returns per day. Using $z = 3$, would nine returns in a day warrant action? Px

••**S6.22** An ad agency tracks the complaints, by week received, about the billboards in its city:

WEEK	NO. OF COMPLAINTS
1	4
2	5
3	4
4	11
5	3
6	9

a) What type of control chart would you use to monitor this process? Why?
b) What are the 3-sigma control limits for this process? Assume that the historical complaint rate is unknown.
c) Is the process in control, according to the control limits? Why or why not?
d) Assume now that the historical complaint rate has been four calls a week. What would the 3-sigma control limits for this process be now? Has the process been in control according to the control limits? Px

••**S6.23** The school board is trying to evaluate a new math program introduced to second-graders in five elementary schools across the county this year. A sample of the student scores on standardized math tests in each elementary school yielded the following data:

SCHOOL	NO. OF TEST ERRORS
A	52
B	27
C	35
D	44
E	55

Construct a *c*-chart for test errors, and set the control limits to contain 99.73% of the random variation in test scores. What does the chart tell you? Has the new math program been effective? Px

••**S6.24** Telephone inquiries of 100 IRS "customers" are monitored daily at random. Incidents of incorrect information or other nonconformities (such as impoliteness to customers) are recorded. The data for last week follow:

DAY	NO. OF NONCONFORMITIES
1	5
2	10
3	23
4	20
5	15

a) Construct a 3-standard deviation *c*-chart of nonconformities.
b) What does the control chart tell you about the IRS telephone operators? PX

•••**S6.25** The accounts receivable department at Rick Wing Manufacturing has been having difficulty getting customers to pay the full amount of their bills. Many customers complain that the bills are not correct and do not reflect the materials that arrived at their receiving docks. The department has decided to implement SPC in its billing process. To set up control charts, 10 samples of 50 bills each were taken over a month's time and the items on the bills checked against the bill of lading sent by the company's shipping department to determine the number of bills that were not correct. The results were:

SAMPLE NO.	NO. OF INCORRECT BILLS	SAMPLE NO.	NO. OF INCORRECT BILLS
1	6	6	5
2	5	7	3
3	11	8	4
4	4	9	7
5	0	10	2

a) Determine the value of *p*-bar, the mean fraction defective. Then determine the control limits for the *p*-chart using a 99.73% confidence level (3 standard deviations). Has this process been in control? If not, which samples were out of control?
b) How might you use the quality tools discussed in Chapter 6 to determine the source of the billing defects and where you might start your improvement efforts to eliminate the causes? PX

•••**S6.26** West Battery Corp. has recently been receiving complaints from retailers that its 9-volt batteries are not lasting as long as other name brands. James West, head of the TQM program at West's Austin plant, believes there is no problem because his batteries have had an average life of 50 hours, about 10% longer than competitors' models. To raise the lifetime above this level would require a new level of technology not available to West. Nevertheless, he is concerned enough to set up hourly assembly line checks. Previously, after ensuring that the process was running properly, West took size $n = 5$ samples of 9-volt batteries for each of 25 hours to establish the standards for control chart limits. Those samples are shown in the following table:

West Battery Data—Battery Lifetimes (in hours)

HOUR SAMPLE TAKEN	SAMPLE						
	1	2	3	4	5	$\bar{X}$	R
1	51	50	49	50	50	50.0	2
2	45	47	70	46	36	48.8	34
3	50	35	48	39	47	43.8	15
4	55	70	50	30	51	51.2	40
5	49	38	64	36	47	46.8	28
6	59	62	40	54	64	55.8	24
7	36	33	49	48	56	44.4	23
8	50	67	53	43	40	50.6	27
9	44	52	46	47	44	46.6	8
10	70	45	50	47	41	50.6	29
11	57	54	62	45	36	50.8	26
12	56	54	47	42	62	52.2	20
13	40	70	58	45	44	51.4	30
14	52	58	40	52	46	49.6	18
15	57	42	52	58	59	53.6	17
16	62	49	42	33	55	48.2	29
17	40	39	49	59	48	47.0	20
18	64	50	42	57	50	52.6	22
19	58	53	52	48	50	52.2	10
20	60	50	41	41	50	48.4	19
21	52	47	48	58	40	49.0	18
22	55	40	56	49	45	49.0	16
23	47	48	50	50	48	48.6	3
24	50	50	49	51	51	50.2	2
25	51	50	51	51	62	53.0	12

With these limits established, West now takes 5 more hours of data, which are shown in the following table:

HOUR	SAMPLE				
	1	2	3	4	5
26	48	52	39	57	61
27	45	53	48	46	66
28	63	49	50	45	53
29	57	70	45	52	61
30	45	38	46	54	52

a) Determine means and the upper and lower control limits for $\bar{x}$ and R (using the first 25 hours only).
b) Has the manufacturing process been in control?
c) Comment on the lifetimes observed. PX

••••**S6.27** One of New England Air's top competitive priorities is on-time arrivals. Quality VP Clair Bond decided to personally monitor New England Air's performance. Each week for the past 30 weeks, Bond checked a random sample of 100 flight arrivals for on-time performance. The table that follows contains the number of flights that did not meet New England Air's definition of "on time":

SAMPLE (WEEK)	LATE FLIGHTS	SAMPLE (WEEK)	LATE FLIGHTS
1	2	16	2
2	4	17	3
3	10	18	7
4	4	19	3
5	1	20	2
6	1	21	3
7	13	22	7
8	9	23	4
9	11	24	3
10	0	25	2
11	3	26	2
12	4	27	0
13	2	28	1
14	2	29	3
15	8	30	4

a) Using a 95% confidence level, plot the overall percentage of late flights ($\bar{p}$) and the upper and lower control limits on a control chart.
b) Assume that the airline industry's upper and lower control limits for flights that are not on time are .1000 and .0400, respectively. Draw them on your control chart.
c) Plot the percentage of late flights in each sample. Do all samples fall within New England Air's control limits? When one falls outside the control limits, what should be done?
d) What can Clair Bond report about the quality of service? PX

Additional problems **S6.28–S6.39** *are available in* MyOMLab.

Problems S6.40–S6.50 relate to Process Capability

•**S6.40** The difference between the upper specification and the lower specification for a process is 0.6". The standard deviation is 0.1". What is the process capability ratio, C_p? Interpret this number. PX

••**S6.41** Meena Chavan Corp.'s computer chip production process yields DRAM chips with an average life of 1,800 hours and $\sigma = 100$ hours. The tolerance upper and lower specification limits are 2,400 hours and 1,600 hours, respectively. Is this process capable of producing DRAM chips to specification? PX

••**S6.42** Linda Boardman, Inc., an equipment manufacturer in Boston, has submitted a sample cutoff valve to improve your manufacturing process. Your process engineering department has conducted experiments and found that the valve has a mean (μ) of 8.00 and a standard deviation (σ) of .04. Your desired performance is $\mu = 8.0 \pm 3\sigma$, where $\sigma = .045$. What is the C_{pk} of the Boardman valve? PX

••**S6.43** The specifications for a plastic liner for concrete highway projects calls for a thickness of 3.0 mm $\pm$.1 mm. The standard deviation of the process is estimated to be .02 mm. What are the upper and lower specification limits for this product? The process is known to operate at a mean thickness of 3.0 mm. What is the C_{pk} for this process? About what percentage of all units of this liner will meet specifications? PX

••**S6.44** Frank Pianki, the manager of an organic yogurt processing plant, desires a quality specification with a mean of 16 ounces, an upper specification limit of 16.5, and a lower specification limit of 15.5. The process has a mean of 16 ounces and a standard deviation of 1 ounce. Determine the C_{pk} of the process. PX

••**S6.45** A process filling small bottles with baby formula has a target of 3 ounces $\pm$0.150 ounce. Two hundred bottles from the process were sampled. The results showed the average amount of formula placed in the bottles to be 3.042 ounces. The standard deviation of the amounts was 0.034 ounce. Determine the value of C_{pk}. Roughly what proportion of bottles meet the specifications? PX

Additional problems **S6.46–S6.50** *are available in* MyOMLab.

Problems S6.51–S6.55 relate to Acceptance Sampling

••**S6.51** As the supervisor in charge of shipping and receiving, you need to determine *the average outgoing quality* in a plant where the known incoming lots from your assembly line have an average defective rate of 3%. Your plan is to sample 80 units of every 1,000 in a lot. The number of defects in the sample is not to exceed 3. Such a plan provides you with a probability of acceptance of each lot of .79 (79%). What is your average outgoing quality? PX

••**S6.52** An acceptance sampling plan has lots of 500 pieces and a sample size of 60. The number of defects in the sample may not exceed 2. This plan, based on an OC curve, has a probability of .57 of accepting lots when the incoming lots have a defective rate of 4%, which is the historical average for this process. What do you tell your customer the average outgoing quality is? PX

••**S6.53** The percent defective from an incoming lot is 3%. An OC curve showed the probability of acceptance to be 0.55. Given a lot size of 2,000 and a sample of 100, determine the average outgoing quality in percent defective.

••**S6.54** In an acceptance sampling plan developed for lots containing 1,000 units, the sample size n is 85. The percent defective of the incoming lots is 2%, and the probability of acceptance is 0.64. What is the average outgoing quality?

••**S6.55** We want to determine the AOQ for an acceptance sampling plan when the quality of the incoming lots in percent defective is 1.5%, and then again when the incoming percent defective is 5%. The sample size is 80 units for a lot size of 550 units. Furthermore, P_a at 1.5% defective levels is 0.95. At 5% incoming defective levels, the P_a is found to be 0.5. Determine the average outgoing quality for both incoming percent defective levels.

CASE STUDIES

Cecil Rice Export, Alexandria, Egypt

Cecil Rice Export operates a facility in Alexandria, Egypt, where bulk white rice is bagged for export in 70-pound grain bags. The bagged rice is then palletized and brought by truck to a quay in the harbor and loaded onto a break-bulk ship for transport to foreign customers.

Cecil Rice Export has experienced good growth in the past decade due to a concentration on continuous improvement and Lean techniques. It has gained an enviable reputation for being a lowcost, high-value supplier. This growth has led to the need to increase capacity by expanding the number of shifts at Cecil Rice Export's facility. In 2005, it operated only one shift, from 08:00 to 16:00. In 2007, a second shift was added, and the facility operated from 04:00 to 20:00, switching shifts at 12:00. Since the start of 2009, the company has increased to three shifts, operating from 00:00 to 08:00, 08:00 to 16:00, and 16:00 to 00:00. As these shifts were added, most of the more experienced employees, due to their seniority, chose to remain on the day shift. Those originally on the second shift added in 2007 (at that time the 12:00 to 20:00 shift) mostly moved onto the 16:00 to 00:00 shift. Those on the shift added in 2009, the greenest shift, were therefore left with the 00:00 to 08:00 shift. As the new shifts were added, some senior personnel were assigned to the new shifts to break in the new workers. Eventually, these experienced hands returned to their preferred day shift. Traditionally, working bonds between shift members have resulted in a good amount of cohesion in the workforce, and shift members are usually quite averse to changing shifts.

Rice is delivered to the Cecil Rice Export facility and stored in a silo. From the silo, an air-powered transport system moves the grain to the hopper of the bagging machine. The bagging machine fills bags from the hopper to a specific weight, 70 pounds, and past records indicate that the mean is in fact 70.0 pounds, with a standard deviation of 1.0 pounds. This machine, however, is very sensitive and must be calibrated by trained personnel. In the past, this was not a problem due to the experience of the personnel in the original production shift. As shifts were added, there was no effort to examine whether the weight of the bags remained within acceptable limits. Recently, during the loading of the pallets on the merchant ship, the ships' officers have detected abnormalities in the pallets. The pallets are loaded with 30 bags each, for a presumed weight of 2,100 pounds. When confronted with abnormalities, plant management initially suspected the bagging operation, specifically over- or underweight bags. Both under- and overweight bags are undesirable from the firm's point of view. Overweight bags decrease Cecil Rice Export's revenue as product is given away in the overage. Underweight bags, on the other hand, present a customer service issue. Cecil Rice Export's customers have come to expect bags to have a proper weight and are disappointed when the bags are underweight. For these reasons, over- and underweight bags are equally undesirable. The table shows the minimum, maximum, and average from hourly samples of five bags per hour, taken over 3 days.

		RANGE				*RANGE*	
TIME	AVERAGE WEIGHT (POUNDS)	SMALLEST	LARGEST	TIME	AVERAGE WEIGHT (POUNDS)	SMALLEST	LARGEST
6:00 A.M.	49.6	48.7	50.7	6:00 P.M.	46.8	41.0	51.2
7:00	50.2	49.1	51.2	7:00	50.0	46.2	51.7
8:00	50.6	49.6	51.4	8:00	47.4	44.0	48.7
9:00	50.8	50.2	51.8	9:00	47.0	44.2	48.9
10:00	49.9	49.2	52.3	10:00	47.2	46.6	50.2
11:00	50.3	48.6	51.7	11:00	48.6	47.0	50.0
12 noon	48.6	46.2	50.4	12 midnight	49.8	48.2	50.4
1:00 P.M.	49.0	46.4	50.0	1:00 A.M.	49.6	48.4	51.7
2:00	49.0	46.0	50.6	2:00	50.0	49.0	52.2
3:00	49.8	48.2	50.8	3:00	50.0	49.2	50.0
4:00	50.3	49.2	52.7	4:00	47.2	46.3	50.5
5:00	51.4	50.0	55.3	5:00	47.0	44.1	49.7
6:00	51.6	49.2	54.7	6:00	48.4	45.0	49.0
7:00	51.8	50.0	55.6	7:00	48.8	44.8	49.7
8:00	51.0	48.6	53.2	8:00	49.6	48.0	51.8
9:00	50.5	49.4	52.4	9:00	50.0	48.1	52.7
10:00	49.2	46.1	50.7	10:00	51.0	48.1	55.2
11:00	49.0	46.3	50.8	11:00	50.4	49.5	54.1
12 midnight	48.4	45.4	50.2	12 noon	50.0	48.7	50.9
1:00 A.M.	47.6	44.3	49.7	1:00 P.M.	48.9	47.6	51.2
2:00	47.4	44.1	49.6	2:00	49.8	48.4	51.0
3:00	48.2	45.2	49.0	3:00	49.8	48.8	50.8
4:00	48.0	45.5	49.1	4:00	50.0	49.1	50.6
5:00	48.4	47.1	49.6	5:00	47.8	45.2	51.2

(*cont'd*)

		RANGE				RANGE	
TIME	AVERAGE WEIGHT (POUNDS)	SMALLEST	LARGEST	TIME	AVERAGE WEIGHT (POUNDS)	SMALLEST	LARGEST
6:00 A.M.	48.6	47.4	52.0	6:00 P.M.	46.4	44.0	49.7
7:00	50.0	49.2	52.2	7:00	46.4	44.4	50.0
8:00	49.8	49.0	52.4	8:00	47.2	46.6	48.9
9:00	50.3	49.4	51.7	9:00	48.4	47.2	49.5
10:00	50.2	49.6	51.8	10:00	49.2	48.1	50.7
11:00	50.0	49.0	52.3	11:00	48.4	47.0	50.8
12 noon	50.0	48.8	52.4	12 midnight	47.2	46.4	49.2
1:00 P.M.	50.1	49.4	53.6	1:00 A.M.	47.4	46.8	49.0
2:00	49.7	48.6	51.0	2:00	48.8	47.2	51.4
3:00	48.4	47.2	51.7	3:00	49.6	49.0	50.6
4:00	47.2	45.3	50.9	4:00	51.0	50.5	51.5
5:00	46.8	44.1	49.0	5:00	50.5	50.0	51.9

Discussion Questions

1. What control charts should be used to determine whether the process is in control or out of control?
2. Develop a control chart for each shift. Does there appear to be a difference between the shifts?
3. Cecil Rice Export is planning on providing incentives for senior personnel to rotate into other shifts to better mix personnel among the shifts. If the same control charts were used for all three shifts, what would be the control limits of these charts?

Source: Dr. Ian M. Langella, Shippensburg University, USA.

Frito-Lay's Quality-Controlled Potato Chips

Video Case

Frito-Lay, the multi-billion-dollar snack food giant, produces billions of pounds of product every year at its dozens of U.S. and Canadian plants. From the farming of potatoes—in Florida, North Carolina, and Michigan—to factory and to retail stores, the ingredients and final product of Lay's chips, for example, are inspected at least 11 times: in the field, before unloading at the plant, after washing and peeling, at the sizing station, at the fryer, after seasoning, when bagged (for weight), at carton filling, in the warehouse, and as they are placed on the store shelf by Frito-Lay personnel. Similar inspections take place for its other famous products, including Cheetos, Fritos, Ruffles, and Tostitos.

In addition to these employee inspections, the firm uses proprietary vision systems to look for defective potato chips. Chips are pulled off the high-speed line and checked twice if the vision system senses them to be too brown.

The company follows the very strict standards of the American Institute of Baking (AIB), standards that are much tougher than those of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration. Two unannounced AIB site visits per year keep Frito-Lay's plants on their toes. Scores, consistently in the "excellent" range, are posted, and every employee knows exactly how the plant is doing.

There are two key metrics in Frito-Lay's continuous improvement quality program: (1) total customer complaints (measured on a complaints per million bag basis) and (2) hourly or daily statistical process control scores (for oil, moisture, seasoning, and salt content, for chip thickness, for fryer temperature, and for weight).

In the Florida plant, Angela McCormack, who holds engineering and MBA degrees, oversees a 15-member quality assurance staff. They watch all aspects of quality, including training employees on the factory floor, monitoring automated processing equipment, and developing and updating statistical process control (SPC) charts. The upper and lower control limits for one checkpoint, salt content in Lay's chips, are 2.22% and 1.98%, respectively. To see exactly how these limits are created using SPC, watch the video that accompanies this case.

Discussion Questions*

1. Angela is now going to evaluate a new salt process delivery system and wants to know if the upper and lower control limits at 3 standard deviations for the new system will meet the upper and lower control specifications noted earlier.

   The data (in percents) from the initial trial samples are:

   Sample 1: 1.98, 2.11, 2.15, 2.06
   Sample 2: 1.99, 2.0, 2.08, 1.99
   Sample 3: 2.20, 2.10. 2.20, 2.05
   Sample 4: 2.18, 2.01, 2.23, 1.98
   Sample 5: 2.01, 2.08, 2.14, 2.16

   Provide the report to Angela.
2. What are the advantages and disadvantages of Frito-Lay drivers stocking their customers' shelves?
3. Why is quality a critical function at Frito-Lay?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before answering these questions.

Farm to Fork: Quality at Darden Restaurants — Video Case

Darden Restaurants, the $6.3 billion owner of such popular brands as Olive Garden, Seasons 52, and Bahama Breeze, serves more than 320 million meals annually in its 1,500 restaurants across the U.S. and Canada. Before any one of these meals is placed before a guest, the ingredients for each recipe must pass quality control inspections at the source, ranging from measurement and weighing to tasting, touching, or lab testing. Darden has differentiated itself from its restaurant peers by developing the gold standard in continuous improvement.

To assure both customers and the company that quality expectations are met, Darden uses a rigorous inspection process, employing statistical process control (SPC) as part of its "Farm to Fork" program. More than 50 food scientists, microbiologists, and public health professionals report to Ana Hooper, vice president of quality assurance.

As part of Darden's Point Source program, Hooper's team, based in Southeast Asia (in China, Thailand, and Singapore) and Latin America (in Equador, Honduras, and Chile), approves and inspects—and works with Darden buyers to purchase—more than 50 million pounds of seafood each year for restaurant use. Darden used to build quality in at the end by inspecting shipments as they reached U.S. distribution centers. Now, thanks to coaching and partnering with vendors abroad, Darden needs but a few domestic inspection labs to verify compliance to its exacting standards. Food vendors in source countries know that when supplying Darden, they are subject to regular audits that are stricter than U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) standards.

Two Quality Success Stories

Quality specialists' jobs include raising the bar and improving quality and safety at all plants in their geographic area. The Thai quality representative, for example, worked closely with several of Darden's largest shrimp vendors to convert them to a production-line-integrated quality assurance program. The vendors were able to improve the quality of shrimp supplied and reduce the percentage of defects by 19%.

Likewise, when the Darden quality teams visited fields of growers/shippers in Mexico recently, it identified challenges such as low employee hygiene standards, field food safety problems, lack of portable toilets, child labor, and poor working conditions. Darden addressed these concerns and hired third-party independent food safety verification firms to ensure continued compliance to standards.

SPC Charts

SPC charts, such as the one shown on page 253 in this supplement, are particularly important. These charts document precooked food weights; meat, seafood and poultry temperatures; blemishes on produce; and bacteria counts on shrimp—just to name a few. Quality assurance is part of a much bigger process that is key to Darden's success—its supply chain (see Chapters 2 and 11 for discussion and case studies on this topic). That's because quality comes from the source and flows through distribution to the restaurant and guests.

Discussion Questions*

1. How does Darden build quality into the supply chain?
2. Select two potential problems—one in the Darden supply chain and one in a restaurant—that can be analyzed with a fish-bone chart. Draw a complete chart to deal with each problem.
3. Darden applies SPC in many product attributes. Identify where these are probably used.
4. The SPC chart on page 253 illustrates Darden's use of control charts to monitor the weight of salmon filets. Given these data, what conclusion do you, as a Darden quality control inspector, draw? What report do you issue to your supervisor? How do you respond to the salmon vendor?

*You might want to view the video that accompanies this case before answering these questions.

- **Additional Case Study:** Visit MyOMLab for this free case study:
  Green River Chemical Company: Involves a company that needs to set up a control chart to monitor sulfate content because of customer complaints.

Endnotes

1. Removing assignable causes is work. Quality expert W. Edwards Deming observed that a state of statistical control is not a natural state for a manufacturing process. Deming instead viewed it as an achievement, arrived at by elimination, one by one, by determined effort, of special causes of excessive variation.
2. The standard deviation is easily calculated as $\sigma = \sqrt{\dfrac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}(x_i - \bar{x})^2}{n-1}}$. For a good review of this and other statistical terms, refer to Tutorial 1, "Statistical Review for Managers," in MyOMLab.
3. Lower control limits cannot take negative values in control charts. So the LCL = max $(0, \bar{\bar{x}} - z\sigma_{\bar{x}})$.
4. If the sample sizes are not the same, other techniques must be used.
5. A Poisson probability distribution is a discrete distribution commonly used when the items of interest (in this case, defects) are infrequent or occur in time or space.
6. This is because a C_p of 1.0 has 99.73% of outputs within specifications. So 1.00 − .9973 = .0027; with 1,000 parts, there are .0027 = 1,000 = 2.7 defects.
   For a C_p of 2.0, 99.99966% of outputs are "within spec." So 1.00 − .9999966 = .0000034; with 1 million parts, there are 3.4 defects.
7. Refer to Tutorial 2 in MyOMLab for an extended discussion of acceptance sampling.
8. Note that sampling always runs the danger of leading to an erroneous conclusion. Let us say that in one company the total population under scrutiny is a load of 1,000 computer chips, of which in reality only 30 (or 3%) are defective. This means that we would want to accept the shipment of chips, because for this particular firm 4% is the allowable defect rate. However, if a random sample of $n = 50$ chips was drawn, we could conceivably end up with 0 defects and accept that shipment (that is, it is okay), or we could find all 30 defects in the sample. If the latter happened, we could wrongly conclude that the whole population was 60% defective and reject them all.

Supplement 6 Rapid Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
STATISTICAL PROCESS CONTROL (SPC) (pp. 284–298)	■ **Statistical process control (SPC)**—A process used to monitor standards by taking measurements and corrective action as a product or service is being produced. ■ **Control chart**—A graphical presentation of process data over time. A process is said to be operating *in statistical control* when the only source of variation is common (natural) causes. The process must first be brought into statistical control by detecting and eliminating special (assignable) causes of variation. *The objective of a process control system is to provide a statistical signal when assignable causes of variation are present.* ■ **Natural variations**—The variability that affects every production process to some degree and is to be expected; also known as common cause. When natural variations form a *normal distribution,* they are characterized by two parameters: ■ Mean, μ (the measure of central tendency—in this case, the average value) ■ Standard deviation, σ (the measure of dispersion) As long as the distribution (output measurements) remains within specified limits, the process is said to be "in control," and natural variations are tolerated. ■ **Assignable variation**—Variation in a production process that can be traced to specific causes. Control charts for the mean, $\bar{x}$, and the range, R, are used to monitor *variables* (outputs with continuous dimensions), such as weight, speed, length, or strength. ■ **$\bar{x}$-chart**—A quality control chart for variables that indicates when changes occur in the central tendency of a production process. ■ ***R*-chart**—A control chart that tracks the range within a sample; it indicates that a gain or loss in uniformity has occurred in dispersion of a production process. ■ **Central limit theorem**—The theoretical foundation for $\bar{x}$-charts, which states that regardless of the distribution of the population of all parts or services, the $\bar{x}$ distribution will tend to follow a normal curve as the number of samples increases: $$\bar{\bar{x}} = \mu \quad \text{(S6-1)}$$ $$\sigma_{\bar{x}} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} \quad \text{(S6-2)}$$ The $\bar{x}$-chart limits, if we know the true standard deviation σ of the process population, are: $$\text{Upper control limit (UCL)} = \bar{\bar{x}} + z\sigma_{\bar{x}} \quad \text{(S6-3)}$$ $$\text{Lower control limit (LCL)} = \bar{\bar{x}} - z\sigma_{\bar{x}} \quad \text{(S6-4)}$$ where z = confidence level selected (e.g., $z = 3$ is 99.73% confidence). The *range*, R, of a sample is defined as the difference between the largest and smallest items. If we do not know the true standard deviation, σ, of the population, the $\bar{x}$-chart limits are: $$\text{UCL}_{\bar{x}} = \bar{\bar{x}} + A_2\bar{R} \quad \text{(S6-5)}$$ $$\text{LCL}_{\bar{x}} = \bar{\bar{x}} - A_2\bar{R} \quad \text{(S6-6)}$$ In addition to being concerned with the process average, operations managers are interested in the process dispersion, or range. The R-chart control limits for the range of a process are: $$\text{UCL}_R = D_4\bar{R} \quad \text{(S6-7)}$$ $$\text{LCL}_R = D_3\bar{R} \quad \text{(S6-8)}$$ Attributes are typically classified as *defective* or *nondefective*. The two attribute charts are (1) p-charts (which measure the *percent* defective in a sample), and (2) c-charts (which *count* the number of defects in a sample). ■ ***p*-chart**—A quality control chart that is used to control attributes: $$\text{UCL}_p = \bar{p} + z\sigma_p \quad \text{(S6-9)}$$ $$\text{LCL}_p = \bar{p} - z\sigma_p \quad \text{(S6-10)}$$ $$\hat{\sigma}_p = \sqrt{\frac{\bar{p}(1-\bar{p})}{n}} \quad \text{(S6-11)}$$ ■ ***c*-chart**—A quality control chart used to control the number of defects per unit of output. The Poisson distribution is the basis for c-charts, whose 99.73% limits are computed as: $$\text{Control limits} = \bar{c} \pm 3\sqrt{\bar{c}} \quad \text{(S6-12)}$$ ■ **Run test**—A test used to examine the points in a control chart to determine whether nonrandom variation is present.	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4 Problems: S6.1–S6.39 **VIDEO S6.1** Farm to Fork: Quality at Darden Restaurants Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problems: S6.1–S6.3 **ACTIVE MODELS S6.1 and S6.2** **VIDEO S6.2** Frito-Lay's Quality-Controlled Potato Chips Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: S6.5

Supplement 6 *Rapid* Review *continued*

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
PROCESS CAPABILITY (pp. 298–300)	■ **Process capability**—The ability to meet design specifications. ■ C_p—A ratio for determining whether a process meets design specifications. $$C_p = \frac{\text{(Upper specification} - \text{Lower specification)}}{6\sigma} \quad \text{(S6-13)}$$ ■ C_{pk}—A proportion of variation (3σ) between the center of the process and the nearest specification limit: $$C_{pk} = \text{Minimum of}\left[\frac{\text{Upper spec limit} - \bar{X}}{3\sigma}, \frac{\bar{X} - \text{Lower spec limit}}{3\sigma}\right] \quad \text{(S6-14)}$$	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4 Problems: S6.40-S6.50 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problems: S6.4 **ACTIVE MODEL S6.3**
ACCEPTANCE SAMPLING (pp. 300–303)	■ **Acceptance sampling**—A method of measuring random samples of lots or batches of products against predetermined standards. ■ **Operating characteristic (OC) curve**—A graph that describes how well an acceptance plan discriminates between good and bad lots. ■ **Producer's risk**—The mistake of having a producer's good lot rejected through sampling. ■ **Consumer's risk**—The mistake of a customer's acceptance of a bad lot overlooked through sampling. ■ **Acceptable quality level (AQL)**—The quality level of a lot considered good. ■ **Lot tolerance percent defective (LTPD)**—The quality level of a lot considered bad. ■ **Type I error**—Statistically, the probability of rejecting a good lot. ■ **Type II error**—Statistically, the probability of accepting a bad lot. ■ **Average outgoing quality (AOQ)**—The percent defective in an average lot of goods inspected through acceptance sampling: $$\text{AOQ} = \frac{(P_d)(P_a)(N - n)}{N} \quad \text{(S6-15)}$$	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4 Problems: S6.51–S6.55

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the supplement and the key terms listed at the end of the supplement.

LO S6.1 If the mean of a particular sample is within control limits and the range of that sample is not within control limits:
- **a)** the process is in control, with only assignable causes of variation.
- **b)** the process is not producing within the established control limits.
- **c)** the process is producing within the established control limits, with only natural causes of variation.
- **d)** the process has both natural and assignable causes of variation.

LO S6.2 The central limit theorem:
- **a)** is the theoretical foundation of the *c*-chart.
- **b)** states that the average of assignable variations is zero.
- **c)** allows managers to use the normal distribution as the basis for building some control charts.
- **d)** states that the average range can be used as a proxy for the standard deviation.
- **e)** controls the steepness of an operating characteristic curve.

LO S6.3 The type of chart used to control the central tendency of variables with continuous dimensions is:
- **a)** $\bar{x}$-chart.
- **b)** *R*-chart.
- **c)** *p*-chart.
- **d)** *c*-chart.
- **e)** none of the above.

LO S6.4 If parts in a sample are measured and the mean of the sample measurement is outside the control limits:
- **a)** the process is out of control, and the cause should be established.
- **b)** the process is in control but not capable of producing within the established control limits.
- **c)** the process is within the established control limits, with only natural causes of variation.
- **d)** all of the above are true.

LO S6.5 Control charts for attributes are:
- **a)** *p*-charts.
- **b)** *c*-charts.
- **c)** *R*-charts.
- **d)** $\bar{x}$-charts.
- **e)** both a and b.

LO S6.6 The ability of a process to meet design specifications is called:
- **a)** Taguchi.
- **b)** process capability.
- **c)** capability index.
- **d)** acceptance sampling.
- **e)** average outgoing quality.

LO S6.7 The _____ risk is the probability that a lot will be rejected despite the quality level exceeding or meeting the _____.

Answers: LO S6.1. b; LO S6.2. c; LO S6.3. a; LO S6.4. a; LO S6.5. e; LO S6.6. b; LO S6.7. producer's, AQL

Process Design

CHAPTER 7

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *Harley-Davidson*

- Four Process Strategies *320*
- Selection of Equipment *326*
- Process Analysis and Design *326*
- Special Considerations for Service Process Design *331*
- Production Technology *332*
- Technology in Services *336*
- Process Redesign *336*

Alaska Airlines

Alaska Airlines

10 OM STRATEGY DECISIONS

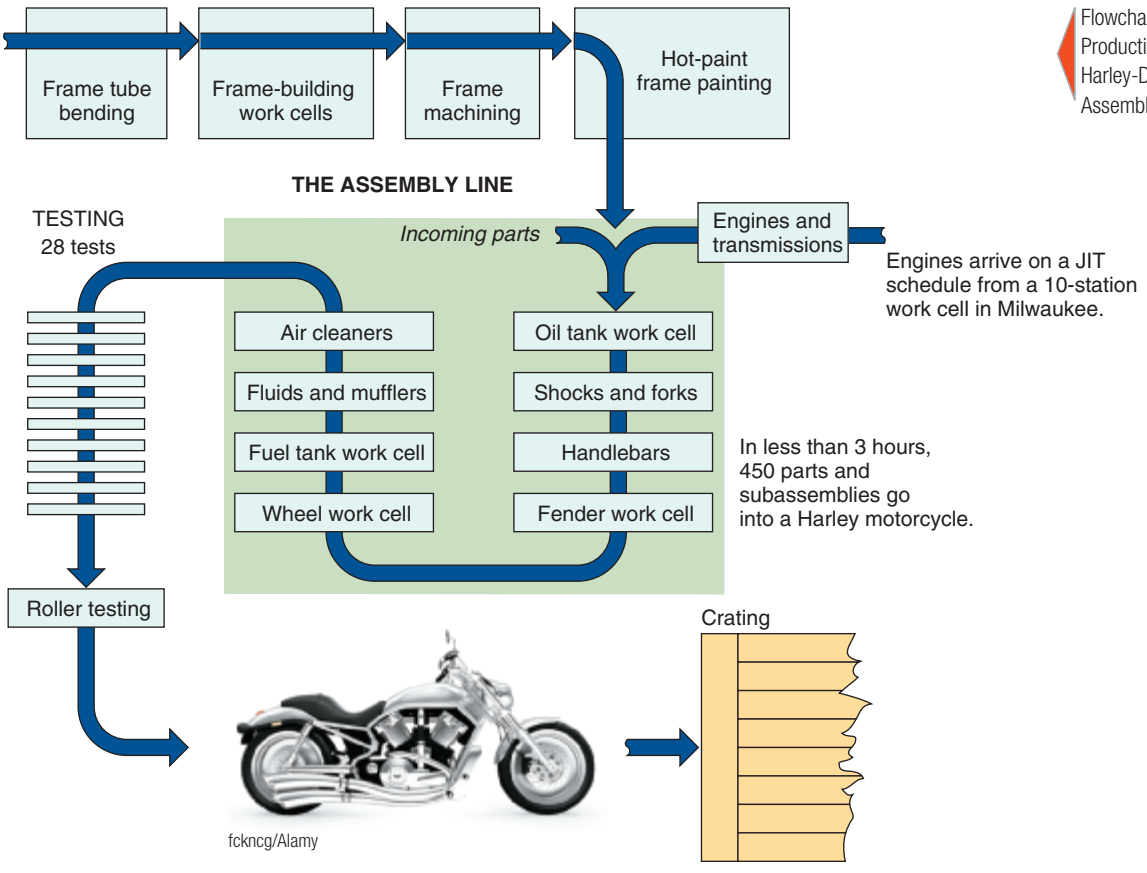
- Design of Goods and Services
- Managing Quality
- *Process Strategy*
- Location Strategies
- Layout Strategies
- Human Resources
- Supply-Chain Management
- Inventory Management
- Scheduling
- Maintenance

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
Harley-Davidson

Repetitive Manufacturing Works at Harley-Davidson

Since Harley-Davidson's founding in Milwaukee in 1903, it has competed with hundreds of manufacturers, foreign and domestic. The competition has been tough. Recent competitive battles have been with the Japanese, and earlier battles were with the German, English, and Italian manufacturers. But after over 110 years, Harley is the only major U.S. motorcycle company. The company now has five U.S. facilities and an assembly plant in Brazil. The Sportster powertrain is manufactured in Wauwatosa, Wisconsin, and the sidecars, saddlebags, windshields, and other specialty items are produced in Tomahawk, Wisconsin. The Touring and Softail bikes are assembled in York, Pennsylvania, while the Sportster models, Dyna models, and VRSC models of motorcycles are produced in Kansas City, Missouri.

As a part of management's lean manufacturing effort, Harley groups production of parts that require similar processes together. The result is work cells. Using the latest technology, work cells perform in one location all the operations necessary for production of a specific module. Raw materials are moved to the work cells for module production. The modules then proceed



Flowchart Showing the Production Process at Harley-Davidson's York Assembly Plant

Rick Friedman/Corbis

Wheel assembly modules are prepared in a work cell for JIT delivery to the assembly line.

Rick Friedman/Corbis

For manufacturers like Harley-Davidson, which produces a large number of end products from a relatively small number of options, modular bills of material provide an effective solution.

to the assembly line. As a double check on quality, Harley has also installed "light curtain" technology, which uses an infrared sensor to verify the bin from which an operator is taking parts. Materials go to the assembly line on a just-in-time basis, or as Harley calls it, using a Materials as Needed (MAN) system.

The 12.5-million-square-foot York facility includes manufacturing cells that perform tube bending, frame-building, machining, painting, and polishing. Innovative manufacturing techniques use robots to load machines and highly automated production to reduce machining time. Automation and precision sensors play a key role in maintaining tolerances and producing a quality product. Each day the York facility produces up to 600 heavy-duty factory-custom motorcycles. Bikes are assembled with different engine displacements, multiple wheel options, colors, and accessories. The result is a huge number of variations in the motorcycles available, which allows customers to individualize their purchase. (See **www.Harley-Davidson.com** for an example of modular customization.) The Harley-Davidson production system works because high-quality modules are brought together on a tightly scheduled repetitive production line.

Nuccio DiNuzzo/KRT/Newscom

Engines are assembled in Memomonee Falls, Wisconsin, and placed in their own protective containers for shipment to the York facility. Upon arrival in York, engines are placed on an overhead conveyor for movement directly to the assembly line.

Rick Friedman/Corbis

It all comes together on the line. Any employee who spots a problem has the authority to stop the line until the problem in corrected. The multicolored "andon" light above the line signals the severity of the problem.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO 7.1 ***Describe*** four process strategies 320
LO 7.2 ***Compute*** crossover points for different processes 324
LO 7.3 ***Use*** the tools of process analysis 327
LO 7.4 ***Describe*** customer interaction in service processes 331
LO 7.5 ***Identify*** recent advances in production technology 332

Four Process Strategies

In Chapter 5, we examined the need for the selection, definition, and design of goods and services. Our purpose was to create environmentally friendly goods and services that could be delivered in an ethical, sustainable manner. We now turn to their production. A major decision for an operations manager is finding the best way to produce so as not to waste our planet's resources. Let's look at ways to help managers design a process for achieving this goal.

Process strategy
An organization's approach to transforming resources into goods and services.

A **process strategy** is an organization's approach to transforming resources into goods and services. *The objective is to create a process that can produce offerings that meet customer requirements within cost and other managerial constraints*. The process selected will have a long-term effect on efficiency and flexibility of production, as well as on cost and quality of the goods produced.

LO 7.1 *Describe* four process strategies

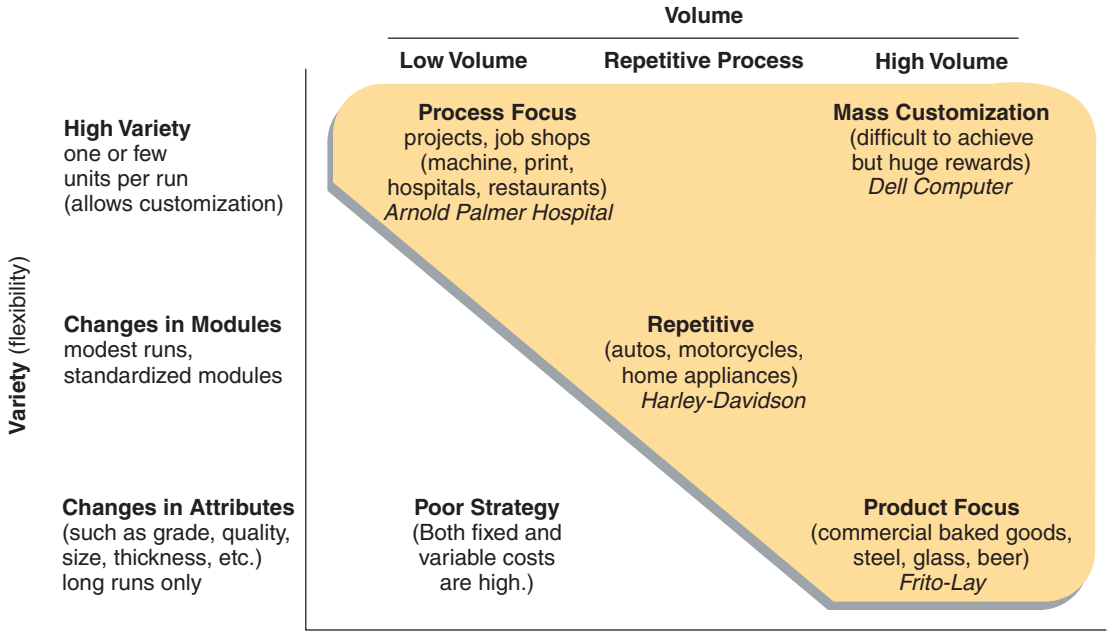
Virtually every good or service is made by using some variation of one of four process strategies: (1) process focus, (2) repetitive focus, (3) product focus, and (4) mass customization. The relationship of these four strategies to volume and variety is shown in Figure 7.1. We examine *Arnold Palmer Hospital* as an example of a process-focused firm, *Harley-Davidson* as a repetitive producer, *Frito-Lay* as a product-focused operation, and *Dell* as a mass customizer.

Process Focus

The vast majority of global production is devoted to making *low-volume*, *high-variety* products in places called "job shops." Such facilities are organized around specific activities or processes. In a factory, these processes might be departments devoted to welding, grinding, and painting. In an office, the processes might be accounts payable, sales, and payroll. In a restaurant, they might be bar, grill, and bakery. Such facilities are **process focused** in terms of equipment, layout, and supervision. They provide a high degree of product flexibility as products move between the specialized processes. Each process is designed to perform a variety of activities and handle frequent changes. Consequently, they are also called *intermittent processes*.

Process focus
A production facility organized around processes to facilitate low-volume, high-variety production.

Figure **7.1**
Process Selected Must Fit with Volume and Variety



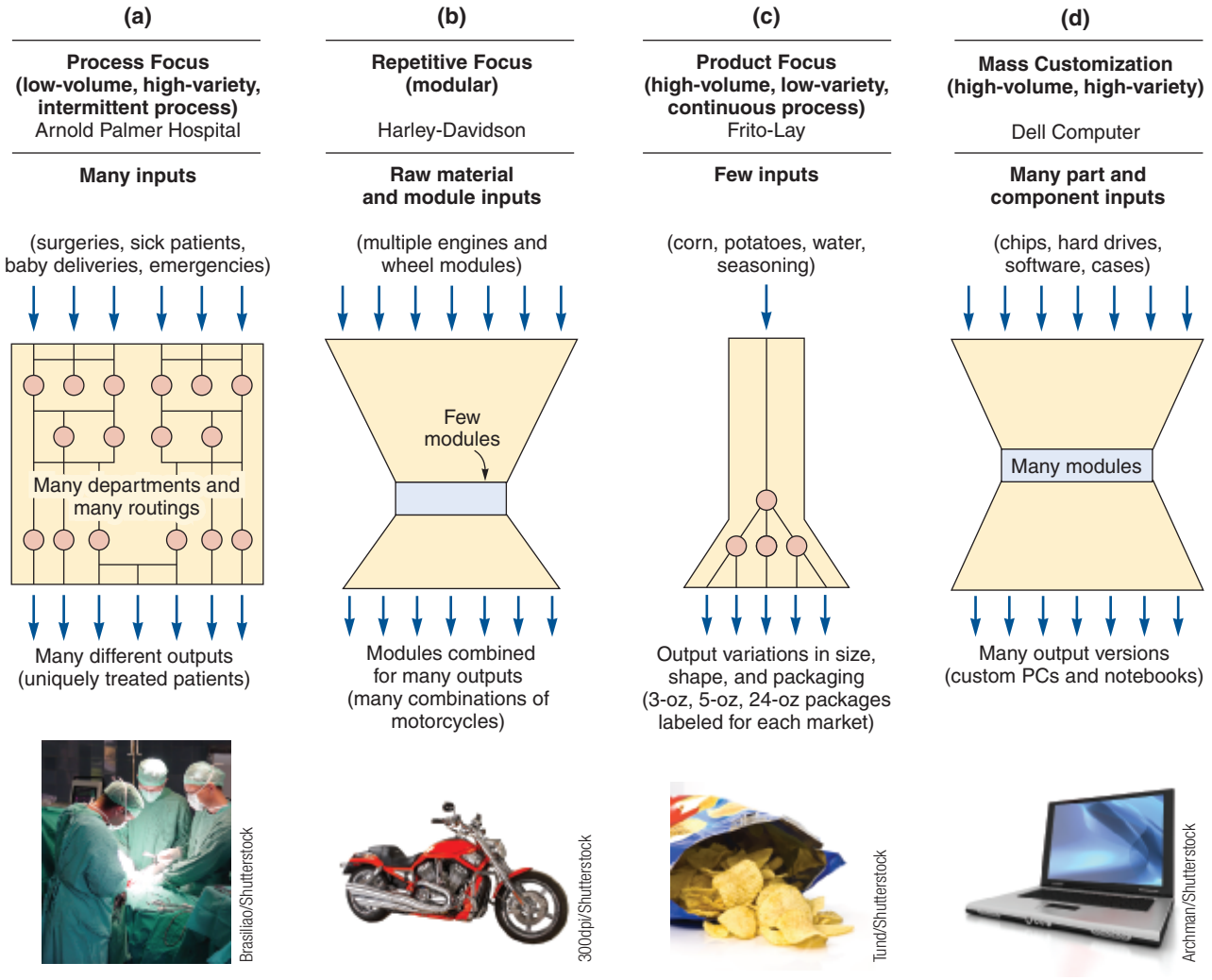


Figure **7.2**

Four Process Options with an Example of Each

Referring to Figure 7.2(a), imagine a diverse group of patients entering Arnold Palmer Hospital, a process-focused facility, to be routed to specialized departments, treated in a distinct way, and then exiting as uniquely cared-for individuals.

Process-focused facilities have high variable costs with extremely low utilization of facilities, as low as 5%. This is the case for many restaurants, hospitals, and machine shops. However, facilities that lend themselves to electronic controls can do somewhat better.

Repetitive Focus

VIDEO 7.1
Process Strategy at Wheeled Coach Ambulance

Repetitive processes, as we saw in the Global Company Profile on Harley-Davidson, use modules (see Figure 7.2b). **Modules** are parts or components previously prepared, often in a product-focused (continuous) process.

The **repetitive process** is the classic assembly line. Widely used in the assembly of virtually all automobiles and household appliances, it has more structure and consequently less flexibility than a process-focused facility.

Fast-food firms are another example of a repetitive process using modules. This type of production allows more customizing than a product-focused facility; modules (for example, meat, cheese, sauce, tomatoes, onions) are assembled to get a quasi-custom product, a cheeseburger. In this manner, the firm obtains both the economic advantages of the product-focused model (where many of the modules are prepared) and the custom advantage of the low-volume, high-variety model.

Modules
Parts or components of a product previously prepared, often in a continuous process.

Repetitive process
A product-oriented production process that uses modules.

Product Focus

Product focus
A facility organized around products; a product-oriented, high-volume, low-variety process.

High-volume, low-variety processes are **product focused**. The facilities are organized around *products*. They are also called *continuous processes* because they have very long, continuous production runs. Products such as glass, paper, tin sheets, lightbulbs, beer, and potato chips are made via a continuous process. Some products, such as lightbulbs, are discrete; others, such as rolls of paper, are made in a continuous flow. Still others, such as repaired hernias at Canada's famous Shouldice Hospital, are services. It is only with standardization and effective quality control that firms have established product-focused facilities. An organization producing the same lightbulb or hot dog bun day after day can organize around a product. Such an organization has an inherent ability to set standards and maintain a given quality, as opposed to an organization that is producing unique products every day, such as a print shop or general-purpose hospital. For example, Frito-Lay's family of products is also produced in a product-focused facility [see Figure 7.2(c)]. At Frito-Lay, corn, potatoes, water, and seasoning are the relatively few inputs, but outputs (like Cheetos, Ruffles, Tostitos, and Fritos) vary in seasoning and packaging within the product family.

A product-focused facility produces high volume and low variety. The specialized nature of the facility requires high fixed cost, but low variable costs reward high facility utilization.

Mass Customization Focus

Our increasingly wealthy and sophisticated world demands individualized goods and services. A peek at the rich variety of goods and services that operations managers are called on to supply is shown in Table 7.1. The explosion of variety has taken place in automobiles, movies, breakfast cereals, and thousands of other areas. Despite this proliferation of products, operations managers have improved product quality while reducing costs. Consequently, the variety of products continues to grow. Operations managers use *mass customization* to produce this vast array of goods and services. **Mass customization** is the rapid, low-cost production of goods and services that fulfill increasingly unique customer desires. But mass customization (see the upper-right section of Figure 7.1) is not just about variety; it is about making precisely *what* the customer wants *when* the customer wants it economically.

Mass customization
Rapid, low-cost production that caters to constantly changing unique customer desires.

Mass customization brings us the variety of products traditionally provided by low-volume manufacture (a process focus) at the cost of standardized high-volume (product-focused) production. However, achieving mass customization is a challenge that requires sophisticated operational capabilities. Building agile processes that rapidly and inexpensively produce custom products requires a limited product line and modular design. The link between sales, design, production, supply chain, and logistics must be tight.

Dell Computer [see Figure 7.2(d)] has demonstrated that the payoff for mass customization can be substantial. More traditional manufacturers include Toyota, which recently announced

TABLE 7.1 Mass Customization Provides More Choices Than Ever

	NUMBER OF CHOICES[a]	
ITEM	1970s	21ST CENTURY
Vehicle styles	18	1,212
Bicycle types	8	211,000[c]
iPhone mobile game apps	0	1,200,000[g]
Web sites	0	634,000,000[d]
Movie releases per year	267	1,551[e]
New book titles	40,530	300,000+
Houston TV channels	5	185
Breakfast cereals	160	340
Items (SKUs) in supermarkets	14,000[b]	150,000[f]
High-definition TVs	0	102

Source: Various; however, many of the data are from the Federal Reserve Bank of Dallas.
[a]Variety available in America; worldwide the variety increases even more. [b]1989.
[c]Possible combinations for one manufacturer. [d]Royal Pingdom Estimate (2015).
[e]www.the-numbers.com/movies/year/2014. [f]SKUs managed by H. E. Butts grocery chain.
[g]*Business Week,* April 26, 2015.

delivery of custom-ordered cars in 5 days. Similarly, electronic controls allow designers in the textile industry to rapidly revamp their lines and respond to changes.

The service industry is also moving toward mass customization. For instance, not very many years ago, most people had the same telephone service. Now, not only is the phone service full of options, from caller ID to voice mail, but contemporary phones are hardly phones. They may also be part camera, computer, game player, GPS, and Web browser. Insurance companies are adding and tailoring new products with shortened development times to meet the unique needs of their customers. And firms like iTunes, Spotify, Rhapsody, Amazon, and eMusic maintain a music inventory on the Internet that allows customers to select a dozen songs of their choosing and have them made into a custom playlist. Similarly, the number of new books and movies increases each year. Mass customization places new demands on operations managers who must create and align the processes that provide this expanding variety of goods and services.

Making Mass Customization Work Mass customization suggests a high-volume system in which products are built-to-order. **Build-to-order (BTO)** means producing to customer orders, not forecasts. But high-volume build-to-order is difficult. Some major challenges are:

Build-to-order (BTO)
Produce to customer order rather than to a forecast.

- *Product design* must be imaginative. Successful build-to-order designs include a limited product line and modules. Ping Inc., a premier golf club manufacturer, uses different combinations of club heads, grips, shafts, and angles to make 20,000 variations of its golf clubs.
- *Process design* must be flexible and able to accommodate changes in both design and technology. For instance, **postponement** allows for customization late in the production process. Toyota installs unique interior modules very late in production for its popular Scion, a process also typical with customized vans. Postponement is further discussed in Chapter 11.
- *Inventory management* requires tight control. To be successful with build-to-order, a firm must avoid being stuck with unpopular or obsolete components. With virtually no raw material, Dell puts custom computers together in less than a day.
- *Tight schedules* that track orders and material from design through delivery are another requirement of mass customization. Align Technology, a well-known name in orthodontics, figured out how to achieve competitive advantage by delivering custom-made clear plastic aligners within 3 weeks of the first visit to the dentist's office.
- *Responsive partners* in the supply chain can yield effective collaboration. Forecasting, inventory management, and ordering for JCPenney shirts are all handled for the retailer by its supplier in Hong Kong.

Postponement
The delay of any modifications or customization to a product as long as possible in the production process.

Mass customization/build-to-order is the new imperative for operations. There are advantages to mass customization and building to order: first, by meeting the demands of the marketplace, firms win orders and stay in business; in addition, they trim costs (from personnel to inventory to facilities) that exist because of inaccurate sales forecasting.

OM in Action Supply Chain in Fast Fashion

Inditex (Zara) has proved that an efficient supply chain management process is key to success in Fast Fashion. Inditex, founded in 1963, now has more than 6.900 stores around the world, and a total revenue in excess of €18.12 billion (FY 2014).

Inditex has its primary warehouse in La Coruna, Spain, where goods are distributed to the retail outlets twice a week. Proximate outlets are served by trucks, and more remote outlets by aircrafts, making sure all stores are able to provide the same fashion garments to their customers at the same time. To ensure an optimal supply chain, Inditex controls the manufacturing and supply processes to a higher degree than most of its competitors in the retail area. Inditex works thoroughly with JIT (Just in Time) principles, and has reserved 85 percent of the production capacity for in-season adjustments, ensuring optimal flexibility regarding quantity and sizes in demand, with the upshot thatInditex can replenish items in as little as two weeks.

In the production departments they work with built-in slack, making sure that sudden changes in demand can be met by opening up more time slots in production.

One of the most important implications of the JIT concept is that it minimizes inventories and therefore items that need to be sold at discount. This is significant especially in fast fashion,where large inventories not being sold at full price, lead to poor financial results. Inditex spends a bit more on the supply chain (eg. paying higher wages to workers in Spain instead of Bangladesh the production facilities) and saves a lot more by selling more of its output at full price.

Sources: http://www.inditex.com/our_group/business_model (see videos under Logistics, Manufacturing and Design). https://www.tradegecko.com/blog/zara-supply-chain-its-secret-to-retail-success

TABLE 7.2 Comparison of the Characteristics of Four Types of Processes

PROCESS FOCUS (LOW VOLUME, HIGH VARIETY; e.g., ARNOLD PALMER HOSPITAL)	REPETITIVE FOCUS (MODULAR; e.g., HARLEY-DAVIDSON)	PRODUCT FOCUS (HIGH VOLUME, LOW VARIETY; e.g., FRITO-LAY)	MASS CUSTOMIZATION (HIGH VOLUME, HIGH VARIETY; e.g., DELL COMPUTER)
1. Small quantity and large variety of products	1. Long runs, a standardized product from modules	1. Large quantity and small variety of products	1. Large quantity and large variety of products
2. Broadly skilled operators	2. Moderately trained employees	2. Less broadly skilled operators	2. Flexible operators
3. Instructions for each job	3. Few changes in job instructions	3. Standardized job instructions	3. Custom orders requiring many job instructions
4. High inventory	4. Low inventory	4. Low inventory	4. Low inventory relative to the value of the product
5. Finished goods are made to order and not stored	5. Finished goods are made to frequent forecasts	5. Finished goods are made to a forecast and stored	5. Finished goods are build-to-order (BTO)
6. Scheduling is complex	6. Scheduling is routine	6. Scheduling is routine	6. Sophisticated scheduling accommodates custom orders
7. Fixed costs are low and variable costs high	7. Fixed costs are dependent on flexibility of the facility	7. Fixed costs are high, and variable costs low	7. Fixed costs tend to be high and variable costs low

Process Comparison

The characteristics of the four processes are shown in Table 7.2 and Figure 7.2 (on page 283), and each may provide a strategic advantage. For instance, unit costs will be less in the product (continuous) or repetitive case when high volume (and high utilization) exists. However, a low-volume differentiated product is likely to be produced more economically under process focus. And mass customization requires exceptional competence in product and process design, scheduling, supply chain, and inventory management. Proper evaluation and selection of process strategies are critical.

Crossover Charts The comparison of processes can be further enhanced by looking at the point where the total cost of the processes changes. For instance, Figure 7.3 shows three alternative processes compared on a single chart. Such a chart is sometimes called a **crossover chart**. Process A has the lowest cost for volumes below V_1, process B has the lowest cost between V_1 and V_2, and process C has the lowest cost at volumes above V_2.

Crossover chart
A chart of costs at the possible volumes for more than one process.

Example 1 illustrates how to determine the exact volume where one process becomes more expensive than another.

Example 1

CROSSOVER CHART

Kleber Enterprises would like to evaluate three accounting software products (A, B, and C) to support changes in its internal accounting processes. The resulting processes will have cost structures similar to those shown in Figure 7.3. The costs of the software for these processes are:

	TOTAL FIXED COST	DOLLARS REQUIRED PER ACCOUNTING REPORT
Software A	$200,000	$60
Software B	$300,000	$25
Software C	$400,000	$10

LO 7.2 *Compute* crossover points for different processes

APPROACH ▶ Solve for the crossover point for software A and B and then the crossover point for software B and C.

SOLUTION ▶ Software A yields a process that is most economical up to V_1, but to exactly what number of reports (volume)? To determine the volume at V_1, we set the cost of software A equal to the cost of software B. V_1 is the unknown volume:

$$\begin{aligned} 200{,}000 + (60)V_1 &= 300{,}000 + (25)V_1 \\ 35V_1 &= 100{,}000 \\ V_1 &= 2{,}857 \end{aligned}$$

This means that software A is most economical from 0 reports to 2,857 reports (V_1).

Similarly, to determine the crossover point for V_2, we set the cost of software B equal to the cost of software C:

$$\begin{aligned} 300{,}000 + (25)V_2 &= 400{,}000 + (10)V_2 \\ 15V_2 &= 100{,}000 \\ V_2 &= 6{,}666 \end{aligned}$$

This means that software B is most economical if the number of reports is between 2,857 (V_1) and 6,666 (V_2) and that software C is most economical if reports exceed 6,666 (V_2).

INSIGHT ▶ As you can see, the software and related process chosen is highly dependent on the forecasted volume.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the vendor of software A reduces the fixed cost to $150,000, what is the new crossover point between A and B? [Answer: 4,286.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 7.1, 7.2, 7.3, 7.4, 7.5, 7.6, 7.7, 7.8, 7.9, 7.10, 7.11, 7.12

ACTIVE MODEL 7.1 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 7.1 in MyOMLab.

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch07Ex1**.xls can be found in MyOMLab.

Focused Processes In an ongoing quest for efficiency, industrialized societies continue to move toward specialization. The focus that comes with specialization contributes to efficiency. Managers who focus on a limited number of activities, products, and technologies do better. As the variety of products in a facility increase, overhead costs increase even faster.

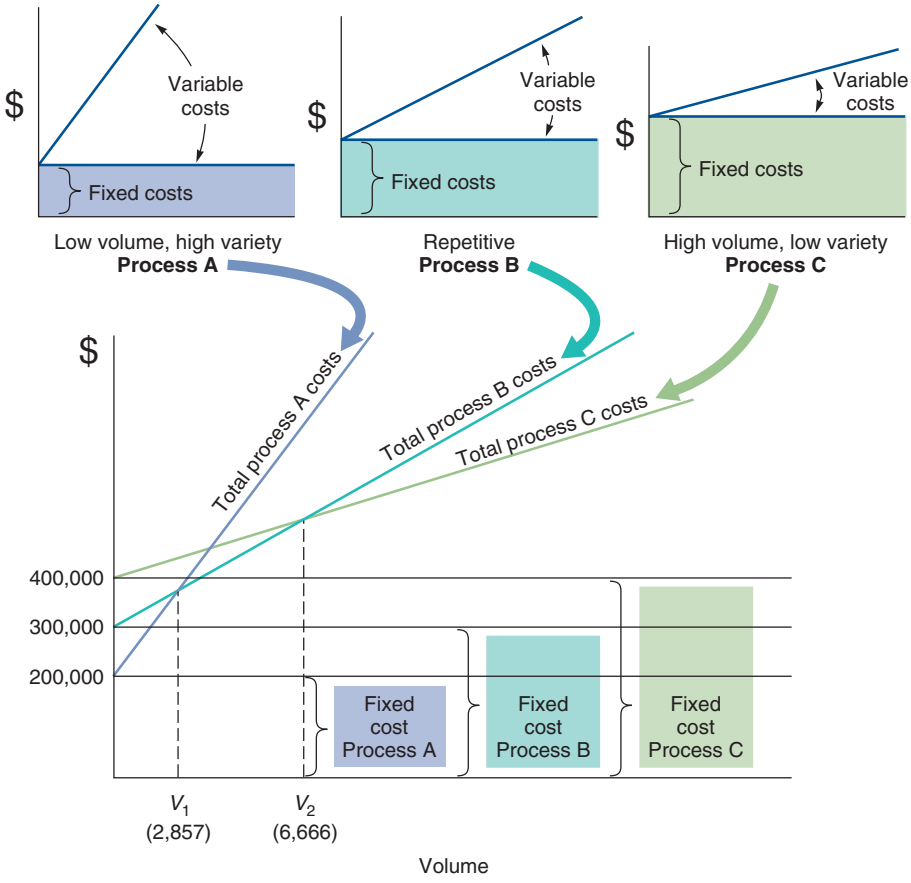


Figure 7.3
Crossover Charts

STUDENT TIP
Different processes can be expected to have different costs. However, at any given volume, only one will have the lowest cost.

Similarly, as the variety of products, customers, and technology increases, so does complexity. The resources necessary to cope with the complexity expand disproportionately. A focus on depth of product line as opposed to breadth is typical of outstanding firms, of which Intel, L.M. Ericsson, and Bosch are world-class examples. *Focus*, defined here as specialization, simplification, and concentration, yields efficiency. Focus also contributes to building a core competence that fosters market and financial success. The focus can be:

- *Customers* (such as Winterhalter Gastronom, a German company that focuses on dishwashers for hotels and restaurants, for whom spotless glasses and dishes are critical)
- *Products* with similar attributes (such as Nucor Steel's Crawford, Ohio, plant, which processes only high-quality sheet steels, and Gallagher, a New Zealand company, which has 45% of the world market in electric fences)
- *Service* (such as Orlando's Arnold Palmer Hospital, with a focus on children and women; or Shouldice Hospital, in Canada, with a focus on hernia repair)
- *Technology* (such as Texas Instruments, with a focus on only certain specialized kinds of semiconductors; and SAP, which despite a world of opportunities, remains focused on software)

The key for the operations manager is to move continuously toward specialization, focusing on the core competence necessary to excel at that speciality.

Selection of Equipment

STUDENT TIP A process that is going to win orders often depends on the selection of the proper equipment.

Ultimately, selection of a particular process strategy requires decisions about equipment and technology. These decisions can be complex, as alternative methods of production are present in virtually all operations functions, from hospitals, to restaurants, to manufacturing facilities. Picking the best equipment requires understanding the specific industry and available processes and technology. The choice of equipment, be it an X-ray machine for a hospital, a computer-controlled lathe for a factory, or a new computer for an office, requires considering cost, cash flow, market stability, quality, capacity, and flexibility. To make this decision, operations managers develop documentation that indicates the capacity, size, tolerances, and maintenance requirements of each option.

Flexibility
The ability to respond with little penalty in time, cost, or customer value.

In this age of rapid technological change and short product life cycles, adding flexibility to the production process can be a major competitive advantage. **Flexibility** is the ability to respond with little penalty in time, cost, or customer value. This may mean modular, movable, or digitally controlled equipment. Honda's process flexibility, for example, has allowed it to become the industry leader at responding to market dynamics by modifying production volume and product mix.

Building flexibility into a production process can be difficult and expensive, but if it is not present, change may mean starting over. Consider what would be required for a rather simple change—such as McDonald's adding the flexibility necessary to serve you a charbroiled hamburger. What appears to be rather straightforward would require changes in many of the 10 OM decisions. For instance, changes may be necessary in (1) purchasing (a different quality of meat, perhaps with more fat content, and supplies such as charcoal), (2) quality standards (how long and at what temperature the patty will cook), (3) equipment (the charbroiler), (4) layout (space for the new process and for new exhaust vents), (5) training, and (6) maintenance. You may want to consider the implications of another simple change, such as a change from paper menus to iPad menus as discussed in the *OM in Action* box "The iPad Menu . . . A New Process."

Changing processes or equipment can be difficult and expensive. It is best to get this critical decision right the first time.

Process Analysis and Design

STUDENT TIP Here we look at five tools that help understand processes.

When analyzing and designing processes, we ask questions such as the following:

- Is the process designed to achieve competitive advantage in terms of differentiation, response, or low cost?
- Does the process eliminate steps that do not add value?

OM in Action The iPad Menu . . . A New Process

Mass customization begins with the order. And at restaurants from California to Boston, the order now starts with an iPad. *Stacked Restaurants* lets customers choose ingredients for their sandwiches using an iPad on the table. Diners also get a great photo of the menu item (which stimulates sales), a list of ingredients and nutritional information (a plus for those with allergies or watching their diet), and an opportunity to build their own meal (mass customization).

Some restaurants, in addition to having the enticing photo of the meal, find that they can add a description and photo of just what a medium-rare steak looks like. They can further enrich the dining experience by adding a "recipe" tab or "history" tab with descriptions of the item's origins and tradition. *Steakhouses,* a chain in San Francisco, Atlanta, and Chicago, finds the tabs great for its lengthy wine lists. Others program the system to remember the guest's meal preferences. And some customers love the ability to order immediately, scan coupons, and swipe credit cards at the table. The instantaneous placement of the order to the kitchen is a significant advantage for those restaurants pursuing a *response strategy.*

Stacked Restaurants

Using iPads means developing a new process. iPads are not cheap, but they are accurate and fast, with lots of options. Restaurants using the new process find customer retention, frequency of visits, and average check size all increasing.

Sources: New York Times (June 21, 2014) and *USA Today* (February 16, 2011) and (July 25, 2012).

- Does the process maximize customer value as perceived by the customer?
- Will the process win orders?

LO 7.3 *Use* the tools of process analysis

Process analysis and design not only addresses these issues, but also related OM issues such as throughput, cost, and quality. Process is key. Examine the process; then continuously improve the process.

The following tools help us understand the complexities of process design and redesign. They are simply ways of making sense of what happens or must happen in a process. We now look at: flowcharts, time-function mapping, process charts, value-stream mapping, and service blueprinting.

VIDEO 7.2
Alaska Airlines: 20-minute Baggage Process—Guaranteed!

Flowchart

The first tool is the **flowchart**, which is a schematic or drawing of the movement of material, product, or people. For instance, the flowchart in the *Global Company Profile* for this chapter shows the assembly processes for Harley-Davidson. Such charts can help understanding, analysis, and communication of a process.

Flowchart
A drawing used to analyze movement of people or material.

Time-Function Mapping

A second tool for process analysis and design is a modified flowchart with time added on the horizontal axis. Such charts are sometimes called **time-function mapping,** or **process mapping**. With time-function mapping, nodes indicate the activities, and the arrows indicate the flow direction, with time on the horizontal axis. This type of analysis allows users to identify and eliminate waste such as extra steps, duplication, and delay. Figure 7.4 shows the use of process mapping before and after process improvement at American National Can Company. In this example, substantial reduction in waiting time and process improvement in order processing contributed to a savings of 46 days.

Time-function mapping (or process mapping)
A flowchart with time added on the horizontal axis.

Process Charts

The third tool is the *process chart*. **Process charts** use symbols, time, and distance to provide an objective and structured way to analyze and record the activities that make up a process.[1] They allow us to focus on value-added activities. For instance, the process chart shown in Figure 7.5, which includes the present method of hamburger assembly at a fast-food restaurant, includes a value-added line to help us distinguish between value-added activities and waste. Identifying all value-added operations (as opposed to inspection, storage, delay, and transportation, which add no value) allows us to determine the percent of value added to total activities.[2] We can see from the computation at the bottom of Figure 7.5 that the percentage of value added in this case is 85.7%.

Process charts
Charts that use symbols to analyze the movement of people or material.

VIDEO 7.3
Process Analysis at Arnold Palmer Hospital

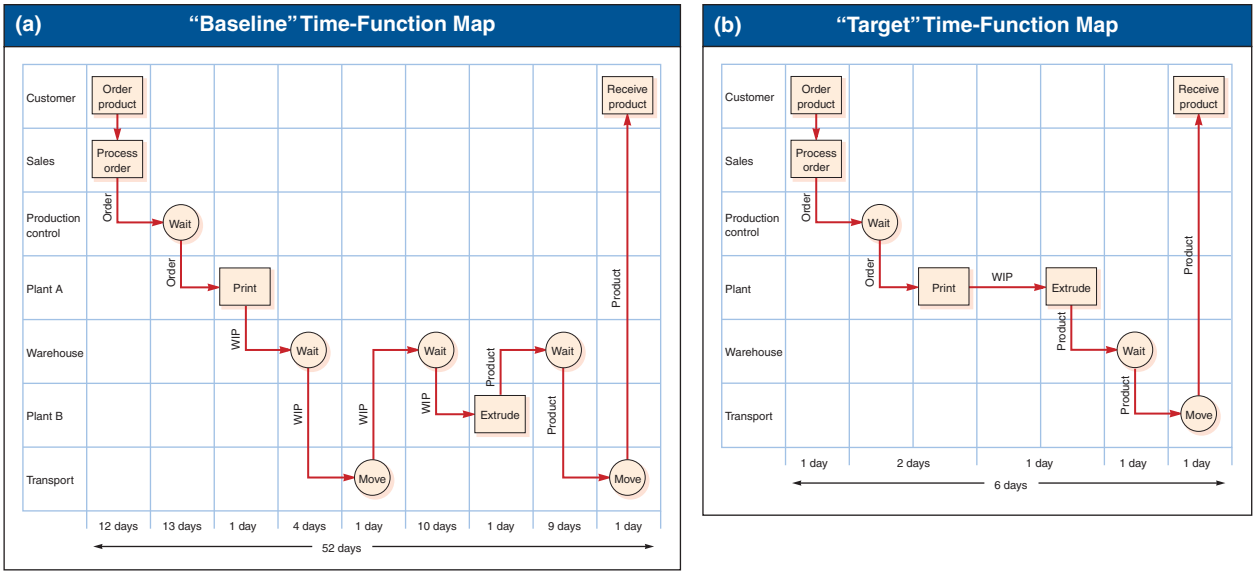


Figure 7.4

Time-Function Mapping (Process Mapping) for a Product Requiring Printing and Extruding Operations at American National Can Company

This technique clearly shows that waiting and order processing contributed substantially to the 46 days that can be eliminated in this operation.

Source: Excerpted from Elaine J. Labach, "Faster, Better, and Cheaper," *Target* no. 5:43 with permission of the Association for Manufacturing Excellence, 380 West Palatine Road, Wheeling, IL 60090-5863, 847/520-3282. **www.ame.org**. Reprinted with permission of Target Magazine.

The operations manager's job is to reduce waste and increase the percent of value added. The non-value-added items are a waste; they are resources lost to the firm and to society forever.

Value-Stream Mapping

Value-stream mapping (VSM)
A process that helps managers understand how to add value in the flow of material and information through the entire production process.

A variation of time-function mapping is **value-stream mapping (VSM)**; however, value-stream mapping takes an expanded look at where value is added (and not added) in the entire production process, including the supply chain. As with time-function mapping, the idea is to start with the customer and understand the production process, but value-stream mapping extends the analysis back to suppliers.

Figure 7.5

Process Chart Showing a Hamburger Assembly Process at a Fast-Food Restaurant

Present Method [X] PROCESS CHART Proposed Method [ ]

SUBJECT CHARTED Hamburger Assembly Process DATE 12 / 1 / 15

DEPARTMENT _____ CHART BY KH SHEET NO. 1 OF 1

DIST. IN FEET	TIME IN MINS.	CHART SYMBOLS	PROCESS DESCRIPTION
	—	○ ⇨ □ D ▽	Meat Patty in Storage
1.5	.05	○ ⇨ □ D ▽	Transfer to Broiler
	2.50	○ ⇨ □ D ▽	Broiler
	.05	○ ⇨ □ D ▽	Visual Inspection
1.0	.05	○ ⇨ □ D ▽	Transfer to Rack
	.15	○ ⇨ □ D ▽	Temporary Storage
.5	.10	○ ⇨ □ D ▽	Obtain Buns, Lettuce, etc.
	.20	○ ⇨ □ D ▽	Assemble Order
.5	.05	○ ⇨ □ D ▽	Place in Finish Rack
		○ ⇨ □ D ▽	
3.5	3.15	2 4 1 — 2	TOTALS

Value-added time = Operation time/Total time = (2.50+.20)/3.15 = 85.7%

○ = operation; ⇨ = transport; □ = inspect; D = delay; ▽ = storage.

Value-stream mapping takes into account not only the process but, as shown in Example 2, also the management decisions and information systems that support the process.

Example 2

VALUE-STREAM MAPPING

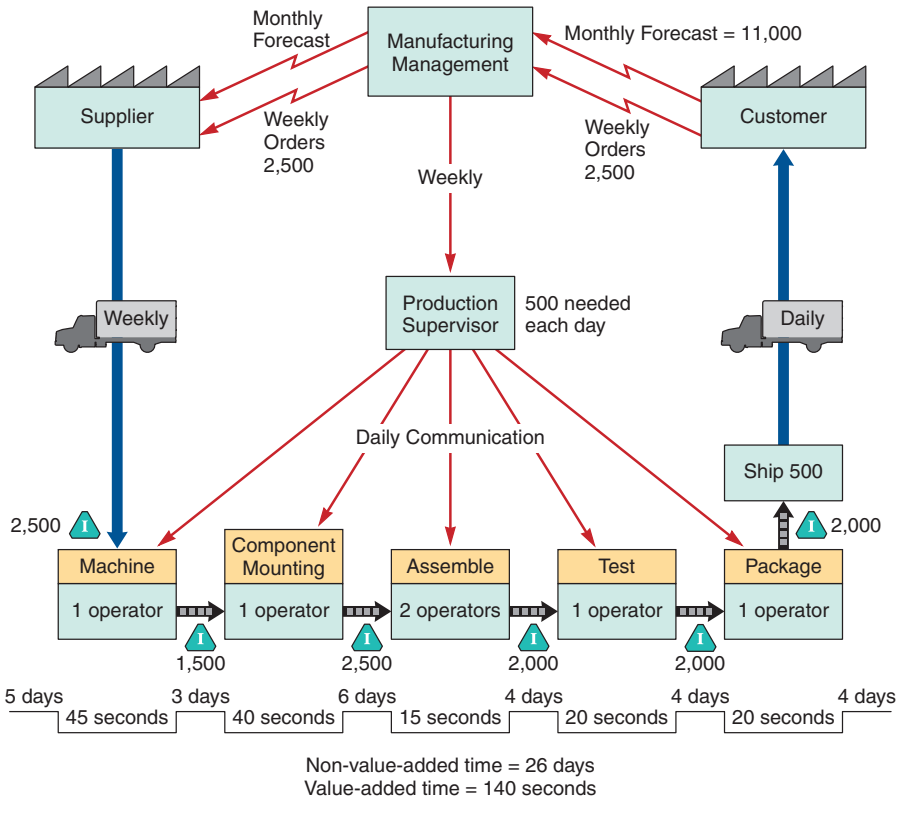
Motorola has received an order for 11,000 cell phones per month and wants to understand how the order will be processed through manufacturing.

APPROACH ▶ To fully understand the process from customer to supplier, Motorola prepares a value-stream map.

SOLUTION ▶ Although value-stream maps appear complex, their construction is easy. Here are the steps needed to complete the value-stream map shown in Figure 7.6.

1. Begin with symbols for customer, supplier, and production to ensure the big picture.
2. Enter customer order requirements.
3. Calculate the daily production requirements.
4. Enter the outbound shipping requirements and delivery frequency.
5. Determine inbound shipping method and delivery frequency.
6. Add the process steps (i.e., machine, assemble) in sequence, left to right.
7. Add communication methods, add their frequency, and show the direction with arrows.
8. Add inventory quantities (shown with I) between every step of the entire flow.
9. Determine total working time (value-added time) and delay (non-value-added time).

Figure **7.6**
Value-Stream Mapping (VSM)



INSIGHT ▶ From Figure 7.6 we note that large inventories exist in incoming raw material and between processing steps, and that the value-added time is low as a proportion of the entire process.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ How might raw material inventory be reduced? [Answer: Have deliveries twice per week rather than once per week.]

RELATED PROBLEM ▶ 7.17

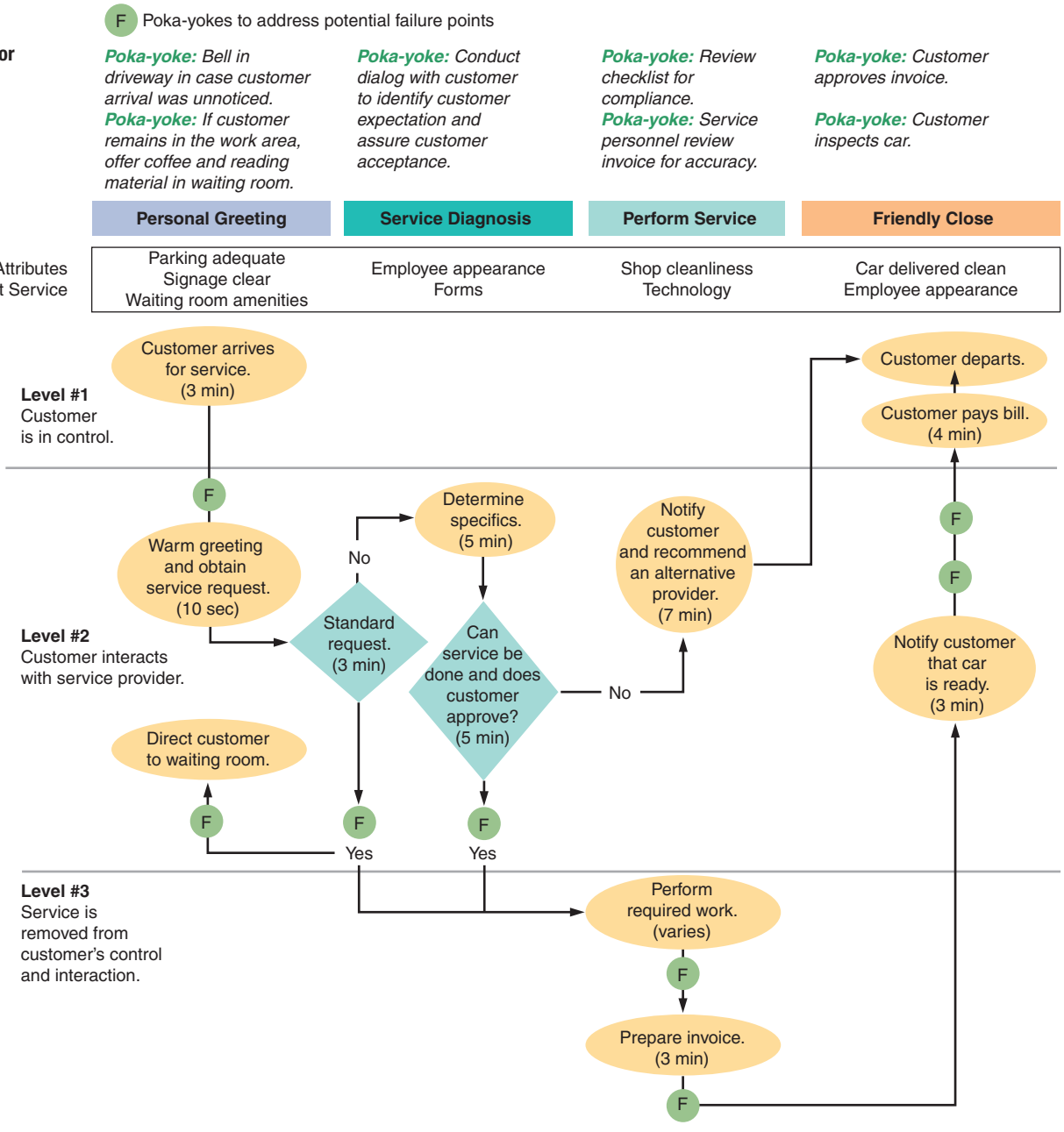
Service blueprinting
A process analysis technique that lends itself to a focus on the customer and the provider's interaction with the customer.

Service Blueprinting

Products with a high service content may warrant use of yet a fifth process technique. **Service blueprinting** is a process analysis technique that focuses on the customer and the provider's interaction with the customer. For instance, the activities at level one of Figure 7.7 are under the control of the customer. In the second level are activities of the service provider interacting with the customer. The third level includes those activities that are performed away from, and not immediately visible to, the customer. Each level suggests different management issues. For instance, the top level may suggest educating the customer or modifying expectations, whereas the second level may require a focus on personnel selection and training. Finally, the third level lends itself to more typical process innovations. The service blueprint shown in Figure 7.7 also notes potential failure points and shows how poka-yoke techniques can be added to improve quality. The consequences of these failure points can be greatly reduced if identified at the design stage when modifications or appropriate poka-yokes can be included. A time dimension is included in Figure 7.7 to aid understanding, extend insight, and provide a focus on customer service.

STUDENT TIP
Service blueprinting helps evaluate the impact of customer interaction with the process.

Figure 7.7
Service Blueprint for Service at Speedy Lube, Inc.



Each of these five process analysis tools has strengths and variations. Flowcharts provide a quick way to view the big picture and try to make sense of the entire system. Time-function mapping adds some rigor and a time element to the macro analysis. Value-stream mapping extends beyond the immediate organization to customers and suppliers. Process charts are designed to provide a much more detailed view of the process, adding items such as value-added time, delay, distance, storage, and so forth. Service blueprinting, on the other hand, is designed to help us focus on the customer interaction part of the process. Because customer interaction is often an important variable in process design, we now examine some additional aspects of service process design.

Special Considerations for Service Process Design

Interaction with the customer often affects process performance adversely. But a service, by its very nature, implies that some interaction and customization is needed. Recognizing that the customer's unique desires tend to play havoc with a process, the more the manager designs the process to accommodate these special requirements, the more effective and efficient the process will be. The trick is to find the right combination.

STUDENT TIP
Customer interaction within service processes increases the design challenge.

The four quadrants of Figure 7.8 provide additional insight on how operations managers modify service processes to find the best level of specialization and focus while maintaining the necessary customer interaction and customization. The 10 OM decisions we introduced in Chapters 1 and 2 are used with a different emphasis in each quadrant. For instance:

LO 7.4 *Describe* customer interaction in service processes

- In the upper sections (quadrants) of *mass service* and *professional service*, where *labor content is high*, we expect the manager to focus extensively on human resources. This is often done with personalized services, requiring high labor involvement and therefore significant personnel selection and training issues. This is particularly true in the professional service quadrant.
- The quadrants with *low customization* tend to (1) standardize or restrict some offerings, as do fast-food restaurants, (2) automate, as have airlines with ticket-vending machines, or (3) remove some services, such as seat assignments, as has Southwest Airlines. Offloading some aspect of the service through automation may require innovations in process design. Such is the case with airline ticket vending, self-checkout at Home Depot, and bank ATMs. This move to standardization and automation may also require changes in other areas, such as added capital expenditure and new OM skills for the purchase and maintenance of equipment. A reduction in a customization capability will require added strength in other areas.

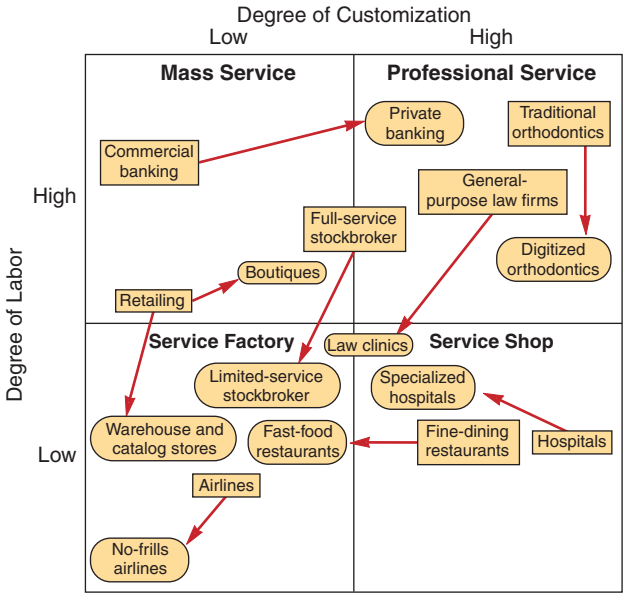


Figure 7.8
Services Moving Toward Specialization and Focus Within the Service Process Matrix
See related discussions in: Gary J. Salegna and Farzanch Fazel, "An Integrative Approach for Classifying Services," *Journal of Global Business Management* (vol. 9, no. 1), 2013; and Roger Schmenner, "Services Moving toward Specialization and Focus with the Service Matrix," *MIT Sloan Management Review*, 1986.

STUDENT TIP
Notice how services find a competitive opportunity by moving from the rectangles to the ovals.

TABLE 7.3 Techniques for Improving Service Productivity

STRATEGY	TECHNIQUE	EXAMPLE
Separation	*Structuring service* so customers must go where the service is offered	Bank customers go to a manager to open a new account, to loan officers for loans, and to tellers for deposits
Self-service	*Self-service* so customers examine, compare, and check out at their own pace	Supermarkets and department stores Internet ordering
Postponement	*Customizing at delivery*	Customizing vans at delivery rather than at production
Focus	*Restricting* the offerings	Limited-menu restaurant
Modules	*Modular* selection of service *Modular* production	Investment and insurance selection Prepackaged food modules in restaurants
Automation	*Separating services* that may lend themselves to some type of automation	Automatic teller machines
Scheduling	Precise personnel *scheduling*	Scheduling airline ticket counter personnel at 15-minute intervals
Training	*Clarifying the service* options *Explaining how to avoid problems*	Investment counselor, funeral directors After-sale maintenance personnel

- Because customer feedback is lower in the quadrants with *low customization*, tight control may be required to maintain quality standards.
- Operations with *low labor intensity* may lend themselves particularly well to innovations in process technology and scheduling.

Table 7.3 shows some additional techniques for innovative process design in services. Managers focus on designing innovative processes that enhance the service. For instance, supermarket *self-service* reduces cost while it allows customers to check for the specific features they want, such as freshness or color. Dell Computer provides another version of self-service by allowing customers to design their own product on the Web. Customers seem to like this, and it is cheaper and faster for Dell.

Production Technology

STUDENT TIP Here are nine technologies that can improve employee safety, product quality, and productivity.

Advances in technology that enhance production and productivity are changing how things are designed, made, and serviced around the world. In this section, we introduce nine areas of technology: (1) machine technology, (2) automatic identification systems (AIS), (3) process control, (4) vision systems, (5) robots, (6) automated storage and retrieval systems (ASRSs), (7) automated guided vehicles (AGVs), (8) flexible manufacturing systems (FMSs), and (9) computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM). Consider the impact on operations managers as we digitally link these technologies within the firm. Then consider the implications when they are combined and linked globally in a seamless chain that can immediately respond to changing consumer demands, supplier dynamics, and producer innovations. The implications for the world economy and OM are huge.

LO 7.5 *Identify* recent advances in production technology

Machine Technology

Much of the world's machinery performs operations by *removing material,* performing operations such as cutting, drilling, boring, and milling. This technology is undergoing tremendous progress in both precision and control. Machinery now turns out metal components that vary less than a micron—1/76 the width of a human hair. They can accelerate water to three times the speed of sound to cut titanium for surgical tools. Such machinery is often five times more productive than that of previous generations while being smaller and using less power. And continuing advances in lubricants now allow the use of water-based lubricants rather than oil-based. Water-based lubricants enhance sustainability by eliminating hazardous waste and allowing shavings to be easily recovered and recycled.

Computer intelligence often controls this new machinery, allowing more complex and precise items to be made faster. Such machinery, with its own computer and memory, is referred to as having **computer numerical controls (CNC)**. Electronic controls increase speed by cutting changeover time, reducing waste (because of fewer mistakes), and enhancing flexibility.

Computer numerical control (CNC)
Machinery with its own computer and memory.

Advanced versions of such technology are used on Pratt & Whitney's turbine blade plant in Connecticut. The machinery has improved the loading and alignment task so much that Pratt has cut the total time for the grinding process of a turbine blade from 10 days to 2 hours. The new machinery has also contributed to process improvements that mean the blades now travel just 1,800 feet in the plant, down from 8,100 feet, cutting throughput time from 22 days to 7 days.

New advances in machinery suggest that rather than *removing* material as has traditionally been done, *adding* material may in many cases be more efficient. **Additive manufacturing** or, as it is commonly called, 3D printing, is frequently used for design testing, prototypes, and custom products. The technology continues to advance and now supports innovative product design (variety and complexity), minimal custom tooling (little tooling is needed), minimal assembly (integrated assemblies can be "printed"), low inventory (make-to-order systems), and reduced time to market. As a result, additive manufacturing is being increasingly used to enhance production efficiency for high-volume products. In addition, production processes using numerous materials including plastics, ceramics, and even a paste of living cells are being developed. The convergence of software advances, computer technology, worldwide communication, and 3D printing seems to be putting us on the cusp of true mass customization. We can expect personalized mass markets via additive manufacturing to bring enormous changes to operations.

Additive manufacturing
The production of physical items by adding layer upon layer, much in the same way an inkjet printer lays down ink.

With RFID, a cashier could scan the entire contents of a shopping cart in seconds.

Automatic Identification Systems (AISs) and RFID

New equipment, from numerically controlled manufacturing machinery to ATMs, is controlled by digital electronic signals. Electrons are a great vehicle for transmitting information, but they have a major limitation—most OM data does not start out in bits and bytes. Therefore, operations managers must get the data into an electronic form. Making data digital is done via computer keyboards, bar codes, radio frequencies, optical characters, and so forth. These **automatic identification systems (AISs)** help us move data into electronic form, where it is easily manipulated.

Automatic identification system (AIS)
A system for transforming data into electronic form, for example, bar codes.

Because of its decreasing cost and increasing pervasiveness, **radio frequency identification (RFID)** warrants special note. RFID is integrated circuitry with its own tiny antennas that use radio waves to send signals a limited range—usually a matter of yards. These RFID tags provide unique identification that enables the tracking and monitoring of parts, pallets, people, and pets—virtually everything that moves. RFID requires no line of sight between tag and reader.

Radio frequency identification (RFID)
A wireless system in which integrated circuits with antennas send radio waves.

Process Control

Process control is the use of information technology to monitor and control a physical process. For instance, process control is used to measure the moisture content and thickness of paper as it travels over a paper machine at thousands of feet per minute. Process control is also used to determine and control temperatures, pressures, and quantities in petroleum refineries, petrochemical processes, cement plants, steel mills, nuclear reactors, and other product-focused facilities.

Process control
The use of information technology to control a physical process.

Pharmaceutical companies are counting on RFID to aid the tracking and tracing of drugs in the distribution system to reduce losses that total over $30 billion a year.

Kruell/laif/Redux Pictures

The Safe Place® Infant Security Solution from RF Technologies® monitors infants with small, lightweight transmitters and soft, comfortable banding. When a protected infant approaches a monitored exit, the transmitter triggers the exit's lock and notifies staff to ensure a fast response.

2/Ocean/Corbis

Sophisticated process control is required to monitor complex processes that vary—from beer at Anheuser-Busch, to steel at Nucor, to nuclear reactors at Dominion Resources (shown here).

Process control systems operate in a number of ways, but the following are typical:

- Sensors collect data, which is read on some periodic basis, perhaps once a minute or second.
- Measurements are translated into digital signals, which are transmitted to a computer.
- Computer programs read the file and analyze the data.
- The resulting output may take numerous forms. These include messages on computer consoles or printers, signals to motors to change valve settings, warning lights or horns, or statistical process control charts.

Vision Systems

Vision systems

Systems that use video cameras and computer technology in inspection roles.

Vision systems combine video cameras and computer technology and are often used in inspection roles. Visual inspection is an important task in most food-processing and manufacturing organizations. Moreover, in many applications, visual inspection performed by humans is tedious, mind-numbing, and error prone. Thus vision systems are widely used when the items being inspected are very similar. For instance, vision systems are used to inspect Frito-Lay's potato chips so that imperfections can be identified as the chips proceed down the production line. The systems are also used to ensure that sealant is present and in the proper amount on Whirlpool's washing-machine transmissions. Vision systems are consistently accurate, do not become bored, and are of modest cost. These systems are vastly superior to individuals trying to perform these tasks.

Robots

Robot

A flexible machine with the ability to hold, move, or grab items. It functions through electronic impulses that activate motors and switches.

When a machine is flexible and has the ability to hold, move, and perhaps "grab" items, we tend to use the word *robot*. **Robots** are mechanical devices that use electronic impulses to activate motors and switches. Robots may be used effectively to perform tasks that are especially monotonous or dangerous or those that can be improved by the substitution of mechanical for human effort. Such is the case when consistency, accuracy, speed, strength, or power can be enhanced by the substitution of machines for people. The automobile industry, for example, uses robots to do virtually all the welding and painting on automobiles. And a new, more sophisticated, generation of robots are fitted with sensors and cameras that provide enough dexterity to assemble, test, and pack small parts.

Automated Storage and Retrieval Systems (ASRSs)

Automated storage and retrieval system (ASRS)

Computer-controlled warehouses that provide for the automatic placement of parts into and from designated places in a warehouse.

Because of the tremendous labor involved in error-prone warehousing, computer-controlled warehouses have been developed. These systems, known as **automated storage and retrieval systems (ASRSs)**, provide for the automatic placement and withdrawal of parts and products into and from designated places in a warehouse. Such systems are commonly used in distribution facilities of retailers such as Walmart, Tupperware, and Benetton. These systems are also found in inventory and test areas of manufacturing firms.

Automated Guided Vehicles (AGVs)

Automated guided vehicle (AGV)

Electronically guided and controlled cart used to move materials.

Automated material handling can take the form of monorails, conveyors, robots, or automated guided vehicles. **Automated guided vehicles (AGVs)** are electronically guided and controlled carts used in manufacturing and warehousing to move parts and equipment. They are also used in agriculture to distribute feed, in offices to move mail, and in hospitals and jails to deliver supplies and meals.

Flexible Manufacturing Systems (FMSs)

When a central computer provides instructions to each workstation *and* to the material-handling equipment such as robots, ASRSs, and AGVs (as just noted), the system is known as an automated work cell or, more commonly, a **flexible manufacturing system (FMS)**. An FMS is flexible because both the material-handling devices and the machines themselves are controlled by easily changed electronic signals (computer programs). Operators simply load new programs, as necessary, to produce different products. The result is a system that can economically produce low volume but high variety. For example, the Lockheed Martin facility, near Dallas, efficiently builds one-of-a-kind spare parts for military aircraft. The costs associated with changeover and low utilization have been reduced substantially. FMSs bridge the gap between product-focused and process-focused facilities.

Flexible manufacturing system (FMS)
A system that uses electronic signals from a centralized computer to automate production and material flow.

Computer-Integrated Manufacturing (CIM)

Flexible manufacturing systems can be extended backward electronically into the engineering and inventory control departments and forward to the warehousing and shipping departments. In this way, computer-aided design (CAD) generates the necessary electronic instructions to run a numerically controlled machine. In a computer-integrated manufacturing environment, a design change initiated at a CAD terminal can result in that change being made in the part produced on the shop floor in a matter of minutes. When this capability is integrated with inventory control, warehousing, and shipping as a part of a flexible manufacturing system, the entire system is called **computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM)**; (Figure 7.9).

Computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM)
A manufacturing system in which CAD, FMS, inventory control, warehousing, and shipping are integrated.

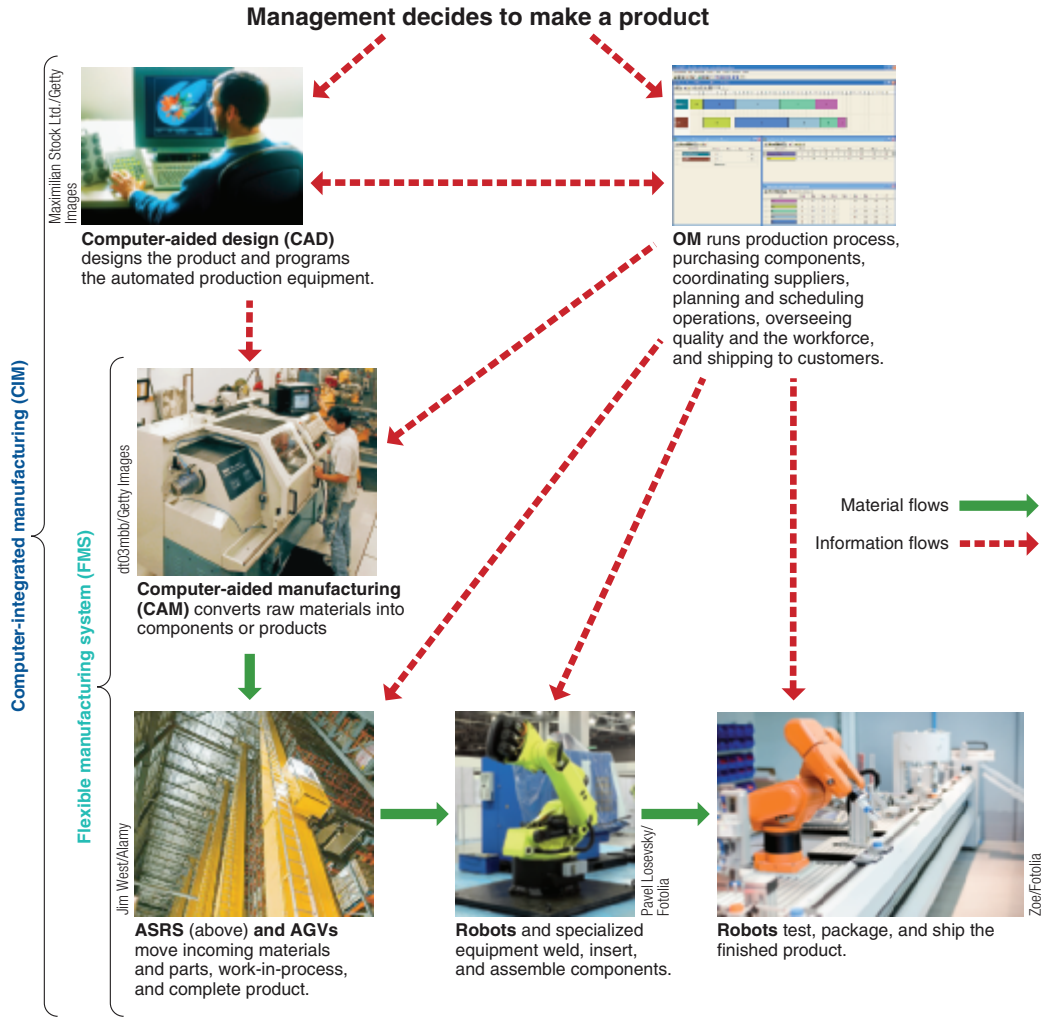


Figure **7.9**

Computer-Integrated Manufacturing (CIM)

CIM includes computer-aided design (CAD), computer-aided manufacturing (CAM), flexible manufacturing systems (FMSs), automated storage and retrieval systems (ASRSs), automated guided vehicles (AGVs), and robots to provide an integrated and flexible manufacturing process.

OM in Action Technology Changes the Hotel Industry

Omena Hotels (www.omenahotels.com) is using technology to change the hotel industry. Omena Hotels is a quality, low-cost hotel chain with 14 properties in Finland, Sweden, and Denmark. The smart use of technology not only makes it easier for a guest to book a room and check-in; it also allows the hotel to keep low and competitive rates. The reason for this is the absence of in-hotel services. An Omena hotel has no reception desk or restaurant. In fact, it is quite possible that during your entire stay at the hotel, you will only ever see other guests and no employees.

The company offers clean, comfortable accommodations with high standards but at a low price. Booking your room is completed online in one of six languages. Check-in and check-out are self-service.

Once you book and pay using the Internet, Omena sends a receipt and key code to you by e-mail and SMS. With the key code, you are able to gain OM in Action entrance to the hotel and your room. You will not see or interact with any staff members during this process.

The lobby of each Omena hotel is equipped with a self-service Help Desk that provides answers to questions that may arise during the stay. A customer service phone and contact information are also provided. Your key code is active during the duration of your stay, from 4 p.m. for check-in to 12 p.m. for check-out. Before and after this time, you are unable to gain access to the hotel property.

No reservation? No problem. Every Omena hotel has a scrolling sign outside the hotel that announces in various languages whether the hotel has vacancies. If rooms are available, customers can enter the lobby until 11 p.m. by using the credit card scanner at the front door. Using the lobby's self-service Help Desk, customers can then book a room and get a key code.

Source: www.omenahotels.com.

Flexible manufacturing systems and computer-integrated manufacturing are reducing the distinction between low-volume/high-variety and high-volume/low-variety production. Information technology is allowing FMS and CIM to handle increasing variety while expanding to include a growing range of volumes.

Technology in Services

Just as we have seen rapid advances in technology in the manufacturing sector, so we also find dramatic changes in the service sector. These range from electronic diagnostic equipment at auto repair shops, to blood- and urine-testing equipment in hospitals, to retinal security scanners at airports. The hospitality industry provides other examples, as discussed in the *OM in Action* box "Technology Changes the Hotel Industry." The McDonald's approach is to use self-serve kiosks. The labor savings when ordering and speedier checkout service provide valuable productivity increases for both the restaurant and the customer.

In retail stores, POS terminals download prices quickly to reflect changing costs or market conditions, and sales are tracked in 15-minute segments to aid scheduling. Drug companies, such as Purdue Pharma LP, track critical medications with radio frequency identification (RFID) tags to reduce counterfeiting and theft.

Table 7.4 provides a glimpse of the impact of technology on services. Operations managers in services, as in manufacturing, must be able to evaluate the impact of technology on their firm. This ability requires particular skill when evaluating reliability, investment analysis, human resource requirements, and maintenance/service.

Process Redesign

Process redesign
The fundamental rethinking of business processes to bring about dramatic improvements in performance.

Often a firm finds that the initial assumptions of its process are no longer valid. The world is a dynamic place, and customer desires, product technology, and product mix change. Consequently, processes are redesigned. **Process redesign** (sometimes called process reengineering) is the fundamental rethinking of business processes to bring about dramatic improvements in performance. Effective process redesign relies on reevaluating the purpose of the process and questioning both purpose and underlying assumptions. It works only if the basic process and its objectives are reexamined.

Process redesign also focuses on those activities that cross functional lines. Because managers are often in charge of specific "functions" or specialized areas of responsibility, those

TABLE 7.4 Examples of Technology's Impact on Services

SERVICE INDUSTRY	EXAMPLE
Financial Services	Debit cards, electronic funds transfer, automatic teller machines, Internet stock trading, online banking via cell phone
Education	Online newspapers and journals, interactive assignments via WebCT, Blackboard, and smartphones
Utilities and government	Automated one-person garbage trucks, optical mail scanners, flood-warning systems, meters that allow homeowners to control energy usage and costs
Restaurants and foods	Wireless orders from waiters to the kitchen, robot butchering, transponders on cars that track sales at drive-throughs
Communications	Interactive TV, e-books via Kindle
Hotels	Electronic check-in/check-out, electronic key/lock systems, mobile Web bookings
Wholesale/retail trade	Point-of-sale (POS) terminals, e-commerce, electronic communication between store and supplier, bar-coded data, RFID
Transportation	Automatic toll booths, satellite-directed navigation systems, Wi-Fi in automobiles
Health care	Online patient-monitoring systems, online medical information systems, robotic surgery
Airlines	Ticketless travel, scheduling, Internet purchases, boarding passes downloaded as two-dimensional bar codes on smartphones

activities (processes) that cross from one function or specialty to another may be neglected. Redesign casts aside all notions of how the process is currently being done and focuses on dramatic improvements in cost, time, and customer value. Any process is a candidate for radical redesign. The process can be a factory layout, a purchasing procedure, a new way of processing credit applications, or a new order-fulfillment process.

Shell Lubricants, for example, reinvented its order-fulfillment process by replacing a group of people who handled different parts of an order with one individual who does it all. As a result, Shell has cut the cycle time of turning an order into cash by 75%, reduced operating expenses by 45%, and boosted customer satisfaction 105%—all by introducing a new way of handling orders. Time, cost, and customer satisfaction—the dimension of performance shaped by operations—get major boosts from operational innovation.

Summary

Effective operations managers understand how to use process strategy as a competitive weapon. They select a production process with the necessary quality, flexibility, and cost structure to meet product and volume requirements. They also seek creative ways to combine the low unit cost of high-volume, low-variety manufacturing with the customization available through low-volume, high-variety facilities. Managers use the techniques of lean production and employee participation to encourage the development of efficient equipment and processes. They design their equipment and processes to have capabilities beyond the tolerance required by their customers, while ensuring the flexibility needed for adjustments in technology, features, and volumes.

Key Terms

Process strategy (p. 320)
Process focus (p. 320)
Modules (p. 321)
Repetitive process (p. 321)
Product focus (p. 322)
Mass customization (p. 322)
Build-to-order (BTO) (p. 323)
Postponement (p. 323)
Crossover chart (p. 324)
Flexibility (p. 326)
Flowchart (p. 327)
Time-function mapping (or process mapping) (p. 327)
Process charts (p. 327)
Value-stream mapping (VSM) (p. 328)
Service blueprinting (p. 330)
Computer numerical control (CNC) (p. 333)
Additive manufacturing (3D Printing) (p. 333)
Automatic identification system (AIS) (p. 333)
Radio frequency identification (RFID) (p. 333)
Process control (p. 333)
Vision systems (p. 334)
Robot (p. 334)
Automated storage and retrieval system (ASRS) (p. 296)
Automated guided vehicle (AGV) (p. 334)
Flexible manufacturing system (FMS) (p. 335)
Computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM) (p. 335)
Process redesign (p. 336)

Ethical Dilemma

For the sake of efficiency and lower costs, Premium Standard Farms of Princeton, Missouri, has turned pig production into a standardized product-focused process. Slaughterhouses have done this for a hundred years—but after the animal was dead. Doing it while the animal is alive is a relatively recent innovation. Here is how it works.

Impregnated female sows wait for 40 days in metal stalls so small that they cannot turn around. After an ultrasound test, they wait 67 days in a similar stall until they give birth. Two weeks after delivering 10 or 11 piglets, the sows are moved back to breeding rooms for another cycle. After 3 years, the sow is slaughtered. Animal-welfare advocates say such confinement drives pigs crazy. Premium Standard replies that its hogs are in fact comfortable, arguing that only 1% die before Premium Standard wants them to and that their system helps reduce the cost of pork products.

Discuss the productivity and ethical implications of this industry and these two divergent opinions.

Glenda/Shutterstock

Discussion Questions

1. What is process strategy?
2. What type of process is used for making each of the following products?
   - **(a)** beer
   - **(b)** wedding invitations
   - **(c)** automobiles
   - **(d)** paper
   - **(e)** Big Macs
   - **(f)** custom homes
   - **(g)** motorcycles
3. What is service blueprinting?
4. What is process redesign?
5. What are the techniques for improving service productivity?
6. Name the four quadrants of the service process matrix. Discuss how the matrix is used to classify services into categories.
7. What is CIM?
8. What do we mean by a process-control system, and what are the typical elements in such systems?
9. Identify *manufacturing* firms that compete on each of the four processes shown in Figure 7.1.
10. Identify the competitive advantage of each of the four firms identified in Discussion Question 9.
11. Identify *service* firms that compete on each of the four processes shown in Figure 7.1.
12. Identify the competitive advantage of each of the four firms identified in Discussion Question 11.
13. What are numerically controlled machines?
14. Describe briefly what an automatic identification system (AIS) is and how service organizations could use AIS to increase productivity and at the same time increase the variety of services offered.
15. Name some of the advances being made in technology that enhance production and productivity.
16. Explain what a flexible manufacturing system (FMS) is.
17. In what ways do CAD and FMS connect?
18. What is additive manufacturing?
19. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of 3D printing.

Solved Problem

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM 7.1

Bagot Copy Shop has a volume of 125,000 black-and-white copies per month. Two salespeople have made presentations to Gordon Bagot for machines of equal quality and reliability. The *Print Shop 5* has a cost of $2,000 per month and a variable cost of $.03. The other machine (a *Speed Copy 100*) will cost only $1,500 per month, but the toner is more expensive, driving the cost per copy up to $.035. If cost and volume are the only considerations, which machine should Bagot purchase?

SOLUTION

$$\begin{aligned} 2{,}000 + .03X &= 1{,}500 + .035X \\ 2{,}000 - 1{,}500 &= .035X - .03X \\ 500 &= .005X \\ 100{,}000 &= X \end{aligned}$$

Because Bagot expects his volume to exceed 100,000 units, he should choose the *Print Shop 5*.

Problems

Note: PX means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel OM.

Problems 7.1–7.12 relate to Four Process Strategies

• **7.1** Borges Machine Shop, Inc., has a 1-year contract for the production of 200,000 gear housings for a new off-road vehicle. Owner Luis Borges hopes the contract will be extended and the volume increased next year. Borges has developed costs for three alternatives. They are general-purpose equipment (GPE), flexible manufacturing system (FMS), and expensive, but efficient, dedicated machine (DM). The cost data follow:

	GENERAL-PURPOSE EQUIPMENT (GPE)	FLEXIBLE MANUFACTURING SYSTEM (FMS)	DEDICATED MACHINE (DM)
Annual contracted units	200,000	200,000	200,000
Annual fixed cost	$100,000	$200,000	$500,000
Per unit variable cost	$ 15.00	$ 14.00	$ 13.00

Which process is best for this contract? PX

• **7.2** Using the data in Problem 7.1, determine the most economical volume for each process. PX

• **7.3** Using the data in Problem 7.1, determine the best process for each of the following volumes: (1) 75,000, (2) 275,000, and (3) 375,000.

• **7.4** Refer to Problem 7.1. If a contract for the second and third years is pending, what are the implications for process selection?

•• **7.5** Stan Fawcett's company is considering producing a gear assembly that it now purchases from Salt Lake Supply, Inc. Salt Lake Supply charges $4 per unit, with a minimum order of 3,000 units. Stan estimates that it will cost $15,000 to set up the process and then $1.82 per unit for labor and materials.
a) Draw a graph illustrating the crossover (or indifference) point.
b) Determine the number of units where either choice has the same cost. PX

•• **7.6** Ski Boards, Inc., wants to enter the market quickly with a new finish on its ski boards. It has three choices: (a) Refurbish the old equipment at a cost of $800, (b) make major modifications at a cost of $1,100, or (c) purchase new equipment at a net cost of $1,800. If the firm chooses to refurbish the equipment, materials and labor will be $1.10 per board. If it chooses to make modifications, materials and labor will be $0.70 per board. If it buys new equipment, variable costs are estimated to be $0.40 per board.
a) Graph the three total cost lines on the same chart.
b) Which alternative should Ski Boards, Inc., choose if it thinks it can sell more than 3,000 boards?
c) Which alternative should the firm use if it thinks the market for boards will be between 1,000 and 2,000? PX

Eric Limon/ Shutterstock

•• **7.7** Tim Urban, owner/manager of Urban's Motor Court in Key West, is considering outsourcing the daily room cleanup for his motel to Duffy's Maid Service. Tim rents an average of 50 rooms for each of 365 nights (365 × 50 equals the total rooms rented for the year). Tim's cost to clean a room is $12.50. The Duffy's Maid Service quote is $18.50 per room plus a fixed cost of $25,000 for sundry items such as uniforms with the motel's name. Tim's annual fixed cost for space, equipment, and supplies is $61,000. Which is the preferred process for Tim, and why? PX

•• **7.8** Matthew Bailey, as manager of Designs by Bailey, is upgrading his CAD software. The high-performance (HP) software rents for $3,000 per month per workstation. The standard-performance (SP) software rents for $2,000 per month per workstation. The productivity figures that he has available suggest that the HP software is faster for his kind of design. Therefore, with the HP software he will need five engineers and with the SP software he will need six. This translates into a variable cost of $200 per drawing for the HP system and $240 per drawing for the SP system. At his projected volume of 80 drawings per month, which system should he rent? PX

••• **7.9** Metters Cabinets, Inc., needs to choose a production method for its new office shelf, the Maxistand. To help accomplish this, the firm has gathered the following production cost data:

PROCESS TYPE	ANNUALIZED FIXED COST OF PLANT & EQUIP.	VARIABLE COSTS (PER UNIT) ($)		
		LABOR	MATERIAL	ENERGY
Mass Customization	$1,260,000	30	18	12
Intermittent	$1,000,000	24	26	20
Repetitive	$1,625,000	28	15	12
Continuous	$1,960,000	25	15	10

Metters Cabinets projects an annual demand of 24,000 units for the Maxistand. The Maxistand will sell for $120 per unit.
a) Which process type will maximize the annual profit from producing the Maxistand?
b) What is the value of this annual profit? PX

•• **7.10** California Gardens, Inc., prewashes, shreds, and distributes a variety of salad mixes in 2-pound bags. Doug Voss, Operations VP, is considering a new Hi-Speed shredder to replace the old machine, referred to in the shop as "Clunker." Hi-Speed will have a fixed cost of $85,000 per month and a variable cost of $1.25 per bag. Clunker has a fixed cost of only $44,000 per month, but a variable cost of $1.75. Selling price is $2.50 per bag.
a) What is the crossover point in units (point of indifference) for the processes?

b) What is the monthly profit or loss if the company changes to the Hi-Speed shredder and sells 60,000 bags per month?
c) What is the monthly profit or loss if the company stays with Clunker and sells 60,000 bags per month?

•• **7.11** Nagle Electric, Inc., of Lincoln, Nebraska, must replace a robotic Mig welder and is evaluating two alternatives. Machine A has a fixed cost for the first year of $75,000 and a variable cost of $16, with a capacity of 18,000 units per year. Machine B is slower, with a speed of one-half of A's, but the fixed cost is only $60,000. The variable cost will be higher, at $20 per unit. Each unit is expected to sell for $28.
a) What is the crossover point (point of indifference) in units for the two machines?
b) What is the range of units for which machine A is preferable?
c) What is the range of units for which machine B is preferable?

•• **7.12** Stapleton Manufacturing intends to increase capacity through the addition of new equipment. Two vendors have presented proposals. The fixed cost for proposal A is $65,000, and for proposal B, $34,000. The variable cost for A is $10, and for B, $14. The revenue generated by each unit is $18.
a) What is the crossover point in units for the two options?
b) At an expected volume of 8,300 units, which alternative should be chosen?

Problems 7.13–7.17 relate to Process Analysis and Design

• **7.13** Prepare a flowchart for one of the following:
a) the registration process at a school
b) the process at the local car wash
c) a shoe shine
d) some other process with the approval of the instructor

• **7.14** Prepare a process chart for one of the activities in Problem 7.13.

•• **7.15** Prepare a time-function map for one of the activities in Problem 7.13.

•• **7.16** Prepare a service blueprint for one of the activities in Problem 7.13.

•• **7.17** Using Figure 7.6 in the discussion of value-stream mapping as a starting point, analyze an opportunity for improvement in a process with which you are familiar and develop an improved process.

CASE STUDIES

Rochester Manufacturing's Process Decision

Rochester Manufacturing Corporation (RMC) is considering moving some of its production from traditional numerically controlled machines to a flexible manufacturing system (FMS). Its computer numerical control machines have been operating in a high-variety, low-volume manner. Machine utilization, as near as it can determine, is hovering around 10%. The machine tool salespeople and a consulting firm want to put the machines together in an FMS. They believe that a $3 million expenditure on machinery and the transfer machines will handle about 30% of RMC's work. There will, of course, be transition and startup costs in addition to this.

The firm has not yet entered all its parts into a comprehensive group technology system, but believes that the 30% is a good estimate of products suitable for the FMS. This 30% should fit very nicely into a "family." A reduction, because of higher utilization, should take place in the number of pieces of machinery. The firm should be able to go from 15 to about 4 machines, and personnel should go from 15 to perhaps as low as 3. Similarly, floor space reduction will go from 20,000 square feet to about 6,000. Throughput of orders should also improve with processing of this family of parts in 1 to 2 days rather than 7 to 10. Inventory reduction is estimated to yield a one-time $750,000 savings, and annual labor savings should be in the neighborhood of $300,000.

Although the projections all look very positive, an analysis of the project's return on investment showed it to be between 10% and 15% per year. The company has traditionally had an expectation that projects should yield well over 15% and have payback periods of substantially less than 5 years.

Discussion Questions

1. As a production manager for RMC, what do you recommend? Why?
2. Prepare a case by a conservative plant manager for maintaining the status quo until the returns are more obvious.
3. Prepare the case for an optimistic sales manager that you should move ahead with the FMS now.

Process Strategy at Wheeled Coach

Video Case

Wheeled Coach, based in Winter Park, Florida, is the world's largest manufacturer of ambulances. Working four 10-hour days each week, 350 employees make only custom-made ambulances; virtually every vehicle is unique. Wheeled Coach accommodates the marketplace by providing a wide variety of options and an engineering staff accustomed to innovation and custom design. Continuing growth, which now requires that more than 20 ambulances roll off the assembly line each week, makes process design a continuing challenge. Wheeled Coach's response has been to build a focused factory: Wheeled Coach builds nothing but ambulances. Within the focused factory, Wheeled Coach established work cells for every major module feeding an assembly line, including aluminum bodies, electrical wiring harnesses, interior cabinets, windows, painting, and upholstery.

Labor standards drive the schedule so that every work cell feeds the assembly line on schedule, just-in-time for installations. The chassis, usually that of a Ford truck, moves to a station at which the aluminum body is mounted. Then the vehicle is moved to painting. Following a custom paint job, it moves to the assembly line, where it will spend 7 days. During each of these 7 workdays,

each work cell delivers its respective module to the appropriate position on the assembly line. During the first day, electrical wiring is installed; on the second day, the unit moves forward to the station at which cabinetry is delivered and installed, then to a window and lighting station, on to upholstery, to fit and finish, to further customizing, and finally to inspection and road testing. The *Global Company Profile* featuring Wheeled Coach, which opens Chapter 14, provides further details about this process.

Discussion Questions*

1. Why do you think major auto manufacturers do not build ambulances?
2. What is an alternative process strategy to the assembly line that Wheeled Coach currently uses?
3. Why is it more efficient for the work cells to prepare "modules" and deliver them to the assembly line than it would be to produce the component (e.g., interior upholstery) on the line?
4. How does Wheeled Coach manage the tasks to be performed at each work station?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before addressing these questions.

Alaska Airlines: 20-Minute Baggage Process—Guaranteed! Video Case

Alaska Airlines is unique among the nine major U.S. carriers not only for its extensive flight coverage of remote towns throughout Alaska (it also covers the U.S., Hawaii, and Mexico from its primary hub in Seattle). It is also one of the smallest independent airlines, with 10,300 employees, including 3,000 flight attendants and 1,500 pilots. What makes it really unique, though, is its ability to build state-of-the-art processes, using the latest technology, that yield high customer satisfaction. Indeed, J. D. Power and Associates has ranked Alaska Airlines highest in North America for seven years in a row for customer satisfaction.

Alaska Airlines was the first to sell tickets via the Internet, first to offer Web check-in and print boarding passes online, and first with kiosk check-in. As Wayne Newton, Director of System Operation Control, states, "We are passionate about our processes. If it's not measured, it's not managed."

One of the processes Alaska is most proud of is its baggage handling system. Passengers can check in at kiosks, tag their own bags with bar code stickers, and deliver them to a customer service agent at the carousel, which carries the bags through the vast underground system that eventually delivers the bags to a baggage handler. En route, each bag passes through TSA automated screening and is manually opened or inspected if it appears suspicious. With the help of bar code readers, conveyer belts automatically sort and transfer bags to their location (called a "pier") at the tarmac level. A baggage handler then loads the bags onto a cart and takes it to the plane for loading by the ramp team waiting inside the cargo hold. There are different procedures for "hot bags" (bags that have less than 30 minutes between transfer) and for "cold bags" (bags with over 60 minutes between plane transfers). Hot bags are delivered directly from one plane to another (called "tail-to-tail"). Cold bags are sent back into the normal conveyer system.

The process continues on the destination side with Alaska's unique guarantee that customer luggage will be delivered to the terminal's carousel within 20 minutes of the plane's arrival at the gate. If not, Alaska grants each passenger a 2,000 frequent-flier mile bonus!

The airline's use of technology includes bar code scanners to check in the bag when a passenger arrives, and again before it is placed on the cart to the plane. Similarly, on arrival, the time the passenger door opens is electronically noted and bags are again scanned as they are placed on the baggage carousel at the destination—tracking this metric means that the "time to carousel" (TTC) deadline is seldom missed. And the process almost guarantees that the lost bag rate approaches zero. On a recent day, only one out of 100 flights missed the TTC mark. The baggage

Alaska Airlines

process relies not just on technology, though. There are detailed, documented procedures to ensure that bags hit the 20-minute timeframe. Within one minute of the plane door opening at the gate, baggage handlers must begin the unloading. The first bag must be out of the plane within three minutes of parking the plane. This means the ground crew must be in the proper location—with their trucks and ramps in place and ready to go.

Largely because of technology, flying on Alaska Airlines is remarkably reliable—even in the dead of an Alaska winter with only two hours of daylight, 50 mph winds, slippery runways, and low visibility. Alaska Airlines has had the industry's best on-time performance, with 87% if its flights landing on time.

Discussion Questions*

1. Prepare a flowchart of the process a passenger's bag follows from kiosk to destination carousel. (See Example 2 in Chapter 6 for a sample flowchart.) Include the exception process for the TSA opening of selected bags.

2. What other processes can an airline examine? Why is each important?
3. How does the kiosk alter the check-in process?
4. What metrics (quantifiable measures) are needed to track baggage?
5. What is the role of scanners in the baggage process?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before addressing these questions.

Process Analysis at Arnold Palmer Hospital

Video Case

The Arnold Palmer Hospital (APH) in Orlando, Florida, is one of the busiest and most respected hospitals for the medical treatment of children and women in the U.S. Since its opening on golfing legend Arnold Palmer's birthday September 10, 1989, more than 1.6 million children and women have passed through its doors. It is the fourth busiest labor and delivery hospital in the U.S. and one of the largest neonatal intensive care units in the Southeast. APH ranks in the top 10% of hospitals nationwide in patient satisfaction.

"Part of the reason for APH's success," says Executive Director Kathy Swanson, "is our continuous improvement process. Our goal is 100% patient satisfaction. But getting there means constantly examining and reexamining everything we do, from patient flow, to cleanliness, to layout space, to a work-friendly environment, to speed of medication delivery from the pharmacy to a patient. Continuous improvement is a huge and never-ending task."

One of the tools the hospital uses consistently is process charts [like those in Figures 7.4 to 7.7 in this chapter and Figure 6.6(e) in Chapter 6]. Staffer Diane Bowles, who carries the title "clinical practice improvement consultant," charts scores of processes. Bowles's flowcharts help study ways to improve the turnaround of a vacated room (especially important in a hospital that has pushed capacity for years), speed up the admission process, and deliver warm meals warm.

Lately, APH has been examining the flow of maternity patients (and their paperwork) from the moment they enter the hospital until they are discharged, hopefully with their healthy baby, a day or two later. The flow of maternity patients follows these steps:

1. Enter APH's Labor & Delivery (L&D) check-in desk entrance.
2. If the baby is born en route or if birth is imminent, the mother and baby are taken directly to Labor & Delivery on the second floor and registered and admitted directly at the bedside. If there are no complications, the mother and baby go to Step 6.
3. If the baby is *not* yet born, the front desk asks if the mother is pre-registered. (Most do preregister at the 28- to 30-week pregnancy mark.) If she is not, she goes to the registration office on the first floor.
4. The pregnant woman is then taken to L&D Triage on the 8th floor for assessment. If she is in active labor, she is taken to an L&D room on the 2nd floor until the baby is born. If she is not ready, she goes to Step 5.
5. Pregnant women not ready to deliver (i.e., no contractions or false alarms) are either sent home to return on a later date and reenter the system at that time, or if contractions are not yet close enough, they are sent to walk around the hospital grounds (to encourage progress) and then return to L&D Triage at a prescribed time.
6. When the baby is born, if there are no complications, after 2 hours the mother and baby are transferred to a "mother–baby care unit" room on floors 3, 4, or 5 for an average of 40–44 hours.
7. If there *are* complications with the mother, she goes to an operating room and/or intensive care unit. From there, she goes back to a mother–baby care room upon stabilization—or is discharged at another time if not stabilized. Complications for the baby may result in a stay in the neonatal intensive care unit (NICU) before transfer to the baby nursery near the mother's room. If the baby is not stable enough for discharge with the mother, the baby is discharged later.
8. Mother and/or baby, when ready, are discharged and taken by wheelchair to the discharge exit for pickup to travel home.

Discussion Questions*

1. As Diane's new assistant, you need to flowchart this process. Explain how the process might be improved once you have completed the chart.
2. If a mother is scheduled for a Caesarean-section birth (i.e., the baby is removed from the womb surgically), how would this flowchart change?
3. If *all* mothers were electronically (or manually) preregistered, how would the flowchart change? Redraw the chart to show your changes.
4. Describe in detail a process that the hospital could analyze, besides the ones mentioned in this case.

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before addressing these questions.

- **Additional Case Study:** Visit MyOMLab for this free case study:
  Matthew Yachts, Inc.: Examines a possible process change as the market for yachts changes.

Endnotes

1. An additional example of a process chart is shown in Chapter 10.
2. Waste includes *inspection* (if the task is done properly, then inspection is unnecessary); *transportation* (movement of material within a process may be a necessary evil, but it adds no value); *delay* (an asset sitting idle and taking up space is waste); *storage* (unless part of a "curing" process, storage is waste).

Chapter 7 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
FOUR PROCESS STRATEGIES (pp. 320–326)	■ **Process strategy**—An organization's approach to transforming resources into goods and services. *The objective of a process strategy is to build a production process that meets customer requirements and product specifications within cost and other managerial constraints.* Virtually every good or service is made by using some variation of one of four process strategies. ■ **Process focus**—A facility organized around processes to facilitate low-volume, high-variety production. The vast majority of global production is devoted to making low-volume, high-variety products in process-focused facilities, also known as job shops or *intermittent process* facilities. Process-focused facilities have high variable costs with extremely low utilization (5% to 25%) of facilities. ■ **Modules**—Parts or components of a product previously prepared, often in a continuous process. ■ **Repetitive process**—A product-oriented production process that uses modules. The repetitive process is the classic assembly line. It allows the firm to use modules and combine the economic advantages of the product-focused model with the customization advantages of the process-focus model. ■ **Product focus**—A facility organized around products; a product-oriented, high-volume, low-variety process. Product-focused facilities are also called *continuous processes* because they have very long, continuous production runs. The specialized nature of a product-focused facility requires high fixed cost; however, low variable costs reward high facility utilization. ■ **Mass customization**—Rapid, low-cost production that caters to constantly changing unique customer desires. ■ **Build-to-order (BTO)**—Produce to customer order rather than to a forecast. Major challenges of a build-to-order system include: *Product design, Process design, Inventory management, Tight schedules*, and *Responsive partners.* ■ **Postponement**—The delay of any modifications or customization to a product as long as possible in the production process. ■ **Crossover chart**—A chart of costs at the possible volumes for more than one process.	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4 Problems: 7.1–7.12 ACTIVE MODEL 7.1 **VIDEO 7.1** Process Strategy at Wheeled Coach Ambulance Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 7.1
SELECTION OF EQUIPMENT (p. 326)	Picking the best equipment involves understanding the specific industry and available processes and technology. The choice requires considering cost, quality, capacity, and flexibility. ■ **Flexibility**—The ability to respond with little penalty in time, cost, or customer value.	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.3
PROCESS ANALYSIS AND DESIGN (pp. 326–331)	Five tools of process analysis are (1) flowcharts, (2) time-function mapping, (3) process charts, (4) value-stream mapping, and (5) service blueprinting. ■ **Flowchart**—A drawing used to analyze movement of people or materials. ■ **Time-function mapping** (or **process mapping**)—A flowchart with time added on the horizontal axis. ■ **Process charts**—Charts that use symbols to analyze the movement of people or material. Process charts allow managers to focus on value-added activities and to compute the percentage of value-added time (= operation time/total time). ■ **Value-stream mapping (VSM)**—A tool that helps managers understand how to add value in the flow of material and information through the entire production process. ■ **Service blueprinting**—A process analysis technique that lends itself to a focus on the customer and the provider's interaction with the customer.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4 Problems: 7.14–7.15 **VIDEO 7.2** Alaska Airlines 20-Minute Baggage Process–Guaranteed! **VIDEO 7.3** Process Analysis at Arnold Palmer Hospital

Chapter 7 *Rapid* Review *continued*

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR SERVICE PROCESS DESIGN (pp. 331–332)	Services can be classified into one of four quadrants, based on relative degrees of labor and customization: 1. *Service factory* 2. *Service shop* 3. *Mass service* 4. *Professional service* Techniques for improving service productivity include: ■ *Separation*—Structuring service so customers must go where the service is offered ■ *Self-service*—Customers examining, comparing, and evaluating at their own pace ■ *Postponement*—Customizing at delivery ■ *Focus*—Restricting the offerings ■ *Modules*—Modular selection of service; modular production ■ *Automation*—Separating services that may lend themselves to a type of automation ■ *Scheduling*—Precise personnel scheduling ■ *Training*—Clarifying the service options; explaining how to avoid problems	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4
PRODUCTION TECHNOLOGY (pp. 332–336)	■ **Computer numerical control (CNC)**—Machinery with its own computer and memory. ■ **Additive manufacturing**—The production of physical items by adding layer upon layer, much in the same way an ink jet printer lays down ink; often referred to as 3D printing. ■ **Automatic identification system (AIS)**—A system for transforming data into electronic form (e.g., bar codes). ■ **Radio frequency identification (RFID)**—A wireless system in which integrated circuits with antennas send radio waves. ■ **Process control**—The use of information technology to control a physical process. ■ **Vision systems**—Systems that use video cameras and computer technology in inspection roles. ■ **Robot**—A flexible machine with the ability to hold, move, or grab items. ■ **Automated storage and retrieval systems (ASRS)**—Computer-controlled warehouses that provide for the automatic placement of parts into and from designated places within a warehouse. ■ **Automated guided vehicle (AGV)**—Electronically guided and controlled cart used to move materials. ■ **Flexible manufacturing system (FMS)**—Automated work cell controlled by electronic signals from a common centralized computer facility. ■ **Computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM)**—A manufacturing system in which CAD, FMS, inventory control, warehousing, and shipping are integrated.	Concept Questions: 5.1–5. 4
TECHNOLOGY IN SERVICES (p. 336)	Many rapid technological developments have occurred in the service sector. These range from POS terminals and RFID to online newspapers and e-books.	Concept Questions: 6.1–6.2
PROCESS REDESIGN (pp. 336–337)	■ **Process redesign**—The fundamental rethinking of business processes to bring about dramatic improvements in performance. Process redesign often focuses on activities that cross functional lines.	Concept Questions: 7.1–7.2

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 7.1 Low-volume, high-variety processes are also known as:
a) continuous processes. **b)** process focused.
c) repetitive processes. **d)** product focused.

LO 7.2 A crossover chart for process selection focuses on:
a) labor costs.
b) material cost.
c) both labor and material costs.
d) fixed and variable costs.
e) fixed costs.

LO 7.3 Tools for process analysis include all of the following except:
a) flowchart.
b) vision systems.
c) service blueprinting.
d) time-function mapping.
e) value-stream mapping.

LO 7.4 Customer feedback in process design is lower as:
a) the degree of customization is increased.
b) the degree of labor is increased.
c) the degree of customization is lowered.
d) both a and b.
e) both b and c.

LO 7.5 Computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM) includes manufacturing systems that have:
a) computer-aided design, direct numerical control machines, and material-handling equipment controlled by automation.
b) transaction processing, a management information system, and decision support systems.
c) automated guided vehicles, robots, and process control.
d) robots, automated guided vehicles, and transfer equipment.

Answers: LO 7.1. b; LO 7.2. d; LO 7.3. b; LO 7.4. c; LO 7.5. a.

Capacity Planning

7 SUPPLEMENT

SUPPLEMENT OUTLINE

- Capacity *346*
- Bottleneck Analysis and the Theory of Constraints *352*
- Break-Even Analysis *356*
- Reducing Risk with Incremental Changes *360*
- Applying Expected Monetary Value (EMV) to Capacity Decisions *361*
- Applying Investment Analysis to Strategy-Driven Investments *362*

Alaska Airlines

Alaska Airlines

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO S7.1 ***Define*** capacity 346
LO S7.2 ***Determine*** design capacity, effective capacity, and utilization 348
LO S7.3 ***Perform*** bottleneck analysis 353
LO S7.4 ***Compute*** break-even 357
LO S7.5 ***Determine*** expected monetary value of a capacity decision 361
LO S7.6 ***Compute*** net present value 362

When designing a concert hall, management hopes that the forecasted capacity (the product mix—opera, symphony, and special events—and the technology needed for these events) is accurate and adequate for operation above the break-even point. However, in many concert halls, even when operating at full capacity, break-even is not achieved, and supplemental funding must be obtained.

Klaus Lang/All Canada Photos/Alamy

Capacity

LO S7.1 *Define* capacity

What should be the seating capacity of a concert hall? How many customers per day should an Olive Garden or a Hard Rock Cafe be able to serve? How large should a Frito-Lay plant be to produce 75,000 bags of Ruffles in an 8-hour shift? In this supplement we look at tools that help a manager make these decisions.

After selection of a production process (Chapter 7), managers need to determine capacity.

Capacity
The "throughput," or number of units a facility can hold, receive, store, or produce in a period of time.

Capacity is the "throughput," or the number of units a facility can hold, receive, store, or produce in a given time. Capacity decisions often determine capital requirements and therefore a large portion of fixed cost. Capacity also determines whether demand will be satisfied or whether facilities will be idle. If a facility is too large, portions of it will sit unused and add cost to existing production. If a facility is too small, customers—and perhaps entire markets—will be lost. Determining facility size, with an objective of achieving high levels of utilization and a high return on investment, is critical.

Capacity planning can be viewed in three time horizons. In Figure S7.1 we note that long-range capacity (generally greater than 3 years) is a function of adding facilities and equipment that have a long lead time. In the intermediate range (usually 3 to 36 months), we can add equipment, personnel, and shifts; we can subcontract; and we can build or use inventory. This is the "aggregate planning" task. In the short run (usually up to 3 months), we are primarily concerned with scheduling jobs and people, as well as allocating machinery. Modifying capacity in the short run is difficult, as we are usually constrained by existing capacity.

STUDENT TIP
Too little capacity loses customers and too much capacity is expensive. Like Goldilocks's porridge, capacity needs to be *just* right.

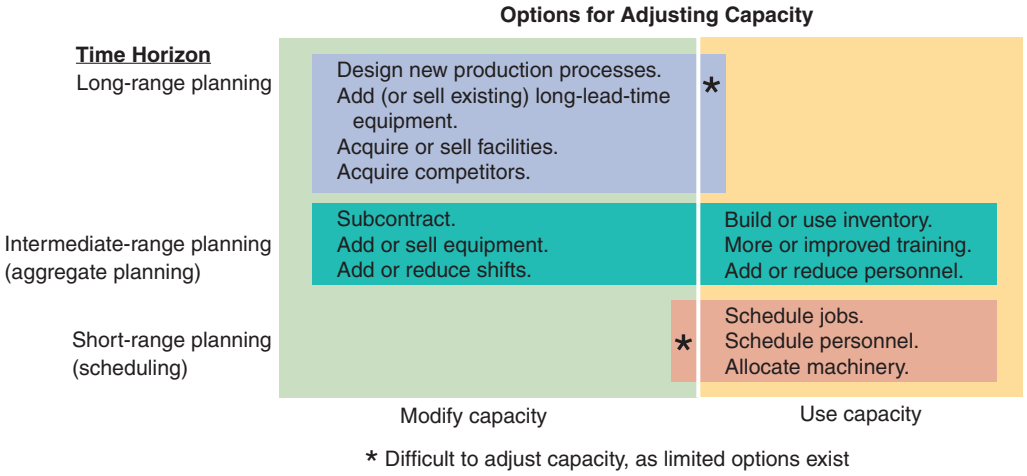


Figure S7.1
Time Horizons and Capacity Options

Design and Effective Capacity

Design capacity is the maximum theoretical output of a system in a given period under ideal conditions. It is normally expressed as a rate, such as the number of tons of steel that can be produced per week, per month, or per year. For many companies, measuring capacity can be straightforward: it is the maximum number of units the company is capable of producing in a specific time. However, for some organizations, determining capacity can be more difficult. Capacity can be measured in terms of beds (a hospital), active members (a church), or billable hours (a CPA firm). Other organizations use total work time available as a measure of overall capacity.

Design capacity
The theoretical maximum output of a system in a given period under ideal conditions.

Most organizations operate their facilities at a rate less than the design capacity. They do so because they have found that they can operate more efficiently when their resources are not stretched to the limit. For example, Ian's Bistro has tables set with 2 or 4 chairs seating a total of 270 guests. But the tables are never filled that way. Some tables will have 1 or 3 guests; tables can be pulled together for parties of 6 or 8. There are always unused chairs. *Design capacity* is 270, but *effective capacity* is often closer to 220, which is 81% of design capacity.

Effective capacity is the capacity a firm *expects* to achieve given the current operating constraints. Effective capacity is often lower than design capacity because the facility may have been designed for an earlier version of the product or a different product mix than is currently being produced. Table S7.1 further illustrates the relationship between design capacity, effective capacity, and *actual output*.

Effective capacity
The capacity a firm can expect to achieve, given its product mix, methods of scheduling, maintenance, and standards of quality.

TABLE S7.1 Capacity Measurements

MEASURE	DEFINITION	EXAMPLE
Design capacity Andrey Eremin/123rf	Ideal conditions exist during the time that the system is available.	If machines at Frito-Lay are designed to produce 1,000 bags of chips/hr., and the plant operates 16 hrs./day. **Design Capacity = 1,000 bags/hr. × 16 hrs.** **= 16,000 bags/day**
Effective capacity Hongqi Zhang/123rf	Design capacity minus lost output because of *planned* resource unavailability (e.g., preventive maintenance, machine setups/ changeovers, changes in product mix, scheduled breaks)	If Frito-Lay loses 3 hours of output per day (namely 0.5 hrs./day on preventive maintenance + 1 hr./day on employee breaks + 1.5 hrs./day setting up machines for different products). **Effective Capacity = 16,000 bags/day − (1,000 bags/hr.)(3 hrs./day)** **= 16,000 bags/day − 3,000 bags/day** **= 13,000 bags/day**
Actual output Hongqi Zhang/123rf	Effective capacity minus lost output during *unplanned* resource idleness (e.g., absenteeism, machine breakdowns, unavailable parts, quality problems)	On average, if machines at Frito-Lay are not running 1 hr./day due to late parts and machine breakdowns. **Actual Output = 13,000 bags/day − (1,000 bags/hr.)(1 hr./day)** **= 13,000 bags/day − 1,000 bags/day** **= 12,000 bags/day**

Utilization
Actual output as a percent of design capacity.

Efficiency
Actual output as a percent of effective capacity.

LO S7.2 *Determine* design capacity, effective capacity, and utilization

Two measures of system performance are particularly useful: utilization and efficiency. **Utilization** is simply the percent of *design capacity* actually achieved. **Efficiency** is the percent of *effective capacity* actually achieved. Depending on how facilities are used and managed, it may be difficult or impossible to reach 100% efficiency. Operations managers tend to be evaluated on efficiency. The key to improving efficiency is often found in correcting quality problems and in effective scheduling, training, and maintenance. Utilization and efficiency are computed below:

$$\text{Utilization} = \text{Actual output}/\text{Design capacity} \quad \text{(S7-1)}$$

$$\text{Efficiency} = \text{Actual output}/\text{Effective capacity} \quad \text{(S7-2)}$$

In Example S1 we determine these values.

Example S1

DETERMINING CAPACITY UTILIZATION AND EFFICIENCY

Sara James Bakery has a plant for processing *Deluxe* breakfast rolls and wants to better understand its capability. Last week the facility produced 148,000 rolls. The effective capacity is 175,000 rolls. The production line operates 7 days per week, with three 8-hour shifts per day. The line was designed to process the nut-filled, cinnamon-flavored *Deluxe* roll at a rate of 1,200 per hour. Determine the design capacity, utilization, and efficiency for this plant when producing this *Deluxe* roll.

APPROACH ▶ First compute the design capacity and then use Equation (S7-1) to determine utilization and Equation (S7-2) to determine efficiency.

SOLUTION ▶

$$\text{Design capacity} = (7 \text{ days} \times 3 \text{ shifts} \times 8 \text{ hours}) \times (1{,}200 \text{ rolls per hour}) = 201{,}600 \text{ rolls}$$

$$\text{Utilization} = \text{Actual output}/\text{Design capacity} = 148{,}000/201{,}600 = 73.4\%$$

$$\text{Efficiency} = \text{Actual output}/\text{Effective capacity} = 148{,}000/175{,}000 = 84.6\%$$

INSIGHT ▶ The bakery now has the information necessary to evaluate efficiency.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the actual output is 150,000, what is the efficiency? [Answer: 85.7%.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S7.1, S7.2, S7.3, S7.4, S7.5, S7.6, S7.7, S7.8

ACTIVE MODEL S7.1 This example is further illustrated in Active Model S7.1 in MyOMLab.

In Example S2 we see how the effectiveness of new capacity additions depends on how well management can perform on the utilization and efficiency of those additions.

Example S2

EXPANDING CAPACITY

The manager of Sara James Bakery (see Example S1) now needs to increase production of the increasingly popular *Deluxe* roll. To meet this demand, she will be adding a second production line. The second line has the same design capacity (201,600) and effective capacity (175,000) as the first line; however, new workers will be operating the second line. Quality problems and other inefficiencies stemming from the inexperienced workers are expected to reduce output on the second line to 130,000 (compared to 148,000 on the first). The utilization and efficiency were 73.4% and 84.6%, respectively, on the first line. Determine the new utilization and efficiency for the *Deluxe* roll operation after adding the second line.

APPROACH ▶ First, determine the new design capacity, effective capacity, and actual output after adding the second line. Then, use Equation (S7-1) to determine utilization and Equation (S7-2) to determine efficiency.

SOLUTION ▶ Design capacity = 201,600 × 2 = 403,200 rolls

Effective capacity = 175,000 × 2 = 350,000 rolls

Actual output = 148,000 + 130,000 = 278,000 rolls

Utilization = Actual output/Design capacity = 278,000 / 403,200 = 68.95%

Efficiency = Actual output/Effective capacity = 278,000 / 350,000 = 79.43%

INSIGHT ▶ Although adding equipment increases capacity, that equipment may not be operated as efficiently with new employees as might be the case with experienced employees. For Sara James Bakery, a doubling of equipment investment did not result in a doubling of output; other variables drove both utilization and efficiency lower.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Suppose that Sara James reduces changeover time (setup time) by three fewer hours per week. What will be the new values of utilization and efficiency? [Answer: utilization is still 68.95%, efficiency now increases to 81.10%]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S7.1, S7.2, S7.3, S7.4, S7.5, S7.6, S7.7, S7.8

Actual output, as used in Equation (S7-2), represents current conditions. Alternatively, with a knowledge of effective capacity and a current or target value for efficiency, the future *expected output* can be computed by reversing Equation (S7-2) :

$$\text{Expected output} = \text{Effective capacity} \times \text{Efficiency}$$

If the expected output is inadequate, additional capacity may be needed. Much of the remainder of this supplement addresses how to effectively and efficiently add that capacity.

Capacity and Strategy

Sustained profits come from building competitive advantage, not just from a good financial return on a specific process. Capacity decisions must be integrated into the organization's mission and strategy. Investments are not to be made as isolated expenditures, but as part of a coordinated plan that will place the firm in an advantageous position. The questions to be asked are, "Will these investments eventually win profitable customers?" and "What competitive advantage (such as process flexibility, speed of delivery, improved quality, and so on) do we obtain?"

All 10 OM decisions we discuss in this text, as well as other organizational elements such as marketing and finance, are affected by changes in capacity. Change in capacity will have sales and cash flow implications, just as capacity changes have quality, supply chain, human resource, and maintenance implications. All must be considered.

Capacity Considerations

In addition to tight integration of strategy and investments, there are four special considerations for a good capacity decision:

1. *Forecast demand accurately:* Product additions and deletions, competition actions, product life cycle, and unknown sales volumes all add challenge to accurate forecasting.
2. *Match technology increments and sales volume:* Capacity options are often constrained by technology. Some capacity increments may be large (e.g., steel mills or power plants), while others may be small (hand-crafted Louis Vuitton handbags). Large capacity increments complicate the difficult but necessary job of matching capacity to sales.
3. *Find the optimum operating size (volume):* Economies and diseconomies of scale often dictate an optimal size for a facility. *Economies of scale* exist when average cost declines as size increases, whereas *diseconomies of scale* occur when a larger size raises the average cost. As Figure S7.2 suggests, most businesses have an optimal size—at least until someone comes along with a new business model. For decades, very large integrated steel mills were considered optimal. Then along came Nucor, CMC, and other minimills, with a new process and a new business model that radically reduced the optimum size of a steel mill.
4. *Build for change:* Managers build flexibility into facilities and equipment; changes will occur in processes, as well as products, product volume, and product mix.

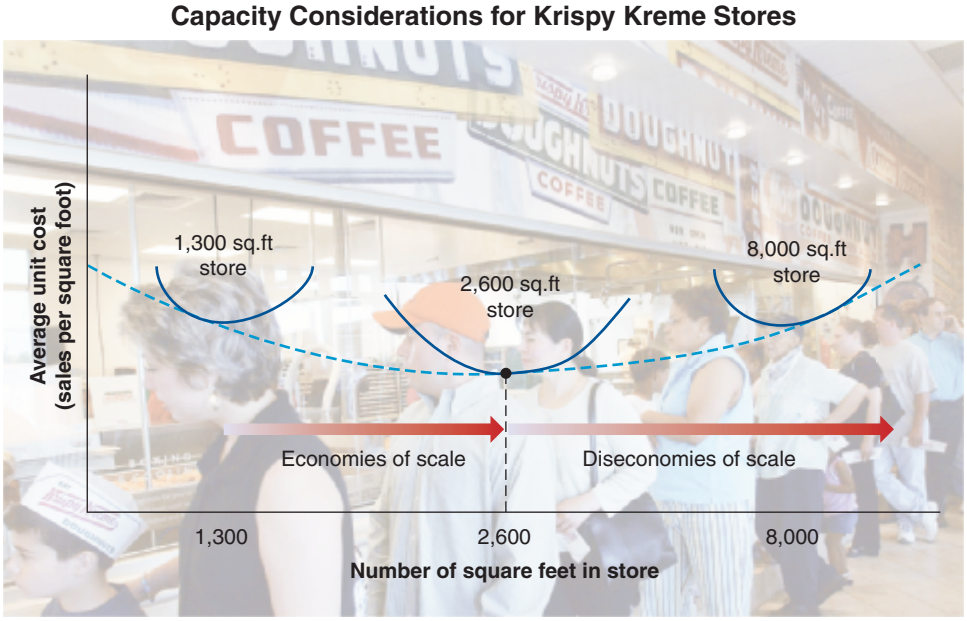
STUDENT TIP
Each industry and technology has an optimum size.

Next, we note that rather than strategically manage capacity, managers may tactically manage demand.

Figure S7.2

Economies and Diseconomies of Scale

Krispy Kreme originally had 8,000-square-foot stores but found them too large and too expensive for many markets. Then they tried tiny 1,300-square-foot stores, which required less investment, but such stores were too small to provide the mystique of seeing and smelling Krispy Kreme doughnuts being made. Krispy Kreme finally got it right with a 2,600-foot-store.



Managing Demand

Even with good forecasting and facilities built to accomodate that forecast, there may be a poor match between the actual demand that occurs and available capacity. A poor match may mean demand exceeds capacity or capacity exceeds demand. However, in both cases, firms have options.

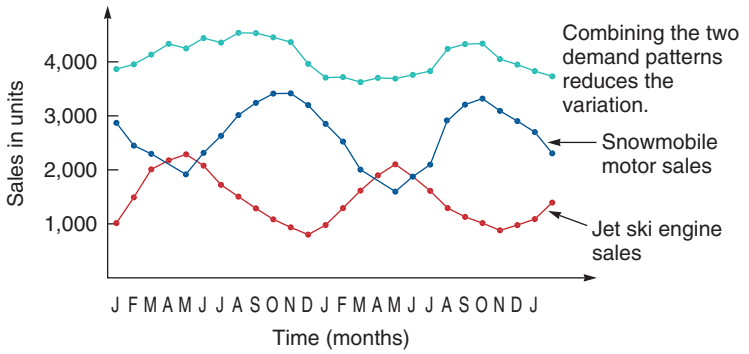
Demand Exceeds Capacity When *demand exceeds capacity*, the firm may be able to curtail demand simply by raising prices, scheduling long lead times (which may be inevitable), and discouraging marginally profitable business. However, because inadequate facilities reduce revenue below what is possible, the long-term solution is usually to increase capacity.

Capacity Exceeds Demand When *capacity exceeds demand*, the firm may want to stimulate demand through price reductions or aggressive marketing, or it may accommodate the market through product changes. When decreasing customer demand is combined with old and inflexible processes, layoffs and plant closings may be necessary to bring capacity in line with demand.

Adjusting to Seasonal Demands A seasonal or cyclical pattern of demand is another capacity challenge. In such cases, management may find it helpful to offer products with complementary demand patterns—that is, products for which the demand is high for one when low for the other. For example, in Figure S7.3 the firm is adding a line of snowmobile motors to its line of jet skis to smooth demand. With appropriate complementing of products, perhaps the utilization of facility, equipment, and personnel can be smoothed (as we see in the *OM in Action* box "Capacity Management at the Pizza Factory").

Figure S7.3

By Combining Products That Have Complementary Seasonal Patterns, Capacity Can Be Better Utilized



OM in Action Capacity Management at the Pizza Factory

PizzaGyár (PizzaFactory) is a pizza delivery company,which operates in the southern part of Hungary in a city of 160,000 people. In 2010, it faced a problem with the utilization of its capacities. Although their sales were at an acceptable level, and the company was profitable, they realized that they always had excess capacity regarding their kitchen appliances, labour, delivery and procurement. The cooks were working full time, even if sales were low. The ovens had to be heated up and kept warm even if there were idle times in the production. The delivery staff were running under the optimal number of pizzas per route, and the van delivering the ingredients had a large unused capacity. In order to overcome the problems, they tried increasing their sales, but it became evident that they could not realistically sell more at the current price level. Decreasing their price was not an option, since their profit margin was already very low. Also, their pizza was known for its high quality, so purchasing lower quality ingredients was out of the question.

After careful assessment of the situation, the owner decided to create a new line of pizza, which would sell under a different brand name, but still be prepared and sold from the company's currently operating facilities. Apart from a minor one time marketing cost, no capital needed to be invested in the business idea. Their goal was to use the excess capacity to produce the new brand and it at a lower price level, which was now possible, since the new brand's pizza used the already operating capacities, did not have fixed costs associated to it, and as a result, could sell closer to its variable cost.

To make sure that the new brand (Don Gatto) did not increase its costs in the production phase, the process practically did not change: Mostly the same ingredients were used, but the sequence of the toppings was changed in order to distinguish the products from each other. The new brand had the toppings under the cheese as opposed to the original PizzaGyár pizzas where it was the other way around. The new brand also came in a newly designed box.

This idea made it possible for the company to sell pizzas at a lower price level, acquire new market share, and increase total revenue and profit by using their capacity at an optimal level.

Tactics for Matching Capacity to Demand Various tactics for adjusting capacity to demand include:

1. Making staffing changes (increasing or decreasing the number of employees or shifts)
2. Adjusting equipment (purchasing additional machinery or selling or leasing out existing equipment)
3. Improving processes to increase throughput (e.g., reducing setup times at M2 Global Technology added the equivalent of 17 shifts of capacity)
4. Redesigning products to facilitate more throughput
5. Adding process flexibility to better meet changing product preferences
6. Closing facilities

The foregoing tactics can be used to adjust demand to existing facilities. The strategic issue is, of course, how to have a facility of the correct size.

Service-Sector Demand and Capacity Management

In the service sector, scheduling customers is *demand management*, and scheduling the workforce is *capacity management*.

Joe McNally/Getty Images

Recessions (e.g., 2008–2010) and terrorist attacks (e.g., September 11, 2001) can make even the best capacity decision for an airline look bad. And excess capacity for an airline can be very expensive, with storage costs running as high as $60,000 per month per aircraft. Here, as a testimonial to excess capacity, aircraft sit idle in the Mojave Desert.

Aleksey Khripunkov/Fotolia

Many U.S. hospitals use services abroad to manage capacity for radiologists during night shifts. Night Hawk, an Idaho-based service with 50 radiologists in Zurich and Sydney, contracts with 900 facilities (20% of all U.S. hospitals). These trained experts, wide awake and alert in their daylight hours, usually return a diagnosis in 10 to 20 minutes, with a guarantee of 30 minutes.

Demand Management When demand and capacity are fairly well matched, demand management can often be handled with appointments, reservations, or a first-come, first-served rule. In some businesses, such as doctors' and lawyers' offices, an *appointment system* is the schedule and is adequate. *Reservations systems* work well in rental car agencies, hotels, and some restaurants as a means of minimizing customer waiting time and avoiding disappointment over unfilled service. In retail shops, a post office, or a fast-food restaurant, a *first-come, first-served* rule for serving customers may suffice. Each industry develops its own approaches to matching demand and capacity. Other more aggressive approaches to demand management include many variations of discounts: "early bird" specials in restaurants, discounts for matinee performances or for seats at odd hours on an airline, and cheap weekend hotel rooms.

Capacity Management When managing demand is not feasible, then managing capacity through changes in full-time, temporary, or part-time staff may be an option. This is the approach in many services. For instance, hospitals may find capacity limited by a shortage of board-certified radiologists willing to cover the graveyard shifts. Getting fast and reliable radiology readings can be the difference between life and death for an emergency room patient. As the photo above illustrates, when an overnight reading is required (and 40% of CT scans are done between 8 P.M. and 8 A.M.), the image can be sent by e-mail to a doctor in Europe or Australia for immediate analysis.

Bottleneck Analysis and the Theory of Constraints

Capacity analysis
A means of determining throughput capacity of workstations or an entire production system.

Bottleneck
The limiting factor or constraint in a system.

Process time
The time to produce a unit (or specified batch of units) at a workstation.

As managers seek to match capacity to demand, decisions must be made about the size of specific operations or work areas in the larger system. Each of the interdependent work areas can be expected to have its own unique capacity. **Capacity analysis** involves determining the throughput capacity of workstations in a system and ultimately the capacity of the entire system.

A key concept in capacity analysis is the role of a constraint or **bottleneck**. A bottleneck is an operation that is the limiting factor or constraint. The term *bottleneck* refers to the literal neck of a bottle that constrains flow or, in the case of a production system, constrains throughput. A bottleneck has the lowest effective capacity of any operation in the system and thus limits the system's output. Bottlenecks occur in all facets of life—from job shops where a machine is constraining the work flow to highway traffic where two lanes converge into one inadequate lane, resulting in traffic congestion.

We define the **process time** of a station as the time to produce a unit (or a specified batch size of units) at that workstation. For example, if 16 customers can be checked out in a supermarket line every 60 minutes, then the process time at that station is 3.75 minutes per customer (= 60/16). (Process time is simply the inverse of capacity, which in this case is 60 minutes per hour/3.75 minutes per customer = 16 customers per hour.)

To determine the bottleneck in a production system, simply identify the station with the slowest process time. The **bottleneck time** is the process time of the slowest workstation (the one that takes the longest) in a production system. For example, the flowchart in Figure S7.4 shows a simple assembly line. Individual station process times are 2, 4, and 3 minutes, respectively. The bottleneck time is 4 minutes. This is because station B is the slowest station. Even if we were to speed up station A, the entire production process would not be faster. Inventory would simply pile up in front of station B even more than now. Likewise, if station C could work faster, we could not tap its excess capacity because station B will not be able to feed products to it any faster than 1 every 4 minutes.

Bottleneck time
The process time of the longest (slowest) process, i.e., the bottleneck.

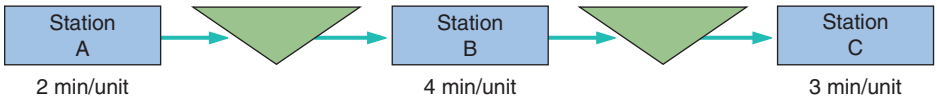


Figure **S7.4**
Three-Station Assembly Line
A box represents an operation, a triangle represents inventory, and arrows represent precedence relationships

The **throughput time**, on the other hand, is the time it takes a unit to go through production from start to end, *with no waiting*. (Throughput time describes the behavior in an empty system. In contrast, flow time describes the time to go through a production process from beginning to end, including idle time waiting for stations to finish working on other units.) The throughput time to produce a new completed unit in Figure S7.4 is 9 minutes (= 2 minutes + 4 minutes + 3 minutes).

Throughput time
The time it takes for a product to go through the production process *with no waiting*. It is the time of the longest path through the system.

Bottleneck time and *throughput time* may be quite different. For example, a Ford assembly line may roll out a new car every minute (bottleneck time), but it may take 25 hours to actually make a car from start to finish (throughput time). This is because the assembly line has many workstations, with each station contributing to the completed car. Thus, bottleneck time determines the system's capacity (one car per minute), while its throughput time determines potential ability to produce a newly ordered product from scratch in 25 hours.

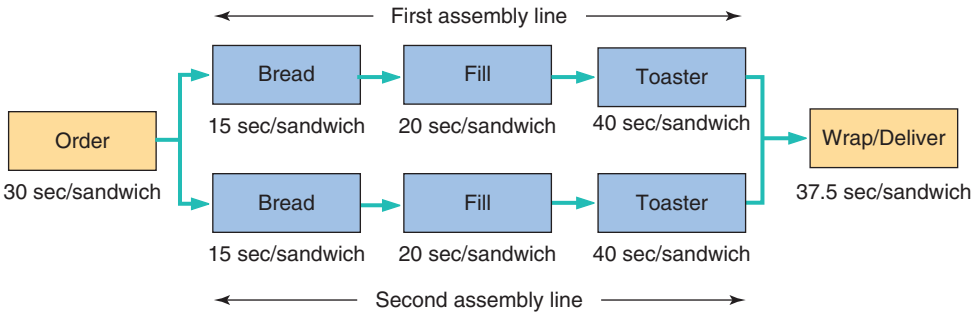
The following two examples illustrate capacity analysis for slightly more complex systems. Example S3 introduces the concept of parallel processes, and Example S4 introduces the concept of simultaneous processing.

Example S3

CAPACITY ANALYSIS WITH PARALLEL PROCESSES

LO S7.3 *Perform* bottleneck analysis

Howard Kraye's sandwich shop provides healthy sandwiches for customers. Howard has two identical sandwich assembly lines. A customer first places an order, which takes 30 seconds. The order is then sent to one of the two assembly lines. Each assembly line has two workers and three operations: (1) assembly worker 1 retrieves and cuts the bread (15 seconds/sandwich), (2) assembly worker 2 adds ingredients and places the sandwich onto the toaster conveyor belt (20 seconds/sandwich), and (3) the toaster heats the sandwich (40 seconds/sandwich). Finally, another employee wraps the heated sandwich coming out of the toaster and delivers it to the customer (37.5 seconds/sandwich). A flowchart of the process is shown below. Howard wants to determine the bottleneck time and throughput time of this process.



APPROACH ▶ Clearly the toaster is the single-slowest resource in the five-step process, but is it the bottleneck? Howard should first determine the bottleneck time of each of the two assembly lines separately, then the bottleneck time of the combined assembly lines, and finally the bottleneck time of the entire operation. For throughput time, each assembly line is identical, so Howard should just sum the process times for all five operations.

SOLUTION ▶ Because each of the three assembly-line operations uses a separate resource (worker or machine), different partially completed sandwiches can be worked on simultaneously at each station. Thus, the bottleneck time of each assembly line is the longest process time of each of the three operations. In this case, the 40-second toasting time represents the bottleneck time of each assembly line. Next, the bottleneck time of the *combined* assembly line operations is 40 seconds per *two* sandwiches, or 20 seconds per sandwich. Therefore, the wrapping and delivering operation, with a process time of 37.5 seconds, appears to be the bottleneck for the entire operation. The capacity per hour equals 3,600 seconds per hour/37.5 seconds per sandwich = 96 sandwiches per hour. The throughput time equals 30 + 15 + 20 + 40 + 37.5 = 142.5 seconds (or 2 minutes and 22.5 seconds), assuming no wait time in line to begin with.

INSIGHT ▶ Doubling the resources at a workstation effectively cuts the time at that station in half. (If n parallel [redundant] operations are added, the process time of the combined workstation operation will equal $1/n$ times the original process time.)

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If Howard hires an additional wrapper, what will be the new hourly capacity? [Answer: The new bottleneck is now the order-taking station: Capacity = 3,600 seconds per hour/30 seconds per sandwich = 120 sandwiches per hour]

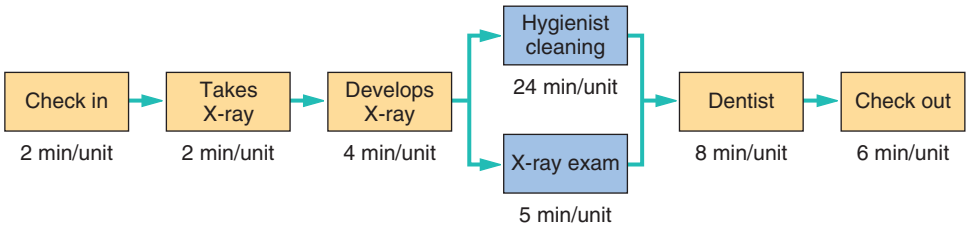
RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S7.9, S7.10, S7.11, S7.12, S7.13

In Example S3, how could we claim that the process time of the toaster was 20 seconds per sandwich when it takes 40 seconds to toast a sandwich? The reason is that we had two toasters; thus, two sandwiches could be toasted every 40 seconds, for an average of one sandwich every 20 seconds. And that time for a toaster can actually be achieved if the start times for the two are *staggered* (i.e., a new sandwich is placed in a toaster every 20 seconds). In that case, even though each sandwich will sit in the toaster for 40 seconds, a sandwich could emerge from one of the two toasters every 20 seconds. As we see, doubling the number of resources effectively cuts the process time at that station in half, resulting in a doubling of the capacity of those resources.

Example S4

CAPACITY ANALYSIS WITH SIMULTANEOUS PROCESSES

Dr. Cynthia Knott's dentistry practice has been cleaning customers' teeth for decades. The process for a basic dental cleaning is relatively straightforward: (1) the customer checks in (2 minutes); (2) a lab technician takes and develops X-rays (2 and 4 minutes, respectively); (3) the dentist processes and examines the X-rays (5 minutes) *while* the hygienist cleans the teeth (24 minutes); (4) the dentist meets with the patient to poke at a few teeth, explain the X-ray results, and tell the patient to floss more often (8 minutes); and (5) the customer pays and books her next appointment (6 minutes). A flowchart of the customer visit is shown below. Dr. Knott wants to determine the bottleneck time and throughput time of this process.



APPROACH ▶ With simultaneous processes, an order or a product is essentially *split* into different paths to be rejoined later on. To find the bottleneck time, each operation is treated separately, just as though all operations were on a sequential path. To find the throughput time, the time over *all* paths must be computed, and the throughput time is the time of the *longest* path.

SOLUTION ▶ The bottleneck in this system is the hygienist cleaning operation at 24 minutes per patient, resulting in an hourly system capacity of 60 minutes/24 minutes per patient = 2.5 patients. The throughput time is the maximum of the two paths through the system. The path through the X-ray

exam is 2 + 2 + 4 + 5 + 8 + 6 = 27 minutes, while the path through the hygienist cleaning operation is 2 + 2 + 4 + 24 + 8 + 6 = 46 minutes. Thus a patient should be out the door after 46 minutes (i.e., the maximum of 27 and 46).

INSIGHT ▶ With simultaneous processing, all operation times in the entire system are not simply added together to compute throughput time because some operations are occurring simultaneously. Instead, the time of the longest path through the system is deemed the throughput time.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Suppose that the same technician now has the hygienist start immediately after the X-rays are taken (allowing the hygienist to start 4 minutes sooner). The technician then develops the X-rays while the hygienist is cleaning teeth. The dentist still examines the X-rays while the teeth cleaning is occurring. What would be the new system capacity and throughput time? [Answer: The X-ray development operation is now on the parallel path with cleaning and X-ray exam, reducing the total patient visit duration by 4 minutes, for a throughput time of 42 minutes (the maximum of 27 and 42). However, the hygienist cleaning operation is still the bottleneck, so the capacity remains 2.5 patients per hour.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S7.14, S7.15

To summarize: (1) the *bottleneck* is the operation with the longest (slowest) process time, after dividing by the number of parallel (redundant) operations, (2) the *system capacity* is the inverse of the *bottleneck time*, and (3) the *throughput time* is the total time through the longest path in the system, assuming no waiting.

Theory of Constraints

Theory of constraints (TOC)
A body of knowledge that deals with anything that limits an organization's ability to achieve its goals.

The **theory of constraints (TOC)** has been popularized by the book *The Goal: A Process of Ongoing Improvement,* by Goldratt and Cox.[1] TOC is a body of knowledge that deals with anything that limits or constrains an organization's ability to achieve its goals. Constraints can be physical (e.g., process or personnel availability, raw materials, or supplies) or nonphysical (e.g., procedures, morale, and training). Recognizing and managing these limitations through a five-step process is the basis of TOC.

STEP 1: Identify the constraints.

STEP 2: Develop a plan for overcoming the identified constraints.

STEP 3: Focus resources on accomplishing Step 2.

STEP 4: Reduce the effects of the constraints by offloading work or by expanding capability. Make sure that the constraints are recognized by all those who can have an impact on them.

STEP 5: When one set of constraints is overcome, go back to Step 1 and identify new constraints.

Bottleneck Management

STUDENT TIP
There are always bottlenecks; a manager must identify and manage them.

A crucial constraint in any system is the bottleneck, and managers must focus significant attention on it. We present four principles of bottleneck management:

1. *Release work orders to the system at the pace set by the bottleneck's capacity:* The theory of constraints utilizes the concept of ***drum, buffer, rope*** to aid in the implementation of bottleneck and nonbottleneck scheduling. In brief, the *drum* is the beat of the system. It provides the schedule—the pace of production. The *buffer* is the resource, usually inventory, which may be helpful to keep the bottleneck operating at the pace of the drum. Finally, the *rope* provides the synchronization or communication necessary to pull units through the system. The rope can be thought of as signals between workstations.
2. *Lost time at the bottleneck represents lost capacity for the whole system:* This principle implies that the bottleneck should always be kept busy with work. Well-trained and cross-trained employees and inspections prior to the bottleneck can reduce lost capacity at a bottleneck.
3. *Increasing the capacity of a nonbottleneck station is a mirage:* Increasing the capacity of *nonbottleneck* stations has no impact on the system's overall capacity. Working faster on

a nonbottleneck station may just create extra inventory, with all of its adverse effects. This implies that nonbottlenecks should have planned idle time. Extra work or setups at nonbottleneck stations will not cause delay, which allows for smaller batch sizes and more frequent product changeovers at nonbottleneck stations.

4. *Increasing the capacity of the bottleneck increases capacity for the whole system:* Managers should focus improvement efforts on the bottleneck. Bottleneck capacity may be improved by various means, including offloading some of the bottleneck operations to another workstation (e.g., let the beer foam settle next to the tap at the bar, not under it, so the next beer can be poured), increasing capacity of the bottleneck (adding resources, working longer or working faster), subcontracting, developing alternative routings, and reducing setup times.

Even when managers have process and quality variability under control, changing technology, personnel, products, product mixes, and volumes can create multiple and shifting bottlenecks. Identifying and managing bottlenecks is a required operations task, but by definition, bottlenecks cannot be "eliminated." A system will always have at least one.

Break-Even Analysis

Break-even analysis
A means of finding the point, in dollars and units, at which costs equal revenues.

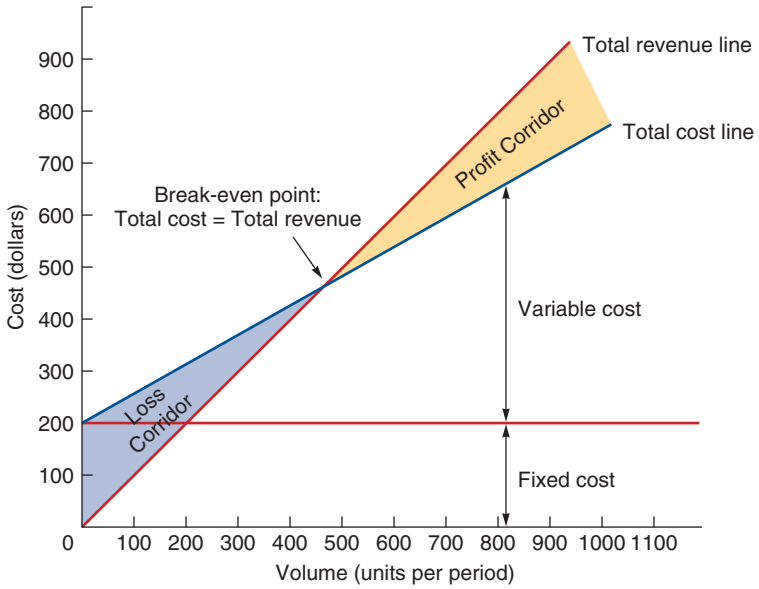
Break-even analysis is the critical tool for determining the capacity a facility must have to achieve profitability. The objective of **break-even analysis** is to find the point, in dollars and units, at which costs equal revenue. This point is the break-even point. Firms must operate above this level to achieve profitability. As shown in Figure S7.5, break-even analysis requires an estimation of fixed costs, variable costs, and revenue.

Fixed costs are costs that continue even if no units are produced. Examples include depreciation, taxes, debt, and mortgage payments. *Variable costs* are those that vary with the volume of units produced. The major components of variable costs are labor and materials. However, other costs, such as the portion of the utilities that varies with volume, are also variable costs. The difference between selling price and variable cost is *contribution*. Only when total contribution exceeds total fixed cost will there be profit.

Another element in break-even analysis is the *revenue function*. In Figure S7.5, revenue begins at the origin and proceeds upward to the right, increasing by the selling price of each unit. Where the revenue function crosses the total cost line (the sum of fixed and variable costs) is the break-even point, with a profit corridor to the right and a loss corridor to the left.

Assumptions A number of assumptions underlie the basic break-even model. Notably, costs and revenue are shown as straight lines. They are shown to increase linearly—that is,

Figure **S7.5**
Basic Break-Even Point



in direct proportion to the volume of units being produced. However, neither fixed costs nor variable costs (nor, for that matter, the revenue function) need be a straight line. For example, fixed costs change as more capital equipment or warehouse space is used; labor costs change with overtime or as marginally skilled workers are employed; the revenue function may change with such factors as volume discounts.

Single-Product Case

LO S7.4 *Compute* break-even

The formulas for the break-even point in units and dollars for a single product are shown below. Let:

BEP_x = break-even point in units
$BEP_\$$ = break-even point in dollars
P = price per unit (after all discounts)
x = number of units produced
TR = total revenue = Px
F = fixed costs
V = variable costs per unit
TC = total costs = $F + Vx$

The break-even point occurs where total revenue equals total costs. Therefore:

$$TR = TC \quad \text{or} \quad Px = F + Vx$$

Solving for x, we get:

$$\text{Break-even point in units } (BEP_x) = \frac{F}{P - V}$$

and:

$$\text{Break-even point in dollars } (BEP_\$) = BEP_x P = \frac{F}{P - V}P = \frac{F}{(P - V)/P} = \frac{F}{1 - V/P}$$

$$\text{Profit} = TR - TC = Px - (F + Vx) = Px - F - Vx = (P - V)x - F$$

Using these equations, we can solve directly for break-even point and profitability. The two break-even formulas of particular interest are:

$$\text{Break-even in units } (BEP_x) = \frac{\text{Total fixed cost}}{\text{Price} - \text{Variable cost}} = \frac{F}{P - V} \tag{S7-3}$$

$$\text{Break-even in dollars } (BEP_\$) = \frac{\text{Total fixed cost}}{1 - \dfrac{\text{Variable cost}}{\text{Price}}} = \frac{F}{1 - \dfrac{V}{P}} \tag{S7-4}$$

In Example S5, we determine the break-even point in dollars and units for one product.

Example S5

SINGLE-PRODUCT BREAK-EVEN ANALYSIS

Stephens, Inc., wants to determine the minimum dollar volume and unit volume needed at its new facility to break even.

APPROACH ▶ The firm first determines that it has fixed costs of $10,000 this period. Direct labor is $1.50 per unit, and material is $.75 per unit. The selling price is $4.00 per unit.

SOLUTION ▶ The break-even point in dollars is computed as follows:

$$BEP_\$ = \frac{F}{1 - (V/P)} = \frac{\$10{,}000}{1 - [(1.50 + .75)/(4.00)]} = \frac{\$10{,}000}{.4375} = \$22{,}857.14$$

The break-even point in units is:

$$BEP_x = \frac{F}{P - V} = \frac{\$10{,}000}{4.00 - (1.50 + .75)} = 5{,}714$$

Note that we use total variable costs (that is, both labor and material).

INSIGHT ▶ The management of Stevens, Inc., now has an estimate in both units and dollars of the volume necessary for the new facility.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If Stevens finds that fixed cost will increase to $12,000, what happens to the break-even in units and dollars? [Answer: The break-even in units increases to 6,857, and break-even in dollars increases to $27,428.57.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S7.16–S7.25 (S7.28–S7.31 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch07SExS3**.xls can be found in MyOMLab.

ACTIVE MODEL S7.2 This example is further illustrated in Active Model S7.2 in MyOMLab.

Multiproduct Case

Most firms, from manufacturers to restaurants, have a variety of offerings. Each offering may have a different selling price and variable cost. Utilizing break-even analysis, we modify Equation (S7-4) to reflect the proportion of sales for each product. We do this by "weighting" each product's contribution by its proportion of sales. The formula is then:

$$\text{Break-even point in dollars } (BEP_{\$}) = \frac{F}{\sum\left[1 - \left(\frac{V_i}{P_i}\right) \times (W_i)\right]} \qquad \text{(S7-5)}$$

where V = variable cost per unit
P = price per unit
F = fixed cost
W = percent each product is of total dollar sales
i = each product

Image Ideas/Stockbyte/Getty Images

Paper machines such as the one shown here require a high capital investment. This investment results in a high fixed cost but allows production of paper at a very low variable cost. The production manager's job is to maintain utilization above the break-even point to achieve profitability.

Example S6 shows how to determine the break-even point for the multiproduct case at the Le Bistro restaurant.

Example S6

MULTIPRODUCT BREAK-EVEN ANALYSIS

Le Bistro, like most other resturants, makes more than one product and would like to know its break-even point in dollars. Information for Le Bistro follows. Fixed costs are $3,000 per month.

ITEM	ANNUAL FORECASTED SALES UNITS	PRICE	COST
Sandwich	9,000	$5.00	$3.00
Drinks	9,000	1.50	0.50
Baked potato	7,000	2.00	1.00

APPROACH ▶ With a variety of offerings, we proceed with break-even analysis just as in a single-product case, except that we weight each of the products by its proportion of total sales using Equation (S7-5).

SOLUTION ▶ Multiproduct Break-Even: Determining Contribution

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
ITEM (i)	ANNUAL FORECASTED SALES UNITS	SELLING PRICE (P_i)	VARIABLE COST (V_i)	(V_i/P_i)	CONTRIBUTION 1– (V_i/P_i)	ANNUAL FORECASTED SALES $	% OF SALES (W_i)	WEIGHTED CONTRIBUTION (COL. 6 × COL. 8)
Sandwich	9,000	$5.00	$3.00	.60	.40	$45,000	.621	.248
Drinks	9,000	1.50	0.50	.33	.67	13,500	.186	.125
Baked potato	7,000	2.00	1.00	.50	.50	14,000	.193	.097
						$72,500	1.000	.470

Note: Revenue for sandwiches is $45,000 (= 5.00 × 9,000), which is 62.1% of the total revenue of $72,500. Therefore, the contribution for sandwiches is "weighted" by .621. The weighted contribution is .621 × .40 = .248. In this manner, its *relative* contribution is properly reflected.

Using this approach for each product, we find that the total weighted contribution is .47 for each dollar of sales, and the break-even point in dollars is $76,596:

$$BEP_{\$} = \frac{F}{\sum\left[1 - \left(\frac{V_i}{P_i}\right) \times (W_i)\right]} = \frac{\$3{,}000 \times 12}{.47} = \frac{\$36{,}000}{.47} = \$76{,}596$$

The information given in this example implies total daily sales (52 weeks at 6 days each) of:

$$\frac{\$76{,}596}{312 \text{ days}} = \$245.50$$

INSIGHT ▶ The management of Le Bistro now knows that it must generate average sales of $245.50 each day to break even. Management also knows that if the forecasted sales of $72,500 are correct, Le Bistro will lose money, as break-even is $76,596.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the manager of Le Bistro wants to make an additional $1,000 per month in salary, and considers this a fixed cost, what is the new break-even point in average sales per day? [Answer: $327.33.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S7.26, S7.27

Break-even figures by product provide the manager with added insight as to the realism of his or her sales forecast. They indicate exactly what must be sold each day, as we illustrate in Example S7.

Example S7

UNIT SALES AT BREAK-EVEN

Le Bistro also wants to know the break-even for the number of sandwiches that must be sold every day.

APPROACH ▶ Using the data in Example S6, we take the forecast sandwich sales of 62.1% times the daily break-even of $245.50 divided by the selling price of each sandwich ($5.00).

SOLUTION ▶ At break-even, sandwich sales must then be:

$$\frac{.621 \times \$245.50}{5.00} = \text{Number of sandwiches} = 30.5 \approx 31 \text{ sandwiches each day}$$

INSIGHT ▶ With knowledge of individual product sales, the manager has a basis for determining material and labor requirements.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ At a dollar break-even of $327.33 per day, how many sandwiches must Le Bistro sell each day? [Answer: ≈ 41.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S7.26b, S7.27b

Once break-even analysis has been prepared, analyzed, and judged to be reasonable, decisions can be made about the type and capacity of equipment needed. Indeed, a better judgment of the likelihood of success of the enterprise can now be made.

Reducing Risk with Incremental Changes

When demand for goods and services can be forecast with a reasonable degree of precision, determining a break-even point and capacity requirements can be rather straightforward. But, more likely, determining the capacity and how to achieve it will be complicated, as many factors are difficult to measure and quantify. Factors such as technology, competitors, building restrictions, cost of capital, human resource options, and regulations make the decision interesting. To complicate matters further, demand growth is usually in small units, while capacity additions are likely to be both instantaneous and in large units. This contradiction adds to the capacity decision risk. To reduce risk, incremental changes that hedge demand forecasts may be a good option. Figure S7.6 illustrates four approaches to new capacity.

STUDENT TIP
Capacity decisions require matching capacity to forecasts, which is always difficult.

Alternative Figure S7.6(a) *leads* capacity—that is, acquires capacity to stay ahead of demand, with new capacity being acquired at the beginning of period 1. This capacity handles increased demand until the beginning of period 2. At the beginning of period 2, new capacity is again acquired, allowing the organization to stay ahead of demand until the beginning of period 3. This process can be continued indefinitely into the future. Here capacity is acquired *incrementally*—at the beginning of period 1 *and* at the beginning of period 2.

VIDEO S7.1
Capacity Planning at Arnold Palmer Hospital

But managers can also elect to make a larger increase at the beginning of period 1 [Figure S7.6(b)]—an increase that may satisfy expected demand until the beginning of period 3. Excess capacity gives operations managers flexibility. For instance, in the hotel industry, added (extra) capacity in the form of rooms can allow a wider variety of room options and perhaps flexibility in room cleanup schedules. In manufacturing, excess capacity can be used to do more setups, shorten production runs, and drive down inventory costs.

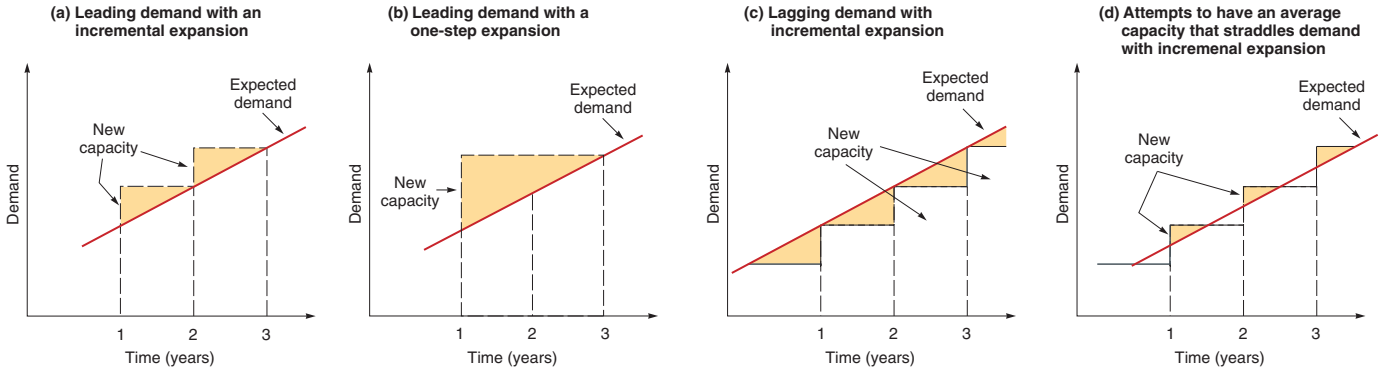


Figure **S7.6**

Four Approaches to Capacity Expansion

Figure S7.6(c) shows an option that *lags* capacity, perhaps using overtime or subcontracting to accommodate excess demand. Finally, Figure S7.6(d) *straddles* demand by building capacity that is "average," sometimes lagging demand and sometimes leading it. Both the lag and straddle option have the advantage of delaying capital expenditure.

In cases where the business climate is stable, deciding between alternatives can be relatively easy. The total cost of each alternative can be computed, and the alternative with the least total cost can be selected. However, when capacity requirements are subject to significant unknowns, "probabilistic" models may be appropriate. One technique for making successful capacity planning decisions with an uncertain demand is decision theory, including the use of expected monetary value.

STUDENT TIP
Uncertainty in capacity decisions makes EMV a helpful tool.

Applying Expected Monetary Value (EMV) to Capacity Decisions

LO S7.5 *Determine* expected monetary value of a capacity decision

Determining expected monetary value (EMV) requires specifying alternatives and various states of nature. For capacity-planning situations, the state of nature usually is future demand or market favorability. By assigning probability values to the various states of nature, we can make decisions that maximize the expected value of the alternatives. Example S8 shows how to apply EMV to a capacity decision.

Example S8

EMV APPLIED TO CAPACITY DECISION

Southern Hospital Supplies, a company that makes hospital gowns, is considering capacity expansion.

APPROACH: ► Southern's major alternatives are to do nothing, build a small plant, build a medium plant, or build a large plant. The new facility would produce a new type of gown, and currently the potential or marketability for this product is unknown. If a large plant is built and a favorable market exists, a profit of $100,000 could be realized. An unfavorable market would yield a $90,000 loss. However, a medium plant would earn a $60,000 profit with a favorable market. A $10,000 loss would result from an unfavorable market. A small plant, on the other hand, would return $40,000 with favorable market conditions and lose only $5,000 in an unfavorable market. Of course, there is always the option of doing nothing.

Recent market research indicates that there is a .4 probability of a favorable market, which means that there is also a .6 probability of an unfavorable market. With this information, the alternative that will result in the highest expected monetary value (EMV) can be selected.

SOLUTION ► Compute the EMV for each alternative:

$$\text{EMV (large plant)} = (.4)\,(\$100{,}000) + (.6)\,(-\$90{,}000) = -\$14{,}000$$
$$\text{EMV (medium plant)} = (.4)\,(\$60{,}000) + (.6)\,(-\$10{,}000) = +\$18{,}000$$
$$\text{EMV (small plant)} = (.4)\,(\$40{,}000) + (.6)\,(-\$5{,}000) = +\$13{,}000$$
$$\text{EMV (do nothing)} = \$0$$

Based on EMV criteria, Southern should build a medium plant.

INSIGHT ► If Southern makes many decisions like this, then determining the EMV for each alternative and selecting the highest EMV is a good decision criterion.

LEARNING EXERCISE ► If a new estimate of the loss from a medium plant in an unfavorable market increases to –$20,000, what is the new EMV for this alternative? [Answer: $12,000, which changes the decision because the small plant EMV is now higher.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ► S7.32, S7.33

Applying Investment Analysis to Strategy-Driven Investments

STUDENT TIP An operations manager may be held responsible for return on investment (ROI).

Once the strategy implications of potential investments have been considered, traditional investment analysis is appropriate. We introduce the investment aspects of capacity next.

Investment, Variable Cost, and Cash Flow

Because capacity and process alternatives exist, so do options regarding capital investment and variable cost. Managers must choose from among different financial options as well as capacity and process alternatives. Analysis should show the capital investment, variable cost, and cash flows as well as net present value for each alternative.

Net Present Value

Net present value
A means of determining the discounted value of a series of future cash receipts.

Determining the discount value of a series of future cash receipts is known as the **net present value** technique. By way of introduction, let us consider the time value of money. Say you invest $100.00 in a bank at 5% for 1 year. Your investment will be worth $100.00 + ($100.00)(.05) = $105.00. If you invest the $105.00 for a second year, it will be worth $105.00 + ($105.00)(.05) = $110.25 at the end of the second year. Of course, we could calculate the future value of $100.00 at 5% for as many years as we wanted by simply extending this analysis. However, there is an easier way to express this relationship mathematically. For the first year:

$$\$105 = \$100(1 + .05)$$

For the second year:

$$\$110.25 = \$105(1 + .05) = \$100(1 + .05)^2$$

In general:

$$F = P(1 + i)^N \tag{S7-6}$$

where F = future value (such as $110.25 or $105)
P = present value (such as $100.00)
i = interest rate (such as .05)
N = number of years (such as 1 year or 2 years)

LO S7.6 *Compute* net present value

In most investment decisions, however, we are interested in calculating the present value of a series of future cash receipts. Solving for P, we get:

$$P = \frac{F}{(1 + i)^N} \tag{S7-7}$$

When the number of years is not too large, the preceding equation is effective. However, when the number of years, N, is large, the formula is cumbersome. For 20 years, you would have to compute $(1 + i)^{20}$. Interest-rate tables, such as Table S7.2, can help. We restate the present value equation:

$$P = \frac{F}{(1 + i)^N} = FX \tag{S7-8}$$

where X = a factor from Table S7.2 defined as $= 1/(1 + i)^N$ and F = future value

Thus, all we have to do is find the factor X and multiply it by F to calculate the present value, P. The factors, of course, are a function of the interest rate, i, and the number of years, N. Table S7.2 lists some of these factors.

Equations (S7-7) and (S7-8) are used to determine the present value of one future cash amount, but there are situations in which an investment generates a series of uniform and equal

TABLE S7.2 Present Value of $1

YEAR	5%	6%	7%	8%	9%	10%	12%	14%
1	.952	.943	.935	.926	.917	.909	.893	.877
2	.907	.890	.873	.857	.842	.826	.797	.769
3	.864	.840	.816	.794	.772	.751	.712	.675
4	.823	.792	.763	.735	.708	.683	.636	.592
5	.784	.747	.713	.681	.650	.621	.567	.519
6	.746	.705	.666	.630	.596	.564	.507	.456
7	.711	.665	.623	.583	.547	.513	.452	.400
8	.677	.627	.582	.540	.502	.467	.404	.351
9	.645	.592	.544	.500	.460	.424	.361	.308
10	.614	.558	.508	.463	.422	.386	.322	.270
15	.481	.417	.362	.315	.275	.239	.183	.140
20	.377	.312	.258	.215	.178	.149	.104	.073

cash amounts. This type of investment is called an *annuity*. For example, an investment might yield $300 per year for 3 years. Easy-to-use factors have been developed for the present value of annuities. These factors are shown in Table S7.3. The basic relationship is:

$$S = RX$$

where X = factor from Table S7.3
S = present value of a series of uniform annual receipts
R = receipts that are received every year for the life of the investment (the annuity)

The present value of a uniform annual series of amounts is an extension of the present value of a single amount, and thus Table S7.3 can be directly developed from Table S7.2. The factors for any given interest rate in Table S7.3 are the cumulative sum of the values in Table S7.2. In Table S7.2, for example, .943, .890, and .840 are the factors for years 1, 2, and 3 when the interest rate is 6%. The cumulative sum of these factors is 2.673. Now look at the point in Table S7.3 where the interest rate is 6% and the number of years is 3. The factor for the present value of an annuity is 2.673, as you would expect. Alternatively, the PV formula in Microsoft Excel can be used: =−PV(interest rate,year,1), e.g., =−PV(.06,3,1) = 2.673.

TABLE S7.3 Present Value of an Annuity of $1

YEAR	5%	6%	7%	8%	9%	10%	12%	14%
1	.952	.943	.935	.926	.917	.909	.893	.877
2	1.859	1.833	1.808	1.783	1.759	1.736	1.690	1.647
3	2.723	2.673	2.624	2.577	2.531	2.487	2.402	2.322
4	3.546	3.465	3.387	3.312	3.240	3.170	3.037	2.914
5	4.329	4.212	4.100	3.993	3.890	3.791	3.605	3.433
6	5.076	4.917	4.766	4.623	4.486	4.355	4.111	3.889
7	5.786	5.582	5.389	5.206	5.033	4.868	4.564	4.288
8	6.463	6.210	5.971	5.747	5.535	5.335	4.968	4.639
9	7.108	6.802	6.515	6.247	5.985	5.759	5.328	4.946
10	7.722	7.360	7.024	6.710	6.418	6.145	5.650	5.216
15	10.380	9.712	9.108	8.559	8.060	7.606	6.811	6.142
20	12.462	11.470	10.594	9.818	9.128	8.514	7.469	6.623

Example S9 shows how to determine the present value of an annuity.

Example S9

DETERMINING NET PRESENT VALUE OF FUTURE RECEIPTS OF EQUAL VALUE

River Road Medical Clinic is thinking of investing in a sophisticated new piece of medical equipment. It will generate $7,000 per year in receipts for 5 years.

APPROACH ▶ Determine the present value of this cash flow; assume an interest rate of 6%.

SOLUTION ▶ The factor from Table S7.3 (4.212) is obtained by finding that value when the interest rate is 6% and the number of years is 5 (alternatively using the Excel formula =−PV (.06,5,1)):

$$S = RX = \$7{,}000(4.212) = \$29{,}484$$

INSIGHT ▶ There is another way of looking at this example. If you went to a bank and took a loan for $29,484 today, your payments would be $7,000 per year for 5 years if the bank used an interest rate of 6% compounded yearly. Thus, $29,484 is the present value.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the interest rate is 8%, what is the present value? [Answer: $27,951.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S7.34–S7.39 (S7.40–S7.45 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File Ch07SExS9.xls can be found in MyOMLab.

The net present value method is straightforward: You simply compute the present value of all cash flows for each investment alternative. When deciding among investment alternatives, you pick the investment with the highest net present value. Similarly, when making several investments, those with higher net present values are preferable to investments with lower net present values.

Solved Problem S7.4 shows how to use the net present value to choose between investment alternatives.

Although net present value is one of the best approaches to evaluating investment alternatives, it does have its faults. Limitations of the net present value approach include the following:

1. Investments with the same net present value may have significantly different projected lives and different salvage values.
2. Investments with the same net present value may have different cash flows. Different cash flows may make substantial differences in the company's ability to pay its bills.
3. The assumption is that we know future interest rates, which we do not.
4. Payments are always made at the end of the period (week, month, or year), which is not always the case.

Summary

Managers tie equipment selection and capacity decisions to the organization's missions and strategy. Four additional considerations are critical: (1) accurately forecasting demand; (2) understanding the equipment, processes, and capacity increments; (3) finding the optimum operating size; and (4) ensuring the flexibility needed for adjustments in technology, product features and mix, and volumes.

Techniques that are particularly useful to operations managers when making capacity decisions include good forecasting, bottleneck analysis, break-even analysis, expected monetary value, cash flow, and net present value.

The single most important criterion for investment decisions is the contribution to the overall strategic plan and the winning of profitable orders. Successful firms select the correct process and capacity.

Key Terms

Capacity (p. 346)
Design capacity (p. 347)
Effective capacity (p. 347)
Utilization (p. 348)
Efficiency (p. 348)
Capacity analysis (p. 352)
Bottleneck (p. 352)
Process time (p. 352)
Bottleneck time (p. 353)
Throughput time (p. 353)
Theory of constraints (TOC) (p. 355)
Break-even analysis (p. 356)
Net present value (p. 362)

Discussion Questions

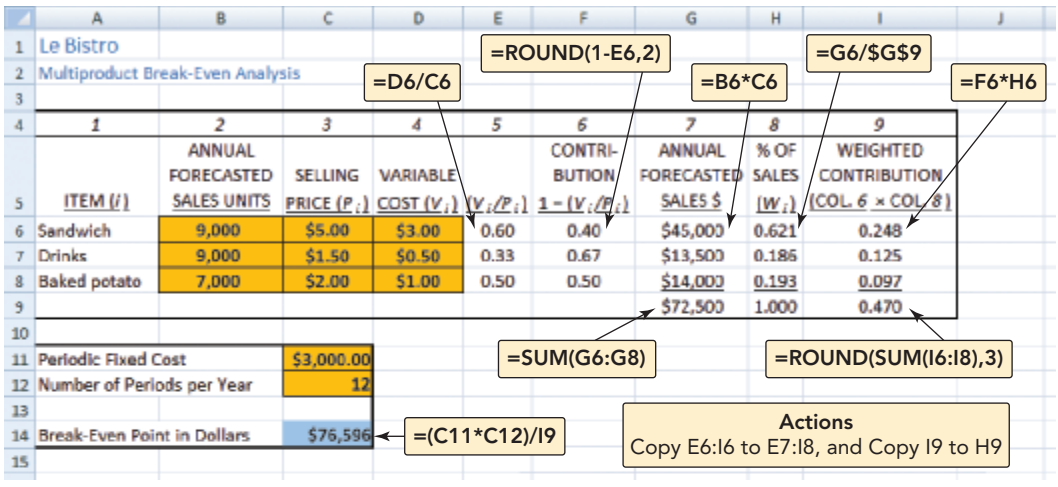
1. Distinguish between design capacity and effective capacity.
2. What is effective capacity?
3. What is efficiency?
4. Distinguish between effective capacity and actual output.
5. Explain why doubling the capacity of a bottleneck may not double the system capacity.
6. Distinguish between bottleneck time and throughput time.
7. What is the theory of constraints?
8. What are the assumptions of break-even analysis?
9. What keeps plotted revenue data from falling on a straight line in a break-even analysis?
10. Under what conditions would a firm want its capacity to lag demand? to lead demand?
11. Explain how net present value is an appropriate tool for comparing investments.
12. Describe the five-step process that serves as the basis of the theory of constraints.
13. What are the techniques available to operations managers to deal with a bottleneck operation? Which of these does not decrease throughput time?

Using Software for Break-Even Analysis

Excel, Excel OM, and POM for Windows all handle break-even and cost–volume analysis problems.

CREATING YOUR OWN EXCEL SPREADSHEETS

It is a straightforward task to develop the formulas to conduct a single-product break-even analysis in Excel. Although we do not demonstrate the basics here, Active Model S7.2 provides a working example. Program S7.1 illustrates how you can make an Excel model to solve Example S6, which is a multiproduct break-even analysis.



Program S7.1

An Excel Spreadsheet for Performing Break-Even Analysis for Example S6

USING EXCEL OM

Excel OM's Break-Even Analysis module provides the Excel formulas needed to compute the break-even points, and the solution and graphical output.

USING POM FOR WINDOWS

Similar to Excel OM, POM for Windows also contains a break-even/cost–volume analysis module.

Solved Problems

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM S7.1

Sara James Bakery, described in Examples S1 and S2, has decided to increase its facilities by adding one additional process line. The firm will have two process lines, each working 7 days a week, 3 shifts per day, 8 hours per shift, with effective capacity of 300,000 rolls. This addition, however, will reduce overall system efficiency to 85%. Compute the expected production with this new effective capacity.

SOLUTION

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Expected production} &= (\text{Effective capacity})\,(\text{Efficiency})\\ &= 300{,}000(.85)\\ &= 255{,}000 \text{ rolls per week}\end{aligned}$$

SOLVED PROBLEM S7.2

Marty McDonald has a business packaging software in Wisconsin. His annual fixed cost is $10,000, direct labor is $3.50 per package, and material is $4.50 per package. The selling price will be $12.50 per package. What is the break-even point in dollars? What is break-even in units?

SOLUTION

$$BEP_{\$} = \frac{F}{1-(V/P)} = \frac{\$10{,}000}{1-(\$8.00/\$12.50)} = \frac{\$10{,}000}{.36} = \$27{,}777$$

$$BEP_{x} = \frac{F}{P-V} = \frac{\$10{,}000}{\$12.50-\$8.00} = \frac{\$10{,}000}{\$4.50} = 2{,}222 \text{ units}$$

SOLVED PROBLEM S7.3

John has been asked to determine whether the $22.50 cost of tickets for the community dinner theater will allow the group to achieve break-even and whether the 175 seating capacity is adequate. The cost for each performance of a 10-performance run is $2,500. The facility rental cost for the entire 10 performances is $10,000. Drinks and parking are extra charges and have their own price and variable costs, as shown below:

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	SELLING PRICE (*P*)	VARIABLE COST (*V*)	PERCENT VARIABLE COST (*V*/*P*)	CONTRIBUTION 1 − (*V*/*P*)	ESTIMATED QUANTITY OF SALES UNITS (SALES)	DOLLAR SALES (SALES × *P*)	PERCENT OF SALES	CONTRIBUTION WEIGHTED BY PERCENT SALES (COL.5 × COL. 8)
Tickets with dinner	$22.50	$10.50	0.467	0.533	175	$3,938	0.741	0.395
Drinks	$ 5.00	$ 1.75	0.350	0.650	175	$ 875	0.165	0.107
Parking	$ 5.00	$ 2.00	0.400	0.600	100	$ 500	0.094	0.056
					450	$5,313	1.000	0.558

SOLUTION

$$BEP_{\$} = \frac{F}{\sum\left[\left(1-\frac{V_i}{P_i}\right)\times(W_i)\right]} = \frac{\$(10\times 2{,}500)+\$10{,}000}{0.558} = \frac{\$35{,}000}{0.558} = \$62{,}724$$

Revenue for each performance (from column 7) = $5,313
Total forecasted revenue for the 10 performances = (10 × $5,313) = $53,130
Forecasted revenue with this mix of sales shows a break-even of $62,724

Thus, given this mix of costs, sales, and capacity John determines that the theater will not break even.

SOLVED PROBLEM S7.4

Your boss has told you to evaluate the cost of two machines. After some questioning, you are assured that they have the costs shown at the right. Assume:

a) The life of each machine is 3 years.
b) The company thinks it knows how to make 14% on investments no riskier than this one.

Determine via the present value method which machine to purchase.

	MACHINE A	MACHINE B
Original cost	$13,000	$20,000
Labor cost per year	2,000	3,000
Floor space per year	500	600
Energy (electricity) per year	1,000	900
Maintenance per year	2,500	500
Total annual cost	$ 6,000	$ 5,000
Salvage value	$ 2,000	$ 7,000

SOLUTION

		MACHINE A			MACHINE B		
		COLUMN 1	COLUMN 2	COLUMN 3	COLUMN 4	COLUMN 5	COLUMN 6
Now	Expense	1.000	$13,000	$13,000	1.000	$20,000	$20,000
1 yr.	Expense	.877	6,000	5,262	.877	5,000	4,385
2 yr.	Expense	.769	6,000	4,614	.769	5,000	3,845
3 yr.	Expense	.675	6,000	4,050	.675	5,000	3,375
				$26,926			$31,605
3 yr.	Salvage revenue	.675	$ 2,000	−1,350	.675	$ 7,000	−4,725
				$25,576			$26,880

We use 1.0 for payments with no discount applied against them (that is, when payments are made now, there is no need for a discount). The other values in columns 1 and 4 are from the 14% column and the respective year in Table S7.2 (for example, the intersection of 14% and 1 year is .877, etc.). Columns 3 and 6 are the products of the present value figures times the combined costs. This computation is made for each year and for the salvage value.

The calculation for machine A for the first year is:

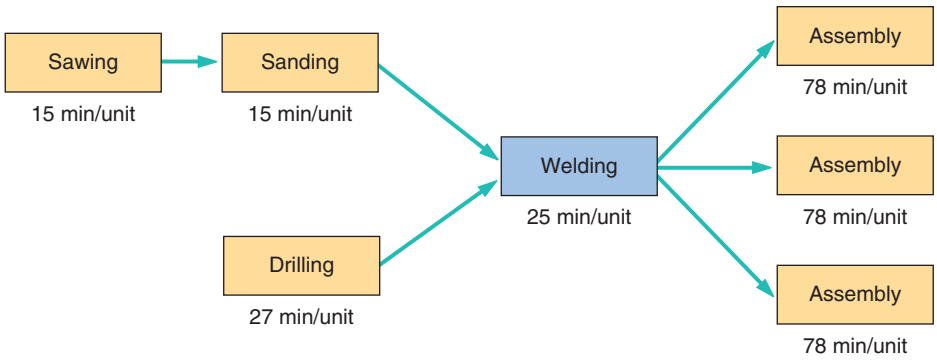
$$.877 \times (\$2{,}000 + \$500 + \$1{,}000 + \$2{,}500) = \$5{,}262$$

The salvage value of the product is subtracted from the summed costs, because it is a receipt of cash. Because the sum of the net costs for machine B is larger than the sum of the net costs for machine A, machine A is the low-cost purchase, and your boss should be so informed.

SOLVED PROBLEM S7.5

T. Smunt Manufacturing Corp. has the process displayed below. The drilling operation occurs separately from and simultaneously with the sawing and sanding operations. The product only needs to go through one of the three assembly operations (the assembly operations are "parallel").

a) Which operation is the bottleneck?
b) What is the throughput time for the overall system?
c) If the firm operates 8 hours per day, 22 days per month, what is the monthly capacity of the manufacturing process?
d) Suppose that a second drilling machine is added, and it takes the same time as the original drilling machine. What is the new bottleneck time of the system?
e) Suppose that a second drilling machine is added, and it takes the same time as the original drilling machine. What is the new throughput time?



SOLUTION

a) The time for *assembly* is 78 minutes/3 operators = 26 minutes per unit, so the station that takes the longest time, hence the bottleneck, is *drilling*, at 27 minutes.
b) System throughput time is the maximum of (15 + 15 + 25 + 78), (27 + 25 + 78) = maximum of (133, 130) = 133 minutes
c) Monthly capacity = (60 minutes)(8 hours)(22 days)/27 minutes per unit = 10,560 minutes per month/27 minutes per unit = 391.11 units/month.
d) The bottleneck shifts to *Assembly*, with a time of 26 minutes per unit.
e) Redundancy does not affect throughput time. It is still 133 minutes.

Problems

Note: PX means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel OM.

Problems S7.1–S7.8 relate to Capacity

• **S7.1** Amy Xia's plant was designed to produce 7,000 hammers per day but is limited to making 6,000 hammers per day because of the time needed to change equipment between styles of hammers. What is the utilization?

• **S7.2** For the past month, the plant in Problem S7.1, which has an effective capacity of 6,500, has made only 4,500 hammers per day because of material delay, employee absences, and other problems. What is its efficiency?

•• **S7.3** If a plant has an effective capacity of 6,500 and an efficiency of 88%, what is the actual (planned) output?

• **S7.4** A plant has an effective capacity of 900 units per day and produces 800 units per day with its product mix; what is its efficiency?

• **S7.5** Material delays have routinely limited production of household sinks to 400 units per day. If the plant efficiency is 80%, what is the effective capacity?

•• **S7.6** The effective capacity and efficiency for the next quarter at MMU Mfg. in Waco, Texas, for each of three departments are shown:

DEPARTMENT	EFFECTIVE CAPACITY	RECENT EFFICIENCY
Design	93,600	.95
Fabrication	156,000	1.03
Finishing	62,400	1.05

Compute the expected production for next quarter for each department.

•• **S7.7** Southeastern Oklahoma State University's business program has the facilities and faculty to handle an enrollment of 2,000 new students per semester. However, in an effort to limit class sizes to a "reasonable" level (under 200, generally), Southeastern's dean, Holly Lutze, placed a ceiling on enrollment of 1,500 new students. Although there was ample demand for business courses last semester, conflicting schedules allowed only 1,450 new students to take business courses. What are the utilization and efficiency of this system?

•• **S7.8** Under ideal conditions, a service bay at a Fast Lube can serve 6 cars per hour. The effective capacity and efficiency of a Fast Lube service bay are known to be 5.5 and 0.880, respectively. What is the minimum number of service bays Fast Lube needs to achieve an anticipated servicing of 200 cars per 8-hour day?

Problems S7.9–S7.15 relate to Bottleneck Analysis and the Theory of Constraints

• **S7.9** A production line at V. J. Sugumaran's machine shop has three stations. The first station can process a unit in 10 minutes. The second station has two identical machines, each of which can process a unit in 12 minutes. (Each unit only needs to be processed on one of the two machines.) The third station can process a unit in 8 minutes. Which station is the bottleneck station?

•• **S7.10** A work cell at Chris Ellis Commercial Laundry has a workstation with two machines, and each unit produced at the station needs to be processed by both of the machines. (The same unit cannot be worked on by both machines simultaneously.) Each machine has a production capacity of 4 units per hour. What is the throughput time of the work cell?

•• **S7.11** The three-station work cell illustrated in Figure S7.7 has a product that must go through one of the two machines at station 1 (they are parallel) before proceeding to station 2.

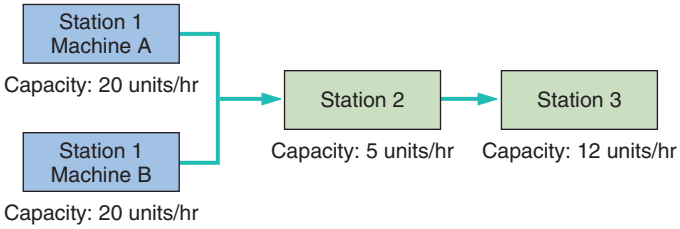


Figure S7.7

a) What is the bottleneck time of the system?
b) What is the bottleneck station of this work cell?
c) What is the throughput time?
d) If the firm operates 10 hours per day, 5 days per week, what is the weekly capacity of this work cell?

•• **S7.12** The three-station work cell at Pullman Mfg., Inc. is illustrated in Figure S7.8. It has two machines at station 1 in parallel (i.e., the product needs to go through only one of the two machines before proceeding to station 2).

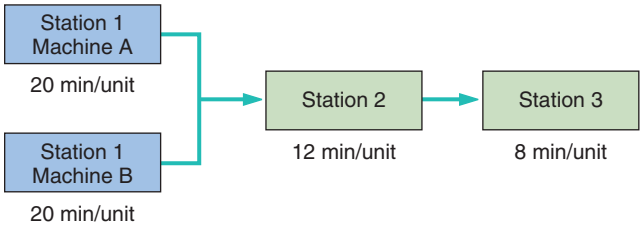


Figure S7.8

a) What is the throughput time of this work cell?
b) What is the bottleneck time of this work cell?
c) What is the bottleneck station?
d) If the firm operates 8 hours per day, 6 days per week, what is the weekly capacity of this work cell?

•• **S7.13** The Pullman Mfg., Inc., three-station work cell illustrated in Figure S7.8 has two machines at station 1 in parallel. (The product needs to go through only one of the two machines before proceeding to station 2.) The manager, Ms. Hartley, has asked you to evaluate the system if she adds a parallel machine at station 2.
a) What is the throughput time of the new work cell?
b) What is the bottleneck time of the new work cell?
c) If the firm operates 8 hours per day, 6 days per week, what is the weekly capacity of this work cell?
d) How did the addition of the second machine at workstation 2 affect the performance of the work cell from Problem S7.12?

• **S7.14** Klassen Toy Company, Inc., assembles two parts (parts 1 and 2): Part 1 is first processed at workstation A for 15 minutes per unit and then processed at workstation B for

10 minutes per unit. Part 2 is simultaneously processed at workstation C for 20 minutes per unit. Work stations B and C feed the parts to an assembler at workstation D, where the two parts are assembled. The time at workstation D is 15 minutes.
a) What is the bottleneck of this process?
b) What is the hourly capacity of the process?

•• **S7.15** A production process at Kenneth Day Manufacturing is shown in Figure S7.9. The drilling operation occurs separately from, and simultaneously with, sawing and sanding, which are independent and sequential operations. A product needs to go through only one of the three assembly operations (the operations are in parallel).
a) Which operation is the bottleneck?
b) What is the bottleneck time?
c) What is the throughput time of the overall system?
d) If the firm operates 8 hours per day, 20 days per month, what is the monthly capacity of the manufacturing process?

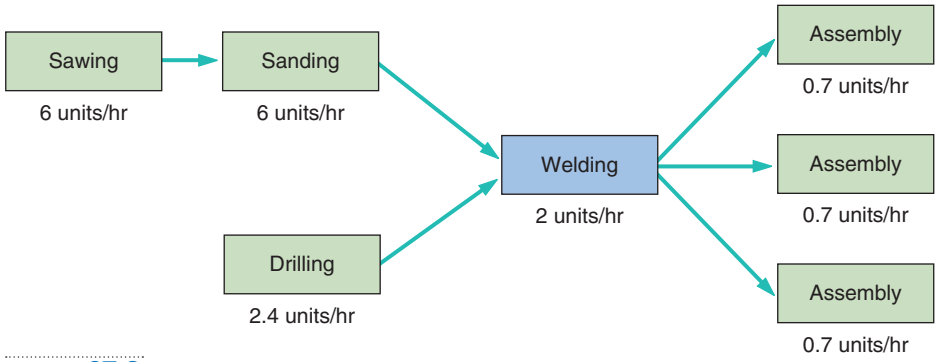


Figure S7.9

Problems S7.16–S7.31 relate to Break-Even Analysis

• **S7.16** Smithson Cutting is opening a new line of scissors for supermarket distribution. It estimates its fixed cost to be $500.00 and its variable cost to be $0.50 per unit. Selling price is expected to average $0.75 per unit.
a) What is Smithson's break-even point in units?
b) What is the break-even point in dollars? PX

• **S7.17** Markland Manufacturing intends to increase capacity by overcoming a bottleneck operation by adding new equipment. Two vendors have presented proposals. The fixed costs for proposal A are $50,000, and for proposal B, $70,000. The variable cost for A is $12.00, and for B, $10.00. The revenue generated by each unit is $20.00.
a) What is the break-even point in units for proposal A?
b) What is the break-even point in units for proposal B? PX

• **S7.18** Using the data in Problem S7.17:
a) What is the break-even point in dollars for proposal A if you add $10,000 installation to the fixed cost?
b) What is the break-even point in dollars for proposal B if you add $10,000 installation to the fixed cost? PX

• **S7.19** Given the data in Problem S7.17, at what volume (units) of output would the two alternatives yield the same profit? PX

•• **S7.20** Janelle Heinke, the owner of Ha'Peppas!, is considering a new oven in which to bake the firm's signature dish, vegetarian pizza. Oven type A can handle 20 pizzas an hour. The fixed costs associated with oven A are $20,000 and the variable costs are $2.00 per pizza. Oven B is larger and can handle 40 pizzas an hour. The fixed costs associated with oven B are $30,000 and the variable costs are $1.25 per pizza. The pizzas sell for $14 each.
a) What is the break-even point for each oven?
b) If the owner expects to sell 9,000 pizzas, which oven should she purchase?
c) If the owner expects to sell 12,000 pizzas, which oven should she purchase?
d) At what volume should Janelle switch ovens? PX

Corbis

•• **S7.21** Given the following data, calculate a) BEP_x; b) $BEP_\$$; and c) the profit at 100,000 units:

$$P = \$8/\text{unit} \quad V = \$4/\text{unit} \quad F = \$50{,}000$$ PX

•• **S7.22** You are considering opening a copy service in the student union. You estimate your fixed cost at $15,000 and the variable cost of each copy sold at $.01. You expect the selling price to average $.05.
a) What is the break-even point in dollars?
b) What is the break-even point in units? PX

•• **S7.23** An electronics firm is currently manufacturing an item that has a variable cost of $.50 per unit and a selling price of $1.00 per unit. Fixed costs are $14,000. Current volume is

30,000 units. The firm can substantially improve the product quality by adding a new piece of equipment at an additional fixed cost of $6,000. Variable cost would increase to $.60, but volume should jump to 50,000 units due to a higher-quality product. Should the company buy the new equipment? PX

•• **S7.24** The electronics firm in Problem S7.23 is now considering the new equipment and increasing the selling price to $1.10 per unit. With the higher-quality product, the new volume is expected to be 45,000 units. Under these circumstances, should the company purchase the new equipment and increase the selling price? PX

•••• **S7.25** Zan Azlett and Angela Zesiger have joined forces to start A&Z Lettuce Products, a processor of packaged shredded lettuce for institutional use. Zan has years of food processing experience, and Angela has extensive commercial food preparation experience. The process will consist of opening crates of lettuce and then sorting, washing, slicing, preserving, and finally packaging the prepared lettuce. Together, with help from vendors, they think they can adequately estimate demand, fixed costs, revenues, and variable cost per 5-pound bag of lettuce. They think a largely manual process will have monthly fixed costs of $37,500 and variable costs of $1.75 per bag. A more mechanized process will have fixed costs of $75,000 per month with variable costs of $1.25 per 5-pound bag. They expect to sell the shredded lettuce for $2.50 per 5-pound bag.

a) What is the break-even quantity for the manual process?
b) What is the revenue at the break-even quantity for the manual process?
c) What is the break-even quantity for the mechanized process?
d) What is the revenue at the break-even quantity for the mechanized process?
e) What is the monthly profit or loss of the *manual* process if they expect to sell 60,000 bags of lettuce per month?
f) What is the monthly profit or loss of the *mechanized* process if they expect to sell 60,000 bags of lettuce per month?
g) At what quantity would Zan and Angela be indifferent to the process selected?
h) Over what range of demand would the *manual* process be preferred over the mechanized process? Over what range of demand would the *mechanized* process be preferred over the manual process? PX

•••• **S7.26** As a prospective owner of a club known as the Red Rose, you are interested in determining the volume of sales dollars necessary for the coming year to reach the break-even point. You have decided to break down the sales for the club into four categories, the first category being beer. Your estimate of the beer sales is that 30,000 drinks will be served. The selling price for each unit will average $1.50; the cost is $.75. The second major category is meals, which you expect to be 10,000 units with an average price of $10.00 and a cost of $5.00. The third major category is desserts and wine, of which you also expect to sell 10,000 units, but with an average price of $2.50 per unit sold and a cost of $1.00 per unit. The final category is lunches and inexpensive sandwiches, which you expect to total 20,000 units at an average price of $6.25 with a food cost of $3.25. Your fixed cost (i.e., rent, utilities, and so on) is $1,800 per month plus $2,000 per month for entertainment.

a) What is your break-even point in dollars per month?
b) What is the expected number of meals each day if you are open 30 days a month?

••• **S7.27** As manager of the St. Cloud Theatre Company, you have decided that concession sales will support themselves. The following table provides the information you have been able to put together thus far:

ITEM	SELLING PRICE	VARIABLE COST	% OF REVENUE
Soft drink	$1.00	$.65	25
Wine	1.75	.95	25
Coffee	1.00	.30	30
Candy	1.00	.30	20

Last year's manager, Jim Freeland, has advised you to be sure to add 10% of variable cost as a waste allowance for all categories.

You estimate labor cost to be $250.00 (5 booths with 2 people each). Even if nothing is sold, your labor cost will be $250.00, so you decide to consider this a fixed cost. Booth rental, which is a contractual cost at $50.00 for *each* booth per night, is also a fixed cost.

a) What is the break-even volume per evening performance?
b) How much wine would you expect to sell each evening at the break-even point?

Additional problems **S7.28–S7.31** *are available in* MyOMLab.

Problems S7.32–S7.33 relate to Applying Expected Monetary Value (EMV) to Capacity Decisions

•• **S7.32** James Lawson's Bed and Breakfast, in a small historic Mississippi town, must decide how to subdivide (remodel) the large old home that will become its inn. There are three alternatives: Option A would modernize all baths and combine rooms, leaving the inn with four suites, each suitable for two to four adults. Option B would modernize only the second floor; the results would be six suites, four for two to four adults, two for two adults only. Option C (the status quo option) leaves all walls intact. In this case, there are eight rooms available, but only two are suitable for four adults, and four rooms will not have private baths. Below are the details of profit and demand patterns that will accompany each option:

	ANNUAL PROFIT UNDER VARIOUS DEMAND PATTERNS			
ALTERNATIVES	HIGH	P	AVERAGE	P
A (modernize all)	$90,000	.5	$25,000	.5
B (modernize 2nd)	$80,000	.4	$70,000	.6
C (status quo)	$60,000	.3	$55,000	.7

Which option has the highest expected monetary value? PX

•••• **S7.33** As operations manager of Holz Furniture, you must make a decision about adding a line of rustic furniture. In discussing the possibilities with your sales manager, Steve Gilbert, you decide that there will definitely be a market and that your firm should enter that market. However, because rustic furniture has a different finish than your standard offering, you decide you need another process line. There is no doubt in your mind about the decision, and you are sure that you should have a second process. But you do question how large to make it. A large process line is going to cost $400,000; a small process line will cost $300,000. The question, therefore, is the demand for rustic furniture. After extensive discussion with Mr. Gilbert and Tim Ireland of Ireland Market Research, Inc., you determine that the best estimate you can make

is that there is a two-out-of-three chance of profit from sales as large as $600,000 and a one-out-of-three chance as low as $300,000.

With a large process line, you could handle the high figure of $600,000. However, with a small process line you could not and would be forced to expand (at a cost of $150,000), after which time your profit from sales would be $500,000 rather than the $600,000 because of the lost time in expanding the process. If you do not expand the small process, your profit from sales would be held to $400,000. If you build a small process and the demand is low, you can handle all of the demand.

Should you open a large or small process line?

Problems S7.34–S7.45 relate to Applying Investment Analysis to Strategy-Driven Investments

•• **S7.34** What is the net present value of an investment that costs $75,000 and has a salvage value of $45,000? The annual profit from the investment is $15,000 each year for 5 years. The cost of capital at this risk level is 12%. PX

• **S7.35** The initial cost of an investment is $65,000 and the cost of capital is 10%. The return is $16,000 per year for 8 years. What is the net present value? PX

• **S7.36** What is the present value of $5,600 when the interest rate is 8% and the return of $5,600 will not be received for 15 years? PX

•• **S7.37** Tim Smunt has been asked to evaluate two machines. After some investigation, he determines that they have the costs shown in the following table. He is told to assume that:

1. The life of each machine is 3 years.
2. The company thinks it knows how to make 12% on investments no more risky than this one.
3. Labor and maintenance are paid at the end of the year.

	MACHINE A	MACHINE B
Original cost	$10,000	$20,000
Labor per year	2,000	4,000
Maintenance per year	4,000	1,000
Salvage value	2,000	7,000

Determine, via the present value method, which machine Tim should recommend.

•••• **S7.38** Your boss has told you to evaluate two ovens for Tink-the-Tinkers, a gourmet sandwich shop. After some questioning of vendors and receipt of specifications, you are assured that the ovens have the attributes and costs shown in the following table. The following two assumptions are appropriate:

1. The life of each machine is 5 years.
2. The company thinks it knows how to make 14% on investments no more risky than this one.

a) Determine via the present value method which machine to tell your boss to purchase.
b) What assumption are you making about the ovens?
c) What assumptions are you making in your methodology?

	THREE SMALL OVENS AT $1,250 EACH	TWO LARGE OVENS AT $2,500 EACH
Original cost	$3,750	$5,000
Labor per year in excess of larger models	$ 750 (total)	
Cleaning/ maintenance	$ 750 ($250 each)	$ 400 ($200 each)
Salvage value	$ 750 ($250 each)	$1,000 ($500 each)

•••• **S7.39** Bold's Gym, a health club chain, is considering expanding into a new location: the initial investment would be $1 million in equipment, renovation, and a 6-year lease, and its annual upkeep and expenses would be $75,000 (paid at the beginning of the year). Its planning horizon is 6 years out, and at the end, it can sell the equipment for $50,000. Club capacity is 500 members who would pay an annual fee of $600. Bold's expects to have no problems filling membership slots. Assume that the interest rate is 10%. (See Table S7.2.)

a) What is the present value profit/loss of the deal?
b) The club is considering offering a special deal to the members in the first year. For $3,000 upfront they get a full 6-year membership (i.e., 1 year free). Would it make financial sense to offer this deal?

Additional problems **S7.40–S7.45** *are available in* MyOMLab.

CASE STUDY

Capacity Planning at Arnold Palmer Hospital

Video Case

Since opening day, Arnold Palmer Hospital has experienced an explosive growth in demand for its services. One of only six hospitals in the U.S. to specialize in health care for women and children, Arnold Palmer Hospital has cared for over 1,500,000 patients who came to the Orlando facility from all 50 states and more than 100 other countries. With patient satisfaction scores in the top 10% of U.S. hospitals surveyed (over 95% of patients would recommend the hospital to others), one of Arnold Palmer Hospital's main focuses is delivery of babies. Originally built with 281 beds and a capacity for 6,500 births per year, the hospital steadily approached and then passed 10,000 births. Looking at Table S7.4, Executive Director Kathy Swanson knew an expansion was necessary.

With continuing population growth in its market area serving 18 central Florida counties, Arnold Palmer Hospital was delivering the equivalent of a kindergarten class of babies every day and still not meeting demand. Supported with substantial additional demographic analysis, the hospital was ready to move ahead with

a capacity expansion plan and a new 11-story hospital building across the street from the existing facility.

Thirty-five planning teams were established to study such issues as (1) specific forecasts, (2) services that would transfer to the new facility, (3) services that would remain in the existing facility, (4) staffing needs, (5) capital equipment, (6) pro forma accounting data, and (7) regulatory requirements. Ultimately, Arnold Palmer Hospital was ready to move ahead with a budget of $100 million and a commitment to an additional 150 beds. But given the growth of the central Florida region, Swanson decided to expand the hospital in stages: the top two floors would be empty interiors ("shell") to be completed at a later date, and the fourth-floor operating room could be doubled in size when needed. "With the new facility in place, we are now able to handle up to 16,000 births per year," says Swanson.

Discussion Questions*

1. Given the capacity planning discussion in the text (see Figure S7.6), what approach is being taken by Arnold Palmer Hospital toward matching capacity to demand?
2. What kind of major changes could take place in Arnold Palmer Hospital's demand forecast that would leave the hospital with an underutilized facility (namely, what are the risks connected with this capacity decision)?
3. Use regression analysis to forecast the point at which Swanson needs to "build out" the top two floors of the new building, namely, when demand will exceed 16,000 births.

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies the case before addressing these questions.

TABLE S7.4 Births at Arnold Palmer Hospital

YEAR	BIRTHS
1995	6,144
1996	6,230
1997	6,432
1998	6,950
1999	7,377
2000	8,655
2001	9,536
2002	9,825
2003	10,253
2004	10,555
2005	12,316
2006	13,070
2007	14,028
2008	14,241
2009	13,050
2010	12,571
2011	12,978
2012	13,529
2013	13,576
2014	13,994

- **Additional Case Study:** Visit MyOMLab for this free case study:
  Southwestern University (D): Requires the development of a multiproduct break-even solution.

Endnote

1. See E. M. Goldratt and J. Cox, *The Goal: A Process of Ongoing Improvement*, 3rd rev. ed., Great Barrington, MA: North River Press, 2004.

Supplement 7 Rapid Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
CAPACITY (pp. 346–352)	■ **Capacity**—The "throughput," or number of units a facility can hold, receive, store, or produce in a period of time. Capacity decisions often determine capital requirements and therefore a large portion of fixed cost. Capacity also determines whether demand will be satisfied or whether facilities will be idle. *Determining facility size, with an objective of achieving high levels of utilization and a high return on investment, is critical.* Capacity planning can be viewed in three time horizons: 1. *Long-range* (> 1 year)—Adding facilities and long lead-time equipment 2. *Intermediate-range* (3–18 months)—"Aggregate planning" tasks, including adding equipment, personnel, and shifts; subcontracting; and building or using inventory 3. *Short-range* (< 3 months)—Scheduling jobs and people, and allocating machinery ■ **Design capacity**—The theoretical maximum output of a system in a given period, under ideal conditions. Most organizations operate their facilities at a rate less than the design capacity. ■ **Effective capacity**—The capacity a firm can expect to achieve, given its product mix, methods of scheduling, maintenance, and standards of quality. ■ **Utilization**—Actual output as a percent of design capacity. ■ **Efficiency**—Actual output as a percent of effective capacity. $$\text{Utilization} = \text{Actual output}/\text{Design capacity} \quad \text{(S7-1)}$$ $$\text{Efficiency} = \text{Actual output}/\text{Effective capacity} \quad \text{(S7-2)}$$ When demand exceeds capacity, a firm may be able to curtail demand simply by raising prices, increasing lead times (which may be inevitable), and discouraging marginally profitable business. When capacity exceeds demand, a firm may want to stimulate demand through price reductions or aggressive marketing, or it may accommodate the market via product changes. In the service sector, scheduling customers is *demand management,* and scheduling the workforce is *capacity management.* When demand and capacity are fairly well matched, demand management in services can often be handled with appointments, reservations, or a first-come, first-served rule. Otherwise, discounts based on time of day may be used (e.g., "early bird" specials, matinee pricing). When managing demand in services is not feasible, managing capacity through changes in full-time, temporary, or part-time staff may be an option.	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4 Problems: S7.1–S7.8 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: S7.1 ACTIVE MODEL S7.1
BOTTLENECK ANALYSIS AND THE THEORY OF CONSTRAINTS (pp. 352–356)	■ **Capacity analysis**—Determining throughput capacity of workstations or an entire production system. ■ **Bottleneck**—The limiting factor or constraint in a system. ■ **Process time**—The time to produce a unit (or batch) at a workstation. ■ **Bottleneck time**—The process time of the longest (slowest) process. ■ **Throughput time**—The time it takes for a product to go through the production process *with no waiting*, i.e., the time of the longest path through the system. If n parallel (redundant) operations are added, the process time of the combined operations will equal $1/n$ times the process time of the original. With simultaneous processing, an order or product is essentially *split* into different paths to be rejoined later on. The longest path through the system is deemed the throughput time. ■ **Theory of constraints (TOC)**—A body of knowledge that deals with anything limiting an organization's ability to achieve its goals.	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4 Problems: S7.9–S7.15 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: S7.5

Supplement 7 *Rapid* Review *continued*

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
BREAK-EVEN ANALYSIS (pp. 356–360)	■ **Break-even analysis**—A means of finding the point, in dollars and units, at which costs equal revenues. *Fixed costs* are costs that exist even if no units are produced. Variable costs are those that vary with the volume of units produced. In the break-even model, costs and revenue are assumed to increase linearly. $\text{Break-even in units} = \frac{\text{Total Fixed cost}}{\text{Price} - \text{Variable cost}} = \frac{F}{P - V}$ (S7-3) $\text{Break-even in dollars} = \frac{\text{Total Fixed cost}}{1 - \frac{\text{Variable cost}}{\text{Price}}} = \frac{F}{1 - \left(\frac{V}{P}\right)}$ (S7-4) $\text{Multiproduct break-even point in dollars} = BEP_{\$} = \frac{F}{\sum\left[\left(1 - \frac{V_i}{P_i}\right) \times (W_i)\right]}$ (S7-5)	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4 Problems: S7.16–S7.31 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: S7.3 **ACTIVE MODEL S7.2**
REDUCING RISK WITH INCREMENTAL CHANGES (pp. 360–361)	Demand growth is usually in small units, while capacity additions are likely to be both instantaneous and in large units. To reduce risk, incremental changes that hedge demand forecasts may be a good option. Four approaches to capacity expansion are (1) *leading* strategy, with incremental expansion, (2) *leading* strategy with one step expansion, (3) *lag* strategy, and (4) *straddle* strategy. Both lag strategy and straddle strategy delay capital expenditure.	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4 **VIDEO S7.1** Capacity Planning at Arnold Palmer Hospital
APPLYING EXPECTED MONETARY VALUE (p. 361)	Determining expected monetary value requires specifying alternatives and various states of nature (e.g., demand or market favorability). By assigning probability values to the various states of nature, we can make decisions that maximize the expected value of the alternatives.	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.4 Problems: S7.32–S7.33
APPLYING INVESTMENT ANALYSIS TO STRATEGY-DRIVEN INVESTMENTS (pp. 362–364)	■ **Net present value**—A means of determining the discounted value of a series of future cash receipts. $F = P(1 + i)^N$ (S7-6) $P = \frac{F}{(1 + i)^N}$ (S7-7) $P = \frac{F}{(1 + i)^N} = FX$ (S7-8) When making several investments, those with higher net present values are preferable to investments with lower net present values.	Concept Questions: 6.1–6.4 Problems: S7.34–S7.45 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: S7.4

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the supplement and the key terms listed at the end of the supplement.

LO S7.1 Capacity decisions should be made on the basis of:
- **a)** building sustained competitive advantage.
- **b)** good financial returns.
- **c)** a coordinated plan.
- **d)** integration into the company's strategy.
- **e)** all of the above.

LO S7.2 Effective capacity is:
- **a)** the capacity a firm expects to achieve, given the current operating constraints.
- **b)** the percentage of design capacity actually achieved.
- **c)** the percentage of capacity actually achieved.
- **d)** actual output.
- **e)** efficiency.

LO S7.3 System capacity is based on:
- **a)** the bottleneck.
- **b)** throughput time.
- **c)** time of the fastest station.
- **d)** throughput time plus waiting time.
- **e)** none of the above.

LO S7.4 The break-even point is:
- **a)** adding processes to meet the point of changing product demands.
- **b)** improving processes to increase throughput.
- **c)** the point in dollars or units at which cost equals revenue.
- **d)** adding or removing capacity to meet demand.
- **e)** the total cost of a process alternative.

LO S7.5 Expected monetary value is most appropriate:
- **a)** when the payoffs are equal.
- **b)** when the probability of each decision alternative is known.
- **c)** when probabilities are the same.
- **d)** when both revenue and cost are known.
- **e)** when probabilities of each state of nature are known.

LO S7.6 Net present value:
- **a)** is greater if cash receipts occur later rather than earlier.
- **b)** is greater if cash receipts occur earlier rather than later.
- **c)** is revenue minus fixed cost.
- **d)** is preferred over break-even analysis.
- **e)** is greater if $100 monthly payments are received in a lump sum ($1,200) at the end of the year.

Answers: LO S7.1. e; LO S7.2. a; LO S7.3. a; LO S7.4. c; LO S7.5. b; LO S7.6. b.

Location Decisions

CHAPTER 8

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *FedEx*

- The Strategic Importance of Location *378*
- Factors That Affect Location Decisions *379*
- Methods of Evaluating Location Alternatives *382*
- Service Location Strategy *388*
- Geographic Information Systems *389*

Alaska Airlines

Alaska Airlines

10 OM STRATEGY DECISIONS

- Design of Goods and Services
- Managing Quality
- Process Strategy
- *Location Strategies*
- Layout Strategies
- Human Resources
- Supply-Chain Management
- Inventory Management
- Scheduling
- Maintenance

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
FedEx

Location Provides Competitive Advantage for FedEx

Overnight-delivery powerhouse FedEx has believed in the hub concept for its 46-year existence. Even though Fred Smith, founder and CEO, got a C on his college paper proposing a hub for small-package delivery, the idea has proven extremely successful. Starting with one central location in Memphis, Tennessee (now called its *superhub*), the $45 billion firm has added a European hub in Paris, an Asian hub in Guangzhou, China, a Latin American hub in Miami, and a Canadian hub in Toronto. FedEx's fleet of 667 planes flies into 375 airports worldwide, then delivers to the door with more than 80,000 vans and trucks.

At the FedEx hub in Memphis, Tennessee, approximately 100 FedEx aircraft converge each night around midnight with more than 5 million documents and packages.

Oliver Berg/EPA/Newscom

At the preliminary sorting area, packages and documents are sorted and sent to a secondary sorting area. The Memphis facility covers 1.5 million square feet; it is big enough to hold 33 football fields. Packages are sorted and exchanged until 4 A.M.

Troy Glasgow/AP Images

Lance Murphey/Reuters/Newscom

Packages and documents that have already gone through the primary and secondary sorts are checked by city, state, and zip code. They are then placed in containers that are loaded onto aircraft for delivery to their final destinations in 236 countries.

FedEx's fleet of 667 planes makes it the largest airline in the world. More than 80,000 trucks complete the delivery process.

Matt York/AP Images

Shi Li/shzq/ImagineChina

The $150 million hub opened in Guangzhou in 2009 lies in the heart of one of China's fastest-growing manufacturing districts. FedEx controls 39% of the China-to-U.S. air express market.

Why was Memphis picked as FedEx's central location? (1) It is located in the middle of the U.S. (2) It has very few hours of bad weather closures, perhaps contributing to the firm's excellent flight-safety record. (3) It provided FedEx with generous tax incentives.

Each night, except Sunday, FedEx brings to Memphis packages from throughout the world that are going to cities for which FedEx does not have direct flights. The central hub permits service to a far greater number of points with fewer aircraft than the traditional City-A-to-City-B system. It also allows FedEx to match aircraft flights with package loads each night and to reroute flights when load volume requires it, a major cost savings. Moreover, FedEx also believes that the central hub system helps reduce mishandling and delay in transit because there is total control over the packages from pickup point through delivery.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO 8.1 ***Identify*** and explain seven major factors that affect location decisions 380

LO 8.2 ***Compute*** labor productivity 380

LO 8.3 ***Apply*** the factor-rating method 383

LO 8.4 ***Complete*** a locational cost–volume analysis graphically and mathematically 385

LO 8.5 ***Use*** the center-of-gravity method 386

LO 8.6 ***Understand*** the differences between service- and industrial-sector location analysis 389

The Strategic Importance of Location

VIDEO 8.1
Hard Rock's Location Selection

World markets continue to expand, and the global nature of business is accelerating. Indeed, one of the most important strategic decisions made by many companies, including FedEx, Mercedes-Benz, and Hard Rock, is where to locate their operations. When FedEx opened its Asian hub in Guangzhou, China, it set the stage for "round-the-world" flights linking its Paris and Memphis package hubs to Asia. When Mercedes-Benz announced its plans to build its first major overseas plant in Vance, Alabama, it completed a year of competition among 170 sites in 30 states and two countries. When Hard Rock Cafe opened in Moscow, it ended 3 years of advance preparation of a Russian food-supply chain. The strategic impact, cost, and international aspect of these decisions indicate how significant location decisions are.

Firms throughout the world are using the concepts and techniques of this chapter to address the location decision because location greatly affects both fixed and variable costs. Location has a major impact on the overall risk and profit of the company. For instance, depending on the product and type of production or service taking place, transportation costs alone can total as much as 25% of the product's selling price. That is, one-fourth of a firm's total revenue may be needed just to cover freight expenses of the raw materials coming in and finished products going out. Other costs that may be influenced by location include taxes, wages, raw material costs, and rents. When all costs are considered, location may alter total operating expenses as much as 50%.

The economics of transportation are so significant that companies—and even cities—have coalesced around a transportation advantage. For centuries, rivers and ports, and more recently rail hubs and then interstate highways, were a major ingredient in the location decision. Today airports are often the deciding factor, providing fast, low-cost transportation of goods and people.

Companies make location decisions relatively infrequently, usually because demand has outgrown the current plant's capacity or because of changes in labor productivity, exchange rates, costs, or local attitudes. Companies may also relocate their manufacturing or service facilities because of shifts in demographics and customer demand.

Location options include (1) expanding an existing facility instead of moving, (2) maintaining current sites while adding another facility elsewhere, or (3) closing the existing facility and moving to another location.

The location decision often depends on the type of business. For industrial location decisions, the strategy is usually minimizing costs, although locations that foster innovation and creativity may also be critical. For retail and professional service organizations, the strategy focuses on maximizing revenue. Warehouse location strategy, however, may be driven by a combination of cost and speed of delivery. *The objective of location strategy is to maximize the benefit of location to the firm.*

Location and Costs Because location is such a significant cost and revenue driver, location often has the power to make (or break) a company's business strategy. Key multinationals in every major industry, from automobiles to cellular phones, now have or are planning a presence in each of their major markets. Location decisions to support a low-cost strategy require particularly careful consideration.

Once management is committed to a specific location, many costs are firmly in place and difficult to reduce. For instance, if a new factory location is in a region with high energy costs, even good management with an outstanding energy strategy is starting at a disadvantage. Management is in a similar bind with its human resource strategy if labor in the selected location is expensive, ill-trained, or has a poor work ethic. Consequently, hard work to determine an optimal facility location is a good investment.

Factors That Affect Location Decisions

Selecting a facility location is becoming much more complex with globalization. As we saw in Chapter 2, globalization has taken place because of the development of (1) market economics; (2) better international communications; (3) more rapid, reliable travel and shipping; (4) ease of capital flow between countries; and (5) high differences in labor costs. Many firms now consider opening new offices, factories, retail stores, or banks outside their home country. Location decisions transcend national borders. In fact, as Figure 8.1 shows, the sequence of location decisions often begins with choosing a country in which to operate.

One approach to selecting a country is to identify what the parent organization believes are key success factors (KSFs) needed to achieve competitive advantage. Six possible country KSFs are listed at the top of Figure 8.1. Using such factors (including some negative ones, such as crime) the World Economic Forum biannually ranks the global competitiveness of 144 countries (see Table 8.1). Switzerland placed first because of its high rates of saving and investment, openness to trade, quality education, and efficient government.

Once a firm decides which country is best for its location, it focuses on a region of the chosen country and a community. The final step in the location decision process is choosing a specific site within a community. The company must pick the one location that is best suited for shipping and receiving, zoning, utilities, size, and cost. Again, Figure 8.1 summarizes this series of decisions and the factors that affect them.

TABLE 8.1

Competitiveness of 144 Selected Countries, Based on Annual Surveys of 13,000 Business Executives

COUNTRY	2015 RANKING
Switzerland	1
Singapore	2
U.S.	3
Finland	4
Germany	5
Japan	6
⋮	
Canada	15
⋮	
Israel	27
China	28
⋮	
Russia	53
⋮	
Mexico	61
⋮	
Vietnam	68
⋮	
Haiti	137
⋮	
Chad	143
Guinea	144

Source: www.weforum.org, 2015. Used with permission of World Economic Forum.

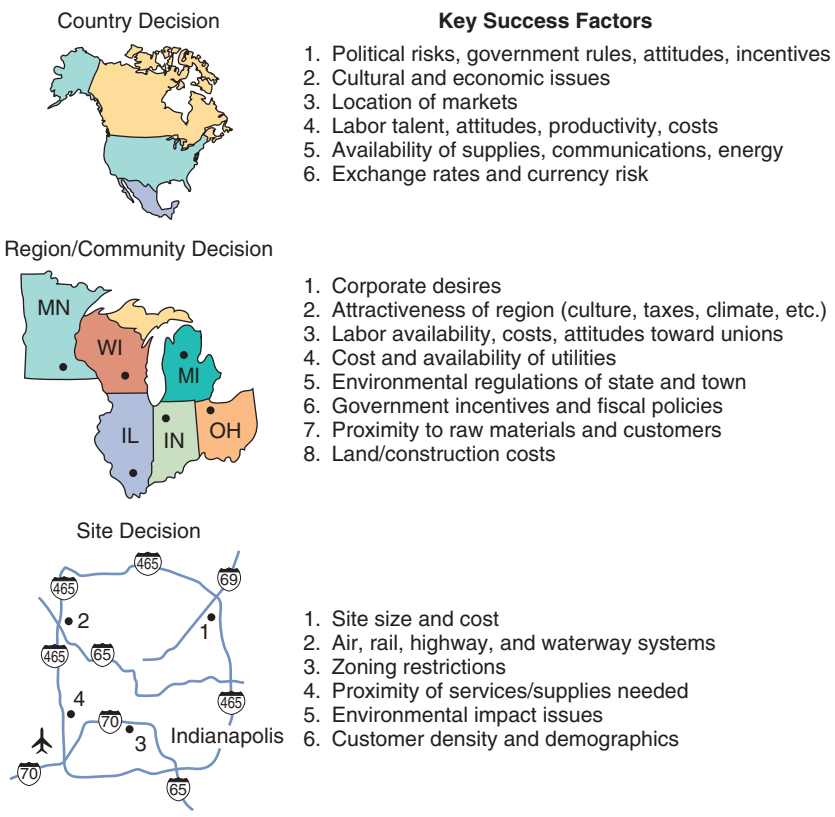


Figure **8.1**

Some Considerations and Factors That Affect Location Decisions

LO 8.1 *Identify* and explain seven major factors that affect location decisions

Besides globalization, a number of other factors affect the location decision. Among these are labor productivity, foreign exchange, culture, changing attitudes toward the industry, and proximity to markets, suppliers, and competitors.

Labor Productivity

LO 8.2 *Compute* labor productivity

When deciding on a location, management may be tempted by an area's low wage rates. However, wage rates cannot be considered by themselves, as Otis Elevator discovered when it opened its plant in Mexico in 1998. But by 2011, Otis found a move to an automated plant in South Carolina more advantageous. Management must also consider productivity.

As discussed in Chapter 1, differences exist in productivity in various countries. What management is really interested in is the combination of production and the wage rate. For example, if Otis Elevator pays $70 per day with 60 units produced per day in South Carolina, it will spend less on labor than at a Mexican plant that pays $25 per day with production of 20 units per day:

$$\frac{\text{Labor cost per day}}{\text{Production (units per day)}} = \text{Labor cost per unit}$$

1. Case 1: South Carolina plant:

$$\frac{\$70 \text{ Wages per day}}{60 \text{ Units produced per day}} = \frac{\$70}{60} = \$1.17 \text{ per unit}$$

2. Case 2: Juarez, Mexico, plant:

$$\frac{\$25 \text{ Wages per day}}{20 \text{ Units produced per day}} = \frac{\$25}{20} = \$1.25 \text{ per unit}$$

STUDENT TIP Final cost is the critical factor, and low productivity can negate low wages.

Employees with poor training, poor education, or poor work habits may not be a good buy even at low wages. By the same token, employees who cannot or will not always reach their places of work are not much good to the organization, even at low wages. (Labor cost per unit is sometimes called the *labor content* of the product.)

Exchange Rates and Currency Risk

Although wage rates and productivity may make a country seem economical, unfavorable exchange rates may negate any savings. Sometimes, though, firms can take advantage of a particularly favorable exchange rate by relocating or exporting to a foreign country. However, the values of foreign currencies continually rise and fall in most countries. Such changes could well make what was a good location in 2015 a disastrous one in 2019. *Operational hedging* describes the situation where firms have excess capacity in multiple countries and then shift production levels from location to location as exchange rates change.

Costs

Tangible costs
Readily identifiable costs that can be measured with some precision.

We can divide location costs into two categories, tangible and intangible. **Tangible costs** are those costs that are readily identifiable and precisely measured. They include utilities, labor, material, taxes, depreciation, and other costs that the accounting department and management can identify. In addition, such costs as transportation of raw materials, transportation of finished goods, and site construction are all factored into the overall cost of a location. Government incentives, as we see in the *OM in Action* box "Luxembourg, a Country who Saved Companies Billions," also affect a location's cost.

Intangible costs
A category of location costs that cannot be easily quantified, such as quality of life and government.

Intangible costs are less easily quantified. They include quality of education, public transportation facilities, community attitudes toward the industry and the company, and quality and attitude of prospective employees. They also include quality-of-life variables, such as climate and sports teams, that may influence personnel recruiting.

OM in Action Luxembourg, a Country who Saved Companies Billions

Situated at the geographical and political heart of Europe, Luxembourg has become a major international financial centre over the years and is now the largest hub for investment funds in the EU. It has not been hit hard by the financial crisis, with the government maintaining incentives such as a low VAT rate, political stability and swift updates to legislation.

The main factors that attract foreign investors havenot changed much over the past few years. Luxembourg has a stable political system and a strong economy that enables it to maintain and even reinforce the attractiveness of its tax regime for foreign investors. It also has an important financial centre, making it convenient for the funds industry and financing transactions. Another factor is that Luxembourg is highly international, both politically and economically, with an educated, multicultural and multilingual workforce. Overall, more than 40,000 companies are registered in the country (with household names like PepsiCo PEP and Heinz).

The banking and financial sector keeps leading the country's economy. With over 147 banks from 27 countries, and over 42,000 employees, Luxembourg is a key financial centre for all European investment funds, private banking activities, banks, life insurance and reinsurance companies. It's also getting to be known as a centre of international law firms. The first wave coming into the country was the top law firms such as Clifford Chance and Allen & Overy, along with US firms such as Dechert and Bakers. Now there's a wave of second-tier law firms joining the top players in Luxembourg, although there are doubts whether they are bringing added value or trying to get a share of the cake.There are also concerns about foreign firms posing problems for locals when it comes to recruiting skilled, educated manpower.They actually make the market more competitive. In some cases, there have been the whole team moving from an existing firm to join or found the Luxembourg office of a foreign firm.

gdbrekke/Fotolia

Moreover, these days the country is experiencing new challenges. Luxembourg is accused for facilitating tax arrangements or what is called sometimes as tax escape. US and some European politicians believe that a considerable number of large corporations use their legal expertise, and choose countries like Luxembourg to transfer parts of their business to. This helps them to save billions in their taxes. The EU has been trying to not provide such opportunities for those companies. G-20 countries came up with an idea of integrated tax rulings in 2014, which pushed Luxemburg to share its tax governance system. The tax regulation has become even tougher in early 2015, when the companies were obliged to pay the sales tax in any country in which they sell the product, whether physically or digitally. This was another shock for the e-commerce companies which were located in Luxemburg but selling products all around the world.

Sources: lockerroom.johnlocke.org (November 24, 2015), Fortune.com (November 27, 2015).

Political Risk, Values, and Culture

The political risk associated with national, state, and local governments' attitudes toward private and intellectual property, zoning, pollution, and employment stability may be in flux. Governmental positions at the time a location decision is made may not be lasting ones. However, management may find that these attitudes can be influenced by their own leadership.

Worker values may also differ from country to country, region to region, and small town to city. Worker views regarding turnover, unions, and absenteeism are all relevant factors. In turn, these values can affect a company's decision whether to make offers to current workers if the firm relocates to a new location. The case study at the end of this chapter, "Southern Recreational Vehicle Company," describes a St. Louis firm that actively chose *not to relocate* any of its workers when it moved to Mississippi.

One of the greatest challenges in a global operations decision is dealing with another country's culture. Cultural variations in punctuality by employees and suppliers make a marked difference in production and delivery schedules. Bribery and other forms of corruption also create substantial economic inefficiency, as well as ethical and legal problems in the global arena. As a result, operations managers face significant challenges when building effective supply chains across cultures. Table 8.2 provides one ranking of corruption in countries around the world.

TABLE 8.2

Ranking Corruption in Selected Countries (Score of 100 Represents a Corruption-Free Country

RANK	SCORE
1 Denmark	92
2 New Zealand	91
3 Finland	89
⋮	
10 Canada	81
⋮	
17 U.S., Hong Kong	74 (tie)
⋮	
37 Israel	60
⋮	
69 Brazil, Greece	43 (tie)
⋮	
136 Russia	27
⋮	
161 Haiti	19
⋮	
174 Somalia, North Korea	8 (tie)

Source: Transparency International's 2014 survey, at **www.transparency.org**. Used with permission of Transparency International.

Proximity to Markets

For many firms, locating near customers is extremely important. Particularly, service organizations, like drugstores, restaurants, post offices, or barbers, find that demographics and proximity to market are *the* primary location factors. Manufacturing firms find it useful to be close to customers when transporting finished goods is expensive or difficult (perhaps because they are bulky, heavy, or fragile). To be near U.S. markets, foreign-owned auto giants such as Mercedes, Honda, Toyota, and Hyundai are building millions of cars each year in the U.S.

In addition, with just-in-time production, suppliers want to locate near users. For a firm like Coca-Cola, whose product's primary ingredient is water, it makes sense to have bottling plants in many cities rather than shipping heavy (and sometimes fragile glass) containers cross country.

Proximity to Suppliers

Firms locate near their raw materials and suppliers because of (1) perishability, (2) transportation costs, or (3) bulk. Bakeries, dairy plants, and frozen seafood processors deal with *perishable* raw materials, so they often locate close to suppliers. Companies dependent on inputs of heavy or bulky raw materials (such as steel producers using coal and iron ore) face expensive inbound *transportation costs*, so transportation costs become a major factor. And goods for which there is a *reduction in bulk* during production (e.g., trees to lumber) typically need facilities near the raw material.

Proximity to Competitors (Clustering)

Clustering
The location of competing companies near each other, often because of a critical mass of information, talent, venture capital, or natural resources.

Both manufacturing and service organizations also like to locate, somewhat surprisingly, near competitors. This tendency, called **clustering**, often occurs when a major resource is found in that region. Such resources include natural resources, information resources, venture capital resources, and talent resources. Table 8.3 presents nine examples of industries that exhibit clustering, and the reasons why.

Italy may be the true leader when it comes to clustering, however, with northern zones of that country holding world leadership in such specialties as ceramic tile (Modena), gold jewelry (Vicenza), machine tools (Busto Arsizio), cashmere and wool (Biella), designer eyeglasses (Belluma), and pasta machines (Parma). When it comes to clusters for innovations in slaughtering, however (see the *OM in Action* box), Denmark is the leader.

Methods of Evaluating Location Alternatives

Four major methods are used for solving location problems: the factor-rating method, locational cost–volume analysis, the center-of-gravity method, and the transportation model. This section describes these approaches.

TABLE 8.3 Clustering of Companies

INDUSTRY	LOCATIONS	REASON FOR CLUSTERING
Wine making	Napa Valley (U.S.), Bordeaux region (France)	Natural resources of land and climate
Software firms	Silicon Valley, Boston, Bangalore, Israel	Talent resources of bright graduates in scientific/technical areas, venture capitalists nearby
Clean energy	Colorado	Critical mass of talent and information, with 1,000 companies
Theme parks (e.g., Disney World, Universal Studios, and Sea World)	Orlando, Florida	A hot spot for entertainment, warm weather, tourists, and inexpensive labor
Electronics firms (e.g., Sony, IBM, HP, Motorola, and Panasonic)	Northern Mexico	NAFTA, duty-free export to U.S. (24% of all TVs are built here)
Computer hardware manufacturing	Singapore, Taiwan	High technological penetration rates and per capita GDP, skilled/educated workforce with large pool of engineers
Fast-food chains (e.g., Wendy's, McDonald's, Burger King, Pizza Hut)	Sites within 1 mile of one another	Stimulate food sales, high traffic flows
General aviation aircraft (e.g., Cessna, Learjet, Boeing, Raytheon)	Wichita, Kansas	Mass of aviation skills (60–70% of world's small planes/jets are built here)
Athletic footwear, outdoor wear	Portland, Oregon	300 companies, many spawned by Nike, deep talent pool and outdoor culture

OM in Action Denmark's Meat Cluster

Every day, 20,000 pigs are delivered to the Danish Crown company's slaughterhouse in central Denmark. The pigs trot into the stunning room, guided by workers armed with giant fly swats. The animals are hung upside down, divided in two, shaved, and scalded clean. A machine cuts them into pieces, which are then cooled, boned, and packed.

The slaughterhouse is enormous: 10 football fields long with 7 miles of conveyor belts. Its managers attend to the tiniest detail. The workers wear green rather than white because this puts the pigs in a better mood. The cutting machine photographs a carcass before adjusting its blades to the exact carcass contours. The company calibrates not only how to carve the flesh, but also where the various parts will fetch the highest prices.

Denmark is a tiny country, with 5.6 million people and wallet-draining labor costs. But it is an agricultural giant, home to 30 million pigs and numerous global brands. Farm products make up over 20% of its goods exports—and the value of these exports is expected to grow from $5.5 billion in 2001 to $31 billion by 2020.

How is this meat-processing cluster still thriving? It is because clustering can be applied to ancient industries like slaughtering as well as to new ones. The cluster includes several big companies: Danish Crown, Arla, Rose Poultry, and DuPont Danisco, as well as plenty of smaller firms, which act as indicators of nascent trends and incubators of new ideas. Other firms are contributing information technology tools for the cluster. Among these are LetFarm for fields, Bovisoft for stables, Agrosoft for pigs, Webstech for grain, and InOMEGA for food.

The cluster also has a collection of productivity-spurring institutions (the Cattle Research Center, for example, creates ways to boost pork productivity through robotics) and Danish Tech University, where 1,500 people work on food-related subjects.

Racorn/123rf

Sources: The Economist (Jan. 4, 2014); and *GlobalMeatNews.com* (Nov. 1, 2013).

The Factor-Rating Method

There are many factors, both qualitative and quantitative, to consider in choosing a location. Some of these factors are more important than others, so managers can use weightings to make the decision process more objective. The **factor-rating method** is popular because a wide variety of factors, from education to recreation to labor skills, can be objectively included. Figure 8.1 listed a few of the many factors that affect location decisions.

Factor-rating method
A location method that instills objectivity into the process of identifying hard-to-evaluate costs.

The factor-rating method (which we introduced in Chapter 2) has six steps:

1. Develop a list of relevant factors called *key success factors* (such as those in Figure 8.1).
2. Assign a weight to each factor to reflect its relative importance in the company's objectives.
3. Develop a scale for each factor (for example, 1 to 10 or 1 to 100 points).
4. Have management score each location for each factor, using the scale in Step 3.
5. Multiply the score by the weights for each factor and total the score for each location.
6. Make a recommendation based on the maximum point score, considering the results of other quantitative approaches as well.

Example 1

LO 8.3 *Apply* the factor-rating method

FACTOR-RATING METHOD FOR AN EXPANDING THEME PARK

Five Flags over Florida, a U.S. chain of 10 family-oriented theme parks, has decided to expand overseas by opening its first park in Europe. It wishes to select between France and Denmark.

APPROACH ► The ratings sheet in Table 8.4 lists key success factors that management has decided are important; their weightings and their rating for two possible sites—Dijon, France, and Copenhagen, Denmark—are shown.

STUDENT TIP
These weights do not need to be on a 0–1 scale or total to 1. We can use a 1–10 scale, 1–100 scale, or any other scale we prefer.

TABLE 8.4 Weights, Scores, and Solution

KEY SUCCESS FACTOR	WEIGHT	SCORES (OUT OF 100)		WEIGHTED SCORES	
		FRANCE	DENMARK	FRANCE	DENMARK
Labor availability and attitude	.25	70	60	(.25)(70) = 17.50	(.25)(60) = 15.00
People-to-car ratio	.05	50	60	(.05)(50) = 2.50	(.05)(60) = 3.00
Per capita income	.10	85	80	(.10)(85) = 8.50	(.10)(80) = 8.00
Tax structure	.39	75	70	(.39)(75) = 29.25	(.39)(70) = 27.30
Education and health	.21	60	70	(.21)(60) = 12.60	(.21)(70) = 14.70
Totals	1.00			70.35	68.00

SOLUTION ▶ Table 8.4 uses weights and scores to evaluate alternative site locations. Given the option of 100 points assigned to each factor, the French location is preferable.

INSIGHT ▶ By changing the points or weights slightly for those factors about which there is some doubt, we can analyze the sensitivity of the decision. For instance, we can see that changing the scores for "labor availability and attitude" by 10 points can change the decision. The numbers used in factor weighting can be subjective, and the model's results are not "exact" even though this is a quantitative approach.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the weight for "tax structure" drops to .20 and the weight for "education and health" increases to .40, what is the new result? [Answer: Denmark is now chosen, with a 68.0 vs. a 67.5 score for France.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 8.5–8.15, 8.24, 8.25 (8.26, 8.27, 8.28, 8.33, 8.34 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File Ch08Ex1.xls can be found in MyOMLab.

When a decision is sensitive to minor changes, further analysis of the weighting and the points assigned may be appropriate. Alternatively, management may conclude that these intangible factors are not the proper criteria on which to base a location decision. Managers therefore place primary weight on the more quantitative aspects of the decision.

Locational Cost–Volume Analysis

Locational cost–volume analysis
A method of making an economic comparison of location alternatives.

Locational cost–volume analysis is a technique for making an economic comparison of location alternatives. By identifying fixed and variable costs and graphing them for each location, we can determine which one provides the lowest cost. Locational cost–volume analysis can be done mathematically or graphically. The graphic approach has the advantage of providing the range of volume over which each location is preferable.

The three steps to locational cost–volume analysis are as follows:

1. Determine the fixed and variable cost for each location.
2. Plot the costs for each location, with costs on the vertical axis of the graph and annual volume on the horizontal axis.
3. Select the location that has the lowest total cost for the expected production volume.

Example 2

LOCATIONAL COST–VOLUME ANALYSIS FOR A PARTS MANUFACTURER

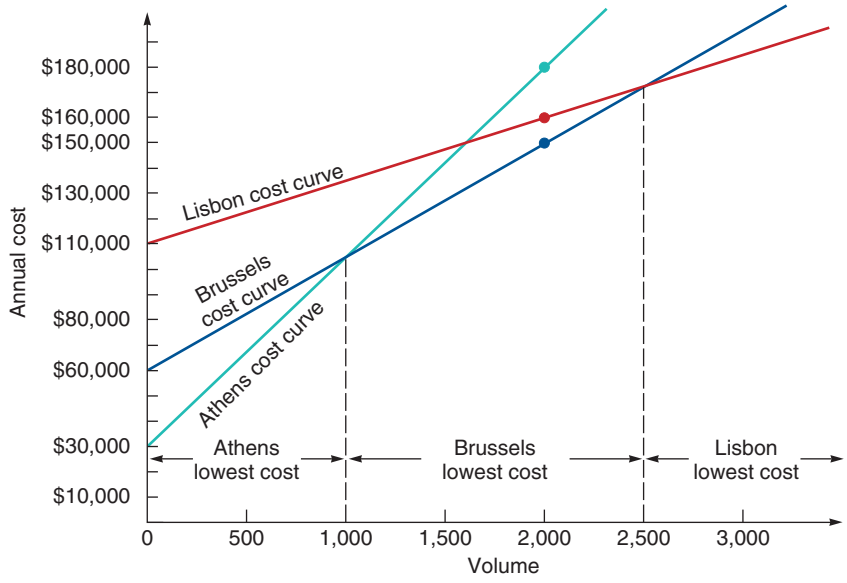
Esmail Mohebbi, owner of European Ignitions Manufacturing, needs to expand his capacity. He is considering three locations—Athens, Brussels, and Lisbon—for a new plant. The company wishes to find the most economical location for an expected volume of 2,000 units per year.

APPROACH ▶ Mohebbi conducts locational cost–volume analysis. To do so, he determines that fixed costs per year at the sites are $30,000, $60,000, and $110,000, respectively; and variable costs are $75 per unit, $45 per unit, and $25 per unit, respectively. The expected selling price of each ignition system produced is $120.

SOLUTION ▶ For each of the three locations, Mohebbi can plot the fixed costs (those at a volume of zero units) and the total cost (fixed costs + variable costs) at the expected volume of output. These lines have been plotted in Figure 8.2.

Figure **8.2**

Crossover Chart for Locational Cost–Volume Analysis



For Athens:

$$\text{Total cost} = \$30{,}000 + \$75(2{,}000) = \$180{,}000$$

For Brussels:

$$\text{Total cost} = \$60{,}000 + \$45(2{,}000) = \$150{,}000$$

For Lisbon:

$$\text{Total cost} = \$110{,}000 + \$25(2{,}000) = \$160{,}000$$

LO 8.4 *Complete* a locational cost–volume analysis graphically and mathematically

With an expected volume of 2,000 units per year, Brussels provides the lowest cost location. The expected profit is:

$$\text{Total revenue} - \text{Total cost} = \$120(2{,}000) - \$150{,}000 = \$90{,}000 \text{ per year}$$

The crossover point for Athens and Brussels is:

$$\begin{aligned} 30{,}000 + 75(x) &= 60{,}000 + 45(x) \\ 30(x) &= 30{,}000 \\ x &= 1{,}000 \end{aligned}$$

and the crossover point for Brussels and Lisbon is:

$$\begin{aligned} 60{,}000 + 45(x) &= 110{,}000 + 25(x) \\ 20(x) &= 50{,}000 \\ x &= 2{,}500 \end{aligned}$$

INSIGHT ▶ As with every other OM model, locational cost–volume analysis can be sensitive to input data. For example, for a volume of less than 1,000, Athens would be preferred. For a volume greater than 2,500, Lisbon would yield the greatest profit.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ The variable cost for Lisbon is now expected to be $22 per unit. What is the new crossover point between Brussels and Lisbon? [Answer: 2,174 units.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 8.16–8.19 (8.29, 8.30 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch08Ex2.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

Center-of-Gravity Method

Center-of-gravity method
A mathematical technique used for finding the best location for a single distribution point that services several stores or areas.

The **center-of-gravity method** is a mathematical technique used for finding the location of a distribution center that will minimize distribution costs. The method takes into account the location of markets, the volume of goods shipped to those markets, and shipping costs in finding the best location for a distribution center.

The first step in the center-of-gravity method is to place the locations on a coordinate system. This will be illustrated in Example 3. The origin of the coordinate system and the scale used are arbitrary, just as long as the relative distances are correctly represented. This can be done easily by placing a grid over an ordinary map. The center of gravity is determined using Equations (8-1) and (8-2):

$$x\text{-coordinate of the center of gravity} = \frac{\sum_i x_i Q_i}{\sum_i Q_i} \tag{8-1}$$

$$y\text{-coordinate of the center of gravity} = \frac{\sum_i y_i Q_i}{\sum_i Q_i} \tag{8-2}$$

LO 8.5 *Use* the center-of-gravity method

where x_i = x-coordinate of location i
y_i = y-coordinate of location i
Q_i = Quantity of goods moved to or from location i

Note that Equations (8-1) and (8-2) include the term Q_i, the quantity of supplies transferred to or from location i.

Because the number of containers shipped each month affects cost, distance alone should not be the principal criterion. The center-of-gravity method assumes that cost is directly proportional to both distance and volume shipped. The ideal location is that which minimizes the weighted distance between sources and destinations, where the distance is weighted by the number of containers shipped.[1]

Example 3

CENTER OF GRAVITY

Quain's Discount Department Stores, a chain of four large Target-type outlets, has store locations in Chicago, Pittsburgh, New York, and Atlanta; they are currently being supplied out of an old and inadequate warehouse in Pittsburgh, the site of the chain's first store. The firm wants to find some "central" location in which to build a new warehouse.

APPROACH ▶ Quain's will apply the center-of-gravity method. It gathers data on demand rates at each outlet (see Table 8.5).

TABLE 8.5 Demand for Quain's Discount Department Stores

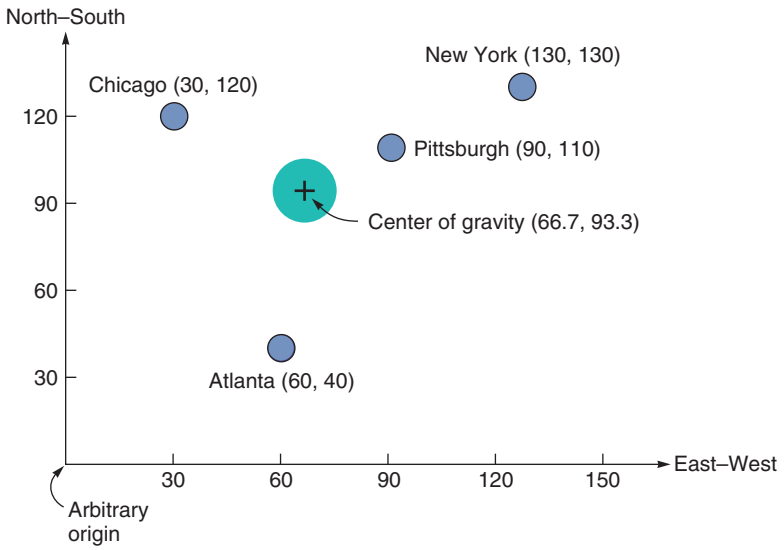
STORE LOCATION	NUMBER OF CONTAINERS SHIPPED PER MONTH
Chicago	2,000
Pittsburgh	1,000
New York	1,000
Atlanta	2,000

Its current store locations are shown in Figure 8.3. For example, location 1 is Chicago, and from Table 8.5 and Figure 8.3, we have:

$$x_1 = 30$$
$$y_1 = 120$$
$$Q_1 = 2{,}000$$

Figure 8.3

Coordinate Locations of Four Quain's Department Stores and Center of Gravity



SOLUTION ▶ Using the data in Table 8.5 and Figure 8.3 for each of the other cities, and Equations (8-1) and (8-2), we find:

x-coordinate of the center of gravity:

$$= \frac{(30)(2000) + (90)(1000) + (130)(1000) + (60)(2000)}{2000 + 1000 + 1000 + 2000} = \frac{400{,}000}{6{,}000}$$

$$= 66.7$$

y-coordinate of the center of gravity:

$$= \frac{(120)(2000) + (110)(1000) + (130)(1000) + (40)(2000)}{2000 + 1000 + 1000 + 2000} = \frac{560{,}000}{6{,}000}$$

$$= 93.3$$

This location (66.7, 93.3) is shown by the crosshairs in Figure 8.3.

INSIGHT ▶ By overlaying a U.S. map on Figure 8.3, we find this location (66.7, 93.3) is near central Ohio. The firm may well wish to consider Columbus, Ohio, or a nearby city as an appropriate location. But it is important to have both north–south and east–west interstate highways near the city selected to make delivery times quicker.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ The number of containers shipped per month to Atlanta is expected to grow quickly to 3,000. How does this change the center of gravity, and where should the new warehouse be located? [Answer: (65.7, 85.7), which is closer to Cincinnati, Ohio.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 8.20–8.23 (8.31, 8.32 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch08Ex3.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

ACTIVE MODEL 8.1 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 8.1 in MyOMLab.

Transportation Model

The objective of the **transportation model** is to determine the best pattern of shipments from several points of supply (sources) to several points of demand (destinations) so as to minimize total production and transportation costs. Every firm with a network of supply-and-demand points faces such a problem. The complex Volkswagen supply network (shown in Figure 8.4) provides one such illustration. We note in Figure 8.4, for example, that VW of Mexico ships vehicles for assembly and parts to VW of Nigeria, sends assemblies to VW of Brasil, and receives parts and assemblies from headquarters in Germany.

Transportation model
A technique for solving a class of linear programming problems.

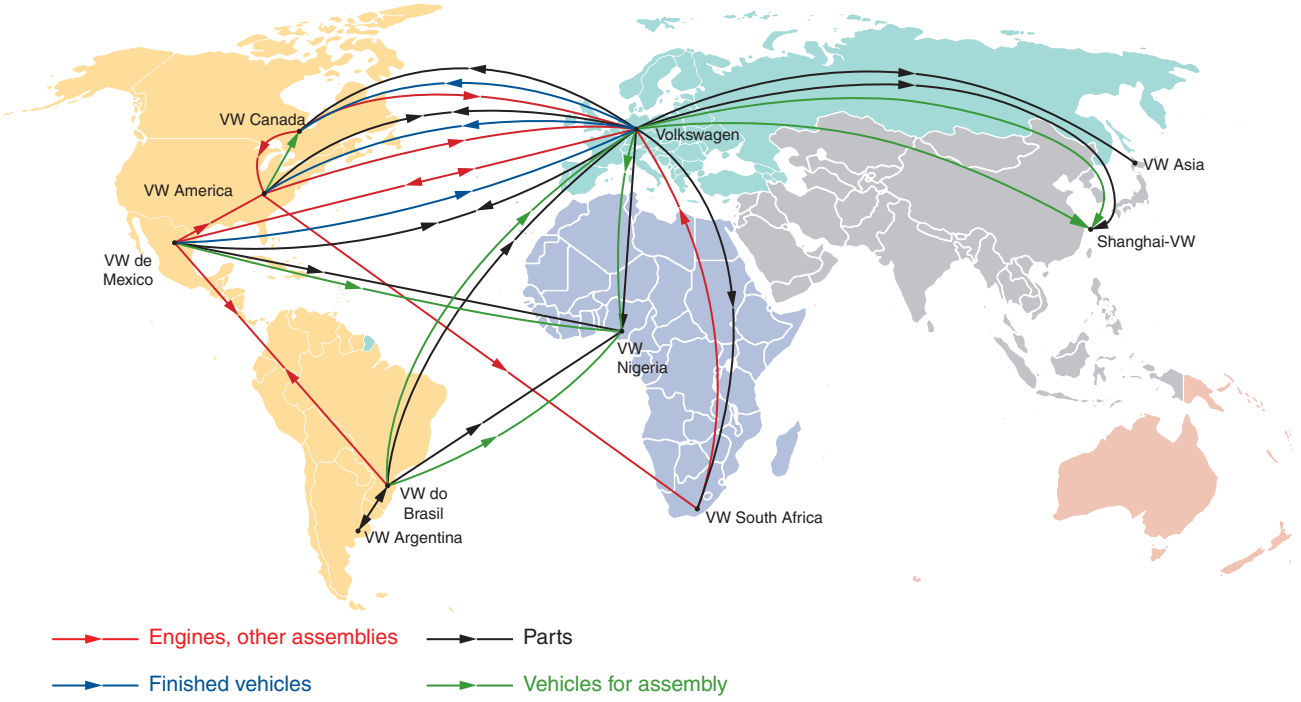


Figure 8.4

Volkswagen, the Third Largest Automaker in the World, Finds It Advantageous to Locate Its Plants Throughout the World

This graphic shows a portion of VW's supply network. There are 61 plants in Europe, along with nine countries in the Americas, Asia, and Africa.

Although the linear programming (LP) technique can be used to solve this type of problem, more efficient, special-purpose algorithms have been developed for the transportation application. The transportation model finds an initial feasible solution and then makes step-by-step improvement until an optimal solution is reached.

Service Location Strategy

While the focus in industrial-sector location analysis is on *minimizing cost,* the focus in the service sector is on *maximizing revenue.* This is because manufacturing firms find that costs tend to vary substantially among locations, while service firms find that location often has more impact on revenue than cost. Therefore, the location focus for service firms should be on determining the volume of customers and revenue.

STUDENT TIP Retail stores often attract more shoppers when competitors are close.

There are eight major determinants of volume and revenue for the service firm:

1. Purchasing power of the customer-drawing area
2. Service and image compatibility with demographics of the customer-drawing area
3. Competition in the area
4. Quality of the competition
5. Uniqueness of the firm's and competitors' locations
6. Physical qualities of facilities and neighboring businesses
7. Operating policies of the firm
8. Quality of management

Realistic analysis of these factors can provide a reasonable picture of the revenue expected. The techniques used in the service sector include regression analysis (see the *OM in Action* box, "Exhibition Centres Location"), traffic counts, demographic analysis, purchasing power analysis, the factor-rating method, the center-of-gravity method, and geographic information systems. Table 8.6 provides a summary of location strategies for both service and goods-producing organizations.

OM in Action Exhibition Centres Location

The importance of the exhibition industry increases with the development of technology and the globalisation of exhibitions. In addition, it is also a high-value service industry which considerably motivates international trades, and affects the associated industries, such as construction, tourism, transportation, marketing, and printing.

South Korea's close trade and economic ties to its neighbouring countries such as China, Japan, and Singapore, has made the exhibition and convention industry one of the country's major strategic industries. Exhibition centres play an important role as a basic infrastructure of the exhibition industry, and they are keys to the success of exhibitions and conventions.

The size of the exhibition centre and the location of the centres are closely related to the success of the exhibition. The location decisions in this industry are largely supported by operations management techniques such as factor rating method. The current and future demand for different candidate locations are usually forecasted based on a number of factors such as trade volume, GDP, the operation ratio of the exhibition centres, and gross regional domestic product(GRDP), the characteristics of the exhibitions, the exhibition infrastructure, the intention of local governments, and the policy considerations.

Mike Booth/Alamy

In a particular focus study, the South Korean Ministry of Trade, Industry and Energy identified 65 variables for the exhibition location decisions, based on expert opinion. To facilitate the decision making process based on the factor rating method, the variables were allocated to six major factors: neighbouring exhibition centres, local infrastructures, potential exhibition participants, local exhibition industry, local economy, and local government's network.

The well-defined and validated location decision factors ensure collaborative and cooperative participation of different stakeholders in the exhibition industry, and enhance the operations and outputs of the exhibition centres.

Sources: Park, S., Kim, B. S., Su, D., & Jiang, Z. A Study of the Determinants of Location Choice for Exhibition Centers.Proceedings of 5th Asia-Pacific Business Research Conference, 17–18 February, 2014, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia, ISBN: 978-1-922069-44-3.

TABLE 8.6 Location Strategies—Service vs. Goods-Producing Organizations

SERVICE/RETAIL/PROFESSIONAL	*GOODS-PRODUCING*
REVENUE FOCUS	**COST FOCUS**
Volume/revenue Drawing area; purchasing power Competition; advertising/pricing **Physical quality** Parking/access; security/lighting; appearance/image **Cost determinants** Rent Management caliber Operation policies (hours, wage rates)	**Tangible costs** Transportation cost of raw material Shipment cost of finished goods Energy and utility cost; labor; raw material; taxes, and so on **Intangible and future costs** Attitude toward union Quality of life Education expenditures by state Quality of state and local government
TECHNIQUES	**TECHNIQUES**
Regression models to determine importance of various factors Factor-rating method Traffic counts Demographic analysis of drawing area Purchasing power analysis of area Center-of-gravity method Geographic information systems	Transportation method Factor-rating method Locational cost–volume analysis Crossover charts
ASSUMPTIONS	**ASSUMPTIONS**
Location is a major determinant of revenue High customer-interaction issues are critical Costs are relatively constant for a given area; therefore, the revenue function is critical	Location is a major determinant of cost Most major costs can be identified explicitly for each site Low customer contact allows focus on the identifiable costs Intangible costs can be evaluated

STUDENT TIP
This table helps differentiate between service- and manufacturing-sector decisions.

LO 8.6 *Understand* the differences between service- and industrial-sector location analysis

Geographic Information Systems

Geographic information systems are an important tool to help firms make successful, analytical decisions with regard to location. A **geographic information system (GIS)** stores, accesses, displays, and links demographic information to a geographical location. For instance, retailers,

Geographic information system (GIS)
A system that stores and displays information that can be linked to a geographic location.

banks, food chains, gas stations, and print shop franchises can all use geographically coded files from a GIS to conduct demographic analyses. By combining population, age, income, traffic flow, and density figures with geography, a retailer can pinpoint the best location for a new store or restaurant.

Here are some of the geographic databases available in many GISs:

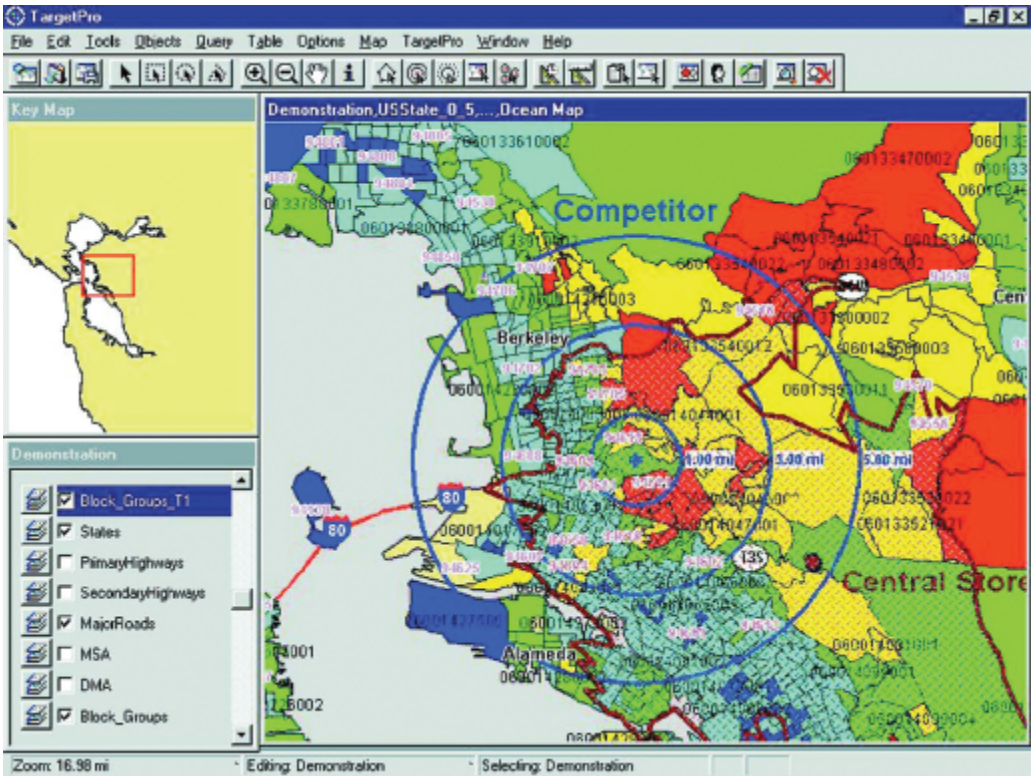
- Census data by block, tract, city, county, congressional district, metropolitan area, state, and zip code
- Maps of every street, highway, bridge, and tunnel in the U.S.
- Utilities such as electrical, water, and gas lines
- All rivers, mountains, lakes, and forests
- All major airports, colleges, and hospitals

For example, airlines use GISs to identify airports where ground services are the most effective. This information is then used to help schedule and to decide where to purchase fuel, meals, and other services.

Commercial office building developers use GISs in the selection of cities for future construction. Building new office space takes several years; therefore, developers value the database approach that a GIS can offer. GIS is used to analyze factors that influence the location decisions by addressing five elements for each city: (1) residential areas, (2) retail shops, (3) cultural and entertainment centers, (4) crime incidence, and (5) transportation options.

Here are five examples of how location-scouting GIS software is turning commercial real estate into a science.

- *Carvel Ice Cream:* This 80-year-old chain of ice cream shops uses GIS to create a demographic profile of what a typically successful neighborhood for a Carvel looks like—mostly in terms of income and ages.
- *Saber Roofing:* Rather than send workers out to estimate the costs for reroofing jobs, this Redwood City, California, firm pulls up aerial shots of the building via Google Earth. The



Geographic information systems (GISs) are used by a variety of firms, including Darden Restaurants, to identify target markets by income, ethnicity, product use, age, etc. Here, data from MapInfo helps with competitive analysis for a retailer. Three concentric blue rings, each representing various mile radii, were drawn around the competitor's store. The heavy red line indicates the "drive" time to the firm's own central store (the red dot).

owner can measure roofs, evaluate their condition, and e-mail the client an estimate, saving hundreds of miles of driving daily. In one case, while on the phone, a potential client was told her roof was too steep for the company to tackle after the Saber employee quickly looked up the home on Google Earth.

- *Arby's:* As this fast-food chain learned, specific products can affect behavior. Using MapInfo, Arby's discovered that diners drove up to 20% farther for their roast beef sandwich (which they consider a "destination" product) than for its chicken sandwich.
- *Home Depot:* Wanting a store in New York City, even though Home Depot demographics are usually for customers who own big homes, the company opened in Queens when GIS software predicted it would do well. Although most people there live in apartments and very small homes, the store has become one of the chain's highest-volume outlets. Similarly, Home Depot thought it had saturated Atlanta two decades ago, but GIS analysis suggested expansion. There are now over 40 Home Depots in that area.
- *Jo-Ann Stores:* This fabric and craft retailer's 70 superstores were doing well a few years ago, but managers were afraid more big-box stores could not justify building expenses. So Jo-Ann used its GIS to create an ideal customer profile—female homeowners with families—and mapped it against demographics. The firm found it could build 700 superstores, which in turn increased the sales from $105 to $150 per square foot.

Other packages similar to MapInfo are Atlas GIS (from Strategic Mapping), ArcGIS (by Esri), SAS/GIS (by SAS Institute), Maptitude (by Caliper), and GeoMedia (by Intergraph).

These GISs can be extensive, including comprehensive sets of map and demographic data. The maps have millions of miles of streets and points of interest to allow users to locate restaurants, airports, hotels, gas stations, ATMs, museums, campgrounds, and freeway exits. Demographic data include statistics for population, age, income, education, and housing. These data can be mapped by state, county, city, zip code, or census tract.

The *Video Case Study* "Locating the Next Red Lobster Restaurant" that appears at the end of this chapter describes how that chain uses its GIS to define trade areas based on market size and population density.

VIDEO 8.2
Locating the Next Red Lobster Restaurant

Summary

Location may determine up to 50% of operating expense. Location is also a critical element in determining revenue for the service, retail, or professional firm. Industrial firms need to consider both tangible and intangible costs. Industrial location problems are typically addressed via a factor-rating method, locational cost–volume analysis, the center-of-gravity method, and the transportation method of linear programming.

For service, retail, and professional organizations, analysis is typically made of a variety of variables including purchasing power of a drawing area, competition, advertising and promotion, physical qualities of the location, and operating policies of the organization.

Key Terms

Tangible costs (p. 380)
Intangible costs (p. 380)
Clustering (p. 382)
Factor-rating method (p. 383)
Locational cost–volume analysis (p. 384)
Center-of-gravity method (p. 386)
Transportation model (p. 387)
Geographic information system (GIS) (p. 389)

Ethical Dilemma

In this chapter, we have discussed a number of location decisions. Consider another: United Airlines announced its competition to select a town for a new billion-dollar aircraft-repair base. The bidding for the prize of 7,500 jobs paying at least $25 per hour was fast and furious, with Orlando offering $154 million in incentives and Denver more than twice that amount. Kentucky's governor angrily rescinded Louisville's offer of $300 million, likening the bidding to "squeezing every drop of blood out of a turnip."

When United finally selected from among the 93 cities bidding on the base, the winner was Indianapolis and its $320 million offer of taxpayers' money.

But a few years later, with United near bankruptcy, and having fulfilled its legal obligation, the company walked away from the massive center. This left the city and state governments out all that money, with no new tenant in sight. The city now even owns the tools, neatly arranged in each of the 12 elaborately equipped hangar bays. United outsourced its maintenance to mechanics at a southern firm (which pays one-third of what United paid in salary and benefits in Indianapolis).

What are the ethical, legal, and economic implications of such location bidding wars? Who pays for such giveaways? Are local citizens allowed to vote on offers made by their cities, counties, or states? Should there be limits on these incentives?

Discussion Questions

1. How is FedEx's location a competitive advantage? Discuss.
2. Why have many manufacturing facilities relocated from Western Europe to Asia? Discuss the motives and risks.
3. Jaguar Land Rover has opened its first plant in China in 2014. Discuss the main reason for this decision.
4. What is clustering?
5. How does factor weighting incorporate personal preference in location choices?
6. What are the advantages and disadvantages of a qualitative (as opposed to a quantitative) approach to location decision making?
7. Quickly review the location of shops and services in your local shopping centre. Can you find examples of clustering in the retail sector?
8. What are the major factors that firms consider when choosing a country in which to locate?
9. What factors affect region/community location decisions?
10. Although most organizations may make the location decision infrequently, there are some organizations that make the decision quite regularly and often. Provide one or two examples. How might their approach to the location decision differ from the norm?
11. List factors, other than globalization, that affect the location decision.
12. How can the centre-of-gravity method be used to find the best locations for local services such as public libraries, medical centres, or post offices? What constraints should be considered when the method is used in large, congested cities?
13. What are the three steps to locational cost–volume analysis?
14. "Manufacturers locate near their resources, retailers locate near their customers." Discuss this statement, with reference to the proximity-to-markets arguments covered in the text. Can you think of a counter-example in each case? Support your choices.
15. Why shouldn't low wage rates alone be sufficient to select a location?
16. Distribution centres has a key role to assure quick home deliveryof the products, in online sales. What techniques can be employed by retailers to select the best locations for their distribution centres?
17. Contrast the location of a food distributor and a supermarket. (The distributor sends truckloads of food, meat, produce, etc., to the supermarket.) Show the relevant considerations (factors) they share; show those where they differ.
18. Asda, a leading supermarket in the UK, is taking its click-and-collect service (where customers can order online and collect their items from the collection points) to train stations across London for the first time as part of a wider charge to expand its collection service to areas not currently served by its stores and increase its presence across the capital. It is part of Asda's efforts to increase the number of click-and-collect locations from 218 to over 1,000 in the next five years. Identify the factors that should be considered by Asda to locate the click-and-collect service points.

Using Software to Solve Location Problems

This section presents three ways to solve location problems with computer software. First, you can create your own spreadsheets to compute factor ratings, the center of gravity, and locational cost–volume analysis. Second, Excel OM (free with your text and found in MyOMLab) is programmed to solve all three models. Third, POM for Windows is also found in MyOMLab and can solve all problems labeled with a P.

CREATING YOUR OWN EXCEL SPREADSHEETS

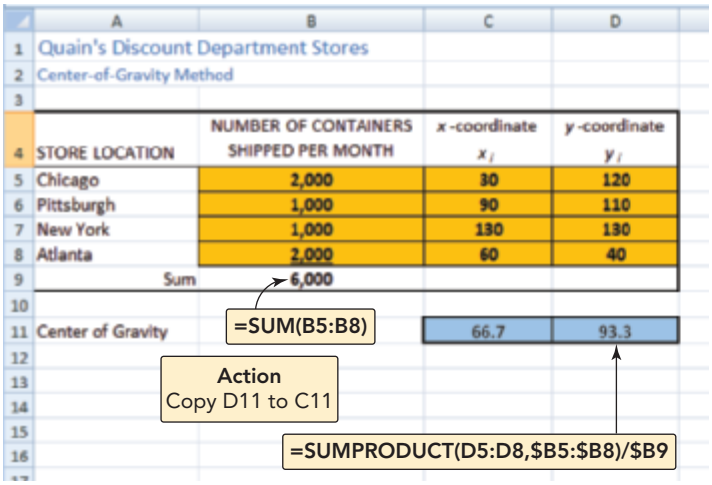
Excel spreadsheets are easily developed to solve most of the problems in this chapter. Consider the Quain's Department Store center-of-gravity analysis in Example 3. You can see from Program 8.1 how the formulas are created.

X USING EXCEL OM

Excel OM may be used to solve Example 1 (with the Factor Rating module), Example 2 (with the Cost–Volume Analysis module), and Example 3 (with the Center-of-Gravity module), as well as other location problems. The factor-rating method was illustrated in Chapter 2.

P USING POM FOR WINDOWS

POM for Windows also includes three different facility location models: the factor-rating method, the center-of-gravity model, and locational cost–volume analysis. For details, refer to Appendix IV.



Program **8.1**

An Excel Spreadsheet for Creating a Center-of-Gravity Analysis for Example 3, Quain's Discount Department Stores

Solved Problems

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM 8.1

Just as cities and communities can be compared for location selection by the weighted approach model, as we saw earlier in this chapter, so can actual site decisions within those cities. Table 8.7 illustrates four factors of importance to Washington, DC, and the health officials charged with opening that city's first public drug treatment clinic. Of primary concern (and given a weight of 5) was location of the clinic so it would be as accessible as possible to the largest number of patients. Due to a tight budget, the annual lease cost was also of some concern. A suite in the city hall, at 14th and U Streets, was highly rated because its rent would be free. An old office building near the downtown bus station received a much lower rating because of its cost. Equally important as lease cost was the need for confidentiality of patients and, therefore, for a relatively inconspicuous clinic. Finally, because so many of the staff at the clinic would be donating their time, the safety, parking, and accessibility of each site were of concern as well.

Using the factor-rating method, which site is preferred?

SOLUTION

From the three rightmost columns in Table 8.7, the weighted scores are summed. The bus terminal area has a low score and can be excluded from further consideration. The other two sites are virtually identical in total score. The city may now want to consider other factors, including political ones, in selecting between the two remaining sites.

TABLE 8.7 Potential Clinic Sites in Washington, DC

		*POTENTIAL LOCATIONS**			*WEIGHTED SCORES*		
FACTOR	IMPORTANCE WEIGHT	HOMELESS SHELTER (2ND AND D, SE)	CITY HALL (14TH AND U, NW)	BUS TERMINAL AREA (7TH AND H, NW)	HOMELESS SHELTER	CITY HALL	BUS TERMINAL AREA
Accessibility for addicts	5	9	7	7	45	35	35
Annual lease cost	3	6	10	3	18	30	9
Inconspicuous	3	5	2	7	15	6	21
Accessibility for health staff	2	3	6	2	6	12	4
					Total scores: 84	83	69

*All sites are rated on a 1 to 10 basis, with 10 as the highest score and 1 as the lowest.

SOLVED PROBLEM 8.2

Ching-Chang Kuo is considering opening a new foundry in Denton, Texas; Edwardsville, Illinois; or Fayetteville, Arkansas, to produce high-quality rifle sights. He has assembled the following fixed-cost and variable-cost data:

		PER-UNIT COSTS		
LOCATION	FIXED COST PER YEAR	MATERIAL	VARIABLE LABOR	OVERHEAD
Denton	$200,000	$ .20	$ .40	$ .40
Edwardsville	$180,000	$ .25	$ .75	$ .75
Fayetteville	$170,000	$1.00	$1.00	$1.00

a) Graph the total cost lines.
b) Over what range of annual volume is each facility going to have a competitive advantage?
c) What is the volume at the intersection of the Edwardsville and Fayetteville cost lines?

SOLUTION

a) A graph of the total cost lines is shown in Figure 8.5.
b) Below 8,000 units, the Fayetteville facility will have a competitive advantage (lowest cost); between 8,000 units and 26,666 units, Edwardsville has an advantage; and above 26,666, Denton has the advantage. (We have made the assumption in this problem that other costs—that is, delivery and intangible factors—are constant regardless of the decision.)
c) From Figure 8.5, we see that the cost line for Fayetteville and the cost line for Edwardsville cross at about 8,000. We can also determine this point with a little algebra:

$$\$180{,}000 + 1.75Q = \$170{,}000 + 3.00Q$$
$$\$10{,}000 = 1.25Q$$
$$8{,}000 = Q$$

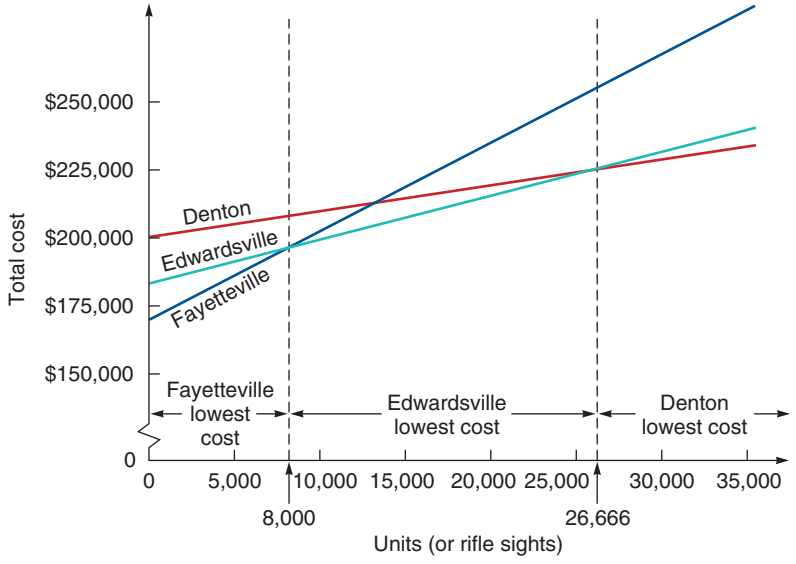


Figure 8.5
Graph of Total Cost Lines for Ching-Chang Kuo

SOLVED PROBLEM 8.3

The Metropolis Public Library plans to expand with its first major branch library in the city's growing north side. The branch will serve six census tracts. Here are the coordinates of each tract and the population within it:

CENSUS TRACT	CENTER OF TRACT	POPULATION IN TRACT
503—Logan Square	(3, 4)	45,000
519—Albany Park	(4, 5)	25,000
522—Rogers Park	(3, 6)	62,000
538—Kentwood	(4, 7)	51,000
540—Roosevelt	(2, 3)	32,000
561—Western	(5, 2)	29,000

Using the center-of-gravity method, what should be the coordinate location of the branch library?

SOLUTION

$$x\text{-coordinate} = \frac{\sum_i x_i Q_i}{\sum_i Q_i} = \frac{3(45{,}000) + 4(25{,}000) + 3(62{,}000) + 4(51{,}000) + 2(32{,}000) + 5(29{,}000)}{244{,}000} = 3.42$$

$$y\text{-coordinate} = \frac{\sum_i y_i Q_i}{\sum_i Q_i} = \frac{4(45{,}000) + 5(25{,}000) + 6(62{,}000) + 7(51{,}000) + 3(32{,}000) + 2(29{,}000)}{244{,}000} = 4.87$$

The new branch library will sit just west of Logan Square and Rogers Park, at the (3.42, 4.87) tract location.

Problems

Note: PX means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel OM.

Problems 8.1–8.4 relate to Factors That Affect Location Decisions

• **8.1** In Myanmar (formerly Burma), 6 laborers, each making the equivalent of $3 per day, can produce 40 units per day. In rural China, 10 laborers, each making the equivalent of $2 per day, can produce 45 units. In Billings, Montana, 2 laborers, each making $60 per day, can make 100 units. Based on labor costs only, which location would be most economical to produce the item?

• **8.2** Refer to Problem 8.1. Shipping cost from Myanmar to Denver, Colorado, the final destination, is $1.50 per unit. Shipping cost from China to Denver is $1 per unit, while the shipping cost from Billings to Denver is $.25 per unit. Considering both labor and transportation costs, which is the most favorable production location?

•• **8.3** You have been asked to analyze the bids for 200 polished disks used in solar panels. These bids have been submitted by three suppliers: Thailand Polishing, India Shine, and Sacramento Glow. Thailand Polishing has submitted a bid of 2,000 baht. India Shine has submitted a bid of 2,000 rupees. Sacramento Glow has submitted a bid of $200. You check with your local bank and find that $1 = 10 baht and $1 = 8 rupees. Which company should you choose?

• **8.4** Refer to Problem 8.3. If the final destination is New Delhi, India, and there is a 30% import tax, which firm should you choose?

Problems 8.5–8.34 relate to Methods of Evaluating Location Alternatives

•• **8.5** Subway, with more than 25,000 outlets in the U.S., is planning for a new restaurant in Buffalo, New York. Three locations are being considered. The following table gives the factors for each site.

FACTOR	WEIGHT	MAITLAND	BAPTIST CHURCH	NORTHSIDE MALL
Space	.30	60	70	80
Costs	.25	40	80	30
Traffic density	.20	50	80	60
Neighborhood income	.15	50	70	40
Zoning laws	.10	80	20	90

a) At which site should Subway open the new restaurant?
b) If the weights for Space and Traffic density are reversed, how would this affect the decision? PX

• **8.6** Ken Gilbert owns the Knoxville Warriors, a minor league baseball team in Tennessee. He wishes to move the Warriors south, to either Mobile (Alabama) or Jackson (Mississippi). The table below gives the factors that Gilbert thinks are important, their weights, and the scores for Mobile and Jackson.

FACTOR	WEIGHT	MOBILE	JACKSON
Incentive	.4	80	60
Player satisfaction	.3	20	50
Sports interest	.2	40	90
Size of city	.1	70	30

a) Which site should he select?
b) Jackson just raised its incentive package, and the new score is 75. Why doesn't this impact your decision in part (a)? PX

•• **8.7** The Brazilian fast growing economy has been largely dependent on its freight transport capacity. A recent study has categorised the country's containership sea port terminals into three distinct groups based on the competitiveness criteria (listed in the table below), and their scores against the competitiveness criteria (scores between 1 and 10, and the higher scores are the better):

CRITERIA OF COMPETITIVENESS	TERMINAL GROUPS		
	1	2	3
Number of containers handled	1	4	7
Berth length	4	9	5
Number of berths	4	6	6
Delay time for mooring	2	3	4
Berth depth	2	3	3
Terminal tariffs	3	4	5
Medium consignment rate	3	4	6
Medium board	2	3	4
Delay time for load/unload	2	6	6

Adapted from: Cabral, A. M. R., & de Sousa Ramos, F. (2014). Cluster analysis of the competitiveness of container ports in Brazil. *Transportation Research Part A: Policy and Practice*, *69*, 423–431.

If all criteria have the same level of significance, which terminal group is the best choice for a containership line?

•• **8.8** Marilyn Helm Retailers is attempting to decide on a location for a new retail outlet. At the moment, the firm has three alternatives—stay where it is but enlarge the facility; locate along the main street in nearby Newbury; or locate in a new shopping mall in Hyde Park. The company has selected the four factors listed in the following table as the basis for evaluation and has assigned weights as shown:

FACTOR	FACTOR DESCRIPTION	WEIGHT
1	Average community income	.30
2	Community growth potential	.15
3	Availability of public transportation	.20
4	Labor availability, attitude, and cost	.35

Helm has rated each location for each factor, on a 100-point basis. These ratings are given below:

	LOCATION		
FACTOR	PRESENT LOCATION	NEWBURY	HYDE PARK
1	40	60	50
2	20	20	80
3	30	60	50
4	80	50	50

a) What should Helm do?
b) A new subway station is scheduled to open across the street from the present location in about a month, so its third factor score should be raised to 40. How does this change your answer? PX

•• **8.9** A location analysis for Cook Controls, a small manufacturer of parts for high-technology cable systems, has been narrowed down to four locations. Cook will need to train assemblers, testers, and robotics maintainers in local training centers. Lori Cook, the president, has asked each potential site to offer training programs, tax breaks, and other industrial incentives. The critical factors, their weights, and the ratings for each location are shown in the following table. High scores represent favorable values.

		LOCATION			
FACTOR	WEIGHT	AKRON, OH	BILOXI, MS	CARTHAGE, TX	DENVER, CO
Labor availability	.15	90	80	90	80
Technical school quality	.10	95	75	65	85
Operating cost	.30	80	85	95	85
Land and construction cost	.15	60	80	90	70
Industrial incentives	.20	90	75	85	60
Labor cost	.10	75	80	85	75

a) Compute the composite (weighted average) rating for each location.
b) Which site would you choose?
c) Would you reach the same conclusion if the weights for operating cost and labor cost were reversed? Recompute as necessary and explain. PX

••• **8.10** Pan American Refineries, headquartered in Houston, must decide among three sites for the construction of a new oil-processing center. The firm has selected the six factors listed below as a basis for evaluation and has assigned rating weights from 1 to 5 on each factor:

FACTOR	FACTOR NAME	RATING WEIGHT
1	Proximity to port facilities	5
2	Power-source availability and cost	3
3	Workforce attitude and cost	4
4	Distance from Houston	2
5	Community desirability	2
6	Equipment suppliers in area	3

Subhajit Chakraborty, the CEO, has rated each location for each factor on a 1- to 100-point basis.

FACTOR	LOCATION A	LOCATION B	LOCATION C
1	100	80	80
2	80	70	100
3	30	60	70
4	10	80	60
5	90	60	80
6	50	60	90

a) Which site will be recommended based on *total* weighted scores?
b) If location B's score for Proximity to port facilities was reset at 90, how would the result change?
c) What score would location B need on Proximity to port facilities to change its ranking? PX

•• **8.11** A company is planning on expanding and building a new plant in one of three Southeast Asian countries. Chris Ellis, the manager charged with making the decision, has determined that five key success factors can be used to evaluate the prospective countries. Ellis used a rating system of 1 (least desirable country) to 5 (most desirable) to evaluate each factor.

KEY SUCCESS FACTOR	WEIGHT	CANDIDATE COUNTRY RATINGS		
		TAIWAN	THAILAND	SINGAPORE
Technology	0.2	4	5	1
Level of education	0.1	4	1	5
Political and legal aspects	0.4	1	3	3
Social and cultural aspects	0.1	4	2	3
Economic factors	0.2	3	3	2

a) Which country should be selected for the new plant?
b) Political unrest in Thailand results in a lower score, 2, for Political and legal aspects. Does your conclusion change?
c) What if Thailand's score drops even further, to a 1, for Political and legal aspects? PX

• **8.12** Harden College is contemplating opening a European campus where students from the main campus could go to take courses for 1 of the 4 college years. At the moment, it is considering five countries: The Netherlands, Great Britain, Italy, Belgium, and Greece. The college wishes to consider eight factors in its decision. The first two factors are given weights of 0.2, while the rest are assigned weights of 0.1. The following table illustrates its assessment of each factor for each country (5 is best).

FACTOR	FACTOR DESCRIPTION	THE NETHER-LANDS	GREAT BRITAIN	ITALY	BELGIUM	GREECE
1	Stability of government	5	5	3	5	4
2	Degree to which the population can converse in English	4	5	3	4	3
3	Stability of the monetary system	5	4	3	4	3
4	Communications infrastructure	4	5	3	4	3
5	Transportation infrastructure	5	5	3	5	3
6	Availability of historic/cultural sites	3	4	5	3	5
7	Import restrictions	4	4	3	4	4
8	Availability of suitable quarters	4	4	3	4	3

a) In which country should Harden College choose to set up its European campus?
b) How would the decision change if the "degree to which the population can converse in English" was not an issue? PX

••8.13 Daniel Tracy, owner of Martin Manufacturing, must expand by building a new factory. The search for a location for this factory has been narrowed to four sites: A, B, C, or D. The following table shows the results thus far obtained by Tracy by using the factor-rating method to analyze the problem. The scale used for each factor scoring is 1 through 5.

FACTOR	WEIGHT	SITE SCORES			
		A	B	C	D
Quality of labor	10	5	4	4	5
Construction cost	8	2	3	4	1
Transportation costs	8	3	4	3	2
Proximity to markets	7	5	3	4	4
Taxes	6	2	3	3	4
Weather	6	2	5	5	4
Energy costs	5	5	4	3	3

a) Which site should Tracy choose?
b) If site D's score for Energy costs increases from a 3 to a 5, do results change?
c) If site A's Weather score is adjusted to a 4, what is the impact? What should Tracy do at this point? PX

•••8.14 An American consulting firm is planning to expand globally by opening a new office in one of four countries: Germany, Italy, Spain, or Greece. The chief partner entrusted with the decision, L. Wayne Shell, has identified eight key success factors that he views as essential for the success of any consultancy. He used a rating system of 1 (least desirable country) to 5 (most desirable) to evaluate each factor.

KEY SUCCESS FACTOR	WEIGHT	CANDIDATE COUNTRY RATINGS			
		GERMANY	ITALY	SPAIN	GREECE
Level of education					
Number of consultants	.05	5	5	5	2
National literacy rate	.05	4	2	1	1
Political aspects					
Stability of government	0.2	5	5	5	2
Product liability laws	0.2	5	2	3	5
Environmental regulations	0.2	1	4	1	3
Social and cultural aspects					
Similarity in language	0.1	4	2	1	1
Acceptability of consultants	0.1	1	4	4	3
Economic factors					
Incentives	0.1	2	3	1	5

a) Which country should be selected for the new office?
b) If Spain's score were lowered in the Stability of government factor, to a 4, how would its overall score change? On this factor, at what score for Spain *would* the rankings change? PX

••8.15 A British hospital chain wishes to make its first entry into the U.S. market by building a medical facility in the Midwest, a region with which its director, Doug Moodie, is comfortable because he got his medical degree at Northwestern University. After a preliminary analysis, four cities are chosen for further consideration. They are rated and weighted according to the factors shown below:

FACTOR	WEIGHT	CITY			
		CHICAGO	MILWAUKEE	MADISON	DETROIT
Costs	2.0	8	5	6	7
Need for a facility	1.5	4	9	8	4
Staff availability	1.0	7	6	4	7
Local incentives	0.5	8	6	5	9

a) Which city should Moodie select?
b) Assume a minimum score of 5 is now required for all factors. Which city should be chosen? PX

••8.16 The fixed and variable costs for three potential manufacturing plant sites for a rattan chair weaver are shown:

SITE	FIXED COST PER YEAR	VARIABLE COST PER UNIT
1	$ 500	$11
2	1,000	7
3	1,700	4

a) Over what range of production is each location optimal?
b) For a production of 200 units, which site is best? PX

• 8.17 Peter Billington Stereo, Inc., supplies car radios to auto manufacturers and is going to open a new plant. The company is undecided between Detroit and Dallas as the site. The

fixed costs in Dallas are lower due to cheaper land costs, but the variable costs in Dallas are higher because shipping distances would increase. Given the following costs:

COST	DALLAS	DETROIT
Fixed costs	$600,000	$800,000
Variable costs	$28/radio	$22/radio

a) Perform an analysis of the volume over which each location is preferable.
b) How does your answer change if Dallas's fixed costs increase by 10%? PX

•••**8.18** Hyundai Motors is considering three sites—A, B, and C—at which to locate a factory to build its new-model automobile, the Hyundai Sport C150. The goal is to locate at a minimum-cost site, where cost is measured by the annual fixed plus variable costs of production. Hyundai Motors has gathered the following data:

SITE	ANNUALIZED FIXED COST	VARIABLE COST PER AUTO PRODUCED
A	$10,000,000	$2,500
B	$20,000,000	$2,000
C	$25,000,000	$1,000

The firm knows it will produce between 0 and 60,000 Sport C150s at the new plant each year, but, thus far, that is the extent of its knowledge about production plans.
a) For what values of volume, V, of production, if any, is site C a recommended site?
b) What volume indicates site A is optimal?
c) Over what range of volume is site B optimal? Why? PX

••**8.19** Peggy Lane Corp., a producer of machine tools, wants to move to a larger site. Two alternative locations have been identified: Bonham and McKinney. Bonham would have fixed costs of $800,000 per year and variable costs of $14,000 per standard unit produced. McKinney would have annual fixed costs of $920,000 and variable costs of $13,000 per standard unit. The finished items sell for $29,000 each.
a) At what volume of output would the two locations have the same profit?
b) For what range of output would Bonham be superior (have higher profits)?
c) For what range would McKinney be superior?
d) What is the relevance of break-even points for these cities? PX

••**8.20** The following table gives the map coordinates and the shipping loads for a set of cities that we wish to connect through a central hub.

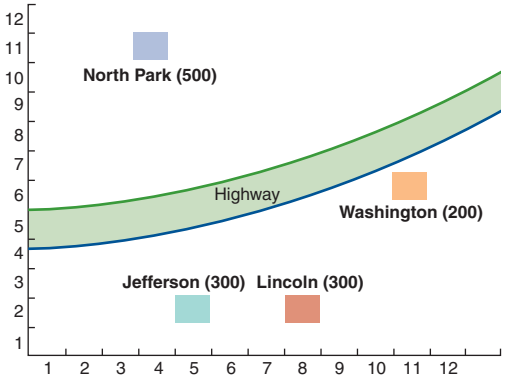
CITY	MAP COORDINATE (X, Y)	SHIPPING LOAD
A	(5, 10)	5
B	(6, 8)	10
C	(4, 9)	15
D	(9, 5)	5
E	(7, 9)	15
F	(3, 2)	10
G	(2, 6)	5

a) Near which map coordinates should the hub be located?
b) If the shipments from city A triple, how does this change the coordinates? PX

••**8.21** A chain of home health care firms in Louisiana needs to locate a central office from which to conduct internal audits and other periodic reviews of its facilities. These facilities are scattered throughout the state, as detailed in the following table. Each site, except for Houma, will be visited three times each year by a team of workers, who will drive from the central office to the site. Houma will be visited five times a year. Which coordinates represent a good central location for this office? What other factors might influence the office location decision? Where would you place this office? Explain. PX

CITY	MAP COORDINATES	
	x	y
Covington	9.2	3.5
Donaldsonville	7.3	2.5
Houma	7.8	1.4
Monroe	5.0	8.4
Natchitoches	2.8	6.5
New Iberia	5.5	2.4
Opelousas	5.0	3.6
Ruston	3.8	8.5

••**8.22** A small rural county has experienced unprecedented growth over the past 6 years, and as a result, the local school district built the new 500-student North Park Elementary School. The district has three older and smaller elementary schools: Washington, Jefferson, and Lincoln. Now the growth pressure is being felt at the secondary level. The school district would like to build a centrally located middle school to accommodate students and reduce busing costs. The older middle school is adjacent to the high school and will become part of the high school campus.
a) What are the coordinates of the central location?
b) What other factors should be considered before building a school? PX



••**8.23** Todd's Direct, a major TV sales chain headquartered in New Orleans, is about to open its first outlet in Mobile, Alabama, and wants to select a site that will place the new outlet in the center of Mobile's population base. Todd examines the seven census tracts in Mobile, plots the coordinates of the center of each from a map, and looks up the population base in each to use as a weighting. The information gathered appears in the following table.

CENSUS TRACT	POPULATION IN CENSUS TRACT	*X, Y* MAP COORDINATES
101	2,000	(25, 45)
102	5,000	(25, 25)
103	10,000	(55, 45)
104	7,000	(50, 20)
105	10,000	(80, 50)
106	20,000	(70, 20)
107	14,000	(90, 25)

a) At what center-of-gravity coordinates should the new store be located?
b) Census tracts 103 and 105 are each projected to grow by 20% in the next year. How will this influence the new store's coordinates? PX

• • • • **8.24** Twenty Four Seven Convenience Store, which had opened its first store at New Delhi's Lajpat Nagar in 2005, presently operates 38 'round-the-clock' stores in the India's capital region[1]. Planning to open its new branch in the capital suburban, the chain has come up with three options which have been evaluated against the decision factors are follows:

		Location		
FACTOR	WEIGHT	A	B	C
Market Size	30	8	6	5
Accessibility	30	6	5	6
Proximity to the current 24-7's distribution centres	25	5	6	4
Store expansion potential	15	5	6	9

1. Source: http://www.thehindu.com/news/cities/Delhi/twenty-four-seven-store-chain-in-expansion-mode/article6327828.ece

a) Using the factor-rating method, what is the recommended site for Twenty Four Seven's new store?
b) The store expansion potential is the least important factor in the least. At what level of importance (weight) for the store' expansion potential, the decision made in part (a) of this question will change.

• • • • **8.25** The EU has made changes in airline regulation that dramatically affect major European carriers such as British International Air (BIA), KLM, Air France, Alitalia, and Swiss International Air. With ambitious expansion plans, BIA has decided it needs a second service hub on the continent, to complement its large Heathrow (London) repair facility. The location selection is critical, and with the potential for 4,000 new skilled blue-collar jobs on the line, virtually every city in western Europe is actively bidding for BIA's business.

After initial investigations by Holmes Miller, head of the Operations Department, BIA has narrowed the list to 9 cities. Each is then rated on 12 factors, as shown in the table below.

a) Help Miller rank the top three cities that BIA should consider as its new site for servicing aircraft.
b) After further investigation, Miller decides that an existing set of hangar facilities for repairs is not nearly as important as earlier thought. If he lowers the weight of that factor to 30, does the ranking change?
c) After Miller makes the change in part (b), Germany announces it has reconsidered its offer of financial incentives, with an additional 200-million-euro package to entice BIA. Accordingly, BIA has raised Germany's rating to 10 on that factor. Is there any change in top rankings in part (b)? PX

Additional problems **8.26–8.34** *are available in* MyOMLab.

DATA FOR PROBLEM 8.25		*LOCATION*								
		ITALY			*FRANCE*			*GERMANY*		
FACTOR	IMPORTANCE WEIGHT	MILAN	ROME	GENOA	PARIS	LYON	NICE	MUNICH	BONN	BERLIN
Financial incentives	85	8	8	8	7	7	7	7	7	7
Skilled labor pool	80	4	6	5	9	9	7	10	8	9
Existing facility	70	5	3	2	9	6	5	9	9	2
Wage rates	70	9	8	9	4	6	6	4	5	5
Competition for jobs	70	7	3	8	2	8	7	4	8	9
Ease of air traffic access	65	5	4	6	2	8	8	4	8	9
Real estate cost	40	6	4	7	4	6	6	3	4	5
Communication links	25	6	7	6	9	9	9	10	9	8
Attractiveness to relocating executives	15	4	8	3	9	6	6	2	3	3
Political considerations	10	6	6	6	8	8	8	8	8	8
Expansion possibilities	10	10	2	8	1	5	4	4	5	6
Union strength	10	1	1	1	5	5	5	6	6	6

CASE STUDIES

Finding a Location for Electronics Component Manufacturing in Asia

ACM is an electronics component manufacturer that has been located in Singapore since 1991, supplying original equipment manufacturers (OEMs) with quality components. In the past several years, ACM has experienced increasing pressure from other manufacturers located in other countries. In Singapore, while labor remains quite inexpensive, there has been a relatively steady increase in labor costs. In addition, utility costs—most notably water and energy costs—have led the firm to contemplate moving operations elsewhere in Asia in an attempt to make the firm more competitive. ACM remains profitable, but margins have shrunk, and management is interested in ensuring that the firm remains competitive against other component manufacturers in the medium term to long term.

A senior management team has formed a committee to reach a decision regarding possible relocation. The committee has identified two additional locations as possible candidates for relocation: Hong Kong (People's Republic of China [PRC]) and Kuching (Malaysia). Hong Kong's main attractions stem from the fact that since 1997, when its sovereignty was transferred back to the PRC, labor costs have decreased as access to labor has increased. Hong Kong enjoys a large seaport and very good transportation infrastructure, and this is important in moving in raw materials and moving out finished components to customers. Presently, the customers are geographically dispersed, making access to a seaport very important in delivering products to customers. Senior management believes that an increasing number of OEMs will move to the PRC in the next several years, as has been the case in the past decade. This will only increase the attractiveness of locating the manufacturing facility in Hong Kong.

Kuching is located in the Malaysian province of Sarawak, on the island of Borneo. It is the fourth-largest city in Malaysia and home to a population of around 650,000. Several points make Kuching attractive to the relocation committee. First, locating here would provide access to natural resources and other production inputs. Second, the transportation infrastructure is good, and the city hosts a deep sea port for moving raw materials in and finished goods out. That said, the port is not as large or accessible as those of Hong Kong or Singapore, and several committee members have expressed concern about the frequency of ship visits to Kuching. If the port does not receive regular service from container ships, transportation costs to ship components to OEMs will increase. Finally, another selling point is that labor is relatively stable and inexpensive in Malaysia.

The committee has contacted the government of Singapore to elicit possible incentives to not relocate to another country. Singapore is offering a 5-year exemption on taxes for ACM if the plant remains in Singapore. The government will also assist by partially subsidizing labor, water, and energy costs for 5 years. Committee members realize that the Singapore plant, which has been operating for years, has already been amortized, and opening a new plant would require additional capital costs. That said, opening a new factory would also provide an opportunity to upgrade production equipment to more productive and energy efficient alternatives.

Discussion Questions

1. What advantages and disadvantages does each potential location offer?

Locating the Next Red Lobster Restaurant

Video Case

From its first Red Lobster in 1968, the chain has grown to 705 locations, with over $2.6 billion in U.S. sales annually. The casual dining market may be crowded, with competitors such as Chili's, Ruby Tuesday, Applebee's, TGI Friday's, and Outback, but Red Lobster's continuing success means the chain thinks there is still plenty of room to grow. Robert Reiner, director of market development, is charged with identifying the sites that will maximize new store sales without cannibalizing sales at the existing Red Lobster locations.

Characteristics for identifying a good site have not changed in 40 years; they still include real estate prices, customer age, competition, ethnicity, income, family size, population density, nearby hotels, and buying behavior, to name just a few. What *has* changed is the powerful software that allows Reiner to analyze a new site in 5 minutes, as opposed to the 8 hours he spent just a few years ago.

Red Lobster has partnered with MapInfo Corp., whose geographic information system (GIS) contains a powerful module for analyzing a trade area (see the discussion of GIS in the chapter). With the U.S. geo-coded down to the individual block, MapInfo allows Reiner to create a psychographic profile of existing and potential Red Lobster trade areas. "We can now target areas with greatest sales potential," says Reiner.

The U.S. is segmented into 72 "clusters" of customer profiles by MapInfo. If, for example, cluster #7, Equestrian Heights (see MapInfo description below), represents 1.7% of a household base within a Red Lobster trade area, but this segment also accounts

for 2.4% of sales, Reiner computes that this segment is effectively spending 1.39 times more than average (Index = 2.4/1.7) and adjusts his analysis of a new site to reflect this added weight.

CLUSTER	PSYTE 2003	SNAP SHOT DESCRIPTION
7	Equestrian Heights	They may not have a stallion in the barn, but they likely pass a corral on the way home. These families with teens live in older, larger homes adjacent to, or between, suburbs but not usually tract housing. Most are married with teenagers, but 40% are empty nesters. They use their graduate and professional school education—56% are dual earners. Over 90% are white, non-Hispanic. Their mean family income is $99,000, and they live within commuting distance of central cities. They have white-collar jobs during the week but require a riding lawn mower to keep the place up on weekends.

When Reiner maps the U.S., a state, or a region for a new site, he wants one that is at least 3 miles from the nearest Red Lobster and won't negatively impact its sales by more than 8%; MapInfo pinpoints the best spot. The software also recognizes the nearness of non-Red Lobster competition and assigns a probability of success (as measured by reaching sales potential).

The specific spot selected depends on Red Lobster's seven real estate brokers, whose list of considerations include proximity to a vibrant retail area, proximity to a freeway, road visibility, nearby hotels, and a corner location at a primary intersection.

"Picking a new Red Lobster location is one of the most critical functions we can do," says Reiner. "And the software we use serves as an independent voice in assessing the quality of an existing or proposed location."

Discussion Questions*

1. Visit the Web site for PSTYE 2003 (**www.gemapping.com/downloads/targetpro_brochure.pdf**). Describe the psychological profiling (PSYTE) clustering system. Select an industry, other than restaurants, and explain how the software can be used for that industry.
2. What are the major differences in site location for a restaurant versus a retail store versus a manufacturing plant?
3. Red Lobster also defines its trade areas based on market size and population density. Here are its seven density classes:

DENSITY CLASS	DESCRIPTION	HOUSEHOLDS PER SQ. MILE
1	Super Urban	8,000+
2	Urban	4,000–7,999
3	Light Urban	2,000–3,999
4	First Tier Suburban	1,000–1,999
5	Second Tier Suburban	600–999
6	Exurban/Small	100–599
7	Rural	0–99

Note: Density classes are based on the households and land area within 3 miles of the geography (e.g., census tract) using population-weighted centroids.

The majority (92%) of the Red Lobster restaurants fall into three of these classes. Which three classes do you think the chain has the most restaurants in? Why?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before answering the questions.

Where to Place the Hard Rock Cafe

Video Case

Some people would say that Oliver Munday, Hard Rock's vice president for cafe development, has the best job in the world. Travel the world to pick a country for Hard Rock's next cafe, select a city, and find the ideal site. It's true that selecting a site involves lots of incognito walking around, visiting nice restaurants, and drinking in bars. But that is not where Mr. Munday's work begins, nor where it ends. At the front end, selecting the country and city first involves a great deal of research. At the back end, Munday not only picks the final site and negotiates the deal but then works with architects and planners and stays with the project through the opening and first year's sales.

Munday is currently looking heavily into global expansion in Europe, Latin America, and Asia. "We've got to look at political risk, currency, and social norms—how does our brand fit into the country," he says. Once the country is selected, Munday focuses on the region and city. His research checklist is extensive, as seen in the accompanying table.

Site location now tends to focus on the tremendous resurgence of "city centers," where nightlife tends to concentrate. That's what Munday selected in Moscow and Bogota, although in both locations he chose to find a local partner and franchise the operation. In these two political environments, "Hard Rock wouldn't dream of operating by ourselves," says Munday. The location decision also is at least a 10- to 15-year commitment by Hard Rock, which employs tools such as locational cost–volume

Hard Rock's Standard Market Report (for offshore sites)

A. Demographics (local, city, region, SMSA), with trend analysis
   1. Population of area
   2. Economic indicators
B. Visitor market, with trend analysis
   1. Tourists/business visitors
   2. Hotels
   3. Convention center
   4. Entertainment
   5. Sports
   6. Retail
C. Transportation
   1. Airport ← subcategories include: (a) age of airport (b) no. of passengers (c) airlines (d) direct flights (e) hubs
   2. Rail
   3. Road
   4. Sea/river
D. Restaurants and nightclubs (a selection in key target market areas)
E. Political risk
F. Real estate market
G. Hard Rock Cafe comparable market analysis

analysis to help decide whether to purchase land and build, or to remodel an existing facility.

Currently, Munday is considering four European cities for Hard Rock's next expansion. Although he could not provide the names, for competitive reasons, the following is known:

FACTOR	EUROPEAN CITY UNDER CONSIDERATION				IMPORTANCE OF THIS FACTOR AT THIS TIME
	A	B	C	D	
A. Demographics	70	70	60	90	20
B. Visitor market	80	60	90	75	20
C. Transportation	100	50	75	90	20
D. Restaurants/ nightclubs	80	90	65	65	10
E. Low political risk	90	60	50	70	10
F. Real estate market	65	75	85	70	10
G. Comparable market analysis	70	60	65	80	10

Discussion Questions*

1. From Munday's Standard Market Report checklist, select any other four categories, such as population (A1), hotels (B2), or restaurants/nightclubs (D), and provide three subcategories that should be evaluated. (See item C1 [airport] for a guide.)
2. Which is the highest rated of the four European cities under consideration, using the table?
3. Why does Hard Rock put such serious effort into its location analysis?
4. Under what conditions do you think Hard Rock prefers to franchise a cafe?

*You may wish to view the video case before answering the questions.

- **Additional Case Study:** Visit MyOMLab for this free case study:
  Southwestern University (E): The university faces three choices as to where to locate its football stadium.

Endnote

1. Equations (8-1) and (8-2) compute a center of gravity (COG) under "squared Euclidean" distances and may actually result in transportation costs slightly (less than 2%) higher than an *optimal* COG computed using "Euclidean" (straight-line) distances. The latter, however, is a more complex and involved procedure mathematically, so the formulas we present are generally used as an attractive substitute. See C. Kuo and R. E. White, "A Note on the Treatment of the Center-of-Gravity Method in Operations Management Textbooks," *Decision Sciences Journal of Innovative Education* 2: 219–227.

Chapter 8 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
THE STRATEGIC IMPORTANCE OF LOCATION (pp. 378–379)	Location has a major impact on the overall risk and profit of the company. Transportation costs alone can total as much as 25% of the product's selling price. When all costs are considered, location may alter total operating expenses as much as 50%. Companies make location decisions relatively infrequently, usually because demand has outgrown the current plant's capacity or because of changes in labor productivity, exchange rates, costs, or local attitudes. Companies may also relocate their manufacturing or service facilities because of shifts in demographics and customer demand. Location options include (1) expanding an existing facility instead of moving, (2) maintaining current sites while adding another facility elsewhere, and (3) closing the existing facility and moving to another location. For industrial location decisions, the location strategy is usually minimizing costs. For retail and professional service organizations, the strategy focuses on maximizing revenue. Warehouse location strategy may be driven by a combination of cost and speed of delivery. *The objective of location strategy is to maximize the benefit of location to the firm.* When innovation is the focus, overall competitiveness and innovation are affected by (1) the presence of high-quality and specialized inputs such as scientific and technical talent, (2) an environment that encourages investment and intense local rivalry, (3) pressure and insight gained from a sophisticated local market, and (4) local presence of related and supporting industries.	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4 **VIDEO 8.1** Hard Rock's Location Selection
FACTORS THAT AFFECT LOCATION DECISIONS (pp. 379–382)	Globalization has taken place because of the development of (1) market economics; (2) better international communications; (3) more rapid, reliable travel and shipping; (4) ease of capital flow between countries; and (5) large differences in labor costs. Labor cost per unit is sometimes called the *labor content* of the product: Labor cost per unit = Labor cost per day ÷ Production (that is, units per day) Sometimes firms can take advantage of a particularly favorable exchange rate by relocating or exporting to (or importing from) a foreign country. ■ **Tangible costs**—Readily identifiable costs that can be measured with some precision. ■ **Intangible costs**—A category of location costs that cannot be easily quantified, such as quality of life and government. Many service organizations find that proximity to market is *the* primary location factor. Firms locate near their raw materials and suppliers because of (1) perishability, (2) transportation costs, or (3) bulk. ■ **Clustering**—Location of competing companies near each other, often because of a critical mass of information, talent, venture capital, or natural resources.	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4 Problems: 8.1–8.4
METHODS OF EVALUATING LOCATION ALTERNATIVES (pp. 382–388)	■ **Factor-rating method**—A location method that instills objectivity into the process of identifying hard-to-evaluate costs. The six steps of the factor-rating method are: 1. Develop a list of relevant factors called *key success factors.* 2. Assign a weight to each factor to reflect its relative importance in the company's objectives. 3. Develop a scale for each factor (for example, 1 to 10 or 1 to 100 points). 4. Have management score each location for each factor, using the scale in step 3. 5. Multiply the score by the weight for each factor and total the score for each location. 6. Make a recommendation based on the maximum point score, considering the results of other quantitative approaches as well. ■ **Locational cost–volume analysis**—A method used to make an economic comparison of location alternatives. The three steps to locational cost–volume analysis are: 1. Determine the fixed and variable cost for each location. 2. Plot the costs for each location, with costs on the vertical axis of the graph and annual volume on the horizontal axis. 3. Select the location that has the lowest total cost for the expected production volume.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4 Problems: 8.5–8.34 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problems: 8.1, 8.2 **ACTIVE MODEL 8.1**

Chapter 8 *Rapid* Review *continued*

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
	■ **Center-of-gravity method**—A mathematical technique used for finding the best location for a single distribution point that services several stores or areas. The center-of-gravity method chooses the ideal location that minimizes the *weighted* distance between itself and the locations it serves, where the distance is weighted by the number of containers shipped, Q_i: x-coordinate of the center of gravity $= \sum_i x_i Q_i \div \sum_i Q_i$ (8-1) y-coordinate of the center of gravity $= \sum_i y_i Q_i \div \sum_i Q_i$ (8-2) ■ **Transportation model**—A technique for solving a class of linear programming problems. The transportation model determines the best pattern of shipments from several points of supply to several points of demand to minimize total production and transportation costs.	Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 8.3
SERVICE LOCATION STRATEGY (pp. 388–389)	The eight major determinants of volume and revenue for the service firm are: 1. Purchasing power of the customer-drawing area 2. Service and image compatibility with demographics of the customer-drawing area 3. Competition in the area 4. Quality of the competition 5. Uniqueness of the firm's and competitors' locations 6. Physical qualities of facilities and neighboring businesses 7. Operating policies of the firm 8. Quality of management	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4
GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION SYSTEMS (pp. 389–391)	■ **Geographic information system (GIS)**—A system that stores and displays information that can be linked to a geographic location. Some of the geographic databases available in many GISs include (1) census data by block, tract, city, county, congressional district, metropolitan area, state, and zip code; (2) maps of every street, highway, bridge, and tunnel in the U.S.; (3) utilities such as electrical, water, and gas lines; (4) all rivers, mountains, lakes, and forests; and (5) all major airports, colleges, and hospitals.	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.4 **VIDEO 8.2** Locating the Next Red Lobster Restaurant

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 8.1 The factors involved in location decisions include
a) foreign exchange.
b) attitudes.
c) labor productivity.
d) all of the above.

LO 8.2 If Emarat Car Wash pays Dh40 per day to a worker in its main facility in Dubai, and two employees wash forty cars per day, the labour cost/car is
a) Dh 40
b) Dh 1
c) Dh 0.5
d) Dh 20
e) Dh 2

LO 8.3 Evaluating location alternatives by comparing their composite (weighted-average) scores involves
a) factor-rating analysis.
b) cost–volume analysis.
c) transportation model analysis.
d) linear regression analysis.
e) crossover analysis.

LO 8.4 On cost–volume analysis chart in location selection decisions, where two cost curves cross each other is also named no-difference point, because:
a) The volumes of the decisions are not different in that point
b) The variable costs of the decisions are not different in that point
c) The total costs of the decisions are not different in that point
d) Both curves have different costs in different points
e) The fixed costs of the decisions are not different in that point

LO 8.5 A regional bookstore chain is about to build a distribution center that is centrally located for its eight retail outlets. It will most likely employ which of the following tools of analysis?
a) Assembly-line balancing
b) Load–distance analysis
c) Center-of-gravity model
d) Linear programming
e) All of the above

LO 8.6 The location decisions in the service and manufacturing sector mainly focus on revenue and cost. However, in public sector services such as hospitals, there are other key factors which should lead the location decisions for example (select two):
a) Accessibility
b) Potential profitability for local businesses
c) Nearby facilities (e.g. parking space)
d) Potential growth of the real estate market
e) Utility costs

Answers: LO 8.1. d; LO 8.2. e; LO 8.3. a; LO 8.4. c; LO 8.5. c; LO 8.6. a.

Layout Decisions

CHAPTER 9

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *McDonald's*

- The Strategic Importance of Layout Decisions *408*
- Types of Layout *408*
- Office Layout *409*
- Retail Layout *410*
- Warehouse and Storage Layouts *413*
- Fixed-Position Layout *415*
- Process-Oriented Layout *416*
- Work Cells *421*
- Repetitive and Product-Oriented Layout *374*

Alaska Airlines

Alaska Airlines

10 OM STRATEGY DECISIONS

- Design of Goods and Services
- Managing Quality
- Process Strategy
- Location Strategies
- *Layout Strategies*
- Human Resources
- Supply-Chain Management
- Inventory Management
- Scheduling
- Maintenance

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
McDonald's

McDonald's Looks for Competitive Advantage Through Layout

In its over half-century of existence, McDonald's has revolutionized the restaurant industry by inventing the limited-menu fast-food restaurant. It has also made seven major innovations. The first, the introduction of *indoor seating* (1950s), was a layout issue, as was the second, *drive-through windows* (1970s). The third, adding *breakfasts* to the menu (1980s), was a product strategy. The fourth, *adding play areas* (late 1980s), was again a layout decision.

In the 1990s, McDonald's completed its fifth innovation, a radically new *redesign of the kitchens* in its 14,000 North American outlets to facilitate a mass customization process. Dubbed the "Made by You" kitchen system, sandwiches were assembled to order with the revamped layout.

In 2004, the chain began the rollout of its sixth innovation, a new food ordering layout: the *self-service kiosk*. Self-service kiosks have been infiltrating the service sector since the introduction of ATMs in 1985 (there are over 1.5 million ATMs in banking). Alaska Airlines was the first airline to provide self-service airport check-in, in 1996. Most passengers of the major airlines now check themselves in for flights. Kiosks take up less space than an employee and reduce waiting line time.

Now, McDonald's is working on its seventh innovation, and not surprisingly, it also deals with restaurant layout. The company, on an unprecedented scale, is redesigning all 30,000 eateries around the globe to take on a *21st-century look*. The dining area will be separated into three sections with distinct personalities: (1) the "linger" zone focuses on young adults and offers

Rick Wilking/Corbis

McDonald's finds that kiosks reduce both space requirements and waiting; order taking is faster. An added benefit is that customers like them. Also, kiosks are reliable—they don't call in sick. And, most important, sales are up 10%–15% (an average of $1) when a customer orders from a kiosk, which consistently recommends the larger size and other extras.

Nancy Siesel/The New York Times/Redux

The redesigned kitchen of a McDonald's in Manhattan. The more efficient layout requires less labor, reduces waste, and provides faster service. A graphic of this "assembly line" is shown in Figure 9.11.

comfortable furniture and Wi-Fi connections; (2) the "grab and go" zone features tall counters, bar stools, and flat-screen TVs; and (3) the "flexible" zone has colorful family booths, flexible seating, and kid-oriented music. The cost per outlet: a whopping $300,000–$400,000 renovation fee.

As McDonald's has discovered, facility layout is indeed a source of competitive advantage.

ZUMA Press, Inc./Alamy

Flexible Zone

This area is geared for family and larger groups, with movable tables and chairs.

McDonald's Corporation

Grab & Go Zone

This section has tall counters with bar stools for customers who eat alone. Flat-screen TVs keep them company.

McDonald's Corporation

Linger Zone

Cozy booths, plus Wi-Fi connections, make these areas attractive to those who want to hang out and socialize.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO 9.1 ***Discuss*** important issues in office layout 410
LO 9.2 ***Define*** the objectives of retail layout 412
LO 9.3 ***Discuss*** modern warehouse management and terms such as ASRS, cross-docking, and random stocking 413
LO 9.4 ***Identify*** when fixed-position layouts are appropriate 416
LO 9.5 ***Explain*** how to achieve a good process-oriented facility layout 417
LO 9.6 ***Define*** work cell and the requirements of a work cell 421
LO 9.7 ***Define*** product-oriented layout 424
LO 9.8 ***Explain*** how to balance production flow in a repetitive or product-oriented facility 425

The Strategic Importance of Layout Decisions

Layout is one of the key decisions that determines the long-run efficiency of operations. Layout has strategic implications because it establishes an organization's competitive priorities in regard to capacity, processes, flexibility, and cost, as well as quality of work life, customer contact, and image. An effective layout can help an organization achieve a strategy that supports differentiation, low cost, or response. Benetton, for example, supports a *differentiation* strategy by heavy investment in warehouse layouts that contribute to fast, accurate sorting and shipping to its 5,000 outlets. Walmart store layouts support a strategy of *low cost*, as do its warehouse layouts. Hallmark's office layouts, where many professionals operate with open communication in work cells, support *rapid development* of greeting cards. *The objective of layout strategy is to develop an effective and efficient layout that will meet the firm's competitive requirements*. These firms have done so.

In all cases, layout design must consider how to achieve the following:

- Higher utilization of space, equipment, and people
- Improved flow of information, materials, and people
- Improved employee morale and safer working conditions
- Improved customer/client interaction
- Flexibility (whatever the layout is now, it will need to change)

In our increasingly short-life-cycle, mass-customized world, layout designs need to be viewed as dynamic.This means considering small, movable, and flexible equipment. Store displays need to be movable, office desks and partitions modular, and warehouse racks prefabricated. To make quick and easy changes in product models and in production rates, operations managers must design flexibility into layouts. To obtain flexibility in layout, managers cross-train their workers, maintain equipment, keep investments low, place workstations close together, and use small, movable equipment. In some cases, equipment on wheels is appropriate, in anticipation of the next change in product, process, or volume.

Types of Layout

Layout decisions include the best placement of machines (in production settings), offices and desks (in office settings), or service centers (in settings such as hospitals or department stores). An effective layout facilitates the flow of materials, people, and information within and between areas. To achieve these objectives, a variety of approaches has been developed. We will discuss seven of them in this chapter:

1. *Office layout:* Positions workers, their equipment, and spaces/offices to provide for movement of information.
2. *Retail layout:* Allocates display space and responds to customer behavior.
3. *Warehouse layout:* Addresses trade-offs between space and material handling.
4. *Fixed-position layout:* Addresses the layout requirements of large, bulky projects such as ships and buildings.

TABLE 9.1 Layout Strategies

	OBJECTIVES	EXAMPLES
Office	Locate workers requiring frequent contact close to one another	Allstate Insurance Microsoft Corp.
Retail	Expose customer to high-margin items	Kroger's Supermarket Walgreens Bloomingdale's
Warehouse (storage)	Balance low-cost storage with low cost material handling	Federal-Mogul's warehouse The Gap's distribution center
Project (fixed position)	Move material to the limited storage areas around the site	Ingall Ship Building Corp. Trump Plaza Pittsburgh Airport
Job shop (process oriented)	Manage varied material flow for each product	Arnold Palmer Hospital Hard Rock Cafe Olive Garden
Work cell (product families)	Identify a product family, build teams, cross-train team members	Hallmark Cards Wheeled Coach Ambulances
Repetitive/continuous (product oriented)	Equalize the task time at each workstation	Sony's TV assembly line Toyota Scion

5. *Process-oriented layout:* Deals with low-volume, high-variety production (also called "job shop," or intermittent production).
6. *Work-cell layout:* Arranges machinery and equipment to focus on production of a single product or group of related products.
7. *Product-oriented layout:* Seeks the best personnel and machine utilization in repetitive or continuous production.

Examples for each of these classes of layouts are noted in Table 9.1.

Because only a few of these seven classes can be modeled mathematically, layout and design of physical facilities are still something of an art. However, we do know that a good layout requires determining the following:

- *Material handling equipment:* Managers must decide about equipment to be used, including conveyors, cranes, automated storage and retrieval systems, and automatic carts to deliver and store material.
- *Capacity and space requirements:* Only when personnel, machines, and equipment requirements are known can managers proceed with layout and provide space for each component. In the case of office work, operations managers must make judgments about the space requirements for each employee. They must also consider allowances for requirements that address safety, noise, dust, fumes, temperature, and space around equipment and machines.
- *Environment and aesthetics:* Layout concerns often require decisions about windows, planters, and height of partitions to facilitate air flow, reduce noise, and provide privacy.
- *Flows of information:* Communication is important to any organization and must be facilitated by the layout. This issue may require decisions about proximity, as well as decisions about open spaces versus half-height dividers versus private offices.
- *Cost of moving between various work areas:* There may be unique considerations related to moving materials or to the importance of having certain areas next to each other. For example, moving molten steel is more difficult than moving cold steel.

Office Layout

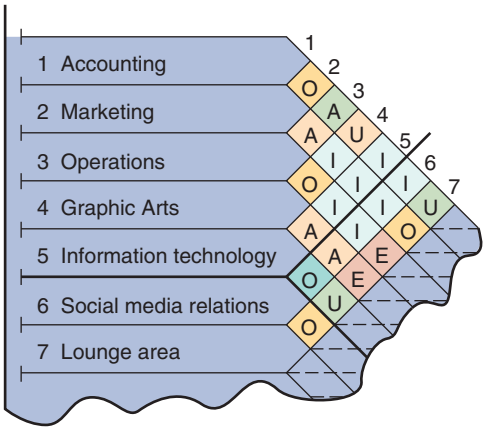
Office layouts require the grouping of workers, their equipment, and spaces to provide for comfort, safety, and movement of information. The main distinction of office layouts is the importance placed on the flow of information. Office layouts are in constant flux as the technological changes sweeping society alter the way offices function.

Office layout
The grouping of workers, their equipment, and spaces/offices to provide for comfort, safety, and movement of information.

Figure 9.1

Office Relationship Chart

The Muther Grid for a software firm.



Code	CLOSENESS
A	Absolutely necessary
E	Especially important
I	Important
O	Ordinary OK
U	Unimportant
X	Not desirable

LO 9.1 *Discuss* important issues in office layout

Even though the movement of information is increasingly electronic, analysis of office layouts still requires a task-based approach. Managers therefore examine both electronic and conventional communication patterns, separation needs, and other conditions affecting employee effectiveness. A useful tool for such an analysis is the *relationship chart* (also called a Muther Grid) shown in Figure 9.1. This chart, prepared for a software firm, indicates that operations must be near accounting and marketing, but it does not need to be near the graphic arts staff.

On the other hand, some layout considerations are universal (many of which apply to factories as well as to offices). They have to do with working conditions, teamwork, authority, and status. Should offices be private or open cubicles, have low file cabinets to foster informal communication or high cabinets to reduce noise and contribute to privacy?

Workspace can inspire informal and productive encounters if it balances three physical and social aspects[1]:

- *Proximity:* Spaces should naturally bring people together.
- *Privacy:* People must be able to control access to their conversations.
- *Permission:* The culture should signal that nonwork interactions are encouraged.

As a final comment on office layout, we note two major trends. First, technology, such as smart phones, scanners, the Internet, laptop computers, and tablets, allows increasing layout flexibility by moving information electronically and allowing employees to work offsite. Second, modern firms create dynamic needs for space and services.

Here are two examples:

- When Deloitte & Touche found that 30% to 40% of desks were empty at any given time, the firm developed its "hoteling programs." Consultants lost their permanent offices; anyone who plans to be in the building (rather than out with clients) books an office through a "concierge," who hangs that consultant's name on the door for the day and stocks the space with requested supplies.
- Cisco Systems cut rent and workplace service costs by 37% and saw productivity benefits of $2.4 billion per year by reducing square footage, reconfiguring space, creating movable, everything-on-wheels offices, and designing "get away from it all" innovation areas.

Retail Layout

Retail layout

An approach that addresses flow, allocates space, and responds to customer behavior.

Retail layouts are based on the idea that sales and profitability vary directly with customer exposure to products. Thus, most retail operations managers try to expose customers to as many products as possible. Studies do show that the greater the rate of exposure, the greater the sales and the higher the return on investment. The operations manager can change

Here are five versions of the office layout.

Everett Collection

Managers and architects have pondered how to design an office to encourage productivity for more than 100 years. In the early 20th century, large offices resembled factories (see the photo of the Jack Lemmon film *The Apartment*, where clerical workers sat in long rows, often performing repetitive tasks).

Starting in the 1960s, layouts changed to foster teamwork where managers and support staff sat together, and groupings were geared toward specific tasks.

Courtesy of Herman Miller, Inc.

Chad McDermott/Fotolia

With computers, more individual work was possible and the "Cube Farm" era became ubiquitous through the '80s and '90s. An office full of high-walled cubicles offered both an open environment and personal office space.

By the turn of the century, looking for innovation and creativity to recruit and inspire college grads, technology firms created the "fun" office. Bright, casual, open office spaces, with amenities such as beanbag chairs, foosball tables, and coffee bars became the fad.

Monkey Business/Fotolia

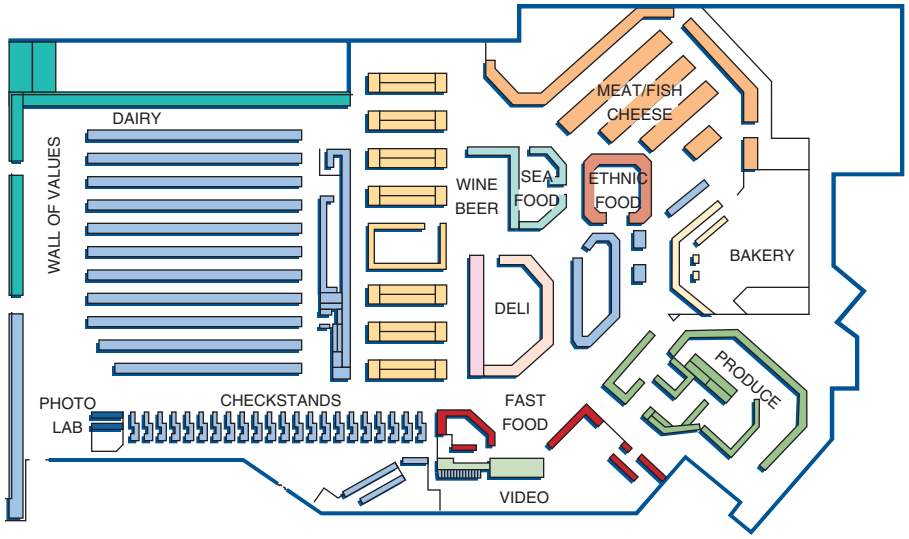
Amruth/Agencja Fotograficzna Caro/Alamy

The buzzwords today are serendipity and collaboration, as companies design office space to engineer encounters between employees. Steve Jobs designed his Pixar headquarters with the cafeteria and bathrooms in a central atrium away from work areas to encourage intermingling and collaboration. Skype achieves similar goals with open lounges.

Sources: Wall Street Journal (April 28, 2014); *USA Today* (Feb. 28, 2013); and *Harvard Business Review* (Oct. 2014).

Figure 9.2

Store Layout with Dairy and Bakery, High-Draw Items, in Different Areas of the Store



exposure with store arrangement and the allocation of space to various products within that arrangement.

Five ideas are helpful for determining the overall arrangement of many stores:

1. Locate the high-draw items around the periphery of the store. Thus, we tend to find dairy products on one side of a supermarket and bread and bakery products on another. An example of this tactic is shown in Figure 9.2.
2. Use prominent locations for high-impulse and high-margin items. Best Buy puts fast-growing, high-margin digital goods—such as cameras and printers—in the front and center of its stores.
3. Distribute what are known in the trade as "power items"—items that may dominate a purchasing trip—to both sides of an aisle, and disperse them to increase the viewing of other items.
4. Use end-aisle locations because they have a very high exposure rate.
5. Convey the mission of the store by carefully selecting the position of the lead-off department. For instance, if prepared foods are part of a supermarket's mission, position the bakery and deli up front to appeal to convenience-oriented customers. Walmart's push to increase sales of clothes means those departments are in broad view upon entering a store.

STUDENT TIP The goal in a retail layout is to maximize profit per square foot of store space.

LO 9.2 *Define* the objectives of retail layout

Once the overall layout of a retail store has been decided, products need to be arranged for sale. Many considerations go into this arrangement. However, the main *objective of retail layout is to maximize profitability per square foot of floor space* (or, in some stores, on linear foot of shelf space). Big-ticket, or expensive, items may yield greater dollar sales, but the profit per square foot may be lower. Computer programs are available to assist managers in evaluating the profitability of various merchandising plans for hundreds of categories: this technique is known as category management.

Slotting fees

Fees manufacturers pay to get shelf space for their products.

An additional, and somewhat controversial, issue in retail layout is called slotting. **Slotting fees** are fees manufacturers pay to get their goods on the shelf in a retail store or supermarket chain. The result of massive new-product introductions, retailers can now demand up to $25,000 to place an item in their chain. During the last decade, marketplace economics, consolidations, and technology have provided retailers with this leverage. The competition for shelf space is advanced by POS systems and scanner technology, which improve supply-chain management and inventory control. Many small firms question the legality and ethics of slotting fees, claiming the fees stifle new products, limit their ability to expand, and cost consumers money. Walmart is one of the few major retailers that does not demand slotting fees, removing a barrier to entry. (See the *Ethical Dilemma* at the end of this chapter.)

Servicescapes

Although a major goal of retail layout is to maximize profit through product exposure, there are other aspects of the service that managers consider. The term **servicescape** describes the physical surroundings in which the service is delivered and how the surroundings have a humanistic effect on customers and employees. To provide a good service layout, a firm considers three elements:

Servicescape
The physical surroundings in which a service takes place, and how they affect customers and employees.

1. *Ambient conditions*, which are background characteristics such as lighting, sound, smell, and temperature. All these affect workers *and* customers and can affect how much is spent and how long a person stays in the building.
2. *Spatial layout and functionality*, which involve customer circulation path planning, aisle characteristics (such as width, direction, angle, and shelf spacing), and product grouping.
3. *Signs, symbols, and artifacts*, which are characteristics of building design that carry social significance (such as carpeted areas of a department store that encourage shoppers to slow down and browse).

Examples of each of these three elements of servicescape are:

- *Ambient conditions:* Fine-dining restaurants with linen tablecloths and candlelit atmosphere; Mrs. Field's Cookie bakery smells permeating the shopping mall; leather chairs at Starbucks.
- *Layout/functionality:* Kroger's long aisles and high shelves; Best Buy's wide center aisle.
- *Signs, symbols, and artifacts:* Walmart's greeter at the door; Hard Rock Cafe's wall of guitars; Disneyland's entrance looking like hometown heaven.

Warehouse and Storage Layouts

Warehouse layout
A design that attempts to minimize total cost by addressing trade-offs between space and material handling.

LO 9.3 *Discuss* modern warehouse management and terms such as ASRS, cross-docking, and random stocking

The objective of **warehouse layout** *is to find the optimum trade-off between handling cost and costs associated with warehouse space*. Consequently, management's task is to maximize the utilization of the total "cube" of the warehouse—that is, utilize its full volume while maintaining low material handling costs. We define *material handling costs* as all the costs related to the transaction. This consists of incoming transport, storage, and outgoing transport of the materials to be warehoused. These costs include equipment, people, material, supervision, insurance, and depreciation. Effective warehouse layouts do, of course, also minimize the damage and spoilage of material within the warehouse.

imageBROKER/Alamy

A critical element contributing to the bottom line at Hard Rock Cafe is the layout of each cafe's retail shop space. The retail space, from 600 to 1,300 square feet in size, is laid out in conjunction with the restaurant area to create the maximum traffic flow before and after eating. The payoffs for cafes like this one in London are huge. Almost half of a cafe's annual sales are generated from these small shops, which have very high retail sales per square foot.

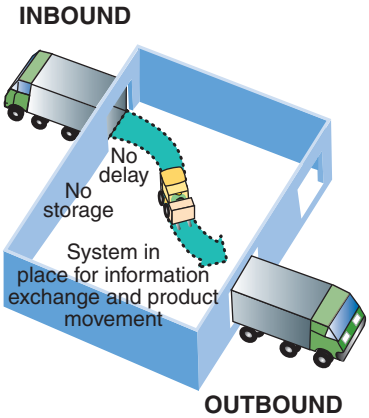
STUDENT TIP

In warehouse layout, we want to maximize use of the whole building—from floor to ceiling.

Management minimizes the sum of the resources spent on finding and moving material plus the deterioration and damage to the material itself. The variety of items stored and the number of items "picked" has direct bearing on the optimum layout. A warehouse storing a few unique items lends itself to higher density than a warehouse storing a variety of items. Modern warehouse management is, in many instances, an automated procedure using *automated storage and retrieval systems* (ASRSs).

The Stop & Shop grocery chain, with 350 supermarkets in New England, has recently completed the largest ASRS in the world. The 1.3-million-square-foot distribution center in Freetown, Massachusetts, employs 77 rotating-fork automated storage and retrieval machines. These 77 ASRS machines each access 11,500 pick slots on 90 aisles—a total of 64,000 pallets of food.

An important component of warehouse layout is the relationship between the receiving/unloading area and the shipping/loading area. Facility design depends on the type of supplies unloaded, what they are unloaded from (trucks, rail cars, barges, and so on), and where they are unloaded. In some companies, the receiving and shipping facilities, or *docks*, as they are called, are even in the same area; sometimes they are receiving docks in the morning and shipping docks in the afternoon.



Cross-docking

Avoiding the placement of materials or supplies in storage by processing them as they are received for shipment.

Cross-Docking

Cross-docking means to avoid placing materials or supplies in storage by processing them as they are received. In a manufacturing facility, product is received directly by the assembly line. In a distribution center, labeled and presorted loads arrive at the shipping dock for immediate rerouting, thereby avoiding formal receiving, stocking/storing, and order-selection activities. Because these activities add no value to the product, their elimination is 100% cost savings. Walmart, an early advocate of cross-docking, uses the technique as a major component of its continuing low-cost strategy. With cross-docking, Walmart reduces distribution costs and speeds restocking of stores, thereby improving customer service. Although cross-docking reduces product handling, inventory, and facility costs, it requires both (1) tight scheduling and (2) accurate inbound product identification.

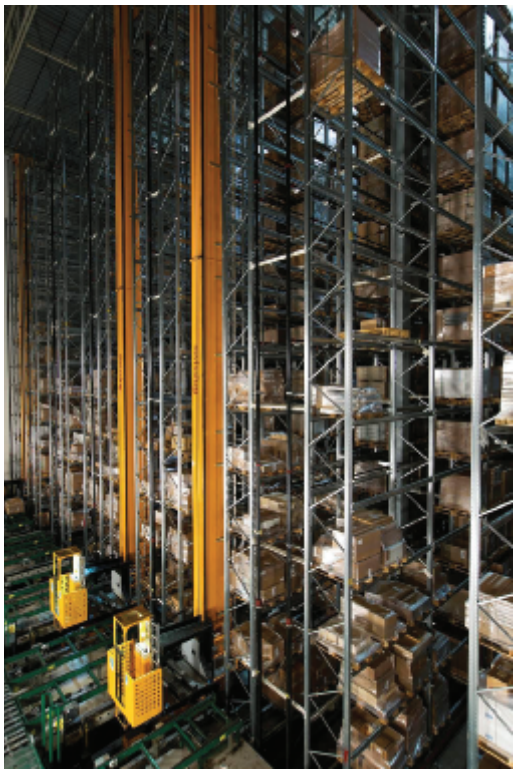
Random Stocking

Random stocking
Used in warehousing to locate stock wherever there is an open location.

Automatic identification systems (AISs), usually in the form of bar codes, allow accurate and rapid item identification. When automatic identification systems are combined with effective management information systems, operations managers know the quantity and location of every unit. This information can be used with human operators or with automatic storage and retrieval systems to load units anywhere in the warehouse—randomly. Accurate inventory quantities and locations mean the potential utilization of the whole facility because space does not need to be reserved for certain stock-keeping units (SKUs) or part families. Computerized **random stocking** systems often include the following tasks:

1. Maintaining a list of "open" locations
2. Maintaining accurate records of existing inventory and its locations
3. Sequencing items to minimize the travel time required to "pick" orders
4. Combining orders to reduce picking time
5. Assigning certain items or classes of items, such as high-usage items, to particular warehouse areas so that the total distance traveled within the warehouse is minimized

Random stocking systems can increase facility utilization and decrease labor cost, but they require accurate records.



Andrew Hetherington/Redux

At Ikea's distribution center in Almhult, Sweden, pallets are stacked and retrieved through a fully automated process.

Customizing

Customizing
Using warehousing to add value to a product through component modification, repair, labeling, and packaging.

Although we expect warehouses to store as little product as possible and hold it for as short a time as possible, we are now asking warehouses to customize products. Warehouses can be places where value is added through **customizing**. Warehouse customization is a particularly useful way to generate competitive advantage in markets where products have multiple configurations. For instance, a warehouse can be a place where computer components are put together, software loaded, and repairs made. Warehouses may also provide customized labeling and packaging for retailers so items arrive ready for display.

Increasingly, this type of work goes on adjacent to major airports, in facilities such as the FedEx terminal in Memphis. Adding value at warehouses adjacent to major airports also facilitates overnight delivery. For example, if your computer has failed, the replacement may be sent to you from such a warehouse for delivery the next morning. When your old machine arrives back at the warehouse, it is repaired and sent to someone else. These value-added activities at "quasi-warehouses" contribute to strategies of differentiation, low cost, and rapid response.

Fixed-Position Layout

Fixed-position layout
A system that addresses the layout requirements of stationary projects.

In a **fixed-position layout**, the project remains in one place, and workers and equipment come to that one work area. Examples of this type of project are a ship, a highway, a bridge, a house, and an operating table in a hospital operating room.

The techniques for addressing the fixed-position layout are complicated by three factors. First, there is limited space at virtually all sites. Second, at different stages of a project, different materials are needed; therefore, different items become critical as the project develops. Third, the volume of materials needed is dynamic. For example, the rate of use of steel panels for the hull of a ship changes as the project progresses.

Here are three versions of the fixed-position layout.

Craig Ruttle/AP Images

A house built via traditional fixed-position layout would be constructed onsite, with equipment, materials, and workers brought to the site. Then a "meeting of the trades" would assign space for various time periods. However, the home pictured here can be built at a much lower cost. The house is built in two movable modules in a factory. Scaffolding and hoists make the job easier, quicker, and cheaper, and the indoor work environment aids labor productivity.

Dick Blume/The Image Works

A service example of a fixed-position layout is an operating room; the patient remains stationary on the table, and medical personnel and equipment are brought to the site.

Tim Altevogt/Reuters/Corbis

In shipbuilding, there is limited space next to the fixed-position layout. Shipyards call these loading areas platens, and they are assigned for various time periods to each contractor.

LO 9.4 *Identify* when fixed-position layouts are appropriate

Because problems with fixed-position layouts are so difficult to solve well onsite, an alternative strategy is to complete as much of the project as possible offsite. This approach is used in the shipbuilding industry when standard units—say, pipe-holding brackets—are assembled on a nearby assembly line (a product-oriented facility). In an attempt to add efficiency to shipbuilding, Ingall Ship Building Corporation has moved toward product-oriented production when sections of a ship (modules) are similar or when it has a contract to build the same section of several similar ships. Also, as the first photo on this page shows, many home builders are moving from a fixed-position layout strategy to one that is more product oriented. About one-third of all new homes in the U.S. are built this way. In addition, many houses that are built onsite (fixed position) have the majority of components such as doors, windows, fixtures, trusses, stairs, and wallboard built as modules in more efficient offsite processes.

Process-Oriented Layout

Process-oriented layout
A layout that deals with low-volume, high-variety production in which like machines and equipment are grouped together.

A **process-oriented layout** can simultaneously handle a wide variety of products or services. This is the traditional way to support a product differentiation strategy. It is most efficient when making products with different requirements or when handling customers, patients, or clients with different needs. A process-oriented layout is typically the low-volume, high-variety strategy discussed in Chapter 7. In this job-shop environment, each product or each small group of products undergoes a different sequence of operations. A product or small order is produced

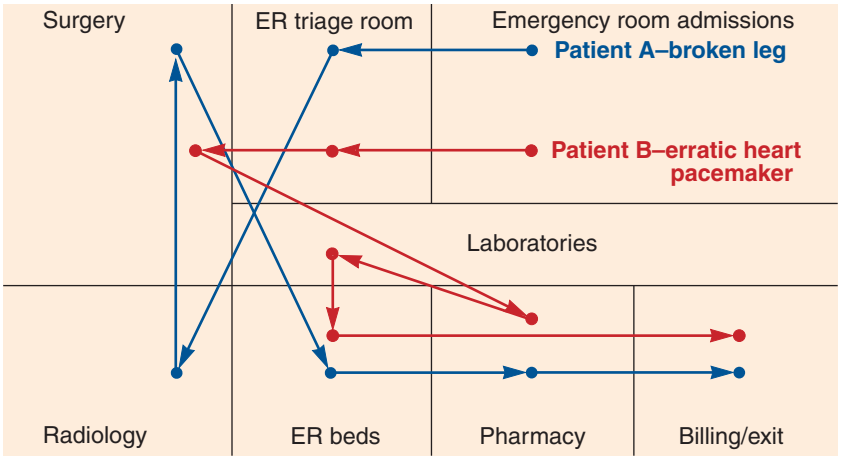


Figure 9.3
An Emergency Room Process Layout Showing the Routing of Two Patients

STUDENT TIP
Patient A (broken leg) proceeds (blue arrow) to ER triage, to radiology, to surgery, to a bed, to pharmacy, to billing. Patient B (pacemaker problem) moves (red arrow) to ER triage, to surgery, to pharmacy, to lab, to a bed, to billing.

by moving it from one department to another in the sequence required for that product. A good example of the process-oriented layout is a hospital or clinic. Figure 9.3 illustrates the process for two patients, A and B, at an emergency clinic in Chicago. An inflow of patients, each with his or her own needs, requires routing through admissions, laboratories, operating rooms, radiology, pharmacies, nursing beds, and so on. Equipment, skills, and supervision are organized around these processes.

VIDEO 9.1
Laying Out Arnold Palmer Hospital's New Facility

A big advantage of process-oriented layout is its flexibility in equipment and labor assignments. The breakdown of one machine, for example, need not halt an entire process; work can be transferred to other machines in the department. Process-oriented layout is also especially good for handling the manufacture of parts in small batches, or **job lots**, and for the production of a wide variety of parts in different sizes or forms.

Job lots
Groups or batches of parts processed together.

The disadvantages of process-oriented layout come from the general-purpose use of the equipment. Orders take more time to move through the system because of difficult scheduling, changing setups, and unique material handling. In addition, general-purpose equipment requires high labor skills, and work-in-process inventories are higher because of imbalances in the production process. High labor-skill needs also increase the required level of training and experience, and high work-in-process levels increase capital investment.

When designing a process layout, the most common tactic is to arrange departments or work centers so as to minimize the costs of material handling. In other words, departments with large flows of parts or people between them should be placed next to one another. Material handling costs in this approach depend on (1) the number of loads (or people) to be moved between two departments during some period of time and (2) the distance-related costs of moving loads (or people) between departments. Cost is assumed to be a function of distance between departments. The objective can be expressed as follows:

LO 9.5 *Explain* how to achieve a good process-oriented facility layout

$$\text{Minimize cost} = \sum_{i=1}^{n}\sum_{j=1}^{n} X_{ij}C_{ij} \qquad (9\text{-}1)$$

where n = total number of work centers or departments
i, j = individual departments
X_{ij} = number of loads moved from department i to department j
C_{ij} = cost to move a load between department i and department j

Process-oriented facilities (and fixed-position layouts as well) try to minimize loads, or trips, multiplied by distance-related costs. The term C_{ij} combines distance and other costs into one factor. We thereby assume not only that the difficulty of movement is equal but also that the pickup and setdown costs are constant. Although they are not always constant, for simplicity's sake we summarize these data (that is, distance, difficulty, and pickup and setdown costs) in this one variable, cost. The best way to understand the steps involved in designing a process layout is to look at an example.

Example 1

DESIGNING A PROCESS LAYOUT

Walters Company management wants to arrange the six departments of its factory in a way that will minimize interdepartmental material-handling costs. They make an initial assumption (to simplify the problem) that each department is 20 × 20 feet and that the building is 60 feet long and 40 feet wide.

APPROACH AND SOLUTION ▶ The process layout procedure that they follow involves six steps:

Step 1: *Construct a "from–to matrix"* showing the flow of parts or materials from department to department (see Figure 9.4).

Figure 9.4
Interdepartmental Flow of Parts

STUDENT TIP
The high flows between 1 and 3 and between 3 and 6 are immediately apparent. Departments 1, 3, and 6, therefore, should be close together.

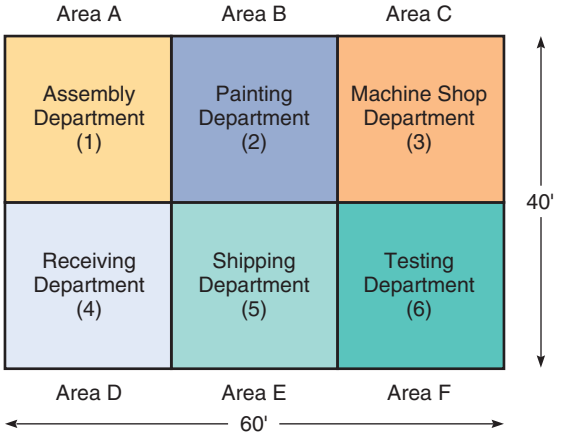
Number of loads per week

Department	Assembly (1)	Painting (2)	Machine Shop (3)	Receiving (4)	Shipping (5)	Testing (6)
Assembly (1)		50	100	0	0	20
Painting (2)			30	50	10	0
Machine Shop (3)				20	0	100
Receiving (4)					50	0
Shipping (5)						0
Testing (6)						

Step 2: *Determine the space requirements* for each department. (Figure 9.5 shows available plant space.)

Figure 9.5
Building Dimensions and One Possible Department Layout

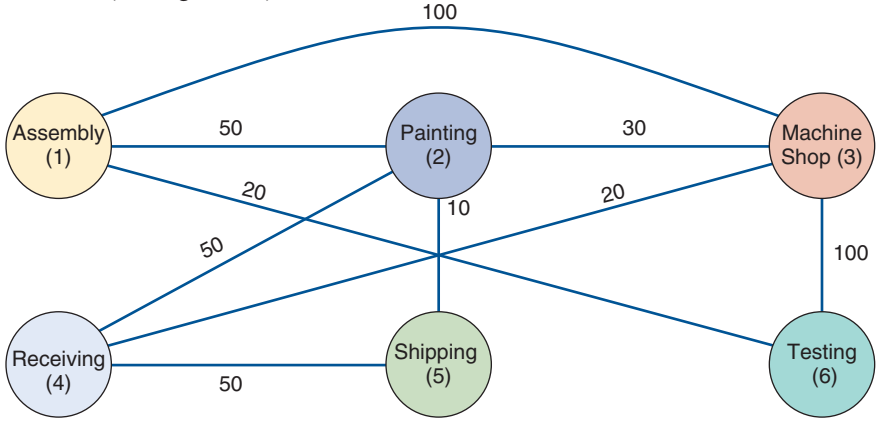
STUDENT TIP
Think of this as a starting, initial, layout. Our goal is to improve it, if possible.



Step 3: *Develop an initial schematic diagram* showing the sequence of departments through which parts must move. Try to place departments with a heavy flow of materials or parts next to one another. (See Figure 9.6.)

Figure 9.6
Interdepartmental Flow Graph Showing Number of Weekly Loads

STUDENT TIP
This shows that 100 loads also move weekly between Assembly and the Machine Shop. We will probably want to move these two departments closer to one another to minimize the flow of parts through the factory.



Step 4: *Determine the cost of this layout* by using the material-handling cost equation:

$$\text{Cost} = \sum_{i=1}^{n}\sum_{j=1}^{n} X_{ij}C_{ij}$$

For this problem, Walters Company assumes that a forklift carries all interdepartmental loads. The cost of moving one load between adjacent departments is estimated to be \$1. Moving a load between nonadjacent departments costs \$2. Looking at Figures 9.4 and 9.5, we thus see that the handling cost between departments 1 and 2 is \$50 (\$1 × 50 loads), \$200 between departments 1 and 3 (\$2 × 100 loads), \$40 between departments 1 and 6 (\$2 × 20 loads), and so on. Work areas that are diagonal to one another, such as 2 and 4, are treated as adjacent. The total cost for the layout shown in Figure 9.6 is:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Cost} = {} & \underset{(1 \text{ and } 2)}{\$50} + \underset{(1 \text{ and } 3)}{\$200} + \underset{(1 \text{ and } 6)}{\$40} + \underset{(2 \text{ and } 3)}{\$30} + \underset{(2 \text{ and } 4)}{\$50} \\ & + \underset{(2 \text{ and } 5)}{\$10} + \underset{(3 \text{ and } 4)}{\$40} + \underset{(3 \text{ and } 6)}{\$100} + \underset{(4 \text{ and } 5)}{\$50} \\ = {} & \$570\end{aligned}$$

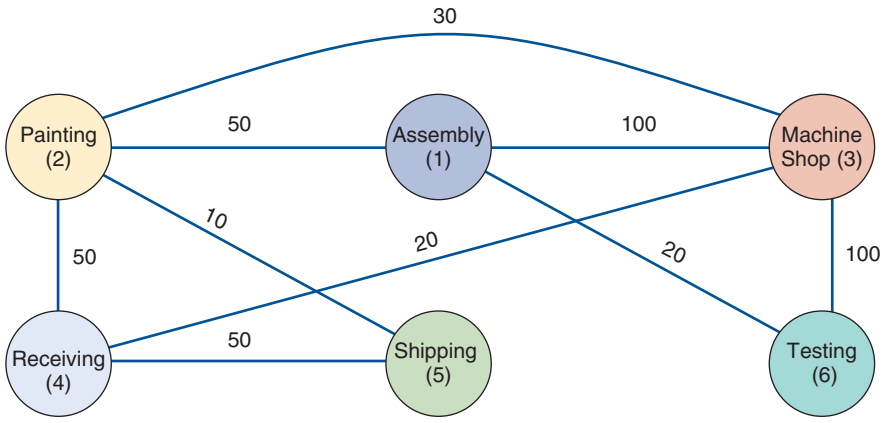
Step 5: By trial and error (or by a more sophisticated computer program approach that we discuss shortly), *try to improve the layout* pictured in Figure 9.5 to establish a better arrangement of departments.

By looking at both the flow graph (Figure 9.6) and the cost calculations, we see that placing departments 1 and 3 closer together appears desirable. They currently are nonadjacent, and the high volume of flow between them causes a large handling expense. Looking the situation over, we need to check the effect of shifting departments and possibly raising, instead of lowering, overall costs.

One possibility is to switch departments 1 and 2. This exchange produces a second departmental flow graph (Figure 9.7), which shows a reduction in cost to \$480, a savings in material handling of \$90:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Cost} = {} & \underset{(1 \text{ and } 2)}{\$50} + \underset{(1 \text{ and } 3)}{\$100} + \underset{(1 \text{ and } 6)}{\$20} + \underset{(2 \text{ and } 3)}{\$60} + \underset{(2 \text{ and } 4)}{\$50} \\ & + \underset{(2 \text{ and } 5)}{\$10} + \underset{(3 \text{ and } 4)}{\$40} + \underset{(3 \text{ and } 6)}{\$100} + \underset{(4 \text{ and } 5)}{\$50} \\ = {} & \$480\end{aligned}$$

Figure 9.7
Second Interdepartmental Flow Graph



STUDENT TIP
Notice how Assembly and Machine Shop are now adjacent. Testing stayed close to the Machine Shop also.

Suppose Walters Company is satisfied with the cost figure of \$480 and the flow graph of Figure 9.7. The problem may not be solved yet. Often, a sixth step is necessary:

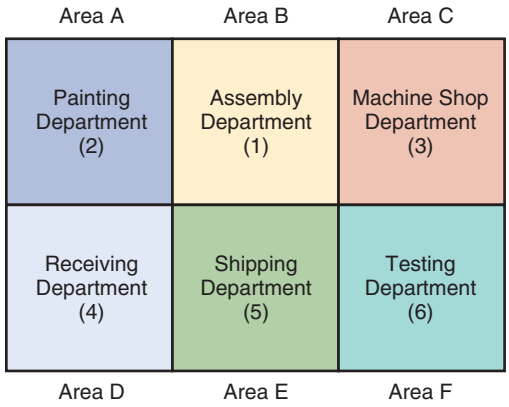
Step 6: *Prepare a detailed plan* arranging the departments to fit the shape of the building and its nonmovable areas (such as the loading dock, washrooms, and stairways). Often this step involves ensuring that the final plan can be accommodated by the electrical system, floor loads, aesthetics, and other factors.

In the case of Walters Company, space requirements are a simple matter (see Figure 9.8).

Figure 9.8

A Feasible Layout for Walters Company

STUDENT TIP Here we see the departments moved to areas A–F to try to improve the flow.



INSIGHT ▶ This switch of departments is only one of a large number of possible changes. For a six-department problem, there are actually 720 (or $6! = 6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1$) potential arrangements! In layout problems, we may not find the optimal solution and may have to be satisfied with a "reasonable" one.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Can you improve on the layout in Figures 9.7 and 9.8? [Answer: Yes, it can be lowered to $430 by placing Shipping in area A, Painting in area B, Assembly in area C, Receiving in area D (no change), Machine Shop in area E, and Testing in area F (no change).]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 9.1–9.9 (9.10 is available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch09Ex1.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

ACTIVE MODEL 9.1 Example 1 is further illustrated in Active Model 9.1 in MyOMLab.

Computer Software for Process-Oriented Layouts

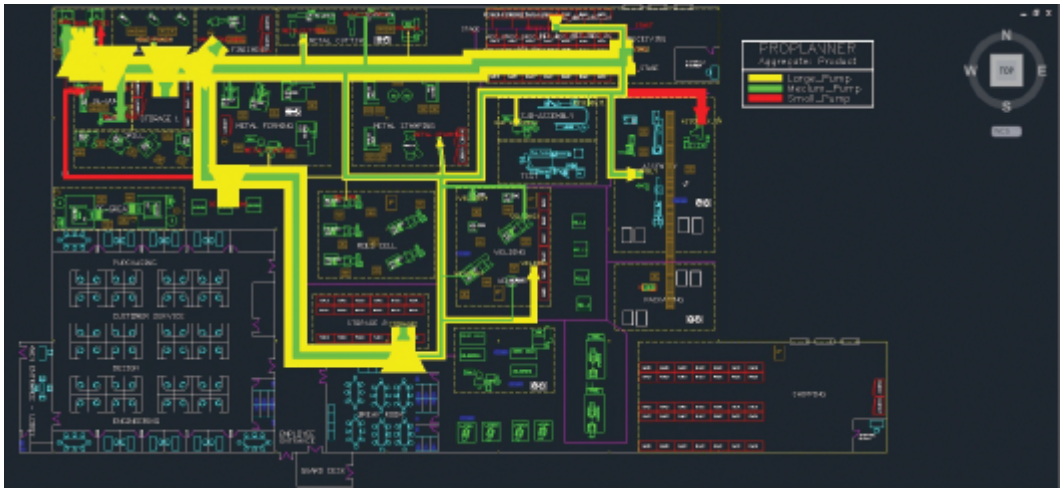
The graphic approach in Example 1 is fine for small problems. It does not, however, suffice for larger problems. When 20 departments are involved in a layout problem, more than 600 *trillion* different department configurations are possible. Fortunately, computer programs have been written to handle large layouts. These programs (see the Flow Path Calculator graphic on the next page) often add sophistication with flowcharts, multiple-story capability, storage and container placement, material volumes, time analysis, and cost comparisons. These programs tend to be interactive—that is, require participation by the user. And most only claim to provide "good," not "optimal," solutions.

Julian Stratenschulte/picture-alliance/dpa/AP Images

Siemens Corp. software such as this allows operations managers to quickly place factory equipment for a full three-dimensional view of the layout. Such presentations provide added insight into the issues of facility layout in terms of process, material handling, efficiency, and safety. (Images created with Tecnomatix Plant Simulation software, courtesy of Siemens PLM Software)

Proplanner Software for Process-Oriented Layouts

Working with computer-aided design software, analysts with the click of a mouse can use Proplanner's Flow Path Calculator to generate material flow diagrams and calculate material handling distances, time, and cost. Variable-width flow lines, color-coded by product, part, or material handling method, allow users to identify how layouts should be arranged and where to eliminate excessive material handling.



Work Cells

A **work cell** reorganizes people and machines that would ordinarily be dispersed in various departments into a group so that they can focus on making a single product or a group of related products (Figure 9.9). Cellular work arrangements are used when volume warrants a special arrangement of machinery and equipment. These work cells are reconfigured as product designs change or volume fluctuates. The advantages of work cells are:

Work cell
An arrangement of machines and personnel that focuses on making a single product or family of related products.

1. *Reduced work-in-process inventory* because the work cell is set up to provide one-piece flow from machine to machine.
2. *Less floor space* required because less space is needed between machines to accommodate work-in-process inventory.
3. *Reduced raw material and finished goods inventories* because less work-in-process allows more rapid movement of materials through the work cell.
4. *Reduced direct labor cost* because of improved communication among employees, better material flow, and improved scheduling.
5. *Heightened sense of employee participation* in the organization and the product: employees accept the added responsibility of product quality because it is directly associated with them and their work cell.
6. *Increased equipment and machinery utilization* because of better scheduling and faster material flow.
7. *Reduced investment in machinery and equipment* because good utilization reduces the number of machines and the amount of equipment and tooling.

LO 9.6 *Define* work cell and the requirements of a work cell

Requirements of Work Cells

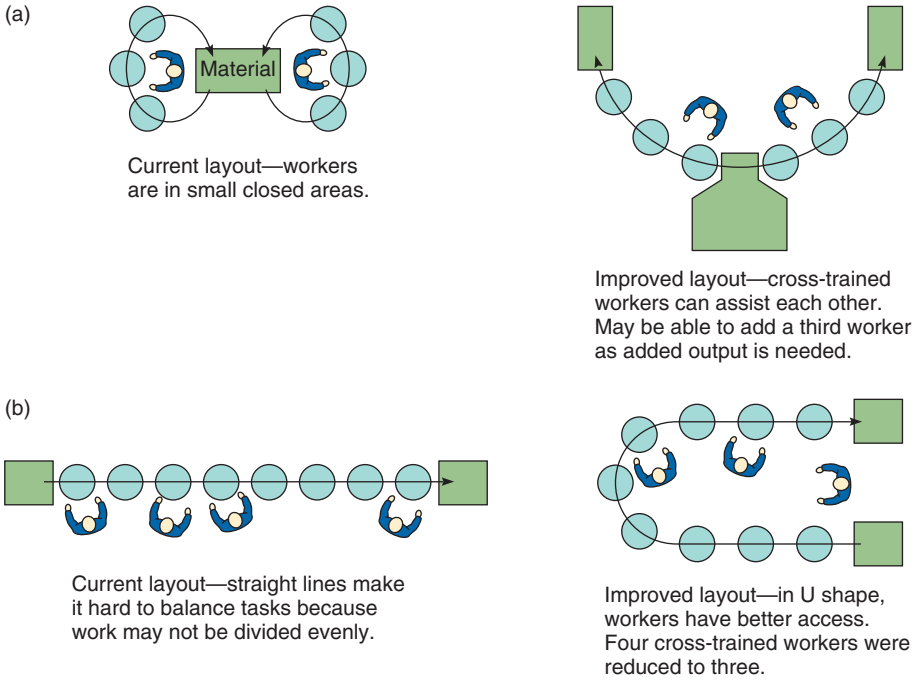
The requirements of cellular production include:

- Identification of families of products, often through the use of group technology codes or equivalents
- A high level of training, flexibility, and empowerment of employees
- Being self-contained, with its own equipment and resources
- Testing (poka-yoke) at each station in the cell

Figure 9.9

Improving Layouts by Moving to the Work Cell Concept

Note in both (a) and (b) that U-shaped work cells can reduce material and employee movement. The U shape may also reduce space requirements, enhance communication, cut the number of workers, and make inspection easier.



STUDENT TIP

Using work cells is a big step toward manufacturing efficiency. They can make jobs more interesting, save space, and cut inventory.

Work cells have at least five advantages over assembly lines and focused process facilities: (1) because tasks are grouped, inspection is often immediate; (2) fewer workers are needed; (3) workers can reach more of the work area; (4) the work area can be more efficiently balanced; and (5) communication is enhanced. Work cells are sometimes organized in a U shape, as shown on the right side of Figure 9.9. The shape of the cell is secondary to the process flow. The focus should be on a flow that optimizes people, material, and communication.

Why did Canon's copier factories in Japan switch from assembly lines to work cells? First, the move freed up 12 miles of conveyor-belt space, at 54 plants, saving $280 million in real estate costs. Second, the cells enabled Canon to change its product mix more quickly, to accommodate short life cycles. And third, morale increased because workers can now assemble a whole copier, not just one part. Some of Canon's fastest workers are so admired that they have become TV celebrities!

Staffing and Balancing Work Cells

Once the work cell has the appropriate equipment located in the proper sequence, the next task is to staff and balance the cell. Efficient production in a work cell requires appropriate staffing.

Takt time
Pace of production to meet customer demands.

This involves two steps. First, determine the **takt time**,[2] which is the pace (frequency) of production units necessary (time per unit) to meet customer orders:

$$\text{Takt time} = \text{Total work time available}/\text{Units required to satisfy customer demand} \quad (9\text{-}2)$$

Second, determine the number of operators required. This requires dividing the total operation time in the work cell by the takt time:

$$\text{Workers required} = \text{Total operation time required}/\text{Takt time} \quad (9\text{-}3)$$

Example 2 considers these two steps when staffing work cells.

Example 2

STAFFING WORK CELLS

Stephen Hall's company in Dayton makes auto mirrors. The major customer is the Honda plant nearby. Honda expects 600 mirrors delivered daily, and the work cell producing the mirrors is scheduled for 8 hours. Hall wants to determine the takt time and the number of workers required.

APPROACH ▶ Hall uses Equations (9-2) and (9-3) and develops a work balance chart to help determine the time for each operation in the work cell, as well as total time.

SOLUTION ▶

$$\text{Takt time} = (8 \text{ hours} \times 60 \text{ minutes})/600 \text{ units} = 480/600 = .8 \text{ minute} = 48 \text{ seconds}$$

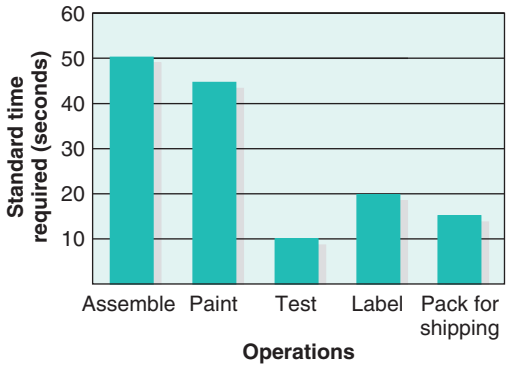
Therefore, the customer requirement is one mirror every 48 seconds.

The *work balance chart* in Figure 9.10 shows that 5 operations are necessary, for a total operation time of 140 seconds:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Workers required} &= \text{Total operation time required}/\text{Takt time} \\ &= (50 + 45 + 10 + 20 + 15)/48 \\ &= 140/48 = 2.92\end{aligned}$$

Figure **9.10**

Work Balance Chart for Mirror Production



INSIGHT ▶ To produce one unit every 48 seconds will require 2.92 people. With three operators this work cell will be producing one unit each 46.67 seconds (140 seconds/3 employees = 46.67) and 617 units per day (480 minutes available × 60 seconds/46.67 seconds for each unit = 617).

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If testing time is expanded to 20 seconds, what is the staffing requirement? [Answer: 3.125 employees.]

RELATED PROBLEM ▶ 9.11

A *work balance chart* (like the one in Example 2) is also valuable for evaluating the operation times in work cells. Some consideration must be given to determining the bottleneck operation. Bottleneck operations can constrain the flow through the cell. Imbalance in a work cell is seldom an issue if the operation is manual, as cell members by definition are part of a cross-trained team. Consequently, the inherent flexibility of work cells typically overcomes modest imbalance issues within a cell. However, if the imbalance is a machine constraint, then an adjustment in machinery, process, or operations may be necessary. In such situations the use of traditional assembly-line-balancing analysis, the topic of our next section, may be helpful.

The success of work cells is not limited to manufacturing. Kansas City's Hallmark, which has over half the U.S. greeting card market and produces some 40,000 different cards, has modified the offices into a cellular design. In the past, its 700 creative professionals would take up to 2 years to develop a new card. Hallmark's decision to create work cells consisting of artists, writers, lithographers, merchandisers, and accountants, all located in the same

area, has resulted in card preparation in a fraction of the time that the old layout required. Work cells have also yielded higher performance and better service for the American Red Cross blood donation process.

The Focused Work Center and the Focused Factory

Focused work center
A permanent or semipermanent product-oriented arrangement of machines and personnel.

Focused factory
A facility designed to produce similar products or components.

When a firm has *identified a family of similar products that have a large and stable demand*, it may organize a focused work center. A **focused work center** (also called a "plant within a plant") moves production to a large work cell that remains part of the present facility. For example, bumpers and dashboards in Toyota's Texas plant are produced in a focused work center, and the Levi's departments in JCPenney are managed and run in a stand-alone boutique setting.

If the focused work center is in a separate facility, it is often called a **focused factory**. For example, separate plants that produce seat belts, fuel tanks, and exhaust systems for Toyota are focused factories. A fast-food restaurant is also a focused factory—most are easily reconfigured for adjustments to product mix and volume. Burger King changes the number of personnel and task assignments rather than moving machines and equipment. In this manner, Burger King balances the assembly line to meet changing production demands. In effect, the "layout" changes numerous times each day.

The term *focused factories* may also refer to facilities that are focused in ways other than by product line or layout. For instance, facilities may focus on their core competence, such as low cost, quality, new product introduction, or flexibility.

Focused facilities in both manufacturing and services appear to be better able to stay in tune with their customers, to produce quality products, and to operate at higher margins. This is true whether they are auto manufacturers like Toyota; restaurants like McDonald's and Burger King; or a hospital like Arnold Palmer.

Repetitive and Product-Oriented Layout

LO 9.7 *Define* product-oriented layout

Product-oriented layouts are organized around products or families of similar high-volume, low-variety products. Repetitive production and continuous production, which are discussed in Chapter 7, use product layouts. The assumptions are that:

1. Volume is adequate for high equipment utilization
2. Product demand is stable enough to justify high investment in specialized equipment
3. Product is standardized or approaching a phase of its life cycle that justifies investment in specialized equipment
4. Supplies of raw materials and components are adequate and of uniform quality (adequately standardized) to ensure that they will work with the specialized equipment

Fabrication line
A machine-paced, product-oriented facility for building components.

Assembly line
An approach that puts fabricated parts together at a series of workstations; used in repetitive processes.

Two types of a product-oriented layout are fabrication and assembly lines. The **fabrication line** builds components, such as automobile tires or metal parts for a refrigerator, on a series of machines, while an **assembly line** puts the fabricated parts together at a series of workstations. However, both are repetitive processes, and in both cases, the line must be "balanced"; that is, the time spent to perform work on one machine must equal or "balance" the time spent to perform work on the next machine in the fabrication line, just as the time spent at one workstation by one assembly-line employee must "balance" the time spent at the next workstation by the next employee. The same issues arise when designing the "disassembly lines" of slaughterhouses and automobile recyclers.

Assembly-line balancing
Obtaining output at each workstation on a production line so delay is minimized.

A well-balanced assembly line has the advantage of high personnel and facility utilization and equity among employees' workloads. Some union contracts require that workloads be nearly equal among those on the same assembly line. The term most often used to describe this process is **assembly-line balancing**. Indeed, the *objective of the product-oriented layout is to minimize imbalance in the fabrication or assembly line*.

The main advantages of product-oriented layout are:

1. The low variable cost per unit usually associated with high-volume, standardized products
2. Low material-handling costs
3. Reduced work-in-process inventories
4. Easier training and supervision
5. Rapid throughput

The disadvantages of product layout are:

1. The high volume required because of the large investment needed to establish the process
2. Work stoppage at any one point can tie up the whole operation
3. The process flexibility necessary for a variety of products and production rates can be a challenge

Because the problems of fabrication lines and assembly lines are similar, we focus our discussion on assembly lines. On an assembly line, the product typically moves via automated means, such as a conveyor, through a series of workstations until completed. This is the way fast-food hamburgers are made (see Figure 9.11), automobiles and some planes (see the photo of the Boeing 737 on the next page) are assembled, and television sets and ovens are produced. Product-oriented layouts use more automated and specially designed equipment than do process layouts.

VIDEO 9.2
Facility Layout at Wheeled Coach Ambulances

Assembly-Line Balancing

LO 9.8 *Explain* how to balance production flow in a repetitive or product-oriented facility

Line balancing is usually undertaken to minimize imbalance between machines or personnel while meeting a required output from the line. To produce at a specified rate, management must know the tools, equipment, and work methods used. Then the time requirements for each assembly task (e.g., drilling a hole, tightening a nut, or spray-painting a part) must be determined. Management also needs to know the *precedence relationship* among the activities—that is, the sequence in which various tasks must be performed. Example 3 shows how to turn these task data into a precedence diagram.

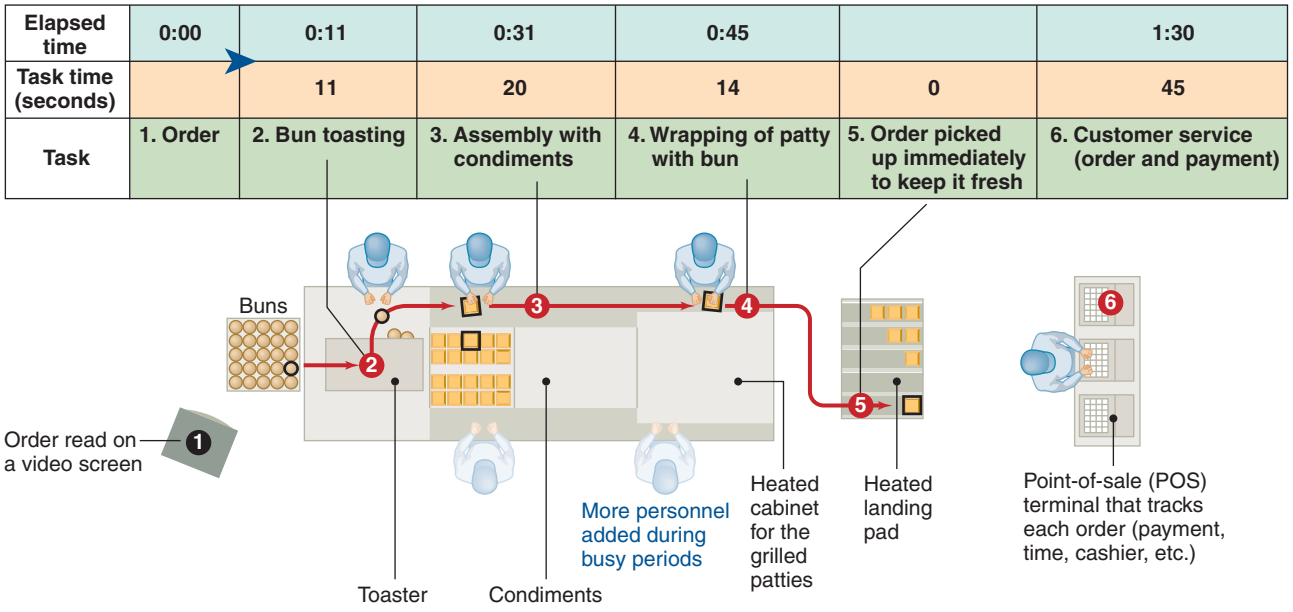


Figure 9.11

McDonald's Hamburger Assembly Line

The Boeing 737, the world's most popular commercial airplane, is produced on a moving production line, traveling at 2 inches a minute through the final assembly process. The moving line, one of several lean manufacturing innovations at the Renton, Washington, facility, has enhanced quality, reduced flow time, slashed inventory levels, and cut space requirements. Final assembly is only 11 days—a time savings of 50%—and inventory is down more than 55%.

Copyright Boeing

Example 3

DEVELOPING A PRECEDENCE DIAGRAM FOR AN ASSEMBLY LINE

Boeing wants to develop a precedence diagram for an electrostatic wing component that requires a total assembly time of 65 minutes.

APPROACH ▶ Staff gather tasks, assembly times, and sequence requirements for the component in Table 9.2.

TABLE 9.2 Precedence Data for Wing Component

TASK	ASSEMBLY TIME (MINUTES)	TASK MUST FOLLOW TASK LISTED BELOW	
A	10	—	This means that tasks B and E cannot be done until task A has been completed.
B	11	A	
C	5	B	
D	4	B	
E	11	A	
F	3	C, D	
G	7	F	
H	11	E	
I	3	G, H	
	Total time 65		

SOLUTION ▶ Figure 9.12 shows the precedence diagram.

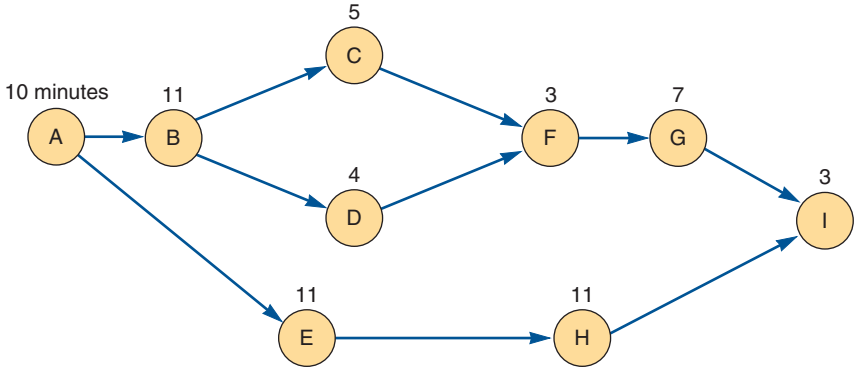


Figure **9.12**
Precedence Diagram

INSIGHT ▶ The diagram helps structure an assembly line and workstations, and it makes it easier to visualize the sequence of tasks.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If task D had a second preceding task (C), how would Figure 9.12 change? [Answer: There would also be an arrow pointing from C to D.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 9.13a, 9.15a, 9.16a, 9.17a, 9.20a (9.25a,d, 9.26a, 9.27 are available in MyOMLab)

Once we have constructed a precedence chart summarizing the sequences and performance times, we turn to the job of grouping tasks into job stations so that we can meet the specified production rate. This process involves three steps:

1. Take the units required (demand or production rate) per day and divide them into the productive time available per day (in minutes or seconds). This operation gives us what is called the **cycle time**[3]—namely, the maximum time allowed at each workstation if the production rate is to be achieved:

Cycle time
The maximum time that a product is allowed at each workstation.

$$\text{Cycle time} = \frac{\text{Production time available per day}}{\text{Units required per day}} \tag{9-4}$$

2. Calculate the theoretical minimum number of workstations. This is the total task-duration time (the time it takes to make the product) divided by the cycle time. Fractions are rounded to the next higher whole number:

$$\text{Minimum number of workstations} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} \text{Time for task } i}{\text{Cycle time}} \tag{9-5}$$

where n is the number of assembly tasks.

3. Balance the line by assigning specific assembly tasks to each workstation. An efficient balance is one that will complete the required assembly, follow the specified sequence, and keep the idle time at each workstation to a minimum. A formal procedure for doing this is the following:
   - **a.** Identify a master list of tasks.
   - **b.** Eliminate those tasks that have been assigned.
   - **c.** Eliminate those tasks whose precedence relationship has not been satisfied.
   - **d.** Eliminate those tasks for which inadequate time is available at the workstation.
   - **e.** Use one of the line-balancing "heuristics" described in Table 9.3. The five choices are (1) longest task time, (2) most following tasks, (3) ranked positional weight, (4) shortest task time, and (5) least number of following tasks. You may wish to test several of these **heuristics** to see which generates the "best" solution—that is, the smallest number of workstations and highest efficiency. Remember, however, that although heuristics provide solutions, they do not guarantee an optimal solution.

Heuristic
Problem solving using procedures and rules rather than mathematical optimization.

TABLE 9.3 Layout Heuristics That May Be Used to Assign Tasks to Workstations in Assembly-Line Balancing

1. *Longest task (operation) time*	From the available tasks, choose the task with the largest (longest) time.
2. *Most following tasks*	From the available tasks, choose the task with the largest number of following tasks.
3. *Ranked positional weight*	From the available tasks, choose the task for which the sum of the times for each following task is longest. (In Example 4 we see that the ranked positional weight of task C = 5(C) + 3(F) + 7(G) + 3(I) = 18, whereas the ranked positional weight of task D = 4(D) + 3(F) + 7(G) + 3(I) = 17; therefore, C would be chosen first, using this heuristic.)
4. *Shortest task (operations) time*	From the available tasks, choose the task with the shortest task time.
5. *Least number of following tasks*	From the available tasks, choose the task with the least number of subsequent tasks.

Example 4 illustrates a simple line-balancing procedure.

Example 4

BALANCING THE ASSEMBLY LINE

On the basis of the precedence diagram and activity times given in Example 3, Boeing determines that there are 480 productive minutes of work available per day. Furthermore, the production schedule requires that 40 units of the wing component be completed as output from the assembly line each day. It now wants to group the tasks into workstations.

APPROACH ▶ Following the three steps above, we compute the cycle time using Equation (9-4) and minimum number of workstations using Equation (9-5), and we assign tasks to workstations—in this case using the *most following tasks* heuristic.

SOLUTION ▶

$$\text{Cycle time (in minutes)} = \frac{480 \text{ minutes}}{40 \text{ units}}$$
$$= 12 \text{ minutes/unit}$$

$$\text{Minimum number of workstations} = \frac{\text{Total task time}}{\text{Cycle time}} = \frac{65}{12}$$
$$= 5.42, \text{ or } 6 \text{ stations}$$

Figure 9.13 shows one solution that does not violate the sequence requirements and that groups tasks into six one-person stations. To obtain this solution, activities with the most following tasks were moved into workstations to use as much of the available cycle time of 12 minutes as possible. The first workstation consumes 10 minutes and has an idle time of 2 minutes.

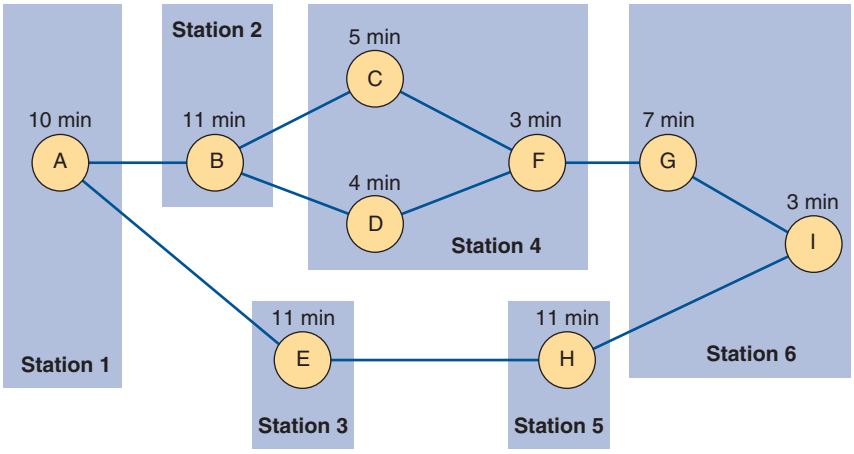


Figure 9.13
A Six-Station Solution to the Line-Balancing Problem

STUDENT TIP
Tasks C, D, and F can be grouped together in one workstation, provided that the physical facilities and skill levels meet the work requirements.

INSIGHT ▶ This is a reasonably well-balanced assembly line. The second and third workstations use 11 minutes. The fourth workstation groups three small tasks and balances perfectly at 12 minutes. The fifth has 1 minute of idle time, and the sixth (consisting of tasks G and I) has 2 minutes of idle time per cycle. Total idle time for this solution is 7 minutes per cycle.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If task I required 6 minutes (instead of 3 minutes), how would this change the solution? [Answer: The cycle time would not change, and the *theoretical* minimum number of workstations would still be 6 (rounded up from 5.67), but it would take 7 stations to balance the line.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 9.12–9.24 (9.25–9.27 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch09Ex4.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

There are two measures of effectiveness of a balance assignment. The first measure computes the *efficiency* of a line balance by dividing the total task times by the product of the number of workstations required times the assigned (actual) cycle time of the *longest* workstation:

$$\text{Efficiency} = \frac{\sum \text{Task times}}{(\textit{Actual}\text{ number of workstations}) \times (\text{Largest assigned cycle time})} \quad (9\text{-}6)$$

Operations managers compare different levels of efficiency for various numbers of workstations. In this way, a firm can determine the sensitivity of the line to changes in the production rate and workstation assignments.

The second measure computes the *idle time* for the line.

$$\text{Idle time} = (\text{Actual number of workstations} \times \text{Largest assigned cycle time}) - \sum \text{Task times} \quad (9\text{-}7)$$

Example 5

DETERMINING LINE EFFICIENCY

Boeing needs to calculate the efficiency for Example 4.

APPROACH ▶ Equation (9-6) is applied.

SOLUTION ▶

$$\text{Efficiency} = \frac{65 \text{ minutes}}{(6 \text{ stations}) \times (12 \text{ minutes})} = \frac{65}{72} = 90.3\%$$

Note that opening a seventh workstation, for whatever reason, would decrease the efficiency of the balance to 77.4% (assuming that at least one of the workstations still required 12 minutes):

$$\text{Efficiency} = \frac{65 \text{ minutes}}{(7 \text{ stations}) \times (12 \text{ minutes})} = 77.4\%$$

INSIGHT ▶ Increasing efficiency may require that some tasks be divided into smaller elements and reassigned to other tasks. This facilitates a better balance between workstations and means higher efficiency. Note that we can also compute efficiency as 1 − (% Idle time), that is, [1 − (Idle time)/(Total time in workstations)].

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ What is the efficiency if an eighth workstation is opened? [Answer: Efficiency = 67.7%.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 9.13f, 9.14c, 9.15f, 9.17c, 9.18b, 9.19b, 9.20e,g (9.25e, 9.26c, 9.27 are available in MyOMLab)

Large-scale line-balancing problems, like large process-layout problems, are often solved by computers. Computer programs such as Assembly Line Pro, Proplanner, Timer Pro, Flexible Line Balancing, and Promodel are available to handle the assignment of workstations on assembly lines with numerous work activities. Such software evaluates the thousands, or even millions, of possible workstation combinations much more efficiently than could ever be done by hand.

Summary

Layouts make a substantial difference in operating efficiency. The seven layout situations discussed in this chapter are (1) office, (2) retail, (3) warehouse, (4) fixed position, (5) process oriented, (6) work cells, and (7) product oriented. A variety of techniques have been developed to solve these layout problems. Office layouts often seek to maximize information flows, retail firms focus on product exposure, and warehouses attempt to optimize the trade-off between storage space and material handling cost.

The fixed-position layout problem attempts to minimize material handling costs within the constraint of limited space at the site. Process layouts minimize travel distances times the number of trips. Product layouts focus on reducing waste and the imbalance in an assembly line. Work cells are the result of identifying a family of products that justify a special configuration of machinery and equipment that reduces material travel and adjusts imbalances with cross-trained personnel.

Often, the issues in a layout problem are so wide-ranging that finding an optimal solution is not possible. For this reason, layout decisions, although the subject of substantial research effort, remain something of an art.

Key Terms

Office layout (p. 409)
Retail layout (p. 410)
Slotting fees (p. 412)
Servicescape (p. 413)
Warehouse layout (p. 413)
Cross-docking (p. 414)
Random stocking (p. 415)
Customizing (p. 415)
Fixed-position layout (p. 415)
Process-oriented layout (p. 416)
Job lots (p. 417)
Work cell (p. 421)
Takt time (p. 422)
Focused work center (p. 424)
Focused factory (p. 424)
Fabrication line (p. 424)
Assembly line (p. 424)
Assembly-line balancing (p. 424)
Cycle time (p. 427)
Heuristic (p. 427)

Ethical Dilemma

Although buried by mass customization and a proliferation of new products of numerous sizes and variations, grocery chains continue to seek to maximize payoff from their layout. Their layout includes a marketable commodity—shelf space—and they charge for it. This charge is known as a *slotting fee*. Recent estimates are that food manufacturers now spend some 13% of sales on trade promotions, which is paid to grocers to get them to promote and discount the manufacturer's products. A portion of these fees is for slotting, but slotting fees drive up the manufacturer's cost. They also put the small company with a new product at a disadvantage because small companies with limited resources may be squeezed out of the marketplace. Slotting fees may also mean that customers may no longer be able to find the special local brand. How ethical are slotting fees?

Image Source/Alamy

Discussion Questions

1. What are the seven layout strategies presented in this chapter?
2. What are the three factors that complicate a fixed-position layout?
3. How is process layout applied to supermarkets layout? What are the advantages and disadvantages of this type of layout for customers?
4. How would an analyst obtain data and determine the number of trips in:
   (a) a hospital?
   (b) a machine shop?
   (c) an auto-repair shop?
5. What are the advantages and disadvantages of product layout?
6. What are the four assumptions (or preconditions) of establishing layout for high-volume, low-variety products?
7. What are the alternative forms of work cells discussed in this textbook?
8. What are the advantages and disadvantages of work cells?
9. What are the main requirements of work cells?
10. What are the two major trends influencing office layout?
11. What are the key factors which should be considered in designing the hospital layout?

12. What layout innovations have you noticed recently in retail establishments?
13. What are the variables that a manager can manipulate in a retail layout?
14. Study the distribution of different sections and services across several floors inmulti-storeydepartment stores. Explain the rationale behindthe location of different departments/ sections in thesetypes of stores.
15. How does Automatic Identificatoin work in a warehousing system?
16. What information is necessary for random stocking to work?
17. Explain the concept of cross-docking.
18. What is a heuristic? Name several that can be used in assembly-line balancing.

Using Software to Solve Layout Problems

In addition to the many commercial software packages available for addressing layout problems, Excel OM and POM for Windows, both of which accompany this text, contain modules for the process problem and the assembly-line-balancing problem.

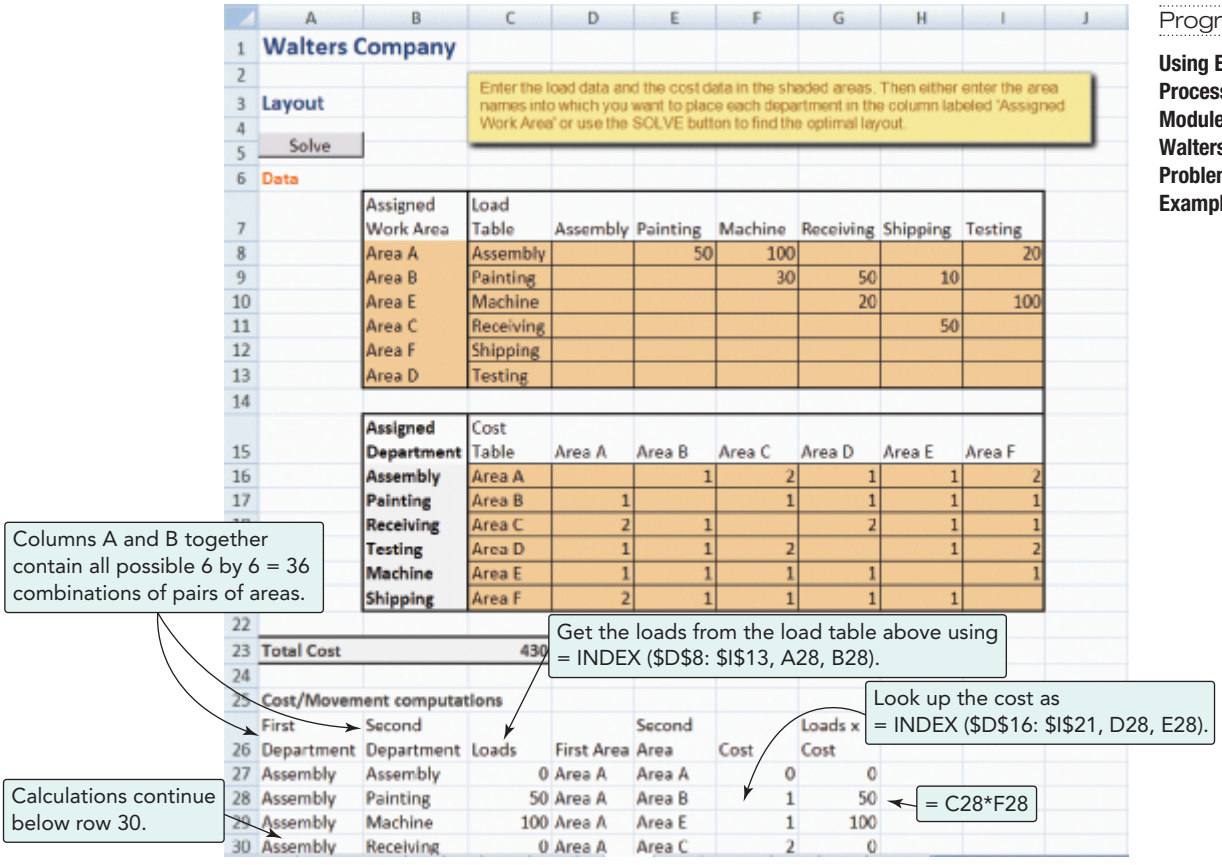
USING EXCEL OM

Excel OM can assist in evaluating a series of department work assignments like the one we saw for the Walters Company in Example 1. The layout module can generate an optimal solution by enumeration or by computing the "total movement" cost for each layout you wish to examine. As such, it provides a speedy calculator for each flow–distance pairing.

Program 9.1 illustrates our inputs in the top two tables. We first enter department flows, then provide distances between work areas. Entering area assignments on a trial-and-error basis in the upper left of the top table generates movement computations at the bottom of the screen. Total movement is recalculated each time we try a new area assignment. It turns out that the assignment shown is optimal at 430 feet of movement.

Program 9.1

Using Excel OM's Process Layout Module to Solve the Walters Company Problem in Example 1



USING POM FOR WINDOWS

The POM for Windows facility layout module can be used to place up to 10 departments in 10 rooms to minimize the total distance traveled as a function of the distances between the rooms and the flow between departments. The program exchanges departments until no exchange will reduce the total amount of movement, meaning an optimal solution has been reached.

The POM for Windows and Excel OM modules for line balancing can handle a line with up to 99 tasks, each with up to six immediate predecessors. In this program, cycle time can be entered as either (1) *given*, if known, or (2) the *demand* rate can be entered with time available as shown. All five "heuristic rules" are used: (1) longest operation (task) time, (2) most following tasks, (3) ranked positional weight, (4) shortest operation (task) time, and (5) least number of following tasks. No one rule can guarantee an optimal solution, but POM for Windows displays the number of stations needed for each rule.

Appendix IV discusses further details regarding POM for Windows.

Solved Problems

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM 9.1

Aero Maintenance is a small aircraft engine maintenance facility located in Wichita, Kansas. Its new administrator, Ann Daniel, decides to improve material flow in the facility, using the process layout method she studied at Wichita State University. The current layout of Aero Maintenance's eight departments is shown in Figure 9.14.

The only physical restriction perceived by Daniel is the need to keep the entrance in its current location. All other departments can be moved to a different work area (each 10 feet square) if layout analysis indicates a move would be beneficial.

First, Daniel analyzes records to determine the number of material movements among departments in an average month. These data are shown in Figure 9.15. Her objective, Daniel decides, is to lay out the departments so as to minimize the total movement (distance traveled) of material in the facility. She writes her objective as:

$$\text{Minimize material movement} = \sum_{i=1}^{8}\sum_{j=1}^{8} X_{ij}C_{ij}$$

where X_{ij} = number of material movements per month (loads or trips) moving from department i to department j

C_{ij} = distance in feet between departments i and j (which, in this case, is the equivalent of cost per load to move between departments)

Note that this is only a slight modification of the cost-objective equation shown earlier in the chapter.

Daniel assumes that adjacent departments, such as entrance (now in work area A) and receiving (now in work area B), have a walking distance of 10 feet. Diagonal departments are also considered adjacent and assigned a distance of 10 feet. Nonadjacent departments, such as the entrance and parts (now in area C) or the entrance and inspection (area G) are 20 feet apart, and nonadjacent rooms, such as entrance and metallurgy (area D), are 30 feet apart. (Hence, 10 feet is considered 10 units of cost, 20 feet is 20 units of cost, and 30 feet is 30 units of cost.)

Given the above information, redesign Aero Maintenance's layout to improve its material flow efficiency.

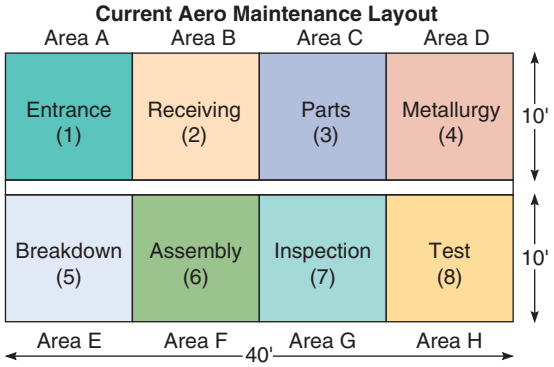


Figure 9.14

Aero Maintenance Layout

Figure 9.15

Number of Material Movements (Loads) Between Departments in 1 Month

Department	Entrance (1)	Receiving (2)	Parts (3)	Metallurgy (4)	Breakdown (5)	Assembly (6)	Inspection (7)	Test (8)
Entrance (1)		100	100	0	0	0	0	0
Receiving (2)			0	50	20	0	0	0
Parts (3)				30	30	0	0	0
Metallurgy (4)					20	0	0	20
Breakdown (5)						20	0	10
Assembly (6)							30	0
Inspection (7)								0
Test (8)								

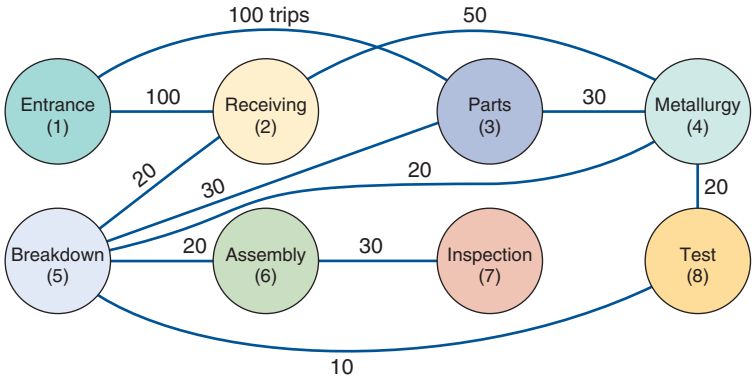
SOLUTION

First, establish Aero Maintenance's current layout, as shown in Figure 9.16. Then, by analyzing the current layout, compute material movement:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total movement} &= \underset{\text{1 to 2}}{(100 \times 10')} + \underset{\text{1 to 3}}{(100 \times 20')} + \underset{\text{2 to 4}}{(50 \times 20')} + \underset{\text{2 to 5}}{(20 \times 10')} \\ &\quad + \underset{\text{3 to 4}}{(30 \times 10')} + \underset{\text{3 to 5}}{(30 \times 20')} + \underset{\text{4 to 5}}{(20 \times 30')} + \underset{\text{4 to 8}}{(20 \times 10')} \\ &\quad + \underset{\text{5 to 6}}{(20 \times 10')} + \underset{\text{5 to 8}}{(10 \times 30')} + \underset{\text{5 to 7}}{(30 \times 10')} \\ &= 1{,}000 + 2{,}000 + 1{,}000 + 200 + 300 + 600 + 600 \\ &\quad + 200 + 200 + 300 + 300 \\ &= 6{,}700 \text{ feet}\end{aligned}$$

Figure **9.16**

Current Material Flow



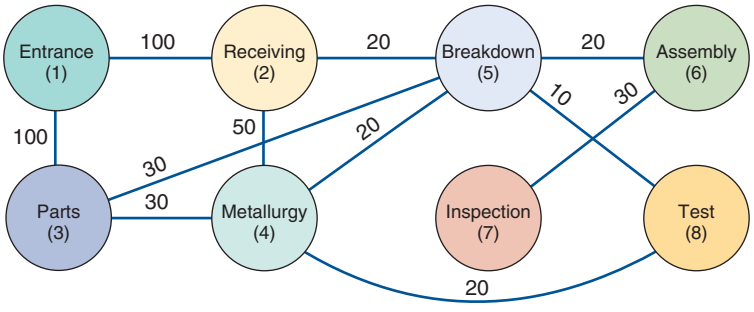
Propose a new layout that will reduce the current figure of 6,700 feet. Two useful changes, for example, are to switch departments 3 and 5 and to interchange departments 4 and 6. This change would result in the schematic shown in Figure 9.17:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total movement} &= \underset{\text{1 to 2}}{(100 \times 10')} + \underset{\text{1 to 3}}{(100 \times 10')} + \underset{\text{2 to 4}}{(50 \times 10')} + \underset{\text{2 to 5}}{(20 \times 10')} \\ &\quad + \underset{\text{3 to 4}}{(30 \times 10')} + \underset{\text{3 to 5}}{(30 \times 20')} + \underset{\text{4 to 5}}{(20 \times 10')} + \underset{\text{4 to 8}}{(20 \times 20')} \\ &\quad + \underset{\text{5 to 6}}{(20 \times 10')} + \underset{\text{5 to 8}}{(10 \times 10')} + \underset{\text{6 to 7}}{(30 \times 10')} \\ &= 1{,}000 + 1{,}000 + 500 + 200 + 300 + 600 + 200 \\ &\quad + 400 + 200 + 100 + 300 \\ &= 4{,}800 \text{ feet}\end{aligned}$$

Do you see any room for further improvement?

Figure **9.17**

Improved Layout



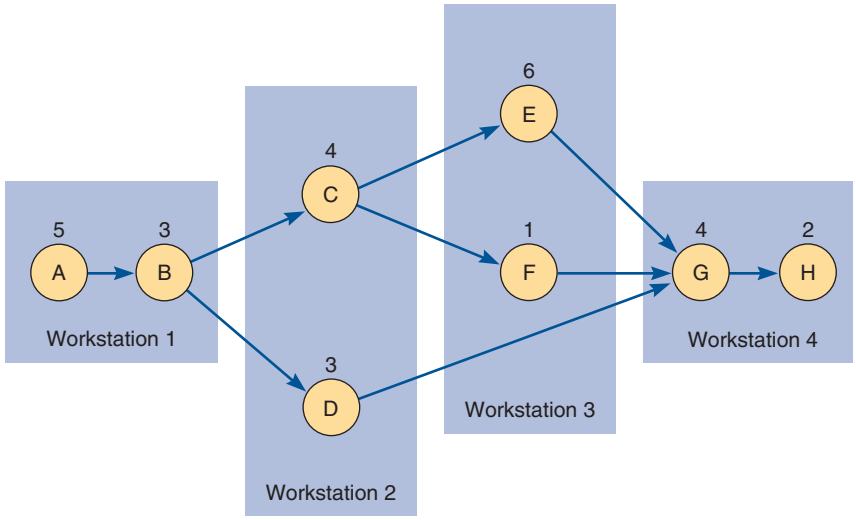
SOLVED PROBLEM 9.2

The assembly line whose activities are shown in Figure 9.18 has an 8-minute cycle time. Draw the precedence graph, and find the minimum possible number of one-person workstations. Then arrange the work activities into workstations so as to balance the line. What is the efficiency of your line balance?

TASK	PERFORMANCE TIME (MINUTES)	TASK MUST FOLLOW THIS TASK
A	5	—
B	3	A
C	4	B
D	3	B
E	6	C
F	1	C
G	4	D, E, F
H	2	G
	28	

Figure 9.18

Four-Station Solution to the Line-Balancing Problem



SOLUTION

The theoretical minimum number of workstations is:

$$\frac{\Sigma t_i}{\text{Cycle time}} = \frac{28 \text{ minutes}}{8 \text{ minutes}} = 3.5, \text{ or } 4 \text{ stations}$$

The precedence graph and one good layout are shown in Figure 9.18:

$$\text{Efficiency} = \frac{\text{Total task time}}{(\text{Actual number of workstations}) \times (\text{Largest assigned cycle time})} = \frac{28}{(4)(8)} = 87.5\%$$

Problems

Note: PX means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel OM.

Problems 9.1–9.10 relate to Process-Oriented Layout

•• **9.1** Gordon Miller's job shop has four work areas, A, B, C, and D. Distances in feet between centers of the work areas are:

	A	B	C	D
A	—	4	9	7
B	—	—	6	8
C	—	—	—	10
D	—	—	—	—

Workpieces moved, in hundreds of workpieces per week, between pairs of work areas, are:

	A	B	C	D
A	—	8	7	4
B	—	—	3	2
C	—	—	—	6
D	—	—	—	—

It costs Gordon $1 to move 1 work piece 1 foot. What is the weekly total material handling cost of the layout? PX

•• **9.2** A Missouri job shop has four departments—machining (M), dipping in a chemical bath (D), finishing (F), and plating (P)—assigned to four work areas. The operations manager, Mary Marrs, has gathered the following data for this job shop as it is currently laid out (Plan A).

100s of Workpieces Moved Between Work Areas Each Year Plan A

	M	D	F	P
M	—	6	18	2
D	—	—	4	2
F	—	—	—	18
P	—	—	—	—

Distances Between Work Areas (Departments) in Feet

	M	D	F	P
M	—	20	12	8
D	—	—	6	10
F	—	—	—	4
P	—	—	—	—

It costs $0.50 to move 1 workpiece 1 foot in the job shop. Marrs's goal is to find a layout that has the lowest material handling cost.

a) Determine cost of the current layout, Plan A, from the data above.

b) One alternative is to switch those departments with the high loads, namely, finishing (F) and plating (P), which alters the distance between them and machining (M) and dipping (D), as follows:

Distances Between Work Areas (Departments) in Feet Plan B

	M	D	F	P
M	—	20	8	12
D	—	—	10	6
F	—	—	—	4
P	—	—	—	—

What is the cost of *this* layout?

c) Marrs now wants you to evaluate Plan C, which also switches milling (M) and drilling (D), below.

Distance Between Work Areas (Departments) in Feet Plan C

	M	D	F	P
M	—	20	10	6
D	—	—	8	12
F	—	—	—	4
P	—	—	—	—

What is the cost of *this* layout?

d) Which layout is best from a cost perspective? PX

• **9.3** Three departments—milling (M), drilling (D), and sawing (S)—are assigned to three work areas in Victor Berardis's machine shop in Vent, Ohio. The number of workpieces moved per day and the distances between the centers of the work areas, in feet, follow.

Pieces Moved Between Work Areas Each Day

	M	D	S
M	—	23	32
D	—	—	20
S	—	—	—

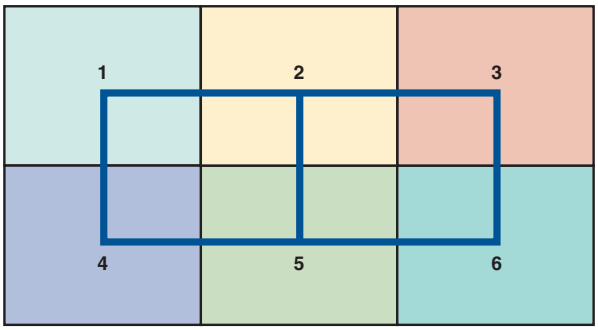
Distances Between Centers of Work Areas (Departments) in Feet

	M	D	S
M	—	10	5
D	—	—	8
S	—	—	—

It costs $2 to move 1 workpiece 1 foot.
What is the cost?

•• **9.4** Roy Creasey Enterprises, a machine shop, is planning to move to a new, larger location. The new building will be 60 feet long by 40 feet wide. Creasey envisions the building as having six distinct production areas, roughly equal in size. He feels strongly about safety and intends to have marked pathways throughout the building to facilitate the movement of people and materials. See the following building schematic.

Building Schematic (with work areas 1–6)



His foreman has completed a month-long study of the number of loads of material that have moved from one process to another in the current building. This information is contained in the following flow matrix.

Flow Matrix Between Production Processes

FROM \ TO	MATERIALS	WELDING	DRILLS	LATHES	GRINDERS	BENDERS
Materials	0	100	50	0	0	50
Welding	25	0	0	50	0	0
Drills	25	0	0	0	50	0
Lathes	0	25	0	0	20	0
Grinders	50	0	100	0	0	0
Benders	10	0	20	0	0	0

Finally, Creasey has developed the following matrix to indicate distances between the work areas shown in the building schematic.

Distance Between Work Areas						
	1	2	3	4	5	6
1		20	40	20	40	60
2			20	40	20	40
3				60	40	20
4					20	40
5						20
6						

What is the appropriate layout of the new building? PX

•• **9.5** Adam Munson Manufacturing, in Gainesville, Florida, wants to arrange its four work centers so as to minimize interdepartmental parts handling costs. The flows and existing facility layout are shown in Figure 9.19. For example, to move a part from Work Center A to Work Center C is a 60-foot movement distance. It is 90 feet from A to D.

Parts Moved Between Work Centers

	A	B	C	D
A	—	450	550	50
B	350	—	200	0
C	0	0	—	750
D	0	0	0	—

Existing Layout

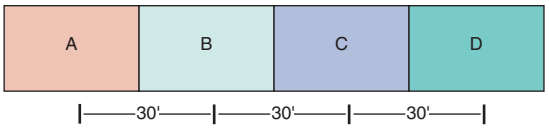


Figure **9.19**

Munson Manufacturing

a) What is the "load × distance," or "movement cost," of the layout shown?
b) Provide an improved layout and compute its movement cost. PX

••• **9.6** You have just been hired as the director of operations for Reid Chocolates, a purveyor of exceptionally fine candies. Reid Chocolates has two kitchen layouts under consideration for its recipe making and testing department. The strategy is to provide the best kitchen layout possible so that food scientists can devote their time and energy to product improvement, not wasted effort in the kitchen. You have been asked to evaluate these two kitchen layouts and to prepare a recommendation for your boss, Mr. Reid, so that he can proceed to place the contract for building the kitchens. [See Figure 9.20(a), and Figure 9.20(b).] PX

Number of trips between work centers:

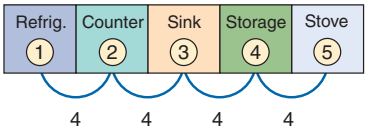
From: \ To:		1 Refrigerator	2 Counter	3 Sink	4 Storage	5 Stove
Refrig.	1	0	8	13	0	0
Counter	2	5	0	3	3	8
Sink	3	3	12	0	4	0
Storage	4	3	0	0	0	5
Stove	5	0	8	4	10	0

Figure **9.20(a)**

Layout Options

Kitchen layout #1

Walking distance in feet



Kitchen layout #2

Walking distance in feet

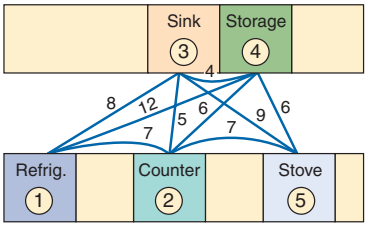
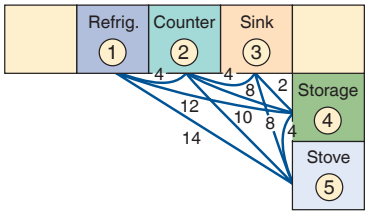


Figure **9.20(b)**

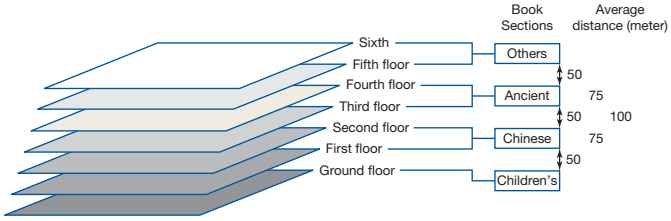
••• **9.7** Reid Chocolates (see Problem 9.6) is considering a third layout, as shown below. Evaluate its effectiveness in trip-distance feet. PX

Kitchen layout #3

Walking distance in feet



••• **9.8** The National Library of China[1] consists of four major sections, each distributed in different floors, in a seven storey building). A study shows that the average total distance moved by the visitors per day among different sections of the library is around 1500km. A new layout is being proposed as follows to reduce the moves.



Since some sections are in two different floors, there are intra-section distances to be considered too. The number of moves and distances are shown in the following tables.

Average Distances (meter)

	CHILDREN'S	CHINESE	ANCIENT	OTHERS
Children's	10	50	75	100
Chinese	50	20	50	75
Ancient	75	50	20	50
Others	100	75	50	20

Average number of moves/day

	CHILDREN'S	CHINESE	ANCIENT	OTHERS
Children's	2000	500	300	200
Chinese	700	4000	1500	1800
Ancient	500	1500	1500	1500
Others	300	2000	1200	2000

1. www.nlc.cn/newen/newVisitUs/nlclg/irge/shaa/

Could this new layout reduce the average total distance moved by the visitors per day?

•• **9.9** Six processes are to be laid out in six areas along a long corridor at Rita Gibson Accounting Services in Daytona Beach. The distance between adjacent work centers is 40 feet. The number of trips between work centers is given in the following table:

	TRIPS BETWEEN PROCESSES TO					
FROM	A	B	C	D	E	F
A		18	25	73	12	54
B			96	23	31	45
C				41	22	20
D					19	57
E						48
F						

a) Assign the processes to the work areas in a way that minimizes the total flow, using a method that places processes with highest flow adjacent to each other.
b) What assignment minimizes the total traffic flow? PX

Additional problem **9.10** *is available in* MyOMLab.

Problem 9.11 relates to Work Cells

•• **9.11** A Thai restaurant has experienced a significant increase in take away demand for its signature chicken curry. Due to the high demand, the head chef and the operations manager of the restaurant decided to dedicate a separate area in the kitchen, as a working cell, to fully focus on making take away chicken curry.

Daily demand is 240, and the restaurant serves take away food from 11 AM to 11 PM. The process of make chicken curry has five main steps:

(1) Preparation of the curry: 2 minutes
(2) Stir-frying the chicken: 3 minutes
(3) Preparation of the beans and rice: 1.5 minutes
(4) Serve the curry and rice in the take away container/box: 1 minute

Based on the above information,
a) Calculate the takt time.
b) Recommend the right number of employees for this working cell.
c) Which operations need special consideration?

OPERATION	STANDARD TIME (min)
Shear	1.1
Bend	1.1
Weld	1.7
Clean	3.1
Paint	1.0

Problems 9.12–9.27 relate to Repetitive and Product-Oriented Layout

•• **9.12** Stanford Rosenberg Computing wants to establish an assembly line for producing a new product, the Personal Digital Assistant (PDA). The tasks, task times, and immediate predecessors for the tasks are as follows:

TASK	TIME (sec)	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSORS
A	12	—
B	15	A
C	8	A
D	5	B, C
E	20	D

Rosenberg's goal is to produce 180 PDAs per hour.
a) What is the cycle time?
b) What is the theoretical minimum for the number of workstations that Rosenberg can achieve in this assembly line?
c) Can the theoretical minimum actually be reached when workstations are assigned? PX

••• **9.13** Illinois Furniture, Inc., produces all types of office furniture. The "Executive Secretary" is a chair that has been designed using ergonomics to provide comfort during long work hours. The chair sells for $130. There are 480 minutes available during the day, and the average daily demand has been 50 chairs. There are eight tasks:

TASK	PERFORMANCE TIME (min)	TASK MUST FOLLOW TASK LISTED BELOW
A	4	—
B	7	—
C	6	A, B
D	5	C
E	6	D
F	7	E
G	8	E
H	6	F, G

a) Draw a precedence diagram of this operation.
b) What is the cycle time for this operation?
c) What is the *theoretical* minimum number of workstations?
d) Assign tasks to workstations.
e) What is the idle time per cycle?
f) How much total idle time is present in an 8-hour shift?
g) What is the efficiency of the assembly line, given your answer in (d)? PX

•• **9.14** Sue Helms Appliances wants to establish an assembly line to manufacture its new product, the Micro Popcorn Popper. The goal is to produce five poppers per hour. The tasks, task times, and immediate predecessors for producing one Micro Popcorn Popper are as follows:

TASK	TIME (min)	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSORS
A	10	—
B	12	A
C	8	A, B
D	6	B, C
E	6	C
F	6	D, E

a) What is the *theoretical* minimum for the smallest number of workstations that Helms can achieve in this assembly line?
b) Graph the assembly line, and assign workers to workstations. Can you assign them with the theoretical minimum?
c) What is the efficiency of *your* assignment? PX

•• **9.15** The Action Toy Company has decided to manufacture a new train set, the production of which is broken into six steps. The demand for the train is 4,800 units per 40-hour workweek:

TASK	PERFORMANCE TIME (sec)	PREDECESSORS
A	20	None
B	30	A
C	15	A
D	15	A
E	10	B, C
F	30	D, E

a) Draw a precedence diagram of this operation.
b) Given the demand, what is the cycle time for this operation?
c) What is the *theoretical* minimum number of workstations?
d) Assign tasks to workstations.
e) How much total idle time is present each cycle?
f) What is the efficiency of the assembly line with five stations? With six stations? PX

••9.16 The following table details the tasks required for Indiana-based Frank Pianki Industries to manufacture a fully portable industrial vacuum cleaner. The times in the table are in minutes. Demand forecasts indicate a need to operate with a cycle time of 10 minutes.

ACTIVITY	ACTIVITY DESCRIPTION	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSORS	TIME
A	Attach wheels to tub	—	5
B	Attach motor to lid	—	1.5
C	Attach battery pack	B	3
D	Attach safety cutoff	C	4
E	Attach filters	B	3
F	Attach lid to tub	A, E	2
G	Assemble attachments	—	3
H	Function test	D, F, G	3.5
I	Final inspection	H	2
J	Packing	I	2

a) Draw the appropriate precedence diagram for this production line.
b) Assign tasks to workstations and determine how much idle time is present each cycle.
c) Discuss how this balance could be improved to 100%.
d) What is the *theoretical* minimum number of workstations? PX

••9.17 Tailwind, Inc., produces high-quality but expensive training shoes for runners. The Tailwind shoe, which sells for $210, contains both gas- and liquid-filled compartments to provide more stability and better protection against knee, foot, and back injuries. Manufacturing the shoes requires 10 separate tasks. There are 400 minutes available for manufacturing the shoes in the plant each day. Daily demand is 60. The information for the tasks is as follows:

TASK	PERFORMANCE TIME (min)	TASK MUST FOLLOW TASK LISTED BELOW
A	1	—
B	3	A
C	2	B
D	4	B
E	1	C, D
F	3	A
G	2	F
H	5	G
I	1	E, H
J	3	I

a) Draw the precedence diagram.
b) Assign tasks to the minimum feasible number of workstations according to the "ranked positioned weight" decision rule.
c) What is the efficiency of the process you completed in (b)?
d) What is the idle time per cycle? PX

••9.18 The Mach 10 is a one-person sailboat manufactured by Creative Leisure. The final assembly plant is in Cupertino, California. The assembly area is available for production of the Mach 10 for 200 minutes per day. (The rest of the time it is busy making other products.) The daily demand is 60 boats. Given the information in the table,
a) Draw the precedence diagram and assign tasks using five workstations.
b) What is the efficiency of the assembly line, using your answer to (a)?
c) What is the *theoretical* minimum number of workstations?
d) What is the idle time per boat produced? PX

TASK	PERFORMANCE TIME (min)	TASK MUST FOLLOW TASK LISTED BELOW
A	1	—
B	1	A
C	2	A
D	1	C
E	3	C
F	1	C
G	1	D, E, F
H	2	B
I	1	G, H

Ivan Smuk/Shutterstock

••9.19 Because of the expected high demand for Mach 10, Creative Leisure has decided to increase manufacturing time available to produce the Mach 10 (see Problem 9.18).
a) If demand remained the same but 300 minutes were available each day on the assembly line, how many workstations would be needed?
b) What would be the efficiency of the new system, using the actual number of workstations from (a)?
c) What would be the impact on the system if 400 minutes were available? PX

•••9.20 Dr. Lori Baker, operations manager at Nesa Electronics, prides herself on excellent assembly-line balancing. She has been told that the firm needs to complete 96 instruments per 24-hour day. The assembly-line activities are:

TASK	TIME (min)	PREDECESSORS
A	3	—
B	6	—
C	7	A
D	5	A, B
E	2	B
F	4	C
G	5	F
H	7	D, E
I	1	H
J	6	E
K	4	G, I, J
	50	

a) Draw the precedence diagram.
b) If the daily (24-hour) production rate is 96 units, what is the highest allowable cycle time?
c) If the cycle time after allowances is given as 10 minutes, what is the daily (24-hour) production rate?
d) With a 10-minute cycle time, what is the theoretical minimum number of stations with which the line can be balanced?
e) With a 10-minute cycle time and six workstations, what is the efficiency?
f) What is the total idle time per cycle with a 10-minute cycle time and six workstations?
g) What is the best workstation assignment you can make without exceeding a 10-minute cycle time, and what is its efficiency? PX

••**9.21** Suppose production requirements in Solved Problem 9.2 (see page 396) increase and require a reduction in cycle time from 8 minutes to 7 minutes. Balance the line once again, using the new cycle time. Note that it is not possible to combine task times so as to group tasks into the minimum number of workstations. This condition occurs in actual balancing problems fairly often. PX

••**9.22** New students who join the university, should visit certain departments in their first day, as part of the registration and induction process. Students are usually allocated to groups of ten, and their visits and their timings are as follows:

DEPARTMENT	DURATION FOR EACH GROUP (MINUTE)
Registration/Finance	60
IT	45
Library	90
Social Club	30
Sport Centre	30
Student Support Service	45
Medical Centre	45
Campus Services (banks, restaurant, etc.)	30

During the visit, at least one person from the university student support team should be with each team of students. The student support team has allocated the visit of every two departments to one person as follows: Deborah (Registration and IT), Gemma (Library and Social Club), Frank (Sport Centre and Student support service), and Raj (Medical centre and Campus services). The visits of the departments can be done in any sequence. Based on the current arrangements,
a) What is the cycle time
b) What is the throughput per hour
c) Total idle time in each cycle
d) Recommend a new task allocation with a shorter cycle time. Explain how it can improve the idle times and capacity of the visits.

•••**9.23** Samuel Smith's company wants to establish an assembly line to manufacture its new product, the iStar phone. Samuel's goal is to produce 60 iStars per hour. Tasks, task times, and immediate predecessors are as follows:

TASK	TIME (sec)	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSORS	TASK	TIME (sec)	IMMEDIATE PREDECESSORS
A	40	—	F	25	C
B	30	A	G	15	C
C	50	A	H	20	D, E
D	40	B	I	18	F, G
E	6	B	J	30	H, I

a) What is the theoretical minimum for the number of workstations that Samuel can achieve in this assembly line?
b) Use the *most following tasks* heuristic to balance an assembly line for the iStar phone.
c) How many workstations are in your answer to (b)?
d) What is the efficiency of your answer to (b)? PX

••••**9.24** As the Cottrell Bicycle Co. of St. Louis completes plans for its new assembly line, it identifies 25 different tasks in the production process. VP of Operations Jonathan Cottrell now faces the job of balancing the line. He lists precedences and provides time estimates for each step based on work-sampling techniques. His goal is to produce 1,000 bicycles per standard 40-hour workweek.

TASK	TIME (sec)	PRECEDENCE TASKS	TASK	TIME (sec)	PRECEDENCE TASKS
K3	60	—	E3	109	F3
K4	24	K3	D6	53	F4
K9	27	K3	D7	72	F9, E2, E3
J1	66	K3	D8	78	E3, D6
J2	22	K3	D9	37	D6
J3	3	—	C1	78	F7
G4	79	K4, K9	B3	72	D7, D8, D9, C1
G5	29	K9, J1	B5	108	C1
F3	32	J2	B7	18	B3
F4	92	J2	A1	52	B5
F7	21	J3	A2	72	B5
F9	126	G4	A3	114	B7, A1, A2
E2	18	G5, F3			

a) Balance this operation, using various heuristics. Which is best and why?
b) What happens if the firm can change to a 41-hour workweek? PX

Additional problems **9.25–9.27** *are available in* MyOMLab.

CASE STUDIES

Reebok Royal CL production line in Vietnam[2]

Adidas shoe production facilities in Vietnam make a variety of sport, classic, football, tennis, and running shoes. The production line consists of five main stations to produce the shoes: Cutting, Pre-fit, Stitching, Stock-fitting and Assembly. The production system is manual-operations oriented. Therefore, utilization manpower plays a crucial role to manage the efficiency and productivity of the production system.

The production planning system uses the PPH (Pair/ Person/ Hour) indicator as the main KPI (key performance indicator) to evaluate its production lines' performances. Pair (i.e. pair of shoes) is the unit of the business output, and man-hour is considered as an input that is equal to one hour of work an employee performs in making pairs.

Reebok Royal CL model, as an example, has an output target of 960 units per day (there are 8 working hours per day), the Takt time for each station of the production is 30 seconds. The number of workers in each production station is provided in the table below:

WORK STATION	NUMBER OF WORKERS	WORK STATIONTAKT TIME(MIN)	TARGET OUTPUT PER HOUR	TARGET OUTPUT PER DAY
Cutting	5	0.5	120	960
Pre-fit	6	0.5	120	960
Stitching	43	0.5	120	960
Stock-fitting	20	0.5	120	960
Assembly	34	0.5	120	960

A time study and productivity review project can identify whether the output targets for this production line are achievable or not. Table below shows an example of operation time and average productivity of each work station.

WORK STATION	OPERATION TIME (MIN)
Cutting	3
Pre-fit	3.2
Stitching	24
Stock-fitting	12
Assembly	16

Based on the available information:

1. What is the throughput of each work station?
2. Can this production line meet the output target?
3. Given that all workers are trained and skilful to handle the activities in different work stations, what is the maximum throughout which can be expected from this production line.
4. How many extra workers are needed to meet the target output?

[2] Adapted from: Thanh, N. T. (2014). *Improvement of efficiency for production line by applying line balancing and simulation: A case study in Adidas Company* (Doctoral dissertation, International University HCMC, Vietnam).

Laying Out Arnold Palmer Hospital's New Facility

Video Case

When Orlando's Arnold Palmer Hospital began plans to create a new 273-bed, 11-story hospital across the street from its existing facility, which was bursting at the seams in terms of capacity, a massive planning process began. The $100 million building, opened in 2006, was long overdue, according to Executive Director Kathy Swanson: "We started Arnold Palmer Hospital in 1989, with a mission to provide quality services for children and women in a comforting, family-friendly environment. Since then we have served well over 1.5 million women and children and now deliver more than 12,000 babies a year. By 2001, we simply ran out of room, and it was time for us to grow."

The new hospital's unique, circular pod design provides a maximally efficient layout in all areas of the hospital, creating a patient-centered environment. *Servicescape* design features include a serene environment created through the use of warm colors, private rooms with pull-down Murphy beds for family members, 14-foot ceilings, and natural lighting with oversized windows in patient rooms. But these radical new features did not come easily. "This pod concept with a central nursing area and pie-shaped rooms resulted from over 1,000 planning meetings of 35 user groups, extensive motion and time studies, and computer simulations of the daily movements of nurses," says Swanson.

In a traditional linear hospital layout, called the *racetrack* design, patient rooms line long hallways, and a nurse might walk 2.7 miles per day serving patient needs at Arnold Palmer. "Some nurses spent 30% of their time simply walking. With the nursing shortage and the high cost of health care professionals, efficiency is a major concern," added Swanson. With the nursing station in the center of 10- or 12-bed circular pods, no patient room is more than 14 feet from a station. The time savings are in the 20% range. Swanson pointed to Figures 9.21 and 9.22 as examples of the old and new walking and trip distances.*

"We have also totally redesigned our neonatal rooms," says Swanson. "In the old system, there were 16 neonatal beds in a large and often noisy rectangular room. The new building features semiprivate rooms for these tiny babies. The rooms are much improved, with added privacy and a quiet, simulated night atmosphere, in addition to pull-down beds for parents to use. Our research shows that babies improve and develop much more quickly with this layout design. Layout and environment indeed impact patient care!"

*Layout and walking distances, including some of the numbers in Figures 9.21 and 9.22, have been simplified for purposes of this case.

Figure 9.21

Traditional Hospital Layout

Patient rooms are on two linear hallways with exterior windows. Supply rooms are on interior corridors. This layout is called a "racetrack" design.

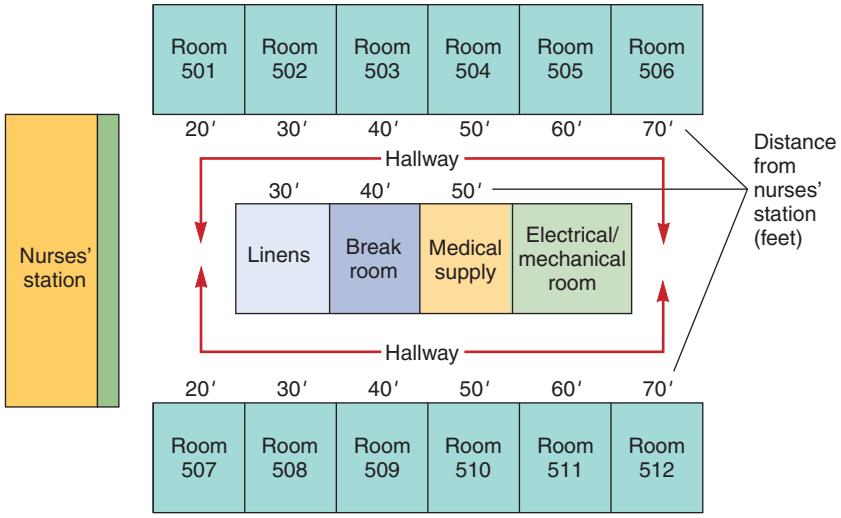
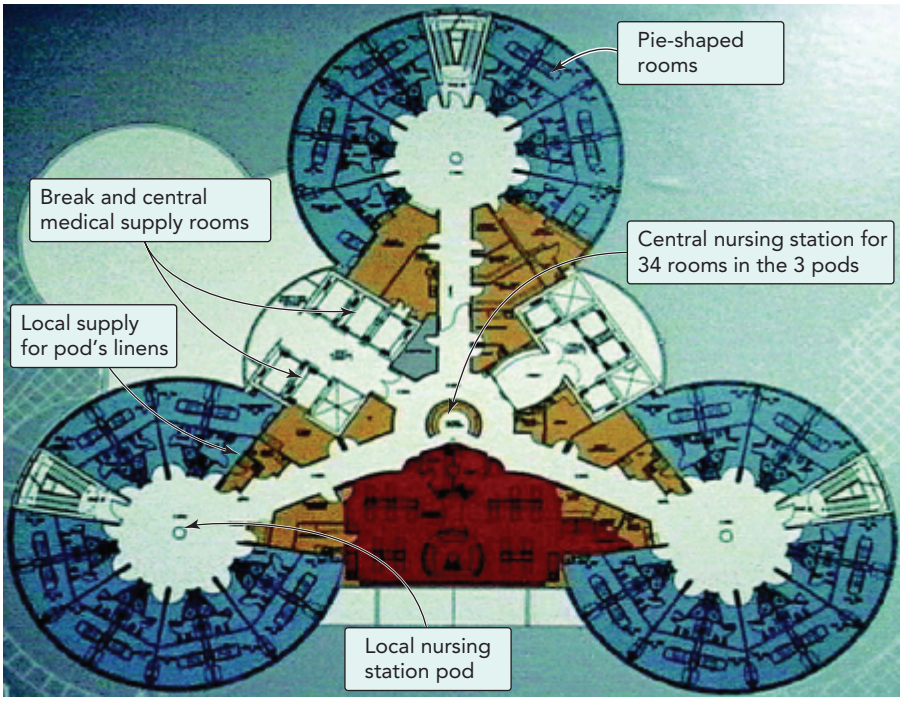


Figure 9.22

New Pod Design for Hospital Layout

Note that each room is 14 feet from the pod's *local* nursing station. The *break rooms* and the *central medical station* are each about 60 feet from the local nursing pod. Pod *linen supply* rooms are also 14 feet from the local nursing station.



Courtesy Arnold Palmer Medical Center

Discussion Questions*

1. Identify the many variables that a hospital needs to consider in layout design.
2. What are the advantages of the circular pod design over the traditional linear hallway layout found in most hospitals?
3. Figure 9.21 illustrates a sample linear hallway layout. During a period of random observation, nurse Thomas Smith's day includes 6 trips from the nursing station to each of the 12 patient rooms (back and forth), 20 trips to the medical supply room, 5 trips to the break room, and 12 trips to the linen supply room. What is his total distance traveled in miles?
4. Figure 9.22 illustrates an architect's drawing of Arnold Palmer Hospital's new circular pod system. If nurse Susan Jones's day includes 7 trips from the nursing pod to each of the 12 rooms (back and forth), 20 trips to central medical supply, 6 trips to the break room, and 12 trips to the pod linen supply, how many miles does she walk during her shift? What are the differences in the travel times between the two nurses for this random day?
5. The concept of *servicescapes* is discussed in this chapter. Describe why this is so important at Arnold Palmer Hospital, and give examples of its use in layout design.

6. As technology and costs change, hospitals continue to innovate. The reduced cost of computers means some hospitals have moved from a central computer at the nurse's station to computers in the room or on carts (see photo). What changes in overall hospital layout would these innovations suggest?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before addressing these questions.

Rubbermaid Healthcare.

Facility Layout at Wheeled Coach

Video Case

When President Bob Collins began his career at Wheeled Coach, the world's largest manufacturer of ambulances, there were only a handful of employees. Now the firm's Florida plant has a workforce of 350. The physical plant has also expanded, with offices, R&D, final assembly, and wiring, cabinetry, and upholstery work cells in one large building. Growth has forced the painting work cell into a separate building, aluminum fabrication and body installation into another, inspection and shipping into a fourth, and warehousing into yet another.

Like many other growing companies, Wheeled Coach was not able to design its facility from scratch. And although management realizes that material handling costs are a little higher than an ideal layout would provide, Collins is pleased with the way the facility has evolved and employees have adapted. The aluminum cutting work cell lies adjacent to body fabrication, which, in turn, is located next to the body-installation work cell. And while the vehicle must be driven across a street to one building for painting and then to another for final assembly, at least the ambulance is on wheels. Collins is also satisfied with the flexibility shown in the design of the work cells. Cell construction is flexible and can accommodate changes in product mix and volume. In addition, work cells are typically small and movable, with many work benches and staging racks borne on wheels so that they can be easily rearranged and products transported to the assembly line.

Assembly-line balancing is one key problem facing Wheeled Coach and every other repetitive manufacturer. Produced on a schedule calling for four 10-hour work days per week, once an ambulance is on one of the six final assembly lines, it *must* move forward each day to the next workstation. Balancing just enough workers and tasks at each of the seven workstations is a never-ending challenge. Too many workers end up running into each other; too few can't finish an ambulance in seven days. Constant shifting of design and mix and improved analysis has led to frequent changes.

Discussion Questions*

1. What analytical techniques are available to help a company like Wheeled Coach deal with layout problems?
2. What suggestions would you make to Bob Collins about his layout?
3. How would you measure the "efficiency" of this layout?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before addressing these questions.

- **Additional Case Study:** Visit MyOMLab for this free case study:
  Microfix, Inc.: This company needs to balance its PC manufacturing assembly line and deal with sensitivity analysis of time estimates.

Endnotes

1. Fayurd, A. L., and J. Weeks. "Who Moved My Cube?" *Harvard Business Review* (July–August, 2011): 102.
2. *Takt* is German for "time," "measure," or "beat" and is used in this context as the rate at which completed units must be produced to satisfy customer demand.
3. *Cycle time* is the maximum time allowed to accomplish a task or process step. Several process steps may be necessary to complete the product. *Takt time*, discussed earlier, is determined by the customer and is the speed at which completed units must be produced to satisfy customer demand.

Chapter 9 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
THE STRATEGIC IMPORTANCE OF LAYOUT DECISIONS (p. 408)	Layout has numerous strategic implications because it establishes an organization's competitive priorities in regard to capacity, processes, flexibility, and cost, as well as quality of work life, customer contact, and image. *The objective of layout strategy is to develop an effective and efficient layout that will meet the firm's competitive requirements.*	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4
TYPES OF LAYOUT (pp. 408–409)	Types of layout and examples of their typical objectives include: 1. *Office layout*: Locate workers requiring frequent contact close to one another. 2. *Retail layout*: Expose customers to high-margin items. 3. *Warehouse layout*: Balance low-cost storage with low-cost material handling. 4. *Fixed-position layout*: Move material to the limited storage areas around the site. 5. *Process-oriented layout*: Manage varied material flow for each product. 6. *Work-cell layout*: Identify a product family, build teams, and cross-train team members. 7. *Product-oriented layout*: Equalize the task time at each workstation.	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4
OFFICE LAYOUT (pp. 409–410)	■ **Office layout**—The grouping of workers, their equipment, and spaces/offices to provide for comfort, safety, and movement of information. A *relationship chart* displays a "closeness value" between each pair of people and/or departments that need to be placed in the office layout.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4
RETAIL LAYOUT (pp. 410–413)	■ **Retail layout**—An approach that addresses flow, allocates space, and responds to customer behavior. Retail layouts are based on the idea that sales and profitability vary directly with customer exposure to products. The main *objective of retail layout is to maximize profitability per square foot of floor space* (or, in some stores, per linear foot of shelf space). ■ **Slotting fees**—Fees manufacturers pay to get shelf space for their products. ■ **Servicescape**—The physical surroundings in which a service takes place and how they affect customers and employees.	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4
WAREHOUSE AND STORAGE LAYOUTS (pp. 413–415)	■ **Warehouse layout**—A design that attempts to minimize total cost by addressing trade-offs between space and material handling. The variety of items stored and the number of items "picked" has direct bearing on the optimal layout. Modern warehouse management is often an automated procedure using *automated storage and retrieval systems* (ASRSs). ■ **Cross-docking**—Avoiding the placement of materials or supplies in storage by processing them as they are received for shipment. Cross-docking requires both tight scheduling and accurate inbound product identification. ■ **Random stocking**—Used in warehousing to locate stock wherever there is an open location. ■ **Customizing**—Using warehousing to add value to a product through component modification, repair, labeling, and packaging.	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.4
FIXED-POSITION LAYOUT (pp. 415–416)	■ **Fixed-position layout**—A system that addresses the layout requirements of stationary projects. Fixed-position layouts involve three complications: (1) there is limited space at virtually all sites, (2) different materials are needed at different stages of a project, and (3) the volume of materials needed is dynamic.	Concept Questions: 6.1–6.4
PROCESS-ORIENTED LAYOUT (pp. 416–421)	■ **Process-oriented layout**—A layout that deals with low-volume, high-variety production in which like machines and equipment are grouped together. ■ **Job lots**—Groups or batches of parts processed together. $$\text{Minimize cost} = \sum_{i=1}^{n}\sum_{j=1}^{n} X_{ij}C_{ij} \quad (9\text{-}1)$$	Concept Questions: 7.1–7.4 Problems: 9.1–9.10 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 9.1 **VIDEO 9.1** Laying Out Arnold Palmer Hospital's New Facility **ACTIVE MODEL 9.1**

Chapter 9 *Rapid* Review *continued*

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
WORK CELLS (pp. 421–424)	■ **Work cell**—An arrangement of machines and personnel that focuses on making a single product or family of related products. ■ **Takt time**—Pace of production to meet customer demands. Takt time = Total work time available/ Units required to satisfy customer demand (9-2) Workers required = Total operation time required/Takt time (9-3) ■ **Focused work center**—A permanent or semipermanent product-oriented arrangement of machines and personnel. ■ **Focused factory**—A facility designed to produce similar products or components.	Concept Questions: 8.1–8.4 Problem: 9.11
REPETITIVE AND PRODUCT-ORIENTED LAYOUT (pp. 424–429)	■ **Fabrication line**—A machine-paced, product-oriented facility for building components. ■ **Assembly line**—An approach that puts fabricated parts together at a series of workstations; a repetitive process. ■ **Assembly-line balancing**—Obtaining output at each workstation on a production line in order to minimize delay. ■ **Cycle time**—The maximum time that a product is allowed at each workstation. Cycle time = Production time available per day ÷ Units required per day (9-4) Minimum number of workstations = $\sum_{i=1}^{n}$ Time for task i/(Cycle time) (9-5) ■ **Heuristic**—Problem solving using procedures and rules rather than mathematical optimization. Line-balancing heuristics include *longest task (operation) time, most following tasks, ranked positional weight, shortest task (operation) time,* and *least number of following tasks.* $\text{Efficiency} = \frac{\sum \text{Task times}}{(\textit{Actual}\text{ number of workstations}) \times (\text{Largest assigned cycle time})}$ (9-6) Idle time = (Actual number of workstations × Largest assigned cycle time) − ∑Task times (9-7)	Concept Questions: 9.1–9.4 Problems: 9.12–9.27 **VIDEO 9.2** Facility Layout at Wheeled Coach Ambulances Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 9.2

Self Test

Before taking the self-test, refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 9.1 How are product oriented layout organised?
- **a)** Product-oriented layouts are organized around products or families of low-volume, low-variety products.
- **b)** Product-oriented layouts are organized around products or families of similar high-volume, low-variety products.
- **c)** Product-oriented layouts are organized around products or families of low-volume, high-variety products.
- **d)** Product-oriented layouts are organized around similar processes withlow-volume capacities.
- **e)** Product-oriented layouts are organized around working cells with high-variety products.

LO 9.2 Which of the following does *not* support the retail layout objective of maximizing customer exposure to products?
- **a)** Locate high-draw items around the periphery of the store.
- **b)** Use prominent locations for high-impulse and high-margin items.
- **c)** Maximize exposure to expensive items.
- **d)** Use end-aisle locations.
- **e)** Convey the store's mission with the careful positioning of the lead-off department.

LO 9.3 Which statement is NOT correct?
- **a)** Cross-docking tries to avoid placing materials in the storage area.
- **b)** Cross-docking reduces product handling
- **c)** Direct delivery of assembly parts to the assembly line is an example of cross-docking in manufacturing.
- **d)** Cross-docking increases facility costs
- **e)** Cross-docking reduces inventory

LO 9.4 A fixed-position layout:
- **a)** groups workers to provide for movement of information.
- **b)** addresses the layout requirements of large, bulky projects such as ships and buildings.
- **c)** seeks the best machine utilization in continuous production.
- **d)** allocates shelf space based on customer behavior.
- **e)** deals with low-volume, high-variety production.

LO 9.5 A process-oriented layout:
- **a)** groups workers to provide for movement of information.
- **b)** addresses the layout requirements of large, bulky projects such as ships and buildings.
- **c)** seeks the best machine utilization in continuous production.
- **d)** allocates shelf space based on customer behavior.
- **e)** deals with low-volume, high-variety production.

LO 9.6 For a focused work center or focused factory to be appropriate, the following three factors are required:
- **a)** _____
- **b)** _____
- **c)** _____

LO 9.7 A good office layout can inspire informal and productive encounters by balancing three social and physical factors as follows:
- **a)** _____
- **b)** _____
- **c)** _____

LO 9.8 In a sandwich production factory, making each ham and cheese sandwich consists of a number of activities which totally take 7 minutes. The production line for ham and cheese sandwich has five workers who work 12 hours a day. What is the maximum number of ham and cheese sandwiches they can make in this production line?
- **a)** 465
- **b)** 425
- **c)** 612
- **d)** 514
- **e)** 102

Answers: LO 9.1. b; LO 9.2. c; LO 9.3. d; LO 9.4. b; LO 9.5. e; LO 9.6. family of products, stable forecast (demand), volume; LO 9.7. Proximity, Privacy, and permission (for non-work interaction); LO 9.8. d.

Job Design and Work Measurement

CHAPTER 10

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *Rusty Wallace's NASCAR Racing Team*

- Human Resource Strategy for Competitive Advantage *448*
- Labor Planning *449*
- Job Design *450*
- Ergonomics and the Work Environment *453*
- Methods Analysis *455*
- The Visual Workplace *458*
- Labor Standards *458*
- Ethics *468*

Alaska Airlines

Alaska Airlines

10 OM STRATEGY DECISIONS

- Design of Goods and Services
- Managing Quality
- Process Strategy
- Location Strategies
- Layout Strategies
- *Human Resources*
- Supply-Chain Management
- Inventory Management
- Scheduling
- Maintenance

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
Rusty Wallace's NASCAR Racing Team

High-Performance Teamwork Makes the Difference Between Winning and Losing

A new century brought new popularity to NASCAR (National Association for Stock Car Auto Racing). Hundreds of millions of TV and sponsorship dollars poured into the sport. With more money, competition increased, as did the rewards for winning on Sunday. The teams, headed by such names as Rusty Wallace, Jeff Gordon, Dale Earnhardt, Jr., and Tony Stewart, are as famous as the New York Yankees, Atlanta Hawks, or Chicago Bears.

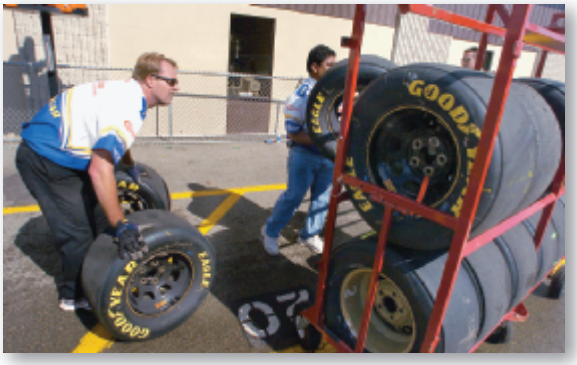
Courtesy of the Orlando Sentinel, 2005

This Goodyear tire comes off Rusty Wallace's car and is no longer needed after going around the track for more than 40 laps in a June 19 Michigan International Speedway race.

The race car drivers may be famous, but it's the pit crews who often determine the outcome of a race. Years ago, crews were auto mechanics during the week who simply did double duty on Sundays in the pits. They did pretty well to change four tires in less than 30 seconds. Today, because NASCAR teams find competitive advantage wherever they can, taking more than 16 seconds can be disastrous. A botched pit stop is the equivalent of ramming your car against the wall—crushing all hopes for the day.

On Rusty Wallace's team, as on all the top NASCAR squads, the crewmen who go "over the wall" are now athletes, usually ex-college football or basketball players with proven agility and strength. The Evernham team, for example, includes a former defensive back from Fairleigh Dickinson (who is now a professional tire carrier) and a 300-pound lineman from East Carolina University (who handles the jack). The Chip Ganassi racing team includes baseball players from Wake Forest, football players from University of Kentucky and North Carolina, and a hockey player from Dartmouth.

Tire changers—the guys who wrench lug nuts off and on—are a scarce human resource and average $100,000 a year in salary. Jeff Gordon was reminded of the importance of coordinated

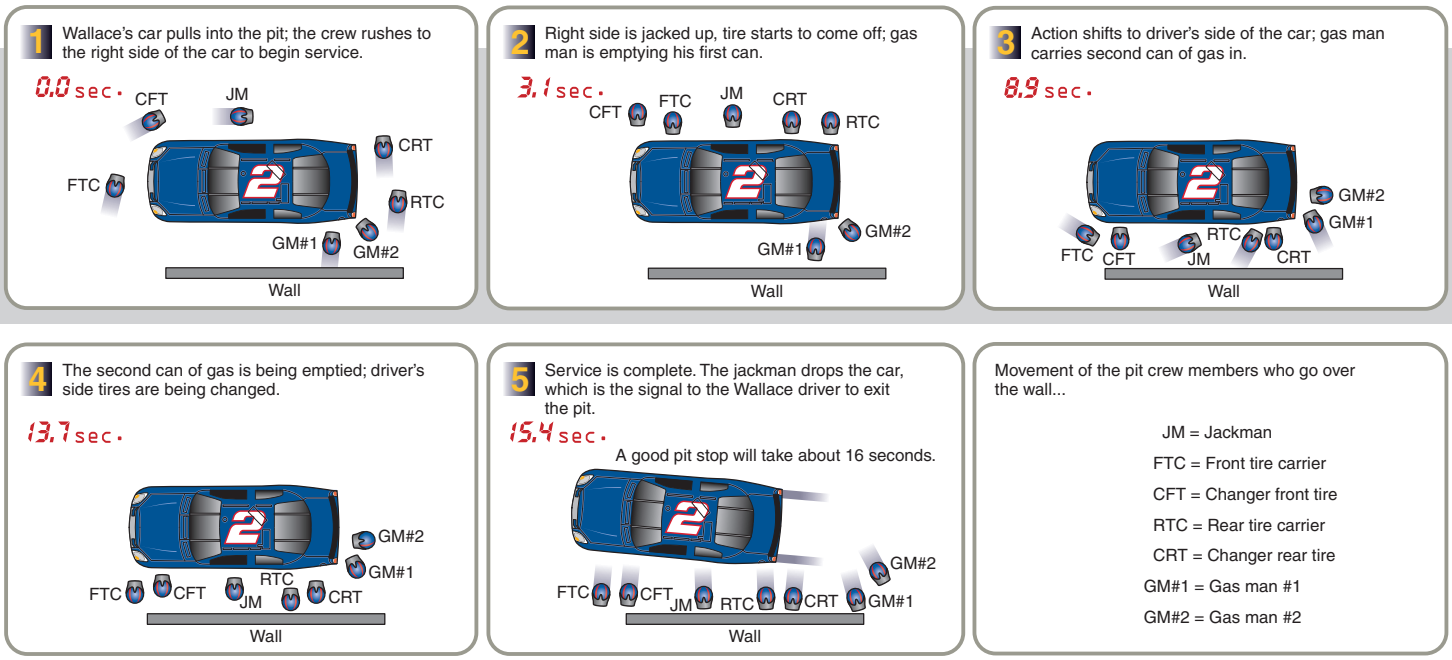


Courtesy of the Orlando Sentinel, 2005

Jamie Rolewicz takes tires from a pile of used tires and puts them onto a cart.

Courtesy of the Orlando Sentinel, 2005

Lap 91—Gas is added and a tire is removed from Rusty Wallace's car.



JM (Jackman) The jackman carries the hydraulic jack from the pit wall to raise the car's right side. After new tires are bolted on, he drops the car to the ground and repeats the process on the left side. His timing is crucial during this left side change, because when he drops the car again, it's the signal for the driver to go. The jackman has the most dangerous job of all the crew members; during the right-side change, he is exposed to oncoming traffic down pit row. **FTC (Front tire carrier)** Each tire carrier hauls a new 75-pound tire to the car's right side, places it on the wheel studs, and removes the old tire after the tire change. They repeat this process on the left side of the car with a new tire rolled to them by crew members behind the pit wall. **CFT (Changer front tire)** Tire changers run to the car's right side and, using an air impact wrench, they remove five lug nuts off the old tire and bolt on a new tire. They repeat the process on the left side. **RTC (Rear tire carrier)** Same as front tire carrier, except RTC may also adjust the rear jack bolt to alter the car's handling. **CRT (Changer rear tire)** Same as FT but on two rear tires. **Gas man #1** This gas man is usually the biggest and strongest person on the team. He goes over the wall carrying a 75-pound, 11-gallon "dump can" whose nozzle he jams into the car's fuel cell receptacle. He is then handed (or tossed) another can, and the process is repeated. **Gas man #2** Gets second gas can to Gas man #1 and catches excess fuel that spills out.

teamwork when five of his "over-the-wall" guys jumped to Dale Jarrett's organization a few years ago; it was believed to be a $500,000 per year deal.

A pit crew consists of seven men: a front-tire changer; a rear-tire changer; front- and rear-tire carriers; a man who jacks the car up; and two gas men with an 11-gallon can.

Every sport has its core competencies and key metrics—for example, the speed of a pitcher's fastball and a running back's time on the 40-yard dash. In NASCAR, a tire changer should get 5 lug nuts off in 1.2 seconds. The jackman should haul his 25-pound aluminum jack from the car's right side to left in 3.8 seconds. For tire carriers, it should take .7 seconds to get a tire from the ground to mounted on the car.

The seven men who go over the wall are coached and orchestrated. Coaches use the tools of OM and watch "game tape" of pit stops and make intricate adjustments to the choreography.

"There's a lot of pressure," says D. J. Richardson, a Rusty Wallace team tire changer—and one of the best in the business. Richardson trains daily with the rest of the crew in the shop of the team owner. They focus on cardiovascular work and two muscle groups daily. Twice a week, they simulate pit stops—there can be from 12 to 14 variations—to work on their timing.

In a recent race in Michigan, Richardson and the rest of the Rusty Wallace team, with ergonomically designed gas cans, tools, and special safety gear, were ready. On lap 43, the split-second frenzy began, with Richardson—air gun in hand—jumping over a 2-foot white wall and sprinting to the right side of the team's Dodge. A teammate grabbed the tire and set it in place while Richardson secured it to the car. The process was repeated on the left side while the front crew followed the same procedure. Coupled with refueling, the pit stop took 12.734 seconds.

After catching their breath for a minute, Richardson and the other pit crew guys reviewed a videotape, looking for split-second flaws.

The same process was repeated on lap 91. The Wallace driver made a late charge on Jeff Burton and Kurt Busch on the last lap and went from 14th place to a 10th place finish.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO 10.1 ***Describe*** labor-planning policies 449
LO 10.2 ***Identify*** the major issues in job design 450
LO 10.3 ***Identify*** major ergonomic and work environment issues 454
LO 10.4 ***Use*** the tools of methods analysis 456
LO 10.5 ***Identify*** four ways of establishing labor standards 459
LO 10.6 ***Compute*** the normal and standard times in a time study 461
LO 10.7 ***Find*** the proper sample size for a time study 462

Human Resource Strategy for Competitive Advantage

VIDEO 10.1
The "People" Focus: Human Resources at Alaska Airlines

Good human resource strategies are expensive, difficult to achieve, and hard to sustain. But, like a NASCAR team, many organizations, from Hard Rock Cafe to Alaska Airlines, have demonstrated that sustainable competitive advantage can be built through a human resource strategy. The payoff can be significant and difficult for others to duplicate. Indeed, as the manager at London Four Seasons Hotel has noted, "We've identified that our key *competitive difference is our people*."[1] In this chapter, we will examine some of the tools available to operations managers for achieving competitive advantage via human resource management.

The objective of a human resource strategy is to manage labor and design jobs so people are effectively and efficiently utilized. As we focus on a human resource strategy, we want to ensure that people:

VIDEO 10.2
Human Resources at Hard Rock Cafe

1. Are efficiently utilized within the constraints of other operations management decisions.
2. Have a reasonable quality of work life in an atmosphere of mutual commitment and trust.

By reasonable *quality of work life* we mean a job that is not only reasonably safe and for which the pay is equitable but that also achieves an appropriate level of both physical and psychological requirements. *Mutual commitment* means that both management and employee strive to meet common objectives. *Mutual trust* is reflected in reasonable, documented employment policies that are honestly and equitably implemented to the satisfaction of both management and employee. When management has a genuine respect for its employees and their contributions to the firm, establishing a reasonable quality of work life and mutual trust is not particularly difficult.

Constraints on Human Resource Strategy

STUDENT TIP An operations manager knows how to build an effective human resource strategy.

As Figure 10.1 suggests, many decisions made about people are constrained by other decisions. First, the product mix may determine seasonality and stability of employment. Second, technology, equipment, and processes may have implications for safety and job content. Third, the location decision may have an impact on the ambient environment in which the employees work. Finally, layout decisions, such as assembly line versus work cell, influence job content.

Technology decisions impose substantial constraints. For instance, some of the jobs in foundries are dirty, noisy, and dangerous; slaughterhouse jobs may be stressful and subject workers to stomach-crunching stench; assembly-line jobs are often boring and mind numbing; and high capital investments such as those required for manufacturing semiconductor chips may require 24-hour, 7-day-a-week operation in restrictive clothing.

We are not going to change these jobs without making changes in our other strategic decisions, so the trade-offs necessary to reach a tolerable quality of work life are difficult. Effective managers consider such decisions simultaneously. The result: a system in which both individual and team performance are enhanced through optimum job design.

We now look at three distinct decision areas of human resource strategy: *labor planning*, *job design*, and *labor standards*.

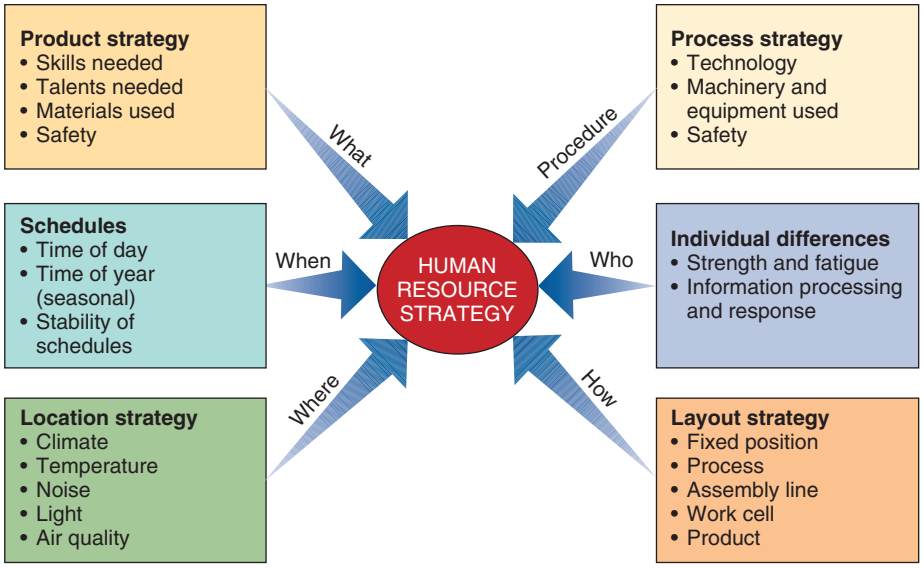


Figure 10.1
Constraints on Human Resource Strategy

Labor Planning

Labor planning is determining staffing policies that deal with (1) employment stability, (2) work schedules, and (3) work rules.

Labor planning
A means of determining staffing policies dealing with employment stability, work schedules, and work rules.

Employment-Stability Policies

Employment stability deals with the number of employees maintained by an organization at any given time. There are two very basic policies for dealing with stability:

1. *Follow demand exactly:* Following demand exactly keeps direct labor costs tied to production but incurs other costs. These other costs include (a) hiring and layoff costs, (b) unemployment insurance, and (c) premium wages to entice personnel to accept unstable employment. This policy tends to treat labor as a variable cost.
2. *Hold employment constant:* Holding employment levels constant maintains a trained workforce and keeps hiring, layoff, and unemployment costs to a minimum. However, with employment held constant, employees may not be utilized fully when demand is low, and the firm may not have the human resources it needs when demand is high. This policy tends to treat labor as a fixed cost.

These policies are only two of many that can be efficient *and* provide a reasonable quality of work life. Firms must determine policies about employment stability.

LO 10.1 *Describe* labor-planning policies

Work Schedules

Although the standard work schedule in the U.S. is still five 8-hour days, many variations exist. A popular variation is a work schedule called flextime. *Flextime* allows employees, within limits, to determine their own schedules. A flextime policy might allow an employee (with proper notification) to be at work at 8 A.M. plus or minus 2 hours. This policy allows more autonomy and independence on the part of the employee. Some firms have found flextime a low-cost fringe benefit that enhances job satisfaction. The problem from the OM perspective is that much production work requires full staffing for efficient operations. A machine that requires three people cannot run at all if only two show up. Having a waiter show up to serve lunch at 1:30 P.M. rather than 11:30 A.M. is not much help either.

Similarly, some industries find that their process strategies severely constrain their human resource scheduling options. For instance, paper manufacturing, petroleum refining, and power stations require around-the-clock staffing except for maintenance and repair shutdown.

Another option is the *flexible workweek*. This plan often calls for fewer but longer days, such as four 10-hour days or, as in the case of light-assembly plants, 12-hour shifts. Working 12-hour shifts usually means working 3 days one week and 4 the next. Such shifts are sometimes called *compressed workweeks*. These schedules are viable for many operations functions—as long as suppliers and customers can be accommodated.

Another option is shorter days rather than longer days. This plan often moves employees to *part-time status*. Such an option is particularly attractive in service industries, where staffing for peak loads is necessary. Banks and restaurants often hire part-time workers. Also, many firms reduce labor costs by reducing fringe benefits for part-time employees.

Job Classifications and Work Rules

Many organizations have strict job classifications and work rules that specify who can do what, when they can do it, and under what conditions they can do it, often as a result of union pressure. These job classifications and work rules restrict employee flexibility on the job, which in turn reduces the flexibility of the operations function. Yet part of an operations manager's task is to manage the unexpected. Therefore, the more flexibility a firm has when staffing and establishing work schedules, the more efficient and responsive it *can* be. This is particularly true in service organizations, where extra capacity often resides in extra or flexible staff. Building morale and meeting staffing requirements that result in an efficient, responsive operation are easier if managers have fewer job classifications and work-rule constraints. If the strategy is to achieve a competitive advantage by responding rapidly to the customer, a flexible workforce may be a prerequisite.

Job Design

Job design
An approach that specifies the tasks that constitute a job for an individual or a group.

Job design specifies the tasks that constitute a job for an individual or a group. We examine five components of job design: (1) job specialization, (2) job expansion, (3) psychological components, (4) self-directed teams, and (5) motivation and incentive systems.

Labor Specialization

Labor specialization (or job specialization)
The division of labor into unique ("special") tasks.

The importance of job design as a management variable is credited to the 18th-century economist Adam Smith. Smith suggested that a division of labor, also known as **labor specialization** (or job specialization), would assist in reducing labor costs of multiskilled artisans. This is accomplished in several ways:

1. *Development of dexterity* and faster learning by the employee because of repetition
2. *Less loss of time* because the employee would not be changing jobs or tools
3. *Development of specialized tools* and the reduction of investment because each employee has only a few tools needed for a particular task

LO 10.2 *Identify* the major issues in job design

The 19th-century British mathematician Charles Babbage determined that a fourth consideration was also important for labor efficiency. Because pay tends to follow skill with a rather high correlation, Babbage suggested *paying exactly the wage needed for the particular skill required*. If the entire job consists of only one skill, then we would pay for only that skill. Otherwise, we would tend to pay for the highest skill contributed by the employee. These four advantages of labor specialization are still valid today.

A classic example of labor specialization is the assembly line. Such a system is often very efficient, although it may require employees to do short, repetitive, mind-numbing jobs. The wage rate for many of these jobs, however, is good. Given the relatively high wage rate for the modest skills required in many of these jobs, there is often a large pool of employees from which to choose.

From the manager's point of view, a major limitation of specialized jobs is their failure to bring the whole person to the job. Job specialization tends to bring only the employee's manual skills to work. In an increasingly sophisticated knowledge-based society, managers want employees to bring their mind to work as well.

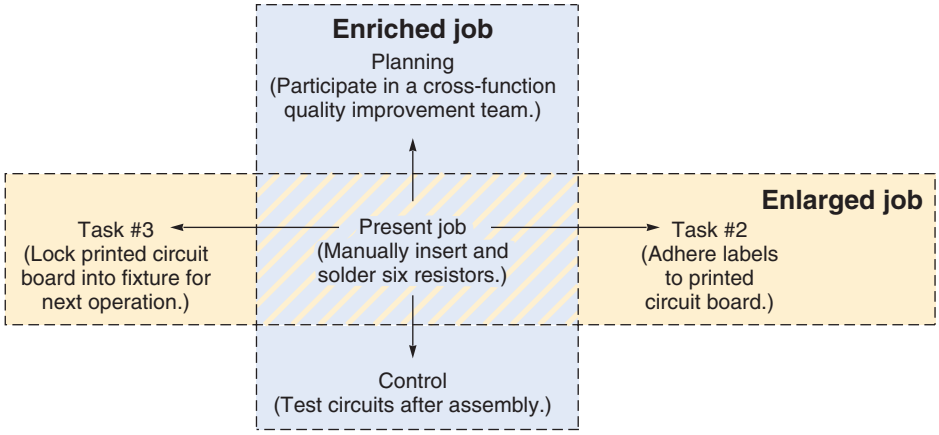


Figure **10.2**

An Example of Job Enlargement (*horizontal* job expansion) and Job Enrichment (*vertical* job expansion)

Job Expansion

Moving from labor specialization toward more varied job design may improve the quality of work life. The theory is that variety makes the job "better" and that the employee therefore enjoys a higher quality of work life. This flexibility thus benefits the employee and the organization.

We modify jobs in a variety of ways. The first approach is **job enlargement**, which occurs when we add tasks requiring similar skill to an existing job. **Job rotation** is a version of job enlargement that occurs when the employee is allowed to move from one specialized job to another. Variety has been added to the employee's perspective of the job. Another approach is **job enrichment**, which adds planning and control to the job. An example is to have department store salespeople responsible for ordering, as well as selling, their goods. Job enrichment can be thought of as *vertical expansion*, as opposed to job enlargement, which is *horizontal*. These ideas are shown in Figure 10.2.

A popular extension of job enrichment, **employee empowerment** is the practice of enriching jobs so employees accept responsibility for a variety of decisions normally associated with staff specialists. Empowering employees helps them take "ownership" of their jobs so they have a personal interest in improving performance.

Job enlargement
The grouping of a variety of tasks about the same skill level; horizontal enlargement.

Job rotation
A system in which an employee is moved from one specialized job to another.

Job enrichment
A method of giving an employee more responsibility that includes some of the planning and control necessary for job accomplishment; vertical expansion.

Employee empowerment
Enlarging employee jobs so that the added responsibility and authority are moved to the lowest level possible.

Psychological Components of Job Design

An effective human resources strategy also requires consideration of the psychological components of job design. These components focus on how to design jobs that meet some minimum psychological requirements.

Hawthorne Studies The Hawthorne studies introduced psychology to the workplace. They were conducted in the 1920s at Western Electric's Hawthorne plant near Chicago. These studies were initiated to determine the impact of lighting on productivity. Instead, they found the dynamic social system and distinct roles played by employees to be more important than the intensity of the lighting. They also found that individual differences may be dominant in what an employee expects from the job and what the employee thinks her or his contribution to the job should be.

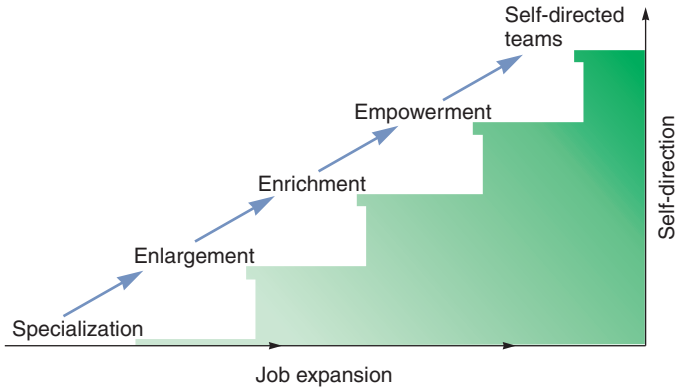
Core Job Characteristics Substantial research regarding the psychological components of job design has taken place since the Hawthorne studies. Hackman and Oldham have incorporated much of that work into five desirable characteristics of job design.[2] They suggest that jobs should include the following characteristics:

1. **Skill variety**, requiring the worker to use a variety of skills and talents
2. **Job identity**, allowing the worker to perceive the job as a whole and recognize a start and a finish
3. **Job significance**, providing a sense that the job has an impact on the organization and society
4. **Autonomy**, offering freedom, independence, and discretion
5. **Feedback**, providing clear, timely information about performance

Figure 10.3

Job Design Continuum

An increasing reliance on the employee's contribution can increase the responsibility accepted by the employee.



Including these five ingredients in job design is consistent with job enlargement, job enrichment, and employee empowerment. We now want to look at some of the ways in which teams can be used to expand jobs and achieve these five job characteristics.

Self-Directed Teams

Self-directed team

A group of empowered individuals working together to reach a common goal.

Many world-class organizations have adopted teams to foster mutual trust and commitment, and provide the core job characteristics. One team concept of particular note is the **self-directed team**: a group of empowered individuals working together to reach a common goal. These teams may be organized for long- or short-term objectives. Teams are effective primarily because they can easily provide employee empowerment, ensure core job characteristics, and satisfy many of the psychological needs of individual team members. A job design continuum is shown in Figure 10.3.

Limitations of Job Expansion If job designs that enlarge, enrich, empower, and use teams are so good, why are they not universally used? Mostly it is because of costs. Here are a few limitations of expanded job designs:

- *Higher capital cost:* Job expansion may require additional equipment and facilities.
- *Individual differences:* Some employees opt for the less-complex jobs.
- *Higher wage rates:* Expanded jobs may well require a higher average wage.
- *Smaller labor pool:* Because expanded jobs require more skill and acceptance of more responsibility, job requirements have increased.
- *Higher training costs:* Job expansion requires training and cross-training. Therefore, training budgets need to increase.

Despite these limitations, firms are finding a substantial payoff in job expansion.

Southwest Airlines Co.

Southwest Airlines Co.

Southwest Airlines—consistently near the top of the airline pack in travel surveys, fewest lost bags and complaints, and highest profits—hires people with enthusiasm and empowers them to excel. A barefoot co-founder and chairman emeritus, Herb Kelleher, clings to the tail of a jet (left photo). Says Kelleher, "I've tried to create a culture of caring for people in the totality of their lives, not just at work. Someone can go out and buy airplanes and ticket counters, but they can't buy our culture, our *esprit de corps.*"

OM in Action Using Incentives to Unsnarl Traffic Jams in the OR

Hospitals have long offered surgeons a precious perk: scheduling the bulk of their elective surgeries in the middle of the week so they can attend conferences, teach, or relax during long weekends. But at Boston Medical Center, St. John's Health Center (in Missouri), and Elliot Health System (in New Hampshire), this practice, one of the biggest impediments to a smooth-running hospital, is changing. "Block scheduling" jams up operating rooms, overloads nurses at peak times, and bumps scheduled patients for hours and even days.

Boston Medical Center's delays and cancellations of elective surgeries were nearly eliminated after surgeons agreed to stop block scheduling and to dedicate one OR for emergency cases. Cancellations dropped to 3, from 334, in just one 6-month period. In general, hospitals changing to the new system of spreading out elective surgeries during the week increase their surgery capacity by 10%, move patients through the operating room faster, and reduce nursing overtime.

Robert Daly/OJO Images Ltd/Alamy

To get doctors on board at St. John's, the hospital offered a carrot and two sticks: Doctors who were more than 10 minutes late 10% of the time lost their coveted 7:30 A.M. start times *and* were fined a portion of their fee—with proceeds going to a kitty that rewarded the best on-time performers. Surgeons' late start times quickly dropped from 16% to 5% and then to less than 1% within a year.

Sources: Executive Insight (October 4, 2011); *The Wall Street Journal* (August 10, 2005); and *Hospitals & Health Networks* (September 2005).

Motivation and Incentive Systems

Our discussion of the psychological components of job design provides insight into the factors that contribute to job satisfaction and motivation. In addition to these psychological factors, there are monetary factors. Money often serves as a psychological as well as financial motivator. Monetary rewards take the form of bonuses, profit and gain sharing, and incentive systems.

Bonuses, in cash, stock ownership, or stock options, are often used to reward employees. Almost half of U.S. employees have one or more forms of profit sharing that distributes part of the profit to employees. A variation of profit sharing is gain sharing, which rewards employees for improvements made in an organization's performance. The most popular of these is the Scanlon plan, in which any reduction in the cost of labor is shared between management and labor.

Incentive systems based on individual or group productivity are used throughout the world in a wide variety of applications, including nearly half of the manufacturing firms in America. Production incentives often require employees or crews to produce at or above a predetermined standard. The standard can be based on a "standard time" per task or number of pieces made. Both systems typically guarantee the employee at least a base rate. Incentives, of course, need not be monetary. Awards, recognition, and other kinds of preferences such as a preferred work schedule can be effective. (See the *OM in Action* box "Using Incentives to Unsnarl Traffic Jams in the OR.") Hard Rock Cafe has successfully reduced its turnover by giving every employee—from the CEO to the busboys—a $10,000 gold Rolex watch on their 10th anniversary with the firm.

With the increasing use of teams, various forms of team-based pay are also being developed. Many are based on traditional pay systems supplemented with some form of bonus or incentive system. However, because many team environments require cross training, *knowledge-based* pay systems have also been developed. Under knowledge-based (or skill-based) pay systems, a portion of the employee's pay depends on demonstrated knowledge or skills. At Wisconsin's Johnsonville Sausage Co., employees receive pay raises *only* by mastering new skills such as scheduling, budgeting, and quality control.

Ergonomics and the Work Environment

With the foundation provided by Frederick W. Taylor, the father of the era of scientific management, we have developed a body of knowledge about people's capabilities and limitations. This knowledge is necessary because humans are hand/eye animals possessing exceptional capabilities and some limitations. Because managers must design jobs that can be done, we now introduce a few of the issues related to people's capabilities and limitations.

Ergonomics The operations manager is interested in building a good interface between humans, the environment, and machines. Studies of this interface are known as **ergonomics**. Ergonomics means "the study of work." (*Ergon* is the Greek word for "work.") The term

Ergonomics
The study of the human interface with the environment and machines.

With a commitment to efficiency and an understanding of ergonomics, UPS trains drivers in the company's "340 methods" that save seconds and improve safety. Here a UPS driver learns to walk on "ice" with the help of a "slip and fall" simulator.

Stephen Voss

human factors is often substituted for the word *ergonomics*. Understanding ergonomic issues helps to improve human performance.

Male and female adults come in limited configurations and abilities. Therefore, design of tools and the workplace depends on the study of people to determine what they can and cannot do. Substantial data have been collected that provide basic strength and measurement data needed to design tools and the workplace. The design of the workplace can make the job easier or impossible. In addition, we now have the ability, through the use of computer modeling, to analyze human motions and efforts.

LO 10.3 *Identify* major ergonomic and work environment issues

Operator Input to Machines Operator response to machines, be they hand tools, pedals, levers, or buttons, needs to be evaluated. Operations managers need to be sure that operators have the strength, reflexes, perception, and mental capacity to provide necessary control. Such problems as *carpal tunnel syndrome* may result when a tool as simple as a

Inacio Pires/Shutterstock

Drivers of race cars have no time to grasp for controls or to look for small hidden gauges. Controls and instrumentation for modern race cars have migrated to the steering wheel itself—the critical interface between man and machine.

keyboard is poorly designed. The photo of the race car steering wheel above shows one innovative approach to critical operator input.

Feedback to Operators Feedback to operators is provided by sight, sound, and feel; it should not be left to chance. The mishap at the Three Mile Island nuclear facility, America's worst nuclear experience, was in large part the result of poor feedback to the operators about reactor performance. Nonfunctional groups of large, unclear instruments and inaccessible controls, combined with hundreds of confusing warning lights, contributed to that failure. Such relatively simple issues make a difference in operator response and, therefore, performance.

An important human factor/ergonomic issue in the aircraft industry is cockpit design. Newer "glass cockpits" display information in more concise form than the traditional rows of round analog dials and gauges. These displays reduce the chance of human error, which is a factor in about two-thirds of commercial air accidents.

The Work Environment The physical environment in which employees work affects their performance, safety, and quality of work life. Illumination, noise and vibration, temperature, humidity, and air quality are work-environment factors under the control of the organization and the operations manager. The manager must approach them as controllable.

Illumination is necessary, but the proper level depends on the work being performed. Figure 10.4(a) provides some guidelines. However, other lighting factors are important. These include reflective ability, contrast of the work surface with surroundings, glare, and shadows.

Noise of some form is usually present in the work area, and most employees seem to adjust well. However, high levels of sound will damage hearing. Figure 10.4(b) provides indications of the sound generated by various activities. Extended periods of exposure to decibel levels above 85 dB are permanently damaging. The Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) requires ear protection above this level if exposure equals or exceeds eight hours. Even at low levels, noise and vibration can be distracting and can raise a person's blood pressure, so managers make substantial effort to reduce noise and vibration through good machine design, enclosures, or insulation.

Temperature and humidity parameters have also been well established. Managers with activities operating outside the established comfort zone should expect adverse effect on performance.

Methods Analysis

Methods analysis
A system that involves developing work procedures that are safe and produce quality products efficiently.

Methods analysis focuses on *how* a task is accomplished. Whether controlling a machine or making or assembling components, how a task is done makes a difference in performance, safety, and quality. Using knowledge from ergonomics and methods analysis, methods engineers are charged with ensuring that quality and quantity standards are achieved efficiently and safely. Methods analysis and related techniques are useful in office environments as well as in the factory. Methods techniques are used to analyze:

1. **Movement of individuals or material.** The analysis is performed using *flow diagrams* and *process charts* with varying amounts of detail.

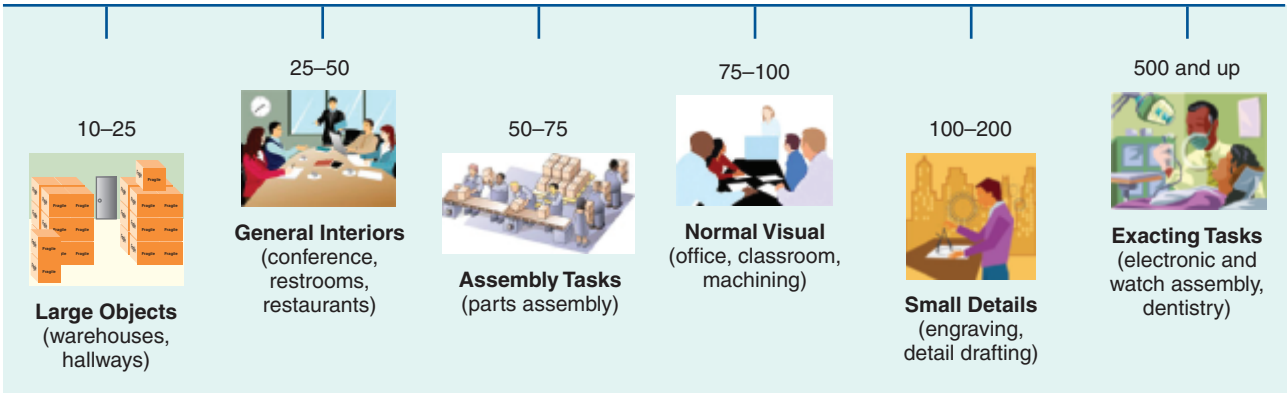


Figure **10.4(a)**

Recommended Levels of Illumination (using foot-candles (ft-c) as the measure of illumination)

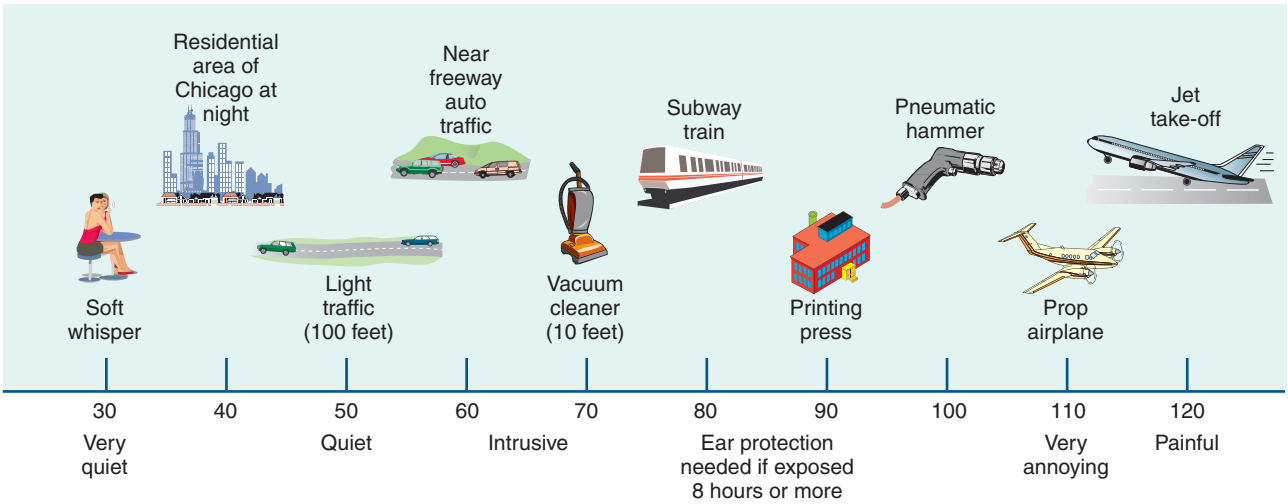


Figure **10.4(b)**

Decibel (dB) Levels for Various Sounds

Adapted from A. P. G. Peterson and E. E. Gross, Jr., *Handbook of Noise Measurement*, 7th ed. Copyright © by GenRad, LLC. Reprinted with permission.

LO 10.4 *Use* the tools of methods analysis

2. **Activity of human and machine and crew activity.** This analysis is performed using *activity charts* (also known as man–machine charts and crew charts).
3. **Body movement** (primarily arms and hands). This analysis is performed using *operations charts.*

Flow diagram
A drawing used to analyze movement of people or material.

Process chart
Graphic representations that depict a sequence of steps for a process.

Activity chart
A way of improving utilization of an operator and a machine or some combination of operators (a crew) and machines.

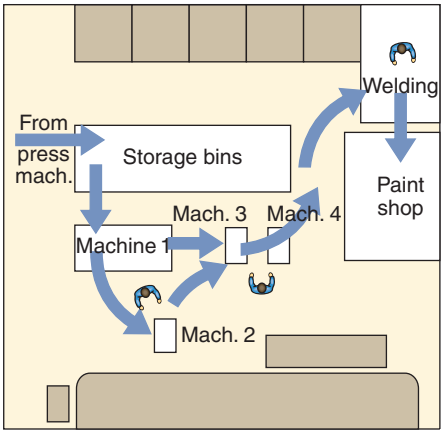
Operations chart
A chart depicting right- and left-hand motions.

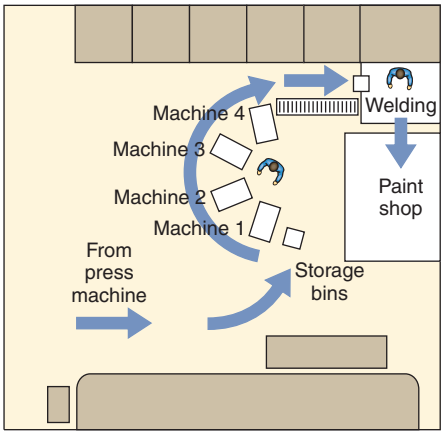
Flow diagrams are schematics (drawings) used to investigate movement of people or material. Britain's Paddy Hopkirk Factory, which manufactures auto parts, demonstrates one version of a flow diagram in Figure 10.5. Hopkirk's old work flow is shown in Figure 10.5(a), and a new method, with improved work flow and requiring less storage and space, is shown in Figure 10.5(b). Process charts use symbols, as in Figure 10.5(c), to help us understand the movement of people or material. In this way non-value-added activities can be recognized and operations made more efficient. Figure 10.5(c) is a process chart used to supplement the flow diagrams shown in Figure 10.5(b).

Activity charts are used to study and improve the utilization of an operator and a machine or some combination of operators (a "crew") and machines. The typical approach is for the analyst to record the present method through direct observation and then propose the improvement on a second chart. Figure 10.6 is an activity chart to show a proposed improvement for a two-person crew at Quick Car Lube.

Body movement is analyzed by an operations chart. It is designed to show economy of motion by pointing out wasted motion and idle time (delay). The operations chart (also known as a *right-hand/left-hand chart*) is shown in Figure 10.7.

(a)





(b)

(c)

Present Method ☐
Proposed Method ☒

PROCESS CHART

SUBJECT CHARTED *Axle-stand Production*
DATE *5 / 1 / 15*
CHART BY *JH*
CHART NO. *1*
DEPARTMENT *Work cell for axle stand*
SHEET NO. *1* OF *1*

DIST. IN FEET	TIME IN MINS.	CHART SYMBOLS	PROCESS DESCRIPTION
50			From press machine to storage bins at work cell
	3		Storage bins
5			Move to machine 1
	4		Operation at machine 1
4			Move to machine 2
	2.5		Operation at machine 2
4			Move to machine 3
	3.5		Operation at machine 3
4			Move to machine 4
	4		Operation at machine 4
20			Move to welding
	Poka-yoke		Poka-yoke inspection at welding
	4		Weld
10			Move to painting
	4		Paint
97	25		TOTAL

○ = operation; ⇨ = transport; □ = inspect; D = delay; ▽ = storage

Figure **10.5**

Flow Diagrams and Process Chart of Axle-Stand Production at Paddy Hopkirk Factory

(a) Old method; (b) new method; (c) process chart of axle-stand production using Paddy Hopkirk's new method (shown in (b)).

ACTIVITY CHART

	OPERATOR #1		OPERATOR #2	
	TIME	%	TIME	%
WORK	12	100	12	100
IDLE	0	0	0	0

OPERATION: Oil change & fluid check
EQUIPMENT: One bay/pit
OPERATOR: Two-person crew
STUDY NO.: ____ ANALYST: BR

SUBJECT *Quick Car Lube* DATE *5-1-15*
PRESENT / PROPOSED DEPT. SHEET *1* OF *1* CHART BY *LSA*

TIME	Operator #1	TIME	Operator #2	TIME
2	Take order		Move car to pit	
4	Vacuum car		Drain oil	
6	Clean windows		Check transmission	
8	Check under hood		Change oil filter	
10	Fill with oil		Replace oil plug	
12	Complete bill		Move car to front for customer	
14	Greet next customer		Move next car to pit	
16	Vacuum car		Drain oil	
18	Clean windows		Check transmission	

Repeat cycle

Figure **10.6**

Activity Chart for Two-Person Crew Doing an Oil Change in 12 Minutes at Quick Car Lube

OPERATIONS CHART

SYMBOLS	PRESENT LH	PRESENT RH	PROPOSED LH	PROPOSED RH
○ OPERATION	2	3		
⇨ TRANSPORT.	1	1		
□ INSPECTION				
D DELAY	4	3		
▽ STORAGE				

PROCESS: Scooping Ice for Coffee
EQUIPMENT: Scoop
OPERATOR: Starbucks
STUDY NO: ____ ANALYST: CM
DATE: 5 /1 /15 SHEET NO. 1 of 2
METHOD (PRESENT / PROPOSED)
REMARKS: Partial Study

LEFT-HAND ACTIVITY Present / METHOD	DIST.	SYMBOLS	SYMBOLS	DIST.	RIGHT-HAND ACTIVITY Present / METHOD
1 Reach for cup		●⇨□D▽	○⇨□D▽		Idle
2 Grasp cup		●⇨□D▽	○⇨□D▽		Idle
3 Move cup	6"	○➡□D▽	○⇨□D▽		Idle
4 Hold cup		○⇨□D▽	●⇨□D▽		Reach for scoop
5 Hold cup		○⇨□D▽	●⇨□D▽		Grasp scoop
6 Hold cup		○⇨□D▽	○➡□D▽	8"	Move scoop to ice
7 Hold cup		○⇨□D▽	●⇨□D▽		Scoop ice

Figure **10.7**

Operations Chart (right-hand/left-hand chart) for Scooping Ice to Coffee Cup

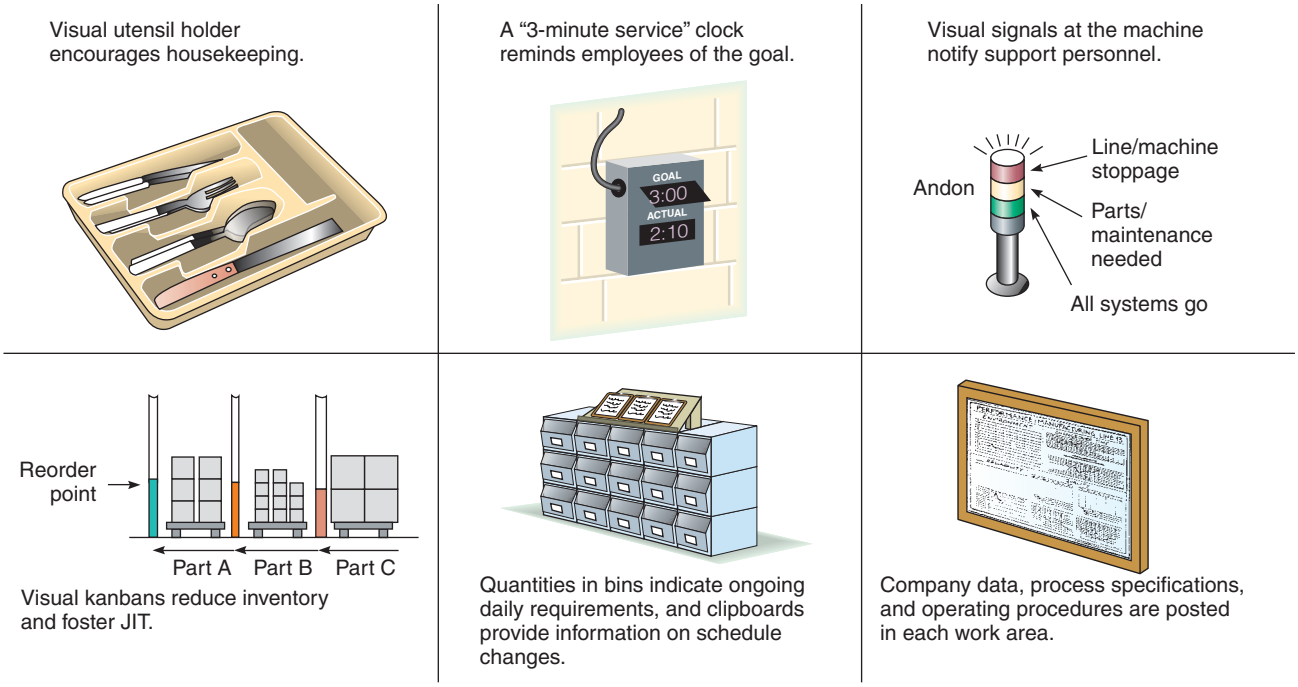


Figure **10.8**

The Visual Workplace

The Visual Workplace

Visual workplace
Uses a variety of visual communication techniques to rapidly communicate information to stakeholders.

A **visual workplace** uses low-cost visual devices to share information quickly and accurately. Well-designed displays and graphs root out confusion and replace difficult-to-understand printouts and paperwork. Because workplace data change quickly and often, operations managers need to share accurate and up-to-date information. Changing customer requirements, specifications, schedules, and other details must be rapidly communicated to those who can make things happen.

The visual workplace can eliminate non-value-added activities by making standards, problems, and abnormalities visual (see Figure 10.8). The visual workplace needs less supervision because employees understand the standard, see the results, and know what to do.

Labor Standards

Labor standards
The amount of time required to perform a job or part of a job.

So far in this chapter, we have discussed labor planning and job design. The third requirement of an effective human resource strategy is the establishment of labor standards. **Labor standards** are the amount of time required to perform a job or part of a job, and they exist, formally or informally, for all jobs. Effective manpower planning is dependent on a knowledge of the labor required.

Modern labor standards originated with the works of Frederick W. Taylor and Frank and Lillian Gilbreth at the beginning of the 20th century. At that time, a large proportion of work was manual, and the resulting labor content of products was high. Little was known about what constituted a fair day's work, so managers initiated studies to improve work methods and understand human effort. These efforts continue to this day. Although labor costs are often less than 10% of sales, labor standards remain important and continue to play a major role in both service and manufacturing organizations. They are often a beginning point for determining staffing requirements. With over half of the manufacturing plants in America using some form of labor incentive system, good labor standards are a requirement.

Effective operations management requires meaningful standards that help a firm determine:

1. Labor content of items produced (the labor cost)
2. Staffing needs (how many people it will take to meet required production)
3. Cost and time estimates prior to production (to assist in a variety of decisions, from cost estimates to make-or-buy decisions)
4. Crew size and work balance (who does what in a group activity or on an assembly line)
5. Expected production (so that both manager and worker know what constitutes a fair day's work)
6. Basis of wage-incentive plans (what provides a reasonable incentive)
7. Efficiency of employees and supervision (a standard is necessary against which to determine efficiency)

LO 10.5 *Identify* four ways of establishing labor standards

Properly set labor standards represent the amount of time that it should take an average employee to perform specific job activities under normal working conditions. Labor standards are set in four ways:

1. **Historical experience**
2. **Time studies**
3. **Predetermined time standards**
4. **Work sampling**

Historical Experience

Labor standards can be estimated based on *historical experience*—that is, how many labor-hours were required to do a task the last time it was performed. Historical standards have the advantage of being relatively easy and inexpensive to obtain. They are usually available from employee time cards or production records. However, they are not objective, and we do not know their accuracy, whether they represent a reasonable or a poor work pace, and whether unusual occurrences are included. Because these variables are unknown, their use is not recommended. Instead, time studies, predetermined time standards, and work sampling are preferred.

Time Studies

Time study
Timing a sample of a worker's performance and using it as a basis for setting a standard time.

The classical stopwatch study, or time study, originally proposed by Frederick W. Taylor in 1881, involves timing a sample of a worker's performance and using it to set a standard. (See the *OM in Action* box, "Efficiency in Retail: Saving Time and Money.") Stopwatch studies are

OM in Action — Efficiency in Retail: Saving Time and Money

It is not only manufacturers that utilize time studies but also retailers and service-sector companies.

From data entry and administration tasks to restocking shelves and serving customers at check-out, time studies play an important part in ensuring that the required resources are used efficiently. Common to all these activities is the need for employees, which can be one of the biggest costs to any business. It is therefore important that the time of employees be used efficiently.

ALDI, a Germany-based discount retailer with more than 7,000 stores worldwide, pays particular attention to its workforce, ensuring that staff are capable of meeting the demands of busy stores. An average store has between 6 and 16 staff members, considerably fewer than most other supermarket stores. This vastly reduced workforce means that the available time of each staff member needs to be carefully assessed and monitored.

ALDI has tried to ensure that processes are as efficient as possible, putting multiple large barcodes on products, and using check-out lines that require customers to place items back in their shopping cart after they scan them and then package the goods away from the check-out, thus saving both time and money.

Tyler Olson/Shutterstock

With complex trading conditions, many retailers are looking to get the most out of their employees. By studying the time taken to perform everyday activities, accurate numbers of employees can be scheduled to work.

Sources: The Guardian (February 3, 2012); aldi.com; and *Harvard Business Review* (October 7, 2005).

the most widely used labor standard method. A trained and experienced person can establish a standard by following these eight steps:

1. Define the task to be studied (after methods analysis has been conducted).
2. Divide the task into precise elements (parts of a task that often take no more than a few seconds).
3. Decide how many times to measure the task (the number of job cycles or samples needed).
4. Time and record elemental times and ratings of performance.

Average observed time
The arithmetic mean of the times for each element measured, adjusted for unusual influence for each element.

5. Compute the average observed (actual) time. The **average observed time** is the arithmetic mean of the times for *each* element measured, adjusted for unusual influence for each element:

$$\text{Average observed time} = \frac{\text{Sum of the times recorded to perform each element}}{\text{Number of observations}} \quad (10\text{-}1)$$

Normal time
The average observed time, adjusted for pace.

6. Determine performance rating (work pace) and then compute the **normal time** for each element.

$$\text{Normal time} = \text{Average observed time} \times \text{Performance rating factor} \quad (10\text{-}2)$$

The performance rating adjusts the average observed time to what a trained worker could expect to accomplish working at a normal pace. For example, a worker should be able to walk 3 miles per hour. He or she should also be able to deal a deck of 52 cards into 4 equal piles in 30 seconds. A performance rating of 1.05 would indicate that the observed worker performs the task slightly *faster* than average. Numerous videos specify work pace on which professionals agree, and benchmarks have been established by the Society for the Advancement of Management. Performance rating, however, is still something of an art.

7. Add the normal times for each element to develop a total normal time for the task.

Standard time
An adjustment to the total normal time; the adjustment provides allowances for personal needs, unavoidable work delays, and fatigue.

8. Compute the **standard time**. This adjustment to the total normal time provides for allowances such as *personal* needs, unavoidable work *delays*, and worker *fatigue*:

$$\text{Standard time} = \frac{\text{Total normal time}}{1 - \text{Allowance factor}} \quad (10\text{-}3)$$

Personal time allowances are often established in the range of 4% to 7% of total time, depending on nearness to restrooms, water fountains, and other facilities. *Delay allowances* are often set as a result of the actual studies of the delay that occurs. *Fatigue allowances* are based on our growing knowledge of human energy expenditure under various physical and environmental conditions. A sample set of personal and fatigue allowances is shown in Table 10.1.

TABLE 10.1 Allowance Factors (in percentage) for Various Classes of Work

1. Constant allowances:
   - (A) Personal allowance 5
   - (B) Basic fatigue allowance 4
2. Variable allowances:
   - (A) Standing allowance 2
   - (B) Abnormal position allowance:
     - (i) Awkward (bending) 2
     - (ii) Very awkward (lying, stretching) 7
   - (C) Use of force or muscular energy in lifting, pulling, pushing

     Weight lifted (pounds):
     - 20 3
     - 40 9
     - 60 17
   - (D) Bad light:
     - (i) Well below recommended 2
     - (ii) Quite inadequate 5
   - (E) Noise level:
     - (i) Intermittent—loud 2
     - (ii) Intermittent—very loud or high pitched 5

Sources: George Kanawaty (ed.), *Introduction to Work Study*, International Labour Office, Geneva, 1992; B. W. Niebel, *Motion and Time Study*, 8th ed. (Homewood, IL: Richard D. Irwin), 1988; and Stephan Konz, *Work Design* (Columbus, Ohio: Grid Publishing, Inc.), 1979.

Example 1 illustrates the computation of standard time.

Example 1

DETERMINING NORMAL AND STANDARD TIME

The time study of a work operation at a Red Lobster restaurant yielded an average observed time of 4.0 minutes. The analyst rated the observed worker at 85%. This means the worker performed at 85% of normal when the study was made. The firm uses a 13% allowance factor. Red Lobster wants to compute the normal time and the standard time for this operation.

APPROACH ▶ The firm needs to apply Equations (10-2) and (10-3).

SOLUTION ▶

$$\text{Average observed time} = 4.0 \text{ min}$$

$$\text{Normal time} = (\text{Average observed time}) \times (\text{Performance rating factor})$$

$$= (4.0)(0.85)$$

$$= 3.4 \text{ min}$$

$$\text{Standard time} = \frac{\text{Normal time}}{1 - \text{Allowance factor}} = \frac{3.4}{1 - 0.13} = \frac{3.4}{0.87} = 3.9 \text{ min}$$

INSIGHT ▶ Because the observed worker was rated at 85% (slower than average), the normal time is less than the worker's 4.0-minute average time.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the observed worker is rated at 115% (faster than average), what are the new normal and standard times? [Answer: 4.6 min, 5.287 min.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 10.13–10.21, 10.33, 10.38 (10.39–10.40 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch10Ex1.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

LO 10.6 *Compute* the normal and standard times in a time study

Example 2 uses a series of actual stopwatch times for each element.

Example 2

USING TIME STUDIES TO COMPUTE STANDARD TIME

Management Science Associates promotes its management development seminars by mailing thousands of individually composed and typed letters to various firms. A time study has been conducted on the task of preparing letters for mailing. On the basis of the following observations, Management Science Associates wants to develop a time standard for this task. The firm's personal, delay, and fatigue allowance factor is 15%.

	OBSERVATIONS (MINUTES)					
JOB ELEMENT	1	2	3	4	5	PERFORMANCE RATING
(A) Compose and type letter	8	10	9	21*	11	120%
(B) Type envelope address	2	3	2	1	3	105%
(C) Stuff, stamp, seal, and sort envelopes	2	1	5*	2	1	110%

APPROACH ▶ Once the data have been collected, the procedure is to:

1. Delete unusual or nonrecurring observations.
2. Compute the *average time* for each element, using Equation (10-1).
3. Compute the *normal time* for each element, using Equation (10-2).
4. Find the total normal time.
5. Compute the *standard time*, using Equation (10-3).

SOLUTION ▶

1. Delete observations such as those marked with an asterisk (*). (These may be due to business interruptions, conferences with the boss, or mistakes of an unusual nature; they are not part of the job element, but may be personal or delay time.)

2. Average time for each job element:

$$\text{Average time for A} = \frac{8 + 10 + 9 + 11}{4} = 9.5 \text{ min}$$

$$\text{Average time for B} = \frac{2 + 3 + 2 + 1 + 3}{5} = 2.2 \text{ min}$$

$$\text{Average time for C} = \frac{2 + 1 + 2 + 1}{4} = 1.5 \text{ min}$$

3. Normal time for each job element:

$$\text{Normal time for A} = (\text{Average observed time}) \times (\text{Performance rating})$$
$$= (9.5)(1.2) = 11.4 \text{ min}$$
$$\text{Normal time for B} = (2.2)(1.05) = 2.31 \text{ min}$$
$$\text{Normal time for C} = (1.5)(1.10) = 1.65 \text{ min}$$

Note: Normal times are computed for each element because the performance rating factor (work pace) may vary for each element, as it did in this case.

4. Add the normal times for each element to find the total normal time (the normal time for the whole job):

$$\text{Total normal time} = 11.40 + 2.31 + 1.65 = 15.36 \text{ min}$$

5. Standard time for the job:

$$\text{Standard time} = \frac{\text{Total normal time}}{1 - \text{Allowance factor}} = \frac{15.36}{1 - 0.15} = 18.07 \text{ min}$$

Thus, 18.07 minutes is the time standard for this job.

INSIGHT ▶ When observed times are not consistent they need to be reviewed. Abnormally short times may be the result of an observational error and are usually discarded. Abnormally long times need to be analyzed to determine if they, too, are an error. However, they may *include* a seldom occurring but legitimate activity for the element (such as a machine adjustment) or may be personal, delay, or fatigue time.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the two observations marked with an asterisk were *not* deleted, what would be the total normal time and the standard time? [Answer: 18.89 min, 22.22 min.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 10.22–10.25, 10.28a,b, 10.29a, 10.30a (10.41–10.43 are available in MyOMLab)

LO 10.7 *Find* the proper sample size for a time study

Time study requires a sampling process; so the question of sampling error in the average observed time naturally arises. In statistics, error varies inversely with sample size. Thus, to determine just how many "cycles" we should time, we must consider the variability of each element in the study.

To determine an adequate sample size, three items must be considered:

1. How accurate we want to be (e.g., is ± 5% of observed time close enough?).
2. The desired level of confidence (e.g., the *z*-value; is 95% adequate or is 99% required?).
3. How much variation exists within the job elements (e.g., if the variation is large, a larger sample will be required).

TABLE 10.2
Common *z*-Values

DESIRED CONFIDENCE (%)	*Z*-VALUE (STANDARD DEVIATION REQUIRED FOR DESIRED LEVEL OF CONFIDENCE)
90.0	1.65
95.0	1.96
95.45	2.00
99.0	2.58
99.73	3.00

The formula for finding the appropriate sample size, given these three variables, is:

$$\text{Required sample size} = n = \left(\frac{zs}{h\bar{x}}\right)^2 \qquad (10\text{-}4)$$

where
h = accuracy level (acceptable error) desired in percent of the job element, expressed as a decimal (5% = .05)
z = number of standard deviations required for desired level of confidence (90% confidence = 1.65; see Table 10.2 or Appendix I for more z-values)
s = standard deviation of the initial sample
$\bar{x}$ = mean of the initial sample
n = required sample size

We demonstrate with Example 3.

Example 3

COMPUTING SAMPLE SIZE

Thomas W. Jones Manufacturing Co. has asked you to check a labor standard prepared by a recently terminated analyst. Your first task is to determine the correct sample size. Your accuracy is to be within ±5% and your confidence level at 95%. The standard deviation of the sample is 1.0 and the mean 3.00.

APPROACH ▶ You apply Equation (10-4).

SOLUTION ▶

$$h = 0.05 \quad \bar{x} = 3.00 \quad s = 1.0$$

$z = 1.96$ (from Table 10.2 or Appendix I)

$$n = \left(\frac{zs}{h\bar{x}}\right)^2$$

$$n = \left(\frac{1.96 \times 1.0}{0.05 \times 3}\right)^2 = 170.74 \approx 171$$

Therefore, you recommend a sample size of 171.

INSIGHT ▶ Notice that as the confidence level required increases, the sample size also increases. Similarly, as the desired accuracy level increases (say, from 5% to 1%), the sample size increases.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ The confidence level for Jones Manufacturing Co. can be set lower, at 90%, while retaining the same ±5% accuracy levels. What sample size is needed now? [Answer: $n = 121$.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 10.26, 10.27, 10.28c, 10.29b, 10.30b (10.44–10.46 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch10Ex3.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

Now let's look at two variations of Example 3.

First, if h, the desired accuracy, is expressed as an absolute amount of error (say, ±1 minute of error is acceptable), then substitute e for $h\bar{x}$, and the appropriate formula is:

$$n = \left(\frac{zs}{e}\right)^2 \tag{10-5}$$

where e is the absolute time amount of acceptable error.

Second, for those cases when s, the standard deviation of the sample, is not provided (which is typically the case outside the classroom), it must be computed. The formula for doing so is given in Equation (10-6):

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma(x_i - \bar{x})^2}{n - 1}} = \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma(\text{Each sample observation} - \bar{x})^2}{\text{Number in sample} - 1}} \tag{10-6}$$

where x_i = value of each observation
$\bar{x}$ = mean of the observations
n = number of observations in the sample

An example of this computation is provided in Solved Problem 10.4 on page 433.

With the development of handheld computers, job elements, time, performance rates, and statistical confidence intervals can be easily created, logged, edited, and managed. Although time studies provide accuracy in setting labor standards (see the *OM in Action* box "UPS: The Tightest Ship in the Shipping Business"), they have two disadvantages. First, they require a trained staff of analysts. Second, these standards cannot be set before tasks are actually performed. This leads us to two alternative work-measurement techniques that we discuss next.

Predetermined Time Standards

In addition to historical experience and time studies, we can set production standards by using predetermined time standards. **Predetermined time standards** divide manual work into small basic elements that already have established times (based on very large samples of workers). To estimate the time for a particular task, the time factors for each basic element of that task are

Predetermined time standards
A division of manual work into small basic elements that have established and widely accepted times.

OM in Action — UPS: The Tightest Ship in the Shipping Business

United Parcel Service (UPS) employs 425,000 people and delivers an average of 16 million packages a day to locations throughout the U.S. and 220 other countries. To achieve its claim of "running the tightest ship in the shipping business," UPS methodically trains its delivery drivers in how to do their jobs as efficiently as possible.

Industrial engineers at UPS have time-studied each driver's route and set standards for each delivery, stop, and pickup. These engineers have recorded every second taken up by stoplights, traffic volume, detours, doorbells, walkways, stairways, and coffee breaks. Even bathroom stops are factored into the standards. All this information is then fed into company computers to provide detailed time standards for every driver, every day.

To meet their objective of 200 deliveries and pickups each day (versus only 80 at FedEx), UPS drivers must follow procedures exactly. As they approach a delivery stop, drivers unbuckle their seat belts, honk their horns, and cut their engines. Ignition keys have been dispensed with and replaced by a digital remote fob that turns off the engine and unlocks the bulkhead door that leads to the packages. In one seamless motion, drivers are required to yank up their emergency brakes and push their gearshifts into first. Then they slide to the ground with their electronic clipboards under their right arm and their packages in their left hand. They walk to the customer's door at the prescribed 3 feet per second and knock first to avoid lost seconds searching for the doorbell. After making the delivery, they do the paperwork on the way back to the truck.

Productivity experts describe UPS as one of the most efficient companies anywhere in applying effective labor standards.

Sources: Wall Street Journal (February 19, 2015), (December 26, 2011), and (September 19, 2011); and G.Niemann, *Big Brown*: *The Untold Story of UPS*, New York: Wiley, 2007.

added together. Developing a comprehensive system of predetermined time standards would be prohibitively expensive for any given firm. Consequently, a number of systems are commercially available. The most common predetermined time standard is *methods time measurement* (MTM), which is a product of the MTM Association.[3]

Therbligs
Basic physical elements of motion.

Time measurement units (TMUs)
Units for very basic micromotions in which 1 TMU = .0006 min, or 100,000 TMUs = 1 hr.

Predetermined time standards are an outgrowth of basic motions called therbligs. The term *therblig* was coined by Frank Gilbreth (*Gilbreth* spelled backwards, with the *t* and *h* reversed). **Therbligs** include such activities as select, grasp, position, assemble, reach, hold, rest, and inspect. These activities are stated in terms of **time measurement units (TMUs)**, which are equal to only .00001 hour, or .0006 minute each. MTM values for various therbligs are specified in very detailed tables. Figure 10.9, for example, provides the set of time standards for the motion GET and PLACE. To use GET and PLACE, one must know what is "gotten," its approximate weight, and where and how far it is supposed to be placed.

GET and PLACE			DISTANCE RANGE IN IN.	<8	>8 <20	>20 <32
WEIGHT	CONDITIONS OF GET	PLACE ACCURACY	MTM CODE	1	2	3
<2 LB	EASY	APPROXIMATE	AA	20	35	50
		LOOSE	AB	30	45	60
		TIGHT	AC	40	55	70
	DIFFICULT	APPROXIMATE	AD	20	45	60
		LOOSE	AE	30	55	70
		TIGHT	AF	40	65	80
	HANDFUL	APPROXIMATE	AG	40	65	80
>2 LB <18 LB		APPROXIMATE	AH	25	45	55
		LOOSE	AJ	40	65	75
		TIGHT	AK	50	75	85
>18 LB <45 LB		APPROXIMATE	AL	90	106	115
		LOOSE	AM	95	120	130
		TIGHT	AN	120	145	160

Figure **10.9**

Sample MTM Table for GET and PLACE Motion

Time values are in TMUs.

Source: Copyrighted by the MTM Association for Standards and Research. No reprint permission without consent from the MTM Association, 16–01 Broadway, Fair Lawn, NJ 07410. Used with permission of MTM Association for Standards & Research.

Example 4 shows a use of predetermined time standards in setting service labor standards.

Example 4

USING PREDETERMINED TIME (MTM ANALYSIS) TO DETERMINE STANDARD TIME

General Hospital wants to set the standard time for lab technicians to pour a tube specimen using MTM.[4]

APPROACH ▶ This is a repetitive task for which the MTM data in Table 10.3 may be used to develop standard times. The sample tube is in a rack and the centrifuge tubes in a nearby box. A technician removes the sample tube from the rack, uncaps it, gets the centrifuge tube, pours, and places both tubes in the rack.

TABLE 10.3 MTM-HC Analysis: Pouring Tube Specimen

ELEMENT DESCRIPTION	ELEMENT	TIME
Get tube from rack	AA2	35
Uncap, place on counter	AA2	35
Get centrifuge tube, place at sample tube	AD2	45
Pour (3 sec)	PT	83
Place tubes in rack (simo)	PC2	40
		Total TMU 238
.0006 × 238 = Total standard minutes = .143 or about 8.6 seconds		

SOLUTION ▶ The first work element involves getting the tube from the rack. The conditions for GETTING the tube and PLACING it in front of the technician are:

- *Weight:* (less than 2 pounds)
- *Conditions of GET:* (easy)
- *Place accuracy:* (approximate)
- *Distance range:* (8 to 20 inches)

Then the MTM element for this activity is AA2 (as seen in Figure 10.9). The rest of Table 10.3 is developed from similar MTM tables.

INSIGHT ▶ Most MTM calculations are computerized, so the user need only key in the appropriate MTM codes, such as AA2 in this example.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ General Hospital decides that the first step in this process really involves a distance range of 4 inches (getting the tube from the rack). The other work elements are unchanged. What is the new standard time? [Answer: .134 minutes, or just over 8 seconds]

RELATED PROBLEM ▶ 10.36

Predetermined time standards have several advantages over direct time studies. First, they may be established in a laboratory environment, where the procedure will not upset actual production activities (which time studies tend to do). Second, because the standard can be set *before* a task is actually performed, it can be used for planning. Third, no performance ratings are necessary. Fourth, unions tend to accept this method as a fair means of setting standards. Finally, predetermined time standards are particularly effective in firms that do substantial numbers of studies of similar tasks. To ensure accurate labor standards, some firms use both time studies and predetermined time standards.

STUDENT TIP
Families of predetermined time standards have been developed for many occupations.

Work Sampling

The fourth method of developing labor or production standards, work sampling, was developed in England by L. Tippet in the 1930s. **Work sampling** estimates the percent of the time that a worker spends on various tasks. Random observations are used to record the activity that a worker is performing. The results are primarily used to determine how employees allocate their time among various activities. Knowledge of this allocation may lead to staffing changes, reassignment of duties, estimates of activity cost, and the setting of delay allowances for labor standards. When work sampling is performed to establish delay allowances, it is sometimes called a *ratio delay study*.

Work sampling
An estimate, via sampling, of the percentage of the time that a worker spends on various tasks.

Samuel Ashfield/Science Source

Using the techniques of this chapter to develop labor standards, operations managers at Orlando's Arnold Palmer Hospital determined that nurses walked an average of 2.7 miles per day. This constitutes up to 30% of the nurse's time, a terrible waste of critical talent. Analysis resulted in a new layout design that has reduced walking distances by 20%.

The work-sampling procedure can be summarized in five steps:

1. Take a preliminary sample to obtain an estimate of the parameter value (e.g., percent of time a worker is busy).
2. Compute the sample size required.
3. Prepare a schedule for observing the worker at appropriate times. The concept of random numbers is used to provide for random observation. For example, let's say we draw the following five random numbers from a table: 07, 12, 22, 25, and 49. These can then be used to create an observation schedule of 9:07 A.M., 9:12, 9:22, 9:25, 9:49.
4. Observe and record worker activities.
5. Determine how workers spend their time (usually as a percentage).

To determine the number of observations required, management must decide on the desired confidence level and accuracy. First, however, the analyst must select a preliminary value for the parameter under study (Step 1 above). The choice is usually based on a small sample of perhaps 50 observations. The following formula then gives the sample size for a desired confidence and accuracy:

$$n = \frac{z^2 p(1-p)}{h^2} \tag{10-7}$$

where n = required sample size
z = number of standard deviations for the desired confidence level ($z = 1$ for 68.27% confidence, $z = 2$ for 95.45% confidence, and $z = 3$ for 99.73% confidence—these values are obtained from Table 10.2 or the normal table in Appendix I)
p = estimated value of sample proportion (of time worker is observed busy or idle)
h = acceptable error level, in percent (as a decimal)

Example 5 shows how to apply this formula.

Example 5

DETERMINING THE NUMBER OF WORK SAMPLE OBSERVATIONS NEEDED

The manager of Michigan County's welfare office, Dana Johnson, estimates that her employees are idle 25% of the time. She would like to take a work sample that is accurate within ±3% and wants to have 95.45% confidence in the results.

APPROACH ▶ Dana applies Equation (10-7) to determine how many observations should be taken.

SOLUTION ▶ Dana computes n:

$$n = \frac{z^2 p(1-p)}{h^2}$$

where n = required sample size
z = confidence level (2 for 95.45% confidence)
p = estimate of idle proportion = 25% = .25
h = acceptable error of 3% = .03

She finds that

$$n = \frac{(2)^2(.25)(.75)}{(.03)^2} = 833 \text{ observations}$$

INSIGHT ▶ Thus, 833 observations should be taken. If the percent of idle time observed is not close to 25% as the study progresses, then the number of observations may have to be recalculated and increased or decreased as appropriate.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the confidence level increases to 99.73%, how does the sample size change? [Answer: n = 1,875.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 10.31, 10.32, 10.35, 10.37

ACTIVE MODEL 10.1 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 10.1 in MyOMLab.

The focus of work sampling is to determine how workers allocate their time among various activities. This is accomplished by establishing the percent of time individuals spend on these activities rather than the exact amount of time spent on specific tasks. The analyst simply records in a random, nonbiased way the occurrence of each activity. Example 6 shows the procedure for evaluating employees at the state welfare office introduced in Example 5.

Example 6

DETERMINING EMPLOYEE TIME ALLOCATION WITH WORK SAMPLING

Dana Johnson, the manager of Michigan County's welfare office, wants to be sure her employees have adequate time to provide prompt, helpful service. She believes that service to welfare clients who phone or walk in without an appointment deteriorates rapidly when employees are busy more than 75% of the time. Consequently, she does not want her employees to be occupied with client service activities more than 75% of the time.

APPROACH ▶ The study requires several things: First, based on the calculations in Example 5, 833 observations are needed. Second, observations are to be made in a random, nonbiased way over a period of 2 weeks to ensure a true sample. Third, the analyst must define the activities that are "work." In this case, work is defined as all the activities necessary to take care of the client (filing, meetings, data entry, discussions with the supervisor, etc.). Fourth, personal time is to be included in the 25% of nonwork time. Fifth, the observations are made in a nonintrusive way so as not to distort the normal work patterns. At the end of the 2 weeks, the 833 observations yield the following results:

NO. OF OBSERVATIONS	ACTIVITY
485	On the phone or meeting with a welfare client
126	Idle
62	Personal time
23	Discussions with supervisor
137	Filing, meeting, and computer data entry
833	

SOLUTION ▶ The analyst concludes that all but 188 observations (126 idle and 62 personal) are work related. Because 22.6% (= 188/833) is less idle time than Dana believes necessary to ensure a high client service level, she needs to find a way to reduce current workloads. This could be done through a reassignment of duties or the hiring of additional personnel.

INSIGHT ▶ Work sampling is particularly helpful when determining staffing needs or the reallocation of duties (see Figure 10.10).

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ The analyst working for Dana recategorizes several observations. There are now 450 "on the phone/meeting with client" observations, 156 "idle," and 67 "personal time" observations. The last two categories saw no changes. Do the conclusions change? [Answer: Yes; now about 27% of employee time is not work related—over the 25% Dana desires.]

RELATED PROBLEM ▶ 10.34

The results of similar studies of salespeople and assembly-line employees are shown in Figure 10.10.

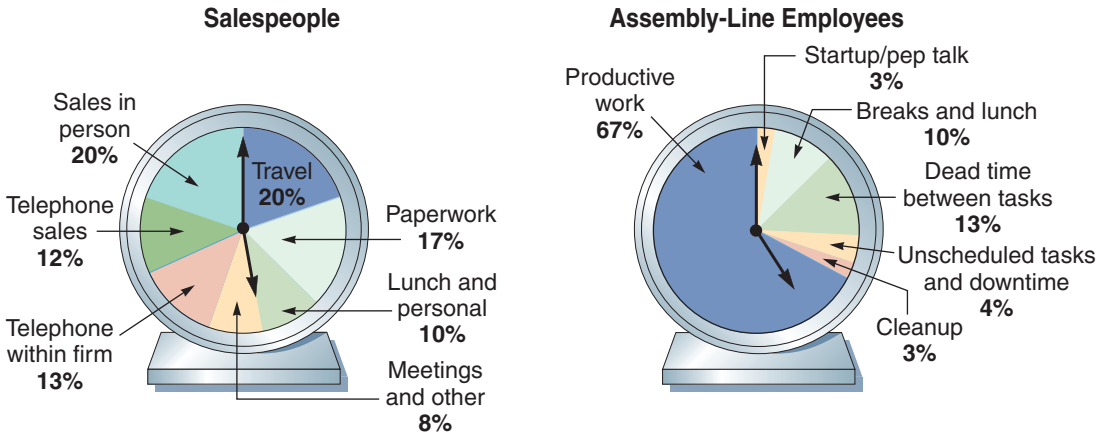
Work sampling offers several advantages over time-study methods. First, because a single observer can observe several workers simultaneously, it is less expensive. Second, observers usually do not require much training, and no timing devices are needed. Third, the study can be temporarily delayed at any time with little impact on the results. Fourth, because work sampling uses instantaneous observations over a long period, the worker has little chance of affecting the study's outcome. Fifth, the procedure is less intrusive and therefore less likely to generate objections.

The disadvantages of work sampling are (1) it does not divide work elements as completely as time studies, (2) it can yield biased or incorrect results if the observer does not follow random routes of travel and observation, and (3) because it is less intrusive, it tends to be less accurate; this is particularly true when job content times are short.

Figure 10.10

Work-Sampling Time Studies

These two work-sampling time studies were done to determine what salespeople do at a wholesale electronics distributor (left) and a composite of several auto assembly-line employees (right).



STUDENT TIP

Mutual trust and commitment cannot be achieved without ethical behavior.

Ethics

Ethics in the workplace presents some interesting challenges. As we have suggested in this chapter, many constraints influence job design. The issues of fairness, equity, and ethics are pervasive. Whether the issue is equal opportunity or safe working conditions, an operations manager is often the one responsible. Managers do have some guidelines. By knowing the law, working with OSHA,[5] MSDS,[6] state agencies, unions, trade associations, insurers, and employees, managers can often determine the parameters of their decisions. Human resource and legal departments are also available for help and guidance through the labyrinth of laws and regulations.

Management's role is to educate employees; specify the necessary equipment, work rules, and work environment; and then enforce those requirements, even when employees think it is not necessary to wear safety equipment. We began this chapter with a discussion of mutual trust and commitment, and that is the environment that managers should foster. Ethical management requires no less.

Summary

Outstanding firms know that their human resource strategy can yield a competitive advantage. Often a large percentage of employees and a large part of labor costs are under the direction of OM. Consequently, an operations manager usually has a major role to play in achieving human resource objectives. A requirement is to build an environment with mutual respect and commitment and a reasonable quality of work life. Successful organizations have designed jobs that use both the mental and physical capabilities of their employees. Regardless of the strategy chosen, the skill with which a firm manages its human resources ultimately determines its success.

Labor standards are required for an efficient operations system. They are needed for production planning, labor planning, costing, and evaluating performance. They are used throughout industry—from the factory to finance, sales, and office. They can also be used as a basis for incentive systems. Standards may be established via historical data, time studies, predetermined time standards, and work sampling.

Key Terms

Labor planning (p. 449)
Job design (p. 450)
Labor specialization (or job specialization) (p. 450)
Job enlargement (p. 451)
Job rotation (p. 451)
Job enrichment (p. 451)
Employee empowerment (p. 451)
Self-directed team (p. 452)
Ergonomics (p. 453)
Methods analysis (p. 455)
Flow diagram (p. 456)
Process chart (p. 456)
Activity chart (p. 456)
Operations chart (p. 456)
Visual workplace (p. 458)
Labor standards (p. 458)
Time study (p. 459)
Average observed time (p. 460)
Normal time (p. 460)
Standard time (p. 460)
Predetermined time standards (p. 463)
Therbligs (p. 464)
Time measurement units (TMUs) (p. 464)
Work sampling (p. 465)

Ethical Dilemma

Johnstown Foundry, Inc., with several major plants, is one of the largest makers of cast-iron water and sewer pipes in the U.S. In one of the nation's most dangerous industries, Johnstown is perhaps one of the most unsafe, with four times the injury rate of its six competitors combined. Its worker death rate is six times the industry average. In a recent 7-year period, Johnstown's plants were also found to be in violation of pollution and emission limits 450 times.

Workers who protest dangerous work conditions claim they are "bull's-eyed"—marked for termination. Supervisors have bullied injured workers and intimidated union leaders. Line workers who fail to make daily quotas get disciplinary actions. Managers have put up safety signs *after* a worker was injured to make it appear that the worker ignored posted policies. They doctor safety records and alter machines to cover up hazards. When the government investigated one worker's death recently, inspectors found the Johnstown policy "was not to correct anything until OSHA found it."

Johnstown plants have also been repeatedly fined for failing to stop production to repair broken pollution controls. Three plants have been designated "high-priority" violators by the EPA. Inside the plants, workers have repeatedly complained of blurred vision, severe headaches, and respiratory problems after being exposed, without training or protection, to chemicals used in the production process. Near one Pennsylvania plant, school crossing guards have had to wear gas masks; that location alone has averaged over a violation every month for 7 years. Johnstown's "standard procedure," according to a former plant manager, is to illegally dump industrial contaminants into local rivers and creeks. Workers wait for night or heavy rainstorms before flushing thousands of gallons from their sump pumps.

Discussion Questions

1. How would you define a good quality of work life?
2. What are some of the worst jobs you know about? Why are they bad jobs? Why do people want these jobs?
3. If you were redesigning the jobs described in Question 2, what changes would you make? Are your changes realistic? Would they improve productivity (not just *production* but *productivity*)?
4. Can you think of any jobs that push the man–machine interface to the limits of human capabilities?
5. How can labour specialisation reduce the labour cost of operations?
6. What are the differences among job enrichment, job enlargement, job rotation, job specialization, and employee empowerment?
7. Define ergonomics. Discuss the role of ergonomics in job design.
8. Explain the role of flow diagrams, process charts, activity charts and operations charts in understanding and analysing operations.
9. What are the main purposes of setting labour standards?
10. What are some of the uses to which labor standards are put?
11. Identify to which category of "personal", "fatigue", or "delay" the following job elements belong to
    a) The hair-dresser takes the phone to confirm a booking, in the middle of a client haircut.
    b) The doctor takes a cup of coffee and a quick rest in a short time between visiting two patients.
    c) In a long-distance drive, the coach driver stops in a service area every two to three hours to have some food.
12. How do you classify the time for a drill press operator who is idle for a few minutes at the beginning of every job waiting for the setup person to complete the setup? Some of the setup time is used in going for stock, but the operator typically returns with stock before the setup person is finished with the setup.
13. How do you classify the time for a machine operator who, between every job and sometimes in the middle of jobs, turns off the machine and goes for stock?
14. The operator drops a part, which you pick up and hand to him. Does this make any difference in a time study? If so, how?

Solved Problems

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

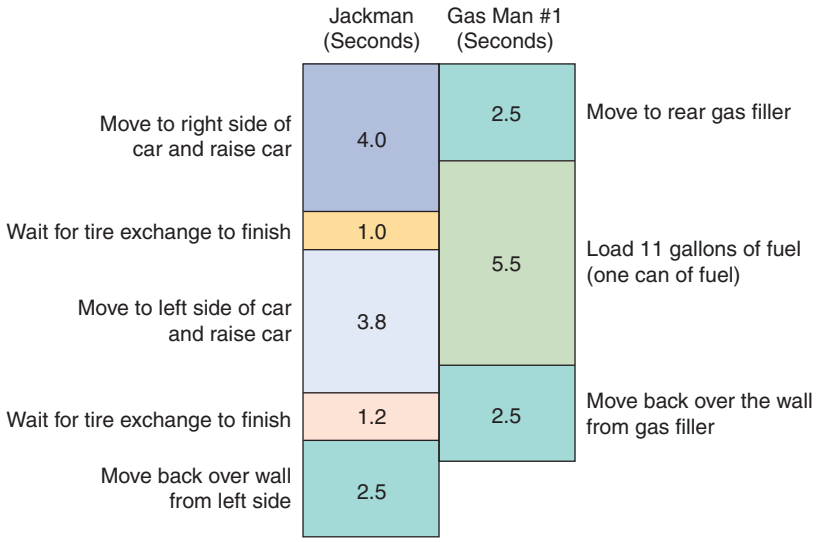
SOLVED PROBLEM 10.1

As pit crew manager for Rusty Wallace's NASCAR team (see the *Global Company Profile* that opens this chapter), you would like to evaluate how your "Jackman" (JM) and "Gas Man #1" (GM #1) are utilized. Recent stopwatch studies have verified the following times:

PIT CREW	ACTIVITY	TIME (SECONDS)
JM	Move to right side of car and raise car	4.0
GM #1	Move to rear gas filler	2.5
JM	Wait for tire	1.0
JM	Move to left side of car and raise car	3.8
GM #1	Load fuel (per gallon)	0.5
JM	Wait for tire	1.2
JM	Move back over wall from left side	2.5
GM #1	Move back over the wall from gas filler	2.5

Use an activity chart similar to the one in Figure 10.6 as an aid.

SOLUTION



SOLVED PROBLEM 10.2

A work operation consisting of three elements has been subjected to a stopwatch time study. The recorded observations are shown in the following table. By union contract, the allowance time for the operation is personal time 5%, delay 5%, and fatigue 10%. Determine the standard time for the work operation.

JOB ELEMENT	OBSERVATIONS (MINUTES)						PERFORMANCE RATING (%)
	1	2	3	4	5	6	
A	.1	.3	.2	.9	.2	.1	90
B	.8	.6	.8	.5	3.2	.7	110
C	.5	.5	.4	.5	.6	.5	80

SOLUTION

First, delete the two observations that appear to be very unusual (.9 minute for job element A and 3.2 minutes for job element B). Then:

$$\text{A's average observed time} = \frac{.1 + .3 + .2 + .2 + .1}{5} = 0.18 \text{ min}$$

$$\text{B's average observed time} = \frac{.8 + .6 + .8 + .5 + .7}{5} = 0.68 \text{ min}$$

$$\text{C's average observed time} = \frac{.5 + .5 + .4 + .5 + .6 + .5}{6} = 0.50 \text{ min}$$

$$\text{A's normal time} = (0.18)(0.90) = 0.16 \text{ min}$$

$$\text{B's normal time} = (0.68)(1.10) = 0.75 \text{ min}$$

$$\text{C's normal time} = (0.50)(0.80) = 0.40 \text{ min}$$

$$\text{Normal time for job} = 0.16 + 0.75 + 0.40 = 1.31 \text{ min}$$

$$\text{Note, the total allowance factor} = 0.05 + 0.05 + 0.10 = 0.20$$

$$\text{Then: Standard time} = \frac{1.31}{1 - 0.20} = 1.64 \text{ min}$$

SOLVED PROBLEM 10.3

The preliminary work sample of an operation indicates the following:

Number of times operator working	60
Number of times operator idle	40
Total number of preliminary observations	100

What is the required sample size for a 99.73% confidence level with ±4% precision?

SOLUTION

$z = 3$ for 99.73 confidence; $p = \frac{60}{100} = 0.6$; $h = 0.04$

So:

$$n = \frac{z^2 p(1 - p)}{h^2} = \frac{(3)^2(0.6)(0.4)}{(0.04)^2} = 1{,}350 \text{ sample size}$$

SOLVED PROBLEM 10.4

Amor Manufacturing Co. of Geneva, Switzerland, has just observed a job in its laboratory in anticipation of releasing the job to the factory for production. The firm wants rather good accuracy for costing and labor forecasting. Specifically, it wants to provide a 99% confidence level and a cycle time that is within 3% of the true value. How many observations should it make? The data collected so far are as follows:

OBSERVATION	TIME
1	1.7
2	1.6
3	1.4
4	1.4
5	1.4

SOLUTION

First, solve for the mean, $\bar{x}$, and the sample standard deviation, s:

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma(\text{Each sample observation} - \bar{x})^2}{\text{Number in sample} - 1}}$$

OBSERVATION	x_i	$\bar{x}$	$x_i - \bar{x}$	$(x_i - \bar{x})^2$
1	1.7	1.5	.2	0.04
2	1.6	1.5	.1	0.01
3	1.4	1.5	−.1	0.01
4	1.4	1.5	−.1	0.01
5	1.4	1.5	−.1	0.01
	$\bar{x} = 1.5$			$0.08 = \Sigma(x_i - \bar{x})^2$

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{0.08}{n-1}} = \sqrt{\frac{0.08}{4}} = 0.141$$

Then, solve for $n = \left(\frac{zs}{h\bar{x}}\right)^2 = \left[\frac{(2.58)(0.141)}{(0.03)(1.5)}\right]^2 = 65.3$

where $\bar{x} = 1.5$
$s = 0.141$
$z = 2.58$ (from Table 10.2)
$h = 0.03$

Therefore, you round up to 66 observations.

SOLVED PROBLEM 10.5

At Maggard Micro Manufacturing, Inc., workers press semiconductors into predrilled slots on printed circuit boards. The elemental motions for normal time used by the company are as follows:

Reach 6 inches for semiconductors	40 TMU
Grasp the semiconductor	10 TMU
Move semiconductor to printed circuit board	30 TMU
Position semiconductor	35 TMU
Press semiconductor into slots	65 TMU
Move board aside	20 TMU

(Each time measurement unit is equal to .0006 min.) Determine the normal time for this operation in minutes and in seconds.

SOLUTION

Add the time measurement units:

$$40 + 10 + 30 + 35 + 65 + 20 = 200$$
$$\text{Time in minutes} = (200)(.0006 \text{ min.}) = 0.12 \text{ min}$$
$$\text{Time in seconds} = (0.12)(60 \text{ sec}) = 7.2 \text{ sec}$$

SOLVED PROBLEM 10.6

To obtain the estimate of time a worker is busy for a work sampling study, a manager divides a typical workday into 480 minutes. Using a random-number table to decide what time to go to an area to sample work occurrences, the manager records observations on a tally sheet like the following:

STATUS	TALLY
Productively working	𝍸 𝍸 𝍸 |
Idle	||||

SOLUTION

In this case, the supervisor made 20 observations and found that employees were working 80% of the time. So, out of 480 minutes in an office workday, 20%, or 96 minutes, was idle time, and 384 minutes were productive. Note that this procedure describes that a worker is busy, not necessarily doing what he or she *should* be doing.

Problems

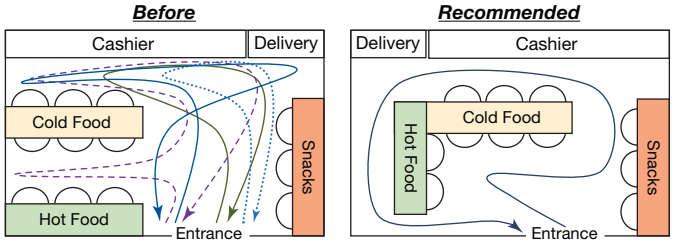
Note: PX means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel.

Problem 10.1 relates to Job Design

• **10.1** Rate a job you have had using Hackman and Oldham's core job characteristics (see page 413) on a scale from 1 to 10. What is your total score? What about the job could have been changed to make you give it a higher score?

Problems 10.2–10.12 relate to Methods Analysis

• **10.2** Gomez y Guzman, a famous Mexican chain restaurant in Australia, has studied the movement of the customers in its restaurant and found it not very well organised, and recommended a new layout, which made movements easier. Flow diagrams below show the customer movements in both layouts. Explain the improvements for the restaurant and customers.



• **10.3** Draw a process chart for receiving an order for a coffee, making the coffee and hand it in to the customer in a café shop.

• • • **10.4** Draw an activity chart (a crew chart similar to Figure 10.6) for a concert (for example, Tim McGraw, Linkin Park, Lil' Wayne, or Bruce Springsteen) and determine how to put together the concert so the star has reasonable breaks. For instance, at what point is there an instrumental number, a visual effect, a duet, a dance moment, that allows the star to pause and

rest physically or at least rest his or her voice? Do other members of the show have moments of pause or rest?

•• **10.5** To make sandwiches in a Subway fast-food store, the staff should make use of their both hands very quickly and efficiently. Make an Operation Chart which reflect the activities for making a sandwich.

• **10.6** Develop a process chart for installing a new memory board in your personal computer.

•• **10.7** Using the data in Solved Problem 10.1, prepare an activity chart like the one in the Solved Problem, but a second Gas Man also delivers 11 gallons.

•• **10.8** Prepare a process chart for the Jackman in Solved Problem 10.1.

•• **10.9** Draw a process chart for activities of a receptionist for the check-in process.

••• **10.10** Argos, a UK leading retailer, has categorised the delivery of it products into two groups of small and large products. The large product deliveries are also named two-man delivery, which need to persons to handle the product. These products are usually delivered by big lorries. The driver parks the lorry in a proper place, near the customer home. Then the driver and the assistant (the second delivery person) get off the vehicle.Theygo to the back of the lorry. The driver opens the lorry's back door, and the second person takes the control unit, opens the tail lift, lower it, and tilt down the tail. Both men then go on the tail and lift it up. They go inside the lorry then, and put the item on the trolley and move it on the tail. They tilt the tail down. One person move the trolley toward the home, while the second person make sure the trolley's path toward the home's gateway/door is clear.

Draw and activity chart for this delivery operation.

••• **10.11** Encouraging people to separate their household recyclable and non-recyclable waste, and collection of the bins, allocated to different types of recyclable waste, have been big task for many local authorities. In the collection process, the bin lorry should collect multiple types of bins from each home. This makes the whole process very lengthy. To avoid blocking the roads, there are two people collecting the bins. One is responsible for the bins dedicated to paper and plastic items, and one is responsible for the metal and clothing items bins. They need to load each bin to the dedicated areas in the right (paper and plastic) and left (metal and clothing) sides of the lorry. The driver of the lorry should monitor the progress of the two men and driver the lorry ahead, and try to give was to other cars using the same road. Draw an activity chart which shows details of this operation.

•••• **10.12** Design a process chart for printing a short document on a laser printer at an office. Unknown to you, the printer in the hallway is out of paper. The paper is located in a supply room at the other end of the hall. You wish to make five stapled copies of the document once it is printed. The copier, located next to the printer, has a sorter but no stapler. How could you make the task more efficient with the existing equipment?

Problems 10.13–10.46 relate to Labor Standards

• **10.13** If Charlene Brewster has times of 8.4, 8.6, 8.3, 8.5, 8.7, and 8.5 and a performance rating of 110%, what is the normal time for this operation? Is she faster or slower than normal? PX

• **10.14** If Charlene, the worker in Problem 10.13, has a performance rating of 90%, what is the normal time for the operation? Is she faster or slower than normal? PX

•• **10.15** Refer to Problem 10.13.

a) If the allowance factor is 15%, what is the standard time for this operation?

b) If the allowance factor is 18% and the performance rating is now 90%, what is the standard time for this operation? PX

•• **10.16** Claudine Soosay recorded the following times assembling a watch. Determine (a) the average time, (b) the normal time, and (c) the standard time taken by her, using a performance rating of 95% and a personal allowance of 8%.

Assembly Times Recorded

OBSERVATION NO.	TIME (MINUTES)	OBSERVATION NO.	TIME (MINUTES)
1	0.11	9	0.12
2	0.10	10	0.09
3	0.11	11	0.12
4	0.10	12	0.11
5	0.14	13	0.10
6	0.10	14	0.12
7	0.10	15	0.14
8	0.09	16	0.09

• **10.17** A Northeast Airlines gate agent, Chip Gilliken, gives out seat assignments to ticketed passengers. He takes an average of 50 seconds per passenger and is rated 110% in performance. How long should a *typical* agent be expected to take to make seat assignments? PX

• **10.18** After being observed many times, Beverly Demarr, a hospital lab analyst, had an average observed time for blood tests of 12 minutes. Beverly's performance rating is 105%. The hospital has a personal, fatigue, and delay allowance of 16%.

a) Find the normal time for this process.

b) Find the standard time for this blood test. PX

• **10.19** Jell Lee Beans is famous for its boxed candies, which are sold primarily to businesses. One operator had the following observed times for gift wrapping in minutes: 2.2, 2.6, 2.3, 2.5, 2.4. The operator has a performance rating of 105% and an allowance factor of 10%. What is the standard time for gift wrapping? PX

• **10.20** After training, Mary Fernandez, a computer technician, had an average observed time for memory-chip tests of 12 seconds. Mary's performance rating is 100%. The firm has a personal fatigue and delay allowance of 15%.

a) Find the normal time for this process.

b) Find the standard time for this process. PX

•• **10.21** Susan Cottenden clocked the observed time for welding a part onto truck doors at 5.3 minutes. The performance rating of the worker timed was estimated at 105%. Find the normal time for this operation.

Note: According to the local union contract, each welder is allowed 3 minutes of personal time per hour and 2 minutes of fatigue time per hour. Further, there should be an average delay allowance of 1 minute per hour. Compute the allowance factor and then find the standard time for the welding activity. PX

•• **10.22** A hotel housekeeper, Alison Harvey, was observed five times on each of four task elements, as shown in the following table. On the basis of these observations, find the standard time for the process. Assume a 10% allowance factor.

ELEMENT	PERFORMANCE RATING (%)	OBSERVATIONS (MINUTES PER CYCLE)				
		1	2	3	4	5
Check minibar	100	1.5	1.6	1.4	1.5	1.5
Make one bed	90	2.3	2.5	2.1	2.2	2.4

ELEMENT	PERFORMANCE RATING (%)	OBSERVATIONS (MINUTES PER CYCLE)				
		1	2	3	4	5
Vacuum floor	120	1.7	1.9	1.9	1.4	1.6
Clean bath	100	3.5	3.6	3.6	3.6	3.2

Comstock Royalty Free Division

•• **10.23** Virginia College promotes a wide variety of executive-training courses for firms in the Arlington, Virginia, region. Director Wendy Tate believes that individually written letters add a personal touch to marketing. To prepare letters for mailing, she conducts a time study of her secretaries. On the basis of the observations shown in the following table, she wishes to develop a time standard for the whole job.

The college uses a total allowance factor of 12%. Tate decides to delete all unusual observations from the time study. What is the standard time?

ELEMENT	OBSERVATIONS (MINUTES)						PERFORMANCE RATING (%)
	1	2	3	4	5	6	
Typing letter	2.5	3.5	2.8	2.1	2.6	3.3	85
Typing envelope	.8	.8	.6	.8	3.1[a]	.7	100
Stuffing envelope	.4	.5	1.9[a]	.3	.6	.5	95
Sealing, sorting	1.0	2.9[b]	.9	1.0	4.4[b]	.9	125

[a]Disregard—secretary stopped to answer the phone.
[b]Disregard—interruption by supervisor. PX

• **10.24** The results of a time study to perform a quality control test are shown in the following table. On the basis of these observations, determine the normal and standard time for the test, assuming a 23% allowance factor. PX

TASK ELEMENT	PERFORMANCE RATING (%)	OBSERVATIONS (MINUTES)				
		1	2	3	4	5
1	97	1.5	1.8	2.0	1.7	1.5
2	105	.6	.4	.7	3.7[a]	.5
3	86	.5	.4	.6	.4	.4
4	90	.6	.8	.7	.6	.7

[a]Disregard—employee is smoking a cigarette (included in personal time).

•• **10.25** Peter Rourke, a loan processor at Wentworth Bank, has been timed performing four work elements, with the results shown in the following table. The allowances for tasks such as this are personal, 7%; fatigue, 10%; and delay, 3%.

TASK ELEMENT	PERFORMANCE RATING (%)	OBSERVATIONS (MINUTES)				
		1	2	3	4	5
1	110	.5	.4	.6	.4	.4
2	95	.6	.8	.7	.6	.7
3	90	.6	.4	.7	.5	.5
4	85	1.5	1.8	2.0	1.7	1.5

a) What is the normal time?
b) What is the standard time? PX

•• **10.26** Each year, Lord & Taylor, Ltd., sets up a gift-wrapping station to assist its customers with holiday shopping. Preliminary observations of one worker at the station produced the following sample time (in minutes per package): 3.5, 3.2, 4.1, 3.6, 3.9. Based on this small sample, what number of observations would be necessary to determine the true cycle time with a 95% confidence level and an accuracy of ±5%? PX

•• **10.27** A time study of a factory worker has revealed an average observed time of 3.20 minutes, with a standard deviation of 1.28 minutes. These figures were based on a sample of 45 observations. Is this sample adequate in size for the firm to be 99% confident that the standard time is within ±5% of the true value? If not, what should be the proper number of observations? PX

•• **10.28** Rapid expansion of new hub airports such as Istanbul and Dubai needs the passenger services including the process of check-in and baggage drop-off to be monitored closed in terms of performance and time. A recent time-study in an airport shows the following times for each element of the check-in process (before checking the luggage), handled by the check-in personnel:

ELEMENT	OBSERVATION (SECONDS)										PERFORMANCE (RATING %)
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	
Receive the ticket(s) and passport(s)	5	12	9	18	23	3	7	10	11	12	100
Check with the system	21	19	15	18	18	14	20	19	25	22	90
Allocate the seats	9	12	25	13	15	12	20	10	11	17	80
Security checks (questions)	10	11	11	12	10	13	17	9	11	12	110
Issue the boarding pass	13	15	23	12	9	11	13	12	15	14	100

(a) Calculate the normal time for each work element.
(b) Calculate the standard time, where the allowance is 17%

•• **10.29** Flint Group produces a wide range of printing products (i.e. inks and other chemicals). Although the whole production process is largely diversified, the packaging stage is standardised by the following tasks: labelling the bag, loading, cleaning, and paperwork. A recent time study shows the following observations:
(a) Calculate the standard time, where the allowance is 20%
(b) How many observations are needed for a 95% confidence levelwithin 5% accuracy? (Calculate the sample size of eachelement.)

ELEMENT	OBSERVATION (SECONDS)					PERFORMANCE RATING (%)
	1	2	3	4	5	
Labelling the bag	95	123	132	99	106	90
Loading	226	198	215	210	190	100
Cleaning	150	143	170	165	139	110
Paperwork	120	135	146	132	118	90

••**10.30** The Danube river cruise journey has been very popular in recent years. The increasing number of passenger needs more efficient catering system inside the cruise too. A recent time study show detailed timing of serving drink at the bar:

TASKS	OBSERVATION (SECONDS) 1	2	3	4	5	PERFORMANCE RATING (%)
Take the order	15	20	24	45*	21	100
Pick the right glass	5	7	9	6	7	100
Add the drink (and ice if needed)	14	18	19	21	19	110
Pass the drink to the customer	8	9	54*	11	10	80
Handle the payment	19	42	20	13	28	90

* Extra chat with the cusomter

10% personal-time factorand a 10% fatigue factor are allowed. To calculate the standard times, the unusual observations should be removed.

a) What is the standard time for the tasks?
b) How many observations are needed to assure a 95% confidence level, +/−5% error is acceptable? PX

••**10.31** Bank manager Art Hill wants to determine the percent of time that tellers are working and idle. He decides to use work sampling, and his initial estimate is that the tellers are idle 15% of the time. How many observations should Hill take to be 95.45% confident that the results will not be more than ±4% from the true result? PX

••**10.32** Supervisor Kenneth Peterson wants to determine the percent of time a machine in his area is idle. He decides to use work sampling, and his initial estimate is that the machine is idle 20% of the time. How many observations should Peterson take to be 98% confident that the results will be less than 5% from the true results?

•••**10.33** A typical engineer of a mobile phone insurance company should fix 12 mobiles per day (based on the current demand level). If s/he works 9 hours a day, how much time s/he has got to fix each mobile.

If the engineers are given 20% allowance (personal, fatigue and delay), what is the available normal time for fixing each mobile phone.

•••**10.34** A random work sample of operators taken over a 160-hour work month at Tele-Marketing, Inc., has produced the following results. What is the percentage of time spent working?

On phone with customer	858
Idle time	220
Personal time	85

••**10.35** A total of 300 observations of Bob Ramos, an assembly-line worker, were made over a 40-hour workweek. The sample also showed that Bob was busy working (assembling the parts) during 250 observations.

a) Find the percentage of time Bob was working.
b) If you want a confidence level of 95%, and if ±3% is an acceptable error, what size should the sample be?
c) Was the sample size adequate? PX

•**10.36** Sharpening your pencil is an operation that may be divided into eight small elemental motions. In MTM terms, each element may be assigned a certain number of TMUs:

Reach 4 inches for the pencil	6 TMU
Grasp the pencil	2 TMU
Move the pencil 6 inches	10 TMU
Position the pencil	20 TMU
Insert the pencil into the sharpener	4 TMU
Sharpen the pencil	120 TMU
Disengage the pencil	10 TMU
Move the pencil 6 inches	10 TMU

What is the total normal time for sharpening one pencil? Convert your answer into minutes and seconds.

••**10.37** Supervisor Tom Choi at Tempe Equipment Company is concerned that material is not arriving as promptly as needed at work cells. A new kanban system has been installed, but there seems to be some delay in getting the material moved to the work cells so that the job can begin promptly. Choi is interested in determining how much delay there is on the part of his highly paid machinists. Ideally, the delay would be close to zero. He has asked his assistant to determine the delay factor among his 10 work cells. The assistant collects the data on a random basis over the next 2 weeks and determines that of the 1,200 observations, 105 were made while the operators were waiting for materials. Use a 95% confidence level and a ±3% acceptable error. What report does he give to Choi? PX

••**10.38** Green Active sport centre has 30 grass tennis courts. The courts need to be watered every day, and the grasses should be cut regularly (usually once a week). If a court is planned for a match, then it should be prepared a day before (in terms lining, net, rest benches and so on).

Court maintenance team works 8 hours a day. They start their work at 8 am and finish at 4 pm. They have 45 minutes for lunch, 15 minute coffee break in the morning, 15 minute coffee break in the afternoon. It also takes them 15 minutes to wear the work clothes in the morning and 15 minutes to take off and clean them in the afternoon. Another 45 minutes (in average) a day is usually spent to move between different tennis courts.

Watering the court takes one hour of one person of the maintenance team. Cutting the grasses needs one person for one hour, and preparation also need one member of the maintenance team for one hour.

a) How much actual time each member of the maintenance team has for watering, grass cutting and preparing the tennis courts.
b) If five of the courts should be ready for a tournament tomorrow, and 12 of them need grass cutting, how much time does Green Active sport centre need today, for its regular maintenance of the courts as well as making some of them ready for tomorrow?
c) According to the workload, calculated in part (b), how many people does the maintenance team need for today?
d) If all the courts were supposed to be ready for the tournament tomorrow, how many people would be needed by the maintenance team?

Last night, the hotel was full (all 400 rooms were occupied). People are checking out of 200 rooms. Their rooms will need to be thoroughly cleaned. The other 200 rooms will need to be refreshed.

a) How many minutes per day of actual room cleaning can each housekeeper do?
b) How many minutes of room cleaning will the Miami Central Hotel need today?
c) How many housekeepers will be needed to clean the hotel today?
d) If *all* the guests checked out this morning, how many housekeepers would be needed to clean the 400 rooms?

Additional problems **10.39–10.46** *are available in* MyOMLab.

CASE STUDIES

Jackson Manufacturing Company

Kathleen McFadden, vice president of operations at Jackson Manufacturing Company, has just received a request for quote (RFQ) from DeKalb Electric Supply for 400 units per week of a motor armature. The components are standard and either easy to work into the existing production schedule or readily available from established suppliers on a JIT basis. But there is some difference in assembly. Ms. McFadden has identified eight tasks that Jackson must perform to assemble the armature. Seven of these tasks are very similar to ones performed by Jackson in the past; therefore, the average time and resulting labor standard of those tasks is known.

The eighth task, an *overload* test, requires performing a task that is very different from any performed previously, however. Kathleen has asked you to conduct a time study on the task to determine the standard time. Then an estimate can be made of the cost to assemble the armature. This information, combined with other cost data, will allow the firm to put together the information needed for the RFQ.

To determine a standard time for the task, an employee from an existing assembly station was trained in the new assembly process. Once proficient, the employee was then asked to perform the task 17 times so a standard could be determined. The actual times observed (in minutes) were as follows:

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
2.05	1.92	2.01	1.89	1.77	1.80	1.86	1.83	1.93	1.96	1.95	2.05	1.79	1.82	1.85	1.85	1.99

The worker had a 115% performance rating. The task can be performed in a sitting position at a well-designed ergonomic work-station in an air-conditioned facility. Although the armature itself weighs 10.5 pounds, there is a carrier that holds it so that the operator need only rotate the armature. But the detail work remains high; therefore, the fatigue allowance should be 8%. The company has an established personal allowance of 6%. Delay should be very low. Previous studies of delay in this department average 2%. This standard is to use the same figure.

The workday is 7.5 hours, but operators are paid for 8 hours at an average of $12.50 per hour.

Discussion Questions

In your report to Ms. McFadden, you realize you will want to address several factors:

1. How big should the sample be for a statistically accurate standard (at, say, the 99.73% confidence level and accuracy of ±5%)?
2. Is the sample size adequate?
3. How many units should be produced at this workstation per day?
4. What is the cost per unit for this task in direct labor cost?

Source: Professor Hank Maddux, Sam Houston State University

The "People" Focus: Human Resources at Alaska Airlines

Video Case

With thousands of employees spread across nearly 100 locations in the United States, Mexico, and Canada, building a committed and cohesive workforce is a challenge. Yet Alaska Airlines is making it work. The company's "people" focus states:

> *While airplanes and technology enable us to do what we do, we recognize this is fundamentally a people business, and our future depends on how we work together to win in this extremely competitive environment. As we grow, we want to strengthen our small company feel . . . We will succeed where others fail because of our pride and passion, and because of the way we treat our customers, our suppliers and partners, and each other.*

Managerial excellence requires a committed workforce. Alaska Airlines' pledge of respect for people is one of the key elements of a world-class operation.

Effective organizations require talented, committed, and trained personnel. Alaska Airlines conducts comprehensive training at all levels. Its "Flight Path" leadership training for all 10,000 employees is now being followed by "Gear Up" training for 800 front-line managers. In addition, training programs have been developed for Lean and Six Sigma as well as for the unique requirements for pilots, flight attendants, baggage, and ramp personnel. Because the company only hires pilots into first officer positions—the right seat in the cockpit, it offers a program called the "Fourth Stripe" to train for promotion into the captain's seat on the left side, along with all the additional responsibility that entails (see exterior and interior photos of one of Alaska Airlines' flight simulators on the opening page of this chapter).

Customer service agents receive specific training on the company's "Empowerment Toolkit." Like the Ritz-Carlton's famous customer service philosophy, agents have the option of awarding customers hotel and meal vouchers or frequent flier miles when the customer has experienced a service problem.

Because many managers are cross-trained in operational duties outside the scope of their daily positions, they have the ability to pitch in to ensure that customer-oriented processes go smoothly. Even John Ladner, Director of Seattle Airport Operations, who is a fully licensed pilot, has left his desk to cover a flight at the last minute for a sick colleague.

Along with providing development and training at all levels, managers recognize that inherent personal traits can make a huge difference. For example, when flight attendants are hired, the ones who are still engaged, smiling, and fresh at the end of a very long interview day are the ones Alaska wants on the team. Why? The job requires these behaviors and attitudes to fit with the Alaska Airlines team—and smiling and friendly flight attendants are particularly important at the end of a long flight.

Visual workplace tools also complement and close the loop that matches training to performance. Alaska Airlines makes

full use of color-coded graphs and charts to report performance against key metrics to employees. Twenty top managers gather weekly in an operations leadership meeting, run by Executive VP of Operations, Ben Minicucci, to review activity consolidated into visual summaries. Key metrics are color-coded and posted prominently in every work area.

Alaska's training approach results in empowered employees who are willing to assume added responsibility and accept the unknowns that come with that added responsibility.

Discussion Questions*

1. Summarize Alaska Airlines' human resources focus in your own words.
2. Why is employee empowerment useful to companies such as Alaska Airlines?
3. What tools discussed in the chapter might be employed to enhance the company's training and performance efforts? Why?

*Before answering these questions, you may wish to view the video that accompanies this case.

Hard Rock's Human Resource Strategy

Video Case

Everyone—managers and hourly employees alike—who goes to work for Hard Rock Cafe takes Rock 101, an initial 2-day training class. The Hard Rock value system is to bring a fun, healthy, nurturing environment into the Hard Rock Cafe culture. This initial course and many other courses help employees develop both personally and professionally. The human resource department plays a critical role in any service organization, but at Hard Rock, with its "experience strategy," the human resource department takes on added importance.

Long before Jim Knight, manager of corporate training, begins the class, the human resource strategy of Hard Rock has had an impact. Hard Rock's strategic plan includes building a culture that allows for acceptance of substantial diversity and individuality. From a human resource perspective, this has the benefit of enlarging the pool of applicants as well as contributing to the Hard Rock culture.

Creating a work environment above and beyond a paycheck is a unique challenge. Outstanding pay and benefits are a start, but the key is to provide an environment that works for the employees. This includes benefits that start for part-timers who work at least 19 hours per week (while others in the industry start at 35 hours per week); a unique respect for individuality; continuing training; and a high level of internal promotions—some 60% of the managers are promoted from hourly employee ranks. The company's training is very specific, with job-oriented interactive DVDs covering kitchen, retail, and front-of-the-house service. Outside volunteer work is especially encouraged to foster a bond between the workers, their community, and issues of importance to them.

Applicants also are screened on their interest in music and their ability to tell a story. Hard Rock builds on a hiring criterion of bright, positive-attitude, self-motivated individuals with an employee bill of rights and substantial employee empowerment. The result is a unique culture and work environment, which no doubt contributes to the low turnover of hourly people—one-half the industry average.

The layout, memorabilia, music, and videos are important elements in the Hard Rock "experience," but it falls on the waiters and waitresses to make the experience come alive. They are particularly focused on providing an authentic and memorable dining experience. Like Alaska Airlines, Hard Rock is looking for people with a cause—people who like to serve. By succeeding with its human resource strategy, Hard Rock obtains a competitive advantage.

Discussion Questions*

1. What has Hard Rock done to lower employee turnover to half the industry average?
2. How does Hard Rock's human resource department support the company's overall strategy?
3. How would Hard Rock's value system work for automobile assembly line workers? (*Hint:* Consider Hackman and Oldham's core job characteristics.)
4. How might you adjust a traditional assembly line to address more "core job characteristics"?

*Before answering these questions, you may wish to view the video that accompanies this case.

- **Additional Case Studies:** Visit MyOMLab for these free case studies:
  Chicago Southern Hospital: Examines the requirements for a work-sampling plan for nurses.
  The Fleet That Wanders: Requires a look at ergonomic issues for truck drivers.

Endnotes

1. *Four Seasons Magazine*, Annabell Shaw, Jan. 3, 2011.
2. See "Motivation Through the Design of Work," in Jay Richard Hackman and Greg R. Oldham, eds., *Work Redesign* (Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1980); and A. Thomas, W. C. Buboltz, and C. Winkelspecht, "Job Characteristics and Personality as Predictors of Job Satisfaction," *Organizational Analysis*, 12, no. 2 (2004): 205–219.
3. MTM is really a family of products available from the Methods Time Measurement Association. For example, MTM-HC deals with the health care industry, MTM-C handles clerical activities, MTM-M involves microscope activities, MTM-V deals with machine shop tasks, and so on.
4. A. S. Helms, B. W. Shaw, and C. A. Lindner, "The Development of Laboratory Workload Standards through Computer-Based Work Measurement Technique, Part I," *Journal of Methods-Time Measurement* 12: 43. Used with permission of MTM Association for Standards and Research.
5. The Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) is a federal government agency whose task is to ensure the safety and health of U.S. workers.
6. Material safety data sheets (MSDSs) contain details of hazards associated with chemicals and give information on their safe use.

Chapter 10 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
HUMAN RESOURCE STRATEGY FOR COMPETITIVE ADVANTAGE (pp. 448–449)	*The objective of a human resource strategy is to manage labor and design jobs so people are effectively and efficiently utilized.* *Quality of work life* refers to a job that is not only reasonably safe with equitable pay but that also achieves an appropriate level of both physical and psychological requirements. *Mutual commitment* means that both management and employees strive to meet common objectives. *Mutual trust* is reflected in reasonable, documented employment policies that are honestly and equitably implemented to the satisfaction of both management and employees.	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4 **VIDEO 10.1** The "People" Focus: Human Resources at Alaska Airlines **VIDEO 10.2** Human Resources at Hard Rock Cafe
LABOR PLANNING (pp. 449–450)	■ **Labor planning**—A means of determining staffing policies dealing with employment stability, work schedules, and work rules. *Flextime* allows employees, within limits, to determine their own schedules. *Flexible* (or *compressed*) *workweeks* often call for fewer but longer workdays. *Part-time status* is particularly attractive in service industries with fluctuating demand loads.	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4
JOB DESIGN (pp. 450–453)	■ **Job design**—Specifies the tasks that constitute a job for an individual or group. ■ **Labor specialization** (or **job specialization**)—The division of labor into unique ("special") tasks. ■ **Job enlargement**—The grouping of a variety of tasks about the same skill level; horizontal enlargement. ■ **Job rotation**—A system in which an employee is moved from one specialized job to another. ■ **Job enrichment**—A method of giving an employee more responsibility that includes some of the planning and control necessary for job accomplishment; vertical expansion. ■ **Employee empowerment**—Enlarging employee jobs so that the added responsibility and authority are moved to the lowest level possible. ■ **Self-directed team**—A group of empowered individuals working together to reach a common goal.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4
ERGONOMICS AND THE WORK ENVIRONMENT (pp. 453–455)	■ **Ergonomics**—The study of the human interface with the environment and machines. The physical environment affects performance, safety, and quality of work life. Illumination, noise and vibration, temperature, humidity, and air quality are controllable by management.	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4
METHODS ANALYSIS (pp. 455–457)	■ **Methods analysis**—A system that involves developing work procedures that are safe and produce quality products efficiently. ■ **Flow diagram**—A drawing used to analyze movement of people or material. ■ **Process chart**—A graphic representation that depicts a sequence of steps for a process. ■ **Activity chart**—A way of improving utilization of an operator and a machine or some combination of operators (a crew) and machines. ■ **Operations chart**—A chart depicting right- and left-hand motions.	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.4 Problems: 10.2, 10.6, 10.8 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 10.1
THE VISUAL WORKPLACE (p. 458)	■ **Visual workplace**—Uses a variety of visual communication techniques to rapidly communicate information to stakeholders.	Concept Questions: 6.1–6.4
LABOR STANDARDS (pp. 458–468)	■ **Labor standards**—The amount of time required to perform a job or part of a job. Labor standards are set in four ways: (1) historical experience, (2) time studies, (3) predetermined time standards, and (4) work sampling. ■ **Time study**—Timing a sample of a worker's performance and using it as a basis for setting a standard time. ■ **Average observed time**—The arithmetic mean of the times for each element measured, adjusted for unusual influence for each element. $\text{Average observed time} = \frac{\text{Sum of the times recorded to perform each elemen}}{\text{Number of observations}}$ (10-1) ■ **Normal time**—The average observed time, adjusted for pace: $\text{Normal time} = (\text{Average observed time}) \times (\text{Performance rating factor})$ (10-2)	Concept Questions: 7.1–7.4 Problems: 10.13–10.46 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problems: 10.2–10.6

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
	■ **Standard time**—An adjustment to the total normal time; the adjustment provides allowances for personal needs, unavoidable work delays, and fatigue: $$\text{Standard time} = \frac{\text{Total normal time}}{1 - \text{Allowance factor}} \quad (10\text{-}3)$$ *Personal time allowances* are often established in the range of 4% to 7% of total time. $$\text{Required sample size} = n = \left(\frac{zs}{h\bar{x}}\right)^2 \quad (10\text{-}4)$$ $$n = \left(\frac{zs}{e}\right)^2 \quad (10\text{-}5)$$ $$s = \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma(x_i - \bar{x})^2}{n - 1}} = \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma(\text{Each sample observation} - \bar{x})^2}{\text{Number in sample} - 1}} \quad (10\text{-}6)$$ ■ **Predetermined time standards**—A division of manual work into small basic elements that have established and widely accepted times. The most common predetermined time standard is *methods time measurement* (MTM). ■ **Therbligs**—Basic physical elements of motion. ■ **Time measurement units (TMUs)**—Units for very basic micromotions in which 1 TMU = 0.0006 min or 100,000 TMUs = 1 hr. ■ **Work sampling**—An estimate, via sampling, of the percent of the time that a worker spends on various tasks. Work sampling sample size for a desired confidence and accuracy: $$n = \frac{z^2 p(1 - p)}{h^2} \quad (10\text{-}7)$$	**ACTIVE MODEL 10.1**
ETHICS (p. 468)	Management's role is to educate the employee; specify the necessary equipment, work rules, and work environment; and then enforce those requirements.	Concept Questions: 8.1–8.2

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 10.1 What factors dictate human resource strategy of a firm?
- **a)** Product and process strategies
- **b)** Location and layout strategy
- **c)** Schedules
- **d)** Individual differences
- **e)** All of the above

LO 10.2 The difference between *job enrichment* and *job enlargement* is that:
- **a)** enlarged jobs contain a larger number of similar tasks, while enriched jobs include some of the planning and control necessary for job accomplishment.
- **b)** enriched jobs contain a larger number of similar tasks, while enlarged jobs include some of the planning and control necessary for job accomplishment.
- **c)** enriched jobs enable an employee to do a number of boring jobs instead of just one.
- **d)** all of the above.

LO 10.3 Time study mainly addresses:
- **a)** Timing all workers' performances for setting standard times
- **b)** Improving the working environment for setting standard times
- **c)** Timing a sample of worker's performance for setting standard times
- **d)** Timely review of the workloads for setting standard times
- **e)** All of the above

LO 10.4 *Methods analysis* focuses on:
- **a)** the design of the machines used to perform a task.
- **b)** how a task is accomplished.
- **c)** the raw materials that are consumed in performing a task.
- **d)** reducing the number of steps required to perform a task.

LO 10.5 Methods techniques are used to analyse
- **a)** Movement of individuals or material
- **b)** Activity of human and machine
- **c)** Body movement
- **d)** Flow of activities
- **e)** All of the above

LO 10.6 The allowance factor in a time study:
- **a)** adjusts normal time for errors and rework.
- **b)** adjusts standard time for lunch breaks.
- **c)** adjusts normal time for personal needs, unavoidable delays, and fatigue.
- **d)** allows workers to rest every 20 minutes.

LO 10.7 A performance rating of 1.20 would indicate that the observed worker performs the task:
- **a)** At a normal pace
- **b)** At a standard time
- **c)** Slower that average
- **d)** Faster than average
- **e)** None of the above

Answers: LO 10.1. e; LO 10.2. a; LO 10.3. c; LO 10.4. b; LO 10.5. e; LO 10.6. c; LO 10.7. d.

Supply Chain Management

CHAPTER 11

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *Darden Restaurants*

- The Supply Chain's Strategic Importance *482*
- Sourcing Issues: Make-or-Buy and Outsourcing *484*
- Six Sourcing Strategies *485*
- Supply Chain Risk *487*
- Managing the Integrated Supply Chain *489*
- Building the Supply Base *492*
- Logistics Management *494*
- Distribution Management *497*
- Ethics and Sustainable Supply Chain Management *498*
- Measuring Supply Chain Performance *499*

Alaska Airlines

10 OM STRATEGY DECISIONS

- Design of Goods and Services
- Managing Quality
- Process Strategy
- Location Strategies
- Layout Strategies
- Human Resources
- *Supply Chain Management*
- Inventory Management
- Scheduling
- Maintenance

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
Darden Restaurants

Darden's Supply Chain Yields a Competitive Edge

Darden Restaurants, Inc., is one of the largest publicly traded casual dining restaurant companies in the world with $6.3 billion in annual sales. It serves over 320 million meals annually from more than 1,500 restaurants in North America. Its well-known flagship brand—Olive Garden—generates sales of $3.6 billion annually. Darden's other brands include Bahama Breeze, Seasons 52, The Capital Grille, Eddie V's, Yard House, and LongHorn Steakhouse. The firm employs more than 150,000 people and is the 33rd largest employer in the U.S.

"Operations is typically thought of as an execution of strategy. For us it is the strategy," Darden's former chairman, Joe R. Lee, stated.

In the restaurant business, a winning strategy requires a winning supply chain. Nothing is more important than sourcing and delivering healthy, high-quality food; and there are very few

Darden Restaurants

Qualifying Worldwide Sources: Part of Darden's supply chain begins with a crab harvest in the frigid waters off the coast of Alaska. But long before a supplier is qualified to sell to Darden, a total quality team is appointed. The team provides guidance, assistance, support, and training to the suppliers to ensure that overall objectives are understood and desired results accomplished.

Darden Restaurants

Aquaculture Certification: Shrimp in this Asian plant are certified to ensure traceability. The focus is on quality control certified by the Aquaculture Certification Council, of which Darden is a member. Farming and inspection practices yield safe and wholesome shrimp.

Darden Restaurants

Product tracking: Darden's seafood inspection team developed an integral system that uses a *Lot ID* to track seafood from its origin through shipping and receipt. Darden uses a modified atmosphere packaging (MAP) process to extend the shelf life and preserve the quality of its fresh fish. The tracking includes time temperature monitoring.

other industries where supplier performance is so closely tied to the customer.

Darden sources its food from five continents and thousands of suppliers. To meet Darden's needs for fresh ingredients, the company has developed four distinct supply chains: one for seafood; one for dairy/produce/other refrigerated foods; a third for other food items, like baked goods; and a fourth for restaurant supplies (everything from dishes to ovens to uniforms). Over $2 billion is spent in these supply chains annually. (See the *Video Case Study* at the end of this chapter for details.)

Darden's four supply channels have some common characteristics. They all require *supplier qualification*, have *product tracking*, are subject to *independent audits*, and employ *just-in-time delivery*. With best-in-class techniques and processes, Darden creates worldwide supply chain partnerships and alliances that are rapid, transparent, and efficient. Darden achieves competitive advantage through its superior supply chain.

Darden Restaurants

Darden Restaurants

JIT Delivery: For many products, temperature monitoring begins immediately and is tracked through the entire supply chain, to the kitchen at each of Darden's 1,500 restaurants, and ultimately to the guest.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO 11.1 ***Explain*** the strategic importance of the supply chain 483

LO 11.2 ***Identify*** six sourcing strategies 485

LO 11.3 ***Explain*** issues and opportunities in the supply chain 489

LO 11.4 ***Describe*** the steps in supplier selection 492

LO 11.5 ***Explain*** major issues in logistics management 494

LO 11.6 ***Compute*** the percentage of assets committed to inventory and inventory turnover 499

STUDENT TIP
Competition today is not between companies; it is between supply chains.

The Supply Chain's Strategic Importance

Like Darden, most firms spend a huge portion of their sales dollars on purchases. Because an increasing percentage of an organization's costs are determined by purchasing, relationships with suppliers are increasingly integrated and long term. Combined efforts that improve innovation, speed design, and reduce costs are common. Such efforts, when part of a corporate-wide strategy, can dramatically improve all partners' competitiveness. This integrated focus places added emphasis on managing supplier relationships.

Supply chain management
The coordination of all supply chain activities involved in enhancing customer value.

Supply chain management describes the coordination of all supply chain activities, starting with raw materials and ending with a satisfied customer. Thus, a supply chain includes suppliers; manufacturers and/or service providers; and distributors, wholesalers, and/or retailers who deliver the product and/or service to the final customer. Figure 11.1 provides an example of the breadth of links and activities that a supply chain may cover.

The objective of supply chain management is to structure the supply chain to maximize its competitive advantage and benefits to the ultimate consumer. Just as with championship teams, a central feature of successful supply chains is members acting in ways that benefit the team (the supply chain).

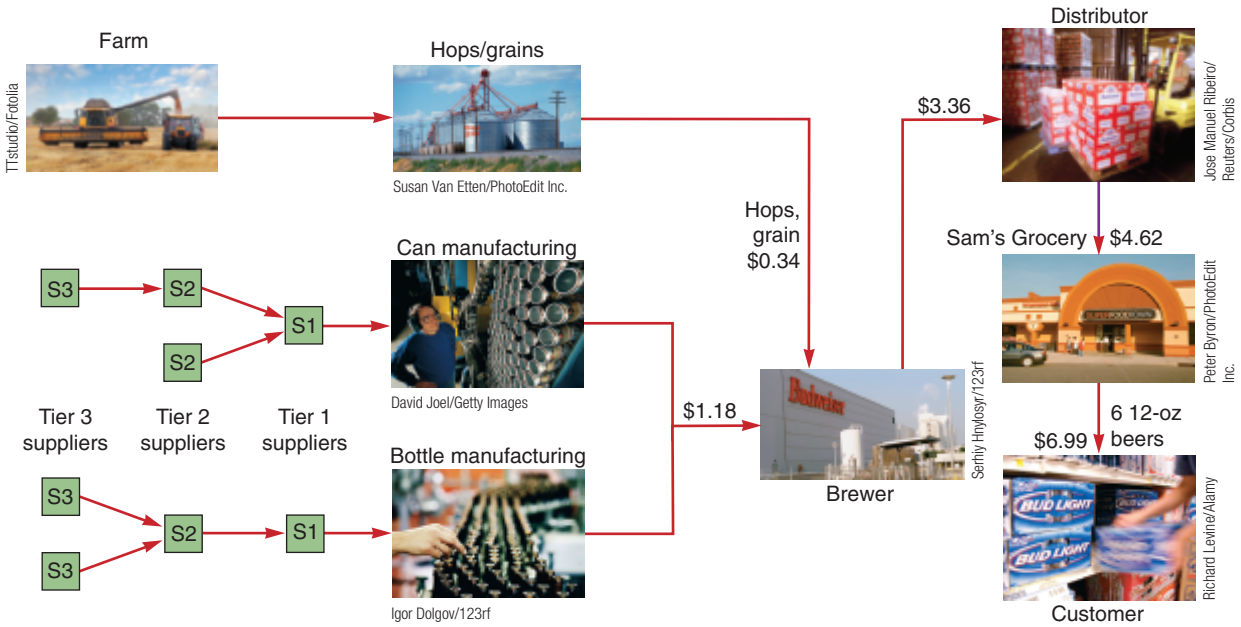


Figure **11.1**

A Supply Chain for Beer

The supply chain includes all the interactions among suppliers, manufacturers, distributors, and customers. A well-functioning supply chain has information flowing between all partners. The chain includes transportation, scheduling information, cash and credit transfers, as well as ideas, designs, and material transfers. Even can and bottle manufacturers have their own tiers of suppliers providing components such as lids, labels, packing containers, etc. (Costs are approximate and include substantial taxes.)

With collaboration, costs for both buyers and suppliers can drop. For example, when both parties are willing to share sales and cost information, profit can increase for both. Examples of supply chain coordination include:

- Walmart cooperates with its top 200 supplier factories in China to reach the goal of 20% energy efficiency improvement.
- Mercury Marine, the large boat-engine producer, uses the Internet to enhance design with boat builders and engine dealers as it fights off competition from Honda, Yamaha, and Volvo.
- Unifi, the leading U.S. maker of synthetic yarn, shares daily production-scheduling and quality-control information with raw materials supplier DuPont.
- Amazon, to reduce logistics costs, has moved its fulfillment activities for Procter and Gamble products directly into Procter and Gamble's warehouse.

As Table 11.1 indicates, a huge part of a firm's revenue is typically spent on purchases, so supply chains are a good place to look for savings. Example 1 further illustrates the amount of leverage available to the operations manager through the supply chain. These percentages indicate the strong role that supply chains play in potential profitability. Effective cost cutting may help a firm reach its profit goals more easily than would an increased sales effort.

TABLE 11.1

Supply Chain Costs as a Percentage of Sales

INDUSTRY	% PURCHASED
Automobile	67
Beverages	52
Chemical	62
Food	60
Lumber	61
Metals	65
Paper	55
Petroleum	79
Restaurants	35
Transportation	62

Example 1

SUPPLY CHAIN STRATEGY VS. SALES STRATEGY TO ACHIEVE A TARGET PROFIT

Hau Lee Furniture, Inc., spends 60% of its sales dollars in the supply chain and has a current gross profit of $10,000. Hau wishes to increase gross profit by $5,000 (50%). He would like to compare two strategies: reducing material costs vs. increasing sales.

APPROACH ▶ Use the table below to make the analysis.

SOLUTION ▶ The current material costs and production costs are 60% and 20%, respectively, of sales dollars, with fixed cost at a constant $10,000. Analysis indicates that an improvement in the supply chain that would *reduce material costs by 8.3%* ($5,000/$60,000) would produce a 50% net profit gain for Hau, whereas a *much larger 25% increase in sales* ($25,000/$100,000) would be required to produce the same result.

	CURRENT SITUATION	SUPPLY CHAIN STRATEGY	SALES STRATEGY
Sales	$100,000	$100,000	$125,000
Cost of materials	$60,000 (60%)	$55,000 (55%)	$75,000 (60%)
Production costs	$20,000 (20%)	$20,000 (20%)	$25,000 (20%)
Fixed costs	$10,000 (10%)	$10,000 (10%)	$10,000 (8%)
Profit	$10,000 (10%)	$15,000 (15%)	$15,000 (12%)

INSIGHT ▶ Supply chain savings flow directly to the bottom line. In general, supply chain costs need to shrink by a much lower percentage than sales revenue needs to increase to attain a profit goal. Effective management of the supply chain can generate substantial benefits.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If Hau wants to double the original gross profits (from $10,000 to $20,000), what would be required of the supply chain and sales strategies? [Answer: Supply chain strategy = 16.7% *reduction* in material costs; sales strategy = 50% *increase* in sales.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 11.2, 11.3

LO 11.1 *Explain* the strategic importance of the supply chain

As firms strive to increase their competitiveness via product customization, high quality, cost reductions, and speed to market, added emphasis is placed on the supply chain. Through long-term strategic relationships, suppliers become "partners" as they contribute to competitive advantage.

To ensure that the supply chain supports a firm's strategy, managers need to consider the supply chain issues shown in Table 11.2. Activities of supply chain managers cut across the accounting, finance, marketing, and operations disciplines. Just as the OM function supports the firm's overall strategy, the supply chain must support the OM strategy. Strategies of low

OM in Action A Rose Is a Rose, but Only If It Is Fresh

Supply chains for food and flowers must be fast, and they must be good. When the food supply chain has a problem, the best that can happen is the customer does not get fed on time; the worst that happens is the customer gets food poisoning and dies. In the floral industry, the timing and temperature are also critical. Indeed, flowers are the most perishable agricultural item—even more so than fish. Flowers not only need to move fast, but they must also be kept cool, at a constant temperature of 33 to 37 degrees. And they must be provided preservative-treated water while in transit. Roses are especially delicate, fragile, and perishable.

Eighty percent of the roses sold in the U.S. market arrive by air from rural Colombia and Ecuador. Roses move through this supply chain via an intricate but fast transportation network. This network stretches from growers who cut, grade, bundle, pack, and ship; to importers who make the deal; to the U.S. Department of Agriculture personnel who quarantine and inspect for insects, diseases, and parasites; to U.S. Customs agents who inspect and approve; to facilitators who provide clearance and labeling; to wholesalers who distribute; to retailers who arrange and sell; and finally to the customer. Each and every minute the product is deteriorating. The time and temperature sensitivity of perishables like roses requires sophistication and refined standards in the supply chain. Success yields quality and low losses. After all, when it's Valentine's Day, what good is a shipment of roses that arrives wilted or late? This is a difficult supply chain; only an excellent one will get the job done.

Africa Studio/Fotolia

Sources: NPR (Feb. 13, 2015); *Supply Chain 24/7* (Feb. 13, 2014); and *The Star-Ledger* (Feb. 6, 2011).

cost or rapid response demand different things from a supply chain than a strategy of differentiation. For instance, a low-cost strategy, as Table 11.2 indicates, requires suppliers be selected based primarily on cost. Such suppliers should have the ability to design low-cost products that meet the functional requirements, minimize inventory, and drive down lead times. However, if you want roses that are fresh, build a supply chain that focuses on response (see the *OM in Action* box "A Rose Is a Rose, but Only If It Is Fresh").

Firms must achieve integration of strategy up and down the supply chain. And they must expect that strategy to be different for different products and to change as products move through their life cycle. Darden Restaurants, as noted in the opening *Global Company Profile*, has mastered worldwide product and service complexity by segmenting its supply chain and at the same time integrating four unique supply chains into its overall strategy.

VIDEO 11.1
Darden's Global Supply Chain

Sourcing Issues: Make-or-Buy and Outsourcing

As suggested in Table 11.2, a firm needs to determine strategically how to design the supply chain. However, prior to embarking on supply chain design, operations managers must first consider the "make-or-buy" and outsourcing decisions.

TABLE 11.2 How Corporate Strategy Impacts Supply Chain Decisions*

	LOW-COST STRATEGY	RESPONSE STRATEGY	DIFFERENTIATION STRATEGY
Primary supplier selection criteria	• Cost	• Capacity • Speed • Flexibility	• Product development skills • Willing to share information • Jointly and rapidly develop products
Supply chain inventory	• Minimize inventory to hold down costs	• Use buffer stocks to ensure speedy supply	• Minimize inventory to avoid product obsolescence
Distribution network	• Inexpensive transportation • Sell through discount distributors/retailers	• Fast transportation • Provide premium customer service	• Gather and communicate market research data • Knowledgeable sales staff
Product design characteristics	• Maximize performance • Minimize cost	• Low setup time • Rapid production ramp-up	• Modular design to aid product differentiation

*See related table and discussion in Marshall L. Fisher, "What Is the Right Supply Chain for Your Product?" *Harvard Business Review* (March–April 1997): 105.

Make-or-Buy Decisions

A wholesaler or retailer buys everything that it sells; a manufacturing operation hardly ever does. Manufacturers, restaurants, and assemblers of products buy components and subassemblies that go into final products. As we saw in Chapter 5, choosing products and services that can be advantageously obtained *externally* as opposed to produced *internally* is known as the **make-or-buy decision**. Supply chain personnel evaluate alternative suppliers and provide current, accurate, and complete data relevant to the buy alternative.

Make-or-buy decision
A choice between producing a component or service in-house or purchasing it from an outside source.

Outsourcing

Outsourcing transfers some of what are traditional internal activities and resources of a firm to outside vendors, making it slightly different from the traditional make-or-buy decision. Outsourcing, discussed in Chapter 2, is part of the continuing trend toward using the efficiency that comes with specialization. The vendor performing the outsourced service is an expert in that particular specialty. This leaves the outsourcing firm to focus on its key success factors and its core competencies.

Outsourcing
Transferring a firm's activities that have traditionally been internal to external suppliers.

Six Sourcing Strategies

LO 11.2 *Identify* six sourcing strategies

Having decided *what* to outsource, managers have six strategies to consider.

Many Suppliers

With the many-suppliers strategy, a supplier responds to the demands and specifications of a "request for quotation," with the order usually going to the low bidder. This is a common strategy when products are commodities. This strategy plays one supplier against another and places the burden of meeting the buyer's demands on the supplier. Suppliers aggressively compete with one another. This approach holds the supplier responsible for maintaining the necessary technology, expertise, and forecasting abilities, as well as cost, quality, and delivery competencies. Long-term "partnering" relationships are not the goal.

STUDENT TIP
Supply chain strategies come in many varieties; choosing the correct one is the trick.

Few Suppliers

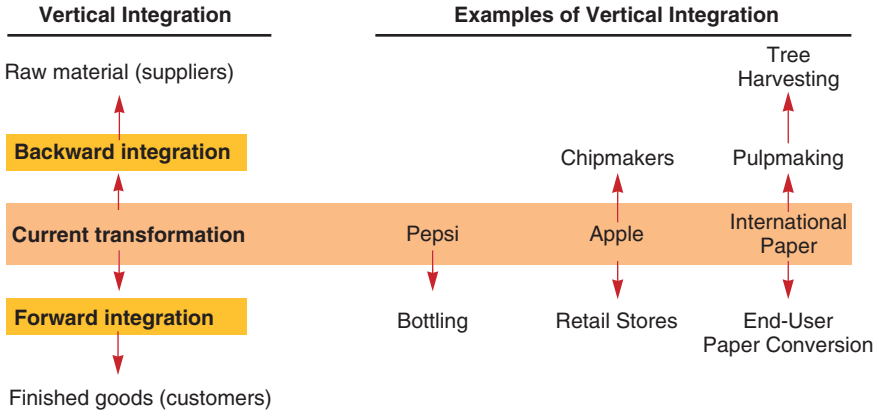
A strategy of few suppliers implies that rather than looking for short-term attributes, such as low cost, a buyer is better off forming a long-term relationship with a few dedicated suppliers. Long-term suppliers are more likely to understand the broad objectives of the procuring firm and the end customer. Using few suppliers can create value by allowing suppliers to have economies of scale and a learning curve that yields both lower transaction costs and lower production costs. This strategy also encourages those suppliers to provide design innovations and technological expertise.

Ford chooses suppliers even before parts are designed. Motorola evaluates suppliers on rigorous criteria, but in many instances has eliminated traditional supplier bidding, placing added emphasis on quality and reliability. On occasion these relationships yield contracts that extend through the product's life cycle. The British retailer Marks & Spencer finds that cooperation with its suppliers yields new products that win customers for the supplier and themselves. The move toward tight integration of the suppliers and purchasers is occurring in both manufacturing and services.

VIDEO 11.2
Supply Chain Management at Regal Marine

As with all other strategies, a downside exists. With few suppliers, the cost of changing partners is huge, so both buyer and supplier run the risk of becoming captives of the other. Poor supplier performance is only one risk the purchaser faces. The purchaser must also be concerned about trade secrets and suppliers that make other alliances or venture out on their own. This happened when the U.S. Schwinn Bicycle Co., needing additional capacity, taught Taiwan's Giant Manufacturing Company to make and sell bicycles. Giant Manufacturing is now the largest bicycle manufacturer in the world, and Schwinn was acquired out of bankruptcy by Pacific Cycle LLC.

Figure 11.2
Vertical Integration Can Be Forward or Backward



Vertical Integration

Vertical integration
Developing the ability to produce goods or services previously purchased or actually buying a supplier or a distributor.

Purchasing can be extended to take the form of vertical integration. By **vertical integration**, we mean developing the ability to produce goods or services previously purchased or to actually buy a supplier or a distributor. As shown in Figure 11.2, vertical integration can take the form of *forward* or *backward integration*.

Backward integration suggests a firm purchase its suppliers, as in the case of Apple deciding to manufacture its own semiconductors. Apple also uses forward integration by establishing its own revolutionary retail stores.

Vertical integration can offer a strategic opportunity for the operations manager. For firms with the capital, managerial talent, and required demand, vertical integration may provide substantial opportunities for cost reduction, higher quality, timely delivery, and inventory reduction. Vertical integration appears to work best when the organization has a large market share and the management talent to operate an acquired vendor successfully.

The relentless march of specialization continues, meaning that a model of "doing everything" or "vertical integration" is increasingly difficult. Backward integration may be particularly dangerous for firms in industries undergoing technological change if management cannot keep abreast of those changes or invest the financial resources necessary for the next wave of technology. Research and development costs are too high and technology changes too rapid for one company to sustain leadership in every component. Most organizations are better served concentrating on their own specialty and leveraging suppliers' contributions.

Joint Ventures

Because vertical integration is so dangerous, firms may opt for some form of formal collaboration. As we noted in Chapter 5, firms may engage in collaboration to enhance their new product prowess or technological skills. But firms also engage in collaboration to secure supply or reduce costs. One version of a joint venture is the current Daimler–BMW effort to develop and produce standard automobile components. Given the global consolidation of the auto industry, these two rivals in the luxury segment of the automobile market are at a disadvantage in volume. Their relatively low volume means fewer units over which to spread fixed costs, hence the interest in consolidating to cut development and production costs. As in all other such collaborations, the trick is to cooperate without diluting the brand or conceding a competitive advantage.

Keiretsu Networks

Keiretsu
A Japanese term that describes suppliers who become part of a company coalition.

Many large Japanese manufacturers have found another strategy: it is part collaboration, part purchasing from few suppliers, and part vertical integration. These manufacturers are often financial supporters of suppliers through ownership or loans. The supplier becomes part of a company coalition known as a ***keiretsu***. Members of the *keiretsu* are assured long-term relationships and are therefore expected to collaborate as partners, providing technical expertise

and stable quality production to the manufacturer. Members of the *keiretsu* can also have second- and even third-tier suppliers as part of the coalition.

Virtual Companies

Virtual companies rely on a variety of good, stable supplier relationships to provide services on demand. Suppliers may provide a variety of services that include doing the payroll, hiring personnel, designing products, providing consulting services, manufacturing components, conducting tests, or distributing products. The relationships may be short- or long-term and may include true partners, collaborators, or simply able suppliers and subcontractors. Whatever the formal relationship, the result can be exceptionally lean performance. The advantages of virtual companies include specialized management expertise, low capital investment, flexibility, and speed. The result is efficiency.

Virtual companies
Companies that rely on a variety of supplier relationships to provide services on demand. Also known as hollow corporations or network companies.

The apparel business provides a *traditional* example of virtual organizations. The designers of clothes seldom manufacture their designs; rather, they license the manufacture. The manufacturer may then rent space, lease sewing machines, and contract for labor. The result is an organization that has low overhead, remains flexible, and can respond rapidly to the market.

A *contemporary* example is exemplified by Vizio, Inc., a California-based producer of flat-screen TVs that has fewer than 100 employees but huge sales. Vizio uses modules to assemble its own brand of TVs. Because the key components of TVs are now readily available and sold almost as commodities, innovative firms such as Vizio can specify the components, hire a contract manufacturer, and market the TVs with very little startup cost. In a virtual company, the supply chain is the company. Managing it is dynamic and demanding.

Supply Chain Risk

In this age of increasing specialization, low communication cost, and fast transportation, companies are making less and buying more. This means more reliance on supply chains and more risk. Managing integrated supply chains is a strategic challenge. Having fewer suppliers makes the supplier and customer more dependent on each other, increasing risk for both.

Joe Gough/Fotolia

Supply chain risks arise in many ways. As this mishap illustrates, expected shipments can literally sink into the ocean.

STUDENT TIP The environment, controls, and process performance all affect supply chain risk.

This risk is compounded by globalization and logistical complexity. In any supply chain, vendor reliability and quality may be challenging. But the new model of a tight, fast, low-inventory supply chain, operating across political and cultural boundaries, adds a new dimension to risk. As organizations go global, shipping time (lead time) may increase, logistics may be less reliable, and tariffs and quotas may block companies from doing business. In addition, international supply chains complicate information flows and increase political/currency risks.

Risks and Mitigation Tactics

Supply chain risks arise in numerous ways, and you cannot outsource risk! Table 11.3 identifies major categories of risks and tactics to help manage them. The development of a successful strategic plan for supply chain management requires careful research, a thorough assessment of the risks involved, and innovative planning. Companies need to focus not only on reducing potential disruptions but also on how to prepare for responses to inevitable negative events. Flexible, secure supply chains and sufficient insurance against a variety of disruptions are a start. They may also choose to diversify their supplier base by using multiple sources for critical components. **Cross-sourcing** represents a hybrid technique where two suppliers each provide a different component, but they have the capability of producing each other's component—that is, each acting as a backup source. Another option is to create excess capacity that can be used in response to problems in the supply chain. Such contingency plans can reduce risk.

Cross-sourcing
Using one supplier for a component and a second supplier for another component, where each supplier acts as a backup for the other.

TABLE 11.3 Supply Chain Risks and Tactics

RISK	RISK REDUCTION TACTICS	EXAMPLE
Supplier failure to deliver	Use multiple suppliers; effective contracts with penalties; subcontractors on retainer; preplanning	**McDonald's** planned its supply chain 6 years before its opening in Russia. Every plant—bakery, meat, chicken, fish, and lettuce—is closely monitored to ensure strong links.
Supplier quality failures	Careful supplier selection, training, certification, and monitoring	**Darden Restaurants** has placed extensive controls, including third-party audits, on supplier processes and logistics to ensure constant monitoring and reduction of risk.
Outsourcing	Take over production; provide or perform the service yourself	**Tyson** took over chicken farm production in China to mitigate product quality and safety concerns related to using independent farmers.
Logistics delays or damage	Multiple/redundant transportation modes and warehouses; secure packaging; effective contracts with penalties	**Walmart,** with its own trucking fleet and numerous distribution centers located throughout the U.S., finds alternative origins and delivery routes bypassing problem areas.
Distribution	Careful selection, monitoring, and effective contracts with penalties	**Toyota** trains its dealers around the world, invoking principles of the Toyota Production System to help dealers improve customer service, used-car logistics, and body and paint operations.
Information loss or distortion	Redundant databases; secure IT systems; training of supply chain partners on the proper interpretations and uses of information	**Boeing** utilizes a state-of-the-art international communication system that transmits engineering, scheduling, and logistics data to Boeing facilities and suppliers worldwide.
Political	Political risk insurance; cross-country diversification; franchising and licensing	**Hard Rock Café** reduces political risk by franchising and licensing, rather than owning, when the political and cultural barriers seem significant.
Economic	Hedging to combat exchange rate risk; purchasing contracts that address price fluctuations	**Honda and Nissan** are moving more manufacturing out of Japan as the exchange rate for the yen makes Japanese-made autos more expensive.
Natural catastrophes	Insurance; alternate sourcing; cross-country diversification	**Toyota,** after its experience with fires, earthquakes, and tsunamis, now attempts to have at least two suppliers, each in a different geographical region, for each component.
Theft, vandalism, and terrorism	Insurance; patent protection; security measures including RFID and GPS; diversification	**Domestic Port Radiation Initiative:** The U.S. government has set up radiation portal monitors that scan nearly all imported containers for radiation.

Provided by South Carolina State Ports Authority

As this photo of the port of Charleston suggests, with over 16 million containers entering the U.S. annually, tracking location, content, and condition of trucks and containers is a challenge. But new technology may improve both security and JIT shipments.

Security and JIT

There is probably no society more open than the U.S. This includes its borders and ports—but they are swamped. Millions of containers enter U.S. ports each year, along with thousands of planes, cars, and trucks each day. Even under the best of conditions, some 5% of the container movements are misrouted, stolen, damaged, or excessively delayed.

Since the September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks, supply chains have become more complex. However, technological innovations in the supply chain are improving both security and inventory management, making logistics more reliable. Technology is now capable of knowing truck and container location, content, and condition. New devices can even detect broken container seals. Motion detectors can also be installed inside containers. Other sensors record interior data including temperature, shock, radioactivity, and whether a container is moving. Tracking lost containers, identifying delays, or just reminding individuals in the supply chain that a shipment is on its way will help expedite shipments.

Managing the Integrated Supply Chain

As managers move toward integration of the supply chain, substantial efficiencies are possible. The cycle of materials—as they flow from suppliers, to production, to warehousing, to distribution, to the customer—takes place among separate and often very independent organizations. It can lead to actions that may not optimize the entire chain. On the other hand, the supply chain is full of opportunities to reduce waste and enhance value. We now look at some of the significant *issues* and *opportunities*.

VIDEO 11.3
Arnold Palmer Hospital's Supply Chain

Issues in Managing the Integrated Supply Chain

LO 11.3 *Explain* issues and opportunities in the supply chain

Three issues complicate development of an efficient, integrated supply chain: local optimization, incentives, and large lots.

Local Optimization Members of the chain are inclined to focus on maximizing local profit or minimizing immediate cost based on their limited knowledge. Slight upturns in demand are overcompensated for because no one wants to be caught short. Similarly, slight downturns are overcompensated for because no one wants to be caught holding excess inventory. So fluctuations are magnified. For instance, a pasta distributor does not want to run out of pasta for its retail customers; the natural response to an extra large order from the retailer

is to compensate with an even larger order to the manufacturer on the assumption that retail sales are picking up. Neither the distributor nor the manufacturer knows that the retailer had a major one-time promotion that moved a lot of pasta. This is exactly the issue that complicated the implementation of efficient distribution at the Italian pasta maker Barilla.

Incentives (Sales Incentives, Quantity Discounts, Quotas, and Promotions) Incentives push merchandise into the chain for sales that have not occurred. This generates fluctuations that are ultimately expensive to all members of the chain.

Large Lots There is often a bias toward large lots because large lots tend to reduce unit costs. A logistics manager wants to ship large lots, preferably in full trucks, and a production manager wants long production runs. Both actions drive down unit shipping and production costs, but they increase holding costs and fail to reflect actual sales.

These three common occurrences—local optimization, incentives, and large lots—contribute to distortions of information about what is really occurring in the supply chain. A well-running supply system needs to be based on accurate information about how many products are truly being pulled through the chain. The inaccurate information is unintentional, but it results in distortions and fluctuations, causing what is known as the bullwhip effect.

Bullwhip effect
The increasing fluctuation in orders that often occurs as orders move through the supply chain.

The **bullwhip effect** occurs as orders are relayed from retailers, to distributors, to wholesalers, to manufacturers, with fluctuations increasing at each step in the sequence. The "bullwhip" fluctuations in the supply chain increase the costs associated with inventory, transportation, shipping, and receiving, while decreasing customer service and profitability. A number of specific opportunities exist for reducing the bullwhip effect and improving supply chain performance. The bullwhip effect is discussed more thoroughly in the supplement to this chapter.

Opportunities in Managing the Integrated Supply Chain

Opportunities for effective management in the supply chain include the following 10 items.

Pull data
Accurate sales data that initiate transactions to "pull" product through the supply chain.

Accurate "Pull" Data Accurate **pull data** are generated by sharing (1) point-of-sales (POS) information so that each member of the chain can schedule effectively and (2) computer-assisted ordering (CAO). This implies using POS systems that collect sales data and then adjusting that data for market factors, inventory on hand, and outstanding orders. Then a net order is sent directly to the supplier, who is responsible for maintaining the finished-goods inventory.

Lot Size Reduction Lot sizes are reduced through aggressive management. This may include (1) developing economical shipments of less than truckload lots; (2) providing discounts based on total annual volume rather than size of individual shipments; and (3) reducing the cost of ordering through techniques such as standing orders and various forms of electronic purchasing.

Single-stage control of replenishment
Fixing responsibility for monitoring and managing inventory for the retailer.

Single-Stage Control of Replenishment **Single-stage control of replenishment** means designating a member in the chain as responsible for monitoring and managing inventory in the supply chain based on the "pull" from the end user. This approach removes distorted information and multiple forecasts that create the bullwhip effect. Control may be in the hands of:

- A sophisticated **retailer** who understands demand patterns. Walmart does this for some of its inventory with radio frequency ID (RFID) tags.
- A distributor who manages the inventory for a particular distribution area. Distributors who handle grocery items, beer, and soft drinks may do this. Anheuser-Busch manages beer inventory and delivery for many of its customers.
- A manufacturer who has a well-managed forecasting, manufacturing, and distribution system. TAL Apparel Ltd., discussed in the *OM in Action* box, "Coca-Cola Amatil's Supply-Chain Solutions."

Vendor-managed inventory (VMI)
A system in which a supplier maintains material for the buyer, often delivering directly to the buyer's using department.

Vendor-Managed Inventory **Vendor-managed inventory (VMI)** means the use of a local supplier (usually a distributor) to maintain inventory for the manufacturer or retailer. The supplier delivers directly to the purchaser's using department rather than to a receiving dock or stockroom. If the supplier can maintain the stock of inventory for a variety of customers who use

OM in Action Coca-Cola Amatil's Supply-Chain Solutions

Coca-Cola Amatil (CCA), an Australia-based company that bottles and distributes Coca-Cola soft drinks and other beverages, is the leading soft drinks manufacturer in the Asia Pacific region. CCA was founded in 1904 as British Tobacco Company (Australia) Limited, and over the following decades, a series of mergers and acquisitions resulted in further diversification. By 1977, it was known as Amatil Limited, and the company embarked on a series of food and beverage acquisitions, including its first overseas investment, with the acquisition of Coca-Cola bottling franchises for Vienna and Graz in Austria.

Today, CCA has a diverse portfolio of brands, including Grinders coffee, Mount Franklin spring water, Fanta and Sprite, and Goulburn Valley fruit drinks, alongside premium alcoholic drinks such as Jim Beam and Famous Grouse Scotch Whisky.

Systems integration is key to the performance of CCA's supply chain. CCA delivers more than 1 million cases of product every day and operates from 24 warehouses and 15 production facilities to more than 116,000 customers across Australia. It operates on a 48-hour order-to-delivery cycle, OM in Action managing customers' requests from around the country, on a central planning system.

The use of the One Amatil Information System (OAIsys) has enabled CCA to manage its operations with a delivery in full, on time, and accurately invoiced strategy. This enables CCA to take a customer-orientated approach to its operations in order to enhance customer service, vertically integrate its manufacturing operations, and improve automated warehouse management techniques, to successfully compete in an industry where fluctuating material ingredient costs such as sugar, threaten the company's profitability in a price sensitive market.

Sources: "Competitive Landscape 2010," *Australia Food and Drink Report* (2010); "Overcoming the Overwhelming: Coca-Cola Amatil's Logistics Management," *MHD Supply Chain Solutions* (2012); T. Clarke, "Big Companies Count on Technology for Supply Chain Future," *The Sydney Morning Herald* (November 6, 2012).

the same product or whose differences are very minor (say, at the packaging stage), then there should be a net savings. These systems work without the immediate direction of the purchaser.

Collaborative Planning, Forecasting, and Replenishment (CPFR) As with single-stage control and vendor-managed inventory, collaborative planning, forecasting, and replenishment (CPFR) is another effort to manage inventory in the supply chain. With CPFR, members of the supply chain share planning, demand, forecasting, and inventory information. Partners in a CPFR effort begin with collaboration on product definition and a joint marketing plan. Promotion, advertising, forecasts, joint order commitments, and timing of shipments are all included in the plan in a concerted effort to drive down inventory and related costs. CPFR can help to significantly reduce the bullwhip effect.

Collaborative planning, forecasting, and replenishment (CPFR)
A system in which members of a supply chain share information in a joint effort to reduce supply chain costs.

Blanket Orders Blanket orders are unfilled orders with a vendor and are also called "open orders" or "incomplete orders." A blanket order is a contract to purchase certain items from a vendor. It is not an authorization to ship anything. Shipment is made only on receipt of an agreed-on document, perhaps a shipping requisition or shipment release.

Blanket order
A long-term purchase commitment to a supplier for items that are to be delivered against short-term releases to ship.

Standardization The purchasing department should make special efforts to increase levels of standardization. That is, rather than obtaining a variety of similar components with labeling, coloring, packaging, or perhaps even slightly different engineering specifications, the purchasing agent should try to have those components standardized.

Postponement Postponement withholds any modification or customization to the product (keeping it generic) as long as possible. The concept is to minimize internal variety while maximizing external variety. For instance, after analyzing the supply chain for its printers, Hewlett-Packard (HP) determined that if the printer's power supply was moved out of the printer itself and into a power cord, HP could ship the basic printer anywhere in the world. HP modified the printer, its power cord, its packaging, and its documentation so that only the power cord and documentation needed to be added at the final distribution point. This modification allowed the firm to manufacture and hold centralized inventories of the generic printer for shipment as demand changed. Only the unique power system and documentation had to be held in each country. This understanding of the entire supply chain reduced both risk and inventory investment. Similarly, Benetton leaves a portion of each style of its sweaters white so that they can be dyed the color the market is demanding at the last possible moment.

Postponement
Delaying any modifications or customization to a product as long as possible in the production process.

Electronic Ordering and Funds Transfer Electronic ordering and bank transfers are traditional approaches to speeding transactions and reducing paperwork. Transactions

between firms often use electronic data interchange (EDI), which is a standardized data-transmittal format for computerized communications between organizations. EDI also provides for the use of advanced shipping notice (ASN), which notifies the purchaser that the vendor is ready to ship. Although some firms are still moving to EDI and ASN, the Internet's ease of use and lower cost is proving more popular.

Drop shipping
Shipping directly from the supplier to the end consumer rather than from the seller, saving both time and reshipping costs.

Drop Shipping and Special Packaging Drop shipping means the supplier will ship directly to the end consumer, rather than to the seller, saving both time and reshipping costs. Other cost-saving measures include the use of special packaging, labels, and optimal placement of labels and bar codes on containers. The final location down to the department and number of units in each shipping container can also be indicated. Substantial savings can be obtained through management techniques such as these. Some of these techniques can be of particular benefit to wholesalers and retailers by reducing shrinkage (lost, damaged, or stolen merchandise) and handling cost.

For instance, Walmart Marketplace (Walmart.com) provides customers access to hundreds of thousands of additional products through approved retailers. Although orders from these retailers are combined in a common payment to Walmart.com, all shipping and returns are handled by the affiliate retailers.

Building the Supply Base

LO 11.4 *Describe* the steps in supplier selection

For those goods and services a firm buys, suppliers, also known as *vendors,* must be selected and actively managed. Supplier selection considers numerous factors, such as strategic fit, supplier competence, delivery, and quality performance. Because a firm may have some competence in all areas and may have exceptional competence in only a few, selection can be challenging. Procurement policies also need to be established. Those might address issues such as percent of business done with any one supplier or with minority businesses. We now examine supplier selection as a four-stage process: (1) supplier evaluation, (2) supplier development, (3) negotiations, and (4) contracting.

Supplier Evaluation

The first stage of supplier selection, *supplier evaluation,* involves finding potential suppliers and determining the likelihood of their becoming *good* suppliers. If good suppliers are not selected, then all other supply chain efforts are wasted. As firms move toward long-term suppliers, the issues of financial strength, quality, management, research, technical ability, and potential for a close, long-term relationship play an increasingly important role. Evaluation criteria critical to the firm might include these categories as well as production process capability, location, and information systems. The supplement to this chapter provides an example of the commonly used *factor weighting* approach to supplier evaluation.

Supplier Certification International quality certifications such as ISO 9000 and ISO 14000 are designed to provide an external verification that a firm follows sound quality management and environmental management standards. Buying firms can use such certifications to pre-qualify potential suppliers. Despite the existence of the ISO standards, firms often create their own supplier certification programs. Buyers audit potential suppliers and award a certified status to those that meet the specified qualification. A certification process often involves three steps: (1) qualification, (2) education, and (3) the certification performance process. Once certified, the supplier may be awarded special treatment and priority, allowing the buying firm to reduce or eliminate incoming inspection of materials. Such an arrangement may facilitate JIT production for the buying firm. Most large companies use some sort of supplier certification program.

Supplier Development

The second stage of supplier selection is *supplier development*. Assuming that a firm wants to proceed with a particular supplier, how does it integrate this supplier into its system?

The buyer makes sure the supplier has an appreciation of quality requirements, product specifications, schedules and delivery, and procurement policies. Supplier development may include everything from training, to engineering and production help, to procedures for information transfer.

Negotiations

Although the prices that consumers pay are often inflexible (printed on the price tag, listed in the catalog, etc.), a significant number of final prices paid in business-to-business transactions are negotiated. In addition to the price itself, several other aspects of the full product "package" must be determined. These may include credit and delivery terms, quality standards, and cooperative advertising agreements. In fact, negotiation represents a significant element in a purchasing manager's job, and well-honed negotiation skills are highly valued.

Here are three classic types of negotiation strategies: the cost-based model, the market-based price model, and competitive bidding.

Cost-Based Price Model The cost-based price model requires that the supplier open its books to the purchaser. The contract price is then based on time and materials or on a fixed cost with an escalation clause to accommodate changes in the vendor's labor and materials cost.

Market-Based Price Model In the market-based price model, price is based on a published, auction, or index price. Many commodities (agricultural products, paper, metal, etc.) are priced this way. Paperboard prices, for instance, are available via the *Official Board Markets* weekly publication (**www.advanstar.com**).

Competitive Bidding When suppliers are not willing to discuss costs or where near-perfect markets do not exist, competitive bidding is often appropriate. Competitive bidding is the typical policy in many firms for the majority of their purchases. Bidding policies usually require that the purchasing agent have several potential suppliers and quotations from each. The major disadvantage of this method, as mentioned earlier, is that the development of long-term relations between buyer and seller is hindered. It may also make difficult the communication and performance that are vital for engineering changes, quality, and delivery.

Yet a fourth approach is *to combine one or more* of the preceding negotiation techniques. The supplier and purchaser may agree to review cost data, accept some form of market-based cost, or agree that the supplier will "remain competitive."

Contracting

Supply chain partners often develop contracts to spell out terms of the relationship. Contracts are designed to share risks, share benefits, and create incentive structures to encourage supply chain members to adopt policies that are optimal for the entire chain. The idea is to make the total pie (of supply chain profits) bigger and then divide the bigger pie among all participants. The goal is collaboration. Some common features of contracts include *quantity discounts* (lower prices for larger orders), *buybacks* (common in the magazine and book business where there is a buyback of unsold units), and *revenue sharing* (where both partners share the risk of uncertainty by sharing revenue).

Centralized Purchasing

Companies with multiple facilities (e.g., multiple manufacturing plants or multiple retail outlets) must determine which items to purchase centrally and which to allow local sites to purchase for themselves. Unmonitored decentralized purchasing can create havoc. For example, different plants for Nestle USA's brands used to pay 29 different prices for its vanilla ingredient *to the same supplier*! Important cost, efficiency, and "single-voice" benefits often accrue from a centralized purchasing function. Typical benefits include:

- Leverage purchase volume for better pricing
- Develop specialized staff expertise
- Develop stronger supplier relationships
- Maintain professional control over the purchasing process

- Devote more resources to the supplier selection and negotiation process
- Reduce the duplication of tasks
- Promote standardization

However, local managers enjoy having their own purchasing control, and decentralized purchasing can offer certain inventory control, transportation cost, or lead-time benefits. Often firms use a hybrid approach—using centralized purchasing for some items and/or sites while allowing local purchasing for others.

E-Procurement

E-procurement
Purchasing facilitated through the Internet.

E-procurement speeds purchasing, reduces costs, and integrates the supply chain. It reduces the traditional barrage of paperwork and, at the same time, provides purchasing personnel with an extensive database of supplier, delivery, and quality data.

Online Catalogs and Exchanges Purchase of standard items is often accomplished via online catalogs. Such catalogs support cost comparisons and incorporate voice and video clips, making the process efficient for both buyers and sellers.

Online exchanges are typically industry-specific Internet sites that bring buyers and sellers together. Marriott and Hyatt created one of the first, Avendra (**www.avendra.com**), which facilitates economic purchasing of the huge range of goods needed by the 5,000 hospitality industry customers now in the exchange. Online catalogs and exchanges can help move companies from a multitude of individual phone calls, faxes, and emails to a centralized system and drive billions of dollars of waste out of the supply chain.

Online Auctions In addition to catalogs, some suppliers and buyers have established online auction sites. Operations managers find online auctions a fertile area for disposing of excess raw material and discontinued or excess inventory. Online auctions lower entry barriers, encourage sellers to join, and simultaneously increase the potential number of buyers. The key for intermediaries is to find and build a huge base of potential bidders, improve client buying procedures, and qualify new suppliers.

In a traditional auction, a seller offers a product or service and generates competition between bidders—bidding the price up. In contrast, buyers often utilize online *reverse auctions* (or *Dutch auctions*). In reverse auctions, a buyer initiates the process by submitting a description of the desired product or service. Potential suppliers then submit bids, which may include price and other delivery information. Thus, price competition occurs on the selling side of the transaction—bidding the price down. Note that, as with traditional supplier selection decisions, price is important but may not be the only factor in winning the bid.

Logistics Management

Logistics management
An approach that seeks efficiency of operations through the integration of all material acquisition, movement, and storage activities.

Procurement activities may be combined with various shipping, warehousing, and inventory activities to form a logistics system. The purpose of **logistics management** is to obtain efficiency of operations through the integration of all material acquisition, movement, and storage activities. When transportation and inventory costs are substantial on both the input and output sides of the production process, an emphasis on logistics may be appropriate. Many firms opt for outsourcing the logistics function, as logistics specialists can often bring expertise not available in-house. For instance, logistics companies often have tracking technology that reduces transportation losses and supports delivery schedules that adhere to precise delivery windows. The potential for competitive advantage is found via both reduced costs and improved customer service.

Shipping Systems

LO 11.5 *Explain* major issues in logistics management

Firms recognize that the transportation of goods to and from their facilities can represent as much as 25% of the cost of products. Because of this high cost, firms constantly evaluate their means of shipping. Six major means of shipping are trucking, railroads, airfreight, waterways, pipelines, and multimodal.

Trucking The vast majority of manufactured goods moves by truck. The flexibility of shipping by truck is only one of its many advantages. Companies that have adopted JIT programs in recent years have put increased pressure on truckers to pick up and deliver on time, with no damage, with paperwork in order, and at low cost. Trucking firms are using computers to monitor weather, find the most effective route, reduce fuel cost, and analyze the most efficient way to unload. To improve logistics efficiency, the industry is establishing Web sites such as Schneider National's connection (**www.schneider.com**), which lets shippers and truckers find each other to use some of this idle capacity.

Railroads Railroads in the U.S. employ 235,000 people and ship 40% of the ton-miles of all commodities, including 93% of coal, 57% of cereal grains, and 52% of basic chemicals. Containerization has made shipping of truck trailers on railroad flat cars a popular means of distribution. The equivalent of 47 million trailer loads are moved in the U.S. each year by rail.

STUDENT TIP
Logistics represents a substantial part of the economy, as logistics cost comprises 11.3% of the U.S. gross domestic product.

Airfreight Airfreight represents less than 1% of tonnage shipped in the U.S. However, the proliferation of airfreight carriers such as FedEx, UPS, and DHL makes it a fast-growing mode of shipping. Clearly, for national and international movement of lightweight items, such as medical and emergency supplies, flowers, fruits, and electronic components, airfreight offers speed and reliability.

Waterways Waterways are one of the nation's oldest means of freight transportation, dating back to construction of the Erie Canal in 1817. Included in U.S. waterways are the nation's rivers, canals, the Great Lakes, coastlines, and oceans connecting to other countries. The usual cargo on internal waterways is bulky, low-value cargo such as iron ore, grains, cement, coal, chemicals, limestone, and petroleum products. Internationally, millions of containers holding all sorts of industrial and consumer goods are shipped at very low cost via huge oceangoing ships each year. Water transportation is often preferred when cost is more important than speed.

Pipelines Pipelines are an important form of transporting crude oil, natural gas, and other petroleum and chemical products.

Multimodal Multimodal shipping combines shipping methods, and is a common means of getting a product to its final destination, particularly for international shipments. The use of standardized containers facilitates easy transport from truck to rail to ship and back again, without having to unload products from the containers until the very end.

While freight rates are often based on very complicated pricing systems, in general, clients pay for speed. Faster methods such as airfreight tend to be much more expensive, while slower methods, such as waterways, provide a much cheaper shipping rate per unit. The size of shipments follows a similar pattern. The faster methods tend to involve smaller shipment sizes, while the slower methods involve very large shipment sizes.

Warehousing

Warehousing often adds 8–10% to the cost of a product, making warehousing a significant expense for many firms. Warehouses come in all shapes and sizes, from tiny rooms in the back of a store to enormous facilities that could fit multiple football fields. Warehouses may be extremely expensive to operate, but the alternatives (e.g., either no storage at all or storage at local operating facilities, along with the related logistics issues) may be much more costly.

The fundamental purpose of a warehouse is to store goods. However, some warehouses also provide other crucial functions. For example, a warehouse can serve as a *consolidation point,* gathering shipments from multiple sources to send outbound in one cheaper, fully loaded truck. Alternatively, a warehouse can provide a *break-bulk* function by accepting a cheaper full truckload inbound shipment and then dividing it for distribution to individual sites. Further, similar to a major airport hub, a warehouse can serve simply as a *cross-docking* facility—accepting shipments from a variety of sources and recombining them for distribution to a variety of destinations, often without actually storing any goods during the transition. Finally, a warehouse can serve as a point of *postponement* in the process, providing final customer-specific value-added processing to the product before final shipment.

Channel assembly
Postpones final assembly of a product so the distribution channel can assemble it.

Channel assembly represents one way to implement postponement. Channel assembly sends individual components and modules, rather than finished products, to the distributor.

OM in Action DHL's Role in the Supply Chain

It's the dead of night at DHL International's air express hub in Brussels, yet the massive building is alive with busy forklifts and sorting workers. The boxes going on and off the DHL plane range from Dell computers and Cisco routers to Caterpillar mufflers and Komatsu hydraulic pumps. Sun Microsystems computers from California are earmarked for Finland; DVDs from Teac's plant in Malaysia are destined for Bulgaria.

The door-to-door movement of time-sensitive packages is key to the global supply chain. JIT, short product life cycles, mass customization, and reduced inventories depend on logistics firms such as DHL, FedEx, and UPS. These powerhouses are in continuous motion.

With a decentralized network covering 220 countries and territories (more than are in the UN), DHL is a true multinational. The Brussels headquarters has under 2,000 of the company's 325,000 employees but includes 26 nationalities.

DHL has assembled an extensive global network of express logistics centers for strategic goods. In its Brussels logistics center, for instance, DHL upgrades, repairs, and configures Fijitsu computers, InFocus projectors, and Johnson & Johnson medical equipment. It stores and provides parts for EMC and Hewlett-Packard and replaces Nokia and Philips phones. "If something breaks down on a Thursday at 4 o'clock, the relevant warehouse knows at 4:05, and the part is on a DHL plane at 7 or 8 that evening," says Robert Kuijpers, DHL International's CEO.

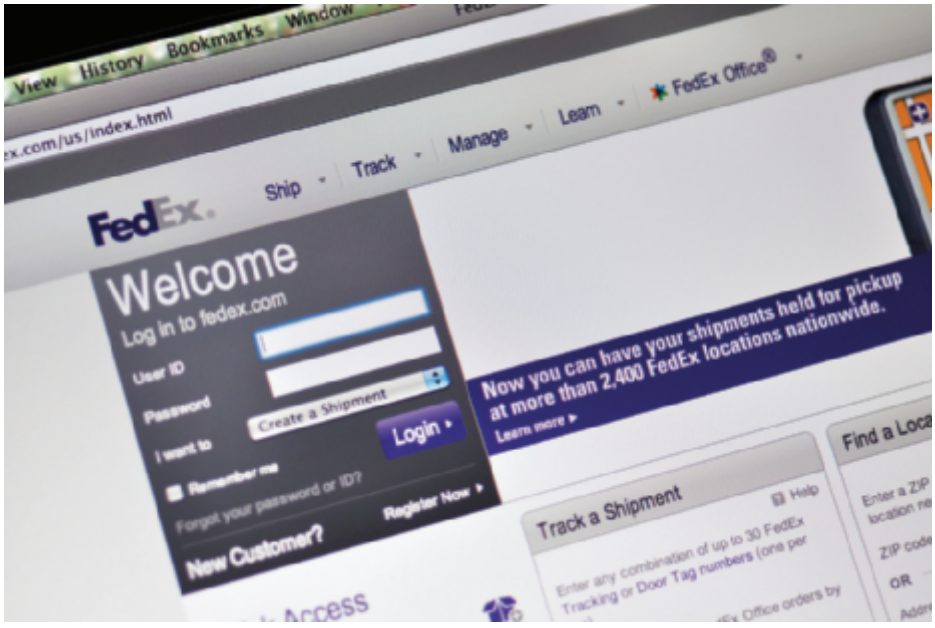
Sources: **www.dhl.com** (2015); *The Wall Street Journal* (July 19, 2012); *Materials Handling World* (December 14, 2011); and **www.dhlsupplychainmatters.com**.

The distributor then assembles, tests, and ships. Channel assembly treats distributors more as manufacturing partners than as distributors. This technique has proven successful in industries where products are undergoing rapid change, such as PCs. With this strategy, finished-goods inventory is reduced because units are built to a shorter, more accurate forecast. Consequently, market response is better, with lower investment—a nice combination.

Third-Party Logistics (3PL)

Third-party logistics, as is the case with most specialization, tends to bring added innovation and expertise to the logistics system. Consequently, supply chain managers outsource logistics to meet three goals: (1) drive down inventory investment, (2) lower delivery costs, and (3) improve delivery reliability and speed. Specialized logistics firms support these goals by creatively coordinating the supplier's inventory system with the service capabilities of the delivery firm. FedEx, for example, has a successful history of using the Internet for online tracking. At **fedex.com**, a customer can compute shipping costs, print labels, adjust invoices, and track package status. FedEx, UPS, and DHL play a core role in other firms' logistics processes. For instance, UPS works with Nike at a shipping hub in Louisville, Kentucky, to store and immediately expedite shipments. The *OM in Action* box "DHL's Role in the Supply Chain"

Jeff Greenberg 6 of 6/Alamy



NetPhotos/Alamy

Speed and accuracy in the supply chain are supported by bar-code tracking of shipments. At each step of a journey, from initial pickup (left) to final destination, bar codes are read and stored. Within seconds, this tracking information is available online to customers worldwide (right).

provides another example of how outsourcing logistics can reduce costs while shrinking inventory and delivery times.

Distribution Management

Management of the supply chain focuses on incoming materials, but just as important, *distribution management* focuses on the outbound flow of products. Designing distribution networks to meet customer expectations suggests three criteria: (1) *rapid response,* (2) *product choice,* and (3) *service.*

Office Depot, for example, addresses these customer concerns by having several stores in a town for convenience and quick response time. But it also offers an online shopping presence to accommodate customers requiring a much larger selection of products (**www.officedepot.com**). It may even offer delivery directly to large customers. These varying customer expectations suggest both different distribution channels and multiple outlets.

So how many stores should Office Depot open in a town? As Figure 11.3(a) indicates, an increase in the number of facilities generally implies a quicker response and increased customer satisfaction. On the cost side, three logistics-related costs [see Figure 11.3(b)] are shown: *inventory costs*, *transportation costs*, and *facility costs.* Taken together, *total logistics costs* tend to follow the top curve, first declining, and then rising. For this particular example, it appears that total logistics costs are minimized with three facilities. However, when revenue is considered [see Figure 11.3(c)], we note that profit is maximized with four facilities.

Whether creating a network of warehouses or retail outlets, finding the optimal number of facilities represents a critical and often dynamic decision. For instance, barely a year after adding 3 million square feet of warehouse capacity, market dynamics caused Amazon.com to close three of its U.S. distribution centers.

Just as firms need an effective *supplier management* program, an effective *distribution management* program may make the difference between supply chain success and failure. For example, in addition to facilities, packaging and logistics are necessary for the network to perform well. Packaging and logistics are also important distribution decisions because the manufacturer is usually held responsible for breakages and serviceability. Further, selection and development of dealers or retailers are necessary to ensure ethical and enthusiastic representation of the firm's products. Top-notch supply chain performance requires good *downstream* (distributors and retailers) management, just as it does good *upstream* (suppliers) management.

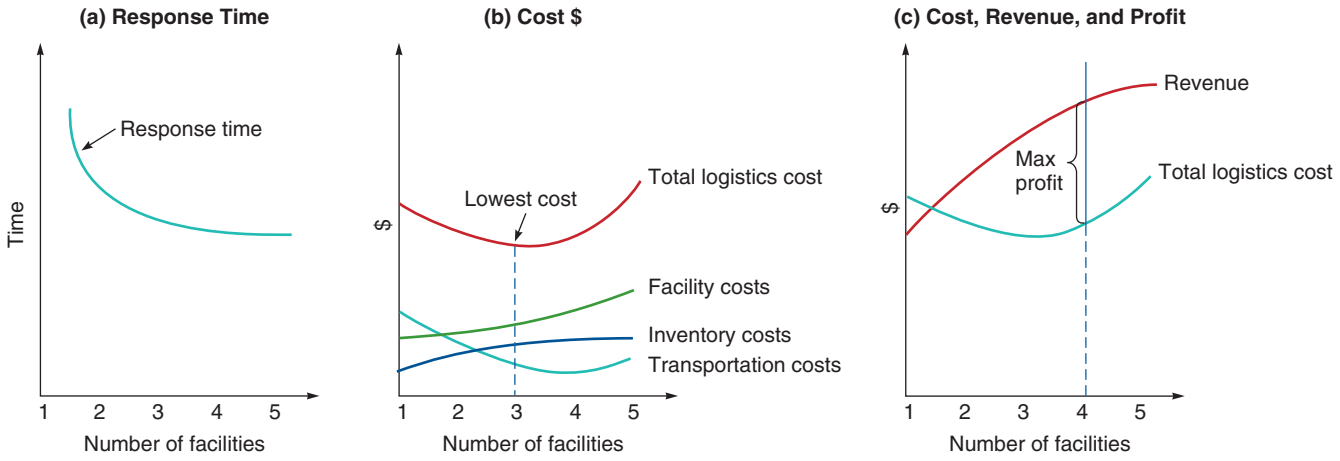


Figure **11.3**

Number of Facilities in a Distribution Network

The focus should be on profit maximization (c) rather than cost minimization (b).

Ethics and Sustainable Supply Chain Management

Let's look at two issues that OM managers must address every day when dealing with supply chains: ethics and sustainability.

Supply Chain Management Ethics

STUDENT TIP Because so much money passes through the supply chain, the opportunity for ethical lapses is significant.

We consider three aspects of ethics: personal ethics, ethics within the supply chain, and ethical behavior regarding the environment. As the supply chain becomes increasingly international, each of these becomes even more significant.

Personal Ethics Ethical decisions are critical to the long-term success of any organization. However, the supply chain is particularly susceptible to ethical lapses. With sales personnel anxious to sell and purchasing agents spending huge sums, temptations abound. Salespeople become friends with customers, do favors for them, take them to lunch, or present small (or large) gifts. Determining when tokens of friendship become bribes can be challenging. Many companies have strict rules and codes of conduct that limit what is acceptable.

Recognizing these issues, the Institute for Supply Management has developed the following principles and standards to be used as guidelines for ethical behavior:

- *Promote and uphold* responsibilities to one's employer; positive supplier and customer relationships; sustainability and social responsibility; protection of confidential and proprietary information; applicable laws, regulations, and trade agreements; and development of professional competence.
- *Avoid* perceived impropriety; conflicts of interest; behaviors that negatively influence supply chain decisions; and improper reciprocal agreements.

Ethics Within the Supply Chain In this age of hyper-specialization, much of any organization's resources are purchased, putting great stress on ethics in the supply chain. Managers may be tempted to ignore ethical lapses by suppliers or offload pollution to suppliers. But firms must establish standards for their suppliers, just as they have established standards for themselves. Society expects ethical performance throughout the supply chain. For instance, Gap, Inc., reported that of its 3,000-plus factories worldwide, about 90% failed their initial evaluation. Gap found that 10% to 25% of its Chinese factories engaged in psychological or verbal abuse, and more than 50% of the factories in sub-Saharan Africa operated without proper safety devices. The challenge of enforcing ethical standards is significant, but responsible firms such as Gap are finding ways to deal with this difficult issue.

Ethical Behavior Regarding the Environment While ethics on both a personal basis and in the supply chain are important, so is ethical behavior in regard to the environment. Good ethics extends to doing business in a way that supports conservation and renewal of resources. This requires evaluation of the entire environmental impact, from raw material, to manufacture, through use and final disposal. For instance, Darden Restaurants and Walmart both require their shrimp and fish suppliers in Southeast Asia to abide by the standards of the Global Aquaculture Alliance. These standards must be met if suppliers want to maintain the business relationship. Operations managers also ensure that sustainability is reflected in the performance of second- and third-tier suppliers. Enforcement can be done by in-house inspectors, third-party auditors, governmental agencies, or nongovernmental watchdog organizations. All four approaches are used.

Establishing Sustainability in Supply Chains

Reverse logistics The process of sending returned products back up the supply chain for value recovery or disposal.

The incoming supply chain garners most of the attention, but it is only part of the challenge of sustainability. The "return" supply chain is also significant. Reverse logistics involves the processes for sending returned products back up the supply chain for resale, repair, reuse, remanufacture, recycling, or disposal. The operations manager's goal should be to limit burning or

TABLE 11.4 Management Challenges of Reverse Logistics

ISSUE	FORWARD LOGISTICS	REVERSE LOGISTICS
Forecasting	Relatively straightforward	More uncertain
Product quality	Uniform	Not uniform
Product packaging	Uniform	Often damaged
Pricing	Relatively uniform	Dependent on many factors
Speed	Often very important	Often not a priority
Distribution costs	Easily visible	Less directly visible
Inventory management	Consistent	Not consistent

Adapted from the Reverse Logistics Executive Council (**www.rlec.org**).

burying of returned products and instead strive for reuse. Reverse logistics initiates a new set of challenges, as shown in Table 11.4.

Although sometimes used as a synonym for reverse logistics, a **closed-loop supply chain** refers more to the proactive design of a supply chain that tries to optimize all forward and reverse flows. A closed-loop supply chain prepares for returns prior to product introduction. For instance, IBM has recognized that components often have much longer life cycles than the original products that they go into. So the company has established a systematic method for dismantling returns and used equipment to extract components that still have value, such as boards, cards, and hard-disk assemblies. IBM has realized millions of dollars of savings in procurement costs by exploiting its "dismantling channel" of used parts.

Closed-loop supply chain
A supply chain designed to optimize both forward and reverse flows.

Measuring Supply Chain Performance

STUDENT TIP
If you can't measure it, you can't control it.

Like all other managers, supply chain managers require standards (or *metrics*, as they are often called) to evaluate performance. For example, the large grocery chain HEB tracks metrics such as total freight cost per $1 million of sales, errors and returns in distribution, and lead-time compliance. Lancers, a beverage dispenser manufacturer, tracks metrics such as on-time delivery percentage, defects per million, and lead time. We now introduce several financial-based inventory metrics.

Assets Committed to Inventory

LO 11.6 *Compute* the percentage of assets committed to inventory and inventory turnover

Supply chain managers make scheduling and quantity decisions that determine the assets committed to inventory. Three specific measures can be helpful here. The first is the amount of money invested in inventory, usually expressed as a percentage of assets, as shown in Equation (11-1) and Example 2:

$$\text{Percentage invested in inventory} = (\text{Average inventory investment}/\text{Total assets}) \times 100 \quad (11\text{-}1)$$

Example 2

TRACKING HOME DEPOT'S INVENTORY INVESTMENT

Home Depot's management wishes to track its investment in inventory as one of its performance measures. Recently, Home Depot had $11.4 billion invested in inventory and total assets of $44.4 billion.

APPROACH ▶ Determine the investment in inventory and total assets and then use Equation (11-1).

SOLUTION ▶ Percent invested in inventory $= (11.4/44.4) \times 100 = 25.7\%$

INSIGHT ▶ Over one-fourth of Home Depot assets are committed to inventory.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If Home Depot can drive its investment down to 20% of assets, how much money will it free up for other uses? [Answer: $11.4 - (44.4 \times 0.2) = \$2.52$ billion.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 11.5b, 11.6b

Inventory turnover
Cost of goods sold divided by average inventory.

TABLE 11.5
Inventory as Percentage of Total Assets (with examples of exceptional performance)

Manufacturer (Toyota 5%)	15%
Wholesale (Coca-Cola 2.9%)	34%
Restaurants (McDonald's .05%)	2.9%
Retail (Home Depot 25.7%)	27%

Specific comparisons with competitors may assist evaluation. Total assets committed to inventory in manufacturing approach 15%, in wholesale 34%, and retail 27%—with wide variations, depending on the specific business model, the business cycle, and management (see Table 11.5).

The second common measure of supply chain performance is *inventory turnover* (see Table 11.6). Its reciprocal, *weeks of supply*, is the third. **Inventory turnover** is computed on an annual basis, using Equation (11-2):

$$\text{Inventory turnover} = \text{Cost of goods sold}/\text{Average inventory investment} \quad (11\text{-}2)$$

Cost of goods sold is the cost to produce the goods or services sold for a given period. Inventory investment is the average inventory value for the same period. This may be the average of several periods of inventory or beginning and ending inventory added together and divided by 2. Often, average inventory investment is based on nothing more than the inventory investment at the end of the period—typically at year-end.[1]

In Example 3, we look at inventory turnover applied to PepsiCo.

Example 3

INVENTORY TURNOVER AT PEPSICO, INC.

PepsiCo, Inc., manufacturer and distributor of drinks, Frito-Lay, and Quaker Foods, provides the following in a recent annual report (shown here in $ billions). Determine PepsiCo's turnover.

Net revenue		$32.5
Cost of goods sold		$14.2
Inventory:		
Raw material inventory	$.74	
Work-in-process inventory	$.11	
Finished goods inventory	$.84	
Total average inventory investment		$1.69

APPROACH ▶ Use the inventory turnover computation in Equation (11-2) to measure inventory performance. Cost of goods sold is $14.2 billion. Total inventory is the sum of raw material at $.74 billion, work-in-process at $.11 billion, and finished goods at $.84 billion, for total average inventory investment of $1.69 billion.

SOLUTION ▶
$$\begin{aligned}\text{Inventory turnover} &= \text{Cost of goods sold}/\text{Average inventory investment}\\ &= 14.2/1.69\\ &= 8.4\end{aligned}$$

INSIGHT ▶ We now have a standard, popular measure by which to evaluate performance.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If Coca-Cola's cost of goods sold is $10.8 billion and inventory investment is $.76 billion, what is its inventory turnover? [Answer: 14.2.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 11.5a, 11.6c, 11.7

Weeks of supply, as shown in Example 4, may have more meaning in the wholesale and retail portions of the service sector than in manufacturing. It is computed below as the reciprocal of inventory turnover:

$$\text{Weeks of supply} = \text{Average inventory investment}/(\text{Annual cost of goods sold}/52 \text{ weeks}) \quad (11\text{-}3)$$

Example 4

DETERMINING WEEKS OF SUPPLY AT PEPSICO

Using the PepsiCo data in Example 3, management wants to know the weeks of supply.

APPROACH ▶ We know that inventory investment is $1.69 billion and that weekly sales equal annual cost of goods sold ($14.2 billion) divided by 52 = $14.2/52 = $.273 billion.

SOLUTION ▶ Using Equation (11-3), we compute weeks of supply as:

$$\text{Weeks of supply} = (\text{Average inventory investment}/\text{Average weekly cost of goods sold})$$
$$= 1.69/.273 = 6.19 \text{ weeks}$$

INSIGHT ▶ We now have a standard measurement by which to evaluate a company's continuing performance or by which to compare companies.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If Coca-Cola's average inventory investment is $.76 billion and its average weekly cost of goods sold is $.207 billion, what is the firm's weeks of supply? [Answer: 3.67 weeks.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 11.6a, 11.8

Supply chain management is critical in driving down inventory investment. The rapid movement of goods is key. Walmart, for example, has set the pace in the retailing sector with its world-renowned supply chain management. By doing so, it has established a competitive advantage. With its own truck fleet, distribution centers, and a state-of-the-art communication system, Walmart (with the help of its suppliers) replenishes store shelves an average of twice per week. Competitors resupply every other week. Economical and speedy resupply means both rapid response to product changes and customer preferences, as well as lower inventory investment. Similarly, while many manufacturers struggle to move inventory turnover up to 10 times per year, Dell Computer has inventory turns exceeding 90 and supply measured in *days*—not weeks. Supply chain management provides a competitive advantage when firms effectively respond to the demands of global markets and global sources.

TABLE 11.6
Examples of Annual Inventory Turnover

FOOD, BEVERAGE, RETAIL	
Anheuser Busch	15
Coca-Cola	14
Home Depot	5
McDonald's	112
MANUFACTURING	
Dell Computer	90
Johnson Controls	22
Toyota (overall)	13
Nissan (assembly)	150

Benchmarking the Supply Chain

While metric values convey their own meaning and are useful when compared to past data, another important use compares these values to those of benchmark firms. Several organizations and websites allow companies to submit their own data and receive reports on how they stack up against other firms in their own industry or against world-class firms from any industry. Table 11.7 provides a few examples of metric values for typical firms and for benchmark firms in the consumer packaged goods industry. World-class benchmarks are the result of well-managed supply chains that drive down costs, lead times, late deliveries, and shortages while improving service levels.

TABLE 11.7 Supply Chain Metrics in the Consumer Packaged Goods Industry

	TYPICAL FIRMS	BENCHMARK FIRMS
Order fill rate	71%	98%
Order fulfillment lead time (days)	7	3
Cash-to-cash cycle time (days)	100	30
Inventory days of supply	50	20

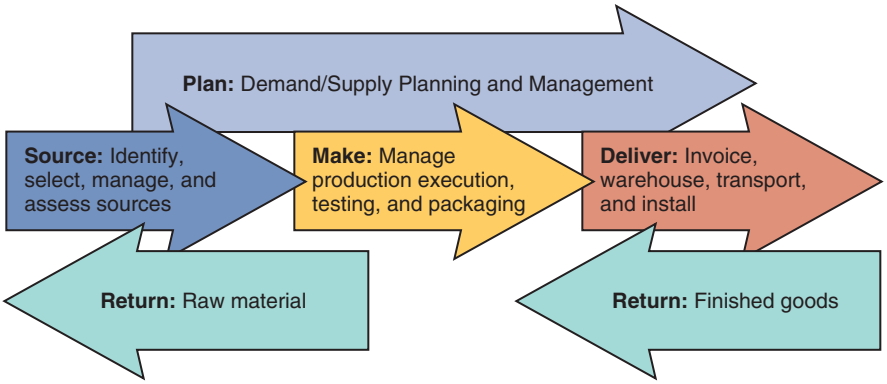
Source: Institute for Industrial Engineers

The SCOR Model

Supply Chain Operations Reference (SCOR) model
A set of processes, metrics, and best practices developed by the APICS Supply Chain Council.

Perhaps the best-known benchmarking system is the five-part **Supply Chain Operations Reference (SCOR) model**. As shown in Figure 11.4, the five parts are Plan (planning activities for supply and demand), Source (purchasing activities), Make (production activities), Deliver

Figure 11.4
The Supply Chain Operations Reference (SCOR) Model



(distribution activities), and Return (closed-loop supply chain activities). The system is maintained by the APICS Supply Chain Council (**www.apics.org/sites/apics-supply-chain-council**). Firms use SCOR to identify, measure, reorganize, and improve supply chain processes.

The SCOR model defines over 200 process elements, 550 measurable metrics, and 500 best practices. The best practices describe the techniques used by benchmark firms that have scored very well on the metrics. SCOR combines these metrics with "Performance Attributes" (see Table 11.8) to facilitate comparisons of companies that compete by using different strategies (for example, low cost vs. responsiveness).

TABLE 11.8 SCOR Model Metrics to Help Firms Benchmark Performance Against the Industry

PERFORMANCE ATTRIBUTE	SAMPLE METRIC	CALCULATION
Supply chain reliability	Perfect order fulfillment	(Total perfect orders)/(Total number of orders)
Supply chain responsiveness	Average order fulfillment cycle time	(Sum of actual cycle times for all orders delivered)/(Total number of orders delivered)
Supply chain agility	Upside supply chain flexibility	Time required to achieve an unplanned 20% increase in delivered quantities
Supply chain costs	Supply chain management cost	Cost to plan + Cost to source + Cost to deliver + Cost to return
Supply chain asset management	Cash-to-cash cycle time	Inventory days of supply + Days of receivables outstanding − Days of payables outstanding

Benchmarking can be very useful, but it is not always adequate for excellence in the supply chain. Audits based on continuing communication, understanding, trust, performance, and corporate strategy are necessary. The relationships should manifest themselves in the mutual belief that "we are in this together" and go well beyond written agreements.

Summary

Competition is now between supply chains. In order to succeed, collaboration between supply and distribution is required. For many firms, supply chain determines product cost, quality, and opportunities for responsiveness and differentiation. Good source tactics, thoughtful logistics plan, and active management of distribution network are needed. Managers must evaluate and skillfully manage supply chain performance for competitive advantage.

Key Terms

Supply chain management (p. 482)
Make-or-buy decision (p. 485)
Outsourcing (p. 485)
Vertical integration (p. 486)
Keiretsu (p. 486)
Virtual companies (p. 487)
Cross-sourcing (p. 488)
Bullwhip effect (p. 490)
Pull data (p. 490)
Single-stage control of replenishment (p. 490)
Vendor-managed inventory (VMI) (p. 490)
Collaborative planning, forecasting, and replenishment (CPFR) (p. 491)
Blanket order (p. 491)
Postponement (p. 491)
Drop shipping (p. 492)
E-procurement (p. 494)
Logistics management (p. 494)
Channel assembly (p. 495)
Reverse logistics (p. 498)
Closed-loop supply chain (p. 499)
Inventory turnover (p. 500)
Supply Chain Operations Reference (SCOR) model (p. 501)

Ethical Dilemma

As a buyer for a discount retail chain, you find yourself caught in a maelstrom. Just last month, your chain began selling an economy-priced line of clothing endorsed by a famous movie star. To be price competitive, you have followed the rest of the industry and sourced the clothing from a low-wage region of Asia. Initial sales have been brisk; however, the movie star has recently called you screaming and crying because an investigative news outlet has reported that the clothes with her name on them are being made by children.

Outraged, you fly to the outsourcing manufacturing facility only to find that conditions are not quite as clear-cut as the news had reported. You feel uncomfortable riding through the streets. Poverty is everywhere. Children are chasing foreigners and begging for money. When you enter the plant, you observe a very clean facility. The completely female workforce appears to be very industrious, but many of them do appear to be young. You confront the plant manager and explain your firm's strict international sourcing policies. You demand to know why these girls aren't in school. The manager provides the following response: "The truth is that some of these workers may be underage. We check IDs, but the use of falsified records is commonplace in this country. Plus, you don't understand the alternatives. If you shut this plant down, you will literally take food off the table for these families. There are no other opportunities in this town at this time, and there's no comprehensive welfare system in our country. As for the young women, school is not an option. In this town, only boys receive an education past the sixth grade. If you shut us down, these girls will be out on the street, begging, stealing, or prostituting themselves. Your business offers them a better existence. Please don't take that away!"

What do you say to your company, the movie star, the media, and the protestors picketing your stores? Is the best option to shut down and try someplace else?

Discussion Questions

1. Define *supply chain management*.
2. What are the objectives of supply chain management?
3. What is the objective of logistics management?
4. How do we distinguish between the types of risk in the supply chain?
5. What is vertical integration? Give examples of backward and forward integration.
6. What are three basic approaches to negotiations?
7. How does a traditional adversarial relationship with suppliers change when a firm makes a decision to move to a few suppliers?
8. What is the difference between postponement and channel assembly?
9. What is CPFR?
10. What is the value of online auctions in e-commerce?
11. Explain how FedEx uses the Internet to meet requirements for quick and accurate delivery.
12. How does Walmart use drop shipping?
13. What are blanket orders? How do they differ from invoiceless purchasing?
14. What can purchasing do to implement just-in-time deliveries?
15. What is e-procurement?
16. How does Darden Restaurants, described in the *Global Company Profile*, find competitive advantage in its supply chain?
17. What is SCOR, and what purpose does it serve?

Solved Problems

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM 11.1

Jack's Pottery Outlet has total end-of-year assets of $5 million. The first-of-the-year inventory was $375,000, with a year-end inventory of $325,000. The annual cost of goods sold was $7 million. The owner, Eric Jack, wants to evaluate his supply chain performance by measuring his percent of assets in inventory, his inventory turnover, and his weeks of supply. We use Equations (11-1), (11-2), and (11-3) to provide these measures.

SOLUTION

First, determine *average inventory*:

$$(\$375{,}000 + \$325{,}000)/2 = \$350{,}000$$

Then, use Equation (11-1) to determine percent invested in inventory:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Percent invested in inventory} &= (\text{Average inventory investment}/\text{Total assets}) \times 100\\ &= (350{,}000/5{,}000{,}000) \times 100\\ &= 7\%\end{aligned}$$

Third, determine inventory turnover, using Equation (11-2):

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Inventory turnover} &= \text{Cost of goods sold}/\text{Average inventory investment}\\ &= 7{,}000{,}000/350{,}000\\ &= 20\end{aligned}$$

Finally, to determine weeks of inventory, use Equation (11-3), adjusted to weeks:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Weeks of inventory} &= \text{Average inventory investment}/\text{Weekly cost of goods sold}\\ &= 350{,}000/(7{,}000{,}000/52)\\ &= 350{,}000/134{,}615\\ &= 2.6\end{aligned}$$

We conclude that Jack's Pottery Outlet has 7% of its assets invested in inventory, that the inventory turnover is 20, and that weeks of supply is 2.6.

Problems

Problems 11.1–11.3 relate to The Supply Chain's Strategic Importance

•• 11.1 Choose a local establishment that is a member of a relatively large chain. From interviews with workers and information from the Internet, identify the elements of the supply chain. Determine whether the supply chain supports a low-cost, rapid response, or differentiation strategy (refer to Chapter 2). Are the supply chain characteristics significantly different from one product to another?

••• 11.2 Hau Lee Furniture, Inc., described in Example 1 of this chapter, finds its current profit of $10,000 inadequate. The bank is insisting on an improved profit picture prior to approval of a loan for some new equipment. Hau would like to improve the profit line to $25,000 so he can obtain the bank's approval for the loan.

a) What percentage improvement is needed in the *supply chain strategy* for profit to improve to $25,000? What is the cost of material with a $25,000 profit?
b) What percentage improvement is needed in the *sales strategy* for profit to improve to $25,000? What must sales be for profit to improve to $25,000?

•••• 11.3 Kamal Fatehl, production manager of Kennesaw Manufacturing, finds his profit at $15,000 (as shown in the statement below)—inadequate for expanding his business. The bank is insisting on an improved profit picture prior to approval of a loan for some new equipment. Kamal would like to improve the profit line to $25,000 so he can obtain the bank's approval for the loan.

		% OF SALES
Sales	$250,000	100%
Cost of supply chain purchases	175,000	70%
Other production costs	30,000	12%
Fixed costs	30,000	12%
Profit	15,000	6%

a) What percentage improvement is needed in a *supply chain strategy* for profit to improve to $25,000? What is the cost of material with a $25,000 profit?
b) What percentage improvement is needed in a *sales strategy* for profit to improve to $25,000? What must sales be for profit to improve to $25,000? (*Hint:* See Example 1.)

Problem 11.4 relates to Six Sourcing Strategies

•• 11.4 Using sources from the Internet, identify some of the problems faced by a company of your choosing as it moves toward, or operates as, a virtual organization. Does its operating as a virtual organization simply exacerbate old problems, or does it create new ones?

Problems 11.5–11.8 relate to Measuring Supply Chain Performance

•• 11.5 The financial analysis of a manufacturing company for the previous year provided, among others, the following details:

Net revenue:	€50,000
Cost of goods sold:	€26,000

Value on hand:

- Raw material: €1500
- Work-in-process: €1200
- Finished goods: €2500

Evaluate:

a) the inventory turnover,
b) the weeks of supply.

•• 11.6 A company buys an item for €50 and sells it for €75. The annual sales and average stock of this item is 10000 units and 1600 units, respectively; while the carrying cost is 20 percent of its acquisition cost. Calculate:

a) inventory turnover
b) weeks of supply
c) annual gross profit
d) average investment in stock
e) annual inventory carrying cost

Would the company operate more efficiently, if average stock is reduced to 1000 units?

• 11.7 An excerpt from the last year's final annual report of Kalamia manufacturing company reported the information provided in the table.

Compute (a) inventory turnover and (b) weeks of supply, assuming an annual operation of 50 weeks and the cost of goods sold was €5,000,000.

CATEGORY	PART NO.	AVERAGE INVENTORY UNITS	UNIT VALUE €
Raw materials	RSI - 1	200	3
	RSI - 2	50	2
	RSI - 3	300	1
	RSI - 4	100	3, 5
Work-in-process	CSI - 1	50	10
	CSI - 2	250	15
Finished goods	FJ - 1	890	70
	FJ - 2	2000	77
	FJ - 3	870	90

••**11.8** A company has supplied the following data with respect to its three different types of fertilizers:

FERTILIZER	ANNUAL DEMAND SACKS	AVERAGE INVENTORY SACKS	COST PER SACK €
10-10-10	30000	5000	18
16-16-16	20000	3000	15
20-10-5	10000	2000	20

Calculate (assuming 50 sales weeks annually):
a) the inventory turnover and weeks of supply for each fertilizer
b) the average inventory turnover and average weeks of supply.

CASE STUDIES

Darden's Global Supply Chains

Video Case

Darden Restaurants (subject of the *Global Company Profile* at the beginning of this chapter), owner of popular brands such as Olive Garden and LongHorn Steakhouse, requires unique supply chains to serve more than 300 million meals annually. Darden's strategy is operations excellence, and Senior VP Jim Lawrence's task is to ensure competitive advantage via Darden's supply chains. For a firm with purchases exceeding $1.8 billion, managing the supply chains is a complex and challenging task.

Darden, like other casual dining restaurants, has unique supply chains that reflect its menu options. Darden's supply chains are rather shallow, often having just one tier of suppliers. But it has four distinct supply chains.

First, "smallware" is a restaurant industry term for items such as linens, dishes, tableware and kitchenware, and silverware. These are purchased, with Darden taking title as they are received at the Darden Direct Distribution (DDD) warehouse in Orlando, Florida. From this single warehouse, smallware items are shipped via common carrier (trucking companies) to Olive Garden, Bahama Breeze, and Seasons 52 restaurants.

Second, frozen, dry, and canned food products are handled economically by Darden's 11 distribution centers in North America, which are managed by major U.S. food distributors, such as MBM, Maines, and Sygma. This is Darden's second supply line.

Third, the fresh food supply chain (not frozen and not canned), where product life is measured in days, includes dairy products, produce, and meat. This supply chain is B2B, where restaurant managers directly place orders with a preselected group of independent suppliers.

Fourth, Darden's worldwide seafood supply chain is the final link. Here Darden has developed independent suppliers of salmon, shrimp, tilapia, scallops, and other fresh fish that are source inspected by Darden's overseas representatives to ensure quality. These fresh products are flown to the U.S. and shipped to 16 distributors, with 22 locations, for quick delivery to the restaurants. With suppliers in 35 countries, Darden must be on the cutting edge when it comes to collaboration, partnering, communication, and food safety. It does this with heavy travel schedules for purchasing and quality control personnel, native-speaking employees onsite, and aggressive communication. Communication is a critical element; Darden tries to develop as much forecasting transparency as possible. "Point of sale (POS) terminals," says Lawrence, "feed actual sales every night to suppliers."

Discussion Questions*

1. What are the advantages of each of Darden's four supply chains?
2. What are the complications of having four supply chains?
3. Where would you expect ownership/title to change in each of Darden's four supply chains?
4. How do Darden's four supply chains compare with those of other firms, such as Dell or an automobile manufacturer? Why do the differences exist, and how are they addressed?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before answering the questions.

Supply Chain Management at Regal Marine

Video Case

Like most other manufacturers, Regal Marine finds that it must spend a huge portion of its revenue on purchases. Regal has also found that the better its suppliers understand its end users, the better are both the supplier's product and Regal's final product. As one of the 10 largest U.S. power boat manufacturers, Regal is trying to differentiate its products from the vast number of boats supplied by 300 other companies. Thus, the firm works closely with suppliers to ensure innovation, quality, and timely delivery.

Regal has done a number of things to drive down costs while driving up quality, responsiveness, and innovation. First, working on partnering relationships with suppliers ranging from providers of windshields to providers of instrument panel controls, Regal has brought timely innovation at reasonable cost to its product. Key vendors are so tightly linked with the company that they meet with designers to discuss material changes to be incorporated into new product designs.

Second, the company has joined about 15 other boat manufacturers in a purchasing group, known as American Boat Builders Association, to work with suppliers on reducing the costs of large purchases. Third, Regal is working with a number of local vendors to supply hardware and fasteners directly to the assembly line on a just-in-time basis. In some of these cases, Regal has worked out an arrangement with the vendor so that title does not transfer until parts are used by Regal. In other cases, title transfers when items are delivered to the property. This practice drives down total inventory and the costs associated with large-lot delivery.

Finally, Regal works with a personnel agency to outsource part of the recruiting and screening process for employees. In all these cases, Regal is demonstrating innovative approaches to supply chain management that help the firm and, ultimately, the end user. The *Global Company Profile* featuring Regal Marine (which opens Chapter 5) provides further background on Regal's operations.

Discussion Questions*

1. What other techniques might Regal use to improve supply chain management?
2. What kind of response might members of the supply chain expect from Regal because of their "partnering" in the supply chain?
3. Why is supply chain management important to Regal?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before answering the questions.

Arnold Palmer Hospital's Supply Chain

Video Case

Arnold Palmer Hospital, one of the nation's top hospitals dedicated to serving women and children, is a large business with over 2,000 employees working in a 431-bed facility totaling 676,000 square feet in Orlando, Florida. Like many other hospitals, and other companies, Arnold Palmer Hospital had been a long-time member of a large buying group, one servicing 900 members. But the group did have a few limitations. For example, it might change suppliers for a particular product every year (based on a new lower-cost bidder) or stock only a product that was not familiar to the physicians at Arnold Palmer Hospital. The buying group was also not able to negotiate contracts with local manufacturers to secure the best pricing.

So in 2003, Arnold Palmer Hospital, together with seven other partner hospitals in central Florida, formed its own much smaller, but still powerful (with $200 million in annual purchases) Healthcare Purchasing Alliance (HPA) corporation. The new alliance saved the HPA members $7 million in its first year with two main changes. First, it was structured and staffed to ensure that the bulk of the savings associated with its contracting efforts went to its eight members. Second, it struck even better deals with vendors by guaranteeing a *committed* volume and signing not 1-year deals but 3- to 5-year contracts. "Even with a new internal cost of $400,000 to run HPA, the savings and ability to contract for what our member hospitals really want makes the deal a winner," says George DeLong, head of HPA.

Effective supply chain management in manufacturing often focuses on development of new product innovations and efficiency through buyer–vendor collaboration. However, the approach in a service industry has a slightly different emphasis. At Arnold Palmer Hospital, supply chain opportunities often manifest themselves through the Medical Economic Outcomes Committee. This committee (and its subcommittees) consists of users (including the medical and nursing staff) who evaluate purchase options with a goal of better medicine while achieving economic targets. For instance, the heart pacemaker negotiation by the cardiology subcommittee allowed for the standardization to two manufacturers, with annual savings of $2 million for just this one product.

Arnold Palmer Hospital is also able to develop custom products that require collaboration down to the third tier of the supply chain. This is the case with custom packs that are used in the operating room. The custom packs are delivered by a distributor, McKesson General Medical, but assembled by a pack company that uses materials the hospital wanted purchased from specific manufacturers. The HPA allows Arnold Palmer Hospital to be creative in this way. With major cost savings, standardization, blanket purchase orders, long-term contracts, and more control of product development, the benefits to the hospital are substantial.

Discussion Questions*

1. How does this supply chain differ from that in a manufacturing firm?
2. What are the constraints on making decisions based on economics alone at Arnold Palmer Hospital?
3. What role do doctors and nurses play in supply chain decisions in a hospital? How is this participation handled at Arnold Palmer Hospital?
4. Doctor Smith just returned from the Annual Physician's Orthopedic Conference, where she saw a new hip joint replacement demonstrated. She decides she wants to start using the replacement joint at Arnold Palmer Hospital. What process will Dr. Smith have to go through at the hospital to introduce this new product into the supply chain for future surgical use?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before answering these questions.

Endnote

1. Inventory quantities often fluctuate wildly, and various types of inventory exist (e.g., raw material; work-in-process; finished goods; and maintenance, repair, and operating supplies [MRO]). Therefore, care must be taken when using inventory values; they may reflect more than just supply chain performance.

Chapter 11 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
THE SUPPLY CHAIN'S STRATEGIC IMPORTANCE (pp. 482–484)	Most firms spend a huge portion of their sales dollars on purchases. ■ **Supply chain management**—Management of activities related to procuring materials and services, transforming them into intermediate goods and final products, and delivering them through a distribution system. *The objective is to build a chain of suppliers that focuses on maximizing value to the ultimate customer.* Competition is no longer between companies; it is between supply chains.	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4 Problems: 11.2–11.3 **VIDEO 11.1** Darden's Global Supply Chain
SOURCING ISSUES: MAKE-OR-BUY AND OUTSOURCING (pp. 484–485)	■ **Make-or-buy decision**—A choice between producing a component or service within the firm or purchasing it from an outside source. ■ **Outsourcing**—Transferring to external suppliers a firm's activities that have traditionally been internal.	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4
SIX SOURCING STRATEGIES (pp. 485–487)	Six supply chain strategies for goods and services to be obtained from outside sources are: 1. Negotiating with many suppliers and playing one supplier against another 2. Developing long-term partnering relationships with a few suppliers 3. Vertical integration 4. Joint ventures 5. Developing *keiretsu* networks 6. Developing virtual companies that use suppliers on an as-needed basis. ■ **Vertical integration**—Developing the ability to produce goods or services previously purchased or actually buying a supplier or a distributor. ■ ***Keiretsu***—A Japanese term that describes suppliers who become part of a company coalition. ■ **Virtual companies**—Companies that rely on a variety of supplier relationships to provide services on demand. Also known as hollow corporations or network companies.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4 **VIDEO 11.2** Supply Chain Management at Regal Marine
SUPPLY CHAIN RISK (pp. 487–489)	The development of a supply chain plan requires a thorough assessment of the risks involved. ■ **Cross-sourcing**—Using one supplier for a component and a second supplier for another component, where each supplier acts as a backup for the other.	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4
MANAGING THE INTEGRATED SUPPLY CHAIN (pp. 489–492)	Supply chain integration success begins with mutual agreement on goals, followed by mutual trust, and continues with compatible organizational cultures. Three issues complicate the development of an efficient, integrated supply chain: local optimization, incentives, and large lots. ■ **Bullwhip effect**—Increasing fluctuation in orders or cancellations that often occurs as orders move through the supply chain. ■ **Pull data**—Accurate sales data that initiate transactions to "pull" product through the supply chain. ■ **Single-stage control of replenishment**—Fixing responsibility for monitoring and managing inventory for the retailer. ■ **Vendor-managed inventory (VMI)**—A system in which a supplier maintains material for the buyer, often delivering directly to the buyer's using department. ■ **Collaborative planning, forecasting, and replenishment (CPFR)**—A system in which members of a supply chain share information in a joint effort to reduce supply chain costs. ■ **Blanket order**—A long-term purchase commitment to a supplier for items that are to be delivered against short-term releases to ship. The purchasing department should make special efforts to increase levels of standardization. ■ **Postponement**—Delaying any modifications or customization to a product as long as possible in the production process. Postponement strives to minimize internal variety while maximizing external variety. ■ **Drop shipping**—Shipping directly from the supplier to the end consumer rather than from the seller, saving both time and reshipping costs. Online catalogs move companies from a multitude of individual phone calls, faxes, and e-mails to a centralized online system and drive billions of dollars of waste out of the supply chain.	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.4 **VIDEO 11.3** Arnold Palmer Hospital's Supply Chain
BUILDING THE SUPPLY BASE (pp. 492–494)	Supplier selection is a four-stage process: (1) supplier evaluation, (2) supplier development, (3) negotiations, and (4) contracting. *Supplier evaluation* involves finding potential vendors and determining the likelihood of their becoming good suppliers. *Supplier development* may include everything from training, to engineering and production help, to procedures for information transfer.	Concept Questions: 6.1–6.4

Chapter 11 *Rapid* Review *continued*

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
	Negotiations involve approaches taken by supply chain personnel to set prices. Three classic types of negotiation strategies are (1) the cost-based price model, (2) the market-based price model, and (3) competitive bidding. *Contracting* involves a design to share risks, share benefits, and create incentives so as to optimize the whole supply chain. ■ **E-procurement**—Purchasing facilitated through the Internet.	
LOGISTICS MANAGEMENT (pp. 494–497)	■ **Logistics management**—An approach that seeks efficiency of operations through the integration of all material acquisition, movement, and storage activities. Six major means of distribution are trucking, railroads, airfreight, waterways, pipelines, and multimodal. The vast majority of manufactured goods move by truck. Third-party logistics involves the outsourcing of the logistics function. ■ **Channel assembly**—A system that postpones final assembly of a product so the distribution channel can assemble it.	Concept Questions: 7.1–7.4
DISTRIBUTION MANAGEMENT (p. 497)	Distribution management focused on the outbound flow of final products. Total logistics costs are the sum of facility costs, inventory costs, and transportation costs (Figure 11.3). The optimal number of distribution facilities focuses on maximizing profit.	Concept Questions: 8.1–8.4
ETHICS AND SUSTAINABLE SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT (pp. 498–499)	Ethics includes personal ethics, ethics within the supply chain, and ethical behavior regarding the environment. The Institute for Supply Management has developed a set of Principles and Standards for ethical conduct. ■ **Reverse logistics**—The process of sending returned products back up the supply chain for value recovery or disposal. ■ **Closed-loop supply chain**—A supply chain designed to optimize all forward and reverse flows.	Concept Questions: 9.1–9.4
MEASURING SUPPLY CHAIN PERFORMANCE (pp. 499–502)	Typical supply chain benchmark metrics include lead time, time spent placing an order, percent of late deliveries, percent of rejected material, and number of shortages per year: Percent invested in inventory = (Average inventory investment/Total assets) × 100 (11-1) ■ **Inventory turnover**—Cost of goods sold divided by average inventory: Inventory turnover = Cost of goods sold ÷ Average inventory investment (11-2) Weeks of supply = Average inventory investment ÷ (Annual cost of goods sold/52 weeks) (11-3) ■ **Supply Chain Operations Reference (SCOR) model**—A set of processes, metrics, and best practices developed by the APICS Supply Chain Council. The five parts of the SCOR model are Plan, Source, Make, Deliver, and Return.	Concept Questions: 10.1–10.4 Problems: 11.5–11.8 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 11.1

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 11.1 The objective of supply chain management is to _____.

LO 11.2 CPFR systems perform a number of supply chain processes such as development of:
- **a)** a replenishment plan
- **b)** joint forecasts
- **c)** joint production plans
- **d)** all of the above

LO 11.3 The bullwhip effect can be aggravated by:
- **a)** local optimization.
- **b)** sales incentives.
- **c)** quantity discounts.
- **d)** promotions.
- **e)** all of the above.

LO 11.4 Important advantages of VMI are:
- **a)** the vendor has more control over its products
- **b)** collaboration between vendor and customer
- **c)** cost reduction
- **d)** all of the above
- **e)** none of the above

LO 11.5 Postponement strategy:
- **a)** known as late customization
- **b)** gives rise to product differentiation
- **c)** gives rise to economies of scale and scope
- **d)** is applied to cope with product variety
- **e)** resequences processes
- **f)** all of the above

LO 11.6 Inventory turnover =
- **a)** Cost of goods sold ÷ Weeks of supply
- **b)** Weeks of supply ÷ Annual cost of goods sold
- **c)** Annual cost of goods sold ÷ 52 weeks
- **d)** Average inventory investment ÷ Cost of goods sold
- **e)** Cost of goods sold ÷ Average inventory investment

Answers: LO 11.1. build a chain of suppliers that focuses on maximizing value to the ultimate customer; LO 11.2. d; LO 11.3. e; LO 11.4. d; LO 11.5. f; LO 11.6. e.

Supply Chain Modelling

11 SUPPLEMENT

SUPPLEMENT OUTLINE

- Techniques for Evaluating Supply Chains *510*
- Evaluating Disaster Risk in the Supply Chain *510*
- Managing the Bullwhip Effect *512*
- Supplier Selection Analysis *514*
- Transportation Mode Analysis *515*
- Warehouse Storage *516*

Alaska Airlines

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO S11.1 ***Use*** a decision tree to determine the best number of suppliers to manage disaster risk 510

LO S11.2 ***Explain*** and measure the bullwhip effect 513

LO S11.3 ***Describe*** the factor-weighting approach to supplier evaluation 515

LO S11.4 ***Evaluate*** cost-of-shipping alternatives 516

LO S11.5 ***Allocate*** items to storage locations in a warehouse 517

The 2011 Tōhoku earthquake and tsunami devastated eastern sections of Japan. The economic impact was felt around the globe, as manufacturers had been relying heavily—in some cases exclusively—on suppliers located in the affected zones. In the month immediately following the earthquake, the Japanese-built vehicle outputs for both Toyota and Honda were down 63%. Plants in other countries ceased or reduced operations due to part shortages. Manufacturers in several industries worldwide took 6 months or longer before they saw their supply chains working normally again. Although disasters such as this one occur relatively infrequently, supply chain managers should consider their probabilities and repercussions when determining the makeup of the supply base.

mTaira/Shutterstock

Techniques for Evaluating Supply Chains

Many supply chain metrics exist that can be used to evaluate performance within a company as well as for its supply chain partners. This supplement introduces five techniques that are aimed at ways to build and evaluate performance of the supply chain.

Evaluating Disaster Risk in the Supply Chain

Disasters that disrupt supply chains can take many forms, including tornadoes, fires, hurricanes, typhoons, tsunamis, earthquakes, and terrorism. When you are deciding whether to purchase collision insurance for your car, the amount of insurance must be weighed against the probability of a minor accident occurring and the potential financial worst-case scenario if an accident happens (e.g., "totaling" of the car). Similarly, firms often use multiple suppliers for important components to mitigate the risks of total supply disruption.

LO S11.1 *Use* a decision tree to determine the best number of suppliers to manage disaster risk

As shown in Example S1, a decision tree can be used to help operations managers make this important decision regarding the number of suppliers. We will use the following notation for a given supply cycle:

S = the probability of a "super-event" that would disrupt *all* suppliers simultaneously

U = the probability of a "unique-event" that would disrupt only one supplier

L = the financial loss incurred in a supply cycle if *all* suppliers were disrupted

C = the marginal cost of managing a supplier

All suppliers will be disrupted simultaneously if either the super-event occurs or the super-event does not occur but a unique-event occurs for all of the suppliers. Assuming that the probabilities are all independent of each other, the probability of all n suppliers being disrupted simultaneously equals:

$$P(n) = S + (1 - S)U^n \qquad \text{(S11-1)}$$

Example S1

HOW MANY SUPPLIERS ARE BEST FOR MANAGING RISK?

Xiaotian Geng, president of Shanghai Manufacturing Corp., wants to create a portfolio of suppliers for the motors used in her company's products that will represent a reasonable balance between costs and risks. While she knows that the single-supplier approach has many potential benefits with respect to quality management and just-in-time production, she also worries about the risk of fires, natural disasters, or other catastrophes at supplier plants disrupting her firm's performance. Based on historical data and climate and geological forecasts, Xiaotian estimates the probability of a "super-event" that would negatively impact all suppliers simultaneously to be 0.5% (i.e., probability = 0.005) during the supply cycle. She further estimates the "unique-event" risk for any of the potential suppliers to be 4% (probability = .04). Assuming that the marginal cost of managing an additional supplier is $10,000, and the financial loss incurred if a disaster caused all suppliers to be down simultaneously is $10,000,000, how many suppliers should Xiaotian use? Assume that up to three nearly identical suppliers are available.

APPROACH ▶ Use of a decision tree seems appropriate, as Shanghai Manufacturing Corp. has the basic data: a choice of decisions, probabilities, and payoffs (costs).

SOLUTION ▶ We draw a decision tree (Figure S11.1) with a branch for each of the three decisions (one, two, or three suppliers), assign the respective probabilities [using Equation (S11-1)] and payoffs for each branch, and then compute the respective expected monetary values (EMVs). The EMVs have been identified at each step of the decision tree.

Using Equation (S11-1), the probability of a total disruption equals:

One supplier: $0.005 + (1 - 0.005)0.04 = 0.005 + 0.0398 = 0.044800$, or 4.4800%

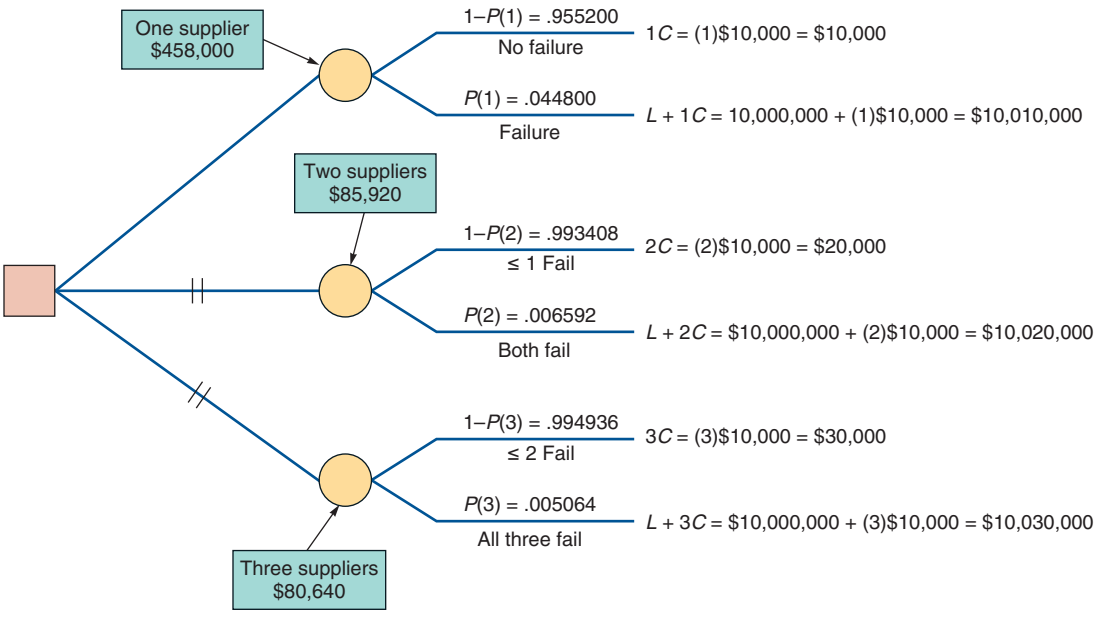
Two suppliers: $0.005 + (1 - 0.005)0.04^2 = 0.005 + 0.001592 = 0.006592$, or 0.6592%

Three suppliers: $0.005 + (1 - 0.005)0.04^3 = 0.005 + 0.000064 = 0.005064$, or 0.5064%

INSIGHT ▶ Even with significant supplier management costs and unlikely probabilities of disaster, a large enough financial loss incurred during a total supplier shutdown will suggest that multiple suppliers may be needed.

Figure **S11.1**

Decision Tree for Selection of Suppliers Under Risk



LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Suppose that the probability of a super-event increases to 50%. How many suppliers are needed now? [Answer: 2.] Using the 50% probability of a super-event, suppose that the financial loss of a complete supplier shutdown drops to $500,000. Now how many suppliers are needed? [Answer: 1.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S11.1, S11.2, S11.3, S11.4, S11.5

An interesting implication of Equation (S11-1) is that as the probability of a super-event (S) increases, the advantage of utilizing multiple suppliers diminishes (all would be knocked out anyway). On the other hand, large values of the unique event (U) increase the likelihood of needing more suppliers. These two phenomena taken together suggest that when multiple suppliers are used, managers may consider using ones that are geographically dispersed to lessen the probability of all failing simultaneously.

Managing the Bullwhip Effect

Figure S11.2 provides an example of the *bullwhip effect*, which describes the tendency for larger order size fluctuations as orders are relayed to the supply chain from retailers. "Bullwhip" fluctuations create unstable production schedules, resulting in expensive capacity change adjustments such as overtime, subcontracting, extra inventory, backorders, hiring and laying off of workers, equipment additions, underutilization, longer lead times, or obsolescence of overproduced items.

Procter & Gamble found that although the use of Pampers diapers was steady and the retail-store orders had little fluctuation, as orders moved through the supply chain, fluctuations increased. By the time orders were initiated for raw material, the variability was substantial. Similar behavior has been observed and documented at many companies, including Campbell Soup, Hewlett-Packard, Barilla SpA, and Applied Materials.

The bullwhip effect can occur when orders decrease as well as when they increase. Table S11.1 identifies some of the major causes and remedies of the bullwhip effect. Often the human tendency to overreact to stimuli causes managers to make decisions that exacerbate the phenomenon. The overarching solution to the bullwhip effect is simply for supply-chain members to share information and work together, as in the *OM in Action* box "RFID Helps Control the Bullwhip."

Supplier coordination can help with demand shifts. During the recent worldwide recession, but prior to experiencing the economic recovery and increasing sales, Caterpillar started ordering more supplies. It also worked proactively with its suppliers to prepare them for a sharp increase in output. Caterpillar visited key suppliers individually. In some cases it helped suppliers obtain bank financing at favorable rates. As part of Caterpillar's risk assessment activities, suppliers had to submit written plans describing their ability to ramp production back up once the economy improved. Careful, coordinated planning can help alleviate shortages and delays that might otherwise occur as the bullwhip snaps back upward.

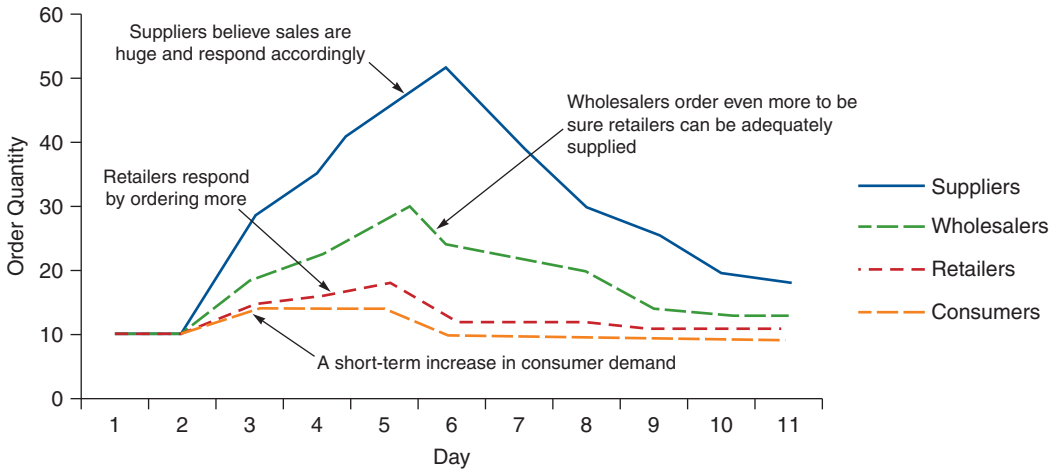


Figure **S11.2**

The Bullwhip Effect

The bullwhip effect causes members of the supply chain to overreact to changes in demand at the retail level. Minor demand changes at the consumer level may result in large ones at the supplier level.

TABLE S11.1 The Bullwhip Effect

CAUSE	REMEDY
Demand forecast errors (cumulative uncertainty in the supply chain)	Share demand information throughout the supply chain.
Order batching (large, infrequent orders leading suppliers to order even larger amounts)	Channel coordination: Determine lot sizes as though the full supply chain was one company.
Price fluctuations (buying in advance of demand to take advantage of low prices, discounts, or sales)	Price stabilization (everyday low prices).
Shortage gaming (hoarding supplies for fear of a supply shortage)	Allocate orders based on past demand.

A Bullwhip Effect Measure

LO S11.2 *Explain* and measure the bullwhip effect

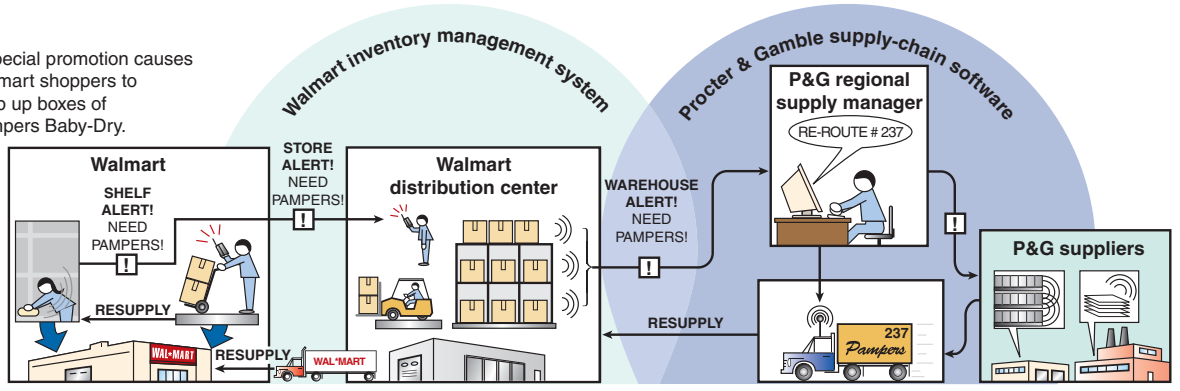
A straightforward way to analyze the extent of the bullwhip effect at any link in the supply chain is to calculate the *bullwhip measure*:

$$\text{Bullwhip} = \frac{\text{Variance of orders}}{\text{Variance of demand}} = \frac{\sigma^2_{\text{orders}}}{\sigma^2_{\text{demand}}} \qquad \text{(S11-2)}$$

Variance *amplification* (i.e., the bullwhip effect) is present if the bullwhip measure is greater than 1. This means the size of a company's orders fluctuate more than the size of its incoming demand. If the measure equals 1, then no amplification is present. A value less than 1 would imply a *smoothing* or *dampening* scenario as orders move up the supply chain toward suppliers. Example S2 illustrates how to use Equation (S11-2) to analyze the extent of the bullwhip effect at each stage in the supply chain.

OM in Action RFID Helps Control the Bullwhip

Supply chains work smoothly when sales are steady, but often break down when confronted by a sudden surge or rapid drop in demand. Radio frequency ID (RFID) tags can change that by providing real-time information about what's happening on store shelves. Here's how the system works for Procter & Gamble's (P&G's) Pampers.



2. Each box of Pampers has an RFID tag. Shelf-mounted scanners alert the stockroom of urgent need for restock.

3. Walmart's inventory management system tracks and links its in-store stock and its warehouse stock, prompting quicker replenishment and providing accurate real-time data.

4. Walmart's systems are linked to the P&G supply-chain management system. Demand spikes reported by RFID tags are immediately visible throughout the supply chain.

5. P&G's logistics software tracks its trucks with GPS locators, and tracks their contents with RFID tag readers. Regional managers can reroute trucks to fill urgent needs.

6. P&G suppliers also use RFID tags and readers on their raw materials, giving P&G visibility several tiers down the supply chain, and giving suppliers the ability to accurately forecast demand and production.

Sources: *Supply Chain Digest* (July 21, 2012); *Arkansas Business* (July 2, 2012); and *Business 2.0* (May 2002).

The U.S. *Cash for Clunkers* program produced an unintended bullwhip effect in the automobile industry. In an effort to stimulate the economy and improve fuel efficiency, the U.S. offered attractive rebates for trading old cars in exchange for new, more fuel-efficient vehicles. The $3 billion, 8-week program proved to be very popular with consumers. Fearing a shortage and assuming that they would not receive 100% of their orders, some dealers inflated orders for new cars to try to receive a larger pool of allocated vehicles. In one month, *Cash for Clunkers* increased demand by 50% for automakers, many of whom had already cut capacity significantly. Almost overnight, manufacturers and parts suppliers had to transform from a shift reduction mode to an overtime mode.

Paul Brennan/Shutterstock

Example S2

CALCULATING THE BULLWHIP EFFECT

Chieh Lee Metals, Inc. orders sheet metal and transforms it into 50 formed tabletops that are sold to furniture manufacturers. The table below shows the weekly variance of demand and orders for each major company in this supply chain for tables. Each firm has one supplier and one customer, so the order variance for one firm will equal the demand variance for its supplier. Analyze the relative contributions to the bullwhip effect in this supply chain.

FIRM	VARIANCE OF DEMAND	VARIANCE OF ORDERS	BULLWHIP MEASURE
Furniture Mart, Inc.	100	110	110/100 = 1.10
Furniture Distributors, Inc.	110	180	180/110 = 1.64
Furniture Makers of America	180	300	300/180 = 1.67
Chieh Lee Metals, Inc.	300	750	750/300 = 2.50
Metal Suppliers Ltd.	750	2000	2000/750 = 2.67

APPROACH ▶ Use Equation (S11-2) to calculate the bullwhip measure for each firm in the chain.

SOLUTION ▶ The last column of the table displays the bullwhip measure for each firm.

INSIGHT ▶ This supply chain exhibits a classic bullwhip effect. Despite what might be a very stable demand pattern at the retail level, order sizes to suppliers vary significantly. Chieh Lee should attempt to identifiy the causes for her own firm's order amplification, and she should attempt to work with her supply chain partners to try to reduce amplification at every level of the chain.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Suppose that Chieh Lee is able to reduce her bullwhip measure from 2.50 to 1.20. If the measure for all other firms remained the same, what would be the new reduced variance of orders from Metal Suppliers? [Answer: 961.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S11.6, S11.7, S11.8, S11.9

STUDENT TIP The factor-weighting model adds objectivity to decision making.

Supplier Selection Analysis

Selecting suppliers from among a multitude of candidates can be a daunting task. Choosing suppliers simply based on the lowest bid has become a somewhat rare approach. Various, sometimes competing, factors often play a role in the decision. Buyers may consider such supplier characteristics as product quality, delivery speed, delivery reliability, customer service, and financial performance.

The *factor-weighting* technique, presented here, simultaneously considers multiple supplier criteria. Each factor must be assigned an importance *weight,* and then each potential supplier is *scored* on each factor. The weights typically sum to 100%. Factors are scored using the same scale (e.g., 1–10). Sometimes a key is provided for supplier raters that converts qualitative ratings into numerical scores (e.g., "Very good" = 8). Example S3 illustrates the weighted criteria in comparing two competing suppliers.

LO S11.3 *Describe* the factor-weighting approach to supplier evaluation

Example S3

FACTOR-WEIGHTING APPROACH TO SUPPLIER EVALUATION

Erick Davis, president of Creative Toys in Palo Alto, California, is interested in evaluating suppliers who will work with him to make nontoxic, environmentally friendly paints and dyes for his line of children's toys. This is a critical strategic element of his supply chain, and he desires a firm that will contribute to his product.

APPROACH ► Erick has narrowed his choices to two suppliers: Faber Paint and Smith Dye. He will use the factor-weighting approach to supplier evaluation to compare the two.

SOLUTION ► Erick develops the following list of selection criteria. He then assigns the weights shown to help him perform an objective review of potential suppliers. His staff assigns the scores and computes the total weighted score.

		FABER PAINT		*SMITH DYE*	
CRITERION	WEIGHT	SCORE (1–5) (5 HIGHEST)	WEIGHT × SCORE	SCORE (1–5) (5 HIGHEST)	WEIGHT × SCORE
Engineering/innovation skills	.20	5	1.0	5	1.0
Production process capability	.15	4	0.6	5	0.75
Distribution capability	.05	4	0.2	3	0.15
Quality performance	.10	2	0.2	3	0.3
Facilities/location	.05	2	0.1	3	0.15
Financial strength	.15	4	0.6	5	0.75
Information systems	.10	2	0.2	5	0.5
Integrity	.20	5	1.0	3	0.6
Total	1.00		3.9		4.2

Smith Dye received the higher score of 4.2 and, based on this analysis, would be the preferred vendor.

INSIGHT ► The use of a factor-weighting approach can help firms systematically identify the features that are important to them and evaluate potential suppliers in an objective manner. A certain degree of subjectivity remains in the process, however, with regard to the criteria chosen, the weights applied to those criteria, and the supplier scores that are applied to each criterion.

LEARNING EXERCISE ► If Erick believes that integrity should be twice as important while production process capability and financial strength should both only be 1/3 as important, how does the analysis change? [Answer: Faber Paint's score becomes 4.1, while Smith Dye's score becomes 3.8, so Faber Paint is now the preferred vendor.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ► S11.10, S11.11, S11.12 (S11.13 is available in MyOMLab)

Transportation Mode Analysis

The longer a product is in transit, the longer the firm has its money invested. But faster shipping is usually more expensive than slow shipping. A simple way to obtain some insight into this trade-off is to evaluate holding cost against shipping options. We do this in Example S4.

Example S4

DETERMINING DAILY COST OF HOLDING

A shipment of new connectors for semiconductors needs to go from San Jose to Singapore for assembly. The value of the connectors is $1,750, and holding cost is 40% per year. One airfreight carrier can ship the connectors 1 day faster than its competitor, at an extra cost of $20.00. Which carrier should be selected?

APPROACH ▶ First we determine the daily holding cost and then compare the daily holding cost with the cost of faster shipment.

SOLUTION ▶ Daily cost of holding the product = (Annual holding cost × Product value)/365

$$= (.40 \times \$1{,}750)/365$$

$$= \$1.92$$

LO S11.4 *Evaluate* cost-of-shipping alternatives

Because the cost of saving one day is $20.00, which is much more than the daily holding cost of $1.92, we decide on the less costly of the carriers and take the extra day to make the shipment. This saves $18.08 ($20.00 − $1.92).

INSIGHT ▶ The solution becomes radically different if the 1-day delay in getting the connectors to Singapore delays delivery (making a customer angry) or delays payment of a $150,000 final product. (Even 1 day's interest on $150,000 or an angry customer makes a savings of $18.08 insignificant.)

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the holding cost is 100% per year, what is the decision? [Answer: Even with a holding cost of $4.79 per day, the less costly carrier is selected.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ S11.14, S11.15, S11.16, S11.17

Example S4 looks only at holding cost versus shipping cost. For the operations or logistics manager there are many other considerations, including ensuring *on-time delivery*, coordinating shipments to maintain a schedule, getting a new product to market, and keeping a customer happy. Estimates of these other costs can be added to the estimate of the daily holding cost. Determining the impact and cost of these considerations makes the evaluation of shipping alternatives a challenging OM task.

Warehouse Storage

Storage represents a significant step for many items as they travel through their respective supply chains. The U.S. alone has more than 13,000 buildings dedicated to warehouse and storage. Some exceed the size of several connected football fields. In fact, more than 35% have over 100,000 square feet of floor space.

Care should be taken when determining which items to store in various locations in a warehouse. In large warehouses in particular, hundreds or thousands of trips are made each day along very long aisles. Proper placement of items can improve efficiency by shaving significant travel time for workers. In Example S5, we observe a simple way to determine storage locations in a warehouse.

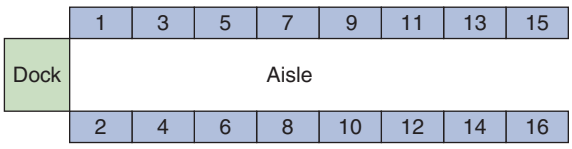
Example S5

DETERMINING STORAGE LOCATIONS IN A WAREHOUSE

Erika Marsillac manages a warehouse for a local chain of specialty hardware stores. As seen in Figure S11.3, the single-aisle rectangular warehouse has a dock for pickup and delivery, along with 16 equal-sized storage blocks for inventory items.

Figure **S11.3**

Storage Locations in the Warehouse



LO S11.5 *Allocate* items to storage locations in a warehouse

The following table shows: (1) the category of each item stored in the warehouse, (2) the estimated number of times per month (trips) that workers need to either store or retrieve those items, and (3) the area (number of specialized blocks) required to store the items. Erika wishes to assign items to the storage blocks to minimize average distance traveled.

ITEM	MONTHLY TRIPS TO STORAGE	BLOCKS OF STORAGE SPACE NEEDED
Lumber	600	5
Paint	260	2
Tools	150	3
Small hardware	400	2
Chemical bags	90	3
Lightbulbs	220	1

APPROACH ► For each item, calculate the ratio of the number of trips to blocks of storage area needed. Rank the items according to this ratio, and place the *highest*-ranked items closest to the dock.

SOLUTION ► The following table calculates the ratio for each item and ranks the items from highest to lowest. Based on the ranking, items are assigned to the remaining blocks that are as close to the dock as possible. (Where applicable, given a choice between two equidistant blocks, items should be placed next to items of the same type rather than across the aisle from them.)

ITEM	TRIPS/BLOCKS	RANKING	ASSIGNED BLOCKS
Lumber	600/5 = 120	4	6, 7, 8, 9, 10
Paint	260/2 = 130	3	3, 5
Tools	150/3 = 50	5	11, 12, 13
Small hardware	400/2 = 200	2	2, 4
Chemical bags	90/3 = 30	6	14, 15, 16
Lightbulbs	220/1 = 220	1	1

INSIGHT ► This procedure allocates items with the highest "bang-for-the-buck" first. The "bang" (value) here is the number of trips. Because we want to minimize travel, we would like to place items with high-frequency visits near the front. The storage space represents the "buck" (cost). We want items that take up a lot of space moved toward the back because if they were placed near the front, we would have to travel past their multiple blocks every time we needed to store or retrieve an item from a different category. This bang versus buck trade-off is neatly accommodated by using the trips/blocks ratio (column 2 of the solution table). In this example, even though lumber has the highest number of trips, the lumber takes up so much storage space that it is placed further back, toward the middle of the warehouse.

LEARNING EXERCISE ► Order frequency for paint is expected to increase to 410 trips per month. How will that change the storage plan? [Answer: Paint and small hardware will switch storage locations.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ► S11.18, S11.19, S11.20

Summary

Myriad tools have been developed to help supply-chain managers make well-informed decisions. We have provided a small sampling in this supplement. A decision tree can help determine the best number of suppliers to protect against supply disruption from potential disasters. The bullwhip measure can identify each supply chain member's contribution to exacerbating ordering fluctuations. The factor-weighting approach can be used to help select suppliers based on multiple criteria. Inventory holding costs can be computed for various shipping alternatives to better compare their overall cost impact. Finally, items can be ranked according to the ratio of (trips/blocks of storage) to determine their best placement in a warehouse.

Discussion Questions

1. What is the difference between "unique-event" risk and "super-event" risk?
2. If the probability of a "super-event" increases, does the "unique-event" risk increase or decrease in importance? Why?
3. If the probability of a "super-event" decreases, what happens to the likelihood of needing multiple suppliers?
4. Describe some ramifications of the bullwhip effect.
5. Describe causes of the bullwhip effect and their associated remedies.
6. Describe how the bullwhip measure can be used to analyze supply chains.
7. Describe some potentially useful categories to include in a factor-weighting analysis for supplier selection.
8. Describe some potential pitfalls in relying solely on the results of a factor-weighting analysis for supplier selection.
9. Describe some disadvantages of using a slow shipping method.
10. Besides warehouse layout decisions, what are some other applications where ranking items according to "bang/buck" might make sense?

Solved Problems

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM S11.1

Jon Jackson Manufacturing is searching for suppliers for its new line of equipment. Jon has narrowed his choices to two sets of suppliers. Believing in diversification of risk, Jon would select two suppliers under each choice. However, he is still concerned about the risk of both suppliers failing at the same time. The "San Francisco option" uses both suppliers in San Francisco. Both are stable, reliable, and profitable firms, so Jon calculates the "unique-event" risk for either of them to be 0.5%. However, because San Francisco is in an earthquake zone, he estimates the probability of an event that would knock out both suppliers to be 2%. The "North American option" uses one supplier in Canada and another in Mexico. These are upstart firms; John calculates the "unique-event" risk for either of them to be 10%. But he estimates the "super-event" probability that would knock out both of these suppliers to be only 0.1%. Purchasing costs would be $500,000 per year using the San Francisco option and $510,000 per year using the North American option. A total disruption would create an annualized loss of $800,000. Which option seems best?

SOLUTION

Using Equation (S11-1), the probability of a total disruption (i.e., the probability of incurring the $800,000 loss) equals:

$$\text{San Francisco option: } 0.02 + (1 - 0.02)0.005^2 = 0.02 + 0.0000245 = 0.0200245, \text{ or } 2.00245\%$$

$$\text{North American option: } 0.001 + (1 - 0.001)0.1^2 = 0.001 + 0.0099 = 0.01099, \text{ or } 1.099\%$$

$$\text{Total annual expected costs} = \text{Annual purchasing costs} + \text{Expected annualized disruption costs}$$

$$\text{San Francisco option: } \$500{,}000 + \$800{,}000(0.0200245) = \$500{,}000 + \$16{,}020 = \$516{,}020$$

$$\text{North American option: } \$510{,}000 + \$800{,}000(0.01099) = \$510{,}000 + \$8{,}792 = \$518{,}792$$

In this case, the San Francisco option appears to be slightly cheaper.

SOLVED PROBLEM S11.2

Over the past 10 weeks, demand for gears at Michael's Metals has been 140, 230, 100, 175, 165, 220, 200, and 178. Michael has placed weekly orders of 140, 250, 90, 190, 140, 240, 190, and 168 units.

The sample variance of a data set can be found by using the VAR.S function in Excel or by plugging each value (x) of the data set into the formula: Variance $= \dfrac{\Sigma(x - \bar{x})^2}{(n - 1)}$, where $\bar{x}$ is the mean of the data set and n is the number of values in the set. Using Equation (S11-2), calculate the bullwhip measure for Michael's Metals over the 10-week period.

SOLUTION

$$\text{Mean demand} = (140 + 230 + 100 + 175 + 165 + 220 + 200 + 178)/8 = 1{,}408/8 = 176$$

Variance of demand

$$= \frac{(140 - 176)^2 + (230 - 176)^2 + (100 - 176)^2 + (175 - 176)^2 + (165 - 176)^2 + (220 - 176)^2 + (200 - 176)^2 + (178 - 176)^2}{(8 - 1)}$$

$$= \frac{36^2 + 54^2 + 76^2 + 1^2 + 11^2 + 44^2 + 24^2 + 2^2}{7} = \frac{1{,}296 + 2{,}916 + 5{,}776 + 1 + 121 + 1{,}936 + 576 + 4}{7}$$

$$= \frac{12{,}626}{7} = 1{,}804$$

$$\text{Mean orders} = (140 + 250 + 90 + 190 + 140 + 240 + 190 + 168)/8 = 1{,}408/8 = 176$$

Variance of orders

$$= \frac{(140 - 176)^2 + (250 - 176)^2 + (90 - 176)^2 + (190 - 176)^2 + (140 - 176)^2 + (240 - 176)^2 + (190 - 176)^2 + (168 - 176)^2}{(8 - 1)}$$

$$= \frac{36^2 + 74^2 + 86^2 + 14^2 + 36^2 + 64^2 + 14^2 + 8^2}{7} = \frac{1{,}296 + 5{,}476 + 7{,}396 + 196 + 1{,}296 + 4{,}096 + 196 + 64}{7}$$

$$= \frac{20{,}016}{7} = 2{,}859$$

From Equation (S11-2), the bullwhip measure = 2,859/1,804 = 1.58.
Since 1.58 > 1, Michael's Metals is contributing to the bullwhip effect in its supply chain.

SOLVED PROBLEM S11.3

Victor Pimentel, purchasing manager of Office Supply Center of Mexico, is searching for a new supplier for its paper. The most important supplier criteria for Victor include paper quality, delivery reliability, customer service, and financial condition, and he believes that paper quality is twice as important as each of the other three criteria. Victor has narrowed the choice to two suppliers, and his staff has rated each supplier on each criterion (using a scale of 1 to 100, with 100 being highest), as shown in the following table:

	PAPER QUALITY	DELIVERY RELIABILITY	CUSTOMER SERVICE	FINANCIAL CONDITION
Monterrey Paper	85	70	65	80
Papel Grande	80	90	95	75

Use the factor-weighting approach to determine the best supplier choice.

SOLUTION

To determine the appropriate weights for each category, create a simple algebraic relationship:

Let $x =$ weight for criteria 2, 3, and 4.
Then $2x + x + x + x = 100\%$, i.e., $5x = 100\%$, or $x = 0.2 = 20\%$

Thus, paper quality has a weight of 2(20%) = 40%, and the other three criteria each have a weight of 20%.

The following table presents the factor-weighting analysis:

		MONTERREY PAPER		*PAPEL GRANDE*	
CRITERION	WEIGHT	SCORE (1–100) (100 HIGHEST)	WEIGHT × SCORE	SCORE (1–100) (100 HIGHEST)	WEIGHT × SCORE
Paper quality	.40	85	34	80	32
Delivery reliability	.20	70	14	90	18
Customer service	.20	65	13	95	19
Financial condition	.20	80	16	75	15
Total	1.00		77		84

Since 84 > 77, Papel Grande should be the chosen supplier according to the factor-weighting method.

SOLVED PROBLEM S11.4

A French car company ships 120,000 cars annually to the United Kingdom. The current method of shipment uses ferries to cross the English Channel and averages 10 days. The firm is considering shipping by rail through the Chunnel (the tunnel that goes through the English Channel) instead. That transport method would average approximately 2 days. Shipping through the Chunnel costs $80 more per vehicle. The firm has a holding cost of 25% per year. The average value of each car shipped is $20,000. Which transportation method should be selected?

SOLUTION

Daily cost of holding the product = (.25 × $20,000)/365 = $13.70
Total holding cost savings by using the Chunnel = (10 − 2) × $13.70 = $110 (rounded)

Since the $110 savings exceeds the $80 higher shipping cost, the Chunnel option appears best.
This switch would save the firm (120,000)($110 − $80) = $3,600,000 per year.

Problems

Problems S11.1–S11.5 relate to Evaluating Disaster Risk in the Supply Chain

•**S11.1** How would you go about attempting to come up with the probability of a "super-event" or the probability of a "unique-event?" What factors would you consider?

••**S11.2** Following the incident of a furnace fire in the semiconductor plant in Albuquerque, New Mexico, Wellington Company decided to change its single-sourcing strategy of major components to multi-sourcing. The top management of Wellington Company believes that the probability in any year of a "super-event" that might shut down Albuquerque plant again for at least 2 weeks is 0.3%; causing financial strains of €600,000. However, the probability of a "unique event" risk for any of the suppliers is estimated to be 2%. Evaluate the number of suppliers Wellington Company should select, assuming that the marginal cost of managing each supplier will not exceed €10,000 per year and that up to three nearly identical suppliers are available.

••**S11.3** Refer to Problem S11.2,Wellington Company re-estimated the probability of a "super- event" to 0.2%, due to some heavy safety investment carried out in the Albuquerque plant.In addition, they replaced their second and third suppliers, for quality reasons, with another two whose annual management cost would be €20,000 each (compared to €10,000 previously). Assuming that the first supplier would be the first choice, how many suppliers should Wellington Company use?

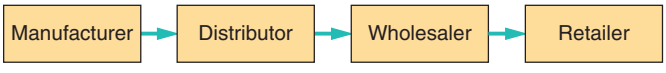
••**S11.4** Johnson Chemicals is considering two options for its supplier portfolio. Option 1 uses two local suppliers. Each has a "unique-event" risk of 5%, and the probability of a "super-event" that would disable both at the same time is estimated to be 1.5%. Option 2 uses two suppliers located in different countries. Each has a "unique-event" risk of 13%, and the probability of a "super-event" that would disable both at the same time is estimated to be 0.2%.

a) What is the probability that both suppliers will be disrupted using option 1?
b) What is the probability that both suppliers will be disrupted using option 2?
c) Which option would provide the lowest risk of a total shutdown?

••**S11.5** Kryoneriperfume company is considering the following two alternatives for the supply of vetiver oil (an essential oil used in high-end perfumes). Alternative one is to use two suppliers located in Haiti where half of the world's vetiver oil comes from. Each has a "unique-event" risk of 5%, and the probability of a "super-event" that would disable both at the same time is estimated to be 15%, due to Haiti's vulnerability to earthquakes (remember the earthquake in 2010). Alternative 2 is to use two suppliers located in Japan (another main producer of vetiver oil) where each has a "unique-event" risk of 1%, and the probability of a "super-event" that would disable both at the same time is estimated to be 2%, due to Japan's exceptionally great infrastructure developed after 1995 Kobe earthquake. Estimate which alternative seems best?

Problems S11.6–S11.9 relate to Managing the Bullwhip Effect

••**S11.6** Consider the supply chain illustrated below:



Last year, the retailer's weekly variance of demand was 200 units. The variance of orders was 500, 600, 750, and 1,350 units for the retailer, wholesaler, distributor, and manufacturer, respectively. (Note that the variance of orders equals the variance of demand for that firm's supplier.)

a) Calculate the bullwhip measure for the retailer.
b) Calculate the bullwhip measure for the wholesaler.
c) Calculate the bullwhip measure for the distributor.
d) Calculate the bullwhip measure for the manufacturer.
e) Which firm appears to be contributing the most to the bullwhip effect in this supply chain?

••**S11.7** Over the past 5 weeks, demand for wine at Winston's Winery has been 1,000, 2,300, 3,200, 1,750, and 1,200 bottles. Winston has placed weekly orders for glass bottles of 1,100, 2,500, 4,000, 1,000, and 900 units. (Recall that the sample variance of a data set can be found by using the VAR.S function in Excel or by plugging each x value of the data set into the formula: Variance $= \frac{\Sigma(x - \bar{x})^2}{(n - 1)}$, where $\bar{x}$ is the mean of the data set and n is the number of values in the set.)

a) What is the variance of demand for Winston's Winery?
b) What is the variance of orders from Winston's Winery for glass bottles?
c) What is the bullwhip measure for glass bottles for Winston's Winery?
d) Is Winston's Winery providing an amplifying or smoothing effect?

••**S11.8** A manufacturer produces asingle product which is sold abroad to an industrial company through the following channel.

a) Calculate the bull whip effect for each stage of the supply chain.
b) What kind of actions management can take to smooth the bullwhip effect.

•••**S11.9** Consider a three-firm supply chain consisting of a retailer, manufacturer, and supplier. The retailer's demand over an 8-week period was 100 units each of the first 2 weeks, 200 units each of the second 2 weeks, 300 units each of the third 2 weeks, and 400 units each of the fourth 2 weeks. The following table presents the orders placed by each firm in the supply chain. Notice, as is often the case in supply chains due to economies of scale, that total units are the same in each case, but firms further up the supply chain (away from the retailer) place larger, less frequent, orders.

WEEK	RETAILER	MANUFACTURER	SUPPLIER
1	100	200	600
2	100		
3	200	400	
4	200		
5	300	600	1400
6	300		
7	400	800	
8	400		

Recall that the sample variance of a data set can be found by using the VAR.S function in Excel or by plugging each x value of the data set into the formula: Variance $= \frac{\Sigma(x - \bar{x})^2}{(n - 1)}$, where $\bar{x}$ is the mean of the data set and n is the number of values in the set.

a) What is the bullwhip measure for the retailer?
b) What is the bullwhip measure for the manufacturer?
c) What is the bullwhip measure for the supplier?
d) What conclusions can you draw regarding the impact that economies of scale may have on the bullwhip effect?

Problems S11.10–S11.13 relate to Supplier Selection Analysis

••**S11.10** As purchasing agent for Eynan Enterprises in Richmond, Virginia, you ask your buyer to provide you with a ranking of "excellent," "good," "fair," or "poor" for a variety of characteristics for two potential vendors. You suggest that the "Products" total be weighted 40% and the other three categories totals be weighted 20% each. The buyer has returned the rankings shown in Table S11.2.

Which of the two vendors would you select? PX

••**S11.11** Using the data in Problem S11.10, assume that both Donna, Inc. and Kay Corp. are able to move all their "poor" ratings to "fair." How would you then rank the two firms? PX

••**S11.12** Develop a vendor-rating form that represents your comparison of the education offered by universities in which you considered (or are considering) enrolling. Fill in the necessary data, and identify the "best" choice. Are you attending that "best" choice? If not, why not?

Additional problem **S11.13** *is available in* MyOMLab.

Problems S11.14–S11.17 relate to Transportation Mode Analysis

••**S11.14** Your options for shipping $100,000 of machine parts from Baltimore to Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia, are (1) use a ship that will take 30 days at a cost of $3,800 or (2) truck the parts to Los Angeles and then ship at a total cost of $4,800. The second option will take only 20 days. You are paid via a letter of credit the day the parts arrive. Your holding cost is estimated at 30% of the value per year.

a) Which option is more economical?
b) What customer issues are not included in the data presented?

••**S11.15** If you have a third option for the data in Problem S11.14 and it costs only $4,000 and also takes 20 days, what is your most economical plan?

••**S11.16** A company with a plant in Basel can be served by both rail and truck at a cost of €250 and €1500 per load, respectively. The transit time for the train is 15 days while for the truck is 5 days. (a) If the daily cost of transit inventory is €100, which transportation mode is more economical attractive? (b) What will be the costs involved, if the daily inventory carrying cost is €50? (c) Identify related principles need to consider when designing a transportation system.

•••**S11.17** Recently, Abercrombie & Fitch (A&F) began shifting a large portion of its Asian deliveries to the U.S. from air freight to slower but cheaper ocean freight. Shipping costs have been cut dramatically, but shipment times have gone from days to weeks. In addition to having less control over inventory and being less responsive to fashion changes, the holding costs have risen for the goods in transport. Meanwhile, Central America might offer an inexpensive manufacturing alternative that could reduce shipping time through the Panama Canal to, say, 6 days, compared to, say, 27 days from Asia. Suppose that A&F uses an annual holding rate of 30%. Suppose further that the product costs $20 to produce in Asia. Assuming that the transportation cost via ocean liner would be approximately the same whether coming from Asia or Central America, what would the maximum production cost in Central America need to be in order for that to be a competitive source compared to the Asian producer?

Problems S11.18–S11.20 relate to Warehouse Storage

• **S11.18** The items listed in the following table are stored in a warehouse.

TABLE S11.2 Vendor Rating for Problem S11.10

VENDOR RATING

Company	Excellent (4)	Good (3)	Fair (2)	Poor (1)
Financial Strength			K	D
Manufacturing Range			KD	
Research Facilities	K		D	
Geographical Locations		K	D	
Management		K	D	
Labor Relations			K	D
Trade Relations			KD	
Service				
Deliveries on Time		KD		
Handling of Problems		KD		
Technical Assistance		K	D	

Products	Excellent (4)	Good (3)	Fair (2)	Poor (1)
Quality	KD			
Price			KD	
Packaging			KD	
Sales				
Product Knowledge			D	K
Sales Calls			K	D
Sales Service		K	D	

DONNA INC. = D
KAY CORP. = K

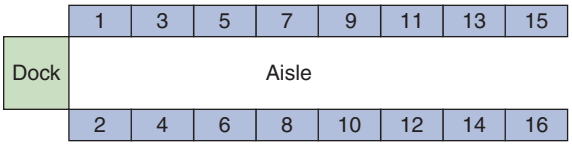
ITEM	WEEKLY TRIPS	AREA NEEDED (BLOCKS)
A	300	60
B	219	3
C	72	1
D	90	10
E	24	3

a) Which item should be stored at the very front (closest to the dock)?
b) Which item should be stored at the very back (furthest from the dock)?

••**S11.19** Amy Zeng, owner of Zeng's Restaurant Distributions, supplies nonperishable goods to restaurants around the metro area. She stores all the goods in a warehouse. The goods are divided into five categories according to the following table. The table indicates the number of trips per month to store or retrieve items in each category, as well as the number of storage blocks taken up by each.

ITEM CATEGORY	MONTHLY TRIPS	AREA NEEDED (BLOCKS)
Paper Products	50	2
Dishes, Glasses, and Silverware	16	4
Cleaning Agents	6	2
Cooking Oils and Seasonings	30	2
Pots and Pans	12	6

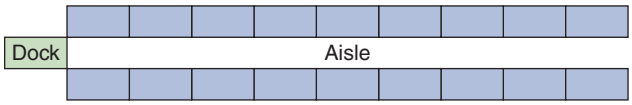
The following picture of the warehouse provides an identification number for each of the 16 storage blocks. For each item category, indicate into which blocks it should be stored.



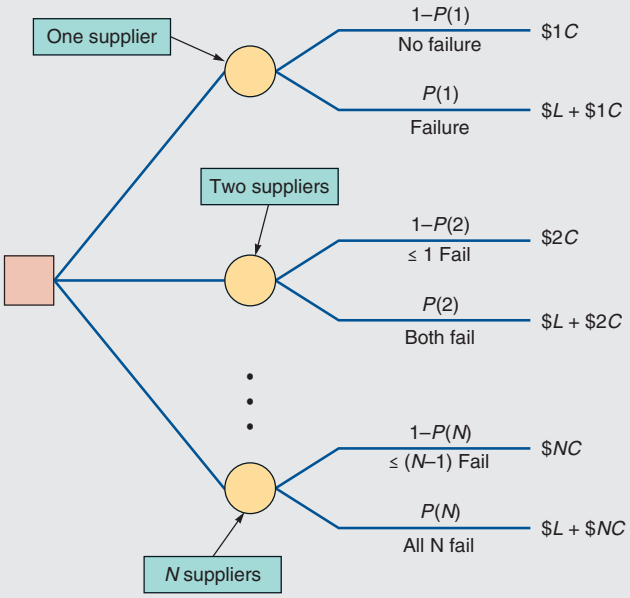
••**S11.20** The items listed in the following table are stored in a warehouse.

ITEM	WEEKLY TRIPS	AREA NEEDED (BLOCKS)
A	2	1
B	160	8
C	16	1
D	40	4
E	24	2
F	15	1
G	4	1

Using the following figure, indicate the best storage location for each item to minimize average distance traveled.



Supplement 11 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
TECHNIQUES FOR EVALUATING SUPPLY CHAINS (p. 510)	Many supply chain metrics exist that can be used to evaluate performance within a company and for its supply chain partners. The 2011 Tōhoku earthquake and tsunami devastated eastern sections of Japan. The economic impact was felt around the globe, as manufacturers had been relying heavily, in some cases exclusively, on suppliers located in the affected zones. Manufacturers in several industries worldwide took 6 months or longer before they saw their supply chains working normally again.	Concept Question: 1.1
EVALUATING DISASTER RISK IN THE SUPPLY CHAIN (pp. 510–512)	Disasters that disrupt supply chains can take on many forms, including tornadoes, fires, hurricanes, typhoons, tsunamis, earthquakes, and terrorism. Firms often use multiple suppliers for important components to mitigate the risks of total supply disruption. *The probability of all* n *suppliers being disrupted simultaneously*: $$P(n) = S + (1 - S)U^n \quad \text{(S11-1)}$$ where: S = probability of a "super-event" disrupting all suppliers simultaneously U = probability of a "unique-event" disrupting only one supplier L = financial loss incurred in a supply chain if all suppliers were disrupted C = marginal cost of managing a supplier All suppliers will be disrupted simultaneously if either the super-event occurs or the super-event does not occur but a unique-event occurs for all of the suppliers. As the probability of a super-event (S) increases, the advantage of utilizing multiple suppliers diminishes (all would be knocked out anyway). On the other hand, large values of the unique event (U) increase the likelihood of needing more suppliers. These two phenomena taken together suggest that when multiple suppliers are used, managers may consider using ones that are geographically dispersed to lessen the probability of all failing simultaneously. A decision tree can be used to help operations managers make this important decision regarding number of suppliers.  	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4 Problems: S11.1–S11.5 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: S11.1
MANAGING THE BULLWHIP EFFECT (pp. 512–514)	*Demand forecast updating, order batching, price fluctuations*, and *shortage gaming* can all produce inaccurate information, resulting in distortions and fluctuations in the supply chain and causing the *bullwhip effect*. ■ **Bullwhip effect**—The increasing fluctuation in orders that often occurs as orders move through the supply chain. "Bullwhip" fluctuations create unstable production schedules, resulting in expensive capacity change adjustments such as overtime, subcontracting, extra inventory, backorders, hiring and laying off of workers, equipment additions, equipment underutilization, longer lead times, or obsolescence of overproduced items. The bullwhip effect can occur when orders decrease as well as when they increase. Often the human tendency to overreact to stimuli causes managers to make decisions that exacerbate the phenomenon.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4 Problems: S11.6–S11.9 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: S11.2

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
	The overarching solution to the bullwhip effect is simply for supply chain members to share information and work together. *Specific remedies for the four primary causes include:* Demand forecast errors → *Share demand information throughout the chain* Order batching → *Think of the supply chain as one firm when choosing order sizes* Price fluctuations → *Institute everyday low prices* Shortage gaming → *Allocate orders based on past demand* A straightforward way to measure the extent of the bullwhip effect at any link in the supply chain is to calculate the *bullwhip measure*: $$\text{Bullwhip} = \frac{\text{Variance of orders}}{\text{Variance of demand}} = \frac{\sigma^2_{\text{orders}}}{\sigma^2_{\text{demand}}} \quad \text{(S11-2)}$$ Variance *amplification* (i.e., the bullwhip effect) is present if the bullwhip measure is greater than 1. That means the size of a company's orders fluctuate more than the size of its incoming demand. If the measure equals 1, then no amplification is present. A value less than 1 would imply a *smoothing* or *dampening* scenario as orders move up the supply chain from the retailer toward suppliers.	
SUPPLIER SELECTION ANALYSIS (pp. 514–515)	Choosing suppliers simply based on the lowest bid has become a somewhat rare approach. Various, sometimes competing, factors often play a role in the decision. Buyers may consider such supplier characteristics as product quality, delivery speed, delivery reliability, customer service, and financial performance. The *factor-weighting* technique simultaneously considers multiple supplier criteria. Each factor must be assigned an importance *weight*, and then each potential supplier is *scored* on each factor. The weights typically sum to 100%. Factors are scored using the same scale (e.g., 1–10). Sometimes a key is provided for supplier raters that converts qualitative ratings into numerical scores (e.g., "Very good" = 8).	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.2 Problems: S11.10–S11.11, S11.13 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: S11.3
TRANSPORTATION MODE ANALYSIS (pp. 515–516)	The longer a product is in transit, the longer the firm has its money invested. But faster shipping is usually more expensive than slow shipping. A simple way to obtain some insight into this trade-off is to evaluate holding cost against shipping options. *Daily cost of holding the product*: (Annual holding cost × Product value)/365 There are many other considerations beyond holding vs. shipping costs when choosing the appropriate transportation mode and carrier, including ensuring *on-time delivery* (whether fast or slow), coordinating shipments to maintain a schedule, getting a new product to market, and keeping a customer happy. Estimates of these other costs can be added to the estimate of the daily holding cost.	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.2 Problems: S11.14–S11.17 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: S11.4
WAREHOUSE STORAGE (pp. 516–517)	When determining storage locations for items in a warehouse, rank the items according to the ratio: (Number of trips/Blocks of storage needed) Place the items with the *highest* ratios closest to the dock.	Concept Questions: 6.1–6.2 Problems: S11.18–S11.20

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the supplement.

LO S11.1 A system to ensure that an organization can resume business after a disruption is called:
a) Crisis avoidance planning
b) Crisis continuation planning
c) Crisis disaster planning
d) Business continuity planning
e) Business crisis and continuity management

LO S11.2 Typically, the bullwhip effect is most pronounced at which level of the supply chain?
a) consumers **b)** suppliers
c) wholesalers **d)** retailers

LO S11.3 Which of the following is not a characteristic of the factor-weighting approach to supplier evalution?
a) it applies quantitative scores to qualitative criteria
b) the weights typically sum to 100%
c) multiple criteria can be considered simultaneously
d) subjective judgment is often involved
e) it applies qualitative assessments to quantitative criteria

LO S11.4 Catastrophic ("super") events:
a) affect many suppliers (sometimes all)
b) can affect an entire nation even the entire world
c) would include such events as an entire set of airlines being grounded
d) large-scale natural disasters
e) widespread communications failure
f) all the above.

LO S11.5 Which of the following items is most likely to be stored at the back of a warehouse, furthest away from the shipping dock?
a) low number of trips and low number of storage blocks
b) low number of trips and high number of storage blocks
c) high number of trips and low number of storage blocks
d) high number of trips and high number of storage blocks

Answers: LO S11.1. d; LO S11.2. b; LO S11.3. e; LO S11.4. f; LO S11.5. b.

Managing Inventory

CHAPTER 12

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *Amazon.com*

- The Importance of Inventory *528*
- Managing Inventory *529*
- Inventory Models *533*
- Inventory Models for Independent Demand *534*
- Probabilistic Models and Safety Stock *546*
- Single-Period Model *551*
- Fixed-Period (*P*) Systems *552*

Alaska Airlines

10 OM STRATEGY DECISIONS

- Design of Goods and Services
- Managing Quality
- Process Strategy
- Location Strategies
- Layout Strategies
- Human Resources
- Supply-Chain Management
- *Inventory Management*
  - ***Independent Demand (Ch. 12)***
  - Dependent Demand (Ch. 14)
  - Lean Operations (Ch. 16)
- Scheduling
- Maintenance

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
Amazon.com

Inventory Management Provides Competitive Advantage at Amazon.com

When Jeff Bezos opened his revolutionary business in 1995, Amazon.com was intended to be a "virtual" retailer—no inventory, no warehouses, no overhead—just a bunch of computers taking orders for books and authorizing others to fill them. Things clearly didn't work out that way. Now, Amazon stocks millions of items of inventory, amid hundreds of thousands of bins on shelves in over 150 warehouses around the world. Additionally, Amazon's

Marilyn Newton/Reno Gazette-Journal

1. You order three items, and a computer in Seattle takes charge. A computer assigns your order—a book, a game, and a digital camera—to one of Amazon's massive U.S. distribution centers.

2. The "flow meister" at the distribution center receives your order. She determines which workers go where to fill your order.

Bernhard Classen/Alamy

3. Amazon's current system doubles the picking speed of manual operators and drops the error rate to nearly zero.

Ben Cawthra/Sipa USA/Newscom

4. Your items are put into crates on moving belts. Each item goes into a large yellow crate that contains many customers' orders. When full, the crates ride a series of conveyor belts that wind more than 10 miles through the plant at a constant speed of 2.9 feet per second. The bar code on each item is scanned 15 times, by machines and by many of the 600 workers. The goal is to reduce errors to zero—returns are very expensive.

5. All three items converge in a chute and then inside a box. All the crates arrive at a central point where bar codes are matched with order numbers to determine who gets what. Your three items end up in a 3-foot-wide chute—one of several thousand—and are placed into a corrugated box with a new bar code that identifies your order. Picking is sequenced to reduce operator travel.

6. Any gifts you've chosen are wrapped by hand. Amazon trains an elite group of gift wrappers, each of whom processes 30 packages an hour.

REX/Newscom

software is so good that Amazon sells its order taking, processing, and billing expertise to others. It is estimated that 200 million items are now available via the Amazon Web site.

Bezos expects the customer experience at Amazon to be one that yields the lowest price, the fastest delivery, and an error-free order fulfillment process so no other contact with Amazon is necessary. Exchanges and returns are very expensive.

Managing this massive inventory precisely is the key for Amazon to be the world-class leader in warehouse automation and management. The time to receive, process, and position the stock in storage and to then accurately "pull" and package an order requires a labor investment of less than 3 minutes. And 70% of these orders are multiproduct orders. This underlines the high benchmark that Amazon has achieved. This is world-class performance.

When you place an order with Amazon.com, you are doing business with a company that obtains competitive advantage through inventory management. This *Global Company Profile* shows how Amazon does it.

Adrian Sherratt/Alamy

7. The box is packed, taped, weighed, and labeled before leaving the warehouse in a truck. A typical plant is designed to ship as many as 200,000 pieces a day. About 60% of orders are shipped via the U.S. Postal Service; nearly everything else goes through United Parcel Service.

8. Your order arrives at your doorstep. In 1 or 2 days, your order is delivered.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO 12.1 ***Conduct*** an ABC analysis 530
LO 12.2 ***Explain*** and use cycle counting 531
LO 12.3 ***Explain*** and use the EOQ model for independent inventory demand 534
LO 12.4 ***Compute*** a reorder point and explain safety stock 540
LO 12.5 ***Apply*** the production order quantity model 541
LO 12.6 ***Explain*** and use the quantity discount model 543
LO 12.7 ***Understand*** service levels and probabilistic inventory models 549

The Importance of Inventory

As Amazon.com well knows, inventory is one of the most expensive assets of many companies, representing as much as 50% of total invested capital. Operations managers around the globe have long recognized that good inventory management is crucial. On the one hand, a firm can reduce costs by reducing inventory. On the other hand, production may stop and customers become dissatisfied when an item is out of stock. *The objective of inventory management is to strike a balance between inventory investment and customer service.* You can never achieve a low-cost strategy without good inventory management.

All organizations have some type of inventory planning and control system. A bank has methods to control its inventory of cash. A hospital has methods to control blood supplies and pharmaceuticals. Government agencies, schools, and, of course, virtually every manufacturing and production organization are concerned with inventory planning and control.

In cases involving physical products, the organization must determine whether to produce goods or to purchase them. Once this decision has been made, the next step is to forecast demand, as discussed in Chapter 4. Then operations managers determine the inventory necessary to service that demand. In this chapter, we discuss the functions, types, and management of inventory. We then address two basic inventory issues: how much to order and when to order.

Functions of Inventory

VIDEO 12.1
Managing Inventory at Frito-Lay

Inventory can serve several functions that add flexibility to a firm's operations. The four functions of inventory are:

1. *To provide a selection of goods for anticipated customer demand and to separate the firm from fluctuations in that demand.* Such inventories are typical in retail establishments.
2. To *decouple various parts of the production process*. For example, if a firm's supplies fluctuate, extra inventory may be necessary to decouple the production process from suppliers.
3. To *take advantage of quantity discounts*, because purchases in larger quantities may reduce the cost of goods or their delivery.
4. To *hedge against inflation* and upward price changes.

Types of Inventory

Raw material inventory
Materials that are usually purchased but have yet to enter the manufacturing process.

Work-in-process (WIP) inventory
Products or components that are no longer raw materials but have yet to become finished products.

Maintenance/repair/operating (MRO) inventory
Maintenance, repair, and operating materials.

To accommodate the functions of inventory, firms maintain four types of inventories: (1) raw material inventory, (2) work-in-process inventory, (3) maintenance/repair/operating supply (MRO) inventory, and (4) finished-goods inventory.

Raw material inventory has been purchased but not processed. This inventory can be used to decouple (i.e., separate) suppliers from the production process. However, the preferred approach is to eliminate supplier variability in quality, quantity, or delivery time so that separation is not needed. **Work-in-process (WIP) inventory** is components or raw material that have undergone some change but are not completed. WIP exists because of the time it takes for a product to be made (called *cycle time*). Reducing cycle time reduces inventory. Often this task is not difficult: during most of the time a product is "being made," it is in fact sitting idle. As Figure 12.1 shows, actual work time, or "run" time, is a small portion of the material flow time, perhaps as low as 5%.

MROs are inventories devoted to **maintenance/repair/operating** supplies necessary to keep machinery and processes productive. They exist because the need and timing for maintenance and

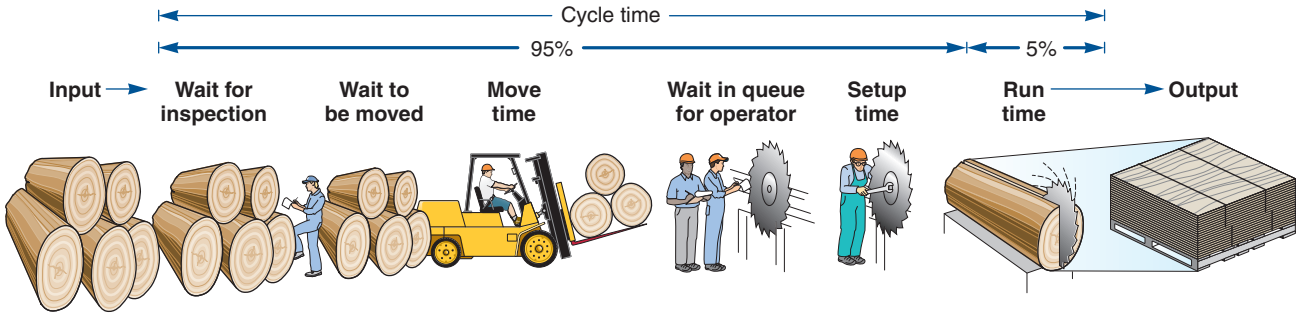


Figure 12.1

The Material Flow Cycle

Most of the time that work is in-process (95% of the cycle time) is not productive time.

repair of some equipment are unknown. Although the demand for MRO inventory is often a function of maintenance schedules, other unscheduled MRO demands must be anticipated. Finished-goods inventory is completed product awaiting shipment. Finished goods may be inventoried because future customer demands are unknown.

Finished-goods inventory
An end item ready to be sold, but still an asset on the company's books.

Managing Inventory

Operations managers establish systems for managing inventory. In this section, we briefly examine two ingredients of such systems: (1) how inventory items can be classified (called *ABC analysis*) and (2) how accurate inventory records can be maintained. We will then look at inventory control in the service sector.

ABC Analysis

ABC analysis divides on-hand inventory into three classifications on the basis of annual dollar volume. ABC analysis is an inventory application of what is known as the *Pareto principle* (named after Vilfredo Pareto, a 19th-century Italian economist). The Pareto principle states that there are a "critical few and trivial many." The idea is to establish inventory policies that focus resources on the *few critical* inventory parts and not the many trivial ones. It is not realistic to monitor inexpensive items with the same intensity as very expensive items.

ABC analysis
A method for dividing on-hand inventory into three classifications based on annual dollar volume.

To determine annual dollar volume for ABC analysis, we measure the *annual demand* of each inventory item times the *cost per unit*. *Class A* items are those on which the annual dollar volume is high. Although such items may represent only about 15% of the total inventory items, they represent 70% to 80% of the total dollar usage. *Class B* items are those inventory items of medium annual dollar volume. These items may represent about 30% of inventory items and 15% to 25% of the total value. Those with low annual dollar volume are *Class C*, which may represent only 5% of the annual dollar volume but about 55% of the total inventory items.

STUDENT TIP
A, B, and C categories need not be exact. The idea is to recognize that levels of control should match the risk.

Graphically, the inventory of many organizations would appear as presented in Figure 12.2.

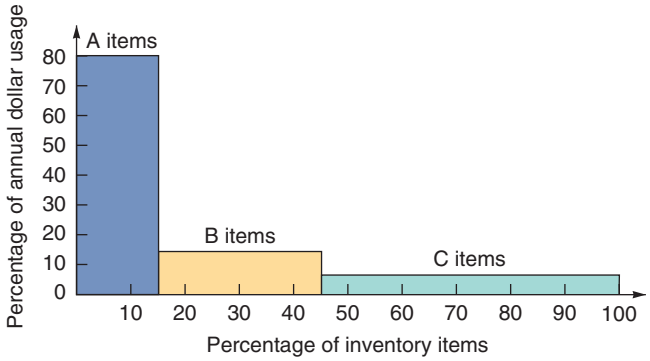


Figure 12.2

Graphic Representation of ABC Analysis

An example of the use of ABC analysis is shown in Example 1.

Example 1

ABC ANALYSIS FOR A CHIP MANUFACTURER

Silicon Chips, Inc., maker of superfast DRAM chips, wants to categorize its 10 major inventory items using ABC analysis.

APPROACH ▶ ABC analysis organizes the items on an annual dollar-volume basis. Shown below (in columns 1–4) are the 10 items (identified by stock numbers), their annual demands, and unit costs.

SOLUTION ▶ Annual dollar volume is computed in column 5, along with the percentage of the total represented by each item in column 6. Column 7 groups the 10 items into A, B, and C categories.

ABC Calculation

(1) ITEM STOCK NUMBER	(2) PERCENTAGE OF NUMBER OF ITEMS STOCKED	(3) ANNUAL VOLUME (UNITS)	×	(4) UNIT COST	=	(5) ANNUAL DOLLAR VOLUME	(6) PERCENTAGE OF ANNUAL DOLLAR VOLUME		(7) CLASS
#10286	20%	1,000		$ 90.00		$ 90,000	38.8%	72%	A
#11526		500		154.00		77,000	33.2%		A
#12760	30%	1,550		17.00		26,350	11.3%	23%	B
#10867		350		42.86		15,001	6.4%		B
#10500		1,000		12.50		12,500	5.4%		B
#12572	50%	600		14.17		8,502	3.7%	5%	C
#14075		2,000		.60		1,200	.5%		C
#01036		100		8.50		850	.4%		C
#01307		1,200		.42		504	.2%		C
#10572		250		.60		150	.1%		C
		8,550				$232,057	100.0%		

INSIGHT ▶ The breakdown into A, B, and C categories is not hard and fast. The objective is to try to separate the "important" from the "unimportant."

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ The unit cost for Item #10286 has increased from $90.00 to $120.00. How does this impact the ABC analysis? [Answer: The total annual dollar volume increases by $30,000, to $262,057, and the two A items now comprise 75% of that amount.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 12.1, 12.2, 12.3 (12.5–12.6 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch12Ex1.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

LO 12.1 *Conduct* an ABC analysis

Criteria other than annual dollar volume can determine item classification. For instance, high shortage or holding cost, anticipated engineering changes, delivery problems, or quality problems may dictate upgrading items to a higher classification. The advantage of dividing inventory items into classes allows policies and controls to be established for each class.

Policies that may be based on ABC analysis include the following:

1. Purchasing resources expended on supplier development should be much higher for individual A items than for C items.
2. A items, as opposed to B and C items, should have tighter physical inventory control; perhaps they belong in a more secure area, and perhaps the accuracy of inventory records for A items should be verified more frequently.
3. Forecasting A items may warrant more care than forecasting other items.

Better forecasting, physical control, supplier reliability, and an ultimate reduction in inventory can all result from classification systems such as ABC analysis.

OM in Action Supply Accuracy at Acando

From a logistic point of view we might want to have as few article numbers as possible to simplify the optimization of the supply chain, However, the tendency is clear that the number of article numbers are increasing, the customers are asking for more variations of a product. Fredrik Berndston, management consultant at the Nordic consultant company Acando, has a long experience supporting customers with solutions to problems related to an extended range of products. "The key-word is segmentation, both product and customer segmentation", says Fredrik. "It is necessary to understand what the customer is willing to pay for", he continues. There is a need to differentiate on service level, lead-time, delivery service, etc. "We should aim for transparency in the supply cost, the customers should understand the cost for different service levels".

For the operations management it is necessary to have correct master data and good tools to support this process. In a modern environment it is normal that many systems interact why it is necessary to have strict rules where to keep master data and how to maintain it. Fredrik's experience is that many companies today implements PLM-tools (Product Lifetime Management) to manage the master data. "In a more complex environment, more articles, more possible ways of sourcing the customer, more competition … it is even more necessary to have good tools for optimizing the supply chain," Fredrik states.

Record Accuracy

Record accuracy is a prerequisite to inventory management, production scheduling, and, ultimately, sales. Accuracy can be maintained by either periodic or perpetual systems. *Periodic systems* require regular (periodic) checks of inventory to determine quantity on hand. Some small retailers and facilities with vendor-managed inventory (the vendor checks quantity on hand and resupplies as necessary) use these systems. However, the downside is lack of control between reviews and the necessity of carrying extra inventory to protect against shortages.

A variation of the periodic system is a *two-bin system.* In practice, a store manager sets up two containers (each with adequate inventory to cover demand during the time required to receive another order) and places an order when the first container is empty.

Alternatively, *perpetual inventory* tracks both receipts and subtractions from inventory on a continuing basis. Receipts are usually noted in the receiving department in some semiautomated way, such as via a bar-code reader, and disbursements are noted as items leave the stockroom or, in retailing establishments, at the point-of-sale (POS) cash register.

Regardless of the inventory system, record accuracy requires good incoming and outgoing record keeping as well as good security. Stockrooms will have limited access, good housekeeping, and storage areas that hold fixed amounts of inventory. In both manufacturing and retail facilities, bins, shelf space, and individual items must be stored and labeled accurately. Meaningful decisions about ordering, scheduling, and shipping, are made only when the firm knows what it has on hand.

Omnicell

In this hospital, these vertically rotating storage carousels provide rapid access to hundreds of critical items and at the same time save floor space. This Omnicell inventory management carousel is also secure and has the added advantage of printing bar code labels.

Cycle Counting

Even though an organization may have made substantial efforts to record inventory accurately, these records must be verified through a continuing audit. Such audits are known as **cycle counting**. Historically, many firms performed annual physical inventories. This practice often meant shutting down the facility and having inexperienced people count parts and material. Inventory records should instead be verified via cycle counting. Cycle counting uses inventory classifications developed through ABC analysis. With cycle counting procedures, items are counted, records are verified, and inaccuracies are periodically documented. The cause of inaccuracies is then traced and appropriate remedial action taken to ensure integrity of the inventory system. **A** items will be counted frequently, perhaps once a month; **B** items will be counted less frequently, perhaps once a quarter; and **C** items will be counted perhaps once every 6 months. Example 2 illustrates how to compute the number of items of each classification to be counted each day.

Cycle counting
A continuing reconciliation of inventory with inventory records.

LO 12.2 *Explain* and use cycle counting

Example 2

CYCLE COUNTING AT COLE'S TRUCKS, INC.

Cole's Trucks, Inc., a builder of high-quality refuse trucks, has about 5,000 items in its inventory. It wants to determine how many items to cycle count each day.

APPROACH ▶ After hiring Matt Clark, a bright young OM student, for the summer, the firm determined that it has 500 A items, 1,750 B items, and 2,750 C items. Company policy is to count all A items every month (every 20 working days), all B items every quarter (every 60 working days), and all C items every 6 months (every 120 working days). The firm then allocates some items to be counted each day.

SOLUTION ▶

ITEM CLASS	QUANTITY	CYCLE-COUNTING POLICY	NUMBER OF ITEMS COUNTED PER DAY
A	500	Each month (20 working days)	500/20 = 25/day
B	1,750	Each quarter (60 working days)	1,750/60 = 29/day
C	2,750	Every 6 months (120 working days)	2,750/120 = 23/day
			77/day

Each day, 77 items are counted.

INSIGHT ▶ This daily audit of 77 items is much more efficient and accurate than conducting a massive inventory count once a year.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Cole's reclassifies some B and C items so there are now 1,500 B items and 3,000 C items. How does this change the cycle count? [Answer: B and C both change to 25 items each per day, for a total of 75 items per day.]

RELATED PROBLEM ▶ 12.4

In Example 2, the particular items to be cycle counted can be sequentially or randomly selected each day. Another option is to cycle count items when they are reordered.

Cycle counting also has the following advantages:

Shrinkage
Retail inventory that is unaccounted for between receipt and sale.

Pilferage
A small amount of theft.

1. Eliminates the shutdown and interruption of production necessary for annual physical inventories.
2. Eliminates annual inventory adjustments.
3. Trained personnel audit the accuracy of inventory.
4. Allows the cause of the errors to be identified and remedial action to be taken.
5. Maintains accurate inventory records.

Robin Nelson/ZUMA Press, Inc./Alamy

Pharmaceutical distributor McKesson Corp., which is one of Arnold Palmer Hospital's main suppliers of surgical materials, makes heavy use of bar-code readers to automate inventory control. The device on the warehouse worker's arm combines a scanner, a computer, and a two-way radio to check orders. With rapid and accurate data, items are easily verified, improving inventory and shipment accuracy.

Control of Service Inventories

Although we may think of the service sector of our economy as not having inventory, that is seldom the case. Extensive inventory is held in wholesale and retail businesses, making inventory management crucial. In the food-service business, control of inventory is often the difference between success and failure. Moreover, inventory that is in transit or idle in a warehouse is lost value. Similarly, inventory damaged or stolen prior to sale is a loss. In retailing, inventory that is unaccounted for between receipt and time of sale is known as **shrinkage**. Shrinkage occurs from damage and theft as well as from sloppy paperwork. Inventory theft is also known as **pilferage**. Retail inventory loss of 1% of sales is considered good, with losses in many stores exceeding 3%. Because the impact on profitability is substantial, inventory accuracy and control are critical. Applicable techniques include the following:

1. *Good personnel selection, training, and discipline:* These are never easy but very necessary in food-service, wholesale, and retail operations, where employees have access to directly consumable merchandise.

OM in Action ICC by AGA

"The key asset management challenge for an Industrial & Medical Gas operation is to manage the high-pressure (150–300 bar) cylinders that hold the gas.

Due to the high pressure-and at times the content - these products are classified as Dangerous goods. Above and beyond regular requirement to manage the stocks-i.e. utilizing the assets, it is crucial to maintain a solid and correct transaction file, since the usage history can have an impact on current performance from safety perspective, " Kenneth Friberg ,Global Head of PGP Investments, Linde Gas.

Already in the mid 90's Swedish gas company AGA (later part of Linde Gas) started developing a software system called ICC to control the cylinders and the movements. Using the system has led to improved stock accuracy and by that an improved service level.

"The key challenge is to maintain a correct transaction file, which implies that all physical cylinder movements between different locations/sites should preferably be monitored, that is,' scanned'. This brings of course an issue of cost, but here we see an opportunity in using an UHF RFID technology providing multi-scanning capability. In short, it's scanning full truck-loads when passing an antenna portal. This could also reduce scanning time/ cost at physical inventories and deliveries at customer."

Sources: The Wall Street Journal (January 13, 2010); *Management Science* (February 2005); and *California Management Review* (Spring 2001).

2. *Tight control of incoming shipments:* This task is being addressed by many firms through the use of Universal Product Code (or bar code) and radio frequency ID (RFID) systems that read every incoming shipment and automatically check tallies against purchase orders. When properly designed, these systems—where each stock keeping unit (SKU; pronounced "skew") has its own identifier—can be very hard to defeat.
3. *Effective control of all goods leaving the facility:* This job is accomplished with bar codes, RFID tags, or magnetic strips on merchandise, and via direct observation. Direct observation can be personnel stationed at exits (as at Costco and Sam's Club wholesale stores) and in potentially high-loss areas or can take the form of one-way mirrors and video surveillance.

A handheld reader can scan RFID tags, aiding control of both incoming and outgoing shipments.

Successful retail operations require very good store-level control with accurate inventory in its proper location. Major retailers lose 10% to 25% of overall profits due to poor or inaccurate inventory records.[1] (See the *OM in Action* box, "ICC by AGA.")

Inventory Models

VIDEO 12.2
Inventory Control at Wheeled Coach Ambulance

We now examine a variety of inventory models and the costs associated with them.

Independent vs. Dependent Demand

Inventory control models assume that demand for an item is either independent of or dependent on the demand for other items. For example, the demand for refrigerators is *independent* of the demand for toaster ovens. However, the demand for toaster oven components is *dependent* on the requirements of toaster ovens.

This chapter focuses on managing inventory where demand is *independent*. Chapter 14 presents *dependent* demand management.

Holding, Ordering, and Setup Costs

Holding cost
The cost to keep or carry inventory in stock.

Holding costs are the costs associated with holding or "carrying" inventory over time. Therefore, holding costs also include obsolescence and costs related to storage, such as insurance, extra staffing, and interest payments. Table 12.1 shows the kinds of costs that need to be evaluated to determine holding costs. Many firms fail to include all the inventory holding costs. Consequently, inventory holding costs are often understated.

Ordering cost
The cost of the ordering process.

Ordering cost includes costs of supplies, forms, order processing, purchasing, clerical support, and so forth. When orders are being manufactured, ordering costs also exist, but they are a part

TABLE 12.1 Determining Inventory Holding Costs

CATEGORY	COST (AND RANGE) AS A PERCENTAGE OF INVENTORY VALUE
Housing costs (building rent or depreciation, operating cost, taxes, insurance)	6% (3–10%)
Material-handling costs (equipment lease or depreciation, power, operating cost)	3% (1–3.5%)
Labor cost (receiving, warehousing, security)	3% (3–5%)
Investment costs (borrowing costs, taxes, and insurance on inventory)	11% (6–24%)
Pilferage, scrap, and obsolescence (much higher in industries undergoing rapid change like tablets and smart phones)	3% (2–5%)
Overall carrying cost	26%

Note: All numbers are approximate, as they vary substantially depending on the nature of the business, location, and current interest rates.

STUDENT TIP

An overall inventory carrying cost of less than 15% is very unlikely, but this cost can exceed 40%, especially in high-tech and fashion industries.

of what is called setup costs. **Setup cost** is the cost to prepare a machine or process for manufacturing an order. This includes time and labor to clean and change tools or holders. Operations managers can lower ordering costs by reducing setup costs and by using such efficient procedures as electronic ordering and payment.

Setup cost
The cost to prepare a machine or process for production.

In manufacturing environments, setup cost is highly correlated with **setup time**. Setups usually require a substantial amount of work even before a setup is actually performed at the work center. With proper planning, much of the preparation required by a setup can be done prior to shutting down the machine or process. Setup times can thus be reduced substantially. Machines and processes that traditionally have taken hours to set up are now being set up in less than a minute by the more imaginative world-class manufacturers. Reducing setup times is an excellent way to reduce inventory investment and to improve productivity.

Setup time
The time required to prepare a machine or process for production.

Inventory Models for Independent Demand

In this section, we introduce three inventory models that address two important questions: *when to order* and *how much to order*. These *independent* demand models are:

1. Basic economic order quantity (EOQ) model
2. Production order quantity model
3. Quantity discount model

The Basic Economic Order Quantity (EOQ) Model

Economic order quantity (EOQ) model
An inventory-control technique that minimizes the total of ordering and holding costs.

The **economic order quantity (EOQ) model** is one of the most commonly used inventory-control techniques. This technique is relatively easy to use but is based on several assumptions:

LO 12.3 *Explain* and use the EOQ model for independent inventory demand

1. Demand for an item is known, reasonably constant, and independent of decisions for other items.
2. Lead time—that is, the time between placement and receipt of the order—is known and consistent.
3. Receipt of inventory is instantaneous and complete. In other words, the inventory from an order arrives in one batch at one time.
4. Quantity discounts are not possible.
5. The only variable costs are the cost of setting up or placing an order (setup or ordering cost) and the cost of holding or storing inventory over time (holding or carrying cost). These costs were discussed in the previous section.
6. Stockouts (shortages) can be completely avoided if orders are placed at the right time.

With these assumptions, the graph of inventory usage over time has a sawtooth shape, as in Figure 12.3. In Figure 12.3, Q represents the amount that is ordered. If this amount is 500 dresses, all 500 dresses arrive at one time (when an order is received). Thus, the inventory

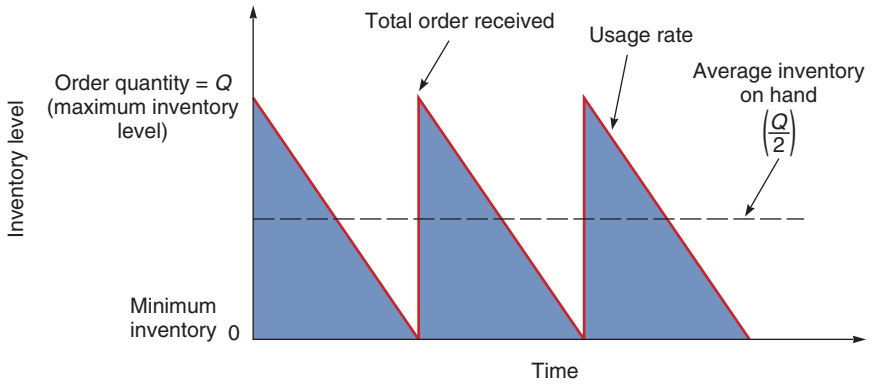


Figure 12.3

Inventory Usage over Time

STUDENT TIP

If the maximum we can ever have is Q (say, 500 units) and the minimum is zero, then if inventory is used (or sold) at a fairly steady rate, the average $= (Q + 0)/2 = Q/2$.

level jumps from 0 to 500 dresses. In general, an inventory level increases from 0 to Q units when an order arrives.

Because demand is constant over time, inventory drops at a uniform rate over time. (Refer to the sloped lines in Figure 12.3.) Each time the inventory is received, the inventory level again jumps to Q units (represented by the vertical lines). This process continues indefinitely over time.

Minimizing Costs

The objective of most inventory models is to minimize total costs. With the assumptions just given, significant costs are setup (or ordering) cost and holding (or carrying) cost. All other costs, such as the cost of the inventory itself, are constant. Thus, if we minimize the sum of setup and holding costs, we will also be minimizing total costs. To help you visualize this, in Figure 12.4 we graph total costs as a function of the order quantity, Q. The optimal order size, Q^*, will be the quantity that minimizes the total costs. As the quantity ordered increases, the total number of orders placed per year will decrease. Thus, as the quantity ordered increases, the annual setup or ordering cost will decrease [Figure 12.4(a)]. But as the order quantity increases, the holding cost will increase due to the larger average inventories that are maintained [Figure 12.4(b)].

STUDENT TIP

Figure 12.4 is the heart of EOQ inventory modeling. We want to find the smallest total cost (top curve), which is the sum of the two curves below it.

As we can see in Figure 12.4(c), a reduction in either holding or setup cost will reduce the total cost curve. A reduction in the setup cost curve also reduces the optimal order quantity (lot size). In addition, smaller lot sizes have a positive impact on quality and production flexibility. At Toshiba, the $77 billion Japanese conglomerate, workers can make as few as 10 laptop computers before changing models. This lot-size flexibility has allowed Toshiba to move toward a "build-to-order" mass customization system, an important ability in an industry that has product life cycles measured in months, not years.

You should note that in Figure 12.4(c), the optimal order quantity occurs at the point where the ordering-cost curve and the carrying-cost curve intersect. This was not by chance. With the EOQ model, the optimal order quantity will occur at a point where the total setup cost is equal

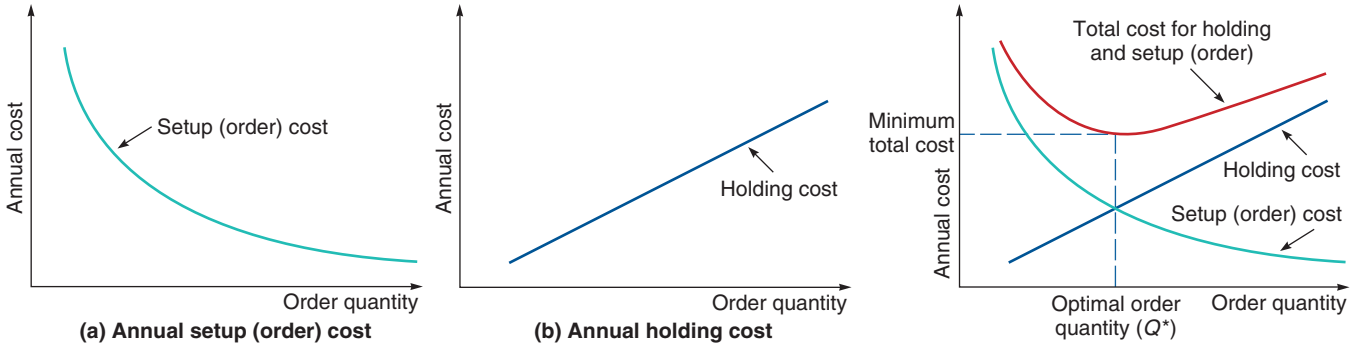


Figure 12.4

Costs as a Function of Order Quantity

to the total holding cost.[2] We use this fact to develop equations that solve directly for Q^*. The necessary steps are:

1. Develop an expression for setup or ordering cost.
2. Develop an expression for holding cost.
3. Set setup (order) cost equal to holding cost.
4. Solve the equation for the optimal order quantity.

Using the following variables, we can determine setup and holding costs and solve for Q^*:

Q = Number of units per order
Q^* = Optimum number of units per order (EOQ)
D = Annual demand in units for the inventory item
S = Setup or ordering cost for each order
H = Holding or carrying cost per unit per year

1. Annual setup cost = (Number of orders placed per year) × (Setup or order cost per order)

$$= \left(\frac{\text{Annual demand}}{\text{Number of units in each order}}\right)(\text{Setup or order cost per order})$$
$$= \left(\frac{D}{Q}\right)(S) = \frac{D}{Q}S$$

2. Annual holding cost = (Average inventory level) × (Holding cost per unit per year)

$$= \left(\frac{\text{Order quantity}}{2}\right)(\text{Holding cost per unit per year})$$
$$= \left(\frac{Q}{2}\right)(H) = \frac{Q}{2}H$$

3. Optimal order quantity is found when annual setup (order) cost equals annual holding cost, namely:

$$\frac{D}{Q}S = \frac{Q}{2}H$$

4. To solve for Q^*, simply cross-multiply terms and isolate Q on the left of the equal sign:

$$2DS = Q^2H$$
$$Q^2 = \frac{2DS}{H}$$
$$Q^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H}} \qquad (12\text{-}1)$$

Now that we have derived the equation for the optimal order quantity, Q^*, it is possible to solve inventory problems directly, as in Example 3.

Example 3

FINDING THE OPTIMAL ORDER SIZE AT SHARP, INC.

Sharp, Inc., a company that markets painless hypodermic needles to hospitals, would like to reduce its inventory cost by determining the optimal number of hypodermic needles to obtain per order.

APPROACH ▶ The annual demand is 1,000 units; the setup or ordering cost is \$10 per order; and the holding cost per unit per year is \$.50.

SOLUTION ▶ Using these figures, we can calculate the optimal number of units per order:

$$Q^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H}}$$

$$Q^* = \sqrt{\frac{2(1{,}000)(10)}{0.50}} = \sqrt{40{,}000} = 200 \text{ units}$$

INSIGHT ▶ Sharp, Inc., now knows how many needles to order per order. The firm also has a basis for determining ordering and holding costs for this item, as well as the number of orders to be processed by the receiving and inventory departments.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If D increases to 1,200 units, what is the new Q^*? [Answer: $Q^* = 219$ units.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 12.7, 12.8, 12.9, 12.10, 12.11, 12.14, 12.15, 12.17, 12.29 (12.31, 12.32, 12.33a, 12.35a are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File Ch12Ex3.xls can be found in MyOMLab.

ACTIVE MODEL 12.1 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 12.1 in MyOMLab.

We can also determine the expected number of orders placed during the year (N) and the expected time between orders (T), as follows:

$$\text{Expected number of orders} = N = \frac{\text{Demand}}{\text{Order quantity}} = \frac{D}{Q^*} \qquad (12\text{-}2)$$

$$\text{Expected time between orders} = T = \frac{\text{Number of working days per year}}{N} \qquad (12\text{-}3)$$

Example 4 illustrates this concept.

Example 4

COMPUTING NUMBER OF ORDERS AND TIME BETWEEN ORDERS AT SHARP, INC.

Sharp, Inc. (in Example 3) has a 250-day working year and wants to find the number of orders (N) and the expected time between orders (T).

APPROACH ▶ Using Equations (12-2) and (12-3), Sharp enters the data given in Example 3.

SOLUTION ▶

$$N = \frac{\text{Demand}}{\text{Order quantity}}$$

$$= \frac{1{,}000}{200} = 5 \text{ orders per year}$$

$$T = \frac{\text{Number of working days per year}}{\text{Expected number of orders}}$$

$$= \frac{250 \text{ working days per year}}{5 \text{ orders}} = 50 \text{ days between orders}$$

INSIGHT ▶ The company now knows not only how many needles to order per order but that the time between orders is 50 days and that there are five orders per year.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If $D = 1{,}200$ units instead of 1,000, find N and T. [Answer: N ≅ 5.48, $T = 45.62$.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 12.14, 12.15, 12.17 (12.35c,d are available in MyOMLab)

As mentioned earlier in this section, the total annual variable inventory cost is the sum of setup and holding costs:

$$\text{Total annual cost} = \text{Setup (order) cost} + \text{Holding cost} \qquad (12\text{-}4)$$

In terms of the variables in the model, we can express the total cost TC as:

$$TC = \frac{D}{Q}S + \frac{Q}{2}H \qquad (12\text{-}5)$$

Example 5 shows how to use this formula.

Example 5

COMPUTING COMBINED COST OF ORDERING AND HOLDING

Sharp, Inc. (from Examples 3 and 4) wants to determine the combined annual ordering and holding costs.

APPROACH ▶ Apply Equation (12-5), using the data in Example 3.

SOLUTION ▶

$$TC = \frac{D}{Q}S + \frac{Q}{2}H$$
$$= \frac{1{,}000}{200}(\$10) + \frac{200}{2}(\$.50)$$
$$= (5)(\$10) + (100)(\$.50)$$
$$= \$50 + \$50 = \$100$$

INSIGHT ▶ These are the annual setup and holding costs. The $100 total does not include the actual cost of goods. Notice that in the EOQ model, holding costs always equal setup (order) costs.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Find the total annual cost if $D = 1{,}200$ units in Example 3. [Answer: $109.54.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 12.11, 12.14, 12.15, 12.16 (12.33b,c; 12.35e; 12.36a,b are available in MyOMLab)

Inventory costs may also be expressed to include the actual cost of the material purchased. If we assume that the annual demand and the price per hypodermic needle are known values (e.g., 1,000 hypodermics per year at $P = \$10$) and total annual cost should include purchase cost, then Equation (12-5) becomes:

$$TC = \frac{D}{Q}S + \frac{Q}{2}H + PD$$

Because material cost does not depend on the particular order policy, we still incur an annual material cost of $D \times P = (1{,}000)(\$10) = \$10{,}000$. (Later in this chapter we will discuss the case in which this may not be true—namely, when a quantity discount is available.)[3]

Robust
Giving satisfactory answers even with substantial variation in the parameters.

Robust Model A benefit of the EOQ model is that it is robust. By robust we mean that it gives satisfactory answers even with substantial variation in its parameters. As we have observed, determining accurate ordering costs and holding costs for inventory is often difficult. Consequently, a robust model is advantageous. The total cost of the EOQ changes little in the neighborhood of the minimum. The curve is very shallow. This means that variations in setup costs, holding costs, demand, or even EOQ make relatively modest differences in total cost. Example 6 shows the robustness of EOQ.

Example 6

EOQ IS A ROBUST MODEL

Management in the Sharp, Inc., examples underestimates total annual demand by 50% (say demand is actually 1,500 needles rather than 1,000 needles) while using the same Q. How will the annual inventory cost be impacted?

APPROACH ▶ We will solve for annual costs twice. First, we will apply the wrong EOQ; then we will recompute costs with the correct EOQ.

SOLUTION ▶ If demand in Example 5 is actually 1,500 needles rather than 1,000, but management uses an order quantity of $Q = 200$ (when it should be $Q = 244.9$ based on $D = 1{,}500$), the sum of holding and ordering cost increases to $125:

$$\text{Annual cost} = \frac{D}{Q}S + \frac{Q}{2}H$$
$$= \frac{1{,}500}{200}(\$10) + \frac{200}{2}(\$.50)$$
$$= \$75 + \$50 = \$125$$

However, had we known that the demand was for 1,500 with an EOQ of 244.9 units, we would have spent $122.47, as shown:

$$\text{Annual cost} = \frac{1{,}500}{244.9}(\$10) + \frac{244.9}{2}(\$.50)$$
$$= 6.125(\$10) + 122.45(\$.50)$$
$$= \$61.25 + \$61.22 = \$122.47$$

INSIGHT ▶ Note that the expenditure of $125.00, made with an estimate of demand that was substantially wrong, is only 2% ($2.52/$122.47) higher than we would have paid had we known the actual demand and ordered accordingly. Note also that were it not due to rounding, the annual holding costs and ordering costs would be exactly equal.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Demand at Sharp remains at 1,000, H is still $.50, and we order 200 needles at a time (as in Example 5). But if the true order cost = S = $15 (rather than $10), what is the annual cost? [Answer: Annual order cost increases to $75, and annual holding cost stays at $50. So the total cost = $125.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 12.10b, 12.16 (12.36a,b are available in MyOMLab)

We may conclude that the EOQ is indeed robust and that significant errors do not cost us very much. This attribute of the EOQ model is most convenient because our ability to accurately determine demand, holding cost, and ordering cost is limited.

Reorder Points

Now that we have decided *how much* to order, we will look at the second inventory question, *when* to order. Simple inventory models assume that receipt of an order is instantaneous. In other words, they assume (1) that a firm will place an order when the inventory level for that particular item reaches zero and (2) that it will receive the ordered items immediately. However, the time between placement and receipt of an order, called **lead time**, or delivery time, can be as short as a few hours or as long as months. Thus, the when-to-order decision is usually expressed in terms of a **reorder point (ROP)**—the inventory level at which an order should be placed (see Figure 12.5).

Lead time
In purchasing systems, the time between placing an order and receiving it; in production systems, the wait, move, queue, setup, and run times for each component produced.

Reorder point (ROP)
The inventory level (point) at which action is taken to replenish the stocked item.

Safety stock (*ss*)
Extra stock to allow for uneven demand; a buffer.

The reorder point (ROP) is given as:

$$\text{ROP} = \text{Demand per day} \times \text{Lead time for a new order in days}$$
$$\text{ROP} = d \times L \qquad (12\text{-}6)$$

This equation for ROP *assumes that demand during lead time and lead time itself are constant*. When this is not the case, extra stock, often called **safety stock (*ss*)**, should be added. The reorder point with safety stock then becomes:

$$\text{ROP} = \text{Expected demand during lead time} + \text{Safety stock}$$

The demand per day, d, is found by dividing the annual demand, D, by the number of working days in a year:

$$d = \frac{D}{\text{Number of working days in a year}}$$

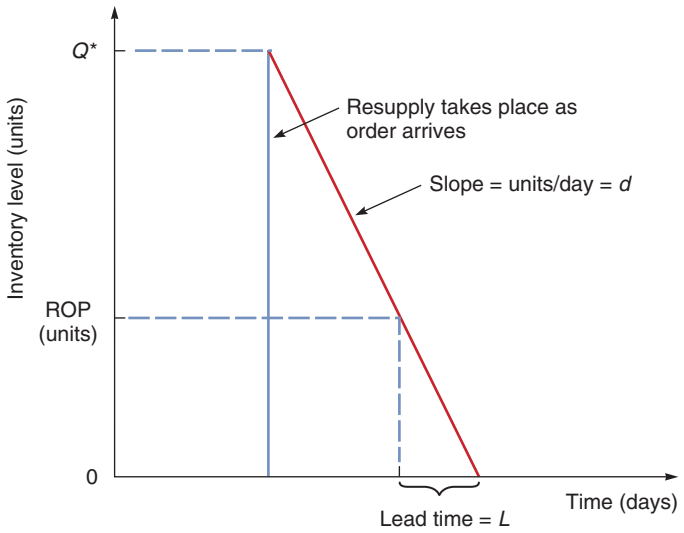


Figure **12.5**

The Reorder Point (ROP)

*Q** is the optimum order quantity, and lead time represents the time between placing and receiving an order.

Computing the reorder point is demonstrated in Example 7.

Example 7

COMPUTING REORDER POINTS (ROP) FOR IPHONES WITH AND WITHOUT SAFETY STOCK

An Apple store has a demand (D) for 8,000 iPhones per year. The firm operates a 250-day working year. On average, delivery of an order takes 3 working days, but has been known to take as long as 4 days. The store wants to calculate the reorder point without a safety stock and then with a one-day safety stock.

APPROACH ▶ First compute the daily demand and then apply Equation (12-6) for the ROP. Then compute the ROP with safety stock.

SOLUTION ▶

$$d = \frac{D}{\text{Number of working days in a year}} = \frac{8{,}000}{250} = 32 \text{ units}$$

$$\text{ROP} = \text{Reorder point} = d \times L = 32 \text{ units per day} \times 3 \text{ days} = 96 \text{ units}$$

ROP with safety stock adds 1 day's demand (32 units) to the ROP (for 128 units).

INSIGHT ▶ When iPhone inventory stock drops to 96 units, an order should be placed. If the safety stock for a possible one-day delay in delivery is added, the ROP is 128 (= 96 + 32).

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If there are only 200 working days per year, what is the correct ROP, without safety stock and with safety stock? [Answer: 120 iPhones without safety stock and 160 with safety stock.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 12.11d, 12.12, 12.13, 12.15f (12.33d, 12.34, 12.35f, 12.36c are available in MyOMLab)

LO 12.4 *Compute* a reorder point and explain safety stock

When demand is not constant or variability exists in the supply chain, safety stock can be critical. We discuss safety stock in more detail later in this chapter.

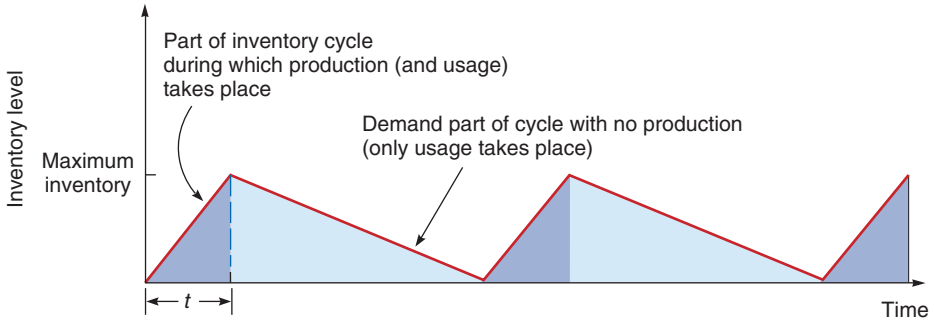
Production Order Quantity Model

In the previous inventory model, we assumed that the entire inventory order was received at one time. There are times, however, when the firm may receive its inventory over a period of time. Such cases require a different model, one that does not require the instantaneous-receipt assumption. This model is applicable under two situations: (1) when inventory continuously flows or builds up over a period of time after an order has been placed or (2) when units are produced and sold simultaneously. Under these circumstances, we take into account daily production (or inventory-flow) rate and daily demand rate. Figure 12.6 shows inventory levels as a function of time (and inventory dropping to zero between orders).

Production order quantity model
An economic order quantity technique applied to production orders.

Because this model is especially suitable for the production environment, it is commonly called the **production order quantity model**. It is useful when inventory continuously builds up over time, and traditional economic order quantity assumptions are valid. We derive this model by setting ordering or setup costs equal to holding costs and solving for optimal order size, Q^*. Using the following symbols, we can determine the expression for annual inventory holding cost for the production order quantity model:

Figure 12.6
Change in Inventory Levels over Time for the Production Model



Q = Number of units per order
H = Holding cost per unit per year
p = Daily production rate
d = Daily demand rate, or usage rate
t = Length of the production run in days

LO 12.5 *Apply* the production order quantity model

1. $\begin{pmatrix}\text{Annual inventory}\\ \text{holding cost}\end{pmatrix} = (\text{Average inventory level}) \times \begin{pmatrix}\text{Holding cost}\\ \text{per unit per year}\end{pmatrix}$

2. (Average inventory level) = (Maximum inventory level)/2

3. $\begin{pmatrix}\text{Maximum}\\ \text{inventory level}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{Total production during}\\ \text{the production run}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{Total used during}\\ \text{the production run}\end{pmatrix}$

$= pt - dt$

However, Q = total produced $= pt$, and thus $t = Q/p$. Therefore:

$$\text{Maximum inventory level} = p\left(\frac{Q}{p}\right) - d\left(\frac{Q}{p}\right) = Q - \frac{d}{p}Q$$
$$= Q\left(1 - \frac{d}{p}\right)$$

STUDENT TIP

Note in Figure 12.6 that inventory buildup is not instantaneous but gradual. So the formula reduces the average inventory and thus the holding cost by the ratio of that buildup.

4. Annual inventory holding cost (or simply holding cost) =

$$\frac{\text{Maximum inventory level}}{2}(H) = \frac{Q}{2}\left[1 - \left(\frac{d}{p}\right)\right]H$$

Using this expression for holding cost and the expression for setup cost developed in the basic EOQ model, we solve for the optimal number of pieces per order by equating setup cost and holding cost:

$$\text{Setup cost} = (D/Q)S \qquad \text{Holding cost} = \tfrac{1}{2}HQ[1 - (d/p)]$$

Set ordering cost equal to holding cost to obtain Q_p^*:

$$\frac{D}{Q}S = \tfrac{1}{2}HQ[1 - (d/p)]$$
$$Q^2 = \frac{2DS}{H[1 - (d/p)]}$$
$$Q_p^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H[1 - (d/p)]}} \qquad (12\text{-}7)$$

Dmitry Kalinovsky/Shutterstock

Each order may require a change in the way a machine or process is set up. Reducing setup time usually means a reduction in setup cost, and reductions in setup costs make smaller batches (lots) economical to produce. Increasingly, setup (and operation) is performed by computer-controlled machines, such as this one, operating from previously written programs.

In Example 8, we use the above equation, Q_p^*, to solve for the optimum order or production quantity when inventory is consumed as it is produced.

Example 8

A PRODUCTION ORDER QUANTITY MODEL

Nathan Manufacturing, Inc., makes and sells specialty hubcaps for the retail automobile aftermarket. Nathan's forecast for its wire-wheel hubcap is 1,000 units next year, with an average daily demand of 4 units. However, the production process is most efficient at 8 units per day. So the company produces 8 per day but uses only 4 per day. The company wants to solve for the optimum number of units per order. (*Note:* This plant schedules production of this hubcap only as needed, during the 250 days per year the shop operates.)

APPROACH ▶ Gather the cost data and apply Equation (12-7):

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Annual demand} &= D = 1{,}000 \text{ units}\\ \text{Setup costs} &= S = \$10\\ \text{Holding cost} &= H = \$0.50 \text{ per unit per year}\\ \text{Daily production rate} &= p = 8 \text{ units daily}\\ \text{Daily demand rate} &= d = 4 \text{ units daily}\end{aligned}$$

SOLUTION ▶

$$Q_p^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H[1-(d/p)]}}$$

$$Q_p^* = \sqrt{\frac{2(1{,}000)(10)}{0.50[1-(4/8)]}}$$

$$= \sqrt{\frac{20{,}000}{0.50(1/2)}} = \sqrt{80{,}000} = 282.8 \text{ hubcaps, or } 283 \text{ hubcaps}$$

INSIGHT ▶ The difference between the production order quantity model and the basic EOQ model is that the effective annual holding cost per unit is reduced in the production order quantity model because the entire order does not arrive at once.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If Nathan can increase its daily production rate from 8 to 10, how does Q_p^* change? [Answer: $Q_p^* = 258$.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 12.18, 12.19, 12.20, 12.30 (12.37 is available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File Ch12Ex8.xls can be found in MyOMLab.

ACTIVE MODEL 12.2 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 12.2 in MyOMLab.

You may want to compare this solution with the answer in Example 3, which had identical D, S, and H values. Eliminating the instantaneous-receipt assumption, where $p = 8$ and $d = 4$, resulted in an increase in Q^* from 200 in Example 3 to 283 in Example 8. This increase in Q^* occurred because holding cost dropped from \$.50 to [\$.50 $\times$ $(1 - d/p)$], making a larger order quantity optimal. Also note that:

$$d = 4 = \frac{D}{\text{Number of days the plant is in operation}} = \frac{1{,}000}{250}$$

We can also calculate Q_p^* when *annual* data are available. When annual data are used, we can express Q_p^* as:

$$Q_p^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H\left(1 - \dfrac{\text{Annual demand rate}}{\text{Annual production rate}}\right)}} \qquad (12\text{-}8)$$

Quantity Discount Models

Quantity discounts appear everywhere—you cannot go into a grocery store without seeing them on nearly every shelf. In fact, researchers have found that *most* companies either offer or receive quantity discounts for at least some of the products that they sell or purchase. A **quantity discount** is simply a reduced price (P) for an item when it is purchased in larger quantities. A typical quantity discount schedule appears in Table 12.2. As can be seen in the table, the normal price of the item is \$100. When 120 to 1,499 units are ordered at one time, the price per unit drops to \$98; when the quantity ordered at one time is 1,500 units or more, the price is \$96 per unit. The 120 quantity and the 1,500 quantity are called *price-break quantities* because they represent the first order amount that would lead to a new lower price. As always, management must decide when and how much to order. However, given these quantity discounts, how does the operations manager make these decisions?

Quantity discount
A reduced price for items purchased in large quantities.

As with other inventory models, the objective is to minimize total cost. Because the unit cost for the second discount in Table 12.2 is the lowest, you may be tempted to order 1,500 units. Placing an order for that quantity, however, even with the greatest discount price, may not minimize total inventory cost. This is because holding cost increases. Thus, the major trade-off when considering quantity discounts is between *reduced product cost* and *increased holding cost*. When we include the cost of the product, the equation for the total annual inventory cost can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Total annual cost} = \text{Annual setup (ordering) cost} + \text{Annual holding cost} + \text{Annual product cost},$$

or

$$TC = \frac{D}{Q}S + \frac{Q}{2}IP + PD \tag{12-9}$$

LO 12.6 *Explain* and use the quantity discount model

where Q = Quantity ordered
D = Annual demand in units
S = Setup or ordering cost per order
P = Price per unit
I = Holding cost per unit per year expressed as a percent of price P

Note that holding cost is IP instead of H as seen in the regular EOQ model. Because the price of the item is a factor in annual holding cost, we do not assume that the holding cost is a constant when the price per unit changes for each quantity discount. Thus, it is common to express the holding cost as a percent (I) of unit price (P) when evaluating costs of quantity discount schedules.

The EOQ formula (12-1) is modified for the quantity discount problem as follows:

$$Q^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{IP}} \tag{12-10}$$

The solution procedure uses the concept of a *feasible EOQ*. An EOQ is feasible if it lies in the quantity range that leads to the same price P used to compute it in Equation (12-10). For example, suppose that $D = 5{,}200$, $S = \$200$, and $I = 28\%$. Using Table 12.2 and Equation (12-10), the EOQ for the \$96 price equals $\sqrt{2(5{,}200)(200)/[(.28)(96)]} = 278$ units. Because $278 < 1{,}500$ (the price-break quantity needed to receive the \$96 price), the EOQ for the \$96 price is *not feasible*. On the other hand, the EOQ for the \$98 price equals 275 units. This amount is *feasible* because if 275 units were actually ordered, the firm would indeed receive the \$98 purchase price.

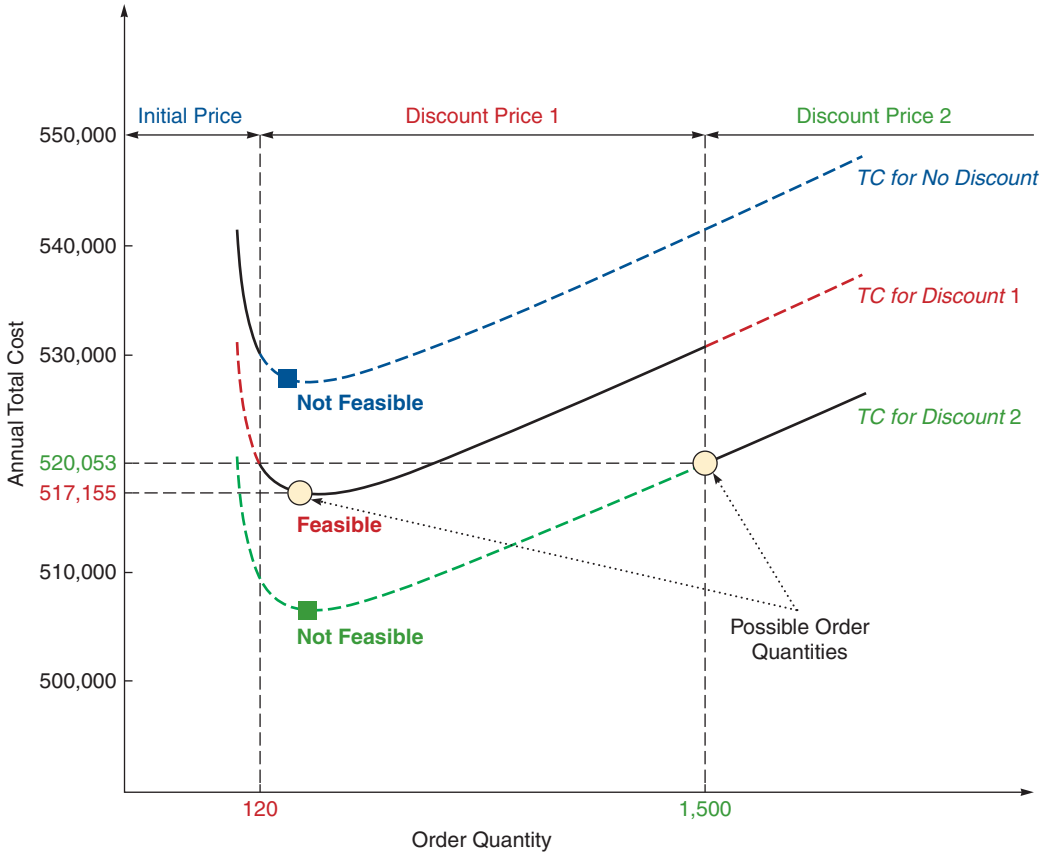
TABLE 12.2 A Quantity Discount Schedule

PRICE RANGE	QUANTITY ORDERED	PRICE PER UNIT P
Initial price	1–119	\$100
Discount price 1	120–1,499	\$ 98
Discount price 2	1,500 and over	\$ 96

Figure 12.7

EOQs and Possible Best Order Quantities for the Quantity Discount Problem with Three Prices in Table 12.2

The solid black curves represent the realized total annual setup plus holding plus purchasing cost at the applicable order quantities. The black curve drops to the total cost curve for the next discount level when each price-break quantity is reached.



Now we have to determine the quantity that will minimize the total annual inventory cost. Because there are a few discounts, this process involves two steps. In Step 1, we identify all possible order quantities that could be the best solution. In Step 2, we calculate the total cost of all possible best order quantities, and the least expensive order quantity is selected.

Solution Procedure

STEP 1: Starting with the *lowest* possible purchase price in a quantity discount schedule and working toward the highest price, keep calculating Q^* from Equation (12-10) until the first feasible EOQ is found. The first feasible EOQ is a possible best order quantity, along with all price-break quantities for all *lower* prices.

STEP 2: Calculate the total annual cost TC using Equation (12-9) for each of the possible best order quantities determined in Step 1. Select the quantity that has the lowest total cost.

Note that no quantities need to be considered for any prices greater than the first feasible EOQ found in Step 1. This occurs because if an EOQ for a given price is feasible, then the EOQ for any *higher* price *cannot* lead to a lower cost (TC is guaranteed to be higher).

Figure 12.7 provides a graphical illustration of Step 1 using the three price ranges from Table 12.2. In that example, the EOQ for the lowest price is infeasible, but the EOQ for the second-lowest price is feasible. So the EOQ for the second-lowest price, along with the price-break quantity for the lowest price, are the possible best order quantities. Finally, the highest price (no discount) can be ignored because a feasible EOQ has already been found for a lower price.

Example 9 illustrates how the full solution procedure can be applied.

Example 9

QUANTITY DISCOUNT MODEL

Chris Beehner Electronics stocks toy remote control flying drones. Recently, the store has been offered a quantity discount schedule for these drones. This quantity schedule was shown in Table 12.2. Furthermore, setup cost is $200 per order, annual demand is 5,200 units, and annual inventory carrying charge as a percent of cost, I, is 28%. What order quantity will minimize the total inventory cost?

APPROACH ▶ We will follow the two steps just outlined for the quantity discount model.

SOLUTION ▶ First we calculate the Q^* for the lowest possible price of \$96, as we did earlier:

$$Q^*_{\$96} = \sqrt{\frac{2(5{,}200)(\$200)}{(.28)(\$96)}} = 278 \text{ flying drones per order}$$

Because 278 < 1,500, this EOQ is *infeasible* for the \$96 price. So now we calculate Q^* for the next-higher price of \$98:

$$Q^*_{\$98} = \sqrt{\frac{2(5{,}200)(\$200)}{(.28)(\$98)}} = 275 \text{ flying drones per order}$$

Because 275 is between 120 and 1,499 units, this EOQ is *feasible* for the \$98 price. Thus, the possible best order quantities are 275 (the first feasible EOQ) and 1,500 (the price-break quantity for the lower price of \$96). We need not bother to compute Q^* for the initial price of \$100 because we found a feasible EOQ for a lower price.

Step 2 uses Equation (12-9) to compute the total cost for each of the possible best order quantities. This step is taken with the aid of Table 12.3.

TABLE 12.3 Total Cost Computations for Chris Beehner Electronics

ORDER QUANTITY	UNIT PRICE	ANNUAL ORDERING COST	ANNUAL HOLDING COST	ANNUAL PRODUCT COST	TOTAL ANNUAL COST
275	\$98	\$3,782	\$ 3,773	\$509,600	\$517,155
1,500	\$96	\$ 693	\$20,160	\$499,200	\$520,053

Because the total annual cost for 275 units is lower, 275 units should be ordered. The costs for this example are shown in Figure 12.7.

INSIGHT ▶ Even though Beehner Electronics could save more than \$10,000 in annual product costs, ordering 1,500 units (28.8% of annual demand) at a time would generate even more than that in increased holding costs. So in this example it is not in the store's best interest to order enough to attain the lowest possible purchase price per unit. On the other hand, if the price-break quantity for the \$96 had been 1,000 units rather than 1,500 units, then total annual costs would have been \$513,680, which would have been cheaper than ordering 275 units at \$98.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Resolve the problem with D = 2,000, S = \$5, I = 50%, discount price 1 = \$99, and discount price 2 = \$98. [Answer: only 20 units should be ordered each time, which is the EOQ at the \$100 price.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 12.21–12.28 (12.38–12.40 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data file **Ch12Ex9.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

In this section we have studied the most popular form of single-purchase quantity discount called the *all-units discount*. In practice, quantity discounts appear in a variety of forms. For example, *incremental quantity discounts* apply only to those units purchased beyond the price-break quantities rather than to all units. *Fixed fees*, such as a fixed shipping and processing cost for a catalog order or a \$5,000 tooling setup cost for any order placed with a manufacturer, encourage buyers to purchase more units at a time. Some discounts are *aggregated* over items or time. *Item aggregation* bases price breaks on total units or dollars purchased. *Time aggregation* applies to total items or dollars spent over a specific time period such as one year. *Truckload discounts*, *buy-one-get-one-free offers*, and *one-time-only sales* also represent types of quantity discounts in that they provide price incentives for buyers to purchase more units at one time. Most purchasing managers deal with some form of quantity discounts on a regular basis.

Probabilistic Models and Safety Stock

Probabilistic model
A statistical model applicable when product demand or any other variable is not known but can be specified by means of a probability distribution.

Service level
The probability that demand will not be greater than supply during lead time. It is the complement of the probability of a stockout.

All the inventory models we have discussed so far make the assumption that demand for a product is constant and certain. We now relax this assumption. The following inventory models apply when product demand is not known but can be specified by means of a probability distribution. These types of models are called **probabilistic models**. Probabilistic models are a real-world adjustment because demand and lead time won't always be known and constant.

An important concern of management is maintaining an adequate service level in the face of uncertain demand. The **service level** is the *complement* of the probability of a stockout. For instance, if the probability of a stockout is 0.05, then the service level is .95. Uncertain demand raises the possibility of a stockout. One method of reducing stockouts is to hold extra units in inventory. As we noted earlier such inventory is referred to as safety stock. Safety stock involves adding a number of units as a buffer to the reorder point. As you recall:

$$\text{Reorder point} = \text{ROP} = d \times L$$

where d = Daily demand
L = Order lead time, or number of working days it takes to deliver an order

The inclusion of safety stock (ss) changed the expression to:

$$\text{ROP} = d \times L + ss \tag{12-11}$$

The amount of safety stock maintained depends on the cost of incurring a stockout and the cost of holding the extra inventory. Annual stockout cost is computed as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Annual stockout costs} = {} & \text{The sum of the units short for each demand level} \\ & \times \text{The probability of that demand level} \times \text{The stockout cost/unit} \\ & \times \text{The number of orders per year}\end{aligned} \tag{12-12}$$

Example 10 illustrates this concept.

Example 10

DETERMINING SAFETY STOCK WITH PROBABILISTIC DEMAND AND CONSTANT LEAD TIME

David Rivera Optical has determined that its reorder point for eyeglass frames is 50 ($d \times L$) units. Its carrying cost per frame per year is \$5, and stockout (or lost sale) cost is \$40 per frame. The store has experienced the following probability distribution for inventory demand during the lead time (reorder period). The optimum number of orders per year is six.

NUMBER OF UNITS	PROBABILITY
30	.2
40	.2
ROP → 50	.3
60	.2
70	.1
	1.0

How much safety stock should David Rivera keep on hand?

APPROACH ► The objective is to find the amount of safety stock that minimizes the sum of the additional inventory holding costs and stockout costs. The annual holding cost is simply the holding cost per unit multiplied by the units added to the ROP. For example, a safety stock of 20 frames, which implies that the new ROP, with safety stock, is 70 (= 50 + 20), raises the annual carrying cost by \$5(20) = \$100.

However, computing annual stockout cost is more interesting. For any level of safety stock, stockout cost is the expected cost of stocking out. We can compute it, as in Equation (12-12), by multiplying the number of frames short (Demand – ROP) by the probability of demand at that level, by the stockout cost, by the number of times per year the stockout can occur (which in our case is the number of orders per year). Then we add stockout costs for each possible stockout level for a given ROP.[4]

SOLUTION ▶ We begin by looking at zero safety stock. For this safety stock, a shortage of 10 frames will occur if demand is 60, and a shortage of 20 frames will occur if the demand is 70. Thus the stockout costs for zero safety stock are:

$$(10 \text{ frames short})(.2)(\$40 \text{ per stockout})(6 \text{ possible stockouts per year}) + (20 \text{ frames short})(.1)(\$40)(6) = \$960$$

The following table summarizes the total costs for each of the three alternatives:

SAFETY STOCK	ADDITIONAL HOLDING COST	STOCKOUT COST	TOTAL COST
20	(20)($5) = $100	$ 0	$100
10	(10)($5) = $ 50	(10) (.1) ($40) (6) = $240	$290
0	$ 0	(10) (.2) ($40) (6) + (20) (.1) ($40) (6) = $960	$960

The safety stock with the lowest total cost is 20 frames. Therefore, this safety stock changes the reorder point to 50 + 20 = 70 frames.

INSIGHT ▶ The optical company now knows that a safety stock of 20 frames will be the most economical decision.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ David Rivera's holding cost per frame is now estimated to be $20, while the stockout cost is $30 per frame. Does the reorder point change? [Answer: Safety stock = 10 now, with a total cost of $380, which is the lowest of the three. ROP = 60 frames.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 12.43, 12.44, 12.45

When it is difficult or impossible to determine the cost of being out of stock, a manager may decide to follow a policy of keeping enough safety stock on hand to meet a prescribed customer service level. For instance, Figure 12.8 shows the use of safety stock when demand (for hospital resuscitation kits) is probabilistic. We see that the safety stock in Figure 12.8 is 16.5 units, and the reorder point is also increased by 16.5.

The manager may want to define the service level as meeting 95% of the demand (or, conversely, having stockouts only 5% of the time). Assuming that demand during lead time (the reorder period) follows a normal curve, only the mean and standard deviation are needed to define the inventory requirements for any given service level. Sales data are usually adequate for computing the mean and standard deviation. Example 11 uses a normal curve with a known mean (μ) and standard deviation (σ) to determine the reorder point and safety stock necessary

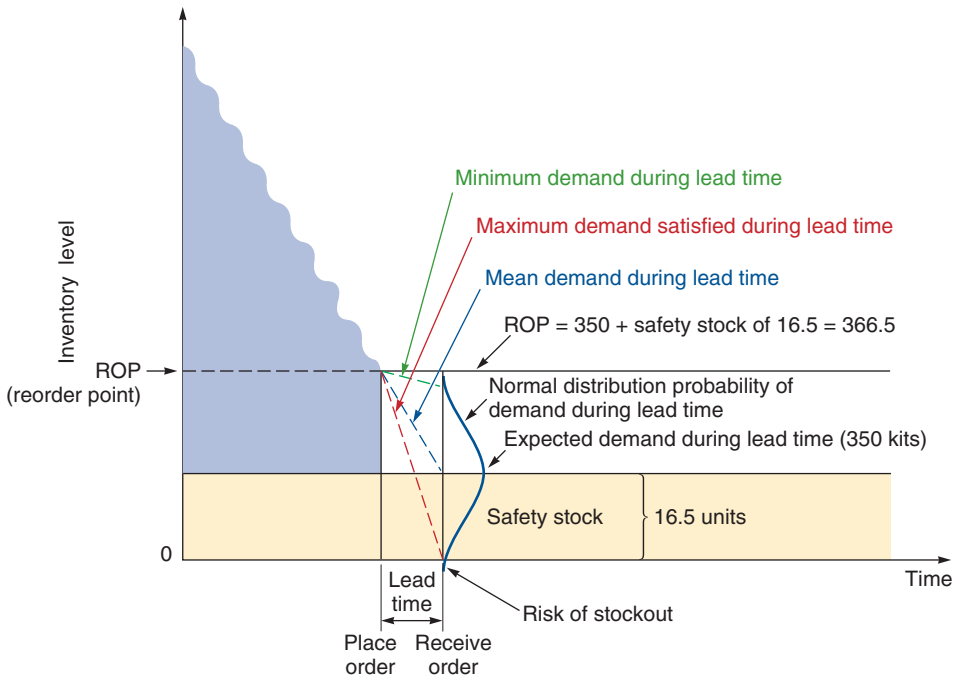


Figure 12.8

Probabilistic Demand for a Hospital Item

Expected number of kits needed during lead time is 350, but for a 95% service level, the reorder point should be raised to 366.5.

for a 95% service level. We use the following formula:

$$\text{ROP} = \text{Expected demand during lead time} + Z\sigma_{dLT} \quad (12\text{-}13)$$

where Z = Number of standard deviations
σ_{dLT} = Standard deviation of demand during lead time

Example 11

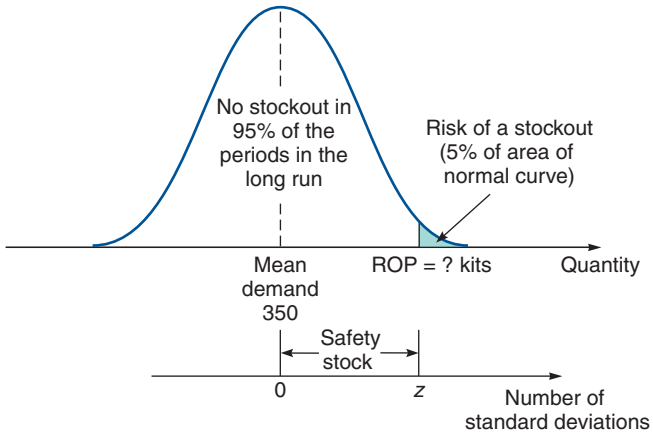
SAFETY STOCK WITH PROBABILISTIC DEMAND

Memphis Regional Hospital stocks a "code blue" resuscitation kit that has a normally distributed demand during the reorder period. The mean (average) demand during the reorder period is 350 kits, and the standard deviation is 10 kits. The hospital administrator wants to follow a policy that results in stockouts only 5% of the time.

(a) What is the appropriate value of Z? (b) How much safety stock should the hospital maintain? (c) What reorder point should be used?

APPROACH ▶ The hospital determines how much inventory is needed to meet the demand 95% of the time. The figure in this example may help you visualize the approach. The data are as follows:

μ = Mean demand = 350 kits
σ_{dLT} = Standard deviation of demand during lead time = 10 kits
Z = Number of standard normal deviations



STUDENT TIP
Recall that the service level is 1 minus the risk of a stockout.

SOLUTION ▶

a) We use the properties of a standardized normal curve to get a Z-value for an area under the normal curve of .95 (or 1 − .05). Using a normal table (see Appendix I) or the Excel formula =NORMSINV(.95), we find a Z-value of 1.645 standard deviations from the mean.

b) Because: $\text{Safety stock} = x - \mu$

and: $$Z = \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma_{dLT}}$$

then: $\text{Safety stock} = Z\sigma_{dLT}$ (12-14)

Solving for safety stock, as in Equation (12-14), gives:

$$\text{Safety stock} = 1.645(10) = 16.5 \text{ kits}$$

This is the situation illustrated in Figure 12.8.

c) The reorder point is:

$$\text{ROP} = \text{Expected demand during lead time} + \text{Safety stock}$$
$$= 350 \text{ kits} + 16.5 \text{ kits of safety stock} = 366.5, \text{ or } 367 \text{ kits}$$

INSIGHT ▶ The cost of the inventory policy increases dramatically (exponentially) with an increase in service levels.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ What policy results in stockouts 10% of the time? [Answer: $Z = 1.28$; safety stock = 12.8; ROP = 363 kits.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 12.41, 12.42, 12.49 (12.50 is available in MyOMLab)

Other Probabilistic Models

Equations (12-13) and (12-14) assume that both an estimate of expected demand during lead times and its standard deviation are available. When data on lead time demand are *not* available, the preceding formulas cannot be applied. However, three other models are available. We need to determine which model to use for three situations:

1. Demand is variable and lead time is constant
2. Lead time is variable and demand is constant
3. Both demand and lead time are variable

LO 12.7 *Understand* service levels and probabilistic inventory models

All three models assume that demand and lead time are independent variables. Note that our examples use days, but weeks can also be used. Let us examine these three situations separately, because a different formula for the ROP is needed for each.

Demand Is Variable and Lead Time Is Constant (See Example 12.) When *only the demand is variable*, then:[5]

$$\text{ROP} = (\textit{Average}\text{ daily demand} \times \text{Lead time in days}) + Z\sigma_{dLT} \qquad (12\text{-}15)$$

where σ_{dLT} = Standard deviation of demand during lead time $= \sigma_d\sqrt{\text{Lead time}}$

and σ_d = Standard deviation of demand per day

Example 12

ROP FOR VARIABLE DEMAND AND CONSTANT LEAD TIME

The *average* daily demand for Lenovo laptop computers at a Circuit Town store is 15, with a standard deviation of 5 units. The lead time is constant at 2 days. Find the reorder point if management wants a 90% service level (i.e., risk stockouts only 10% of the time). How much of this is safety stock?

APPROACH ▶ Apply Equation (12-15) to the following data:

Average daily demand (normally distributed) = 15

Lead time in days (constant) = 2

Standard deviation of daily demand = $\sigma_d = 5$

Service level = 90%

SOLUTION ▶ From the normal table (Appendix I) or the Excel formula =NORMSINV(.90), we derive a Z-value for 90% of 1.28. Then:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{ROP} &= (15 \text{ units} \times 2 \text{ days}) + Z\sigma_d\sqrt{\text{Lead time}}\\ &= 30 + 1.28(5)(\sqrt{2})\\ &= 30 + 1.28(5)(1.41) = 30 + 9.02 = 39.02 \cong 39\end{aligned}$$

Thus, safety stock is about 9 Lenovo computers.

INSIGHT ▶ The value of Z depends on the manager's stockout risk level. The smaller the risk, the higher the Z.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the Circuit Town manager wants a 95% service level, what is the new ROP? [Answer: ROP = 41.63, or 42.]

RELATED PROBLEM ▶ 12.46

Lead Time Is Variable and Demand Is Constant When the demand is constant and *only the lead time is variable*, then:

$$\text{ROP} = (\text{Daily demand} \times \textit{Average}\text{ lead time in days}) + Z \times \text{Daily demand} \times \sigma_{LT} \qquad (12\text{-}16)$$

where σ_{LT} = Standard deviation of lead time in days

Example 13

ROP FOR CONSTANT DEMAND AND VARIABLE LEAD TIME

The Circuit Town store in Example 12 sells about 10 digital cameras a day (almost a constant quantity). Lead time for camera delivery is normally distributed with a mean time of 6 days and a standard deviation of 1 day. A 98% service level is set. Find the ROP.

APPROACH ▶ Apply Equation (12-16) to the following data:

Daily demand = 10

Average lead time = 6 days

Standard deviation of lead time = σ_{LT} = 1 day

Service level = 98%, so Z (from Appendix I or the Excel formula =NORMSINV(.98)) = 2.055

SOLUTION ▶ From the equation we get:

$$\text{ROP} = (10 \text{ units} \times 6 \text{ days}) + 2.055(10 \text{ units})(1)$$
$$= 60 + 20.55 = 80.55$$

The reorder point is about 81 cameras.

INSIGHT ▶ Note how the very high service level of 98% drives the ROP up.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If a 90% service level is applied, what does the ROP drop to? [Answer: ROP = 60 + (1.28) (10) (1) = 60 + 12.8 = 72.8 because the Z-value is only 1.28.]

RELATED PROBLEM ▶ 12.47

Both Demand and Lead Time Are Variable When both the demand and lead time are variable, the formula for reorder point becomes more complex:[6]

$$\text{ROP} = (\text{Average daily demand} \times \text{Average lead time in days}) + Z\sigma_{dLT} \qquad (12\text{-}17)$$

where

$$\sigma_d = \text{Standard deviation of demand per day}$$
$$\sigma_{LT} = \text{Standard deviation of lead time in days}$$

$$\text{and } \sigma_{dLT} = \sqrt{(\text{Average lead time} \times \sigma_d^2) + (\text{Average daily demand})^2\sigma_{LT}^2}$$

Example 14

ROP FOR VARIABLE DEMAND AND VARIABLE LEAD TIME

The Circuit Town store's most popular item is six-packs of 9-volt batteries. About 150 packs are sold per day, following a normal distribution with a standard deviation of 16 packs. Batteries are ordered from an out-of-state distributor; lead time is normally distributed with an average of 5 days and a standard deviation of 1 day. To maintain a 95% service level, what ROP is appropriate?

APPROACH ▶ Determine a quantity at which to reorder by applying Equation (12-17) to the following data:

Average daily demand = 150 packs

Standard deviation of demand = σ_d = 16 packs

Average lead time = 5 days

Standard deviation of lead time = σ_{LT} = 1 day

Service level = 95%, so Z =1.645 (from Appendix I or the Excel formula =NORMSINV(.95))

SOLUTION ▶ From the equation we compute:

$$\text{ROP} = (150 \text{ packs} \times 5 \text{ days}) + 1.645\,\sigma_{dLT}$$

where
$$\sigma_{dLT} = \sqrt{(5 \text{ days} \times 16^2) + (150^2 \times 1^2)}$$
$$= \sqrt{(5 \times 256) + (22{,}500 \times 1)}$$
$$= \sqrt{1{,}280 + 22{,}500} = \sqrt{23{,}780} \cong 154$$

So ROP = $(150 \times 5) + 1.645(154) \cong 750 + 253 = 1{,}003$ packs

INSIGHT ▶ When both demand and lead time are variable, the formula looks quite complex. But it is just the result of squaring the standard deviations in Equations (12-15) and (12-16) to get their variances, then summing them, and finally taking the square root.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ For an 80% service level, what is the ROP? [Answer: $Z = .84$ and ROP = 879 packs.]

RELATED PROBLEM ▶ 12.48

Single-Period Model

Single-period inventory model
A system for ordering items that have little or no value at the end of a sales period (perishables).

A **single-period inventory model** describes a situation in which *one* order is placed for a product. At the end of the sales period, any remaining product has little or no value. This is a typical problem for Christmas trees, seasonal goods, bakery goods, newspapers, and magazines. (Indeed, this inventory issue is often called the "newsstand problem.") In other words, even though items at a newsstand are ordered weekly or daily, they cannot be held over and used as inventory in the next sales period. So our decision is how much to order at the beginning of the period.

Because the exact demand for such seasonal products is never known, we consider a probability distribution related to demand. If the normal distribution is assumed, and we stocked and sold an average (mean) of 100 Christmas trees each season, then there is a 50% chance we would stock out and a 50% chance we would have trees left over. To determine the optimal stocking policy for trees before the season begins, we also need to know the standard deviation and consider these two marginal costs:

C_s = Cost of shortage (we underestimated) = Sales price per unit − Cost per unit

C_o = Cost of overage (we overestimated) = Cost per unit − Salvage value per unit (if there is any)

The service level, that is, the probability of *not* stocking out, is set at:

$$\text{Service level} = \frac{C_s}{C_s + C_o} \tag{12-18}$$

Therefore, we should consider increasing our order quantity until the service level is equal to or more than the ratio of $[C_s/(C_s + C_o)]$.

This model, illustrated in Example 15, is used in many service industries, from hotels to airlines to bakeries to clothing retailers.

Example 15

SINGLE-PERIOD INVENTORY DECISION

Chris Ellis's newsstand, just outside the Smithsonian subway station in Washington, DC, usually sells 120 copies of the *Washington Post* each day. Chris believes the sale of the *Post* is normally distributed, with a standard deviation of 15 papers. He pays 70 cents for each paper, which sells for $1.25. The *Post* gives him a 30-cent credit for each unsold paper. He wants to determine how many papers he should order each day and the stockout risk for that quantity.

APPROACH ▶ Chris's data are as follows:

C_s = cost of shortage = $1.25 − $.70 = $.55

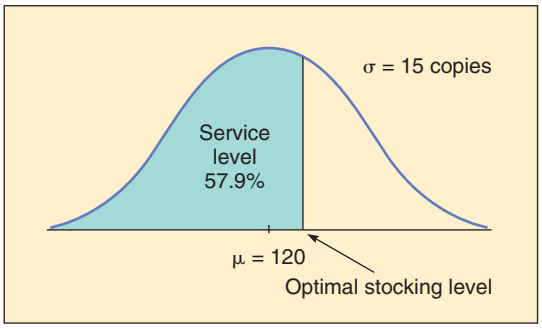
C_o = cost of overage = $.70 − $.30 (salvage value) = $.40

Chris will apply Equation (12-18) and the normal table, using $\mu = 120$ and $\sigma = 15$.

SOLUTION ▶

a) Service level $= \dfrac{C_s}{C_s + C_o} = \dfrac{.55}{.55 + .40} = \dfrac{.55}{.95} = .579$

b) Chris needs to find the Z score for his normal distribution that yields a probability of .579.



So 57.9% of the area under the normal curve must be to the left of the optimal stocking level.

c) Using Appendix I or the Excel formula =NORMSINV(.578), for an area of .578, the Z value ≅ .195.

$$\text{Then, the optimal stocking level} = 120 \text{ copies} + (.195)(\sigma)$$
$$= 120 + (.195)(15) = 120 + 3 = 123 \text{ papers}$$

The stockout risk if Chris orders 123 copies of the *Post* each day is 1 − Service level = 1 − .578 = .422 = 42.2%.

INSIGHT ▶ If the service level is ever under .50, Chris should order fewer than 120 copies per day.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ How does Chris's decision change if the *Post* changes its policy and offers *no credit* for unsold papers, a policy many publishers are adopting?

[Answer: Service level = .44, Z = −.15. Therefore, stock 120 + (−.15)(15) = 117.75, or 118 papers.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 12.51, 12.52, 12.53

Fixed-quantity (*Q*) system
An ordering system with the same order amount each time.

Perpetual inventory system
A system that keeps track of each withdrawal or addition to inventory continuously, so records are always current.

Fixed-period (*P*) system
A system in which inventory orders are made at regular time intervals.

Fixed-Period (*P*) Systems

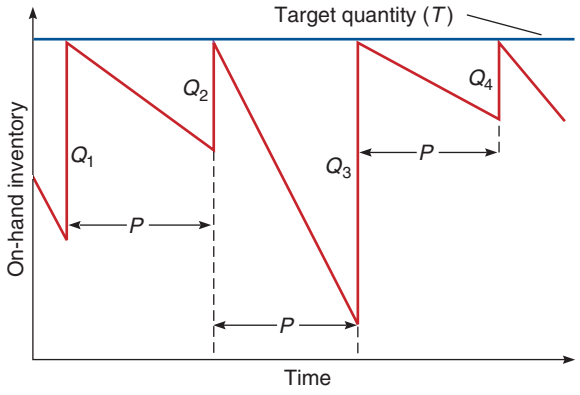
The inventory models that we have considered so far are **fixed-quantity**, or ***Q*, systems**. That is, the same fixed amount is added to inventory every time an order for an item is placed. We saw that orders are event triggered. When inventory decreases to the reorder point (ROP), a new order for Q units is placed.

To use the fixed-quantity model, inventory must be continuously monitored.[7] This requires a **perpetual inventory system**. Every time an item is added to or withdrawn from inventory, records must be updated to determine whether the ROP has been reached. In a **fixed-period system** (also called a periodic review, or ***P* system**), on the other hand, inventory is ordered at the end of a given period. Then, and only then, is on-hand inventory counted. Only the amount necessary to bring total inventory up to a prespecified target level (T) is ordered. Figure 12.9 illustrates this concept.

Figure **12.9**

Inventory Level in a Fixed-Period (*P*) System

Various amounts (Q_1, Q_2, Q_3, etc.) are ordered at regular time intervals (P) based on the quantity necessary to bring inventory up to the target quantity (T).



Fixed-period systems have several of the same assumptions as the basic EOQ fixed-quantity system:

- The only relevant costs are the ordering and holding costs.
- Lead times are known and constant.
- Items are independent of one another.

The downward-sloped lines in Figure 12.9 again represent on-hand inventory levels. But now, when the time between orders (P) passes, we place an order to raise inventory up to the target quantity (T).

The amount ordered during the first period may be Q_1, the second period Q_2, and so on. The Q_i value is the difference between current on-hand inventory and the target inventory level.

STUDENT TIP
A fixed-period model potentially orders a different quantity each time.

The advantage of the fixed-period system is that there is no physical count of inventory items after an item is withdrawn—this occurs only when the time for the next review comes up. This procedure is also convenient administratively.

A fixed-period (P) system is appropriate when vendors make routine (i.e., at fixed-time interval) visits to customers to take fresh orders or when purchasers want to combine orders to save ordering and transportation costs (therefore, they will have the same review period for similar inventory items). For example, a vending machine company may come to refill its machines every Tuesday. This is also the case at Anheuser-Busch, whose sales reps may visit a store every 5 days.

The disadvantage of the P system is that because there is no tally of inventory during the review period, there is the possibility of a stockout during this time. This scenario is possible if a large order draws the inventory level down to zero right after an order is placed. Therefore, a higher level of safety stock (as compared to a fixed-quantity system) needs to be maintained to provide protection against stockout during both the time between reviews and the lead time.

Summary

Inventory represents a major investment for many firms. This investment is often larger than it should be because firms find it easier to have "just-in-case" inventory rather than "just-in-time" inventory. Inventories are of four types: raw material and purchased components, work-in-process, maintenance, repair, and operating (MRO), and finished goods.

The EOQ model, production order quantity model, and quantity discount model can all be solved using Excel, Excel OM, or POM for Windows software.

Key Terms

Raw material inventory (p. 528)
Work-in-process (WIP) inventory (p. 528)
Maintenance/repair/operating (MRO) inventory (p. 528)
Finished-goods inventory (p. 529)
ABC analysis (p. 529)
Cycle counting (p. 531)
Shrinkage (p. 532)
Pilferage (p. 532)
Holding cost (p. 533)
Ordering cost (p. 533)
Setup cost (p. 534)
Setup time (p. 534)
Economic order quantity (EOQ) model (p. 534)
Robust (p. 538)
Lead time (p. 501)
Reorder point (ROP) (p. 539)
Safety stock (*ss*) (p. 539)
Production order quantity model (p. 540)
Quantity discount (p. 543)
Probabilistic model (p. 546)
Service level (p. 546)
Single-period inventory model (p. 551)
Fixed-quantity (Q) system (p. 552)
Perpetual inventory system (p. 552)
Fixed-period (P) system (p. 552)

Ethical Dilemma

In cancer therapy some of the new drugs are extremely expensive, in addition those drugs might also have a short shelf lifetime. Even though the numbers of patients that can be treated with those drugs are quite few, the cost is quite significant.

The lead-time from order to delivery can be long and in worst cases life might be lost whilst waiting for the drug. The University Hospital in Gothenburg is struggling with a limited budget and fast increasing costs for drugs and has a need for a strategy for those new drugs.

As operational responsible at the University Hospital in Gothenburg your responsibility is to set the stock level for all products. How would you discuss and act? Is this an operational decision?

Discussion Questions

1. Describe the four types of inventory.
2. With the advent of low-cost computing, do you see alternatives to the popular ABC classifications?
3. What is the implication of the Pareto principle?
4. Identify and explain the types of costs that are involved in an inventory system.
5. Explain the major assumptions of the basic EOQ model.
6. Which part of the cost in the in the EOQ is a linear function of the order quantity?
7. Explain why it is not necessary to include product cost (price or price times quantity) in the EOQ model, but the quantity discount model requires this information.

8. What are the advantages of cycle counting?
9. Even if we have substantial uncertainty in the parameters in the EOQ-model, it is still quite a useful model. Why?
10. What shall be considered if we shall increase the order quantity from the optimal to a discount point?
11. What is meant by "service level"?
12. Explain the following: All things being equal, the production order quantity will be larger than the economic order quantity.
13. Suggest how we could set the time between deliveries in a fixed period system.
14. Explain what is meant by the expression "robust model." Specifically, what would you tell a manager who exclaimed, "Uh-oh, we're in trouble! The calculated EOQ is wrong; actual demand is 10% greater than estimated."
15. What is "safety stock"? What does safety stock provide safety against?
16. When demand is not constant, the reorder point is a function of what four parameters?
17. How are inventory levels monitored in retail stores?
18. Why would it be advantageous to supply a regional warehouse from the central warehouse using a fixed period system?

Using Software to Solve Inventory Problems

This section presents three ways to solve inventory problems with computer software. First, you can create your own Excel spreadsheets. Second, you can use the Excel OM software that comes free with this text. Third, POM for Windows, also free with this text, can solve all problems marked with a **P**.

CREATING YOUR OWN EXCEL SPREADSHEETS

Program 12.1 illustrates how you can make an Excel model to solve Example 8, which is a production order quantity model.

Program **12.1**

Using Excel for a Production Model, with Data from Example 8

	A	B	C
1	Nathan Manufacturing, Inc.		
2	A Production Order Quantity Model		
3			
4	Inputs		
5	Annual Demand D	1,000	=B5/B9
6	Setup Cost per Order S	$10.00	
7	Holding Cost per Unit per Year H	$0.50	=SQRT((2*B5*B6)/(B7*(1-B10/B8)))
8	Daily Production Rate p	8	
9	Number of Working Days per Year	250	
10	Daily Demand Rate d	4	
11			
12	Number of Units per Order Q^*_p	283	=B12*(1-B10/B8)
13			
14			=B16/2
15	Other Measures of Interest		
16	Maximum Inventory Level	141.42	=B5/B12
17	Average Inventory Level	70.71	
18	Number of Setups per Year	3.54	=B9/B18
19	Time (Working Days) between Orders	70.71	
20			=ROUND(B18*B6,2)
21	Annual Setup Cost	$35.36	
22	Annual Holding Cost	$35.36	=ROUND(B17*B7,2)
23	Total Annual Variable Inventory Cost	$70.72	
24			=B21+B22
25			

Program 12.2 illustrates how you can make an Excel model to solve Example 15, which is a single-period inventory model.

Program **12.2**

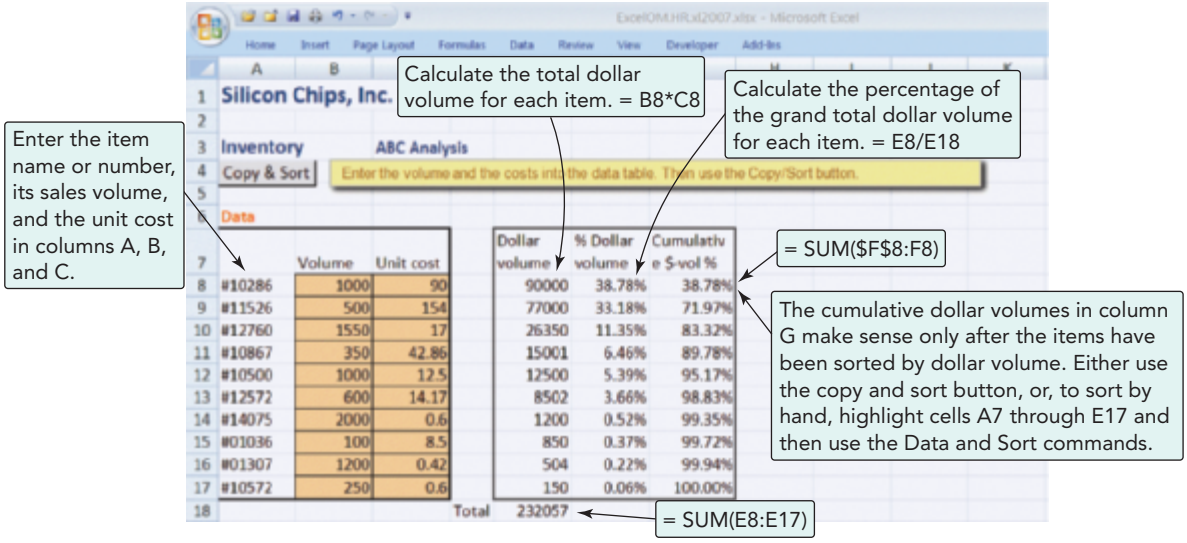
Using Excel for a Single-Period Inventory Model, with Data from Example 15

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Chris Ellis's Newsstand				
2	Single-Period Inventory Decision				
3					
4	Inputs				
5	Revenue per Unit	$1.25			
6	Cost per Unit	$0.70			
7	Salvage Value per Unit	$0.30			
8	Mean Demand μ	120			
9	Standard Deviation of Demand σ	15			
10					
11	Cost of Shortage C_s	$0.55	=B5-B6		
12	Cost of Overage C_o	$0.40	=B6-B7		
13	Service Level	0.579	=B11/(B11+B12)		
14	Z-Score	0.199	=NORMSINV(B13)		
15					
16	Number of Units per Order	123	=B8+B14*B9		
17					
18					

USING EXCEL OM

Excel OM allows us to easily model inventory problems ranging from ABC analysis, to the basic EOQ model, to the production model, to quantity discount situations.

Program 12.3 shows the input data, selected formulas, and results for an ABC analysis, using data from Example 1. After the data are entered, we use the *Data* and *Sort* Excel commands to rank the items from largest to smallest dollar volumes.



Program **12.3**

Using Excel OM for an ABC Analysis, with Data from Example 1

USING POM FOR WINDOWS

The POM for Windows Inventory module can also solve the entire EOQ family of problems. Please refer to Appendix IV for further details.

Solved Problems

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM 12.1

David Alexander has compiled the following table of six items in inventory at Angelo Products, along with the unit cost and the annual demand in units:

IDENTIFICATION CODE	UNIT COST ($)	ANNUAL DEMAND (UNITS)
XX1	5.84	1,200
B66	5.40	1,110
3CPO	1.12	896
33CP	74.54	1,104
R2D2	2.00	1,110
RMS	2.08	961

Use ABC analysis to determine which item(s) should be carefully controlled using a quantitative inventory technique and which item(s) should not be closely controlled.

SOLUTION

The item that needs strict control is 33CP, so it is an A item. Items that do not need to be strictly controlled are 3CPO, R2D2, and RMS; these are C items. The B items will be XX1 and B66.

CODE	ANNUAL DOLLAR VOLUME = UNIT COST × DEMAND
XX1	$ 7,008.00
B66	$ 5,994.00
3CPO	$ 1,003.52
33CP	$82,292.16
R2D2	$ 2,220.00
RMS	$ 1,998.88

Total cost = $100,516.56
70% of total cost = $70,347.92

SOLVED PROBLEM 12.2

The Warren W. Fisher Computer Corporation purchases 8,000 transistors each year as components in minicomputers. The unit cost of each transistor is $10, and the cost of carrying one transistor in inventory for a year is $3. Ordering cost is $30 per order. What are (a) the optimal order quantity, (b) the expected number of orders placed each year, and (c) the expected time between orders? Assume that Fisher operates on a 200-day working year.

SOLUTION

a) $Q^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H}} = \sqrt{\frac{2(8{,}000)(30)}{3}} = 400$ units

b) $N = \frac{D}{Q^*} = \frac{8{,}000}{400} = 20$ orders

c) Time between orders $= T = \frac{\text{Number of working days}}{N} = \frac{200}{20} = 10$ working days

With 20 orders placed each year, an order for 400 transistors is placed every 10 working days.

SOLVED PROBLEM 12.3

Annual demand for notebook binders at Meyer's Stationery Shop is 10,000 units. Brad Meyer operates his business 300 days per year and finds that deliveries from his supplier generally take 5 working days. Calculate the reorder point for the notebook binders.

SOLUTION

$$L = 5 \text{ days}$$

$$d = \frac{10{,}000}{300} = 33.3 \text{ units per day}$$

$$\text{ROP} = d \times L = (33.3 \text{ units per day})(5 \text{ days}) = 166.7 \text{ units}$$

Thus, Brad should reorder when his stock reaches 167 units.

SOLVED PROBLEM 12.4

Leonard Presby, Inc., has an annual demand rate of 1,000 units but can produce at an average production rate of 2,000 units. Setup cost is \$10; carrying cost is \$1. What is the optimal number of units to be produced each time?

SOLUTION

$$Q_p^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H\left(1 - \frac{\text{Annual demand rate}}{\text{Annual production rate}}\right)}} = \sqrt{\frac{2(1{,}000)(10)}{1[1 - (1{,}000/2{,}000)]}}$$

$$= \sqrt{\frac{20{,}000}{1/2}} = \sqrt{40{,}000} = 200 \text{ units}$$

SOLVED PROBLEM 12.5

Whole Nature Foods sells a gluten-free product for which the annual demand is 5,000 boxes. At the moment, it is paying \$6.40 for each box; carrying cost is 25% of the unit cost; ordering costs are \$25. A new supplier has offered to sell the same item for \$6.00 if Whole Nature Foods buys at least 3,000 boxes per order. Should the firm stick with the old supplier, or take advantage of the new quantity discount?

SOLUTION

Step 1, under the lowest possible price of \$6.00 per box:

Economic order quantity, using Equation (12-10):

$$Q^*_{\$6.00} = \sqrt{\frac{2(5{,}000)(25)}{(0.25)(6.00)}}$$

$$= 408.25, \text{ or } 408 \text{ boxes}$$

Because $408 < 3{,}000$, this EOQ is *infeasible* for the \$6.00 price. So now we calculate Q^* for the next-higher price of \$6.40, which equals 395 boxes (and is feasible). Thus, the best possible order quantities are 395 (the first feasible EOQ) and 3,000 (the price-break quantity for the lower price of \$6.00).

Step 2 uses Equation (12-9) to compute the total cost for both of the possible best order quantities:

$$TC_{395} = \frac{5{,}000}{395}(\$25) + \frac{395}{2}(0.25)(\$6.40) + \$6.40(5{,}000)$$

$$= \$316 + \$316 + \$32{,}000$$

$$= \$32{,}632$$

And under the quantity discount price of \$6.00 per box:

$$TC_{3{,}000} = \frac{5{,}000}{3{,}000}(\$25) + \frac{3{,}000}{2}(0.25)(\$6.00) + \$6.00(5{,}000)$$

$$= \$42 + \$2{,}250 + \$30{,}000$$

$$= \$32{,}292$$

Therefore, the new supplier with which Whole Nature Foods would incur a total cost of \$32,292 is preferable, but not by a large amount. If buying 3,000 boxes at a time raises problems of storage or freshness, the company may very well wish to stay with the current supplier.

SOLVED PROBLEM 12.6

Children's art sets are ordered once each year by Ashok Kumar, Inc., and the reorder point, without safety stock (*dL*), is 100 art sets. Inventory carrying cost is \$10 per set per year, and the cost of a stockout is \$50 per set per year. Given the following demand probabilities during the lead time, how much safety stock should be carried?

DEMAND DURING LEAD TIME	PROBABILITY
0	.1
50	.2
ROP → 100	.4
150	.2
200	.1
	1.0

SOLUTION

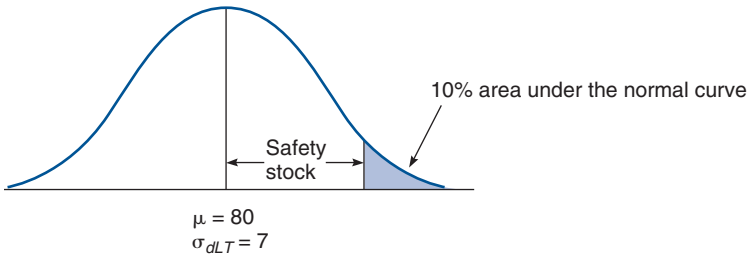
	INCREMENTAL COSTS		
SAFETY STOCK	CARRYING COST	STOCKOUT COST	TOTAL COST
0	0	50 × (50 × 0.2 + 100 × 0.1) = 1,000	$1,000
50	50 × 10 = 500	50 × (0.1 × 50) = 250	750
100	100 × 10 = 1,000	0	1,000

The safety stock that minimizes total incremental cost is 50 sets. The reorder point then becomes 100 sets + 50 sets, or 150 sets.

SOLVED PROBLEM 12.7

What safety stock should Ron Satterfield Corporation maintain if mean sales are 80 during the reorder period, the standard deviation is 7, and Ron can tolerate stockouts 10% of the time?

SOLUTION



From Appendix I, Z at an area of .9 (or 1 − .10) = 1.28, and Equation (12-14):

Safety stock $= Z\sigma_{dLT}$

$= 1.28(7) = 8.96$ units, or 9 units

SOLVED PROBLEM 12.8

The daily demand for 52" flat-screen TVs at Sarah's Discount Emporium is normally distributed, with an average of 5 and a standard deviation of 2 units. The lead time for receiving a shipment of new TVs is 10 days and is fairly constant. Determine the reorder point and safety stock for a 95% service level.

SOLUTION

The ROP for this variable demand and constant lead time model uses Equation (12-15):

$$\text{ROP} = (\text{Average daily demand} \times \text{Lead time in days}) + Z\sigma_{dLT}$$

where $\sigma_{dLT} = \sigma_d\sqrt{\text{Lead time}}$

So, with $Z = 1.645$,

$$\text{ROP} = (5 \times 10) + 1.645(2)\sqrt{10}$$
$$= 50 + 10.4 = 60.4 \cong 60 \text{ TVs, or rounded up to 61 TVs}$$

The safety stock is 10.4, which can be rounded up to 11 TVs.

SOLVED PROBLEM 12.9

The demand at Arnold Palmer Hospital for a specialized surgery pack is 60 per week, virtually every week. The lead time from McKesson, its main supplier, is normally distributed, with a mean of 6 weeks for this product and a standard deviation of 2 weeks. A 90% weekly service level is desired. Find the ROP.

SOLUTION

Here the demand is constant and lead time is variable, with data given in weeks, not days. We apply Equation (12-16):

$$\text{ROP} = (\text{Weekly demand} \times \text{Average lead time in weeks}) + Z\,(\text{Weekly demand})\,\sigma_{LT}$$

where σ_{LT} = standard deviation of lead time in weeks = 2

So, with $Z = 1.28$, for a 90% service level:

$$\text{ROP} = (60 \times 6) + 1.28(60)(2)$$
$$= 360 + 153.6 = 513.6 \cong 514 \text{ surgery packs}$$

Problems

Note: PX means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel OM.

Problems 12.1–12.6 relate to Managing Inventory

•• **12.1** L. Houts Plastics is a large manufacturer of injection-molded plastics in North Carolina. An investigation of the company's manufacturing facility in Charlotte yields the information presented in the table below. How would the plant classify these items according to an ABC classification system? PX

L. Houts Plastics' Charlotte Inventory Levels

ITEM CODE #	AVERAGE INVENTORY (UNITS)	VALUE ($/UNIT)
1289	400	3.75
2347	300	4.00
2349	120	2.50
2363	75	1.50
2394	60	1.75
2395	30	2.00
6782	20	1.15
7844	12	2.05
8210	8	1.80
8310	7	2.00
9111	6	3.00

•• **12.2** Boreki Enterprises has the following 10 items in inventory. Theodore Boreki asks you, a recent OM graduate, to divide these items into ABC classifications.

ITEM	ANNUAL DEMAND	COST/UNIT
A2	3,000	$ 50
B8	4,000	12
C7	1,500	45
D1	6,000	10
E9	1,000	20
F3	500	500
G2	300	1,500
H2	600	20
I5	1,750	10
J8	2,500	5

a) Develop an ABC classification system for the 10 items.
b) How can Boreki use this information?
c) Boreki reviews the classification and then places item A2 into the A category. Why might he do so? PX

•• **12.3** Jean-Marie Bourjolly's restaurant has the following inventory items that it orders on a weekly basis:

INVENTORY ITEM	$ VALUE/CASE	# ORDERED/WEEK
Ribeye steak	135	3
Lobster tail	245	3
Pasta	23	12
Salt	3	2
Napkins	12	2
Tomato sauce	23	11
French fries	43	32
Pepper	3	3
Garlic powder	11	3
Trash can liners	12	3
Table cloths	32	5
Fish filets	143	10

cont'd

(cont'd)

INVENTORY ITEM	$ VALUE/CASE	# ORDERED/WEEK
Prime rib roasts	166	6
Oil	28	2
Lettuce (case)	35	24
Chickens	75	14
Order pads	12	2
Eggs (case)	22	7
Bacon	56	5
Sugar	4	2

a) Which is the most expensive item, using annual dollar volume?
b) Which are C items?
c) What is the annual dollar volume for all 20 items? PX

• **12.4** The South African company AFROS sells safety equipment to from their central warehouse in Johannesburg. AFROS apply an annual counting of the inventories, approximately 55.000 articles.

The supply manager is not satisfied with the record accuracy and has decided to increase the stock-counting. Maximum 1.100 articles can be counted per day. 20% of the articles represent 80% of the inventory value, A-items. Her decision is to introduce cyclic counting whereA-items should be counted once per month, B-items once every third month and C-items once per 6 months.

What is maximum number of articles that can be classified as B-items? Assume 20 working days per month.

Additional problems **12.5–12.6** *are available in* MyOMLab.

Problems 12.7–12.40 relate to Inventory Models for Independent Demand

• **12.7** William Beville's computer training school, in Richmond, stocks workbooks with the following characteristics:

$$\text{Demand } D = 19{,}500 \text{ units/year}$$
$$\text{Ordering cost } S = \$25/\text{order}$$
$$\text{Holding cost } H = \$4/\text{unit/year}$$

a) Calculate the EOQ for the workbooks.
b) What are the annual holding costs for the workbooks?
c) What are the annual ordering costs? PX

• **12.8** If D = 8,000 per month, S = $45 per order, and H = $2 per unit per month,
a) What is the economic order quantity?
b) How does your answer change if the holding cost doubles?
c) What if the holding cost drops in half? PX

•• **12.9** The small boatyard WhiteKayaks are building epoxy-kayaks, last year they built 156. Each of those requires 12 kg of epoxy, purchased in 6 kg barrels at $170 each, freight cost is $18 per shipment plus $1 per kg. The annual carrying cost is estimated to 20% of the value.
a) If the purchase policy is to buy 20 barrels each time, how much time can be spent on administrative work if the order-quantity should be considered optimal.The boat-builder costs $25/h
b) If time spent is 30 minutes, what would be the optimal order-quantity?

• **12.10** Matthew Liotine's Dream Store sells beds and assorted supplies. His best-selling bed has an annual demand of 400 units. Ordering cost is $40; holding cost is $5 per unit per year.

a) To minimize the total cost, how many units should be ordered each time an order is placed?
b) If the holding cost per unit was \$6 instead of \$5, what would be the optimal order quantity? PX

• **12.11** Southeastern Bell stocks a certain switch connector at its central warehouse for supplying field service offices. The yearly demand for these connectors is 15,000 units. Southeastern estimates its annual holding cost for this item to be \$25 per unit. The cost to place and process an order from the supplier is \$75. The company operates 300 days per year, and the lead time to receive an order from the supplier is 2 working days.
a) Find the economic order quantity.
b) Find the annual holding costs.
c) Find the annual ordering costs.
d) What is the reorder point? PX

• **12.12** Lead time for one of your fastest-moving products is 21 days. Demand during this period averages 100 units per day.
a) What would be an appropriate reorder point?
b) How does your answer change if demand during lead time doubles?
c) How does your answer change if demand during lead time drops in half?

• **12.13** Atech Service sells professional cleaning machines and scouring agents. They deliver the scouring agents to customers on a fixed weekly schedule.

The annual demand is 1500 bottles; each with a value of \$10. The fixed cost for each order placed at the supplier is \$100. The lead-time is 2 weeks.
a) Assuming that the holding cost is \$10/year and bottle, calculate the economical ordersize?
b) Calculate the reorder point

•• **12.14** Thomas Kratzer is the purchasing manager for the headquarters of a large insurance company chain with a central inventory operation. Thomas's fastest-moving inventory item has a demand of 6,000 units per year. The cost of each unit is \$100, and the inventory carrying cost is \$10 per unit per year. The average ordering cost is \$30 per order. It takes about 5 days for an order to arrive, and the demand for 1 week is 120 units. (This is a corporate operation, and there are 250 working days per year.)
a) What is the EOQ?
b) What is the average inventory if the EOQ is used?
c) What is the optimal number of orders per year?
d) What is the optimal number of days in between any two orders?
e) What is the annual cost of ordering and holding inventory?
f) What is the total annual inventory cost, including the cost of the 6,000 units? PX

•• **12.15** Joe Henry's machine shop uses 2,500 brackets during the course of a year. These brackets are purchased from a supplier 90 miles away. The following information is known about the brackets:

Annual demand:	2,500
Holding cost per bracket per year:	\$1.50
Order cost per order:	\$18.75
Lead time:	2 days
Working days per year:	250

a) Given the above information, what would be the economic order quantity (EOQ)?
b) Given the EOQ, what would be the average inventory? What would be the annual inventory holding cost?
c) Given the EOQ, how many orders would be made each year? What would be the annual order cost?
d) Given the EOQ, what is the total annual cost of managing the inventory?
e) What is the time between orders?
f) What is the reorder point (ROP)? PX

•• **12.16** Abey Kuruvilla, of Parkside Plumbing, uses 1,200 of a certain spare part that costs \$25 for each order, with an annual holding cost of \$24.
a) Calculate the total cost for order sizes of 25, 40, 50, 60, and 100.
b) Identify the economic order quantity and consider the implications for making an error in calculating economic order quantity. PX

••• **12.17** M. Cotteleer Electronics supplies microcomputer circuitry to a company that incorporates microprocessors into refrigerators and other home appliances. One of the components has an annual demand of 250 units, and this is constant throughout the year. Carrying cost is estimated to be \$1 per unit per year, and the ordering (setup) cost is \$20 per order.
a) To minimize cost, how many units should be ordered each time an order is placed?
b) How many orders per year are needed with the optimal policy?
c) What is the average inventory if costs are minimized?
d) Suppose that the ordering (setup) cost is not \$20, and Cotteleer has been ordering 150 units each time an order is placed. For this order policy (of $Q = 150$) to be optimal, determine what the ordering (setup) cost would have to be. PX

•• **12.18** Race One Motors is an Indonesian car manufacturer. At its largest manufacturing facility, in Jakarta, the company produces subcomponents at a rate of 300 per day, and it uses these subcomponents at a rate of 12,500 per year (of 250 working days). Holding costs are \$2 per item per year, and ordering (setup) costs are \$30 per order.
a) What is the economic production quantity?
b) How many production runs per year will be made?
c) What will be the maximum inventory level?
d) What percentage of time will the facility be producing components?
e) What is the annual cost of ordering and holding inventory? PX

•• **12.19** Radovilsky Manufacturing Company, in Hayward, California, makes flashing lights for toys. The company operates its production facility 300 days per year. It has orders for about 12,000 flashing lights per year and has the capability of producing 100 per day. Setting up the light production costs \$50. The cost of each light is \$1. The holding cost is \$0.10 per light per year.
a) What is the optimal size of the production run?
b) What is the average holding cost per year?
c) What is the average setup cost per year?
d) What is the total cost per year, including the cost of the lights? PX

•• **12.20** Arthur Meiners is the production manager of Wheel-Rite, a small producer of metal parts. Wheel-Rite supplies Cal-Tex, a larger assembly company, with 10,000 wheel bearings each year. This order has been stable for some time. Setup cost for Wheel-Rite is \$40, and holding cost is \$.60 per wheel bearing per year. Wheel-Rite can produce 500 wheel bearings per day. Cal-Tex is a just-in-time manufacturer and requires that 50 bearings be shipped to it each business day.
a) What is the optimum production quantity?
b) What is the maximum number of wheel bearings that will be in inventory at Wheel-Rite?

c) How many production runs of wheel bearings will Wheel-Rite have in a year?
d) What is the total setup + holding cost for Wheel-Rite? PX

•• **12.21** Cesar Rego Computers, a Mississippi chain of computer hardware and software retail outlets, supplies both educational and commercial customers with memory and storage devices. It currently faces the following ordering decision relating to purchases of very high-density disks:

$$D = 36{,}000 \text{ disks}$$
$$S = \$25$$
$$H = \$0.45$$
$$\text{Purchase price} = \$.85$$
$$\text{Discount price} = \$0.82$$
$$\text{Quantity needed to qualify for the discount} = 6{,}000 \text{ disks}$$

Should the discount be taken? PX

•• **12.22** Bell Computers purchases integrated chips at $350 per chip. The holding cost is $35 per unit per year, the ordering cost is $120 per order, and sales are steady, at 400 per month. The company's supplier, Rich Blue Chip Manufacturing, Inc., decides to offer price concessions in order to attract larger orders. The price structure is shown below.

Rich Blue Chip's Price Structure

QUANTITY PURCHASED	PRICE/UNIT
1–99 units	$350
100–199 units	$325
200 or more units	$300

a) What is the optimal order quantity and the minimum annual cost for Bell Computers to order, purchase, and hold these integrated chips?
b) Bell Computers wishes to use a 10% holding cost rather than the fixed $35 holding cost in (a). What is the optimal order quantity, and what is the optimal annual cost? PX

•• **12.23** Wang Distributors has an annual demand for an airport metal detector of 1,400 units. The cost of a typical detector to Wang is $400. Carrying cost is estimated to be 20% of the unit cost, and the ordering cost is $25 per order. If Ping Wang, the owner, orders in quantities of 300 or more, he can get a 5% discount on the cost of the detectors. Should Wang take the quantity discount? PX

•• **12.24** The catering manager of La Vista Hotel, Lisa Ferguson, is disturbed by the amount of silverware she is losing every week. Last Friday night, when her crew tried to set up for a banquet for 500 people, they did not have enough knives. She decides she needs to order some more silverware, but wants to take advantage of any quantity discounts her vendor will offer.

For a small order (2,000 or fewer pieces), her vendor quotes a price of $1.80/piece.

If she orders 2,001–5,000 pieces, the price drops to $1.60/piece. 5,001–10,000 pieces brings the price to $1.40/piece, and 10,001 and above reduces the price to $1.25.

Lisa's order costs are $200 per order, her annual holding costs are 5%, and the annual demand is 45,000 pieces. For the best option:
a) What is the optimal order quantity?
b) What is the annual holding cost?
c) What is the annual ordering (setup) cost?
d) What are the annual costs of the silverware itself with an optimal order quantity?
e) What is the total annual cost, including ordering, holding, and purchasing the silverware? PX

•• **12.25** Rocky Mountain Tire Center sells 20,000 go-cart tires per year. The ordering cost for each order is $40, and the holding cost is 20% of the purchase price of the tires per year. The purchase price is $20 per tire if fewer than 500 tires are ordered, $18 per tire if 500 or more—but fewer than 1,000—tires are ordered, and $17 per tire if 1,000 or more tires are ordered.
a) How many tires should Rocky Mountain order each time it places an order?
b) What is the total cost of this policy? PX

•• **12.26** M. P. VanOyen Manufacturing has gone out on bid for a regulator component. Expected demand is 700 units per month. The item can be purchased from either Allen Manufacturing or Baker Manufacturing. Their price lists are shown in the table. Ordering cost is $50, and annual holding cost per unit is $5.

ALLEN MFG.		*BAKER MFG.*	
QUANTITY	UNIT PRICE	QUANTITY	UNIT PRICE
1–499	$16.00	1–399	$16.10
500–999	15.50	400–799	15.60
1,000+	15.00	800+	15.10

a) What is the economic order quantity?
b) Which supplier should be used? Why?
c) What is the optimal order quantity and total annual cost of ordering, purchasing, and holding the component? PX

••• **12.27** Chris Sandvig Irrigation, Inc., has summarized the price list from four potential suppliers of an underground control valve. See the accompanying table. Annual usage is 2,400 valves; order cost is $10 per order; and annual inventory holding costs are $3.33 per unit.

Which vendor should be selected and what order quantity is best if Sandvig Irrigation wants to minimize total cost? PX

VENDOR A		*VENDOR B*	
QUANTITY	PRICE	QUANTITY	PRICE
1–49	$35.00	1–74	$34.75
50–74	34.75	75–149	34.00
75–149	33.55	150–299	32.80
150–299	32.35	300–499	31.60
300–499	31.15	500+	30.50
500+	30.75		
VENDOR C		*VENDOR D*	
QUANTITY	PRICE	QUANTITY	PRICE
1–99	$34.50	1–199	$34.25
100–199	33.75	200–399	33.00
200–399	32.50	400+	31.00
400+	31.10		

••• **12.28** Emery Pharmaceutical uses an unstable chemical compound that must be kept in an environment where both temperature and humidity can be controlled. Emery uses 800 pounds per month of the chemical, estimates the holding cost to be 50% of the purchase price (because of spoilage), and estimates order costs to be $50 per order. The cost schedules of two suppliers are as follows:

VENDOR 1		VENDOR 2	
QUANTITY	PRICE/LB	QUANTITY	PRICE/LB
1–499	$17.00	1–399	$17.10
500–999	16.75	400–799	16.85
1,000+	16.50	800–1,199	16.60
		1,200+	16.25

a) What is the economic order quantity for each supplier?
b) What quantity should be ordered, and which supplier should be used?
c) What is the total cost for the most economic order size?
d) What factor(s) should be considered besides total cost? PX

•••12.29 The oar-maker Collars produces high quality oars shipped all over the world. The oars are equipped with bronze oarlocks when sold to customers. Those oarlocks are purchased from an external supplier. In order to simplify the administrative process, and at the same time making sure not running out of oarlocks, Collars have decided to use a two-bin system for controlling oarlock inventory, i.e. they keep two boxes of oarlocks, when one box is empty they order a new one from the supplier.

The supplier has told Collars that they can deliver any quantities and that the lead-time will be 10 working days. They have also offered Collars a fixed price, $200for the freight regardless of order quantities.

In order to secure a high quality Collars test 5 oarlocks per each shipment, this process takes 60 minutes for one person to do.

Collars sell 5000 oars per year and the plant is open 250 days per year. The value of a pair of oarlocks is $50 and the cost for a working hour is $20. The annual holding cost is set to 15% of the items value

a) Calculate the most economical quantity to order
b) What would be the minimum allowed quantity to order

•••• 12.30 Emarpy Appliance is a company that produces all kinds of major appliances. Bud Banis, the president of Emarpy, is concerned about the production policy for the company's best-selling refrigerator. The annual demand has been about 8,000 units each year, and this demand has been constant throughout the year. The production capacity is 200 units per day. Each time production starts, it costs the company $120 to move materials into place, reset the assembly line, and clean the equipment. The holding cost of a refrigerator is $50 per year. The current production plan calls for 400 refrigerators to be produced in each production run. Assume there are 250 working days per year.

a) What is the daily demand of this product?
b) If the company were to continue to produce 400 units each time production starts, how many days would production continue?
c) Under the current policy, how many production runs per year would be required? What would the annual setup cost be?
d) If the current policy continues, how many refrigerators would be in inventory when production stops? What would the average inventory level be?
e) If the company produces 400 refrigerators at a time, what would the total annual setup cost and holding cost be?
f) If Bud Banis wants to minimize the total annual inventory cost, how many refrigerators should be produced in each production run? How much would this save the company in inventory costs compared to the current policy of producing 400 in each production run? PX

Additional problems **12.31–12.40** *are available in* MyOMLab.

Problems 12.41–12.50 relate to Probabilistic Models and Safety Stock

••12.41 Barbara Flynn is in charge of maintaining hospital supplies at General Hospital. During the past year, the mean lead time demand for bandage BX-5 was 60 (and was normally distributed). Furthermore, the standard deviation for BX-5 was 7. Ms. Flynn would like to maintain a 90% service level.
a) What safety stock level do you recommend for BX-5?
b) What is the appropriate reorder point? PX

••12.42 Based on available information, lead time demand for PC jump drives averages 50 units (normally distributed), with a standard deviation of 5 drives. Management wants a 97% service level.
a) What value of Z should be applied?
b) How many drives should be carried as safety stock?
c) What is the appropriate reorder point? PX

••• 12.43 Authentic Thai rattan chairs (shown in the photo) are delivered to Gary Schwartz's chain of retail stores, called The Kathmandu Shop, once a year. The reorder point, without safety stock, is 200 chairs. Carrying cost is $30 per unit per year, and the cost of a stockout is $70 per chair per year. Given the following demand probabilities during the lead time, how much safety stock should be carried?

DEMAND DURING LEAD TIME	PROBABILITY
0	0.2
100	0.2
200	0.2
300	0.2
400	0.2

•• 12.44 Tobacco is shipped from North Carolina to a cigarette manufacturer in Cambodia once a year. The reorder point, without safety stock, is 200 kilos. The carrying cost is $15 per kilo per year, and the cost of a stockout is $70 per kilo per year. Given the following demand probabilities during the lead time, how much safety stock should be carried?

DEMAND DURING LEAD TIME (KILOS)	PROBABILITY
0	0.1
100	0.1
200	0.2
300	0.4
400	0.2

••• 12.45 Mr. Beautiful, an organization that sells weight training sets, has an ordering cost of $40 for the BB-1 set. (BB-1 stands for Body Beautiful Number 1.) The carrying cost for BB-1 is $5 per set per year. To meet demand, Mr. Beautiful orders large quantities of BB-1 seven times a year. The stockout cost for BB-1 is estimated to be $50 per set. Over the past several years, Mr. Beautiful has observed the following demand during the lead time for BB-1:

DEMAND DURING LEAD TIME	PROBABILITY
40	.1
50	.2
60	.2
70	.2
80	.2
90	.1
	1.0

The reorder point for BB-1 is 60 sets. What level of safety stock should be maintained for BB-1? PX

•• **12.46** Chicago's Hard Rock Hotel distributes a mean of 1,000 bath towels per day to guests at the pool and in their rooms. This demand is normally distributed with a standard deviation of 100 towels per day, based on occupancy. The laundry firm that has the linens contract requires a 2-day lead time. The hotel expects a 98% service level to satisfy high guest expectations.
a) What is the safety stock?
b) What is the ROP? PX

•• **12.47** First Printing has contracts with legal firms in San Francisco to copy their court documents. Daily demand is almost constant at 12,500 pages of documents. The lead time for paper delivery is normally distributed with a mean of 4 days and a standard deviation of 1 day. A 97% service level is expected. Compute First's ROP. PX

••• **12.48** Gainesville Cigar stocks Cuban cigars that have variable lead times because of the difficulty in importing the product: lead time is normally distributed with an average of 6 weeks and a standard deviation of 2 weeks. Demand is also a variable and normally distributed with a mean of 200 cigars per week and a standard deviation of 25 cigars.
a) For a 90% service level, what is the ROP?
b) What is the ROP for a 95% service level?
c) Explain what these two service levels mean. Which is preferable? PX

•••• **12.49** The propane reseller GasPan is during peak season selling in average 71.9 propane cylinders per day, operating 300 days per year. The reseller is sourced with propane cylinder from the main plant in Winterthur, from where cylinders are always delivered one day after order has been placed. For each delivery the reseller is charged $50. Each cylinder has a value of $64

Analysis of the sales shows that the standard deviation of the sales per day, equals 17.6
a) Calculate the optimal order quantity, assume a annual holding cost of 15% of hold inventory
b) Gas Pan wants to have a service level of 99%, recommend a inventory control strategy that will support the strategy

Gas Pan is always carefully analyzing its supply chain and the associated costs, and has found that they in order to improve efficiency all orders delivered to the resellers must be delivered in full pallets where each pallet contains 12 cylinders. It has also been decided to use another transport contractor, in this new contract the lead-time has been increased to two days.
c) Calculate the percentage increase of the holding and ordering cost during the peak season due to the new policy.

Additional problem **12.50** *is available in* MyOMLab.

Problems 12.51–12.53 relate to Single-Period Model

•• **12.51** Franz Beckmann is selling sausages at the local soccer games in Pullach. History has shown that in average 190 are sold, with a standard deviation of 34. He purchases the sausages for $0.25 and sells them for $2 each. Sausages not sold will be given away for free to the players. How many sausages should he purchase in order to maximize profit?

•• **12.52** Henrique Correa's bakery prepares all its cakes between 4 A.M. and 6 A.M. so they will be fresh when customers arrive. Day-old cakes are virtually always sold, but at a 50% discount off the regular $10 price. The cost of baking a cake is $6, and demand is estimated to be normally distributed, with a mean of 25 and a standard deviation of 4. What is the optimal stocking level?

••• **12.53** The Swedish company Rossons Sport sells skis end ski-equipment. They purchase skis at a price of $260 per pair and sales price is $420. Skis not sold this season can be sold early next season at a discounted price, $200. In addition they estimate the stock holding cost between seasons to be $25 per pair of skis.

Past sales shows that demand per season is normal distributed with a mean of 459 pairs and a standard deviation of 56.
a) Calculate the shortage and overage cost per pair
b) Advice Rossons Sport how many pair of skis they should purchase
c) What is the service level?

CASE STUDIES

AGA-Fano Gas supplies industrial gases to resellers and customers in Paraguay. One of the reseller is Acitelena S.A. owned by Javier Bermudez. The current supply contract with AGA-Fano states that if Acitelena places an order before 12:00, the items will be delivered the next day. AGA-Fana charges Acitelena $20 per each product ordered, regardless of ordersize.

Acitelena is quite a small reseller and has only 10 different gas-cylinders in its assortment. The weekly demand per product is shown in the table below.

PRODUCT	PRICE ($)	WEEKLY DEMAND	STANDARD DEVIATION
Industrial Oxygen 20L	50	70	15
Industrial Oxygen 50L	80	176	22
Argon 20L	62	40	17
Argon-Mixture 20L	73	52	19
Acetylen 50L	102	197	43
Acetylen 15L	26	87	34
Mison 20L	67	40	12
Mison 50L	96	110	19
Hydrogen 50L	167	40	6
Medical Oxygen 2L	14	87	12
Medical Oxygen 5L	23	113	14

Javier's daughter Lena has recently graduated from university with logistics management as her main subject. She has now started working together with her father in the family business. Her first task was to revise her father's replenishment strategy. In order simplify the work he had decided to place orders every Thursday, he would then order exactly what had been sold since last time he placed an order. In addition he had also decided to keep a certain safety stock per product, since he knew that demand does vary between weeks.

His safety stock is shown in below table

PRODUCT	JAVIER'S SAFETY STOCK
Industrial Oxygen 20L	70
Industrial Oxygen 50L	100
Argon 20L	25
Argon-Mixture 20L	20
Acetylen 50L	150
Acetylen 15L	40
Mison 20L	20
Mison 50L	50
Hydrogen 50L	10
Medical Oxygen 2L	10
Medical Oxygen 5L	10

Lena realizes that it should be possible to save quite some money if she would optimize the replenishment strategy. Her first insight is that they should employ a traditional re-order-point-system. After some discussions with her father they also came to the conclusion that the annual holding cost per cylinder is 15% of the value. She decides also to apply a 98% service level, instead of her fathers old safety stock.

Short after Lena has introduced the new replenishment strategy;Kenneth Freeman, supply manager at AGA-Fano, contacted her. Kenneth is not happy with the development and wants to discuss a new supply contract even though the contract is valid for another 2.5 years.

Discussion Questions

1. How much would Lena's new strategy save for the Acitelena company on an annual basis? Assume 52 weeks per year and 5 days per week.
2. Why would Kenneth not be happy with the new strategy?
3. When Kenneth suggests Lena that they should go back to weekly deliveries, Lena accepts this as long as the fixed cost is per the whole delivery (not per product). What would be the highest acceptable level on the fixed cost for Lena, if she should accept to change the terms of the contract?

Source: Professor Kala Chand Seal, Loyola Marymount University.

Parker Hi-Fi Systems

Parker Hi-Fi Systems, located in Wellesley, Massachusetts, a Boston suburb, assembles and sells the very finest home theater systems. The systems are assembled with components from the best manufacturers worldwide. Although most of the components are procured from wholesalers on the East Coast, some critical items, such as LCD screens, come directly from their manufacturer. For instance, the LCD screens are shipped via air from Foxy, Ltd., in Taiwan, to Boston's Logan airport, and the top-of-the-line speakers are purchased from the world-renowned U.S. manufacturer Boss.

Parker's purchasing agent, Raktim Pal, submits an order release for LCD screens once every 4 weeks. The company's annual requirements total 500 units (2 per working day), and Parker's per unit cost is $1,500. (Because of Parker's relatively low volume and the quality focus—rather than volume focus—of many of Parker's suppliers, Parker is seldom able to obtain quantity discounts.) Because Foxy promises delivery within 1 week following receipt of an order release, Parker has never had a shortage of LCDs. (Total time between date of the release and date of receipt is 1 week or 5 working days.)

Parker's activity-based costing system has generated the following inventory-related costs. Procurement costs, which amount to $500 per order, include the actual labor costs involved in ordering, customs inspection, arranging for airport pickup, delivery to the plant, maintaining inventory records, and arranging for the bank to issue a check. Parker's holding costs take into account storage, damage, insurance, taxes, and so forth on a square-foot basis. These costs equal $150 per LCD per year.

With added emphasis being placed on efficiencies in the supply chain, Parker's president has asked Raktim to seriously evaluate the purchase of the LCDs. One area to be closely scrutinized for possible cost savings is inventory procurement.

Discussion Questions

1. What is the optimal order number of LCDs that should be placed in each order?
2. What is the optimal reorder point (ROP) for LCDs?
3. What cost savings will Parker realize if it implements an order plan based on EOQ?

Managing Inventory at Frito-Lay

Video Case

Frito-Lay has flourished since its origin—the 1931 purchase of a small San Antonio firm for $100 that included a recipe, 19 retail accounts, and a hand-operated potato ricer. The multi-billion-dollar company, headquartered in Dallas, now has 41 products—15 with sales of over $100 million per year and 7 at over $1 billion in sales. Production takes place in 36 product-focused plants in the U.S. and Canada, with 48,000 employees.

Inventory is a major investment and an expensive asset in most firms. Holding costs often exceed 25% of product value, but in Frito-Lay's prepared food industry, holding cost can be much higher because the raw materials are perishable. In the food industry, inventory spoils. So poor inventory management is not only expensive but can also yield an unsatisfactory product that in the extreme can also ruin market acceptance.

Major ingredients at Frito-Lay are corn meal, corn, potatoes, oil, and seasoning. Using potato chips to illustrate rapid inventory flow: potatoes are moved via truck from farm, to regional plants for processing, to warehouse, to the retail store. This happens in a matter of hours—not days or weeks. This keeps freshness high and holding costs low.

Frequent deliveries of the main ingredients at the Florida plant, for example, take several forms:

- Potatoes are delivered in 10 truckloads per day, with 150,000 lbs consumed in one shift: the entire potato storage area will only hold 7½ hours' worth of potatoes.
- Oil inventory arrives by rail car, which lasts only 4½ days.
- Corn meal arrives from various farms in the Midwest, and inventory typically averages 4 days' production.
- Seasoning inventory averages 7 days.
- Packaging inventory averages 8 to 10 days.

Frito-Lay's product-focused facility represents a major capital investment. That investment must achieve high utilization to be efficient. The capital cost must be spread over a substantial volume to drive down total cost of the snack foods produced. This demand for high utilization requires reliable equipment and tight schedules. Reliable machinery requires an inventory of critical components: this is known as MRO, or maintenance, repair, and operating supplies. MRO inventory of motors, switches, gears, bearings, and other critical specialized components can be costly but is necessary.

Frito-Lay's non-MRO inventory moves rapidly. Raw material quickly becomes work-in-process, moving through the system and out the door as a bag of chips in about $1\frac{1}{2}$ shifts. Packaged finished products move from production to the distribution chain in less than 1.4 days.

Discussion Questions*

1. How does the mix of Frito-Lay's inventory differ from those at a machine or cabinet shop (a process-focused facility)?
2. What are the major inventory items at Frito-Lay, and how rapidly do they move through the process?
3. What are the four types of inventory? Give an example of each at Frito-Lay.
4. How would you rank the dollar investment in each of the four types (from the most investment to the least investment)?
5. Why does inventory flow so quickly through a Frito-Lay plant?
6. Why does the company keep so many plants open?
7. Why doesn't Frito-Lay make all its 41 products at each of its plants?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before addressing these questions.

Inventory Control at Wheeled Coach

Video Case

Controlling inventory is one of Wheeled Coach's toughest problems. Operating according to a strategy of mass customization and responsiveness, management knows that success is dependent on tight inventory control. Anything else results in an inability to deliver promptly, chaos on the assembly line, and a huge inventory investment. Wheeled Coach finds that almost 50% of the cost of every ambulance it manufactures is purchased materials. A large proportion of that 50% is in chassis (purchased from Ford), aluminum (from Reynolds Metal), and plywood used for flooring and cabinetry construction (from local suppliers). Wheeled Coach tracks these A inventory items quite carefully, maintaining tight security/control and ordering carefully so as to maximize quantity discounts while minimizing on-hand stock. Because of long lead times and scheduling needs at Reynolds, aluminum must actually be ordered as much as 8 months in advance.

In a crowded ambulance industry in which it is the only giant, its 45 competitors don't have the purchasing power to draw the same discounts as Wheeled Coach. But this competitive cost advantage cannot be taken lightly, according to President Bob Collins. "Cycle counting in our stockrooms is critical. No part can leave the locked stockrooms without appearing on a bill of materials."

Accurate bills of material (BOM) are a requirement if products are going to be built on time. Additionally, because of the custom nature of each vehicle, most orders are won only after a bidding process. Accurate BOMs are critical to cost estimation and the resulting bid. For these reasons, Collins was emphatic that Wheeled Coach maintain outstanding inventory control. The *Global Company Profile* featuring Wheeled Coach (which opens Chapter 14) provides further details about the ambulance inventory control and production process.

Discussion Questions*

1. Explain how Wheeled Coach implements ABC analysis.
2. If you were to take over as inventory control manager at Wheeled Coach, what additional policies and techniques would you initiate to ensure accurate inventory records?
3. How would you go about implementing these suggestions?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before addressing these questions.

- **Additional Case Studies:** Visit MyOMLab for these free case studies:
  Southwestern University (F): The university must decide how many football day programs to order, and from whom.
  LaPlace Power and Light: This utility company is evaluating its current inventory policies.

Endnotes

1. See E. Malykhina, "Retailers Take Stock," *Information Week* (February 7, 2005): 20–22, and A. Raman, N. DeHoratius, and Z. Ton, "Execution: The Missing Link in Retail Operations," *California Management Review* 43, no. 3 (Spring 2001): 136–141.
2. This is the case when holding costs are linear and begin at the origin—that is, when inventory costs do not decline (or they increase) as inventory volume increases and all holding costs are in small increments. In addition, there is probably some learning each time a setup (or order) is executed—a fact that lowers subsequent setup costs. Consequently, the EOQ model is probably a special case. However, we abide by the conventional wisdom that this model is a reasonable approximation.
3. The formula for the economic order quantity (Q^*) can also be determined by finding where the total cost curve is at a minimum (i.e., where the slope of the total cost curve is zero). Using calculus, we set the derivative of the total cost with respect to Q^* equal to 0. The calculations for finding the minimum of

$$TC = \frac{D}{Q}S + \frac{Q}{2}H + PD$$

are

$$\frac{d(TC)}{dQ} = \left(\frac{-DS}{Q^2}\right) + \frac{H}{2} + 0 = 0$$

$$\text{Thus, } Q^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H}}$$

4. The number of units short, Demand–ROP, is true only when Demand–ROP is non-negative.
5. Equations (12-15), (12-16), and (12-17) are expressed in days; however, they could equivalently be expressed in weeks, months, or even years. Just be consistent, and use the same time units for all terms in the equations.
6. Note that Equation (12-17) can also be expressed as:

$$\text{ROP} = \text{Average daily demand} \times \text{Average lead time} + Z\sqrt{(\text{Average lead time} \times \sigma_d^2) + \overline{d}^2\sigma_{LT}^2}.$$

7. OM managers also call these *continuous review systems*.

Chapter 12 Rapid Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
THE IMPORTANCE OF INVENTORY (pp. 528–529)	Inventory is one of the most expensive assets of many companies. *The objective of inventory management is to strike a balance between inventory investment and customer service.* The two basic inventory issues are how much to order and when to order. ■ **Raw material inventory**—Materials that are usually purchased but have yet to enter the manufacturing process. ■ **Work-in-process (WIP) inventory**—Products or components that are no longer raw materials but have yet to become finished products. ■ **MRO inventory**—Maintenance, repair, and operating materials. ■ **Finished-goods inventory**—An end item ready to be sold but still an asset on the company's books.	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4 **VIDEO 12.1** Managing Inventory at Frito-Lay
MANAGING INVENTORY (pp. 529–533)	■ **ABC analysis**—A method for dividing on-hand inventory into three classifications based on annual dollar volume. ■ **Cycle counting**—A continuing reconciliation of inventory with inventory records. ■ **Shrinkage**—Retail inventory that is unaccounted for between receipt and sale. ■ **Pilferage**—A small amount of theft.	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4 Problems: 12.1–12.6 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 12.1
INVENTORY MODELS (pp. 533–534)	■ **Holding cost**—The cost to keep or carry inventory in stock. ■ **Ordering cost**—The cost of the ordering process. ■ **Setup cost**—The cost to prepare a machine or process for production. ■ **Setup time**—The time required to prepare a machine or process for production.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4 **VIDEO 12.2** Inventory Control at Wheeled Coach Ambulance
INVENTORY MODELS FOR INDEPENDENT DEMAND (pp. 534–545)	■ **Economic order quantity (EOQ) model**—An inventory-control technique that minimizes the total of ordering and holding costs: $$Q^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H}} \quad (12\text{-}1)$$ $$\text{Expected number of orders} = N = \frac{\text{Demand}}{\text{Order quantity}} = \frac{D}{Q^*} \quad (12\text{-}2)$$ $$\text{Expected time between orders} = T = \frac{\text{Number of working days per year}}{N} \quad (12\text{-}3)$$ $$\text{Total annual cost} = \text{Setup (order) cost} + \text{Holding cost} \quad (12\text{-}4)$$ $$TC = \frac{D}{Q}S + \frac{Q}{2}H \quad (12\text{-}5)$$ ■ **Robust**—Giving satisfactory answers even with substantial variation in the parameters. ■ **Lead time**—In purchasing systems, the time between placing an order and receiving it; in production systems, the wait, move, queue, setup, and run times for each component produced. ■ **Reorder point (ROP)**—The inventory level (point) at which action is taken to replenish the stocked item. *ROP for known demand:* $$\text{ROP} = \text{Demand per day} \times \text{Lead time for a new order in days} = d \times L \quad (12\text{-}6)$$ ■ **Safety stock (*ss*)**—Extra stock to allow for uneven demand; a buffer. ■ **Production order quantity model**—An economic order quantity technique applied to production orders: $$Q_p^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H[1 - (d/p)]}} \quad (12\text{-}7)$$ $$Q_p^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H\left(1 - \frac{\text{Annual demand rate}}{\text{Annual production rate}}\right)}} \quad (12\text{-}8)$$ ■ **Quantity discount**—A reduced price for items purchased in large quantities: $$TC = \frac{D}{Q}S + \frac{Q}{2}H + PD \quad (12\text{-}9)$$ $$Q^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{IP}} \quad (12\text{-}10)$$	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4 Problems: 12.7–12.40 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problems: 12.2–12.5 **ACTIVE MODELS 12.1, 12.2**

Chapter 12 *Rapid* Review *continued*

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
PROBABILISTIC MODELS AND SAFETY STOCK (pp. 546–553)	■ **Probabilistic model**—A statistical model applicable when product demand or any other variable is not known but can be specified by means of a probability distribution. ■ **Service level**—The complement of the probability of a stockout. *ROP for unknown demand:* $\text{ROP} = d \times L + ss$ (12-11) Annual stockout costs = The sum of the units short for each demand level × The probability of that demand level × The stockout cost/unit × The number of orders per year (12-12) *ROP for unknown demand and given service level:* ROP = Expected demand during lead time + $Z\sigma_{dLT}$ (12-13) Safety stock = $Z\sigma_{dLT}$ (12-14) *ROP for variable demand and constant lead time:* ROP = (Average daily demand × Lead time in days) + $Z\sigma_{dLT}$ (12-15) *ROP for constant demand and variable lead time:* ROP = (Daily demand × Average lead time in days) + $Z \times$ Daily demand $\times \sigma_{LT}$ (12-16) *ROP for variable demand and variable lead time:* ROP = (Average daily demand × Average lead time in days) + $Z\sigma_{dLT}$ (12-17) In each case, $\sigma_{dLT} = \sqrt{(\text{Average lead time} \times \sigma_d^2) + \overline{d}^2\sigma_{LT}^2}$ but under constant demand: $\sigma_d^2 = 0$, and under constant lead time: $\sigma_{LT}^2 = 0$.	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.4 Problems: 12.41–12.50 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problems: 12.6–12.9
SINGLE-PERIOD MODEL (pp. 552–553)	■ **Single-period inventory model**—A system for ordering items that have little or no value at the end of the sales period: Service level = $\dfrac{C_s}{C_s + C_o}$ (12-18)	Concept Questions: 6.1–6.4 Problems: 12.51–12.53
FIXED-PERIOD (*P*) SYSTEMS (pp. 552–553)	■ **Fixed-quantity (*Q*) system**—An ordering system with the same order amount each time. ■ **Perpetual inventory system**—A system that keeps track of each withdrawal or addition to inventory continuously, so records are always current. ■ **Fixed-period (*P*) system**—A system in which inventory orders are made at regular time intervals.	Concept Questions: 7.1–7.4

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 12.1 ABC analysis divides on-hand inventory into three classes, based on:
a) unit price. **b)** the number of units on hand.
c) annual demand. **d)** annual dollar values.

LO 12.2 Cycle counting:
a) means that we count all articles after a specified time period
b) leads us to count A items more frequent then B items
c) require all A items to be counted the same day
d) is a legal requirement

LO 12.3 The two most important inventory-based questions answered by the typical inventory model are:
a) when to place an order and the cost of the order.
b) when to place an order and how much of an item to order.
c) how much of an item to order and the cost of the order.
d) how much of an item to order and with whom the order should be placed.

LO 12.4 Extra units in inventory to help reduce stockouts are called:
a) reorder point. **b)** safety stock.
c) just-in-time inventory. **d)** all of the above.

LO 12.5 The difference(s) between the basic EOQ model and the production order quantity model is (are) that:
a) the production order quantity model does not require the assumption of known, constant demand.
b) the EOQ model does not require the assumption of negligible lead time.
c) the production order quantity model does not require the assumption of instantaneous delivery.
d) all of the above.

LO 12.6 The EOQ model is
a) not very useful in practice since the assumptions are unrealistic
b) finds the optimal safety stock
c) is quite useful, due to the fact that the optimum is quite flat
d) depending on the standard deviation of the demand
e) has an impact of the re-order-point

LO 12.7 The safety stock in re-order point system:
a) shall with a certain probability cover demand exceeding the expected during the lead-time
b) is a non-linear function of lead-time
c) is not depending on the order-quantity
d) all of the above.

Answers: LO 12.1. d; LO 12.2. b; LO 12.3. b; LO 12.4. b; LO 12.5. c; LO 12.6. c; LO 12.7. d.

Aggregate Scheduling

CHAPTER 13

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *Frito-Lay*

- The Planning Process *570*
- Sales and Operations Planning *571*
- The Nature of Aggregate Planning *572*
- Aggregate Planning Strategies *573*
- Methods for Aggregate Planning *576*
- Aggregate Planning in Services *583*
- Revenue Management *585*

Alaska Airlines

10 OM STRATEGY DECISIONS

- Design of Goods and Services
- Managing Quality
- Process Strategy
- Location Strategies
- Layout Strategies
- Human Resources
- Supply-Chain Management
- Inventory Management
- *Scheduling*
  - *Aggregate/S&OP (Ch. 13)*
  - Short-Term (Ch. 15)
- Maintenance

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
Frito-Lay

Aggregate Planning Provides a Competitive Advantage at Frito-Lay

Like other organizations throughout the world, Frito-Lay relies on effective aggregate planning to match fluctuating multi-billion-dollar demand to capacity in its 36 North American plants. Planning for the intermediate term (3 to 18 months) is the heart of aggregate planning. Effective aggregate planning combined with tight scheduling, effective maintenance, and efficient employee and facility scheduling are the keys to high plant utilization. High utilization is a critical factor in facilities such as Frito-Lay, where capital investment is substantial.

Frito-Lay has more than three dozen brands of snacks and chips, 15 of which sell more than $100 million annually and 7 of which sell over $1 billion. Its brands include such well-known names as Fritos, Lay's, Doritos, Sun Chips, Cheetos, Tostitos, Flat Earth, and Ruffles. Unique processes using specially designed equipment are required to produce each of these products. Because these specialized processes generate high fixed cost, they must operate at very high volume. But such product-focused facilities benefit by having low variable costs. High utilization and performance above the break-even point require a good match between demand and capacity. Idle equipment is disastrous.

At Frito-Lay's headquarters near Dallas, planners create a total demand profile. They use historical product sales, forecasts of new products, product innovations, product promotions,

Frito-Lay North America

The aggregate plan adjusts for farm location, yield, and quantities for timely delivery of Frito-Lay's unique varieties of potatoes. During harvest times, potatoes go directly to the plant. During non-harvest months, potatoes are stored in climate-controlled environments to maintain quality, texture, and taste.

Frito-Lay North America

Frito-Lay North America

As potatoes arrive at the plant, they are promptly washed and peeled to ensure freshness and taste.

After peeling, potatoes are cut into thin slices, rinsed of excess starch, and cooked in sunflower and/or corn oil.

Frito-Lay North America

and dynamic local demand data from account managers to forecast demand. Planners then match the total demand profile to existing capacity, capacity expansion plans, and cost. This becomes the aggregate plan. The aggregate plan is communicated to each of the firm's 17 regions and to the 36 plants. Every quarter, headquarters and each plant modify the respective plans to incorporate changing market conditions and plant performance.

Each plant uses its quarterly plan to develop a 4-week plan, which in turn assigns specific products to specific product lines for production runs. Finally, each week raw materials and labor are assigned to each process. Effective aggregate planning is a major factor in high utilization and low cost. As the company's 60% market share indicates, excellent aggregate planning yields a competitive advantage at Frito-Lay.

After cooking is complete, inspection, bagging, weighing, and packing operations prepare Lay's potato chips for shipment to customers—all in a matter of hours.

Frito-Lay North America

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO 13.1 ***Define*** sales and operations planning 571
LO 13.2 ***Define*** aggregate planning 572
LO 13.3 ***Identify*** optional strategies for developing an aggregate plan 573
LO 13.4 ***Prepare*** a graphical aggregate plan 576
LO 13.5 ***Solve*** an aggregate plan via the transportation method 582
LO 13.6 ***Understand*** and solve a revenue management problem 586

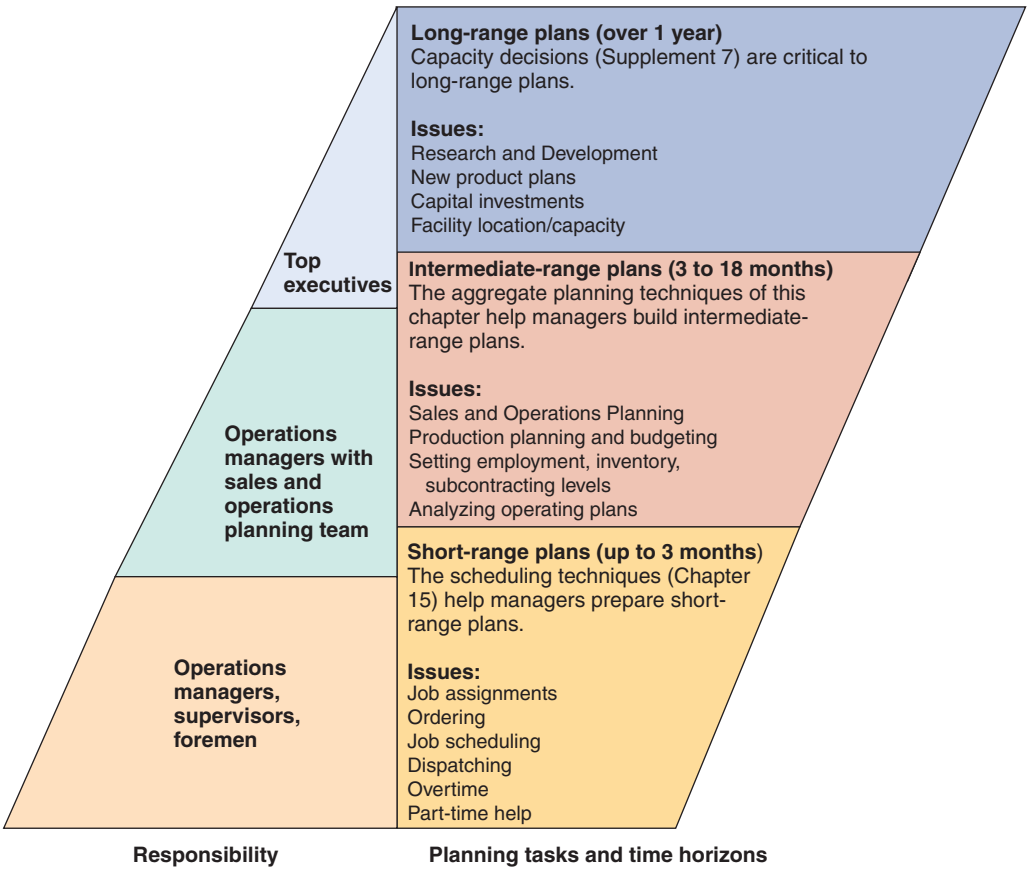
The Planning Process

In Chapter 4, we saw that demand forecasting can address long-, medium-, and short-range decisions. Figure 13.1 illustrates how managers translate these forecasts into long-, intermediate-, and short-range plans. Long-range forecasts, the responsibility of top management, provide data for a firm's multi-year plans. These long-range plans require policies and strategies related to issues such as capacity and capital investment (Supplement 7), facility location (Chapter 8), new products (Chapter 5) and processes (Chapter 7), and supply-chain development (Chapter 11).

Intermediate plans are designed to be consistent with top management's long-range plans and strategy, and work within the resource constraints determined by earlier strategic decisions. The challenge is to have these plans match production to the ever-changing demands of the market. Intermediate plans are the job of the operations manager, working with other functional areas of the firm. In this chapter we deal with intermediate plans, typically measured in months.

Short-range plans are usually for less than 3 months. These plans are also the responsibility of operations personnel. Operations managers work with supervisors and foremen to translate

Figure 13.1
Planning Tasks and Responsibilities



the intermediate plan into short-term plans consisting of weekly, daily, and hourly schedules. Short-term planning techniques are discussed in Chapter 15.

Intermediate planning is initiated by a process known as *sales and operations planning (S&OP)*.

Sales and Operations Planning

Good intermediate planning requires the coordination of demand forecasts with functional areas of a firm and its supply chain. And because each functional part of a firm and the supply chain has its own limitations and constraints, the coordination can be difficult. This coordinated planning effort has evolved into a process known as **sales and operations planning (S&OP)**. As Figure 13.2 shows, S&OP receives input from a variety of sources both internal and external to the firm. Because of the diverse inputs, S&OP is typically done by cross-functional teams that align the competing constraints.

Sales and operations planning (S&OP)
A process of balancing resources and forecasted demand, aligning an organization's competing demands from supply chain to final customer, while linking strategic planning with operations over all planning horizons.

LO 13.1 *Define* sales and operations planning

One of the tasks of S&OP is to determine which plans are feasible in the coming months and which are not. Any limitations, both within the firm and in the supply chain, must be reflected in an intermediate plan that brings day-to-day sales and operational realities together. When the resources appear to be substantially at odds with market expectations, S&OP provides advanced warning to top management. If the plan cannot be implemented in the short run, the planning exercise is useless. And if the plan cannot be supported in the long run, strategic changes need to be made. To keep aggregate plans current and to support its intermediate planning role, S&OP uses rolling forecasts that are frequently updated—often weekly or monthly.

The output of S&OP is called an *aggregate plan.* The **aggregate plan** is concerned with determining the quantity and timing of production for the intermediate future, often from 3 to

Aggregate plan
A plan that includes forecast levels for families of products of finished goods, inventory, shortages, and changes in the workforce.

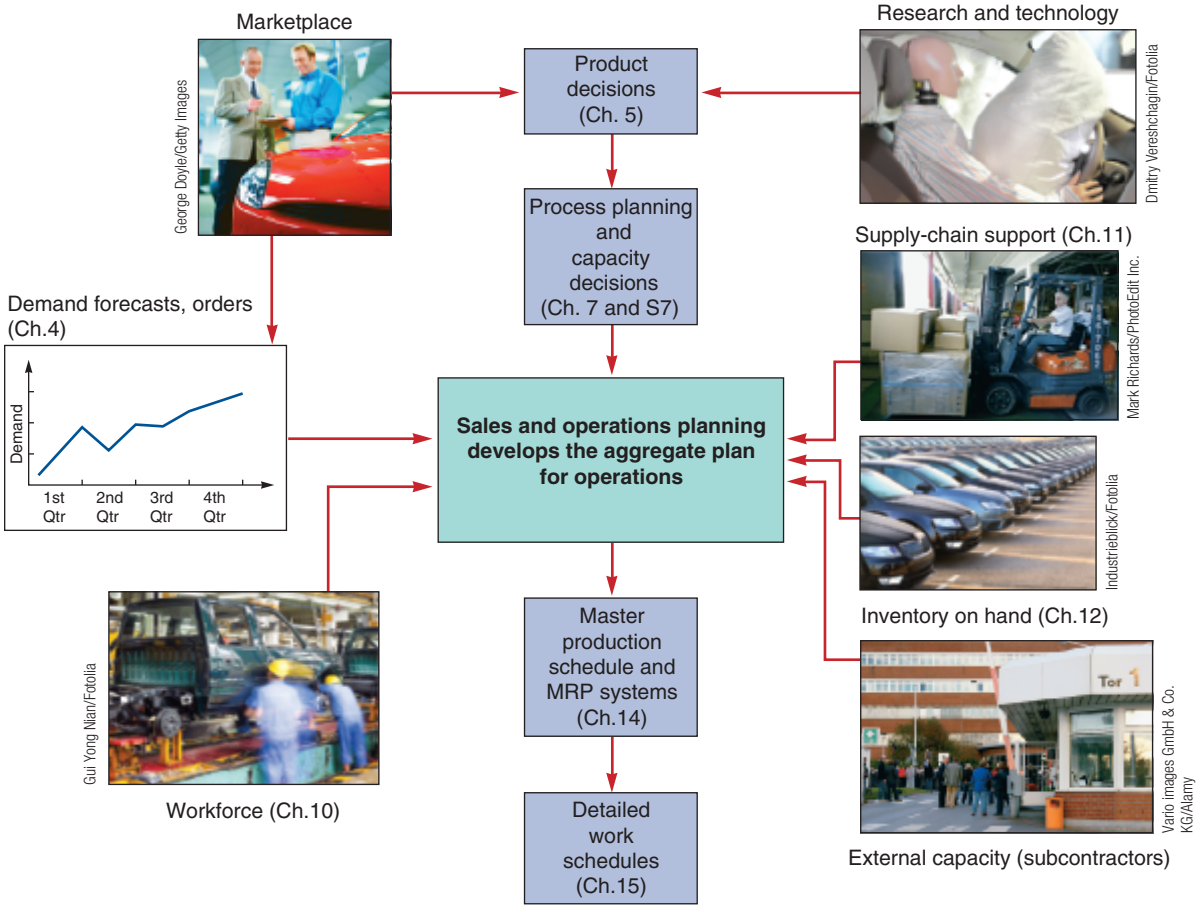


Figure **13.2**

Relationships of S&OP and the Aggregate Plan

18 months ahead. Aggregate plans use information regarding product families or product lines rather than individual products. These plans are concerned with the total, or *aggregate,* of the individual product lines.

Rubbermaid, Office Max, and Rackspace have developed formal systems for S&OP, each with its own planning focus. Rubbermaid may use S&OP with a focus on production decisions; Office Max may focus S&OP on supply chain and inventory decisions; while Rackspace, a data storage firm, tends to have its S&OP focus on its critical and expensive investments in capacity. In *all* cases, though, the decisions must be tied to strategic planning and integrated with *all* areas of the firm over *all* planning horizons. Specifically, S&OP is aimed at (1) the coordination and integration of the internal and external resources necessary for a successful aggregate plan and (2) communication of the plan to those charged with its execution. The added advantage of S&OP and an aggregate plan is that they can be effective tools to engage members of the supply chain in achieving the firm's goals.

LO 13.2 *Define* aggregate planning

Besides being representative, timely, and comprehensive, an effective S&OP process needs these four additional features to generate a useful aggregate plan:

- A logical unit for measuring sales and output, such as pounds of Doritos at Frito-Lay, air-conditioning units at GE, or terabytes of storage at Rackspace
- A forecast of demand for a reasonable intermediate planning period in aggregate terms
- A method to determine the relevant costs
- A model that combines forecasts and costs so scheduling decisions can be made for the planning period

In this chapter we describe several techniques that managers use when developing an aggregate plan for both manufacturing and service-sector firms. For manufacturers, an aggregate schedule ties a firm's strategic goals to production plans. For service organizations, an aggregate schedule ties strategic goals to workforce schedules.

The Nature of Aggregate Planning

An S&OP team builds an aggregate plan that satisfies forecasted demand by adjusting production rates, labor levels, inventory levels, overtime work, subcontracting rates, and other controllable variables. The plan can be for Frito-Lay, Whirlpool, hospitals, colleges, or Pearson Education, the company that publishes this textbook. Regardless of the firm, *the objective of aggregate planning is usually to meet forecast demand while minimizing cost over the planning period.* However, other strategic issues may be more important than low cost. These strategies may be to smooth employment, to drive down inventory levels, or to meet a high level of service, regardless of cost.

Let's look at Snapper, which produces many different models of lawn mowers. Snapper makes walk-behind mowers, rear-engine riding mowers, garden tractors, and many more, for a total of 145 models. For each month in the upcoming 3 quarters, the aggregate plan for Snapper might have the following output (in units of production) for Snapper's "family" of mowers:

QUARTER 1			QUARTER 2			QUARTER 3		
Jan.	Feb.	March	April	May	June	July	Aug.	Sept.
150,000	120,000	110,000	100,000	130,000	150,000	180,000	150,000	140,000

Briggs & Stratton Power Products Marketing

S&OP builds an aggregate plan using the total expected demand for all of the family products, such as 145 models at Snapper (a few of which are shown above). Only when the forecasts are assembled in the aggregate plan does the company decide how to meet the total requirement with the available resources. These resource constraints include facility capacity, workforce size, supply-chain limitations, inventory issues, and financial resources.

OM in Action Brazilian Ice cream Plans it Well

A large Brazilian ice cream manufacturer offers ice cream based products for three market segments namely; immediate consumption, consumption at home, and restaurant/food service products. As a national market leader in this segment they have around 150 products distributed evenly between these three segments. To cater for their customer base they have an extended logistic network over a large geographical area. Due to the highly seasonal nature of ice cream this company sees significant fluctuations in demand over a 12 month period with it peaking during the summer months. As a result production and material management is difficult.

In the past the ice cream manufacturer dealt with these challenges poorly. Inventory management involved keeping high inventory levels of raw materials and finished products. This covered up for the often weekly rescheduling of production plans to deal with demand fluctuations. Where available capacity was unable to meet peaks in demand large inventories of high demand items were built up during the winter months. Overtime and subcontracting were also used to meet demand fluctuations in the summer months. The lack of detailed and accurate demand forecasts compounded the problem. Overall significant operational inefficiencies existed and a need for an APP was identified for medium term planning.

The solution involved an APP with a planning horizon of 12 months in a rolling horizon scheme with a monthly review. The aggregate production plan determines the monthly production rate, inventory levels of finished products and work force requirements to meet production plans. This information is then used to devise a detailed master production schedule for next three months. Following a trial ofthe APP on one sixth of their products it was found that inventory of finished products equivalent to 129 days of average demand was reduced to 18 days. Other improvements noted included better material management, limited change to master plans and detailed scheduling. A reduction in raw materials and packing material inventory is also expected.

Brazil's ice cream manufacturer is now ready to meet demand in a cost effective way, thereby enabling them to provide their customers with an improved service.

Source: Based on Takey, F.M., and Mesquita, M. A., 2006, *Aggregate Planning for a Large Food Manufacturer with High Seasonal Demand,* Brazilian Journal of Operations & Production Management, **Volume 3, Number 1, pp. 05–20.**

Note that the plan looks at production *in the aggregate* (the family of mowers), not as a product-by-product breakdown. Likewise, an aggregate plan for BMW tells the auto manufacturer how many cars to make but not how many should be two-door vs. four-door or red vs. green. It tells Nucor Steel how many tons of steel to produce but does not differentiate grades of steel.

In a manufacturing environment, the process of breaking the aggregate plan down into greater detail is called **disaggregation**. Disaggregation results in a **master production schedule**, which provides input to material requirements planning (MRP) systems. The master production schedule addresses the purchasing or production of major parts or components (see Chapter 14). It is *not* a sales forecast. Detailed work schedules for people and priority scheduling for products result as the final step of the production planning system (and are discussed in Chapter 15).

Disaggregation
The process of breaking an aggregate plan into greater detail.

Master production schedule
A timetable that specifies what is to be made and when.

Aggregate Planning Strategies

When generating an aggregate plan, the operations manager must answer several questions:

1. Should inventories be used to absorb changes in demand during the planning period?
2. Should changes be accommodated by varying the size of the workforce?
3. Should part-timers be used, or should overtime and idle time absorb fluctuations?
4. Should subcontractors be used on fluctuating orders so a stable workforce can be maintained?
5. Should prices or other factors be changed to influence demand?

STUDENT TIP
Managers can meet aggregate plans by adjusting either capacity or demand.

All of these are legitimate planning strategies. They involve the manipulation of inventory, production rates, labor levels, capacity, and other controllable variables. We will now examine eight options in more detail. The first five are called *capacity options* because they do not try to change demand but attempt to absorb demand fluctuations. The last three are *demand options* through which firms try to smooth out changes in the demand pattern over the planning period.

LO 13.3 *Identify* optional strategies for developing an aggregate plan

Capacity Options

A firm can choose from the following basic capacity (production) options:

1. *Changing inventory levels:* Managers can increase inventory during periods of low demand to meet high demand in future periods. If this strategy is selected, costs associated with storage, insurance, handling, obsolescence, pilferage, and capital invested will increase.

John Deere and Company, the "granddaddy" of farm equipment manufacturers, uses sales incentives to smooth demand. During the fall and winter off-seasons, sales are boosted with price cuts and other incentives. About 70% of Deere's big machines are ordered in advance of seasonal use—about double the industry rate. Incentives hurt margins, but Deere keeps its market share and controls costs by producing more steadily all year long. Similarly, service businesses like L.L. Bean offer customers free shipping on orders placed before the Christmas rush.

Stefan Kiefer/imageBROKER/Alamy

On the other hand, with low inventory on hand and increasing demand, shortages can occur, resulting in longer lead times and poor customer service.

2. *Varying workforce size by hiring or layoffs:* One way to meet demand is to hire or lay off production workers to match production rates. However, new employees need to be trained, and productivity drops temporarily as they are absorbed into the workforce. Layoffs or terminations, of course, lower the morale of all workers and also lead to lower productivity.
3. *Varying production rates through overtime or idle time:* Keeping a constant workforce while varying working hours may be possible. Yet when demand is on a large upswing, there is a limit on how much overtime is realistic. Overtime pay increases costs, and too much overtime can result in worker fatigue and a drop in productivity. Overtime also implies added overhead costs to keep a facility open. On the other hand, when there is a period of decreased demand, the company must somehow absorb workers' idle time—often a difficult and expensive process.
4. *Subcontracting:* A firm can acquire temporary capacity by subcontracting work during peak demand periods. Subcontracting, however, has several pitfalls. First, it may be costly; second, it risks opening the door to a competitor. Third, developing the perfect subcontract supplier can be a challenge.
5. *Using part-time workers:* Especially in the service sector, part-time workers can fill labor needs. This practice is common in restaurants, retail stores, and supermarkets.

Demand Options

The basic demand options are:

1. *Influencing demand:* When demand is low, a company can try to increase demand through advertising, promotion, personal selling, and price cuts. Airlines and hotels have long offered weekend discounts and off-season rates; theaters cut prices for matinees; some colleges give discounts to senior citizens; and air conditioners are least expensive in winter. However, even special advertising, promotions, selling, and pricing are not always able to balance demand with production capacity.
2. *Back ordering during high-demand periods:* Back orders are orders for goods or services that a firm accepts but is unable (either on purpose or by chance) to fill at the moment.

TABLE 13.1 Aggregate Planning Options: Advantages and Disadvantages

OPTION	ADVANTAGES	DISADVANTAGES	COMMENTS
Changing inventory levels	Changes in human resources are gradual or none; no abrupt production changes.	Inventory holding costs may increase. Shortages may result in lost sales.	Applies mainly to production, not service, operations.
Varying workforce size by hiring or layoffs	Avoids the costs of other alternatives.	Hiring, layoff, and training costs may be significant.	Used where size of labor pool is large.
Varying production rates through overtime or idle time	Matches seasonal fluctuations without hiring/training costs.	Overtime premiums; tired workers; may not meet demand.	Allows flexibility within the aggregate plan.
Subcontracting	Permits flexibility and smoothing of the firm's output.	Loss of quality control; reduced profits; potential loss of future business.	Applies mainly in production settings.
Using part-time workers	Is less costly and more flexible than full-time workers.	High turnover/training costs; quality suffers; scheduling difficult.	Good for unskilled jobs in areas with large temporary labor pools.
Influencing demand	Tries to use excess capacity. Discounts draw new customers.	Uncertainty in demand. Hard to match demand to supply exactly.	Creates marketing ideas. Overbooking used in some businesses.
Back ordering during high-demand periods	May avoid overtime. Keeps capacity constant.	Customer must be willing to wait, but goodwill is lost.	Many companies back order.
Counterseasonal product and service mixing	Fully utilizes resources; allows stable workforce.	May require skills or equipment outside firm's areas of expertise.	Risky finding products or services with opposite demand patterns.

If customers are willing to wait without loss of their goodwill or order, back ordering is a possible strategy. Many firms back order, but the approach often results in lost sales.

3. *Counterseasonal product and service mixing:* A widely used active smoothing technique among manufacturers is to develop a product mix of counterseasonal items. Examples include companies that make both furnaces and air conditioners or lawn mowers and snowblowers. However, companies that follow this approach may find themselves involved in products or services beyond their area of expertise or beyond their target market.

These eight options, along with their advantages and disadvantages, are summarized in Table 13.1.

Mixing Options to Develop a Plan

Although each of the five capacity options and three demand options discussed above may produce an effective aggregate schedule, some combination of capacity options and demand options may be better.

Many manufacturers assume that the use of the demand options has been fully explored by the marketing department and those reasonable options incorporated into the demand forecast. The operations manager then builds the aggregate plan based on that forecast. However, using the five capacity options at his command, the operations manager still has a multitude of possible plans. These plans can embody, at one extreme, a *chase strategy* and, at the other, a *level-scheduling strategy*. They may, of course, fall somewhere in between.

Chase Strategy A chase strategy typically attempts to achieve output rates for each period that match the demand forecast for that period. This strategy can be accomplished in a variety of ways. For example, the operations manager can vary workforce levels by hiring or laying off or can vary output by means of overtime, idle time, part-time employees, or subcontracting. Many service organizations favor the chase strategy because the changing inventory levels option is difficult or impossible to adopt. Industries that have moved toward a chase strategy include education, hospitality, and construction.

Chase strategy
A planning strategy that sets production equal to forecast demand.

Level scheduling
Maintaining a constant output rate, production rate, or workforce level over the planning horizon.

Level Strategy A level strategy (or level scheduling) is an aggregate plan in which production is uniform from period to period. Firms like Toyota and Nissan attempt to keep production at uniform levels and may (1) let the finished-goods inventory vary to buffer the difference between demand and production or (2) find alternative work for employees. Their philosophy is that a stable workforce leads to a better-quality product, less turnover and absenteeism, and more employee commitment to corporate goals. Other hidden savings include more experienced employees, easier scheduling and supervision, and fewer dramatic startups and shutdowns. Level scheduling works well when demand is reasonably stable.

Mixed strategy
A planning strategy that uses two or more controllable variables to set a feasible production plan.

For most firms, neither a chase strategy nor a level strategy is likely to prove ideal, so a combination of the eight options (called a mixed strategy) must be investigated to achieve minimum cost. However, because there are a huge number of possible mixed strategies, managers find that aggregate planning can be a challenging task. Finding the one "optimal" plan is not always possible, but as we will see in the next section, a number of techniques have been developed to aid the aggregate planning process.

Methods for Aggregate Planning

In this section, we introduce techniques that operations managers use to develop aggregate plans. They range from the widely used graphical method to the transportation method of linear programming.

Graphical Methods

Graphical techniques
Aggregate planning techniques that work with a few variables at a time to allow planners to compare projected demand with existing capacity.

LO 13.4 *Prepare* a graphical aggregate plan

Graphical techniques are popular because they are easy to understand and use. These plans work with a few variables at a time to allow planners to compare projected demand with existing capacity. They are trial-and-error approaches that do not guarantee an optimal production plan, but they require only limited computations and can be performed by clerical staff. Following are the five steps in the graphical method:

1. Determine the demand in each period.
2. Determine capacity for regular time, overtime, and subcontracting each period.
3. Find labor costs, hiring and layoff costs, and inventory holding costs.
4. Consider company policy that may apply to the workers or to stock levels.
5. Develop alternative plans and examine their total costs.

These steps are illustrated in Examples 1 through 4.

Example 1

GRAPHICAL APPROACH TO AGGREGATE PLANNING FOR A ROOFING SUPPLIER

A Juarez, Mexico, manufacturer of roofing supplies has developed monthly forecasts for a family of products. Data for the 6-month period January to June are presented in Table 13.2. The firm would like to begin development of an aggregate plan.

TABLE 13.2 Monthly Forecasts

MONTH	EXPECTED DEMAND	PRODUCTION DAYS	DEMAND PER DAY (COMPUTED)
Jan.	900	22	41
Feb.	700	18	39
Mar.	800	21	38
Apr.	1,200	21	57
May	1,500	22	68
June	1,100	20	55
	6,200	124	

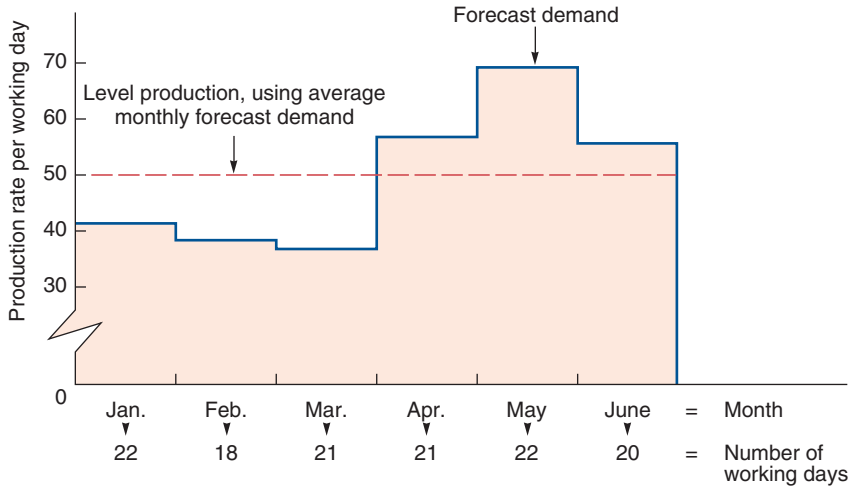
APPROACH ▶ Plot daily and average demand to illustrate the nature of the aggregate planning problem.

SOLUTION ▶ First, compute demand per day by dividing the expected monthly demand by the number of production days (working days) each month and drawing a graph of those forecast demands (Figure 13.3). Second, draw a dotted line across the chart that represents the production rate required to meet average demand over the 6-month period. The chart is computed as follows:

$$\text{Average requirement} = \frac{\text{Total expected demand}}{\text{Number of production days}} = \frac{6{,}200}{124} = 50 \text{ units per day}$$

Figure **13.3**

Graph of Forecast and Average Forecast Demand



INSIGHT ▶ Changes in the production rate become obvious when the data are graphed. Note that in the first 3 months, expected demand is lower than average, while expected demand in April, May, and June is above average.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If demand for June increases to 1,200 (from 1,100), what is the impact on Figure 13.3? [Answer: The daily rate for June will go up to 60, and average production will increase to 50.8 (6,300/124).]

RELATED PROBLEM ▶ 13.1

The graph in Figure 13.3 illustrates how the forecast differs from the average demand. Some strategies for meeting the forecast were listed earlier. The firm, for example, might staff in order to yield a production rate that meets *average* demand (as indicated by the dashed line). Or it might produce a steady rate of, say, 30 units and then subcontract excess demand to other roofing suppliers. Other plans might combine overtime work with subcontracting to absorb demand or vary the workforce by hiring and laying off. Examples 2 to 4 illustrate three possible strategies.

Example 2

PLAN 1 FOR THE ROOFING SUPPLIER—A CONSTANT WORKFORCE

One possible strategy (call it plan 1) for the manufacturer described in Example 1 is to maintain a constant workforce throughout the 6-month period. A second (plan 2) is to maintain a constant workforce at a level necessary to meet the lowest demand month (March) and to meet all demand above this level by subcontracting. Both plan 1 and plan 2 have level production and are, therefore, called *level strategies*. Plan 3 is to hire and lay off workers as needed to produce exact monthly requirements—*a chase strategy*. Table 13.3 provides cost information necessary for analyzing these three alternatives.

TABLE 13.3 Cost Information

Inventory carrying cost	$ 5 per unit per month
Subcontracting cost per unit	$ 20 per unit
Average pay rate	$ 10 per hour ($80 per day)
Overtime pay rate	$ 17 per hour (above 8 hours per day)
Labor-hours to produce a unit	1.6 hours per unit
Cost of increasing daily production rate (hiring and training)	$300 per unit
Cost of decreasing daily production rate (layoffs)	$600 per unit

ANALYSIS OF PLAN 1 APPROACH ▶ Here we assume that 50 units are produced per day and that we have a constant workforce, no overtime or idle time, no safety stock, and no subcontractors. The firm accumulates inventory during the slack period of demand, January through March, and depletes it during the higher-demand warm season, April through June. We assume beginning inventory = 0 and planned ending inventory = 0.

SOLUTION ▶ We construct the table below and accumulate the costs:

MONTH	PRODUCTION DAYS	PRODUCTION AT 50 UNITS PER DAY	DEMAND FORECAST	MONTHLY INVENTORY CHANGE	ENDING INVENTORY
Jan.	22	1,100	900	+200	200
Feb.	18	900	700	+200	400
Mar.	21	1,050	800	+250	650
Apr.	21	1,050	1,200	−150	500
May	22	1,100	1,500	−400	100
June	20	1,000	1,100	−100	0
					1,850

Total units of inventory carried over from one month to the next month = 1,850 units

Workforce required to produce 50 units per day = 10 workers

Because each unit requires 1.6 labor-hours to produce, each worker can make 5 units in an 8-hour day. Therefore, to produce 50 units, 10 workers are needed.

Finally, the costs of plan 1 are computed as follows:

COST		CALCULATIONS
Inventory carrying	$ 9,250	(= 1,850 units carried × $5 per unit)
Regular-time labor	99,200	(= 10 workers × $80 per day × 124 days)
Other costs (overtime, hiring, layoffs, subcontracting)	0	
Total cost	$108,450	

INSIGHT ▶ Note the significant cost of carrying the inventory.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If demand for June decreases to 1,000 (from 1,100), what is the change in cost? [Answer: Total inventory carried will increase to 1,950 at $5, for an inventory cost of $9,750 and total cost of $108,950.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 13.2–13.12, 13.19 (13.23 is available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File Ch13Ex2.xls can be found in MyOMLab.

ACTIVE MODEL 13.1 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 13.1 in MyOMLab.

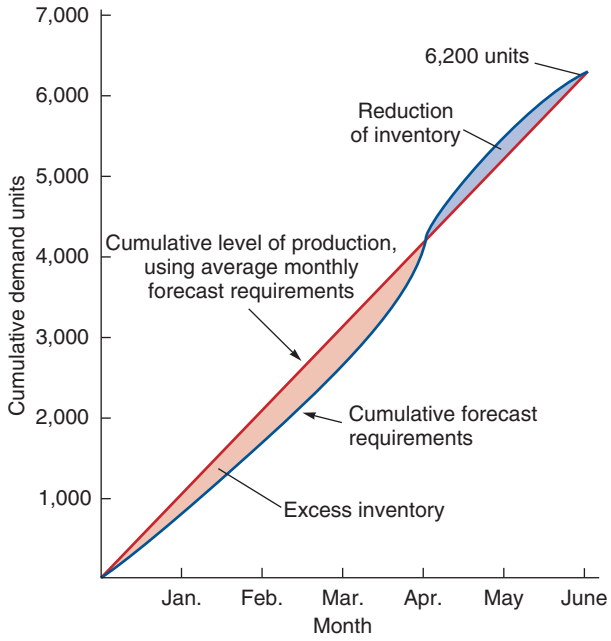


Figure 13.4
Cumulative Graph for Plan 1

STUDENT TIP
We saw another way to graph this data in Figure 13.3.

The graph for Example 2 was shown in Figure 13.3. Some planners prefer a *cumulative* graph to display visually how the forecast deviates from the average requirements. Such a graph is provided in Figure 13.4. Note that both the level production line and the forecast line produce the same total production.

Example 3

PLAN 2 FOR THE ROOFING SUPPLIER—USE OF SUBCONTRACTORS WITHIN A CONSTANT WORKFORCE

ANALYSIS OF PLAN 2 APPROACH ▶ Although a constant workforce is also maintained in plan 2, it is set low enough to meet demand only in March, the lowest demand-per-day month. To produce 38 units per day (800/21) in-house, 7.6 workers are needed. (You can think of this as 7 full-time workers and 1 part-timer.) *All* other demand is met by subcontracting. Subcontracting is thus required in every other month. No inventory holding costs are incurred in plan 2.

SOLUTION ▶ Because 6,200 units are required during the aggregate plan period, we must compute how many can be made by the firm and how many must be subcontracted:

$$\text{In-house production} = 38 \text{ units per day} \times 124 \text{ production days}$$
$$= 4{,}712 \text{ units}$$
$$\text{Subcontract units} = 6{,}200 - 4{,}712 = 1{,}488 \text{ units}$$

The costs of plan 2 are computed as follows:

COST		CALCULATIONS
Regular-time labor	$ 75,392	(= 7.6 workers × $80 per day × 124 days)
Subcontracting	29,760	(= 1,488 units × $20 per unit)
Total cost	$105,152	

INSIGHT ▶ Note the lower cost of regular labor but the added subcontracting cost.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If demand for June increases to 1,200 (from 1,100), what is the change in cost? [Answer: Subcontracting requirements increase to 1,588 at $20 per unit, for a subcontracting cost of $31,760 and a total cost of $107,152.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 13.2–13.12, 13.19 (13.23 is available in MyOMLab)

Example 4

PLAN 3 FOR THE ROOFING SUPPLIER—HIRING AND LAYOFFS

ANALYSIS OF PLAN 3 APPROACH ▶ The final strategy, plan 3, involves varying the workforce size by hiring and layoffs as necessary. The production rate will equal the demand, and there is no change in production from the previous month, December.

SOLUTION ▶ Table 13.4 shows the calculations and the total cost of plan 3. Recall that it costs $600 per unit produced to reduce production from the previous month's daily level and $300 per unit change to increase the daily rate of production through hirings.

TABLE 13.4 Cost Computations for Plan 3

MONTH	FORECAST (UNITS)	DAILY PRODUCTION RATE	BASIC PRODUCTION COST (DEMAND ×1.6 HR PER UNIT × $10 PER HR)	EXTRA COST OF INCREASING PRODUCTION (HIRING COST)	EXTRA COST OF DECREASING PRODUCTION (LAYOFF COST)	TOTAL COST
Jan.	900	41	$14,400	—	—	$ 14,400
Feb.	700	39	11,200	—	$1,200 (= 2 × $600)	12,400
Mar.	800	38	12,800	—	$ 600 (= 1 × $600)	13,400
Apr.	1,200	57	19,200	$5,700 (= 19 × $300)	—	24,900
May	1,500	68	24,000	$3,300 (= 11 × $300)	—	27,300
June	1,100	55	17,600	—	$7,800 (= 13 × $600)	$ 25,400
			$99,200	$9,000	$9,600	$117,800

Thus, the total cost, including production, hiring, and layoff, for plan 3 is $117,800.

INSIGHT ▶ Note the substantial cost associated with changing (both increasing and decreasing) the production levels.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If demand for June increases to 1,200 (from 1,100), what is the change in cost? [Answer: Daily production for June is 60 units, which is a decrease of 8 units in the daily production rate from May's 68 units, so the new June layoff cost is $4,800 (= 8 × $600), but an additional production cost for 100 units is $1,600 (100 × 1.6 × $10) with a total plan 3 cost of $116,400.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 13.2–13.12, 13.19 (13.23 is available in MyOMLab)

The final step in the graphical method is to compare the costs of each proposed plan and to select the approach with the least total cost. A summary analysis is provided in Table 13.5. We see that because plan 2 has the lowest cost, it is the best of the three options.

TABLE 13.5 Comparison of the Three Plans

COST	PLAN 1 (CONSTANT WORKFORCE OF 10 WORKERS)	PLAN 2 (WORKFORCE OF 7.6 WORKERS PLUS SUBCONTRACTORS)	PLAN 3 (HIRING AND LAYOFFS TO MEET DEMAND)
Inventory carrying	$ 9,250	$ 0	$ 0
Regular labor	99,200	75,392	99,200
Overtime labor	0	0	0
Hiring	0	0	9,000
Layoffs	0	0	9,600
Subcontracting	0	29,760	0
Total cost	$108,450	$105,152	$117,800

Of course, many other feasible strategies can be considered in a problem like this, including combinations that use some overtime. Although graphing is a popular management tool, its help is in evaluating strategies, not generating them. To generate strategies, a systematic approach that considers all costs and produces an effective solution is needed.

Mathematical Approaches

This section briefly describes mathematical approaches to aggregate planning.

The Transportation Method of Linear Programming When an aggregate planning problem is viewed as one of allocating operating capacity to meet forecast demand, it can be formulated in a linear programming format. The **transportation method of linear programming** is not a trial-and-error approach like graphing but rather produces an optimal plan for minimizing costs. It is also flexible in that it can specify regular and overtime production in each time period, the number of units to be subcontracted, extra shifts, and the inventory carryover from period to period.

Transportation method of linear programming
A way of solving for the optimal solution to an aggregate planning problem.

In Example 5, the supply consists of on-hand inventory and units produced by regular time, overtime, and subcontracting. Costs per unit, in the upper-right corner of each cell of the matrix in Table 13.7, relate to units produced in a given period or units carried in inventory from an earlier period.

Example 5

AGGREGATE PLANNING WITH THE TRANSPORTATION METHOD

Farnsworth Tire Company would like to develop an aggregate plan via the transportation method. Data that relate to production, demand, capacity, and cost at its West Virginia plant are shown in Table 13.6.

TABLE 13.6 Farnsworth's Production, Demand, Capacity, and Cost Data

	SALES PERIOD		
	MAR.	APR.	MAY
Demand	800	1,000	750
Capacity:			
Regular	700	700	700
Overtime	50	50	50
Subcontracting	150	150	130
Beginning inventory	100 tires		

COSTS	
Regular time	$40 per tire
Overtime	$50 per tire
Subcontract	$70 per tire
Carrying cost	$ 2 per tire per month

APPROACH ► Solve the aggregate planning problem by minimizing the costs of matching production in various periods to future demands.

SOLUTION ► Table 13.7 illustrates the structure of the transportation table and an initial feasible solution.

LO 13.5 *Solve* an aggregate plan via the transportation method

TABLE 13.7 Farnsworth's Transportation Table[a]

SUPPLY FROM		DEMAND FOR: Period 1 (Mar.)	Period 2 (Apr.)	Period 3 (May)	Unused Capacity (dummy)	TOTAL CAPACITY AVAILABLE (supply)
Beginning inventory		0 100	2	4	0	100
Period 1	*Regular time*	40 700	42	44	0	700
	Overtime	50	52 50	54	0	50
	Subcontract	70	72 150	74	0	150
Period 2	*Regular time*	×	40 700	42	0	700
	Overtime	×	50 50	52	0	50
	Subcontract	×	70 50	72	0 100	150
Period 3	*Regular time*	×	×	40 700	0	700
	Overtime	×	×	50 50	0	50
	Subcontract	×	×	70	0 130	130
TOTAL DEMAND		800	1,000	750	230	2,780

[a]Cells with an *x* indicate that back orders are not used at Farnsworth. When using Excel OM or POM for Windows to solve, you must insert a *very* high cost (e.g., 9999) in each cell that is not used for production.

When setting up and analyzing this table, you should note the following:

1. Carrying costs are $2/tire per month. Tires produced in 1 period and held for 1 month will have a $2 higher cost. Because holding cost is linear, 2 months' holdover costs $4. So when you move across a row from left to right, regular time, overtime, and subcontracting costs are lowest when output is used in the same period it is produced. If goods are made in one period and carried over to the next, holding costs are incurred. Beginning inventory, however, is generally given a unit cost of 0 if it is used to satisfy demand in period 1.
2. Transportation problems require that supply equals demand, so a dummy column called "unused capacity" has been added. Costs of not using capacity are zero.
3. Because back ordering is not a viable alternative for this particular company, no production is possible in those cells that represent production in a period to satisfy demand in a past period (i.e., those periods with an "×"). If back ordering is allowed, costs of expediting, loss of goodwill, and loss of sales revenues are summed to estimate backorder cost.
4. Quantities in red in each column of Table 13.7 designate the levels of inventory needed to meet demand requirements (shown in the bottom row of the table). Demand of 800 tires in March is met by using 100 tires from beginning inventory and 700 tires from regular time.
5. In general, to complete the table, allocate as much production as you can to a cell with the smallest cost without exceeding the unused capacity in that row or demand in that column. If there is still some demand left in that row, allocate as much as you can to the next-lowest-cost cell. You then repeat this process for periods 2 and 3 (and beyond, if necessary). When you are finished, the sum of all your entries in a row must equal the total row capacity, and the sum of all entries in a column must equal the demand for that period. (This step can be accomplished by the transportation method or by using POM for Windows or Excel OM software.)

Try to confirm that the cost of this initial solution is $105,900. The initial solution is not optimal, however. See if you can find the production schedule that yields the least cost (which turns out to be $105,700) using software or by hand.

INSIGHT ▶ The transportation method is flexible when costs are linear but does not work when costs are nonlinear.

LEARNING EXAMPLE ▶ What is the impact on this problem if there is no beginning inventory? [Answer: Total capacity (units) available is reduced by 100 units and the need to subcontract increases by 100 units.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 13.13–13.18 (13.20–13.22 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch13Ex5.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

The transportation method of linear programming described in the preceding example works well when analyzing the effects of holding inventories, using overtime, and subcontracting. However, it does not work when nonlinear or negative factors are introduced. Thus, when other factors such as hiring and layoffs are introduced, the more general method of linear programming must be used. Similarly, computer simulation models look for a minimum-cost combination of values.

A number of commercial S&OP software packages that incorporate the techniques of this chapter are available to ease the mechanics of aggregate planning. These include Arkieva's S&OP *Workbench* for process industries, Demand Solutions's *S&OP Software,* and Steelwedge's *S&OP Suite.*

Aggregate Planning in Services

Some service organizations conduct aggregate planning in exactly the same way as we did in Examples 1 through 5 in this chapter, but with demand management taking a more active role. Because most services pursue *combinations* of the eight capacity and demand options discussed earlier, they usually formulate mixed aggregate planning strategies. In industries such as banking, trucking, and fast foods, aggregate planning may be easier than in manufacturing.

Controlling the cost of labor in service firms is critical. Successful techniques include:

1. Accurate scheduling of labor-hours to ensure quick response to customer demand
2. An on-call labor resource that can be added or deleted to meet unexpected demand
3. Flexibility of individual worker skills that permits reallocation of available labor
4. Flexibility in rate of output or hours of work to meet changing demand

These options may seem demanding, but they are not unusual in service industries, in which labor is the primary aggregate planning vehicle. For instance:

STUDENT TIP
The major variable in capacity management for services is labor.

- Excess capacity is used to provide study and planning time by real estate and auto salespersons.
- Police and fire departments have provisions for calling in off-duty personnel for major emergencies. Where the emergency is extended, police or fire personnel may work longer hours and extra shifts.
- When business is unexpectedly light, restaurants and retail stores send personnel home early.
- Supermarket stock clerks work cash registers when checkout lines become too lengthy.
- Experienced waitresses increase their pace and efficiency of service as crowds of customers arrive.

Approaches to aggregate planning differ by the type of service provided. Here we discuss five service scenarios.

Restaurants

In a business with a highly variable demand, such as a restaurant, aggregate scheduling is directed toward (1) smoothing the production rate and (2) finding the optimal size of the workforce. The general approach usually requires building very modest levels of inventory during slack periods and depleting inventory during peak periods, but using labor to accommodate most of the changes in demand. Because this situation is very similar to those found in manufacturing, traditional aggregate planning methods may be applied to restaurants as well. One difference is that even modest amounts of inventory may be perishable. In addition, the relevant units of time may be much smaller than in manufacturing. For example, in fast-food restaurants, peak and slack periods may be measured in fractions of an hour, and the "product" may be inventoried for as little as 10 minutes.

Hospitals

Hospitals face aggregate planning problems in allocating money, staff, and supplies to meet the demands of patients. Michigan's Henry Ford Hospital, for example, plans for bed capacity and personnel needs in light of a patient-load forecast developed by moving averages. The necessary labor focus of its aggregate plan has led to the creation of a new floating staff pool serving each nursing pod.

National Chains of Small Service Firms

With the advent of national chains of small service businesses such as funeral homes, oil change outlets, and photocopy/printing centers, the question of aggregate planning versus independent planning at each business establishment becomes an issue. Both purchases and production capacity may be centrally planned when demand can be influenced through special promotions. This approach to aggregate scheduling is often advantageous because it reduces costs and helps manage cash flow at independent sites.

Miscellaneous Services

Most "miscellaneous" services—financial, transportation, and many communication and recreation services—provide intangible output. Aggregate planning for these services deals mainly with planning for human resource requirements and managing demand. The twofold goal is to level demand peaks and to design methods for fully utilizing labor resources during low-demand periods. Example 6 illustrates such a plan for a legal firm.

Example 6

AGGREGATE PLANNING IN A LAW FIRM

Klasson and Avalon, a medium-size Tampa law firm of 32 legal professionals, wants to develop an aggregate plan for the next quarter. The firm has developed 3 forecasts of billable hours for the next quarter for each of 5 categories of legal business it performs (column 1, Table 13.8). The 3 forecasts (best, likely, and worst) are shown in columns 2, 3, and 4 of Table 13.8.

TABLE 13.8 Labor Allocation at Klasson and Avalon, Forecasts for Coming Quarter (1 lawyer = 500 hours of labor)

FORECASTED LABOR-HOURS REQUIRED				*CAPACITY CONSTRAINTS*	
(1) CATEGORY OF LEGAL BUSINESS	(2) BEST (HOURS)	(3) LIKELY (HOURS)	(4) WORST (HOURS)	(5) MAXIMUM DEMAND FOR PERSONNEL	(6) NUMBER OF QUALIFIED PERSONNEL
Trial work	1,800	1,500	1,200	3.6	4
Legal research	4,500	4,000	3,500	9.0	32
Corporate law	8,000	7,000	6,500	16.0	15
Real estate law	1,700	1,500	1,300	3.4	6
Criminal law	3,500	3,000	2,500	7.0	12
Total hours	19,500	17,000	15,000		
Lawyers needed	39	34	30		

APPROACH ► If we make some assumptions about the workweek and skills, we can provide an aggregate plan for the firm. Assuming a 40-hour workweek and that 100% of each lawyer's hours are billed, about 500 billable hours are available from each lawyer this fiscal quarter.

SOLUTION ► We divide hours of billable time (which is the demand) by 500 to provide a count of lawyers needed (lawyers represent the capacity) to cover the estimated demand. Capacity then is shown to be 39, 34, and 30 for the three forecasts, best, likely, and worst, respectively. For example, the best-case scenario of 19,500 total hours, divided by 500 hours per lawyer, equals 39 lawyers needed. Because all 32 lawyers at Klasson and Avalon are qualified to perform basic legal research, this skill has maximum scheduling flexibility (column 6). The most highly skilled (and capacity-constrained) categories are trial work and corporate law. The firm's best-case forecast just barely covers trial work, with 3.6 lawyers needed (see column 5) and 4 qualified (column 6). And corporate law is short 1 full person.

Overtime may be used to cover the excess this quarter, but as business expands, it may be necessary to hire or develop talent in both of these areas. Available staff adequately covers real estate and criminal practice, as long as other needs do not use their excess capacity. With its current legal staff of 32, Klasson and Avalon's best-case forecast will increase the workload by $[(39 - 32)/32 =]$ 21.8% (assuming no new hires). This represents 1 extra day of work per lawyer per week. The worst-case scenario will result in about a 6% underutilization of talent. For both of these scenarios, the firm has determined that available staff will provide adequate service.

INSIGHT ► While our definitions of demand and capacity are different than for a manufacturing firm, aggregate planning is as appropriate, useful, and necessary in a service environment as in manufacturing.

LEARNING EXERCISE ► If the criminal law best-case forecast increases to 4,500 hours, what happens to the number of lawyers needed? [Answer: The demand for lawyers increases to 41.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ► 13.24, 13.25

Source: Based on Glenn Bassett, *Operations Management for Service Industries* (Westport, CT: Quorum Books): 110.

Airline Industry

Airlines and auto-rental firms also have unique aggregate scheduling problems. Consider an airline that has its headquarters in New York, two hub sites in cities such as Atlanta and Dallas, and 150 offices in airports throughout the country. This planning is considerably more complex than aggregate planning for a single site or even for a number of independent sites.

Aggregate planning consists of schedules for (1) number of flights into and out of each hub; (2) number of flights on all routes; (3) number of passengers to be serviced on all flights; (4) number of air personnel and ground personnel required at each hub and airport; and (5) determining the seats to be allocated to various fare classes. Techniques for determining seat allocation are called revenue (or yield) management, our next topic.

Revenue Management

STUDENT TIP

Revenue management changes the focus of aggregate planning from capacity management to demand management.

Most operations models, like most business models, assume that firms charge all customers the same price for a product. In fact, many firms work hard at charging different prices. The idea is to match capacity and demand by charging different prices based on the customer's willingness to pay. The management challenge is to identify those differences and price accordingly. The technique for multiple price points is called revenue management.

Revenue (or yield) management is the aggregate planning process of allocating the company's scarce resources to customers at prices that will maximize revenue. Popular use of the technique dates to the 1980s, when American Airlines's reservation system (called SABRE) allowed the airline to alter ticket prices, in real time and on any route, based on demand information. If it looked like demand for expensive seats was low, more discounted seats were offered. If demand for full-fare seats was high, the number of discounted seats was reduced.

Revenue (or yield) management

Capacity decisions that determine the allocation of resources to maximize revenue or yield.

OM in Action Pricing Stores in Tiers Rescued by Revenue Management

The large US chain store FastCo has over 1000 locations. Past revenue management strategies simply involved pricing all items in every restaurant the same. The reason being that while they knew some locations could charge higher prices they couldn't decide which locations, which items and by how much.

A consultant was hired to apply revenue management principles to FastCo. Information going back two years including the customer view of pricing and store level product data was analysed. The response to prior price changes was assessed. This assessment was carried out on a store-by-store basis to assess demand levels and revenue changes linked to pricing changes. Based on this information a set of five price tiers for the restaurant was developed. Geographic proximity, demographics, economic conditions, the ability of FastCo to handle multiple price tiers in marketing communications, and operational performance, supported the pricing tier decision making process. The tiers charging the highest prices were those with the least sensitive restaurants. In other words,where demand was high and customers were willing to pay higher prices. On the other hand one of the five tiers was based in an area with poor economic conditions and highly sensitive restaurants so a price decrease was applied there. In terms of price changes they ranged from an increase of 6.9% to a decrease of 2.0%. One tier maintained their pricing to act as a benchmark to test the effectiveness of the new strategy.

Prior to implementing the new pricing plan a test case of a small number of locations had their prices increased with reactions observed. There were minimal complaints so the full price adjustments were rolled out in phases to minimise customer resistance. Following full implementation of the price changes minimal customer resistance was found. Healthy profits were also reported. Looking to the future the goal is expand the number of price tiers to further optimise prices.

Source: RMS, 2015, *Pricing Stores in Tiers,* accessed 22nd November 2015 from **http://www.revenuemanage.com/case-studies/pricing-stores-in-tiers/**

American Airlines' success in revenue management spurred many other companies and industries to adopt the concept. Revenue management in the hotel industry began in the late 1980s at Marriott International, which now claims an additional $400 million a year in profit from its management of revenue. The competing Omni hotel chain uses software that performs more than 100,000 calculations every night at each facility. The Dallas Omni, for example, charges its highest rates on weekdays but heavily discounts on weekends. Its sister hotel in San Antonio, which is in a more tourist-oriented destination, reverses this rating scheme, with better deals for its consumers on weekdays. Similarly, Walt Disney World has multiple prices: an annual admission "premium" pass for an adult was recently quoted at $779, but for a Florida resident, $691, with different discounts for AAA members and active-duty military. The video case at the end of this chapter addresses revenue management for the Orlando Magic.

VIDEO 13.1
Using Revenue Management to Set Orlando Magic Ticket Prices

Organizations that have *perishable inventory*, such as airlines, hotels, car rental agencies, cruise lines, and even electrical utilities, have the following shared characteristics that make yield management of interest:[1]

LO 13.6 *Understand* and solve a revenue management problem

1. Service or product can be sold in advance of consumption
2. Fluctuating demand
3. Relatively fixed resource (capacity)
4. Segmentable demand
5. Low variable costs and high fixed costs

Example 7 illustrates how revenue management works in a hotel.

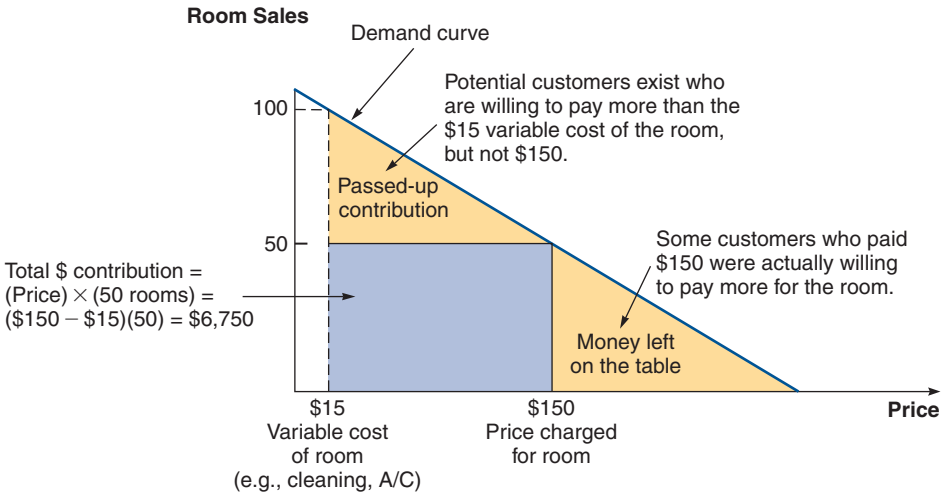
Example 7

REVENUE MANAGEMENT

The Cleveland Downtown Inn is a 100-room hotel that has historically charged one set price for its rooms, $150 per night. The variable cost of a room being occupied is low. Management believes the cleaning, air-conditioning, and incidental costs of soap, shampoo, and so forth, are $15 per room per night. Sales average 50 rooms per night. Figure 13.5 illustrates the current pricing scheme. Net sales are $6,750 per night with a single price point.

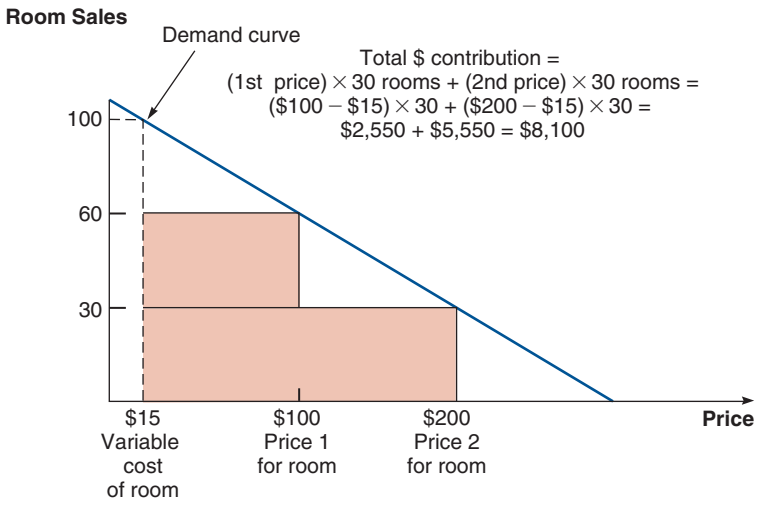
APPROACH ▶ Analyze pricing from the perspective of revenue management. We note in Figure 13.5 that some guests would have been willing to spend more than $150 per room—"money left on the table." Others would be willing to pay more than the variable cost of $15 but less than $150—"passed-up contribution."

Figure 13.5
Hotel Sets Only One Price Level



SOLUTION ▶ In Figure 13.6, the inn decides to set *two* price levels. It estimates that 30 rooms per night can be sold at $100 and another 30 rooms at $200, using revenue management software that is widely available.

Figure 13.6
Hotel with Two Price Levels



INSIGHT ▶ Revenue management has increased total contribution to $8,100 ($2,550 from $100 rooms and $5,550 from $200 rooms). It may be that even more price levels are called for at Cleveland Downtown Inn.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the hotel develops a third price of $150 and can sell half of the $100 rooms at the increased rate, what is the contribution? [Answer: $8,850 = (15 × $85) + (15 × $135) + (30 × $185).]

RELATED PROBLEM ▶ 13.26

Industries traditionally associated with revenue management include hotels, airlines, and rental cars. They are able to apply variable pricing for their product and control product use or availability (number of airline seats or hotel rooms sold at economy rates). Others, such as movie theaters, arenas, or performing arts centers have less pricing flexibility but still use time (evening or matinee) and location (orchestra, side, or balcony) to manage revenue. In both cases, management has control over the amount of the resource used—both the quantity and the duration of the resource.

The manager's job is more difficult in facilities such as restaurants and on golf courses because the duration and the use of the resource is less controllable. However, with imagination, managers are using excess capacity even for these industries. For instance, the golf course may sell less desirable tee times at a reduced rate, and the restaurant may have an "early bird" special to generate business before the usual dinner hour.

To make revenue management work, the company needs to manage three issues:

1. *Multiple pricing structures:* These structures must be feasible and appear logical (and preferably fair) to the customer. Such justification may take various forms, for example, first-class seats on an airline or the preferred starting time at a golf course. (See the Ethical Dilemma at the end of this chapter.)
2. *Forecasts of the use and duration of the use:* How many economy seats should be available? How much will customers pay for a room with an ocean view?
3. *Changes in demand:* This means managing the increased use as more capacity is sold. It also means dealing with issues that occur because the pricing structure may not seem logical and fair to all customers. Finally, it means managing new issues, such as overbooking because the forecast was not perfect.

Precise pricing through revenue management has substantial potential, and several firms sell software available to address the issue. These include NCR's *Teradata,* SPS, *DemandTec,* and Oracle with *Profit Logic*.

Summary

Sales and operations planning (S&OP) can be a strong vehicle for coordinating the functional areas of a firm as well as for communication with supply-chain partners. The output of S&OP is an *aggregate plan.* An aggregate plan provides both manufacturing and service firms the ability to respond to changing customer demands and produce with a winning strategy.

Aggregate schedules set levels of inventory, production, subcontracting, and employment over an intermediate time range, usually 3 to 18 months. This chapter describes two aggregate planning techniques: the popular graphical approach and the transportation method of linear programming.

The aggregate plan is an important responsibility of an operations manager and a key to efficient use of existing resources. It leads to the more detailed master production schedule, which becomes the basis for disaggregation, detail scheduling, and MRP systems.

Restaurants, airlines, and hotels are all service systems that employ aggregate plans. They also have an opportunity to implement revenue management.

Regardless of the industry or planning method, the S&OP process builds an aggregate plan that a firm can implement and suppliers endorse.

Key Terms

Sales and operations planning (S&OP) (p. 571)
Aggregate plan (p. 571)
Disaggregation (p. 573)
Master production schedule (p. 573)
Chase strategy (p. 575)
Level scheduling (p. 576)
Mixed strategy (p. 576)
Graphical techniques (p. 576)
Transportation method of linear programming (p. 581)
Revenue (or yield) management (p. 585)

Ethical Dilemma

Airline passengers today stand in numerous lines, are crowded into small seats on mostly full airplanes, and often spend time on taxiways because of air-traffic problems or lack of open gates. But what gripes travelers almost as much as these annoyances is finding out that the person sitting next to them paid a much lower fare than they did for their seat. This concept of *revenue management* results in ticket pricing that can range from free to thousands of dollars on the same plane. Figure 13.7 illustrates what passengers recently paid for various seats on an 11:35 A.M. flight from Minneapolis to Anaheim, California, on an Airbus A320.

Make the case for, and then against, this pricing system. Does the general public seem to accept revenue management? What would happen if you overheard the person in front of you in line getting a better room rate at a Hilton Hotel? How do customers manipulate the airline systems to get better fares?

Sales	Fare	Seats
First class	$817	1
Full fare	792	4
Corporate discount	491	5
21-day advance	273	20
Deep discounts	190	33
Frequent flyer program	0	7
Connections	—	53
Empty	—	27

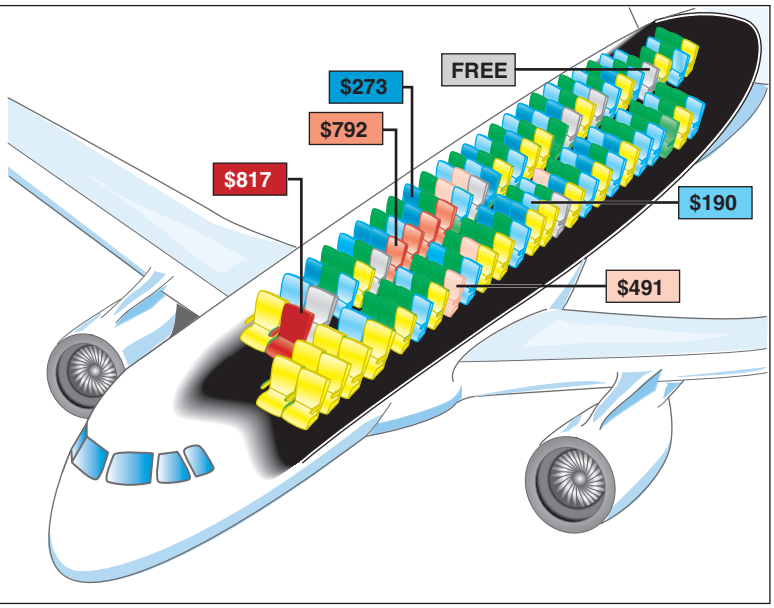


Figure 13.7

Revenue Management Seat Costs on a Typical Flight

Discussion Questions

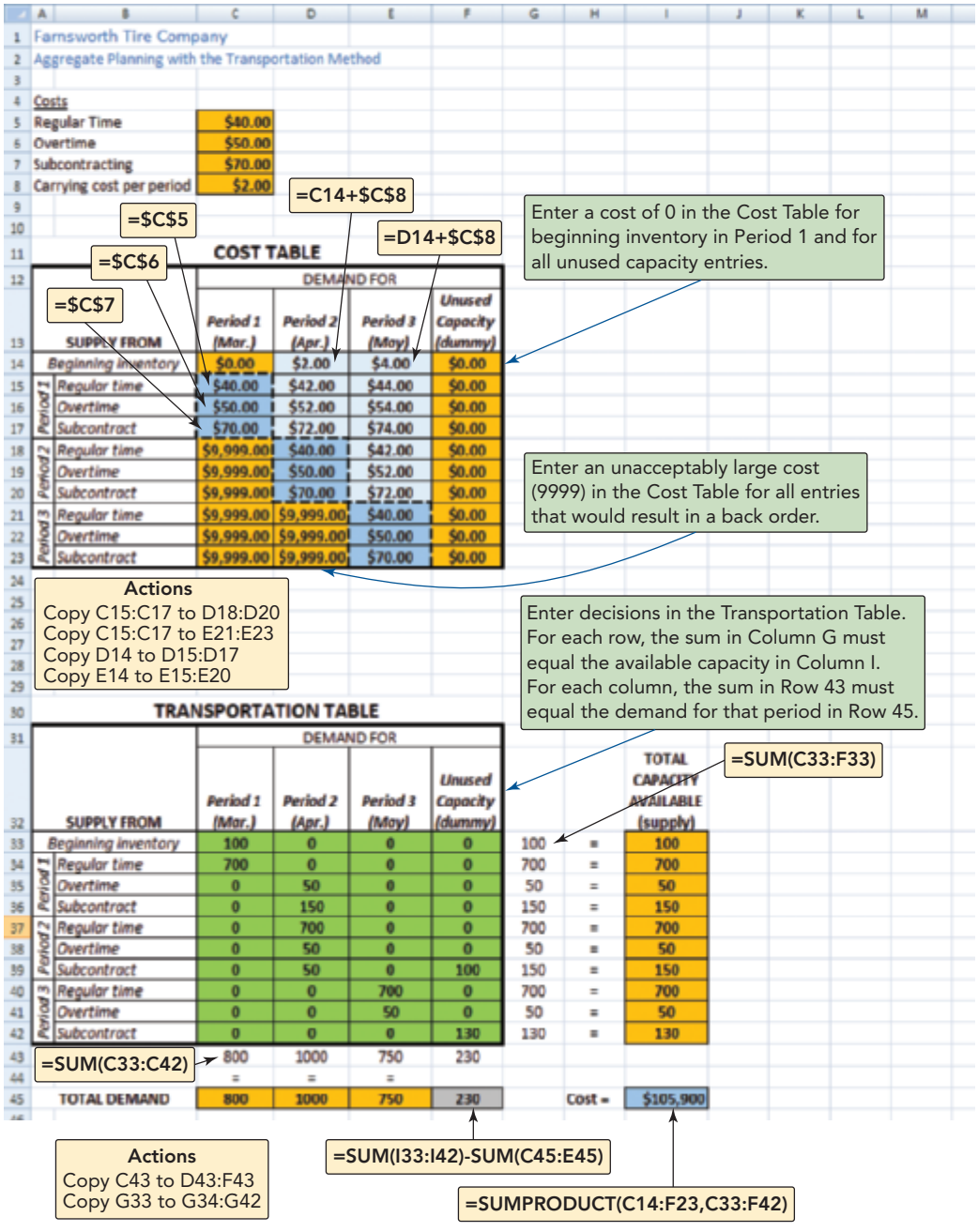
1. Define *sales* and *operations planning*.
2. Why are S&OP teams typically cross-functional?
3. Define *aggregate planning*.
4. Explain what the term disaggregation means when applied in a manufacturing environment. What is the output of this process?
5. List the strategic objectives of aggregate planning. Which one of these is most often addressed by the quantitative techniques of aggregate planning? Which one of these is generally the most important?
6. Define *chase strategy*.
7. Identify the two categories of aggregate planning strategies, and explain the difference between them.
8. Define *mixed strategy*. Why would a firm use a mixed strategy instead of a simple pure strategy?
9. What are the advantages and disadvantages of varying the size of the workforce to meet demand requirements each period?
10. List and briefly discuss four techniques used to control labor as part of aggregate planning in the service industry.
11. What is the relationship between the aggregate plan and the master production schedule?
12. Why are graphical aggregate planning methods useful?
13. What are major limitations of using the transportation method for aggregate planning?
14. What is revenue management? Provide examples of industries where revenue management is popular.

Using Software for Aggregate Planning

This section illustrates the use of Excel, Excel OM, and POM for Windows in aggregate planning.

CREATING YOUR OWN EXCEL SPREADSHEETS

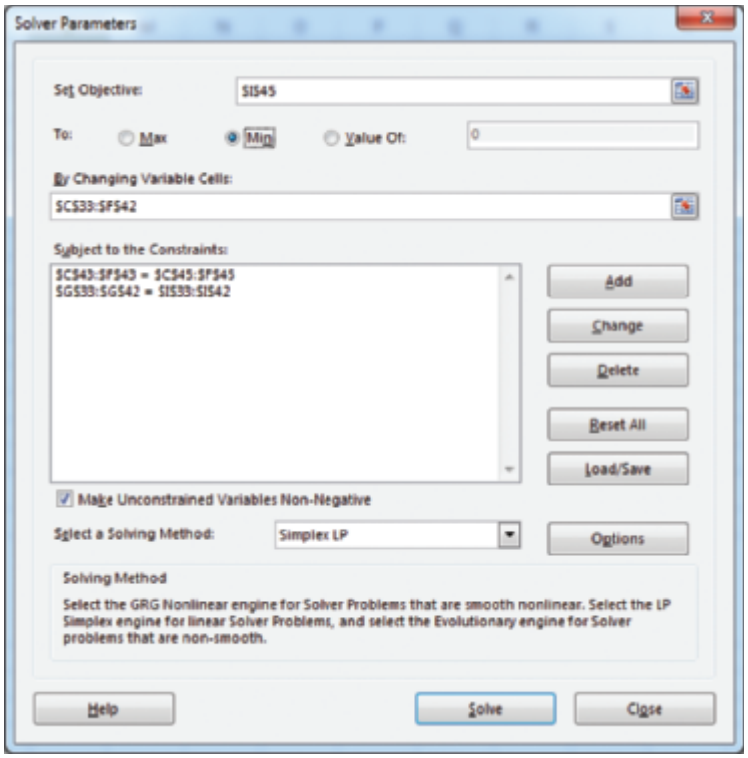
Program 13.1 illustrates how you can make an Excel model to solve Example 5, which uses the transportation method for aggregate planning.



Program **13.1**

Using Excel for Aggregate Planning Via the Transportation Method, with Data from Example 5

Excel comes with an Add-In called Solver that offers the ability to analyze linear programs such as the transportation problem. To ensure that Solver always loads when Excel is loaded, go to: **File→Options→Add-Ins**. Next to **Manage:** at the bottom, make sure that **Excel Add-ins** is selected, and click on the **<Go...>** button. Check **Solver Add-in**, and click **<OK>**. Once in Excel, the Solver dialog box will appear by clicking on: **Data→Analysis: Solver**. The following screen shot shows how to use Solver to find the optimal (very best) solution to Example 4. Click on **<Solve>**, and the solution will automatically appear in the Transportation Table, yielding a cost of $105,700.

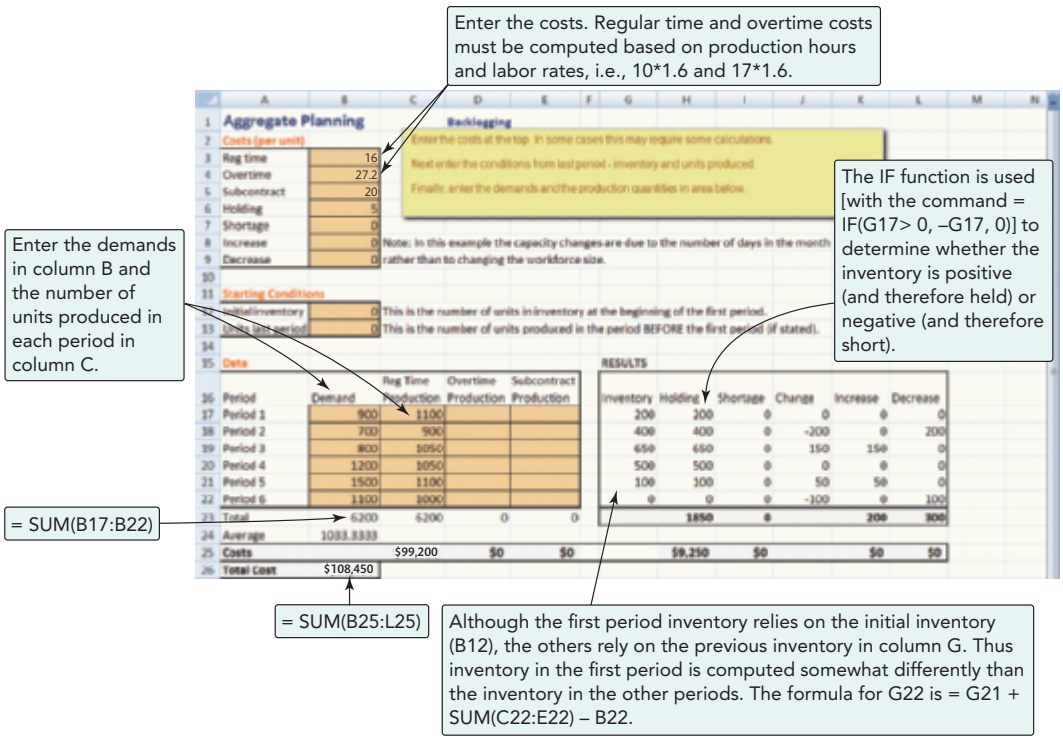


USING EXCEL OM

Excel OM's Aggregate Planning module is demonstrated in Program 13.2. Using data from Example 2, Program 13.2 provides input and some of the formulas used to compute the costs of regular time, overtime, subcontracting, holding, shortage, and increase or decrease in production. The user must provide the production plan for Excel OM to analyze.

Program **13.2**

Using Excel OM for Aggregate Planning, with Example 2 Data



USING POM FOR WINDOWS

The POM for Windows Aggregate Planning module performs aggregate or production planning for up to 90 time periods. Given a set of demands for future periods, you can try various plans to determine the lowest-cost plan based on holding, shortage, production, and changeover costs. Four methods are available for planning. More help is available on each after you choose the method. See Appendix IV for further details.

Solved Problems

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM 13.1

The roofing manufacturer described in Examples 1 to 4 of this chapter wishes to consider yet a fourth planning strategy (plan 4). This one maintains a constant workforce of eight people and uses overtime whenever necessary to meet demand. Use the information found in Table 13.3 on page 540. Again, assume beginning and ending inventories are equal to zero.

SOLUTION

Employ eight workers and use overtime when necessary. Note that carrying costs will be encountered in this plan.

MONTH	PRODUCTION DAYS	PRODUCTION AT 40 UNITS PER DAY	BEGINNING-OF-MONTH INVENTORY	FORECAST DEMAND THIS MONTH	OVERTIME PRODUCTION NEEDED	ENDING INVENTORY
Jan.	22	880	—	900	20 units	0 units
Feb.	18	720	0	700	0 units	20 units
Mar.	21	840	20	800	0 units	60 units
Apr.	21	840	60	1,200	300 units	0 units
May	22	880	0	1,500	620 units	0 units
June	20	800	0	1,100	300 units	0 units
					1,240 units	80 units

$$\text{Carrying cost totals} = 80 \text{ units} \times \$5/\text{unit/month} = \$400$$

Regular pay:

$$8 \text{ workers} \times \$80/\text{day} \times 124 \text{ days} = \$79{,}360$$

Overtime pay:
To produce 1,240 units at overtime rate requires $1{,}240 \times 1.6$ hours/unit $= 1{,}984$ hours.

$$\text{Overtime cost} = \$17/\text{hour} \times 1{,}984 \text{ hours} = \$33{,}728$$

Plan 4

COSTS (WORKFORCE OF 8 PLUS OVERTIME)		
Carrying cost	$ 400	(80 units carried × $5/unit)
Regular labor	79,360	(8 workers × $80/day × 124 days)
Overtime	33,728	(1,984 hours × $17/hour)
Hiring or firing	0	
Subcontracting	0	
Total costs	$113,488	

Plan 2, at $105,152, is still preferable.

SOLVED PROBLEM 13.2

A Dover, Delaware, plant has developed the accompanying supply, demand, cost, and inventory data. The firm has a constant workforce and meets all its demand. Allocate production capacity to satisfy demand at a minimum cost. What is the cost of this plan?

Demand Forecast

PERIOD	DEMAND (UNITS)
1	450
2	550
3	750

Supply Capacity Available (units)

PERIOD	REGULAR TIME	OVERTIME	SUBCONTRACT
1	300	50	200
2	400	50	200
3	450	50	200

Other data

Initial inventory	50 units
Regular-time cost per unit	$50
Overtime cost per unit	$65
Subcontract cost per unit	$80
Carrying cost per unit per period	$ 1
Back order cost per unit per period	$ 4

SOLUTION

SUPPLY FROM		DEMAND FOR: Period 1	Period 2	Period 3	Unused Capacity (dummy)	TOTAL CAPACITY AVAILABLE (supply)
Beginning inventory		0 50	1	2	0	50
Period 1	Regular time	50 300	51	52	0	300
	Overtime	65 50	66	67	0	50
	Subcontract	80 50	81	82	0 150	200
Period 2	Regular time	54	50 400	51	0	400
	Overtime	69	65 50	66	0	50
	Subcontract	84	80 100	81 50	0 50	200
Period 3	Regular time	58	54	50 450	0	450
	Overtime	73	69	65 50	0	50
	Subcontract	88	84	80 200	0	200
TOTAL DEMAND		450	550	750	200	1,950

Cost of plan:

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Period 1:}\quad & 50(\$0) + 300(\$50) + 50(\$65) + 50(\$80) = \$22{,}250\\
\text{Period 2:}\quad & 400(\$50) + 50(\$65) + 100(\$80) = \$31{,}250\\
\text{Period 3:}\quad & 50(\$81) + 450(\$50) + 50(\$65) + 200(\$80) = \$45{,}800^{*}\\
& \text{Total cost} \qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\quad \$99{,}300
\end{aligned}$$

*Includes 50 units of subcontract and carrying cost.

Problems

Note: PX means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel OM.

Problems 13.1–13.23 relate to Methods for Aggregate Planning

• **13.1** Prepare a graph of the monthly forecasts and average forecast demand for Garden Room Furniture Ltd., a manufacturer of outdoor furniture.

MONTH	PRODUCTION DAYS	DEMAND FORECAST
January	16	300
February	16	300
March	23	500
April	21	500
May	22	800
June	22	1000
July	21	1200
August	20	1500
September	20	900
October	20	500
November	16	300
December	16	300

•• **13.2** Develop another plan for the Mexican roofing manufacturer described in Examples 1 to 4 (pages 538–542) and Solved Problem 13.1 (page 554).

a) For this plan, plan 5, the firm wants to maintain a constant workforce of six, using subcontracting to meet remaining demand. Is this plan preferable?

b) The same roofing manufacturer in Examples 1 to 4 and Solved Problem 13.1 has yet a sixth plan. A constant workforce of seven is selected, with the remainder of demand filled by subcontracting.

c) Is this better than plans 1–5? PX

••• **13.3** The president of Hill Enterprises, Terri Hill, projects the firm's aggregate demand requirements over the next 8 months as follows:

Jan.	1,400	May	2,200
Feb.	1,600	June	2,200
Mar.	1,800	July	1,800
Apr.	1,800	Aug.	1,800

Her operations manager is considering a new plan, which begins in January with 200 units on hand. Stockout cost of lost sales is $100 per unit. Inventory holding cost is $20 per unit per month. Ignore any idle-time costs. The plan is called plan A.

Plan A: Vary the workforce level to execute a strategy that produces the quantity demanded in the *prior* month. The December demand and rate of production are both 1,600 units per month. The cost of hiring additional workers is $5,000 per 100 units. The cost of laying off workers is $7,500 per 100 units. Evaluate this plan. PX

Note: Both hiring and layoff costs are incurred in the month of the change. For example, going from 1,600 in January to 1,400 in February incurs a cost of layoff for 200 units in February.

•• 13.4 Using the information in Problem 13.3, develop plan B. Produce at a constant rate of 1,400 units per month, which will meet minimum demands. Then use subcontracting, with additional units at a premium price of $75 per unit. Evaluate this plan by computing the costs for January through August. PX

•• 13.5 Hill is now considering plan C: Keep a stable workforce by maintaining a constant production rate equal to the average requirements and allow varying inventory levels. Beginning inventory, stockout costs, and holding costs are provided in Problem 13.3.

Plot the demand with a graph that also shows average requirements. Conduct your analysis for January through August. PX

••• 13.6 Hill's operations manager (see Problems 13.3 through 13.5) is also considering two mixed strategies for January–August: Produce in overtime or subcontracting only when there is no inventory.

- *Plan D:* Keep the current workforce stable at producing 1,600 units per month. Permit a maximum of 20% overtime at an additional cost of $50 per unit. A warehouse now constrains the maximum allowable inventory on hand to 400 units or less.
- *Plan E:* Keep the current workforce, which is producing 1,600 units per month, and subcontract to meet the rest of the demand.

Evaluate plans D and E and make a recommendation. PX

Note: Do not produce in overtime if production or inventory are adequate to cover demand.

••• 13.7 Consuelo Chua, Inc., is a disk drive manufacturer in need of an aggregate plan for July through December. The company has gathered the following data:

COSTS	
Holding cost	$8/disk/month
Subcontracting	$80/disk
Regular-time labor	$12/hour
Overtime labor	$18/hour for hours above 8 hours/worker/day
Hiring cost	$40/worker
Layoff cost	$80/worker

DEMAND*	
July	400
Aug.	500
Sept.	550
Oct.	700
Nov.	800
Dec.	700

*No costs are incurred for unmet demand, but unmet demand (backorders) must be handled in the following period. If half or more of a worker is needed, round up.

OTHER DATA	
Current workforce (June)	8 people
Labor-hours/disk	4 hours
Workdays/month	20 days
Beginning inventory	150 disks**
No requirement for ending inventory	0 disks

**Note that there is no holding cost for June.

What will each of the two following strategies cost?

a) Vary the workforce so that production meets demand. Chua had eight workers on board in June.
b) Vary overtime only and use a constant workforce of eight. PX

•• 13.8 You manage a consulting firm down the street from Consuelo Chua, Inc., and to get your foot in the door, you have told Ms. Chua (see Problem 13.7) that you can do a better job at aggregate planning than her current staff. She said, "Fine. You do that, and you have a one year contract." You now have to make good on your boast using the data in Problem 13.7. You decide to hire 5 workers in August and 5 more in October. Your results?

••• 13.9 The S&OP team at Kansas Furniture, has received the following estimates of demand requirements:

July	Aug.	Sept.	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.
1,000	1,200	1,400	1,800	1,800	1,800

Stephanie Klein-Davis/The Roanoke Times/AP Images

a) Assuming one-time stockout costs for lost sales of $100 per unit, inventory carrying costs of $25 per unit per month, and zero beginning and ending inventory, evaluate these two plans on an *incremental* cost basis:
   - *Plan A:* Produce at a steady rate (equal to minimum requirements) of 1,000 units per month and subcontract additional units at a $60 per unit premium cost.
   - *Plan B:* Vary the workforce, to produce the prior month's demand. The firm produced 1,300 units in June. The cost of hiring additional workers is $3,000 per 100 units produced. The cost of layoffs is $6,000 per 100 units cut back.

   Note: Both hiring and layoff costs are incurred in the month of the change, (i.e. going from production of 1,300 in July to 1,000 in August requires a layoff (and related costs) of 300 units in August, just as going from production of 1,000 in August to 1,200 in September requires hiring (and related costs) of 200 units in September). PX
b) Which plan is best and why?

••• 13.10 The S&OP team (see Problem 13.9) is considering two more mixed strategies. Using the data in Problem 13.9, compare Plans C and D with Plans A and B and make recommendations.

- *Plan C:* Increase the workforce to bring production from current levels of 1000 units up to a steady 1,200 units per month. Use overtime up to a maximum of 300 units per month. All remaining demand is to be met using a subcontractor. The cost of overtime is at a premium of $40 per unit.

- *Plan D:* Keep the current workforce at a level capable of producing 1,200 units for the months of July up to and including September. At the beginning of October hire additional workers to bring capacity up to 1800 units per month. Where necessary use inventory to absorb any additional stock.

••• **13.11** Deb Bishop Health and Beauty Products has developed a new shampoo, and you need to develop its aggregate schedule. The cost accounting department has supplied you the costs relevant to the aggregate plan, and the marketing department has provided a four-quarter forecast. All are shown as follows:

QUARTER	FORECAST
1	1,400
2	1,200
3	1,500
4	1,300

COSTS	
Previous quarter's output	1,500 units
Beginning inventory	0 units
Stockout cost for backorders	$50 per unit
Inventory holding cost	$10 per unit for every unit held at the end of the quarter
Hiring workers	$40 per unit
Layoff workers	$80 per unit
Unit cost	$30 per unit
Overtime	$15 extra per unit
Subcontracting	Not available

Your job is to develop an aggregate plan for the next four quarters.
a) First, try hiring and layoffs (to meet the forecast) as necessary.
b) Then try a plan that holds employment steady.
c) Which is the more economical plan for Deb Bishop Health and Beauty Products? PX

••• **13.12** Southeast Soda Pop, Inc., has a new fruit drink for which it has high hopes. John Mittenthal, the production planner, has assembled the following cost data and demand forecast:

QUARTER	FORECAST
1	1,800
2	1,100
3	1,600
4	900

COSTS/OTHER DATA
Previous quarter's output = 1,300 cases
Beginning inventory = 0 cases
Stockout cost = $150 per case
Inventory holding cost = $40 per case at end of quarter
Hiring employees = $40 per case
Terminating employees = $80 per case
Subcontracting cost = $60 per case
Unit cost on regular time = $30 per case
Overtime cost = $15 extra per case
Capacity on regular time = 1,800 cases per quarter

Africa Studio/Shutterstock

John's job is to develop an aggregate plan. The three initial options he wants to evaluate are:

- *Plan A:* a strategy that hires and fires personnel as necessary to meet the forecast.
- *Plan B:* a level strategy.
- *Plan C:* a level strategy that produces 1,200 cases per quarter and meets the forecast demand with inventory and subcontracting.

a) Which strategy is the lowest-cost plan?
b) If you are John's boss, the VP for operations, which plan do you implement and why? PX

•• **13.13** Ram Roy's firm has developed the following supply, demand, cost, and inventory data. Allocate production capacity to meet demand at a minimum cost using the transportation method. What is the cost? Assume that the initial inventory has no holding cost in the first period and backorders are not permitted.

Supply Available

PERIOD	REGULAR TIME	OVERTIME	SUBCONTRACT	DEMAND FORECAST
1	30	10	5	40
2	35	12	5	50
3	30	10	5	40

Initial inventory	20 units
Regular-time cost per unit	$100
Overtime cost per unit	$150
Subcontract cost per unit	$200
Carrying cost per unit per month	$ 4

PX

•• **13.14** Jerusalem Medical Ltd., an Israeli producer of portable kidney dialysis units and other medical products, develops a 4-month aggregate plan. Demand and capacity (in units) are forecast as follows:

CAPACITY SOURCE	MONTH 1	MONTH 2	MONTH 3	MONTH 4
Labor				
Regular time	235	255	290	300
Overtime	20	24	26	24
Subcontract	12	15	15	17
Demand	255	294	321	301

The cost of producing each dialysis unit is $985 on regular time, $1,310 on overtime, and $1,500 on a subcontract. Inventory carrying cost is $100 per unit per month. There is to be no beginning or ending inventory in stock and backorders are not permitted. Set up a production plan that minimizes cost using the transportation method. PX

•• **13.15** The production planning period for flat-screen monitors at Louisiana's Roa Electronics, Inc., is 4 months. Cost data are as follows:

Regular-time cost per monitor	$ 70
Overtime cost per monitor	$110
Subcontract cost per monitor	$120
Carrying cost per monitor per month	$ 4

For each of the next 4 months, capacity and demand for flat-screen monitors are as follows:

	PERIOD			
	MONTH 1	MONTH 2	MONTH 3[a]	MONTH 4
Demand	2,000	2,500	1,500	2,100
Capacity				
Regular time	1,500	1,600	750	1,600
Overtime	400	400	200	400
Subcontract	600	600	600	600

[a]Factory closes for 2 weeks of vacation.

CEO Mohan Roa expects to enter the planning period with 500 monitors in stock. Back ordering is not permitted (meaning, for example, that monitors produced in the second month cannot be used to cover first month's demand). Develop a production plan that minimizes costs using the transportation method. PX

•• **13.16** A large St. Louis feed mill, Robert Orwig Processing, prepares its 6-month aggregate plan by forecasting demand for 50-pound bags of cattle feed as follows: January, 1,000 bags; February, 1,200; March, 1,250; April, 1,450; May, 1,400; and June, 1,400. The feed mill plans to begin the new year with no inventory left over from the previous year, and backorders are not permitted. It projects that capacity (during regular hours) for producing bags of feed will remain constant at 800 until the end of April, and then increase to 1,100 bags per month when a planned expansion is completed on May 1. Overtime capacity is set at 300 bags per month until the expansion, at which time it will increase to 400 bags per month. A friendly competitor in Sioux City, Iowa, is also available as a backup source to meet demand—but can provide only 500 bags total during the 6-month period. Develop a 6-month production plan for the feed mill using the transportation method.

Cost data are as follows:

Regular-time cost per bag (until April 30)	$12.00
Regular-time cost per bag (after May 1)	$11.00
Overtime cost per bag (during entire period)	$16.00
Cost of outside purchase per bag	$18.50
Carrying cost per bag per month	$ 1.00

PX

•• **13.17** Yu Amy Xia has developed a specialized airtight vacuum bag to extend the freshness of seafood shipped to restaurants. She has put together the following demand cost data:

QUARTER	FORECAST (UNITS)	REGULAR TIME	OVERTIME	SUB-CONTRACT
1	500	400	80	100
2	750	400	80	100
3	900	800	160	100
4	450	400	80	100

Initial inventory = 250 units
Regular time cost = $1.00/unit
Overtime cost = $1.50/unit
Subcontracting cost = $2.00/unit
Carrying cost = $0.20/unit/quarter
Back order cost = $0.50/unit/quarter

Yu decides that the initial inventory of 250 units will incur the 20¢/unit cost from each prior quarter (unlike the situation in most other companies, where a 0 unit cost is assigned).

a) Find the optimal plan using the transportation method.
b) What is the cost of the plan?
c) Does any regular time capacity go unused? If so, how much in which periods?
b) What is the extent of backordering in units and dollars? PX

••• **13.18** José Martinez of El Paso has developed a polished stainless steel tortilla machine that makes it a "showpiece" for display in Mexican restaurants. He needs to develop a 5-month aggregate plan. His forecast of capacity and demand follows:

	MONTH				
	1	2	3	4	5
Demand	150	160	130	200	210
Capacity					
Regular	150	150	150	150	150
Overtime	20	20	10	10	10

Subcontracting: 100 units available over the 5-month period
Beginning inventory: 0 units
Ending inventory required: 20 units

COSTS	
Regular-time cost per unit	$100
Overtime cost per unit	$125
Subcontract cost per unit	$135
Inventory holding cost per unit per month	$ 3

Assume that backorders are not permitted. Using the transportation method, what is the total cost of the optimal plan? PX

•••• **13.19** Flanagan Fit outs Ltd., is a family run business that manufacturers, installs and services retail storage solutions in Ireland, the UK and mainland Europe. The next bi annual aggregate plan for their products including demand and capacity (in units) is forecast as follows:

CAPACITY SOURCE (UNITS)	JAN.	FEB.	MAR.	APR.	MAY	JUNE
Regular time	250	280	310	350	315	300
Overtime	50	60	40	50	40	55
Subcontract	10	40	10	20	20	50
Demand	300	350	360	400	380	400

Regular production is at a cost of $600 per unit, $900 for overtime, and $1200 when manufacturing needs to be sub contracted. Inventory carrying costs run at $75 per unit per month. Currently, there is no beginning or ending inventory in stock. Backorders up to a maximum of 10 units is permitted at a cost of $200 per unit.

Set up a production plan that minimizes cost by using regular production, overtime and subcontracting to meet demand each month. If demand cannot be met add it to backorders and complete the order in subsequent months. What is the cost of this plan?

c) Recalculate the above production plan where regular production is set at the same quantity, 300 units per month, and overtime production is set at 50 units per month. This leads to a reduction in costs where regular production is no $500 per unit and overtime is $800 per unit. If demand cannot be met by a combination of regular production, overtime and subcontracting there is no cost assigned to shortages and they will not be filled. Does this improve the cost of plan a?

Additional problems **13.20–13.23** *are available in* MyOMLab.

Problems 13.24–13.25 relate to Aggregate Planning in Services

••• **13.24** Rodgers, Wallace and Moyles Ltd is a Dublin based architecture practice setup and run by three architects. Each of them works on average 156 hours per month for a rate of $3120 per month. When additional work needs to be done overtime is paid at a rate of $40 per hour. In line with employment legislation none of the architects work more than 220 hours during any given month. Regardless of billable hours each architect is paid the base monthly salary of $3120. Demand for the second half of the year is forecasted as follows:

MONTH	ESTIMATE OF BILLABLE HOURS
Jul.	550
Aug.	500
Sept.	800
Oct.	900
Nov.	600
Dec.	700

Together the partners have decided to consider employing an additional architect to help deal with the extra demand. Any new architect will receive the same salary as the other architects in the practice.

Using the information above answer the following:

a) Develop an aggregate plan for the 6 month period. If demand cannot be met by a combination of regular working hours and overtime the work is turned away by the practice.
b) Determine the cost of using overtime and an additional architect to meet demand.
c) Recommend whether the practice should stay as it is with 3 architects.

•• **13.25** Refer to the architectural practice in Problem 13.24. When planning for the second half of the year the practice estimates the billable hours will increase by 3% in each of the 6 months. A decision is made to hire a fourth architect. The same regular time, and overtime costs will apply.

a) Develop a new aggregate plan for the scenario described above.
b) Briefly comment on the plan and whether or not they should go ahead with the hiring of a fourth architect to the practice.

Problem 13.26 relates to Revenue Management

•• **13.26** Hotel Galway is a 50 room Boutique hotel in a popular city break destination in Ireland. Until recently the hotel has priced each room at $120 for bed and breakfast. On average 40 rooms are occupied every weekend. The variable cost of each occupied room is $30. Following an internal review management has decided to try a revenue management approach, with rooms priced at $90 for bookings up to one week early and $180 for bookings within a week of their stay. It is estimated the hotel will sell 28 rooms at the lower price and 14 at the higher price. Variable costs will not change. Recommend which approach is the most feasible.

CASE STUDIES

Andrew-Carter, Inc.

Andrew-Carter, Inc. (A-C), is a major Canadian producer and distributor of outdoor lighting fixtures. Its products are distributed throughout South and North America and have been in high demand for several years. The company operates three plants to manufacture fixtures and distribute them to five distribution centers (warehouses).

During the present global slowdown, A-C has seen a major drop in demand for its products, largely because the housing market has declined. Based on the forecast of interest rates, the head of operations feels that demand for housing and thus for A-C's products will remain depressed for the foreseeable future. A-C is considering closing one of its plants, as it is now operating with a forecast excess capacity of 34,000 units per week. The forecast weekly demands for the coming year are as follows:

Warehouse 1	9,000 units
Warehouse 2	13,000
Warehouse 3	11,000
Warehouse 4	15,000
Warehouse 5	8,000

Plant capacities, in units per week, are as follows:

Plant 1, regular time	27,000 units
Plant 1, on overtime	7,000
Plant 2, regular time	20,000
Plant 2, on overtime	5,000
Plant 3, regular time	25,000
Plant 3, on overtime	6,000

If A-C shuts down any plants, its weekly costs will change, because fixed costs will be lower for a nonoperating plant. Table 13.9 shows production costs at each plant, both variable at regular time and overtime, and fixed when operating and shut down. Table 13.10 shows distribution costs from each plant to each distribution center.

Discussion Questions

1. Evaluate the various configurations of operating and closed plants that will meet weekly demand. Determine which configuration minimizes total costs.
2. Discuss the implications of closing a plant.

TABLE 13.9 Andrew-Carter, Inc., Variable Costs and Fixed Production Costs per Week

		FIXED COST PER WEEK	
PLANT	VARIABLE COST (PER UNIT)	OPERATING	NOT OPERATING
1, regular time	$2.80	$14,000	$6,000
1, overtime	3.52	——	——
2, regular time	2.78	12,000	5,000
2, overtime	3.48	——	——
3, regular time	2.72	15,000	7,500
3, overtime	3.42	——	——

TABLE 13.10 Andrew-Carter, Inc., Distribution Costs per Unit

	TO DISTRIBUTION CENTERS				
FROM PLANTS	W1	W2	W3	W4	W5
1	$.50	$.44	$.49	$.46	$.56
2	.40	.52	.50	.56	.57
3	.56	.53	.51	.54	.35

Source: Reprinted by permission of Professor Michael Ballot, University of the Pacific, Stockton, CA. Copyright © by Michael Ballot.

Using Revenue Management to Set Orlando Magic Ticket Prices

Video Case

Revenue management was once the exclusive domain of the airline industry. But it has since spread its wings into the hotel business, auto rentals, and now even professional sports, with the San Francisco Giants, Boston Celtics, and Orlando Magic as leaders in introducing dynamic pricing into their ticketing systems. Dynamic pricing means looking at unsold tickets for every single game, every day, to see if the current ticket price for a particular seat needs to be lowered (because of slow demand) or raised (because of higher-than-expected demand).

Pricing can be impacted by something as simple as bad weather or by whether the team coming to play in the arena is on a winning streak or has just traded for a new superstar player. For example, a few years ago, a basketball star was traded in midseason to the Denver Nuggets; this resulted in an immediate runup in unsold ticket prices for the teams the Nuggets were facing on the road. Had the Nuggets been visiting the Orlando Magic 2 weeks after the trade and the Magic not raised prices, they would have been "leaving money on the table" (as shown in Figure 13.5).

As the Magic became more proficient in revenue management, they evolved from (l) setting the price for each seat at the start of the season and never changing it; to (2) setting the prices for each seat at season onset, based on the popularity of the opponent, the day of the week, and the time of season (see the Video Case in Chapter 4)—but keeping the prices frozen once the season began (see Table 13.11); to (3) pricing tickets based on projected demand, but adjusting them frequently to match market demand as the season progressed.

To track market demand, the Magic use listed prices on Stub Hub and other online ticket exchange services. The key is to sell out all 18,500 seats every home game, keeping the pressure on Anthony Perez, the director of business strategy, and Chris Dorso, the Magic's vice president of sales.

Perez and Dorso use every tool available to collect information on demand, including counting unique page views at the Ticketmaster Web site. If, for example, there are 5,000 page views for the Miami Heat game near Thanksgiving, it indicates enough demand that prices of unsold seats can be notched up. If there are only 150 Ticketmaster views for the Utah Jazz game 3 days later, there may not be sufficient information to make any changes yet.

TABLE 13.11 An Example of Variable Pricing for a $68 Terrace V seat in Zone 103

OPPONENT POPULARITY RATING	NUMBER OF GAMES IN THIS CATEGORY	PRICE
Tier I	3	$187
Tier II	3	$170
Tier III	4	$ 85
Tier IV	6	$ 75
Tier V	14	$ 60
Tier VI	9	$ 44
Tier VII	6	$ 40
Average		$ 68

With a database of 650,000, the Magic can use e-mail blasts to react quickly right up to game day. The team may discount seat prices, offer other perks, or just point out that prime seats are still available for a game against an exciting opponent.

Discussion Questions*

1. After researching revenue (yield) management in airlines, describe how the Magic system differs from that of American or other air carriers.
2. The Magic used its original pricing systems of several years ago and set the price for a Terrace V, Zone 103 seat at $68 per game. There were 230 such seats *not* purchased as part of season ticket packages and thus available to the public. If the team switched to the 7-price dynamic system (illustrated in Table 13.11), how would the profit-contribution for the 45-game season change? (Note that the 45-game season includes 4 preseason games.)
3. What are some concerns the team needs to consider when using dynamic pricing with frequent changes in price?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before addressing these questions.

- **Additional Case Studies:** Visit MyOMLab for these free case studies:
  Cornwell Glass: Involves setting a production schedule for an auto glass producer.
  Southwestern University: (G) Requires developing an aggregate plan for a university police department.

Endnote

1. R. Oberwetter, "Revenue Management," *OR/MS Today* (June 2001): 41–44.

Chapter 13 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
THE PLANNING PROCESS (pp. 570–571)	■ *Long-range plans* develop policies and strategies related to location, capacity, products and process, supply chain, research, and capital investment. ■ *Intermediate planning* develops plans that match production to demand. ■ *Short-run planning* translates intermediate plans into weekly, daily, and hourly schedules.	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4
SALES AND OPERATIONS PLANNING (pp. 571–572)	■ **Sales and operation planning** (S&OP)—Balances resources and forecasted demand, and aligns the organization's competing demands, from supply chain to final customer, while linking strategic planning with operations over all planning horizons. ■ **Aggregate planning**—An approach to determine the quantity and timing of production for the intermediate future (usually 3 to 18 months ahead). Four things are needed for aggregate planning: 1. A logical unit for measuring sales and output 2. A forecast of demand for a reasonable intermediate planning period in these aggregate terms 3. A method for determining the relevant costs 4. A model that combines forecasts and costs so that scheduling decisions can be made for the planning period	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4
THE NATURE OF AGGREGATE PLANNING (pp. 572–573)	Usually, *the objective of aggregate planning is to meet forecasted demand while minimizing cost over the planning period.* An aggregate plan looks at production *in the aggregate* (a family of products), not as a product-by-product breakdown. ■ **Disaggregation**—The process of breaking an aggregate plan into greater detail. ■ **Master production schedule**—A timetable that specifies what is to be made and when.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4
AGGREGATE PLANNING STRATEGIES (pp. 573–576)	The basic aggregate planning capacity (production) options are: ■ *Changing inventory levels* ■ *Varying workforce size by hiring or layoffs* ■ *Varying production rates through overtime or idle time* ■ *Subcontracting* ■ *Using part-time workers* The basic aggregate planning demand options are: ■ *Influencing demand* ■ *Back ordering during high-demand periods* ■ *Counterseasonal product and service mixing* ■ **Chase strategy**—A planning strategy that sets production equal to forecast demand. Many service organizations favor the chase strategy because the inventory option is difficult or impossible to adopt. ■ **Level scheduling**—Maintaining a constant output rate, production rate, or workforce level over the planning horizon. Level scheduling works well when demand is reasonably stable. ■ **Mixed strategy**—A planning strategy that uses two or more controllable variables to set a feasible production plan.	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4
METHODS FOR AGGREGATE PLANNING (pp. 576–583)	■ **Graphical techniques**—Aggregate planning techniques that work with a few variables at a time to allow planners to compare projected demand with existing capacity. Graphical techniques are trial-and-error approaches that do not guarantee an optimal production plan, but they require only limited computations. A *cumulative* graph displays visually how the forecast deviates from the average requirements. ■ **Transportation method of linear programming**—A way of solving for the optimal solution to an aggregate planning problem. The transportation method of linear programming is flexible in that it can specify regular and overtime production in each time period, the number of units to be subcontracted, extra shifts, and the inventory carryover from period to period. Transportation problems require that supply equals demand, so when it does not, a dummy column called "unused capacity" may be added. Costs of not using capacity are zero.	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.4 Problems: 13.2–13.23 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problems: 13.1, 13.2 **ACTIVE MODEL 13.1**

Chapter 13 *Rapid* Review *continued*

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
	Demand requirements are shown in the bottom row of a transportation table. Total capacity available (supply) is shown in the far right column. In general, to complete a transportation table, allocate as much production as you can to a cell with the smallest cost, without exceeding the unused capacity in that row or demand in that column. If there is still some demand left in that row, allocate as much as you can to the next-lowest-cost cell. You then repeat this process for periods 2 and 3 (and beyond, if necessary). When you are finished, the sum of all your entries in a row must equal total row capacity, and the sum of all entries in a column must equal the demand for that period. The transportation method does not work when nonlinear or negative factors are introduced.	
AGGREGATE PLANNING IN SERVICES (pp. 583–585)	Successful techniques for controlling the cost of labor in service firms include: 1. Accurate scheduling of labor-hours to ensure quick response to customer demand. 2. An on-call labor resource that can be added or deleted to meet unexpected demand. 3. Flexibility of individual worker skills that permits reallocation of available labor. 4. Flexibility in rate of output or hours of work to meet changing demand.	Concept Questions: 6.1–6.4 Problems: 13.24–13.25
REVENUE MANAGEMENT (pp. 585–588)	■ **Revenue** (or **yield**) **management**—Capacity decisions that determine the allocation of resources to maximize revenue. Organizations that have *perishable inventory*, such as airlines, hotels, car rental agencies, and cruise lines, have the following shared characteristics that make revenue management of interest: 1. Service or product can be sold in advance of consumption 2. Fluctuating demand 3. Relatively fixed resource (capacity) 4. Segmentable demand 5. Low variable costs and high fixed costs To make revenue management work, the company needs to manage three issues: 1. *Multiple pricing structures.* 2. *Forecasts of the use and duration of the use.* 3. *Changes in demand.*	Concept Questions: 7.1–7.4 Problem: 13.26 **VIDEO 13.1** Using Revenue Management to Set Orlando Magic Ticket Prices

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 13.1 The outputs from an S&OP process are:
- **a)** long-run plans.
- **b)** detail schedules.
- **c)** aggregate plans.
- **d)** revenue management plans.
- **e)** short-run plans.

LO 13.2 In order to generate a useful aggregate plan a number of features are required. This should include:
- **a)** A logical unit for measuring sales and output.
- **b)** A demand forecast for the intermediate planning period.
- **c)** A method to calculate the relevant costs.
- **d)** A model that combines forecasts and cost so scheduling decisions can be made for the planning period.
- **e)** All of the above.

LO 13.3 Aggregate planning deals with a number of constraints. These typically are:
- **a)** job assignments, job ordering, dispatching, and overtime help.
- **b)** part-time help, weekly scheduling, and SKU production scheduling.
- **c)** subcontracting, employment levels, inventory levels, and capacity.
- **d)** capital investment, expansion or contracting capacity, and R&D.
- **e)** facility location, production budgeting, overtime, and R&D.

LO 13.4 A number of techniques may be used to develop aggregate plans. This includes graphical techniques which:
- **a)** Are complex and difficult to use.
- **b)** Work with a few variables at a time to compare projected demand with existing capacity.
- **c)** Guarantee an optimal production plan.
- **d)** Require significant computations and therefore must be performed by specialist staff.

LO 13.5 When might a dummy column be added to a transportation table?
- **a)** When supply does not equal demand
- **b)** When overtime is greater than regular time
- **c)** When subcontracting is greater than regular time
- **d)** When subcontracting is greater than regular time plus overtime
- **e)** When production needs to spill over into a new period

LO 13.6 The aim of revenue management is to:
- **a)** Charge all customers the same prices for products.
- **b)** Allocate resources to customer at prices that minimise revenue.
- **c)** Increase product price when demand decreases.
- **d)** Treat product demand and product pricing separately.
- **e)** Increase product price when demand increases.

Answers: LO 13.1. c; LO 13.2. e; LO 13.3. c; LO 13.4. b; LO 13.5. a; LO 13.6. e.

Material Requirements Planning (MRP) and ERP

CHAPTER 14

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *Wheeled Coach*

- Dependent Demand *604*
- Dependent Inventory Model Requirements *604*
- MRP Structure *609*
- MRP Management *613*
- Lot-Sizing Techniques *614*
- Extensions of MRP *618*
- MRP in Services *621*
- Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) *622*

Alaska Airlines

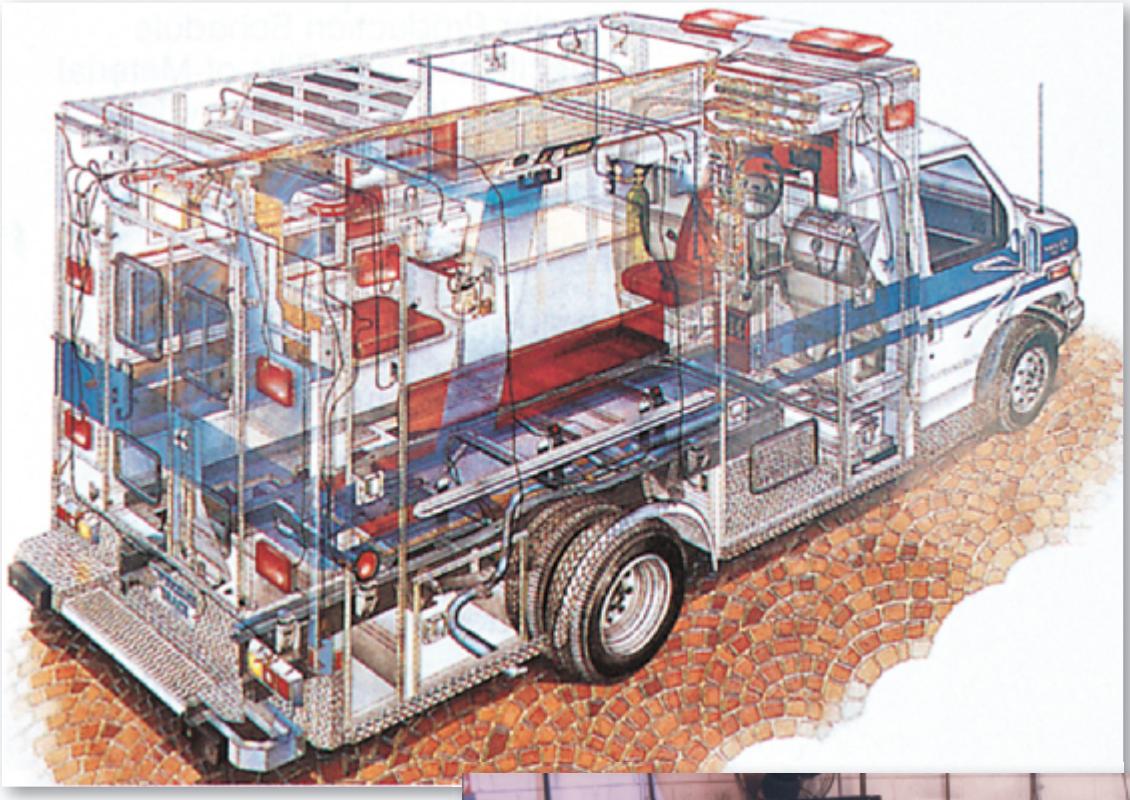
10 OM STRATEGY DECISIONS

- Design of Goods and Services
- Managing Quality
- Process Strategy
- Location Strategies
- Layout Strategies
- Human Resources
- Supply-Chain Management
- *Inventory Management*
  - Independent Demand (Ch. 12)
  - ***Dependent Demand (Ch. 14)***
  - Lean Operations (Ch. 16)
- Scheduling
- Maintenance

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
Wheeled Coach

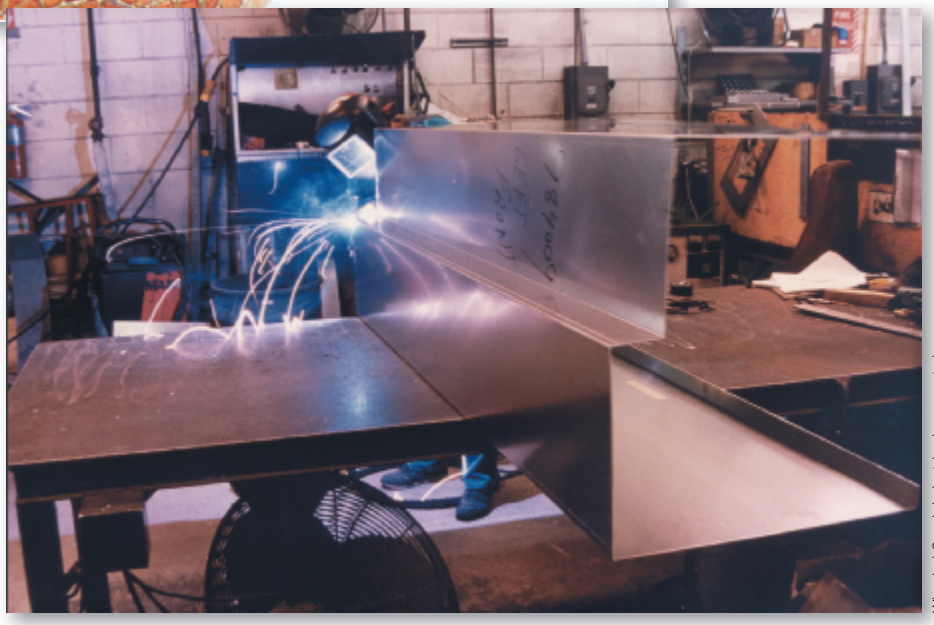
MRP Provides a Competitive Advantage for Wheeled Coach

Wheeled Coach, headquartered in Winter Park, Florida, is the largest manufacturer of ambulances in the world. The $200 million firm is an international competitor that sells more than 25% of its vehicles to markets outside the U.S. Twelve major ambulance designs are produced on assembly lines (i.e., a repetitive process) at the Florida plant, using 18,000 different



Wheeled Coach Industries Incorporated

This cutaway of one ambulance interior indicates the complexity of the product, which for some rural locations may be the equivalent of a hospital emergency room in miniature. To complicate production, virtually every ambulance is custom ordered. This customization necessitates precise orders, excellent bills of materials, exceptional inventory control from supplier to assembly, and an MRP system that works.



Wheeled Coach Industries Incorporated

Wheeled Coach uses work cells to feed the assembly line. It maintains a complete carpentry shop (to provide interior cabinetry), a paint shop (to prepare, paint, and detail each vehicle), an electrical shop (to provide for the complex electronics in a modern ambulance), an upholstery shop (to make interior seats and benches), and as shown here, a metal fabrication shop (to construct the shell of the ambulance).

inventory items, of which 6,000 are manufactured and 12,000 purchased. Most of the product line is custom designed and assembled to meet the specific and often unique requirements demanded by the ambulance's application and customer preferences.

This variety of products and the nature of the process demand good material requirements planning (MRP). Effective use of an MRP system requires accurate bills of material and inventory records. The Wheeled Coach system provides daily updates and has reduced inventory by more than 30% in just two years.

Wheeled Coach insists that four key tasks be performed properly. First, the material plan must meet both the requirements of the master schedule and the capabilities of the production facility. Second, the plan must be executed as designed. Third, inventory investment must be minimized through effective "time-phased" material deliveries, consignment inventories, and a constant review of purchase methods. Finally, excellent record integrity must be maintained. Record accuracy is recognized as a fundamental ingredient of Wheeled Coach's successful MRP program. Its cycle counters are charged with material audits that not only correct errors but also investigate and correct problems.

Wheeled Coach Industries uses MRP as the catalyst for low inventory, high quality, tight schedules, and accurate records. Wheeled Coach has found competitive advantage via MRP.

Wheeled Coach Industries Incorporated

On five parallel lines, ambulances move forward each day to the next workstation. The MRP system makes certain that just the materials needed at each station arrive overnight for assembly the next day.

Wheeled Coach Industries Incorporated

Here an employee is installing the wiring for an ambulance. There are an average of 15 miles of wire in a Wheeled Coach vehicle. This compares to 17 miles of wire in a sophisticated F-16 fighter jet.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO 14.1 ***Develop*** a product structure 607
LO 14.2 ***Build*** a gross requirements plan 610
LO 14.3 ***Build*** a net requirements plan 611
LO 14.4 ***Determine*** lot sizes for lot-for-lot, EOQ, and POQ 615
LO 14.5 ***Describe*** MRP II 618
LO 14.6 ***Describe*** closed-loop MRP 620
LO 14.7 ***Describe*** ERP 622

Dependent Demand

STUDENT TIP "Dependent demand" means the demand for one item is related to the demand for another item.

Wheeled Coach, the subject of the *Global Company Profile*, and many other firms have found important benefits in material requirements planning (MRP). These benefits include (1) better response to customer orders as the result of improved adherence to schedules, (2) faster response to market changes, (3) improved utilization of facilities and labor, and (4) reduced inventory levels. Better response to customer orders and to the market wins orders and market share. Better utilization of facilities and labor yields higher productivity and return on investment. Less inventory frees up capital and floor space for other uses. These benefits are the result of a strategic decision to use a *dependent* inventory scheduling system. Demand for every component of an ambulance is dependent.

Demand for items is dependent when the relationship between the items can be determined. Therefore, once management receives an order or makes a forecast for the final product, quantities for all components can be computed. All components are dependent items. The Boeing Aircraft operations manager who schedules production of one plane per week, for example, knows the requirements down to the last rivet. For any product, all components of that product are dependent demand items. *More generally, for any product for which a schedule can be established, dependent techniques should be used.*

When the requirements of MRP are met, dependent models are preferable to the models for independent demand (EOQ) described in Chapter 12.[1] Dependent models are better not only for manufacturers and distributors but also for a wide variety of firms from restaurants to hospitals. The dependent technique used in a production environment is called **material requirements planning (MRP)**.

Material requirements planning (MRP) A dependent demand technique that uses a bill-of-material, inventory, expected receipts, and a master production schedule to determine material requirements.

Because MRP provides such a clean structure for dependent demand, it has evolved as the basis for Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP). ERP is an information system for identifying and planning the enterprise-wide resources needed to take, make, ship, and account for customer orders. We will discuss ERP in the latter part of this chapter.

Dependent Inventory Model Requirements

Effective use of dependent inventory models requires that the operations manager know the following:

1. Master production schedule (what is to be made and when)
2. Specifications or bill of material (materials and parts required to make the product)
3. Inventory availability (what is in stock)
4. Purchase orders outstanding (what is on order, also called expected receipts)
5. Lead times (how long it takes to get various components)

We now discuss each of these requirements in the context of material requirements planning.

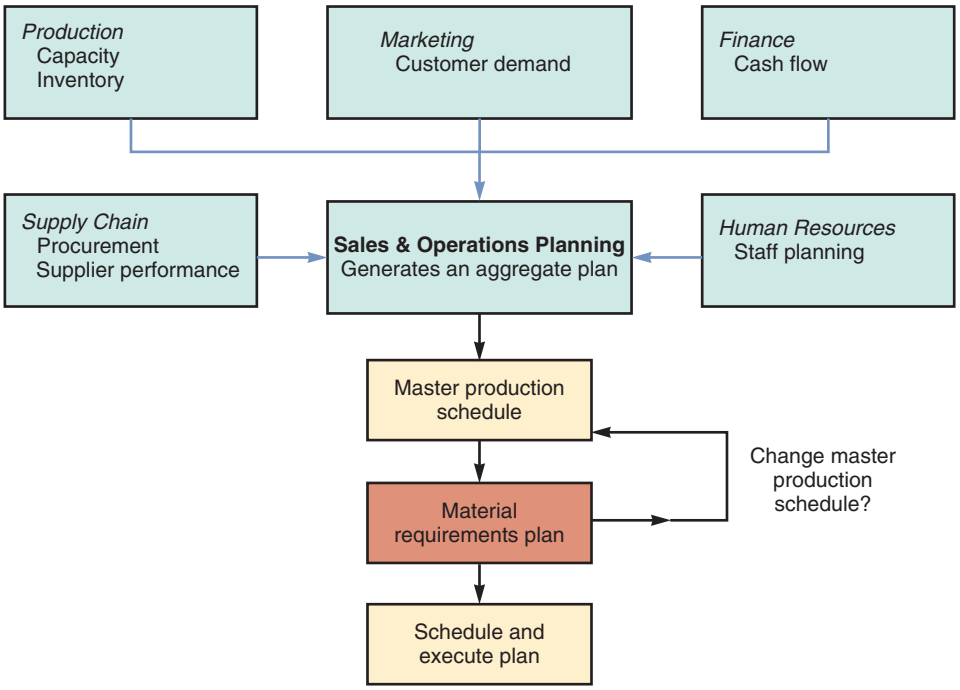


Figure 14.1
The Planning Process

Master Production Schedule

A **master production schedule (MPS)** specifies what is to be made (e.g., the number of finished products or items) and when. The schedule must be in accordance with an aggregate plan. The aggregate plan sets the overall level of output in broad terms (e.g., product families, standard hours, or dollar volume). The plan, usually developed by the sales and operations planning team, includes a variety of inputs, including financial data, customer demand, engineering capabilities, labor availability, inventory fluctuations, supplier performance, and other considerations. Each of these inputs contributes in its own way to the aggregate plan, as shown in Figure 14.1.

Master production schedule (MPS)
A timetable that specifies what is to be made (usually finished goods) and when.

As the planning process moves from the aggregate plan to execution, each of the lower-level plans must be feasible. When one is not, feedback to the next higher level is required to make the necessary adjustment. One of the major strengths of MRP is its ability to determine precisely the feasibility of a schedule within aggregate capacity constraints. This planning process can yield excellent results. The aggregate plan sets the upper and lower bounds on the master production schedule.

The master production schedule tells us how to satisfy demand by specifying what items to make and when. It *disaggregates* the aggregate plan. While the *aggregate plan* (as discussed in Chapter 13) is established in gross terms such as families of products or tons of steel, the *master production schedule* is established in terms of specific products. Figure 14.2 shows the master production schedules for three stereo models that flow from the aggregate plan for a family of stereo amplifiers.

Aggregate Plan
(Shows the total quantity of amplifiers)

Months	January				February			
	1,500				1,200			

Master Production Schedule
(Shows the specific type and quantity of amplifier to be produced)

Weeks	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
240-watt amplifier	100		100		100		100	
150-watt amplifier		500		500		450		450
75-watt amplifier			300				100	

Figure 14.2
The Aggregate Plan Is the Basis for Development of the Master Production Schedule

TABLE 14.1 Master Production Schedule for Chef John's Buffalo Chicken Mac & Cheese

GROSS REQUIREMENTS FOR CHEF JOHN'S BUFFALO CHICKEN MAC & CHEESE										
Day	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	and so on
Quantity	450		200	350	525		235	375		

Managers must adhere to the schedule for a reasonable length of time (usually a major portion of the production cycle—the time it takes to produce a product). Many organizations establish a master production schedule and establish a policy of not changing ("fixing") the near-term portion of the plan. This near-term portion of the plan is then referred to as the "fixed," "firm," or "frozen" schedule. Wheeled Coach, the subject of the *Global Company Profile* for this chapter, fixes the last 14 days of its schedule. Only changes farther out, beyond the fixed schedule, are permitted. The master production schedule is a "rolling" production schedule. For example, a fixed 7-week plan has an additional week added to it as each week is completed, so a 7-week fixed schedule is maintained. Note that the master production schedule is a statement of *what is to be produced;* it is *not* a forecast. The master schedule can be expressed in the following terms:

- A *customer order* in a job shop (make-to-order) company (examples: print shops, machine shops, fine-dining restaurants)
- *Modules* in a repetitive (assemble-to-order or forecast) company (examples: Harley-Davidson motorcycles, TVs, fast-food restaurant)
- An *end item* in a continuous (stock-to-forecast) company (examples: steel, beer, bread, light bulbs, paper)

VIDEO 14.1
When 18,500 Orlando Magic Fans Come to Dinner

A master production schedule for Chef John's "Buffalo Chicken Mac & Cheese" at the Orlando Magic's Amway Center is shown in Table 14.1.

Bills of Material

Bill of material (BOM)
A listing of the components, their description, and the quantity of each required to make one unit of a product.

Defining what goes into a product may seem simple, but it can be difficult in practice. As we noted in Chapter 5, to aid this process, manufactured items are defined via a bill of material. A **bill of material (BOM)** is a list of quantities of components, ingredients, and materials required to make a product. Individual drawings describe not only physical dimensions but also any special processing as well as the raw material from which each part is made. Chef John's recipe for Buffalo Chicken Mac & Cheese specifies ingredients and quantities, just as Wheeled Coach has a full set of drawings for an ambulance. Both are bills of material (although we call one a recipe, and they do vary somewhat in scope).

VIDEO 14.2
MRP at Wheeled Coach Ambulances

One way a bill of material defines a product is by providing a product structure. Example 1 shows how to develop the product structure and "explode" it to reveal the requirements for each component. A bill of material for item A in Example 1 consists of items B and C. Items above any level are called *parents*; items below any level are called *components* or *children*. By convention, the top level in a BOM is the 0 level.

Example 1

DEVELOPING A PRODUCT STRUCTURE AND GROSS REQUIREMENTS

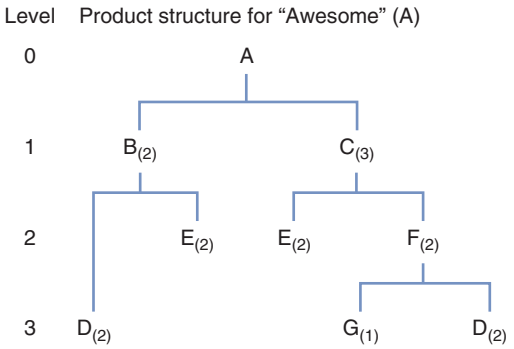
Speaker Kits, Inc., packages high-fidelity components for mail order. Components for the top-of-the-line speaker kit, "Awesome" (A), include 2 Bs and 3 Cs.

Each B consists of 2 Ds and 2 Es. Each of the Cs has 2 Fs and 2 Es. Each F includes 2 Ds and 1 G. It is an *awesome* sound system. (Most purchasers require hearing aids within 3 years, and at least one court case is pending because of structural damage to a men's dormitory.) As we can see, the demand for B, C, D, E, F, and G is completely dependent on the master production schedule for A—the Awesome speaker kits.

LO 14.1 *Develop a product structure*

APPROACH ▶ Given the preceding information, we construct a product structure and "explode" the requirements.

SOLUTION ▶ This structure has four levels: 0, 1, 2, and 3. There are four parents: A, B, C, and F. Each parent item has at least one level below it. Items B, C, D, E, F, and G are components because each item has at least one level above it. In this structure, B, C, and F are both parents and components. The number in parentheses indicates how many units of that particular item are needed to make the item immediately above it. Thus, $B_{(2)}$ means that it takes two units of B for every unit of A, and $F_{(2)}$ means that it takes two units of F for every unit of C.



Dragon_Fang/Shutterstock

Once we have developed the product structure, we can determine the number of units of each item required to satisfy demand for a new order of 50 Awesome speaker kits. We "explode" the requirements as shown:

Part B:	2 × number of As =	(2)(50) =	100
Part C:	3 × number of As =	(3)(50) =	150
Part D:	2 × number of Bs + 2 × number of Fs =	(2)(100) + (2)(300) =	800
Part E:	2 × number of Bs + 2 × number of Cs =	(2)(100) + (2)(150) =	500
Part F:	2 × number of Cs =	(2)(150) =	300
Part G:	1 × number of Fs =	(1)(300) =	300

INSIGHT ▶ We now have a visual picture of the Awesome speaker kit requirements and knowledge of the quantities required. Thus, for 50 units of A, we will need 100 units of B, 150 units of C, 800 units of D, 500 units of E, 300 units of F, and 300 units of G.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If there are 100 Fs in stock, how many Ds do you need? [Answer: 600.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 14.1–14.4, 14.5a,b, 14.13a,b, 14.17a,b (14.20a,b are available in MyOMLab)

Bills of material not only specify requirements but also are useful for costing, and they can serve as a list of items to be issued to production or assembly personnel. When bills of material are used in this way, they are usually called *pick lists*.

Modular Bills Bills of material may be organized around product modules (see Chapter 5). *Modules* are not final products to be sold, but are components that can be produced and assembled into units. They are often major components of the final product or product options. Bills of material for modules are called **modular bills**. Modular bills are convenient because production scheduling and production are often facilitated by organizing around relatively few modules rather than a multitude of final assemblies. For instance, a firm may make 138,000 different final products but may have only 40 modules that are mixed and matched to produce those 138,000 final products. The firm builds an aggregate production plan and prepares its master production schedule for the 40 modules, not the 138,000

Modular bills
Bills of material organized by major subassemblies or by product options.

configurations of the final product. This approach allows the MPS to be prepared for a reasonable number of items. The 40 modules can then be configured for specific orders at final assembly.

Planning Bills and Phantom Bills Two other special kinds of bills of material are planning bills and phantom bills. Planning bills (sometimes called "pseudo" bills, or super bills) are created in order to assign an artificial parent to the bill of material. Such bills are used (1) when we want to group subassemblies so the number of items to be scheduled is reduced and (2) when we want to issue "kits" to the production department. For instance, it may not be efficient to issue inexpensive items such as washers and cotter pins with each of numerous subassemblies, so we call this a *kit* and generate a planning bill. The planning bill specifies the *kit* to be issued. Consequently, a planning bill may also be known as kitted material, or kit. Phantom bills of material are bills of material for components, usually subassemblies, that exist only temporarily. These components go directly into another assembly and are never inventoried. Therefore, components of phantom bills of material are coded to receive special treatment; lead times are zero, and they are handled as an integral part of their parent item. An example is a transmission shaft with gears and bearings assembly that is placed directly into a transmission.

Planning bills (or kits)
Material groupings created in order to assign an artificial parent to a bill of material; also called "pseudo" bills.

Phantom bills of material
Bills of material for components, usually assemblies, that exist only temporarily; they are never inventoried.

Low-Level Coding Low-level coding of an item in a BOM is necessary when identical items exist at various levels in the BOM. Low-level coding means that the item is coded at the lowest level at which it occurs. For example, item D in Example 1 is coded at the lowest level at which it is used. Item D could be coded as part of B and occur at level 2. However, because D is also part of F, and F is level 2, item D becomes a level-3 item. Low-level coding is a convention to allow easy computing of the requirements of an item.

Low-level coding
A number that identifies items at the lowest level at which they occur.

Accurate Inventory Records

As we saw in Chapter 12, knowledge of what is in stock is the result of good inventory management. Good inventory management is an absolute necessity for an MRP system to work. If the firm does not exceed 99% record accuracy, then material requirements planning will not work.[2]

Purchase Orders Outstanding

Knowledge of outstanding orders exists as a by-product of well-managed purchasing and inventory-control departments. When purchase orders are executed, records of those orders and their scheduled delivery dates must be available to production personnel. Only with good purchasing data can managers prepare meaningful production plans and effectively execute an MRP system.

Lead time
In purchasing systems, the time between recognition of the need for an order and receiving it; in production systems, it is the order, wait, move, queue, setup, and run times for each component.

Lead Times for Components

Once managers determine when products are needed, they determine when to acquire them. The time required to acquire (that is, purchase, produce, or assemble) an item is known as lead time. Lead time for a manufactured item consists of *move*, *setup*, and *assembly* or *run times* for each component. For a purchased item, the lead time includes the time between recognition of need for an order and when it is available for production.

When the bill of material for Awesome speaker kits (As), in Example 1, is turned on its side and modified by adding lead times for each component (see Table 14.2), we then have a *time-phased product structure*. Time in this structure is shown on the horizontal axis of Figure 14.3 with item A due for completion in week 8. Each component is then offset to accommodate lead times.

TABLE 14.2
Lead Times for Awesome Speaker Kits (As)

COMPONENT	LEAD TIME
A	1 week
B	2 weeks
C	1 week
D	1 week
E	2 weeks
F	3 weeks
G	2 weeks

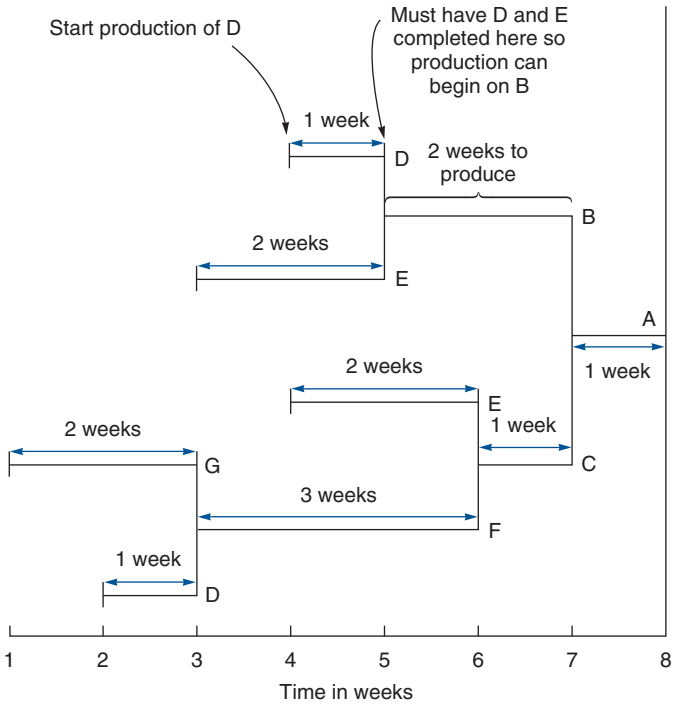


Figure 14.3
Time-Phased Product Structure

STUDENT TIP
This is a product structure on its side, with lead times.

MRP Structure

Although most MRP systems are computerized, the MRP procedure is straightforward, and we can illustrate a small one by hand. A master production schedule, a bill of material, inventory and purchase records, and lead times for each item are the ingredients of a material requirements planning system (see Figure 14.4).

Once these ingredients are available and accurate, the next step is to construct a gross material requirements plan. The **gross material requirements plan** is a schedule, as shown in Example 2. It combines a master production schedule (that requires one unit of A in week 8) and the time-phased schedule (Figure 14.3). It shows when an item must be ordered from suppliers if there is no inventory on hand or when the production of an item must be started to satisfy demand for the finished product by a particular date.

Gross material requirements plan
A schedule that shows the total demand for an item (prior to subtraction of on-hand inventory and scheduled receipts) and (1) when it must be ordered from suppliers, or (2) when production must be started to meet its demand by a particular date.

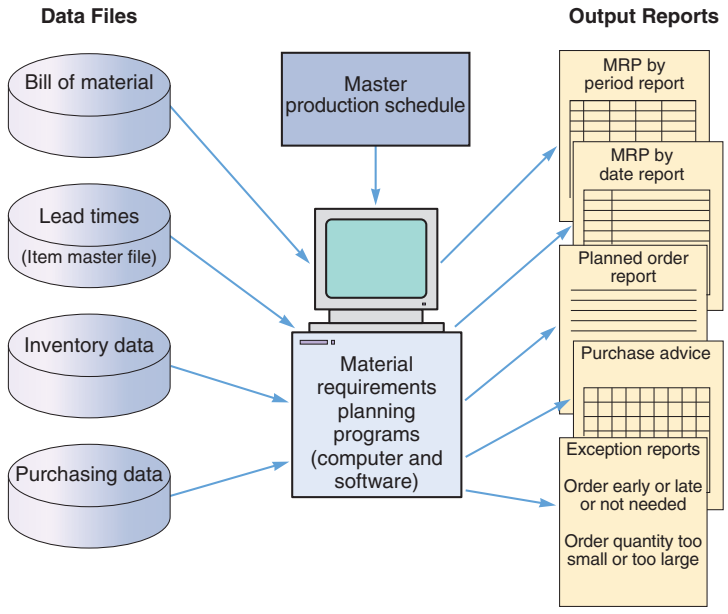


Figure 14.4
Structure of the MRP System

STUDENT TIP
MRP software programs are popular because manual approaches are slow and error prone.

Example 2

BUILDING A GROSS REQUIREMENTS PLAN

Each Awesome speaker kit (item A of Example 1) requires all the items in the product structure for A. Lead times are shown in Table 14.2.

APPROACH ► Using the information in Example 1 and Table 14.2, we construct the gross material requirements plan with a production schedule that will satisfy the demand of 50 units of A by week 8.

SOLUTION ► We prepare a schedule as shown in Table 14.3.

TABLE 14.3 Gross Material Requirements Plan for 50 Awesome Speaker Kits (As) with Order Release Dates Also Shown

	WEEK								
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	LEAD TIME
A. Required date								50	
Order release date							50		1 week
B. Required date							100		
Order release date					100				2 weeks
C. Required date							150		
Order release date						150			1 week
E. Required date					200	300			
Order release date			200	300					2 weeks
F. Required date						300			
Order release date			300						3 weeks
D. Required date			600		200				
Order release date		600		200					1 week
G. Required date			300						
Order release date	300								2 weeks

LO 14.2 *Build* a gross requirements plan

You can interpret the gross material requirements shown in Table 14.3 as follows: If you want 50 units of A at week 8, you must start assembling A in week 7. Thus, in week 7, you will need 100 units of B and 150 units of C. These two items take 2 weeks and 1 week, respectively, to produce. Production of B, therefore, should start in week 5, and production of C should start in week 6 (lead time subtracted from the required date for these items). Working backward, we can perform the same computations for all of the other items. Because D and E are used in two different places in Awesome speaker kits, there are two entries in each data record.

INSIGHT ► The gross material requirements plan shows when production of each item should begin and end in order to have 50 units of A at week 8. Management now has an initial plan.

LEARNING EXERCISE ► If the lead time for G decreases from 2 weeks to 1 week, what is the new order release date for G? [Answer: 300 in week 2.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ► 14.6, 14.8, 14.10a, 14.11a

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch14Ex2.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

Net requirements plan
The result of adjusting gross requirements for inventory on hand and scheduled receipts.

So far, we have considered *gross material requirements*, which assumes that there is no inventory on hand. A net requirements plan adjusts for on-hand inventory. When considering on-hand inventory, we must realize that many items in inventory contain subassemblies or parts. If the gross requirement for Awesome speaker kits (As) is 100 and there are 20 of those speakers on hand, the net requirement for As is 80 (that is, 100 – 20). However, each Awesome speaker kit on hand contains 2 Bs. As a result, the requirement for Bs drops by 40 Bs (20 A kits on hand × 2 Bs per A). Therefore, if inventory is on hand for a parent item, the requirements for the parent item and all its components decrease because each Awesome kit contains the components for lower-level items. Example 3 shows how to create a net requirements plan.

Example 3

LO 14.3 *Build* a net requirements plan

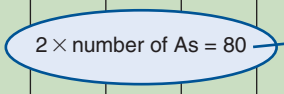
DETERMINING NET REQUIREMENTS

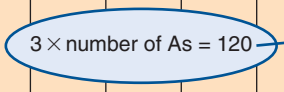
Speaker Kits, Inc., developed a product structure from a bill of material in Example 1. Example 2 developed a gross requirements plan. Given the following on-hand inventory, Speaker Kits, Inc., now wants to construct a net requirements plan. The gross requirement remains 50 units in week 8, and component requirements are as shown in the product structure in Example 1.

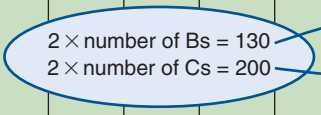
ITEM	ON HAND	ITEM	ON HAND
A	10	E	10
B	15	F	5
C	20	G	0
D	10		

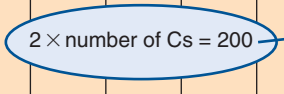
Net Material Requirements Plan for 50 Units of Product A in Week 8. ***(The superscript is the source of the demand)***

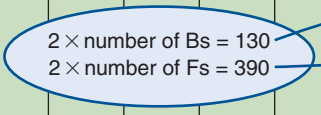
Lot Size	Lead Time (weeks)	On Hand	Safety Stock	Allo-cated	Low-Level Code	Item Identi-fication		Week 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Lot-for-Lot	1	10	—	—	0	A	Gross Requirements								50
							Scheduled Receipts								
							Projected On Hand 10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10
							Net Requirements								40
							Planned Order Receipts								40
							Planned Order Releases							40	
Lot-for-Lot	2	15	—	—	1	B	Gross Requirements							80^A	
							Scheduled Receipts								
							Projected On Hand 15	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	
							Net Requirements							65	
							Planned Order Receipts							65	
							Planned Order Releases					65			
Lot-for-Lot	1	20	—	—	1	C	Gross Requirements							120^A	
							Scheduled Receipts								
							Projected On Hand 20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	
							Net Requirements							100	
							Planned Order Receipts							100	
							Planned Order Releases						100		
Lot-for-Lot	2	10	—	—	2	E	Gross Requirements					130^B	200^C		
							Scheduled Receipts								
							Projected On Hand 10	10	10	10	10	10			
							Net Requirements					120	200		
							Planned Order Receipts					120	200		
							Planned Order Releases			120	200				
Lot-for-Lot	3	5	—	—	2	F	Gross Requirements						200^C		
							Scheduled Receipts								
							Projected On Hand 5	5	5	5	5	5	5		
							Net Requirements						195		
							Planned Order Receipts						195		
							Planned Order Releases			195					
Lot-for-Lot	1	10	—	—	3	D	Gross Requirements			390^F		130^B			
							Scheduled Receipts								
							Projected On Hand 10	10	10	10					
							Net Requirements			380		130			
							Planned Order Receipts			380		130			
							Planned Order Releases		380		130				
Lot-for-Lot	2	0	—	—	3	G	Gross Requirements			195^F					
							Scheduled Receipts								
							Projected On Hand			0					
							Net Requirements			195					
							Planned Order Receipts			195					
							Planned Order Releases	195							

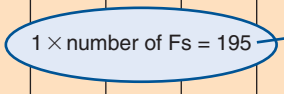












Planned order receipt
The quantity planned to be received at a future date.

Planned order release
The scheduled date for an order to be released.

APPROACH ▶ A net material requirements plan includes gross requirements, on-hand inventory, net requirements, planned order receipt, and planned order release for each item. We begin with A and work backward through the components.

SOLUTION ▶ Shown in the MRP format on the previous page is the net material requirements plan for product A.

Constructing a net requirements plan is similar to constructing a gross requirements plan. Starting with item A, we work backward to determine net requirements for all items. To do these computations, we refer to the product structure, on-hand inventory, and lead times. The gross requirement for A is 50 units in week 8. Ten items are on hand; therefore, the net requirements and the scheduled **planned order receipt** are both 40 items in week 8. Because of the one-week lead time, the **planned order release** is 40 items in week 7 (see the arrow connecting the order receipt and order release). Referring to week 7 and the product structure in Example 1, we can see that 80 (2×40) items of B and 120 (3×40) items of C are required in week 7 to have a total for 50 items of A in week 8. The letter superscripted A to the right of the gross figure for items B and C was generated as a result of the demand for the parent, A. Performing the same type of analysis for B and C yields the net requirements for D, E, F, and G. Note the on-hand inventory in row E in week 6 is zero. It is zero because the on-hand inventory (10 units) was used to make B in week 5. By the same token, the inventory for D was used to make F in week 3.

INSIGHT ▶ Once a net requirement plan is completed, management knows the quantities needed, an ordering schedule, and a production schedule for each component.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the on-hand inventory quantity of component F is 95 rather than 5, how many units of G will need to be ordered in week 1? [Answer: 105 units.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 14.9, 14.10b, 14.11b, 14.12, 14.13c, 14.14b, 14.15a,b,c, 14.16a,b, 14.17c (14.18–14.21 are available in MyOMLab)

ACTIVE MODEL 14.1 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 14.1 in MyOMLab.

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch14Ex3.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

STUDENT TIP MRP gross requirements can combine multiple products, spare parts, and items sold directly.

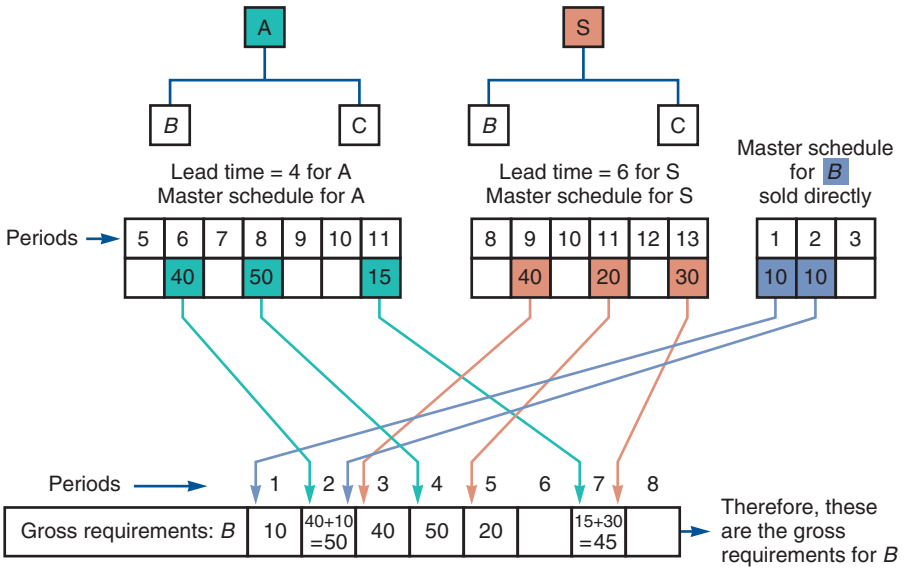
Examples 2 and 3 considered only product A, the Awesome speaker kit, and its completion only in week 8. Fifty units of A were required in week 8. Normally, however, there is a demand for many products over time. For each product, management must prepare a master production schedule (as we saw earlier, in Table 14.1). Scheduled production of each product is added to the master schedule and ultimately to the net material requirements plan. Figure 14.5 shows how several product schedules, including requirements for components sold directly, can contribute to one gross material requirements plan.

Most inventory systems also note the number of units in inventory that have been assigned to specific future production but not yet used or issued from the stockroom. Such items are often

Figure 14.5

Several Schedules Contributing to a Gross Requirements Schedule for B

One B is in each A, and one B is in each S; in addition, 10 Bs sold directly are scheduled in week 1, and 10 more that are sold directly are scheduled in week 2.



Lot Size	Lead Time	On Hand	Safety Stock	Allocated	Low-Level Code	Item ID		Period 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Lot For Lot	1	0	0	10	0	Z	Gross Requirements								80 90
							Scheduled Receipts								0
							Projected On Hand 0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
							Net Requirements								90
							Planned Order Receipts								90
							Planned Order Releases							90	

Figure **14.6**

Sample MRP Planning Sheet for Item Z

referred to as *allocated* items. Allocated items increase requirements as shown in Figure 14.6, where gross requirements have been increased from 80 to 90 to reflect the 10 allocated items.

Safety Stock The continuing task of operations managers is to remove variability. This is the case in MRP systems as in other operations systems. Realistically, however, managers need to realize that bills of material and inventory records, like purchase and production quantities, as well as lead times, may not be perfect. This means that some consideration of safety stock may be prudent. Because of the significant domino effect of any change in requirements, safety stock should be minimized, with a goal of ultimate elimination. When safety stock is deemed absolutely necessary, the usual policy is to build it into (increase) the inventory requirement of the MRP logic. Distortion can be minimized when safety stock is held at the finished goods or module level and at the purchased component or raw material level.

MRP Management

Now let's look at the dynamics and limitations of MRP.

MRP Dynamics

The inputs to MRP (the master schedule, BOM, lead times, purchasing, and inventory) frequently change. Conveniently, a central strength of MRP systems is timely and accurate replanning. However, many firms find they do not want to respond to minor scheduling or quantity changes even if they are aware of them. These frequent changes generate what is called **system nervousness** and can create havoc in purchasing and production departments if implemented. Consequently, OM personnel reduce such nervousness by evaluating the need and impact of changes prior to disseminating requests to other departments. Two tools are particularly helpful when trying to reduce MRP system nervousness.

System nervousness
Frequent changes in an MRP system.

The first is time fences. **Time fences** allow a segment of the master schedule to be designated as "not to be rescheduled." This segment of the master schedule is therefore not changed during the periodic regeneration of schedules. The second tool is pegging. **Pegging** means tracing upward in the BOM from the component to the parent item. By pegging upward, the production planner can determine the cause for the requirement and make a judgment about the necessity for a change in the schedule.

Time fences
A means for allowing a segment of the master schedule to be designated as "not to be rescheduled."

Pegging
In material requirements planning systems, tracing upward the bill of material from the component to the parent item.

With MRP, the operations manager *can* react to the dynamics of the real world. If the nervousness is caused by legitimate changes, then the proper response may be to investigate the production environment—not adjust via MRP.

MRP Limitations

MRP does not do detailed scheduling—it plans. MRP is an excellent tool for product-focused and repetitive facilities, but it has limitations in process (make-to-order) environments. MRP will tell you that a job needs to be completed on a certain week or day but does not tell you

Buckets
Time units in a material requirements planning system.

that Job X needs to run on Machine A at 10:30 A.M. and be completed by 11:30 A.M. so that Job X can then run on Machine B. MRP is also a planning technique with *fixed* lead times that loads work into *infinite* size "buckets." The **buckets** are time units, usually one week. MRP puts work into these buckets without regard to capacity. Consequently, MRP is considered an *infinite* scheduling technique. Techniques for the alternative, *finite* scheduling, are discussed in Chapter 15.

Lot-Sizing Techniques

Lot-sizing decision
The process of, or techniques used in, determining lot size.

An MRP system is an excellent way to do production planning and determine net requirements. But net requirements still demand a decision about *how much and when* to order. This decision is called a **lot-sizing decision**. There are a variety of ways to determine lot sizes in an MRP system; commercial MRP software usually includes the choice of several lot-sizing techniques. We now review a few of them.

Lot-for-lot
A lot-sizing technique that generates exactly what is required to meet the plan.

Lot-for-Lot In Example 3, we used a lot-sizing technique known as **lot-for-lot**, which produced exactly what was required. This decision is consistent with the objective of an MRP system, which is to meet the requirements of *dependent* demand. Thus, an MRP system should produce units only as needed, with no safety stock and no anticipation of further orders. When frequent orders are economical (i.e., when setup costs are low) and just-in-time inventory techniques implemented, lot-for-lot can be very efficient. However, when setup costs are significant, lot-for-lot can be expensive. Example 4 uses the lot-for-lot criteria and determines cost for 10 weeks of demand.

Example 4

LOT SIZING WITH LOT-FOR-LOT

Speaker Kits, Inc., wants to compute its ordering and carrying cost of inventory on lot-for-lot criteria.

APPROACH ▶ With lot-for-lot, we order material only as it is needed. Once we have the cost of ordering (setting up), the cost of holding each unit for a given time period, and the production schedule, we can assign orders to our net requirements plan.

SOLUTION ▶ Speaker Kits has determined that, for **component B,** setup cost is $100 and holding cost is $1 per period. The production schedule, as reflected in net requirements for assemblies, is as follows:

MRP Lot Sizing: Lot-for-Lot Technique*

WEEK		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Gross requirements		35	30	40	0	10	40	30	0	30	55
Scheduled receipts											
Projected on hand	35	35	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Net requirements		0	30	40	0	10	40	30	0	30	55
Planned order receipts			30	40		10	40	30		30	55
Planned order releases		30	40		10	40	30		30	55	

*Holding costs = $1/unit/week; setup cost = $100; gross requirements average per week = 27; lead time = 1 week.

The lot-sizing solution using the lot-for-lot technique is shown in the table. The holding cost is zero as there is never any end-of-period inventory. (Inventory in the first period is used immediately and therefore has no holding cost.) But seven separate setups (one associated with each order) yield a total cost of $700. (Holding cost = $0 \times 1 = 0$; ordering cost = $7 \times 100 = 700$.)

INSIGHT ▶ When supply is reliable and frequent orders are inexpensive, but holding cost or obsolescence is high, lot-for-lot ordering can be very efficient.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ What is the impact on total cost if holding cost is $2 per period rather than $1? [Answer: Total holding cost remains zero, as no units are held from one period to the next with lot-for-lot.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 14.22, 14.25, 14.26a, 14.27a (14.28b is available in MyOMLab)

John Russell/AP Images

This Nissan line in Smyrna, Tennessee, has little inventory because Nissan schedules to a razor's edge. At Nissan, MRP helps reduce inventory to world-class standards. World-class automobile assembly requires that purchased parts have a turnover of slightly more than once a day and that overall turnover approaches 150 times per year.

Economic Order Quantity (EOQ) We now extend our discussion of EOQ in Chapter 12 to use it as a lot-sizing technique for MRP systems. As we indicated there, EOQ is useful when we have relatively constant demand. However, demand may change every period in MRP systems. Therefore, EOQ lot sizing often does not perform well in MRP. Operations managers should take advantage of demand information when it is known, rather than assuming a constant demand. EOQ is used to do lot sizing in Example 5 for comparison purposes.

LO 14.4 *Determine* lot sizes for lot-for-lot, EOQ, and POQ

Example 5

LOT SIZING WITH EOQ

With a setup cost of \$100 and a holding cost per week of \$1, Speaker Kits, Inc., wants to examine its cost for **component B,** with lot sizes based on an EOQ criteria.

APPROACH ► Using the same cost and production schedule as in Example 4, we determine net requirements and EOQ lot sizes.

SOLUTION ► Ten-week usage equals a gross requirement of 270 units; therefore, weekly usage equals 27, and 52 weeks (annual usage) equals 1,404 units. From Chapter 12, the EOQ model is:

$$Q^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H}}$$

where D = annual usage = 1,404

S = setup cost = \$100

H = holding (carrying) cost, on an annual basis per unit

= \$1 × 52 weeks = \$52

$$Q^* = 73 \text{ units}$$

Therefore, place an order of 73 units, as necessary, to avoid a stockout.

MRP Lot Sizing: EOQ Technique*

WEEK		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Gross requirements		35	30	40	0	10	40	30	0	30	55
Scheduled receipts											
Projected on hand	35	35	0	43	3	3	66	26	69	69	39
Net requirements		0	30	0	0	7	0	4	0	0	16
Planned order receipts			73			73		73			73
Planned order releases		73			73		73			73	

*Holding costs = $1/unit/week; setup cost = $100; gross requirements average per week = 27; lead time = 1 week.

For the 10-week planning period:

Holding cost = 375 units × $1 = $375 (includes 57 remaining at the end of week 10)

Ordering cost = 4 × $100 = $400

Total = $375 + $400 = $775

INSIGHT ▶ EOQ can be a reasonable lot-sizing technique when demand is relatively constant. However, notice that actual holding cost will vary substantially depending on the rate of actual usage. If any stockouts had occurred, these costs too would need to be added to our actual EOQ cost of $775.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ What is the impact on total cost if holding cost is $2 per period rather than $1? [Answer: The EOQ quantity becomes 52, the theoretical annual total cost becomes $5,404, and the 10-week cost is $1,039 ($5,404 × (10/52).]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 14.23, 14.25, 14.26b, 14.27c (14.28a is available in MyOMLab)

Periodic order quantity (POQ)
An inventory ordering technique that issues orders on a predetermined time interval, with the order quantity covering the total of the interval's requirements.

Periodic Order Quantity Periodic order quantity (POQ) is a lot-sizing technique that orders the quantity needed during a predetermined time between orders, such as every 3 weeks. We define the *POQ interval* as the EOQ divided by the average demand per period (e.g., one week).[3] The POQ is the order quantity that covers the specific demand for that interval. *Each order quantity is recalculated at the time of the order release*, never leaving extra inventory. An application of POQ is shown in Example 6.

Example 6

LOT SIZING WITH POQ

With a setup cost of $100 and a holding cost per week of $1, Speaker Kits, Inc., wants to examine its cost for **component B,** with lot sizes based on POQ.

APPROACH ▶ Using the same cost and production schedule as in Example 5, we determine net requirements and POQ lot sizes.

SOLUTION ▶ Ten-week usage equals a gross requirement of 270 units; therefore, average weekly usage equals 27, and from Example 5, we know the EOQ is 73 units.

We set the *POQ interval* equal to the EOQ divided by the average weekly usage.

Therefore:

$$\text{POQ interval} = \text{EOQ}/\text{Average weekly usage} = 73/27 = 2.7, \text{ or } 3 \text{ weeks.}$$

The *POQ order size* will vary by the quantities required in the respective weeks, as shown in the following table, with first planned order release in week 1.

Note: Orders are postponed if no demand exists, which is why week 7's order is postponed until week 8.

MRP Lot Sizing: POQ Technique*

WEEK		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Gross requirements		35	30	40	0	10	40	30	0	30	55
Scheduled receipts											
Projected on hand	35	35	0	40	0	0	70	30	0	0	55
Net requirements		0	30	0	0	10	0	0	0	55	0
Planned order receipts			70			80		0		85	0
Planned order releases		70			80				85		

*Holding costs = $1/unit/week; setup cost = $100; gross requirements average per week = 27; lead time = 1 week.

$$\text{Setups} = 3 \times \$100 = \$300$$

$$\text{Holding cost} = (40 + 70 + 30 + 55) \text{ units} \times \$1 \text{ each} = \$195$$

The POQ solution yields a computed 10-week cost of $300 + $195 = $495

INSIGHT ▶ Because POQ tends to produce a balance between holding and ordering costs with no excess inventory, POQ typically performs much better than EOQ. Notice that even with frequent recalculations, actual holding cost can vary substantially, depending on the demand fluctuations. We are assuming no stockouts. In this and similar examples, we are also assuming no safety stock; such costs would need to be added to our actual cost.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ What is the impact on total cost if holding cost is $2 per period rather than $1? [Answer: EOQ = 52; POQ interval = 52/27 = 1.93 ≈ 2 weeks; holding cost = $270; setups = $400. The POQ total cost becomes $670.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 14.24, 14.25, 14.26c, 14.27b (14.28c is available in MyOMLab)

Other lot-sizing techniques, known as *dynamic lot-sizing*, are similar to periodic order quantity as they attempt to balance the lot size against the setup cost. These are *part period balancing* (also called *least total cost*), *least unit cost,* and *least period cost* (also called *Silver-Meal*). Another technique, *Wagner-Whitin*, takes a different approach by using dynamic programming to optimize ordering over a finite time horizon.[4]

Lot-Sizing Summary In the three speaker kits lot-sizing examples, we found the following costs:

	COSTS		
	SETUP	HOLDING	TOTAL
Lot-for-lot	$700	$0	$700
Economic order quantity (EOQ)	$400	$375	$775
Periodic order quantity (POQ)	$300	$195	$495

These examples should not, however, lead operations personnel to hasty conclusions about the preferred lot-sizing technique. In theory, new lot sizes should be computed whenever there is a schedule or lot-size change anywhere in the MRP hierarchy. In practice, such changes cause the instability and system nervousness referred to earlier in this chapter. Consequently, such frequent changes are not made. This means that all lot sizes are wrong because the production system cannot and should not respond to frequent changes. Note that there are no "shortage" (out of stock) charges in any of these lot-sizing techniques. This limitation places added demands on accurate forecasts and "time fences."

In general, the lot-for-lot approach should be used whenever low-cost setup can be achieved. Lot-for-lot is the goal. Lots can be modified as necessary for scrap allowances, process constraints (for example, a heat-treating process may require a lot of a given size), or raw

material purchase lots (for example, a truckload of chemicals may be available in only one lot size). However, caution should be exercised prior to any modification of lot size because the modification can cause substantial distortion of actual requirements at lower levels in the MRP hierarchy. When setup costs are significant and demand is reasonably smooth, POQ or even EOQ should provide satisfactory results. Too much concern with lot sizing yields false accuracy because of MRP dynamics. A correct lot size can be determined only after the fact, based on what actually happened in terms of requirements.

Extensions of MRP

In this section, we review three extensions of MRP.

Material Requirements Planning II (MRP II)

Material requirements planning II (MRP II)
A system that allows, with MRP in place, inventory data to be augmented by other resource variables; in this case, MRP becomes *material resource planning*.

LO 14.5 *Describe* MRP II

Material requirements planning II is an extremely powerful technique. Once a firm has MRP in place, requirements data can be enriched by resources other than just components. When MRP is used this way, *resource* is usually substituted for *requirements*, and MRP becomes **MRP II**. It then stands for material resource planning.

So far in our discussion of MRP, we have scheduled products and their components. However, products require many resources, such as energy and money, beyond the product's tangible components. In addition to these resource inputs, *outputs* can be generated as well. Outputs can include such things as scrap, packaging waste, effluent, and carbon emissions. As OM becomes increasingly sensitive to environmental and sustainability issues, identifying and managing by-products takes on more significance. MRP II provides a vehicle for doing so. Table 14.4 provides an example of labor-hours, machine-hours, grams of greenhouse gas emissions, pounds of scrap, and cash, in the format of a gross requirements plan. With MRP II, management can identify both the inputs and outputs as well as the relevant schedule. MRP II provides another tool in OM's battle for sustainable operations.

Jim Corvis, User Solutions, Inc.

Many MRP programs, such as *Resource Manager for Excel*, are commercially available. *Resource Manager's* initial menu screen is shown here.

A demo program is available for student use at **www.usersolutions.com.**

TABLE 14.4 Material Resource Planning (MRP II)

		Weeks			
	LEAD TIME	5	6	7	8
Computer *Labor-hours:* .2 each *Machine-hours:* .2 each *GHG Emissions:* .25 each *Scrap:* 1 ounce fiberglass each *Payables:* $0	1				100 20 20 25 grams 6.25 lb $0
PC board (1 each) *Labor-hours:* .15 each *Machine-hours:* .1 each *GHG Emissions:* 2.5 each *Scrap:* .5 ounces copper each *Payables:* raw material at $5 each	2			100 15 10 250 grams 3.125 lb $500	
Processors (5 each) *Labor-hours:* .2 each *Machine-hours:* .2 each *GHG Emissions:* .50 each *Scrap:* .01 ounces of acid waste each *Payables:* processor components at $10 each	4	500 100 100 25,000 grams 0.3125 lb $5,000			

By utilizing the logic of MRP, resources such as labor, machine-hours, greenhouse gas emissions, scrap, and cost can be accurately determined and scheduled. Weekly demand for labor, machine-hours, greenhouse gas emissions, scrap, and payables for 100 computers are shown.

MRP II systems are seldom stand-alone programs. Most are tied into other computer software. Purchasing, production scheduling, capacity planning, inventory, and warehouse management systems are a few examples of this data integration.

Closed-Loop MRP

Closed-loop material requirements planning implies an MRP system that provides feedback to scheduling from the inventory control system. Specifically, a **closed-loop MRP system** provides information to the capacity plan, master production schedule, and ultimately to the production plan (as shown in Figure 14.7). Virtually all commercial MRP systems are closed-loop.

Closed-loop MRP system
A system that provides feedback to the capacity plan, master production schedule, and production plan so planning can be kept valid at all times.

Capacity Planning

In keeping with the definition of closed-loop MRP, feedback about workload is obtained from each work center. **Load reports** show the resource requirements in a work center for all work currently assigned to the work center, all work planned, and expected orders.

Load report
A report showing the resource requirements in a work center for all work currently assigned there as well as all planned and expected orders.

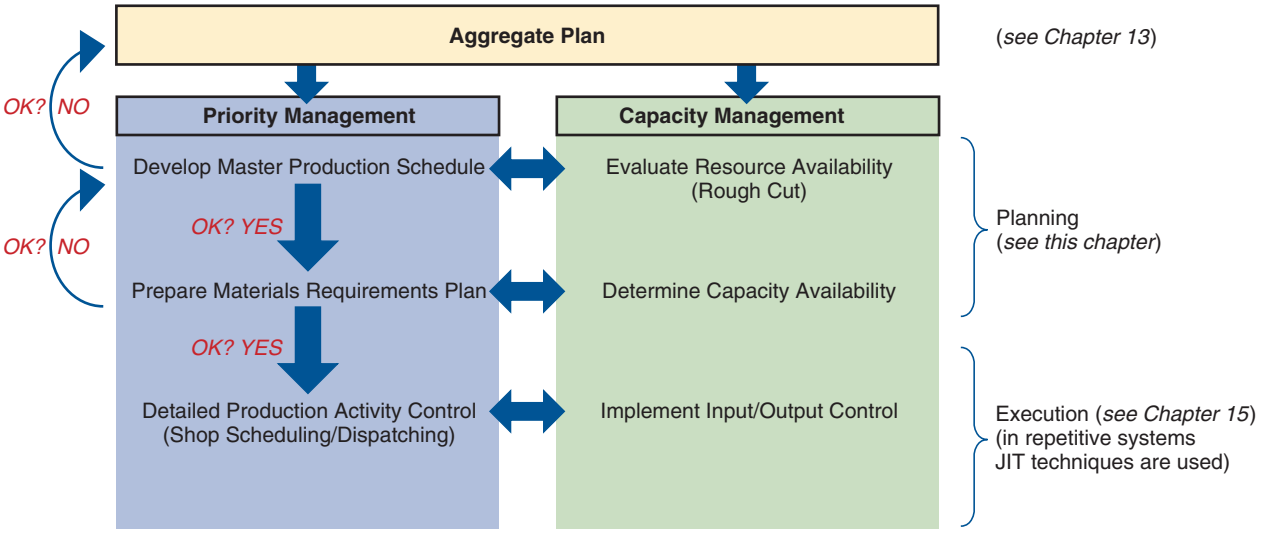
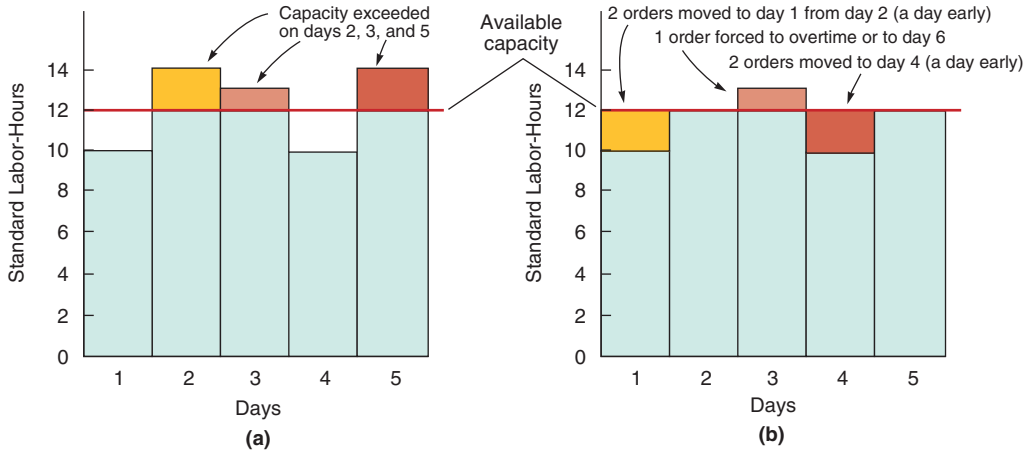


Figure **14.7**

Closed-Loop Material Requirements Planning

Figure 14.8
(a) Initial Resource Requirements Profile for a Work Center
(b) Smoothed Resource Requirements Profile for a Work Center



LO 14.6 *Describe* closed-loop MRP

Figure 14.8(a) shows that the initial load in the milling center exceeds capacity on days 2, 3, and 5. Closed-loop MRP systems allow production planners to move the work between time periods to smooth the load or at least bring it within capacity. (This is the "capacity planning" part of Figure 14.7.) The closed-loop MRP system can then reschedule all items in the net requirements plan (see Figure 14.8[b]).

Tactics for smoothing the load and minimizing the impact of changed lead time include the following:

1. *Overlapping,* which reduces the lead time, sends pieces to the second operation before the entire lot is completed on the first operation.
2. *Operations splitting* sends the lot to two different machines for the same operation. This involves an additional setup, but results in shorter throughput times because only part of the lot is processed on each machine.
3. *Order splitting,* or *lot splitting*, involves breaking up the order and running part of it earlier (or later) in the schedule.

Example 7 shows a brief detailed capacity scheduling example using order splitting to improve utilization.

Example 7

ORDER SPLITTING

Kevin Watson, the production planner at Wiz Products, needs to develop a capacity plan for a work center. He has the production orders shown below for the next 5 days. There are 12 hours available in the work cell each day. The parts being produced require 1 hour each.

Day	1	2	3	4	5
Orders	10	14	13	10	14

APPROACH ▶ Compute the time available in the work center and the time necessary to complete the production requirements.

SOLUTION ▶

DAY	UNITS ORDERED	CAPACITY REQUIRED (HOURS)	CAPACITY AVAILABLE (HOURS)	UTILIZATION: OVER/ (UNDER) (HOURS)	PRODUCTION PLANNER'S ACTION	NEW PRODUCTION SCHEDULE
1	10	10	12	(2)		12
2	14	14	12	2	Split order: move 2 units to day 1	12
3	13	13	12	1	Split order: move 1 unit to day 6 or request overtime	13
4	10	10	12	(2)		12
5	14	14	12	2	Split order: move 2 units to day 4	12
	61					

INSIGHT ▶ By moving orders, the production planner is able to utilize capacity more effectively and still meet the order requirements, with only 1 order produced on overtime in day 3.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the units ordered for day 5 increase to 16, what are the production planner's options? [Answer: In addition to moving 2 units to day 4, move 2 units of production to day 6, or request overtime.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 14.29, 14.30

When the workload consistently exceeds work-center capacity, the tactics just discussed are not adequate. This may mean adding capacity via personnel, machinery, overtime, or subcontracting.

MRP in Services

The demand for many services or service items is classified as dependent demand when it is directly related to or derived from the demand for other services. Such services often require product-structure trees, bills of material and labor, and scheduling. Variations of MRP systems can make a major contribution to operational performance in such services. Examples from restaurants, hospitals, and hotels follow.

Restaurants In restaurants, ingredients and side dishes (bread, vegetables, and condiments) are typically meal components. These components are dependent on the demand for meals. The meal is an end item in the master schedule. Figure 14.9 shows (a) a product-structure tree and

(a) **PRODUCT STRUCTURE TREE**

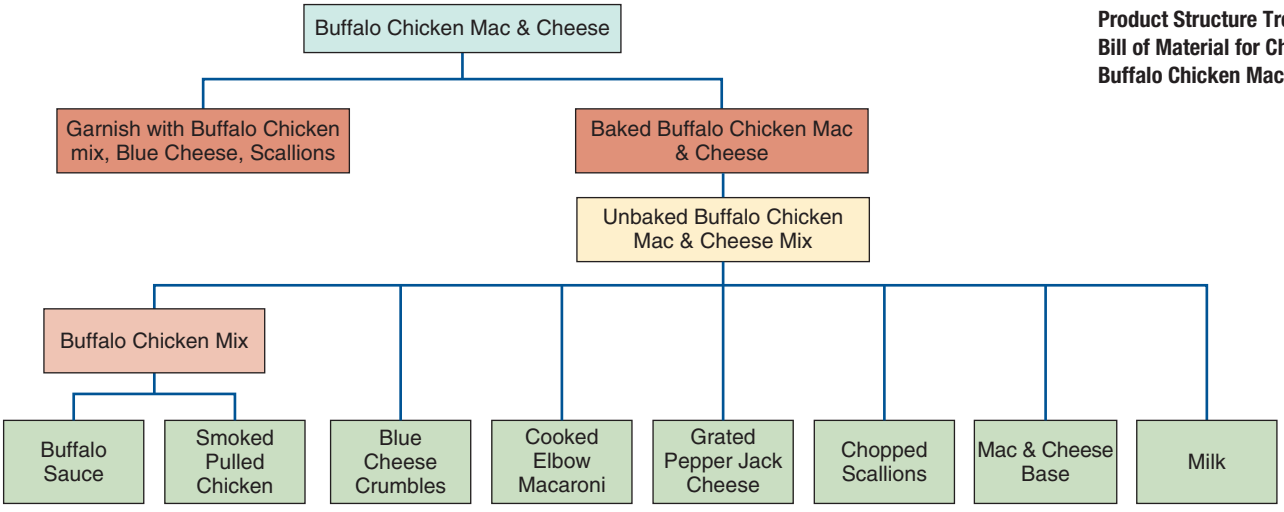


Figure **14.9**

Product Structure Tree and Bill of Material for Chef John's Buffalo Chicken Mac & Cheese

(b) **BILL OF MATERIALS**

Production Specification	**Buffalo Chicken Mac & Cheese (6 portions)**				
Ingredients	*Quantity*	*Measure*	*Unit Cost*	*Total Cost*	*Labor Hrs.*
Elbow Macaroni (large, uncooked)	20.00	oz.	$ 0.09	$ 1.80	
Cheese—Pepper Jack (grated)	10.00	oz.	0.17	1.70	
Mac and Cheese Base (from refrigerator)	32.00	oz.	0.80	25.60	
Milk	4.00	oz.	0.03	0.12	
Smoked Pulled Chicken	2.00	lb.	2.90	5.80	
Buffalo Sauce	8.00	oz.	0.09	0.72	
Blue Cheese Crumbles	4.00	oz.	0.19	0.76	
Scallions	2.00	oz.	0.18	0.36	
Total Labor Hours					0.2 hrs

(b) bill of material (here called a *product specification*) for 6 portions of *Buffalo Chicken Mac & Cheese,* a popular dish prepared by Chef John for Orlando Magic fans at the Amway Center.

Hospitals MRP is also applied in hospitals, especially when dealing with surgeries that require known equipment, materials, and supplies. Houston's Park Plaza Hospital and many hospital suppliers, for example, use the technique to improve the scheduling and management of expensive surgical inventory.

Hotels Marriott develops a bill of material and a bill of labor when it renovates each of its hotel rooms. Marriott managers explode the BOM to compute requirements for materials, furniture, and decorations. MRP then provides net requirements and a schedule for use by purchasing and contractors.

Distribution Resource Planning (DRP)

Distribution resource planning (DRP)
A time-phased stock-replenishment plan for all levels of a distribution network.

When dependent techniques are used in the supply chain, they are called distribution resource planning (DRP). **Distribution resource planning (DRP)** is a time-phased stock-replenishment plan for all levels of the supply chain.

DRP procedures and logic are analogous to MRP. With DRP, expected demand becomes gross requirements. Net requirements are determined by allocating available inventory to gross requirements. The DRP procedure starts with the forecast at the retail level (or the most distant point of the distribution network being supplied). All other levels are computed. As is the case with MRP, inventory is then reviewed with an aim to satisfying demand. So that stock will arrive when it is needed, net requirements are offset by the necessary lead time. A planned order release quantity becomes the gross requirement at the next level down the distribution chain.

DRP *pulls* inventory through the system. Pulls are initiated when the retail level orders more stock. Allocations are made to the retail level from available inventory and production after being adjusted to obtain shipping economies. Effective use of DRP requires an integrated information system to rapidly convey planned order releases from one level to the next. The goal of the DRP system is small and frequent replenishment within the bounds of economical ordering and shipping.

Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP)

Enterprise resource planning (ERP)
An information system for identifying and planning the enterprise-wide resources needed to take, make, ship, and account for customer orders.

Advances in MRP II systems that tie customers and suppliers to MRP II have led to the development of enterprise resource planning (ERP) systems. **Enterprise resource planning (ERP)** is software that allows companies to (1) automate and integrate many of their business processes, (2) share a common database and business practices throughout the enterprise, and (3) produce information in real time. A schematic showing some of these relationships for a manufacturing firm appears in Figure 14.10.

The objective of an ERP system is to coordinate a firm's entire business, from supplier evaluation to customer invoicing. This objective is seldom achieved, but ERP systems are umbrella systems that tie together a variety of specialized systems. This is accomplished by using a centralized database to assist the flow of information among business functions. Exactly what is tied together, and how, varies on a case-by-case basis. In addition to the traditional components of MRP, ERP systems usually provide financial and human resource (HR) management information. ERP systems may also include:

LO 14.7 *Describe* ERP

- *Supply-chain management (SCM)* software to support sophisticated vendor communication, e-commerce, and those activities necessary for efficient warehousing and logistics. The idea is to tie operations (MRP) to procurement, to materials management, and to suppliers, providing the tools necessary for effective management of all four areas.
- *Customer relationship management (CRM)* software for the incoming side of the business. CRM is designed to aid analysis of sales, target the most profitable customers, and manage the sales force.
- *Sustainability* software to tie together sustainable workforce issues and provide transparency for supply-chain sustainability issues, as well as monitor health and safety activities, energy use and efficiency, emissions (carbon footprint, greenhouse gases), and environmental compliance.

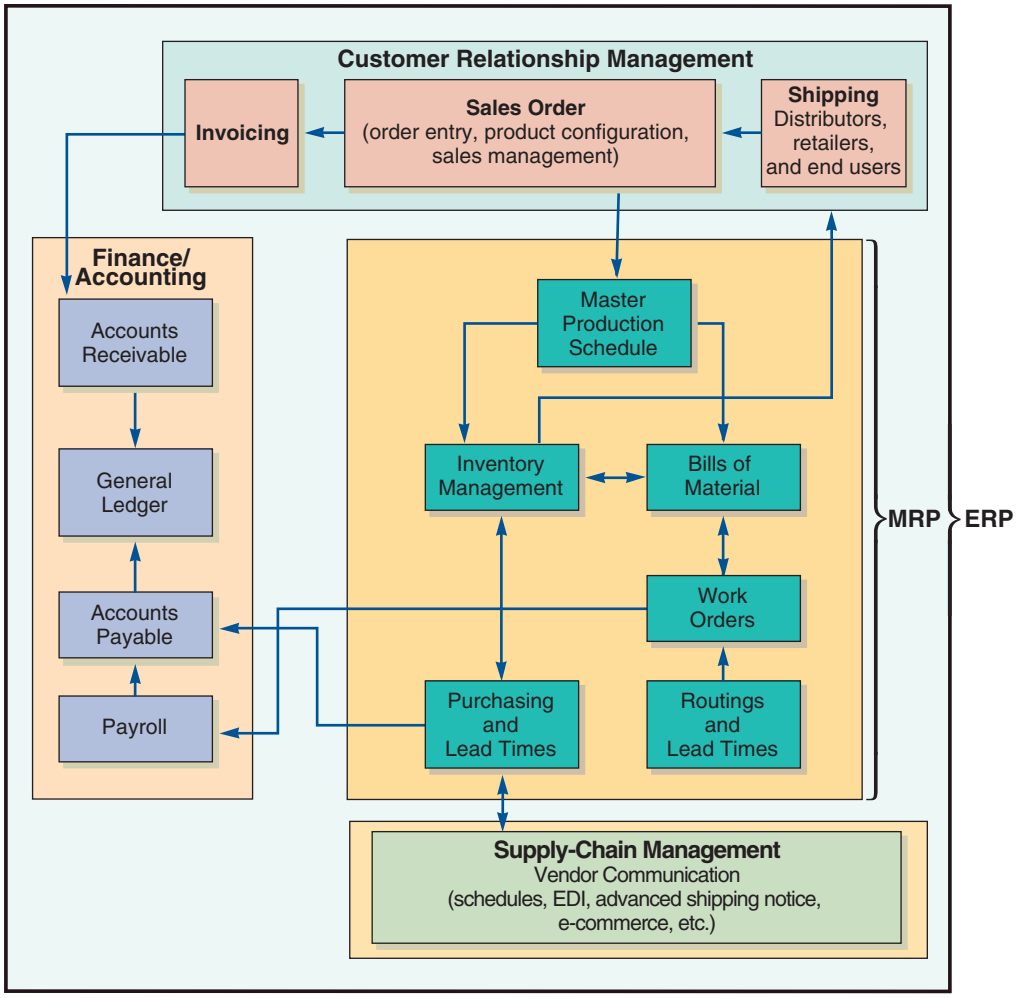


Figure **14.10**

MRP and ERP Information Flows, Showing Customer Relationship Management (CRM), Supply-Chain Management (SCM), and Finance/Accounting

Other functions such as human resources and sustainability are often also included in ERP systems.

STUDENT TIP

ERP tries to integrate all of a firm's information to ensure data integrity.

In addition to data integration, ERP software promises reduced transaction costs and fast, accurate information. A strategic emphasis on just-in-time systems and supply chain integration drives the desire for enterprise-wide software. The *OM in Action* box "Managing Benetton with ERP Software" provides an example of how ERP software helps integrate company operations.

OM in Action — Managing Benetton with ERP Software

Thanks to ERP, the Italian sportswear company Benetton can probably claim to have the world's fastest factory and the most efficient distribution in the garment industry. Located in Ponzano, Italy, Benetton makes and ships 50 million pieces of clothing each year. That is 30,000 boxes every day—boxes that must be filled with exactly the items ordered going to the correct store of the 5,000 Benetton outlets in 60 countries. This highly automated distribution center uses only 19 people. Without ERP, hundreds of people would be needed.

Here is how ERP software works:

1. *Ordering:* A salesperson in the south Boston store finds that she is running out of a best-selling blue sweater. Using a laptop PC, her local Benetton sales agent taps into the ERP sales module.
2. *Availability:* ERP's inventory software simultaneously forwards the order to the mainframe in Italy and finds that half the order can be filled immediately from the Italian warehouse. The rest will be manufactured and shipped in 4 weeks.
3. *Production:* Because the blue sweater was originally created by computer-aided design (CAD), ERP manufacturing software passes the specifications to a knitting machine. The knitting machine makes the sweaters.
4. *Warehousing:* The blue sweaters are boxed with a radio frequency ID (RFID) tag addressed to the Boston store and placed in one of the 300,000 slots in the Italian warehouse. A robot flies by, reading RFID tags, picks out any and all boxes ready for the Boston store, and loads them for shipment.
5. *Order tracking:* The Boston salesperson logs onto the ERP system through the Internet and sees that the sweater (and other items) are completed and being shipped.
6. *Planning:* Based on data from ERP's forecasting and financial modules, Benetton's chief buyer decides that blue sweaters are in high demand and quite profitable. She decides to add three new hues.

Sources: Forbes (December 2, 2011); *The Wall Street Journal* (April 10, 2007); *Information Week* (June 13, 2005); and *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Fall 2001).

In an ERP system, data are entered only once into a common, complete, and consistent database shared by all applications. For example, when a Nike salesperson enters an order into his ERP system for 20,000 pairs of sneakers for Foot Locker, the data are instantly available on the manufacturing floor. Production crews start filling the order if it is not in stock, accounting prints Foot Locker's invoice, and shipping notifies Foot Locker of the future delivery date. The salesperson, or even the customer, can check the progress of the order at any point. This is all accomplished using the same data and common applications. To reach this consistency, however, the data fields must be defined identically across the entire enterprise. In Nike's case, this means integrating operations at production sites from Vietnam to China to Mexico, at business units across the globe, in many currencies, and with reports in a variety of languages.

Each ERP vendor produces unique products. The major vendors, SAP AG (a German firm), BEA (Canada), SSAGlobal, American Software, PeopleSoft/Oracle, and CMS Software (all U.S. firms), sell software or modules designed for specific industries (a set of SAP's modules is shown in Figure 14.11). However, companies must determine if their way of doing business will fit the standard ERP module. If they determine that the product will not fit the standard ERP product, they can change the way they do business to accommodate the software. But such a change can have an adverse impact on their business process, reducing a competitive advantage.

Alternatively, ERP software can be customized to meet their specific process requirements. Although the vendors build the software to keep the customization process simple, many companies spend up to five times the cost of the software to customize it. In addition to the expense, the major downside of customization is that when ERP vendors provide an upgrade or enhancement to the software, the customized part of the code must be rewritten to fit into the new version. ERP programs cost from a minimum of $300,000 for a small company to

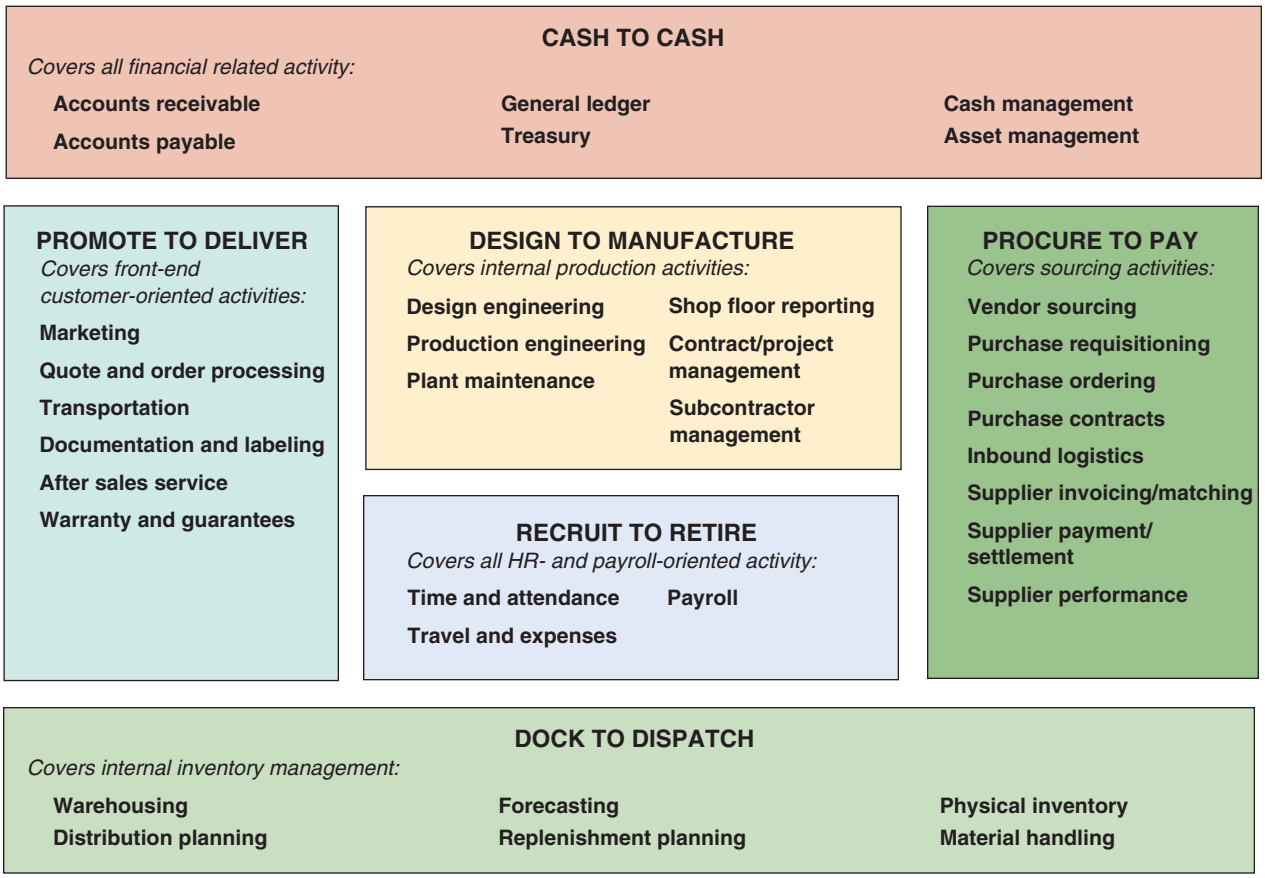


Figure 14.11

SAP's Modules for ERP

Source: www.sap.com.

hundreds of millions of dollars for global giants like Ford and Coca-Cola. It is easy to see, then, that ERP systems are expensive, full of hidden issues, and time-consuming to install.

ERP in the Service Sector

ERP vendors have developed a series of service modules for such markets as health care, government, retail stores, and financial services. Springer-Miller Systems, for example, has created an ERP package for the hotel market with software that handles all front- and back-office functions. This system integrates tasks such as maintaining guest histories, booking room and dinner reservations, scheduling golf tee times, and managing multiple properties in a chain. PeopleSoft/Oracle combines ERP with supply chain management to coordinate airline meal preparation. In the grocery industry, these supply chain systems are known as *efficient consumer response* (ECR) systems. Efficient consumer response systems tie sales to buying, to inventory, to logistics, and to production.

Efficient consumer response (ECR)
Supply chain management systems in the grocery industry that tie sales to buying, to inventory, to logistics, and to production.

Summary

Material requirements planning (MRP) schedules production and inventory when demand is dependent. For MRP to work, management must have a master schedule, precise requirements for all components, accurate inventory and purchasing records, and accurate lead times.

When properly implemented, MRP can contribute in a major way to reduction in inventory while improving customer service levels. MRP techniques allow the operations manager to schedule and replenish stock on a "need-to-order" basis rather than simply a "time-to-order" basis. Many firms using MRP systems find that lot-for-lot can be the low-cost lot-sizing option.

The continuing development of MRP systems has led to its use with lean manufacturing techniques. In addition, MRP can integrate production data with a variety of other activities, including the supply chain and sales. As a result, we now have integrated database-oriented enterprise resource planning (ERP) systems. These expensive and difficult-to-install ERP systems, when successful, support strategies of differentiation, response, and cost leadership.

Key Terms

Material requirements planning (MRP) (p. 604)
Master production schedule (MPS) (p. 605)
Bill of material (BOM) (p. 606)
Modular bills (p. 607)
Planning bills (or kits) (p. 608)
Phantom bills of material (p. 608)
Low-level coding (p. 608)
Lead time (p. 608)
Gross material requirements plan (p. 609)
Net requirements plan (p. 610)
Planned order receipt (p. 612)
Planned order release (p. 612)
System nervousness (p. 613)
Time fences (p. 613)
Pegging (p. 613)
Buckets (p. 614)
Lot-sizing decision (p. 614)
Lot-for-lot (p. 614)
Periodic order quantity (POQ) (p. 616)
Material requirements planning II (MRP II) (p. 618)
Closed-loop MRP system (p. 619)
Load report (p. 619)
Distribution resource planning (DRP) (p. 622)
Enterprise resource planning (ERP) (p. 622)
Efficient consumer response (ECR) (p. 625)

Ethical Dilemma

For many months your prospective ERP customer has been analyzing the hundreds of assumptions built into the $900,000 ERP software you are selling. So far, you have knocked yourself out to try to make this sale. If the sale goes through, you will reach your yearly quota and get a nice bonus. On the other hand, loss of this sale may mean you start looking for other employment.

The accounting, human resource, supply chain, and marketing teams put together by the client have reviewed the specifications and finally recommended purchase of the software. However, as you looked over their shoulders and helped them through the evaluation process, you began to realize that their purchasing procedures—with much of the purchasing being done at hundreds of regional stores—were not a good fit for the software. At the very least, the customizing will add $250,000 to the implementation and training cost. The team is not aware of the issue, and you know that the necessary $250,000 is not in the budget.

What do you do?

Discussion Questions

1. What is the difference between a *gross* requirements plan and a *net* requirements plan?
2. Once a material requirements plan (MRP) has been established, what other managerial applications might be found for the technique?
3. What are the similarities between MRP and DRP?
4. How does MRP II differ from MRP?
5. Which is the best lot-sizing policy for manufacturing organizations?
6. What impact does ignoring carrying cost in the allocation of stock in a DRP system have on lot sizes?
7. MRP is more than an inventory system; what additional capabilities does MRP possess?
8. What are the options for the production planner who has:
   a) scheduled more than capacity in a work center next week?
   b) a consistent lack of capacity in that work center?
9. Master schedules are expressed in three different ways depending on whether the process is continuous, a job shop, or repetitive. What are these three ways?
10. What functions of the firm affect an MRP system? How?
11. What is the rationale for (a) a phantom bill of material, (b) a planning bill of material, and (c) a pseudo bill of material?
12. Identify five specific requirements of an effective MRP system.
13. What are the typical benefits of ERP?
14. What are the distinctions between MRP, DRP, and ERP?
15. As an approach to inventory management, how does MRP differ from the approach taken in Chapter 12, dealing with economic order quantities (EOQ)?
16. What are the disadvantages of ERP?
17. Use the Web or other sources to:
    a) Find stories that highlight the advantages of an ERP system.
    b) Find stories that highlight the difficulties of purchasing, installing, or failure of an ERP system.
18. Use the Web or other sources to identify what an ERP vendor (SAP, PeopleSoft/Oracle, American Software, etc.) includes in these software modules:
    a) Customer relationship management.
    b) Supply-chain management.
    c) Product life cycle management.
19. The structure of MRP systems suggests "buckets" and infinite loading. What is meant by these two terms?

Using Software to Solve MRP Problems

There are many commercial MRP software packages, for companies of all sizes. MRP software for small and medium-size companies includes User Solutions, Inc., a demo of which is available at **www.usersolutions.com,** and MAX, from Exact Software North America, Inc. Software for larger systems is available from SAP, CMS, BEA, Oracle, i2 Technologies, and many others. The Excel OM software that accompanies this text includes an MRP module, as does POM for Windows. The use of both is explained in the following sections.

USING EXCEL OM

Using Excel OM's MRP module requires the careful entry of several pieces of data. The initial MRP screen is where we enter (1) the total number of occurrences of items in the BOM (including the top item), (2) what we want the BOM items to be called (e.g., Item no., Part), (3) total number of periods to be scheduled, and (4) what we want the periods called (e.g., days, weeks).

Excel OM's second MRP screen provides the data entry for an indented bill of material. Here we enter (1) the name of each item in the BOM, (2) the quantity of that item in the assembly, and (3) the correct indent (e.g., parent/child relationship) for each item. The indentations are critical, as they provide the logic for the BOM explosion. The indentations should follow the logic of the product structure tree with indents for each assembly item in that assembly.

Excel OM's third MRP screen repeats the indented BOM and provides the standard MRP tableau for entries. This is shown in Program 14.1 using the data from Examples 1, 2, and 3.

USING POM FOR WINDOWS

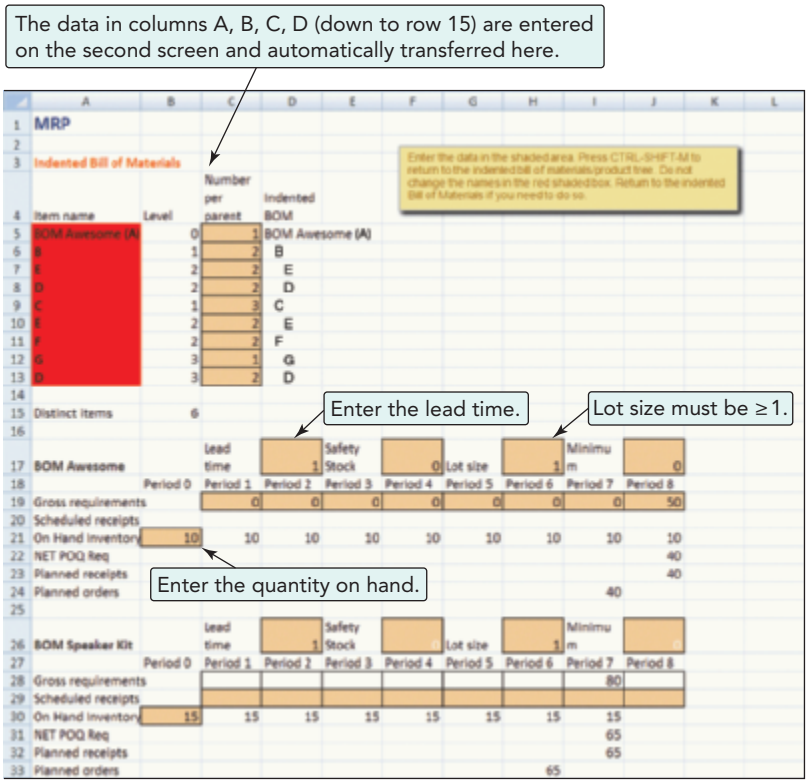
The POM for Windows MRP module can also solve Examples 1 to 3. Up to 18 periods can be analyzed. Here are the inputs required:

1. *Item names:* The item names are entered in the left column. The same item name will appear in more than one row if the item is used by two parent items. Each item must follow its parents.
2. *Item level:* The level in the indented BOM must be given here. The item *cannot* be placed at a level more than one below the item immediately above.
3. *Lead time:* The lead time for an item is entered here. The default is 1 week.
4. *Number per parent:* The number of units of this subassembly needed for its parent is entered here. The default is 1.
5. *On hand:* List current inventory on hand once, even if the subassembly is listed twice.
6. *Lot size:* The lot size can be specified here. A 0 or 1 will perform lot-for-lot ordering. If another number is placed here, then all orders for that item will be in integer multiples of that number.
7. *Demands:* The demands are entered in the end item row in the period in which the items are demanded.
8. *Scheduled receipts:* If units are scheduled to be received in the future, they should be listed in the appropriate time period (column) and item (row). (An entry here in level 1 is a demand; all other levels are receipts.)

Further details regarding POM for Windows are seen in Appendix IV.

Program **14.1**

Using Excel OM's MRP Module to Solve Examples 1, 2, and 3



Solved Problems

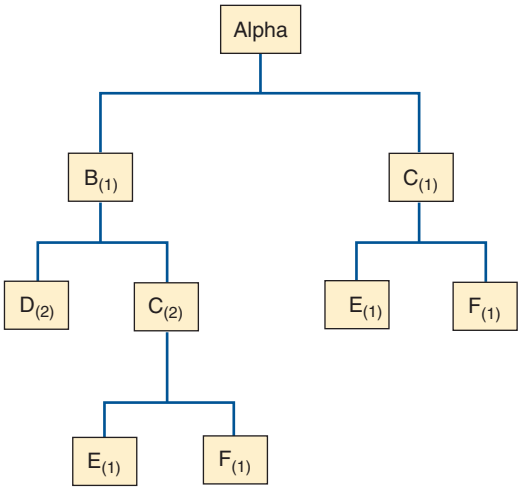
Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

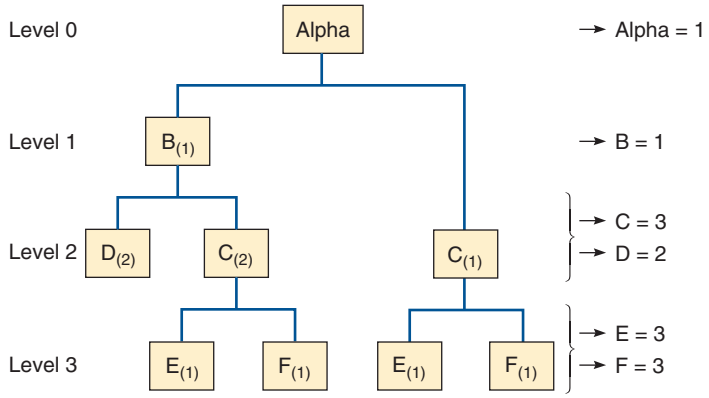
SOLVED PROBLEM 14.1

Determine the low-level coding and the quantity of each component necessary to produce 10 units of an assembly we will call Alpha. The product structure and quantities of each component needed for each assembly are noted in parentheses.

SOLUTION

Redraw the product structure with low-level coding. Then multiply down the structure until the requirements of each branch are determined. Then add across the structure until the total for each is determined.





Es required for left branch:

$$(1_{\text{alpha}} \times 1_{\text{B}} \times 2_{\text{C}} \times 1_{\text{E}}) = 2 \text{ Es}$$

and Es required for right branch:

$$(1_{\text{alpha}} \times 1_{\text{C}} \times 1_{\text{E}}) = \frac{1 \text{ E}}{3 \text{ Es required in total}}$$

Then "explode" the requirement by multiplying each by 10, as shown in the table to the right:

LEVEL	ITEM	QUANTITY PER UNIT	TOTAL REQUIREMENTS FOR 10 ALPHA
0	Alpha	1	10
1	B	1	10
2	C	3	30
2	D	2	20
3	E	3	30
3	F	3	30

SOLVED PROBLEM 14.2

Using the product structure for Alpha in Solved Problem 14.1, and the following lead times, quantity on hand, and master production schedule, prepare a net MRP table for Alphas.

ITEM	LEAD TIME	QUANTITY ON HAND
Alpha	1	10
B	2	20
C	3	0
D	1	100
E	1	10
F	1	50

Master Production Schedule for Alpha

PERIOD	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
Gross requirements			50			50		100

SOLUTION

See the chart on following page.

SOLVED PROBLEM 14.3

Hip Replacements, Inc., has a master production schedule for its newest model, as shown below, a setup cost of $50, a holding cost per week of $2, beginning inventory of 0, and lead time of 1 week. What are the costs of using lot-for-lot for this l0-week period?

SOLUTION

Holding cost = $0 (as there is never any end-of-period inventory)

Ordering costs = 4 orders × $50 = $200

Total cost for lot-for-lot = $0 + $200 = $200

WEEK		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Gross requirements		0	0	50	0	0	35	15	0	100	0
Scheduled receipts											
Projected on hand	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Net requirements		0	0	50	0	0	35	15	0	100	
Planned order receipts				50			35	15		100	
Planned order releases			50			35	15		100		

SOLVED PROBLEM 14.4

Hip Replacements, Inc., has a master production schedule for its newest model, as shown on page 592, a setup cost of $50, a holding cost per week of $2, beginning inventory of 0, and lead time of 1 week. What are the costs of using (a) EOQ and (b) POQ for this 10-week period?

SOLUTION

a) For the **EOQ** lot size, first determine the EOQ.
Annual usage = 200 units for 10 weeks; weekly usage = 200/10 weeks = 20 per week. Therefore, 20 units × 52 weeks (annual demand) = 1,040 units. From Chapter 12, the EOQ model is:

$$Q^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H}}$$

where D = annual demand = 1,040
S = Setup cost = $50
H = holding (carrying) cost, on an annual basis per unit = $2 × 52 = $104
Q^* = 31.62 ≈ 32 units (order the EOQ or in multiples of the EOQ)

(*Continued on page 592*)

Lot Size	Lead Time (# of Periods)	On Hand	Safety Stock	Allo-cated	Low-Level Code	Item ID		Period (week, day)												
								1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
Lot-for-Lot	1	10	—	—	0	Alpha (A)	Gross Requirements								50			50		100
							Scheduled Receipts													
							Projected On Hand 10								10					
							Net Requirements								40			50		100
							Planned Order Receipts								40			50		
							Planned Order Releases							40			50		100	100
Lot-for-Lot	2	20	—	—	1	B	Gross Requirements							40(A)			50(A)		100(A)	
							Scheduled Receipts													
							Projected On Hand 20							20						
							Net Requirements							20			50		100	
							Planned Order Receipts							20			50		100	
							Planned Order Releases					20			50		100			
Lot-for-Lot	3	0	—	—	2	C	Gross Requirements					40(B)		40(A)	100(B)	200(B) + 50(A)			100(A)	
							Scheduled Receipts													
							Projected On Hand 0													
							Net Requirements					40		40	100		250		100	
							Planned Order Receipts					40		40	100		250		100	
							Planned Order Releases		40		40	100		250		100				
Lot-for-Lot	1	100	—	—	2	D	Gross Requirements					40(B)			100(B)		200(B)			
							Scheduled Receipts													
							Projected On Hand 100					100			60					
							Net Requirements					0			40		200			
							Planned Order Receipts					0			40		200			
							Planned Order Releases				0			40		200				
Lot-for-Lot	1	10	—	—	3	E	Gross Requirements		40(C)		40(C)	100(C)		250(C)		100(C)				
							Scheduled Receipts													
							Projected On Hand 10		10											
							Net Requirements		30		40	100		250		100				
							Planned Order Receipts		30		40	100		250		100				
							Planned Order Releases	30		40	100		250		100					
Lot-for-Lot	1	50	—	—	3	F	Gross Requirements		40(C)		40(C)	100(C)		250(C)		100(C)				
							Scheduled Receipts													
							Projected On Hand 50		50		10					—				
							Net Requirements		0		30	100		250		100				
							Planned Order Receipts				30	100		250		100				
							Planned Order Releases			30	100		250		100					

Net Material Requirements Planning Sheet for Alpha for Solved Problem 14.2

The letter in parentheses (A) is the source of the demand.

WEEK		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	
Gross requirements		0	0	50	0	0	35	15	0	100	0	
Scheduled receipts												
Projected on hand	0	0	0	0	14	14	14	11	28	28	24	24
Net requirements		0	0	50	0	0	21	0	0	72	0	
Planned order receipts				64			32	32		96		
Planned order releases			64			32	32		96			

Holding cost = 157 units × \$2 = \$314 (note the 24 units available in period 11, for which there is an inventory charge as they are in on-hand inventory at the end of period 10)

Ordering costs = 4 orders × \$50 = \$200

Total cost for EOQ lot sizing = \$314 + \$200 = \$514

b) For the **POQ** lot size we use the EOQ computed above to find the time period between orders:

Period interval = EOQ/average weekly usage = 32/20 = 1.6 ≈ 2 periods

POQ order size = Demand required in the 2 periods, postponing orders in periods with no demand.

WEEK		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Gross requirements		0	0	50	0	0	35	15	0	100	0
Scheduled receipts											
Projected on hand	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	15	0	0	
Net requirements		0	0	50	0	0	50	0	0	100	0
Planned order receipts				50			50			100	
Planned order releases			50			50			100		

Holding cost = 15 units × \$2 = \$30

Ordering costs = 3 orders × \$50 = \$150

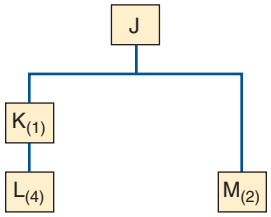
Total cost for POQ lot sizing = \$30 + \$150 = \$180

Problems*

Note: PX means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel OM. Many of the exercises in this chapter (14.1 through 14.16 and 14.29 through 14.32) can be done on *Resource Manager for Excel,* a commercial system made available by User Solutions, Inc. Access to a trial version of the software and a set of notes for the user are available at **www.usersolutions.com.**

Problems 14.1–14.4 relate to Dependent Inventory Model Requirements

• **14.1** You have developed the following simple product structure of items needed for your gift bag for a rush party for prospective pledges in your organization. You forecast 200 attendees. Assume that there is no inventory on hand of any of the items. Explode the bill of material. (Subscripts indicate the number of units required.)



•• **14.2** You are expected to have the gift bags in Problem 14.1 ready at 5 P.M. However, you need to personalize the items (monogrammed pens, note pads, literature from the printer, etc.). The lead time is 1 hour to assemble 200 Js once the other items are prepared. The other items will take a while as well. Given the volunteers you have, the other time estimates are item K (2 hours), item L (1 hour), and item M (4 hours). Develop a time-phased assembly plan to prepare the gift bags.

•• **14.3** As the production planner for Xiangling Hu Products, Inc., you have been given a bill of material for a bracket that is made up of a base, two springs, and four clamps. The base is assembled from one clamp and two housings. Each clamp has one handle and one casting. Each housing has two bearings and one shaft. There is no inventory on hand.

a) Design a product structure noting the quantities for each item and show the low-level coding.

b) Determine the gross quantities needed of each item if you are to assemble 50 brackets.

c) Compute the net quantities needed if there are 25 of the base and 100 of the clamp in stock. PX

•• **14.4** Your boss at Xiangling Hu Products, Inc., has just provided you with the schedule and lead times for the bracket in Problem 14.3. The unit is to be prepared in week 10. The lead times for the components are bracket (1 week), base (1 week), spring (1 week), clamp (1 week), housing (2 weeks), handle (1 week), casting (3 weeks), bearing (1 week), and shaft (1 week).

a) Prepare the time-phased product structure for the bracket.

b) In what week do you need to start the castings? PX

Problems 14.5–14.21 relate to MRP Structure

•• **14.5** The demand for subassembly S is 100 units in week 7. Each unit of S requires 1 unit of T and 2 units of U. Each unit of T requires 1 unit of V, 2 units of W, and 1 unit of X. Finally, each unit of U requires 2 units of Y and 3 units of Z. One firm manufactures all items. It takes 2 weeks to make S, 1 week to make T,

2 weeks to make U, 2 weeks to make V, 3 weeks to make W, 1 week to make X, 2 weeks to make Y, and 1 week to make Z.

a) Construct a product structure. Identify all levels, parents, and components.
b) Prepare a time-phased product structure.

••14.6 Using the information in Problem 14.5, construct a gross material requirements plan. PX

••14.7 Using the information in Problem 14.5, construct a net material requirements plan using the following on-hand inventory.

ITEM	ON-HAND INVENTORY	ITEM	ON-HAND INVENTORY
S	20	W	30
T	20	X	25
U	40	Y	240
V	30	Z	40 PX

••14.8 Refer again to Problems 14.5 and 14.6. In addition to 100 units of S, there is also a demand for 20 units of U, which is a component of S. The 20 units of U are needed for maintenance purposes. These units are needed in week 6. Modify the *gross material requirements plan* to reflect this change. PX

••14.9 Refer again to Problems 14.5 and 14.7. In addition to 100 units of S, there is also a demand for 20 units of U, which is a component of S. The 20 units of U are needed for maintenance purposes. These units are needed in week 6. Modify the *net material requirements plan* to reflect this change. PX

••14.10

a) Given the product structure and master production schedule (Figure 14.12 below), develop a gross requirements plan for all items.
b) Given the preceding product structure, master production schedule, and inventory status (Figure 14.12), develop a net materials requirements (planned order release) for all items. PX

•••14.11 Given the product structure, master production schedule, and inventory status in Figure 14.13 on the next page and assuming the requirements for each BOM item is 1:

a) develop a gross requirements plan for Item C;
b) develop a net requirements plan for Item C. PX

••••14.12 Based on the data in Figure 14.13, complete a net material requirements schedule for:

a) All items (10 schedules in all), assuming the requirement for each BOM item is 1.
b) All 10 items, assuming the requirement for all items is 1, except B, C, and F, which require *2 each*. PX

•••14.13 Electro Fans has just received an order for one thousand 20-inch fans due week 7. Each fan consists of a housing assembly, two grills, a fan assembly, and an electrical unit. The housing assembly consists of a frame, two supports, and a handle. The fan assembly consists of a hub and five blades. The electrical unit consists of a motor, a switch, and a knob. The following table gives lead times, on-hand inventory, and scheduled receipts.

a) Construct a product structure.
b) Construct a time-phased product structure.
c) Prepare a net material requirements plan. PX

Data Table for Problem 14.13

COMPONENT	LEAD TIME	ON-HAND INVENTORY	LOT SIZE*	SCHEDULED RECEIPT
20″ Fan	1	100	—	
Housing	1	100	—	
Frame	2	—	—	
Supports (2)	1	50	100	
Handle	1	400	500	
Grills (2)	2	200	500	
Fan Assembly	3	150	—	
Hub	1	—	—	
Blades (5)	2	—	100	
Electrical Unit	1	—	—	
Motor	1	—	—	
Switch	1	20	12	
Knob	1	—	25	200 knobs in week 2

* Lot-for-lot unless otherwise noted.

•••14.14 A part structure, lead time (weeks), and on-hand quantities for product A are shown in Figure 14.14. From the information shown, generate:

a) An indented bill of material for product A (see Figure 5.9 in Chapter 5 as an example of a BOM).
b) Net requirements for each part to produce 10 As in week 8 using lot-for-lot. PX

•••14.15 You are product planner for product A (in Problem 14.14 and Figure 14.14). The field service manager, Al Trostel, has just called and told you that the requirements for B and F should each be increased by 10 units for his repair requirements in the field.

a) Prepare a list showing the quantity of each part required to produce the requirements for the service manager *and* the production request of 10 Bs and Fs.
b) Prepare a net requirement plan by date for the new requirements (for both production and field service), assuming that the field service manager wants his 10 units of B and F in week 6 and the 10 production units of A in week 8. PX

Master Production Schedule for X1

PERIOD	7	8	9	10	11	12
Gross requirements		50		20		100

ITEM	LEAD TIME	ON HAND	ITEM	LEAD TIME	ON HAND
X1	1	50	C	1	0
B1	2	20	D	1	0
B2	2	20	E	3	10
A1	1	5			

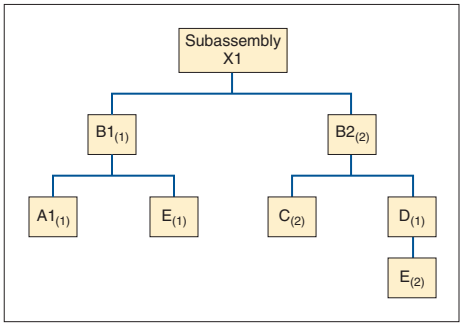


Figure 14.12

Information for Problem 14.10

PERIOD	8	9	10	11	12
Gross requirements: A	100		50		150
Gross requirements: H		100		50	

ITEM	ON HAND	LEAD TIME	ITEM	ON HAND	LEAD TIME
A	0	1	F	75	2
B	100	2	G	75	1
C	50	2	H	0	1
D	50	1	J	100	2
E	75	2	K	100	2

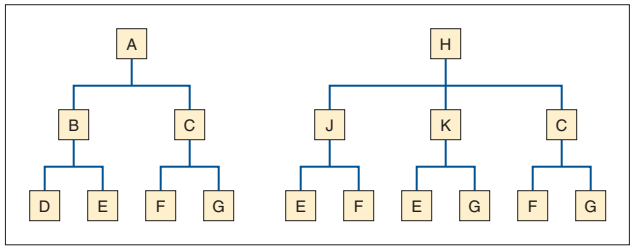


Figure 14.13
Information for Problems 14.11 and 14.12

••• **14.16** You have just been notified via fax that the lead time for component G of product A (Problem 14.15 and Figure 14.14) has been increased to 4 weeks.
a) Which items have changed, and why?
b) What are the implications for the production plan?
c) As production planner, what can you do? PX

•• **14.17** Heather Adams, production manager for a Colorado exercise equipment manufacturer, needs to schedule an order for 50 UltimaSteppers, which are to be shipped in week 8. Subscripts indicate quantity required for each parent. Assume lot-for-lot ordering. Below is information about the steppers:

ITEM	LEAD TIME	ON-HAND INVENTORY	COMPONENTS
Stepper	2	20	$A_{(1)}$, $B_{(3)}$, $C_{(2)}$
A	1	10	$D_{(1)}$, $F_{(2)}$
B	2	30	$E_{(1)}$, $F_{(3)}$
C	3	10	$D_{(2)}$, $E_{(3)}$
D	1	15	
E	2	5	
F	2	20	

a) Develop a product structure for Heather.
b) Develop a time-phased structure.
c) Develop a net material requirements plan for F. PX

Additional problems **14.18–14.21** *are available in* MyOMLab.

Problems 14.22–14.28 relate to Lot-Sizing Techniques

Data Table for Problems 14.22 through 14.25*

PERIOD	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Gross requirements	30		40		30	70	20		10	80		50

*Holding cost = $2.50/unit/week; setup cost = $150; lead time = 1 week; beginning inventory = 40; stockout cost = $10.

••• **14.22** Develop a lot-for-lot solution and calculate total relevant costs for the data in the preceding table. PX

••• **14.23** Develop an EOQ solution and calculate total relevant costs for the data in the preceding table. PX

••• **14.24** Develop a POQ solution and calculate total relevant costs for the data in the preceding table. PX

••• **14.25** Using your answers for the lot sizes computed in Problems 14.22, 14.23, and 14.24, which is the best technique and why?

•• **14.26** M. de Koster, of Rene Enterprises, has the master production plan shown below:

Period (weeks)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Gross requirements		15		20		10			25

Lead time = 1 period; setup cost = $200; holding cost = $10 per week; stockout cost = $10 per week. Your job is to develop an ordering plan and costs for:
a) Lot-for-lot. b) EOQ.
c) POQ. d) Which plan has the lowest cost? PX

14.27 Grace Greenberg, production planner for Science and Technology Labs, in New Jersey, has the master production plan shown below:

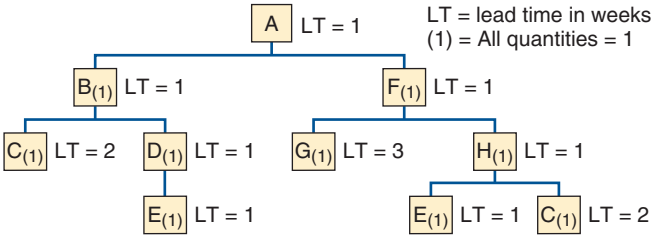
Period (weeks)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Gross requirements		35		40		10			25	10		45

Lead time = 1 period; setup costs = $200; holding cost = $10 per week; stockout cost = $10 per week. Develop an ordering plan and costs for Grace, using these techniques:
a) Lot-for-lot. b) EOQ.
c) POQ. d) Which plan has the lowest cost? PX

Figure 14.14
Information for Problems 14.14, 14.15, and 14.16

PART	INVENTORY ON HAND
A	0
B	2
C	10
D	5
E	4
F	5
G	1
H	10

PART STRUCTURE TREE



Additional problem **14.28** *is available in* MyOMLab.

Problems 14.29–14.32 relate to Extensions of MRP

••• **14.29** Karl Knapps, Inc., has received the following orders:

Period	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Order size	0	40	30	40	10	70	40	10	30	60

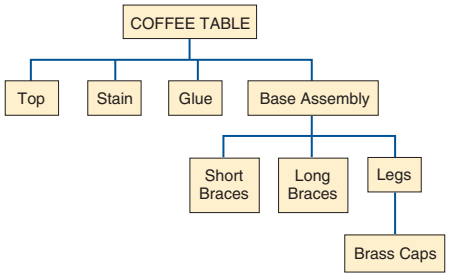
The entire fabrication for these units is scheduled on one machine. There are 2,250 usable minutes in a week, and each unit will take 65 minutes to complete. Develop a capacity plan, using lot splitting, for the 10-week time period.

••• **14.30** Coleman Rich, Ltd., has received the following orders:

Period	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Order size	60	30	10	40	70	10	40	30	40	0

The entire fabrication for these units is scheduled on one machine. There are 2,250 usable minutes in a week, and each unit will take 65 minutes to complete. Develop a capacity plan, using lot splitting, for the 10-week time period.

••• **14.31** Courtney Kamauf schedules production of a popular Rustic Coffee Table at Kamauf Enterprises, Inc. The table requires a top, four legs, $\frac{1}{8}$ gallon of stain, $\frac{1}{16}$ gallon of glue, 2 short braces between the legs and 2 long braces between the legs, and a brass cap that goes on the bottom of each leg. She has 100 gallons of glue in inventory, but none of the other components. All items except the brass caps, stain, and glue are ordered on a lot-for-lot basis. The caps are purchased in quantities of 1,000, stain and glue by the gallon. Lead time is 1 day for each item. Schedule the order releases necessary to produce 640 coffee tables on days 5 and 6, and 128 on days 7 and 8. Px



•••• **14.32** Using the data for the coffee table in Problem 14.31, build a labor schedule when the labor standard for each top is 2 labor-hours; each leg including brass cap installation requires $\frac{1}{4}$ hour, as does each pair of braces. Base assembly requires 1 labor-hour, and final assembly requires 2 labor-hours. What is the total number of labor-hours required each day, and how many employees are needed each day at 8 hours per day?

CASE STUDIES

When 18,500 Orlando Magic Fans Come to Dinner

Video Case

With vast experience at venues such as the American Airlines Arena (in Miami), the Kentucky Derby, and Super Bowls, Chef John Nicely now also plans huge culinary events at Orlando's Amway Center, home of the Orlando Magic basketball team. With his unique talent and exceptional operations skills, Nicely serves tens of thousands of cheering fans at some of the world's largest events. And when more than 18,500 basketball fans show up for a game, expecting great food and great basketball, he puts his creative as well as operations talent to work.

Chef John must be prepared. This means determining not only a total demand for all 18,500 fans, but also translating that demand into specific menu items and beverages. He prepares a forecast from current ticket sales, history of similar events at other venues, and his own records, which reflect the demand with this particular opponent, night of week, time of year, and even time of day. He then breaks the demand for specific menu items and quantities into items to be available at each of the 22 concession stands, 7 restaurants, and 68 suites. He must also be prepared to accommodate individual requests from players on both teams.

Chef John frequently changes the menu to keep it interesting for the fans who attend many of the 41 regular season home games each season. Even the culinary preference of the opponent's fans who may be attending influences the menu. Additionally, when entertainment other than the Magic is using the Amway Center, the demographic mix is likely to be different, requiring additional tweaking of the menu. The size of the wait staff and the kitchen staff change to reflect the size of the crowd; Chef John may be supervising as many as 90 people working in the kitchen. Similarly, the concessions stands, 40% of which have their own grills and fryers, present another challenge, as they are managed by volunteers from nonprofit organizations. The use of these volunteers adds the need for special training and extra enforcement of strict quality standards.

Once deciding on the overall demand and the menu, Chef John must prepare the production specifications (a bill of material) for each item. For the evening game with the Celtics, Chef John is preparing his unique *Cheeto Crusted Mac & Cheese* dish. The ingredients, quantity, costs, and labor requirements are shown below:

Production Specifications

CHEETO CRUSTED MAC & CHEESE (6 PORTIONS)					
INGREDIENTS	QUANTITY	MEASURE	UNIT COST	TOTAL COST	LABOR-HOURS
Elbow macaroni (large, uncooked)	20.00	oz.	$0.09	$1.80	
Cheese—cheddar shredded	10.00	oz.	0.16	1.60	
Mac and cheese base (see recipe)	44.00	oz.	0.80	35.20	
Milk	4.00	oz.	0.03	0.12	
Cheetos, crushed	6.00	oz.	0.27	1.62	
Sliced green onion—garnish	0.50	oz.	0.18	0.09	
Whole Cheetos—garnish	2.00	oz.	0.27	0.54	
Total labor hours					0.2 hours

The yield on this dish is 6 portions, and labor cost is $15 per hour, with fringes. The entire quantity required for the evening is prepared prior to the game and kept in warming ovens until needed. Demand for each basketball game is divided into 5 periods: prior to the game, first quarter, second quarter, half-time, and second half. At the Magic vs. Celtics game next week, the demand (number of portions) in each period is 60, 36, 48, 60, and 12 for the Cheeto Crusted Mac & Cheese dish, respectively.

Discussion Questions*

1. Prepare a bill of material explosion and total cost for the 216 portions of Cheeto Crusted Mac & Cheese.
2. What is the cost per portion? How much less expensive is the Cheeto Crusted Mac & Cheese than Chef John's alternative creation, the Buffalo Chicken Mac & Cheese, shown in Figure 14.9 of this chapter?
3. Assuming that there is no beginning inventory of the Cheeto Crusted Mac & Cheese and cooking time for the entire 216 portions is 0.6 hours, when must preparation begin?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before answering the questions.

MRP at Wheeled Coach

Video Case

Wheeled Coach, the world's largest manufacturer of ambulances, builds thousands of different and constantly changing configurations of its products. The custom nature of its business means lots of options and special designs—and a potential scheduling and inventory nightmare. Wheeled Coach addressed such problems, and succeeded in solving a lot of them, with an MRP system (described in the *Global Company Profile* that opens this chapter). As with most MRP installations, however, solving one set of problems uncovers a new set.

One of the new issues that had to be addressed by plant manager Lynn Whalen was newly discovered excess inventory. Managers discovered a substantial amount of inventory that was not called for in any finished products. Excess inventory was evident because of the new level of inventory accuracy required by the MRP system. The other reason was a new series of inventory reports generated by the IBM MAPICS MRP system purchased by Wheeled Coach. One of those reports indicates where items are used and is known as the "Where Used" report. Interestingly, many inventory items were not called out on bills of material (BOMs) for any current products. In some cases, the reason some parts were in the stockroom remained a mystery.

The discovery of this excess inventory led to renewed efforts to ensure that the BOMs were accurate. With substantial work, BOM accuracy increased and the number of engineering change notices (ECNs) decreased. Similarly, purchase-order accuracy, with regard to both part numbers and quantities ordered, was improved. Additionally, receiving department and stockroom accuracy went up, all helping to maintain schedule, costs, and ultimately, shipping dates and quality.

Eventually, Lynn Whalen concluded that the residual amounts of excess inventory were the result, at least in part, of rapid changes in ambulance design and technology. Another source was customer changes made after specifications had been determined and materials ordered. This latter excess occurs because, even though Wheeled Coach's own throughput time is only 17 days, many of the items that it purchases require much longer lead times.

Discussion Questions*

1. Why is accurate inventory such an important issue at Wheeled Coach?
2. Why does Wheeled Coach have excess inventory, and what kind of a plan would you suggest for dealing with it?
3. Be specific in your suggestions for reducing inventory and how to implement them.

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before answering the questions.

- **Additional Case Studies:** Visit MyOMLab for these free case studies:
  Ikon's attempt at ERP: The giant office technology firm faces hurdles with ERP implementation.
  Hill's Automotive, Inc.: An after-market producer and distributor of auto replacement parts has trouble making MRP work.

Endnotes

1. The inventory models (EOQ) discussed in Chapter 12 assumed that the demand for one item was independent of the demand for another item. For example, EOQ assumes the demand for refrigerator parts is *independent* of the demand for refrigerators and that demand for parts is constant. MRP makes neither of these assumptions.
2. Record accuracy of 99% may sound good, but note that even when each component has an availability of 99% and a product has only seven components, the likelihood of a product being completed is only .932 (because $.99^7 = .932$).
3. Using EOQ is a convenient approach for determining the time between orders, but other rules can be used.
4. *Part period balancing, Silver-Meal,* and *Wagner-Whitin* are included in the software POM for Windows and ExcelOM, available with this text.

Chapter 14 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
DEPENDENT DEMAND (p. 604)	Demand for items is *dependent* when the relationship between the items can be determined. For any product, all components of that product are dependent demand items. ■ **Material requirements planning (MRP)**—A dependent demand technique that uses a bill-of-material, inventory, expected receipts, and a master production schedule to determine material requirements.	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4
DEPENDENT INVENTORY MODEL REQUIREMENTS (pp. 604–609)	Dependent inventory models require that the operations manager know the: (1) Master production schedule; (2) Specifications or bill of material; (3) Inventory availability; (4) Purchase orders outstanding; and (5) Lead times. ■ **Master production schedule (MPS)**—A timetable that specifies what is to be made and when. The MPS is a statement of *what is to be produced*, not a forecast of demand. ■ **Bill of material (BOM)**—A listing of the components, their description, and the quantity of each required to make one unit of a product. Items above any level in a BOM are called *parents*; items below any level are called *components*, or *children*. The top level in a BOM is the 0 level. ■ **Modular bills**—Bills of material organized by major subassemblies or by product options. ■ **Planning bills (or kits)**—Material groupings created in order to assign an artificial parent to a bill of material; also called "pseudo" bills. ■ **Phantom bills of material**—Bills of material for components, usually subassemblies, that exist only temporarily; they are never inventoried. ■ **Low-level coding**—A number that identifies items at the lowest level at which they occur. ■ **Lead time**—In purchasing systems, the time between recognition of the need for an order and receiving it; in production systems, it is the order, wait, move, queue, setup, and run times for each component. When a bill of material is turned on its side and modified by adding lead times for each component, it is called a *time-phased product structure*.	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4 Problems: 14.1–14.4 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 14.1 **VIDEO 14.1** When 18,500 Orlando Magic Fans Come to Dinner **VIDEO 14.2** MRP at Wheeled Coach Ambulances
MRP STRUCTURE (pp. 609–613)	■ **Gross material requirements plan**—A schedule that shows the total demand for an item (prior to subtraction of on-hand inventory and scheduled receipts) and (1) when it must be ordered from suppliers, or (2) when production must be started to meet its demand by a particular date. ■ **Net material requirements**—The result of adjusting gross requirements for inventory on hand and scheduled receipts. ■ **Planned order receipt**—The quantity planned to be received at a future date. ■ **Planned order release**—The scheduled date for an order to be released. Net requirements = Gross requirements + Allocations − (On hand + Scheduled receipts)	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4 Problems: 14.5–14.9, 14.11, 14.16–14.21 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 14.2 **ACTIVE MODEL 14.1**
MRP MANAGEMENT (pp. 613–614)	■ **System nervousness**—Frequent changes in an MRP system. ■ **Time fences**—A means for allowing a segment of the master schedule to be designated as "not to be rescheduled." ■ **Pegging**—In material requirements planning systems, tracing upward the bill of material from the component to the parent item. Four approaches for integrating MRP and JIT are (1) finite capacity scheduling, (2) small buckets, (3) balanced flow, and (4) supermarkets. ■ **Buckets**—Time units in a material requirements planning system. Finite capacity scheduling (FCS) considers department and machine capacity. FCS provides the precise scheduling needed for rapid material movement.	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4
LOT-SIZING TECHNIQUES (pp. 614–618)	■ **Lot-sizing decision**—The process of, or techniques used in, determining lot size. ■ **Lot-for-lot**—A lot-sizing technique that generates exactly what is required to meet the plan. ■ **Periodic order quantity (POQ)**—A lot-sizing technique that issues orders on a predetermined time interval with an order quantity equal to all of the interval's requirements. In general, the lot-for-lot approach should be used whenever low-cost deliveries setup can be achieved.	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.4 Problems: 14.22, 14.26, 14.28

Chapter 14 *Rapid* Review *continued*

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
EXTENSIONS OF MRP (pp. 618–621)	■ **Material requirements planning II (MRP II)**—A system that allows, with MRP in place, inventory data to be augmented by other resource variables; in this case, MRP becomes *material resource planning*. ■ **Closed-loop MRP system**—A system that provides feedback to the capacity plan, master production schedule, and production plan so planning can be kept valid at all times. ■ **Load report**—A report for showing the resource requirements in a work center for all work currently assigned there as well as all planned and expected orders. Tactics for smoothing the load and minimizing the impact of changed lead time include: *overlapping*, *operations splitting*, and *order splitting,* or *lot splitting*.	Concept Questions: 6.1–6.4 Problem: 14.32
MRP IN SERVICES (pp. 621–622)	■ **Distribution resource planning (DRP)**—A time-phased stock-replenishment plan for all levels of a distribution network.	Concept Questions: 7.1–7.4
ENTERPRISE RESOURCE PLANNING (ERP) (pp. 622–625)	■ **Enterprise resource planning (ERP)**—An information system for identifying and planning the enterprise-wide resources needed to take, make, ship, and account for customer orders. In an ERP system, data are entered only once into a common, complete, and consistent database shared by all applications. ■ **Efficient consumer response (ECR)**—Supply-chain management systems in the grocery industry that tie sales to buying, to inventory, to logistics, and to production.	Concept Questions: 8.1–8.4

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 14.1 In a product structure diagram:
a) parents are found only at the top level of the diagram.
b) parents are found at every level in the diagram.
c) children are found at every level of the diagram except the top level.
d) all items in the diagrams are both parents and children.
e) all of the above.

LO 14.2 The difference between a gross material requirements plan (gross MRP) and a net material requirements plan (net MRP) is:
a) the gross MRP may not be computerized, but the net MRP must be computerized.
b) the gross MRP includes consideration of the inventory on hand, whereas the net MRP doesn't include the inventory consideration.
c) the net MRP includes consideration of the inventory on hand, whereas the gross MRP doesn't include the inventory consideration.
d) the gross MRP doesn't take taxes into account, whereas the net MRP includes the tax considerations.
e) the net MRP is only an estimate, whereas the gross MRP is used for actual production scheduling.

LO 14.3 Net requirements =
a) Gross requirements + Allocations − On-hand inventory + Scheduled receipts.
b) Gross requirements − Allocations − On-hand inventory − Scheduled receipts.
c) Gross requirements − Allocations − On-hand inventory + Scheduled receipts.
d) Gross requirements + Allocations − On-hand inventory − Scheduled receipts.

LO 14.4 A lot-sizing procedure that orders on a predetermined time interval with the order quantity equal to the total of the interval's requirement is:
a) periodic order quantity.
b) part period balancing.
c) economic order quantity.
d) all of the above.

LO 14.5 MRP II stands for:
a) material resource planning.
b) management requirements planning.
c) management resource planning.
d) material revenue planning.
e) material risk planning.

LO 14.6 A(n) _____ MRP system provides information to the capacity plan, to the master production schedule, and ultimately to the production plan.
a) dynamic
b) closed-loop
c) continuous
d) retrospective
e) introspective

LO 14.7 Which system extends MRP II to tie in customers and suppliers?
a) MRP III
b) JIT
c) IRP
d) ERP
e) Enhanced MRP II

Answers: LO 14.1. c; LO 14.2. c; LO 14.3. d; LO 14.4. a; LO 14.5. a; LO 14.6. b; LO 14.7. d.

Scheduling for the Short-Term

CHAPTER 15

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *Alaska Airlines*

- The Importance of Short-Term Scheduling *640*
- Scheduling Issues *640*
- Scheduling Process-Focused Facilities *643*
- Loading Jobs *643*
- Sequencing Jobs *649*
- Finite Capacity Scheduling (FCS) *655*
- Scheduling Services *656*

Alaska Airlines

10 OM STRATEGY DECISIONS

- Design of Goods and Services
- Managing Quality
- Process Strategy
- Location Strategies
- Layout Strategies
- Human Resources
- Supply-Chain Management
- Inventory Management
- *Scheduling*
  - Aggregate/S&OP (Ch. 13)
  - ***Short-Term (Ch. 15)***
- Maintenance

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
Alaska Airlines

Scheduling Flights When Weather Is the Enemy

Seattle–Tacoma International Airport (SEA) is the 15th busiest in the U.S. in passenger traffic. Served by 24 airlines that fly non-stop to 76 domestic and 19 international destinations, it is a weather forecaster's nightmare, raining 5 inches a month in the winter season. But it is also the top-ranked U.S. airport in on-time departures, at 85.8%. Much of the credit goes to Alaska Airlines, which dominates traffic at SEA with over 50% of all domestic flights. Alaska's scheduling is critical to efficiency and passenger service.

4 A.M.
FORECAST: Rain with a chance of light snow for Seattle.

ACTION: Discuss status of planes and possible need for cancellations.

10 A.M.
FORECAST: Freezing rain after 5 P.M.

ACTION: Ready deicing trucks; develop plans to cancel 50% to 80% of flights after 6 P.M.

1:30 P.M.
FORECAST: Rain changing to snow.

ACTION: Cancel half the flights from 6 P.M. to 10 A.M.; notify passengers and reroute planes.

5 P.M.
FORECAST: Less snow than expected.

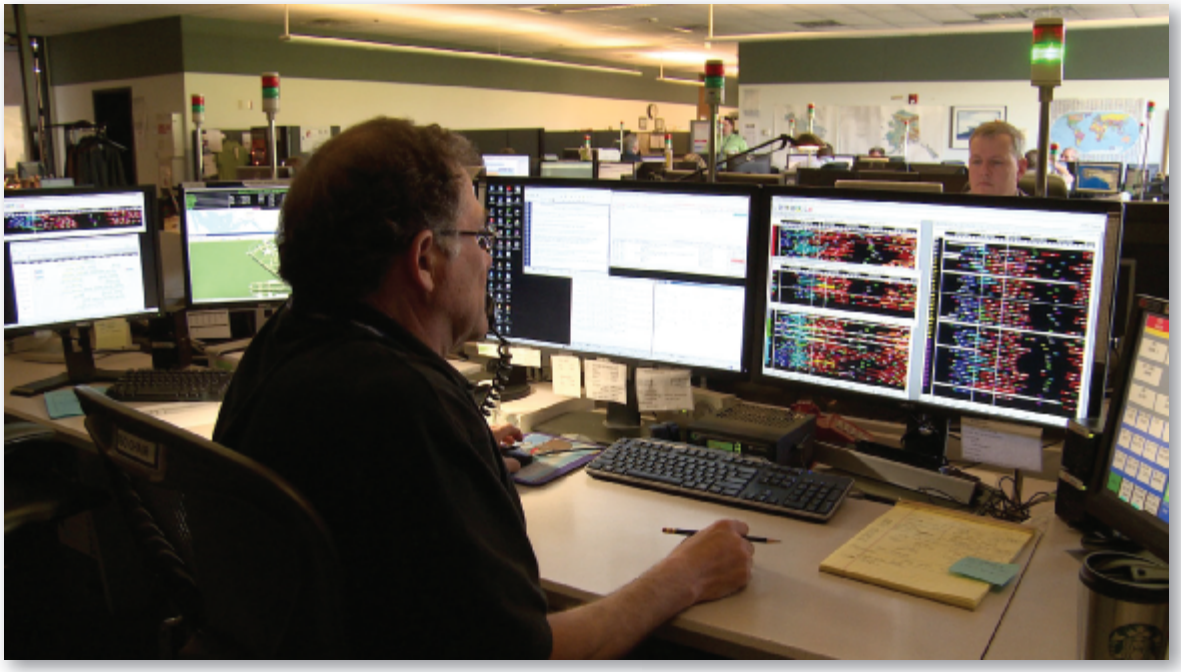
ACTION: Continue calling passengers and arrange alternate flights.

10 P.M.
FORECAST: Snow tapering off.

ACTION: Find hotels for 600 passengers stranded by the storm.

This is typical of what Alaska Air officials had to do one December day when a storm bore down on Seattle.

Managers at airlines, such as Alaska, learn to expect the unexpected. Events that require rapid rescheduling are a regular part of life. Throughout the ordeals of hurricanes, tornadoes, ice storms, snow storms, and more, airlines around the globe struggle to cope with delays, cancellations, and furious passengers. The inevitable schedule changes often create a ripple effect that impacts passengers at dozens of airports.



Alaska Airlines

To improve flight rescheduling efforts, Alaska Air employees monitor numerous screens that display flights in progress, meteorological charts, and weather patterns at its Flight Operations Department in Seattle. Note the many *andon* signal lights used to indicate "status OK" (green), "needs attention" (yellow), or "major issue—emergency" (red).

Mike Segar/Corbis

J. David Ake/AP Images

Weather-related disruptions can create major scheduling and expensive snow removal issues for airlines (left), just as they create major inconveniences for passengers (right).

shipfactory/Shutterstock

To maintain schedules, Alaska Airlines uses elaborate equipment and motivated personnel for snow and ice removal.

Alaska Air's quest to provide passenger and freight service to the state of Alaska complicates its scheduling even more than that of other airlines. Here are just three examples: (1) Juneau's airport is surrounded by mountains, so the approach is often buffeted by treacherous wind shears; (2) Sitka's one small runway is on a narrow strip of land surrounded by water; and (3) in Kodiak, the landing strip ends abruptly at a mountainside. The airport approach is so tricky that first officers are not allowed to land there—only captains are trusted to do so.

Alaska Air takes the sting out of the scheduling nightmares that come from weather-related problems by using the latest technology on its planes and in its Flight Operations Department, located near the Seattle airport. From computers to telecommunications systems to deicers, the department reroutes flights, gets its jets in the air, and quickly notifies customers of schedule changes. The department's job is to keep flights flowing despite the disruptions. Alaska estimates that it saves $18 million a year by using its technology to reduce cancellations and delays.

With mathematical scheduling models such as the ones described in this text, Alaska quickly develops alternate schedules and route changes. This may mean coordinating incoming and outgoing aircraft, ensuring crews are on hand, and making sure information gets to passengers as soon as possible. Weather may be the enemy, but Alaska Airlines has learned how to manage it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **LO 15.1** ***Explain*** the relationship between short-term scheduling, capacity planning, aggregate planning, and a master schedule 641
- **LO 15.2** ***Draw*** Gantt loading and scheduling charts 645
- **LO 15.3** ***Apply*** the assignment method for loading jobs 646
- **LO 15.4** ***Name*** and describe each of the priority sequencing rules 651
- **LO 15.5** ***Use*** Johnson's rule 654
- **LO 15.6** ***Define*** finite capacity scheduling 655
- **LO 15.7** ***Use*** the cyclical scheduling technique 658

The Importance of Short-Term Scheduling

Alaska Airlines doesn't just schedule its 150 aircraft every day; it also schedules over 4,500 pilots and flight attendants to accommodate passengers seeking timely arrival at their destinations. This schedule, developed with huge computer programs, plays a major role in meeting customer expectations. Alaska finds competitive advantage with its ability to make last-minute adjustments to demand fluctuations and weather disruptions.

Scheduling decisions for five organizations—an airline, a hospital, a college, a sports arena, and a manufacturer—are shown in Table 15.1. These decisions all deal with the timing of operations.

When manufacturing firms make schedules that match resources to customer demands, scheduling competence focuses on making parts on a just-in-time basis, with low setup times, little work-in-process, and high facility utilization. Efficient scheduling is how manufacturing companies drive down costs and meet promised due dates.

The strategic importance of scheduling is clear:

- Internally effective scheduling means faster movement of goods and services through a facility and greater use of assets. The result is greater capacity per dollar invested, which translates into lower costs.
- Externally good scheduling provides faster throughput, added flexibility, and more dependable delivery, improving customer service.

STUDENT TIP Scheduling decisions range from years, for capacity planning, to minutes/hours/days, called short-term scheduling. This chapter focuses on the latter.

Scheduling Issues

Figure 15.1 shows that a series of decisions affects scheduling. Schedule decisions begin with planning capacity, which defines the facility and equipment resources available (discussed in Supplement 7). **Capacity plans** are usually made over a period of years as new equipment

TABLE 15.1 Scheduling Decisions

ORGANIZATION	MANAGERS SCHEDULE THE FOLLOWING
Alaska Airlines	Maintenance of aircraft Departure timetables Flight crews, catering, gate, and ticketing personnel
Arnold Palmer Hospital	Operating room use Patient admissions Nursing, security, maintenance staffs Outpatient treatments
University of Alabama	Classrooms and audiovisual equipment Student and instructor schedules Graduate and undergraduate courses
Amway Center	Ushers, ticket takers, food servers, security personnel Delivery of fresh foods and meal preparation Orlando Magic games, concerts, arena football
Lockheed Martin factory	Production of goods Purchases of materials Workers

VIDEO 15.1
From the Eagles to the Magic: Converting the Amway Center

Capacity Planning
(Long term; years)
Changes in facilities
Changes in equipment
See Chapter 7 and Supplement 7

Capacity Plan for New Facilities
Adjust capacity to the demand suggested by strategic plan

Myrleen Pearson/Alamy

Aggregate Planning
(Intermediate term; quarterly or monthly)
Facility utilization
Personnel changes
Subcontracting
See Chapter 13

Aggregate Production Plan for All Bikes
(Determine personnel or subcontracting necessary to match aggregate demand to existing facilities/capacity)

Month	1	2
Bike Production	800	850

Master Schedule
(Intermediate term; weekly)
Material requirements planning
Disaggregate the aggregate plan
See Chapters 13 and 14

Master Production Schedule for Bike Models
(Determine weekly capacity schedule)

	Month 1				Month 2			
Week	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Model 22		200		200		200		200
Model 24	100		100		150		100	
Model 26	100		100		100		100	

Short-Term Scheduling
(Short term; days, hours, minutes)
Work center loading
Job sequencing/dispatching
See this chapter

Work Assigned to Specific Personnel and Work Centers
Make finite capacity schedule by matching specific tasks to specific people and machines

Assemble Model 22 in work center 6

Peter Endig/dpa/Landov

Figure **15.1**
The Relationship Between Capacity Planning, Aggregate Planning, Master Schedule, and Short-Term Scheduling for a Bike Company

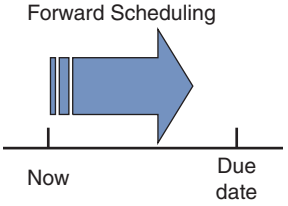
and facilities are designed, built, purchased, or shut down. **Aggregate plans** (Chapter 13) are the result of a Sales and Operating Planning team that makes decisions regarding the use of facilities, inventory, people, and outside contractors. Aggregate plans are typically for 3 to 18 months, and resources are allocated in terms of an aggregate measure such as total units, tons, or shop hours. The **master schedule** breaks down the aggregate plan and develops weekly schedules for specific products or product lines. **Short-term schedules** then translate capacity decisions, aggregate (intermediate) plans, and master schedules into job sequences and specific assignments of personnel, materials, and machinery. In this chapter, we focus on this last step, scheduling goods and services in the *short run* (that is, matching daily or hourly demands to specific personnel and equipment capacity). See the *OM in Action* box "Prepping for the Orlando Magic Basketball Game."

LO 15.1 *Explain* the relationship between short-term scheduling, capacity planning, aggregate planning, and a master schedule

The objective of scheduling is to allocate and prioritize demand (generated by either forecasts or customer orders) to available facilities. Three factors are pervasive in scheduling: (1) generating the schedule forward or backward, (2) finite and infinite loading, and (3) the criteria (priorities) for sequencing jobs. We discuss these topics next.

Forward and Backward Scheduling

Scheduling can be initiated forward or backward. Forward scheduling starts the schedule *as soon as the job requirements are known*. Forward scheduling is used in organizations such as hospitals, clinics, restaurants, and machine tool manufacturers. In these facilities, jobs are performed to customer order, and delivery is typically scheduled at the earliest possible date.



OM in Action — Prepping for the Orlando Magic Basketball Game

Tuesday. It's time for John Nicely to make a grocery list. He is serving dinner on Sunday, so he will need a few things . . . 200 pounds of chicken and steak, ingredients for 800 servings of mac 'n' cheese, 500 spring rolls, and 75 pounds of shrimp. Plus a couple hundred pizzas and a couple thousand hot dogs—just enough to feed the Orlando Magic basketball players and the 18,500 guests expected. You see, Nicely is the executive chef of the Amway Center in Orlando, and on Sunday the Magic are hosting the Boston Celtics.

How do you feed huge crowds good food in a short time? It takes good scheduling, combined with creativity and improvisation. With 42 facilities serving food and beverages, "the Amway Center," Nicely says, "is its own beast."

Wednesday. Shopping Day.

Thursday–Saturday. The staff prepares whatever it can. Chopping vegetables, marinating meats, mixing salad dressings—everything but cooking the food. Nicely also begins his shopping lists for next Tuesday's game against the Miami Heat and for a Lady Gaga concert 3 days later.

Sunday. 4 P.M. Crunch time. Suddenly the kitchen is a joke-free zone. In 20 minutes, Nicely's first clients, 120 elite ticket holders who belong to the Ritz Carlton Club, expect their meals—from a unique menu created for each game.

5 P.M. As the Magic and Celtics start warming up, the chefs move their operation in a brisk procession of hot boxes and cold-food racks to the satellite kitchens.

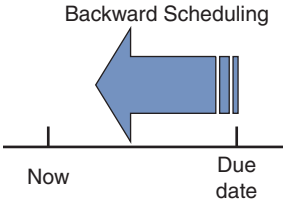
6:12 P.M. Nicely faces surprises at three concession stands: a shortage of cashiers and a broken cash register.

Halftime. There is a run on rice pilaf in the upscale Jernigan's restaurant. But Nicely has thought ahead and has anticipated. The backup dishes arrive before customers even notice.

Fernando Medina

For Nicely, successful scheduling means happy guests as a result of a thousand details having been identified, planned, and executed. Just another night of delivering restaurant-quality meals and top-grade fast food to a sold-out arena crowd in a span of a few hours.

Source: Interview with Chef John Nicely and Orlando Magic executives.



Backward scheduling *begins with the due date,* scheduling the *final* operation first. Steps within the job are then scheduled, one at a time, in reverse order. By subtracting the time needed for each item, the start time is obtained. Backward scheduling is used in manufacturing environments, as well as service environments such as catering a banquet or scheduling surgery. In practice, a combination of forward and backward scheduling is often used to find a reasonable trade-off between capacity constraints and customer expectations.

Finite and Infinite Loading

Loading
The assigning of jobs to work or processing centers.

Loading is the process of assigning jobs to work stations or processes. Scheduling techniques that load (or assign) work only up to the capacity of the process are called *finite loading*. The advantage of finite loading is that, in theory, all of the work assigned can be accomplished. However, because only work that can be accomplished is loaded into workstations—when in fact there may be more work than capacity—the due dates may be pushed out to an unacceptable future time.

Techniques that load work without regard for the capacity of the process are *infinite loading*. All the work that needs to be accomplished in a given time period is assigned. The capacity of the process is not considered. Most material requirements planning (MRP) systems (discussed in Chapter 14) are infinite loading systems. The advantage of infinite loading is an initial schedule that meets due dates. Of course, when the workload exceeds capacity, either the capacity or the schedule must be adjusted.

Scheduling Criteria

The correct scheduling technique depends on the volume of orders, the nature of operations, and the overall complexity of jobs, as well as the importance placed on each of four criteria:

1. *Minimize completion time:* Evaluated by determining the average completion time.
2. *Maximize utilization:* Evaluated by determining the percent of the time the facility is utilized.
3. *Minimize work-in-process (WIP) inventory:* Evaluated by determining the average number of jobs in the system. The relationship between the number of jobs in the system and

TABLE 15.2 Different Processes Suggest Different Approaches to Scheduling

Process-focused facilities (job shops)
◆ Scheduling to customer orders where changes in both volume and variety of jobs/clients/patients are frequent.
◆ Schedules are often due-date focused, with loading refined by finite loading techniques.
◆ *Examples:* foundries, machine shops, cabinet shops, print shops, many restaurants, and the fashion industry.
Repetitive facilities (assembly lines)
◆ Schedule module production and product assembly based on frequent forecasts.
◆ Finite loading with a focus on generating a forward-looking schedule.
◆ JIT techniques are used to schedule components that feed the assembly line.
◆ *Examples:* assembly lines for washing machines at Whirlpool and automobiles at Ford.
Product-focused facilities (continuous)
◆ Schedule high-volume finished products of limited variety to meet a reasonably stable demand within existing fixed capacity.
◆ Finite loading with a focus on generating a forward-looking schedule that can meet known setup and run times for the limited range of products.
◆ *Examples:* huge paper machines at International Paper, beer in a brewery at Anheuser-Busch, and potato chips at Frito-Lay.

WIP inventory will be high. Therefore, the fewer the number of jobs that are in the system, the lower the inventory.

4. *Minimize customer waiting time:* Evaluated by determining the average number of late periods (e.g., days or hours).

These four criteria are used in this chapter, as they are in industry, to evaluate scheduling performance. In addition, good scheduling techniques should be simple, clear, easily understood, easy to carry out, flexible, and realistic.

Scheduling is further complicated by machine breakdowns, absenteeism, quality problems, shortages, and other factors. Consequently, assignment of a date does not ensure that the work will be performed according to the schedule. Many specialized techniques have been developed to aid in preparing reliable schedules. Table 15.2 provides an overview of approaches to scheduling for three different processes.

In this chapter, we first examine the scheduling of process-focused facilities and then the challenge of scheduling employees in the service sector.

Scheduling Process-Focused Facilities

Process-focused facilities (also known as *intermittent*, or *job-shop, facilities*) are common in high-variety, low-volume manufacturing and service organizations. These facilities produce make-to-order products or services and include everything from auto repair garages and hospitals to beauty salons. The production items themselves differ considerably, as do the talents, material, and equipment required to make them. Scheduling requires that the sequence of work (its routing), time required for each item, and the capacity and availability of each work center be known. The variety of products and unique requirements means that scheduling is often complex. In this section we look at some of the tools available to managers for loading and sequencing work for these facilities.

Loading Jobs

Operations managers assign jobs to work centers so that costs, idle time, or completion times are kept to a minimum. "Loading" work centers takes two forms. One is oriented to capacity; the second is related to assigning specific jobs to work centers.

First, we examine loading from the perspective of capacity via a technique known as *input–output* control. Then, we present two approaches used for loading: *Gantt charts* and the *assignment method* of linear programming.

Input–Output Control

Many firms have difficulty scheduling (that is, achieving effective throughput) because they overload the production processes. This often occurs because they do not know actual performance in the work centers. Effective scheduling depends on matching the schedule to performance. Lack of knowledge about capacity and performance causes reduced throughput.

Input–output control
A system that allows operations personnel to manage facility work flows.

Input–output control is a technique that allows operations personnel to manage facility work flows. If the work is arriving faster than it is being processed, the facility is overloaded, and a backlog develops. Overloading causes crowding in the facility, leading to inefficiencies and quality problems. If the work is arriving at a slower rate than jobs are being performed, the facility is underloaded, and the work center may run out of work. Underloading the facility results in idle capacity and wasted resources. Example 1 shows the use of input–output controls.

Example 1

INPUT–OUTPUT CONTROL

Bronson Machining, Inc., manufactures driveway security fences and gates. It wants to develop an input–output control report for its welding work center for 5 weeks (weeks 6/6 through 7/4). The planned input is 280 standard hours per week. The actual input is close to this figure, varying between 250 and 285. Output is scheduled at 320 standard hours, which is the assumed capacity. A backlog exists in the work center.

APPROACH ► Bronson uses schedule information to create Figure 15.2, which monitors the workload–capacity relationship at the work center.

Figure **15.2**
Input–Output Control

Welding Work Center (In standard hours)

Week Ending	6/6	6/13	6/20	6/27	7/4	7/11
Planned Input	280	280	280	280	280	
Actual Input	270	250	280	285	280	
Cumulative Deviation	–10	–40	–40	–35		
Planned Output	320	320	320	320		
Actual Output	270	270	270	270		
Cumulative Deviation	–50	–100	–150	–200		
Cumulative Change in Backlog*	0	–20	–10	+5		

Explanation: 270 input, 270 output, implies 0 change.

Explanation: 250 input, 270 output, implies –20 change. (20 standard hours less work in the work center)

*Sum of actual inputs minus sum of actual outputs = cumulative change in backlog

SOLUTION ► The deviations between scheduled input and actual output are shown in Figure 15.2. Actual output (270 hours) is substantially less than planned. Therefore, neither the input plan nor the output plan is being achieved.

INSIGHT ► The backlog of work in this work center has actually increased by 5 hours by week 6/27. This increases work-in-process inventory, complicating the scheduling task and indicating the need for manager action.

LEARNING EXERCISE ► If actual output for the week of 6/27 was 275 (instead of 270), what changes? [Answer: Output cumulative deviation now is −195, and cumulative change in backlog is 0.]

RELATED PROBLEM ► 15.10

ConWIP cards
Cards that control the amount of work in a work center, aiding input–output control.

Input–output control can be maintained by a system of **ConWIP cards**, which control the amount of work in a work center. ConWIP is an acronym for *constant work-in-process*. The ConWIP card travels with a job (or batch) through the work center. When the job is finished, the card is released and returned to the initial workstation, authorizing the entry of a new

batch into the work center. The ConWIP card effectively limits the amount of work in the work center, controls lead time, and monitors the backlog.

Gantt Charts

Gantt charts are visual aids that are useful in loading and scheduling. The name is derived from Henry Gantt, who developed them in the late 1800s. The charts show the use of resources, such as work centers and labor.

Gantt charts
Planning charts used to schedule resources and allocate time.

When used in *loading*, Gantt charts show the loading and idle times of several departments, machines, or facilities. They display the relative workloads in the system so that the manager knows what adjustments are appropriate. For example, when one work center becomes overloaded, employees from a low-load center can be transferred temporarily to increase the workforce. Or if waiting jobs can be processed at different work centers, some jobs at high-load centers can be transferred to low-load centers. Versatile equipment may also be transferred among centers. Example 2 illustrates a simple Gantt load chart.

Example 2

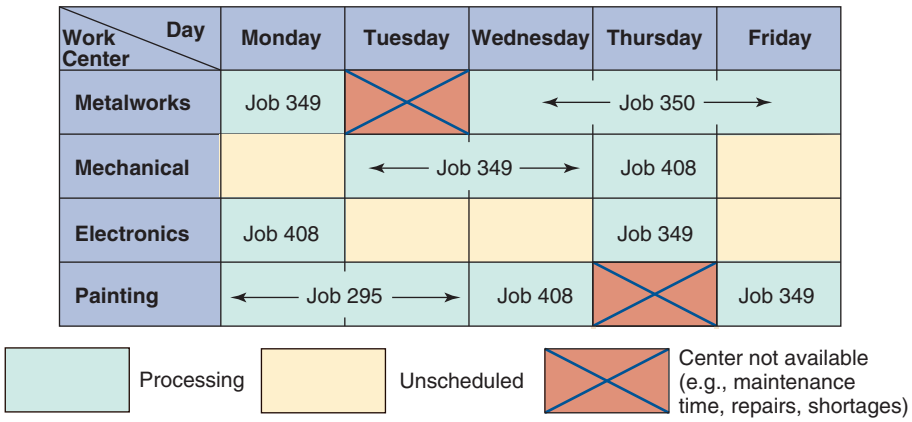
GANTT LOAD CHART

A New Orleans washing machine manufacturer accepts special orders for machines to be used in such unique facilities as submarines, hospitals, and large industrial laundries. The production of each machine requires varying tasks and durations. The company wants to build a load chart for the week of March 8.

APPROACH ▶ The Gantt chart is selected as the appropriate graphical tool.

SOLUTION ▶ Figure 15.3 shows the completed Gantt chart.

Figure **15.3**
Gantt Load Chart for the Week of March 8



INSIGHT ▶ The four work centers process several jobs during the week. This particular chart indicates that the metalworks and painting centers are completely loaded for the entire week. The mechanical and electronic centers have some idle time scattered during the week. We also note that the metalworks center is unavailable on Tuesday, and the painting center is unavailable on Thursday, perhaps for preventive maintenance.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ What impact results from the electronics work center closing on Tuesday for preventive maintenance? [Answer: None.]

RELATED PROBLEM ▶ 15.1b

LO 15.2 *Draw* Gantt loading and scheduling charts

The Gantt *load chart* has a major limitation: it does not account for production variability such as unexpected breakdowns or human errors that require reworking a job. Consequently, the chart must also be updated regularly to account for new jobs and revised time estimates.

A Gantt *schedule chart* is used to monitor jobs in progress (and is also used for project scheduling). It indicates which jobs are on schedule and which are ahead of or behind schedule. In practice, many versions of the chart are found. The schedule chart in Example 3 places jobs in progress on the vertical axis and time on the horizontal axis.

Example 3

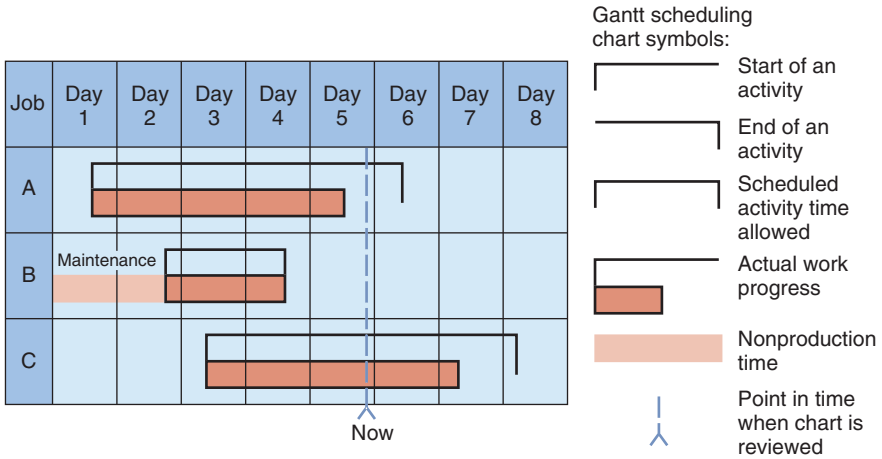
GANTT SCHEDULING CHART

First Printing in Winter Park, Florida, wants to use a Gantt chart to show the scheduling of three orders, jobs A, B, and C.

APPROACH ▶ In Figure 15.4, each pair of brackets on the time axis denotes the estimated starting and finishing of a job enclosed within it. The solid bars reflect the actual status or progress of the job. We are just finishing day 5.

SOLUTION ▶

Figure **15.4**
Gantt Scheduling Chart for Jobs A, B, and C at First Printing



INSIGHT ▶ Figure 15.4 illustrates that job A is about a half-day behind schedule at the end of day 5. Job B was completed after equipment maintenance. We also see that job C is ahead of schedule.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ Redraw the Gantt chart to show that job A is a half-day *ahead* of schedule. [Answer: The orangish bar now extends all the way to the end of the activity.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 15.1a, 15.2

Assignment Method

Assignment method
A special class of linear programming models that involves assigning tasks or jobs to resources.

The **assignment method** involves assigning tasks or jobs to resources. Examples include assigning jobs to machines, contracts to bidders, people to projects, and salespeople to territories. The objective is most often to minimize total costs or time required to perform the tasks at hand. One important characteristic of assignment problems is that only one job (or worker) is assigned to one machine (or project).

Each assignment problem uses a table. The numbers in the table will be the costs or times associated with each particular assignment. For example, if First Printing has three available typesetters (A, B, and C) and three new jobs to be completed, its table might appear as follows. The dollar entries represent the firm's estimate of what it will cost for each job to be completed by each typesetter.

LO 15.3 *Apply* the assignment method for loading jobs

JOB	TYPESETTER		
	A	B	C
R-34	$11	$14	$ 6
S-66	$ 8	$10	$11
T-50	$ 9	$12	$ 7

The assignment method involves adding and subtracting appropriate numbers in the table to find the lowest *opportunity cost*[1] for each assignment. There are four steps to follow:

1. Subtract the smallest number in each row from every number in that row and then, from the resulting matrix, subtract the smallest number in each column from every number in that column. This step has the effect of reducing the numbers in the table until a series

of zeros, meaning *zero opportunity costs*, appear. Even though the numbers change, this reduced problem is equivalent to the original one, and the same solution will be optimal.

2. Draw the minimum number of vertical and horizontal straight lines necessary to cover all zeros in the table. If the number of lines equals either the number of rows or the number of columns in the table, then we can make an optimal assignment (see Step 4). If the number of lines is less than the number of rows or columns, we proceed to Step 3.
3. Subtract the smallest number not covered by a line from every other uncovered number. Add the same number to any number(s) lying at the intersection of any two lines. Do not change the value of the numbers that are covered by only one line. Return to Step 2 and continue until an optimal assignment is possible.
4. Optimal assignments will always be at zero locations in the table. One systematic way of making a valid assignment is first to select a row or column that contains only one zero square. We can make an assignment to that square and then draw lines through its row and column. From the uncovered rows and columns, we choose another row or column in which there is only one zero square. We make that assignment and continue the procedure until we have assigned each person or machine to one task.

Example 4 shows how to use the assignment method.

Example 4

STUDENT TIP

You can also tackle assignment problems with our Excel OM or POM software or with Excel's Solver add-in.

ASSIGNMENT METHOD

First Printing wants to find the minimum total cost assignment of 3 jobs to 3 typesetters.

APPROACH ▶ The cost table shown earlier in this section is repeated here, and steps 1 through 4 are applied.

JOB \ TYPESETTER	A	B	C
R-34	$11	$14	$ 6
S-66	$ 8	$10	$11
T-50	$ 9	$12	$ 7

SOLUTION ▶

Step 1A: Using the previous table, subtract the smallest number in each row from every number in the row. The result is shown in the table on the left.

JOB \ TYPESETTER	A	B	C
R-34	5	8	0
S-66	0	2	3
T-50	2	5	0

JOB \ TYPESETTER	A	B	C
R-34	5	6	0
S-66	0	0	3
T-50	2	3	0

Step 1B: Using the above left table, subtract the smallest number in each column from every number in the column. The result is shown in the table on the right.

Step 2: Draw the minimum number of vertical and horizontal straight lines needed to cover all zeros. Because two lines suffice, the solution is not optimal.

JOB \ TYPESETTER	A	B	C
R-34	5	6	0
S-66	~~0~~	~~0~~	~~3~~
T-50	(2)	3	0

Smallest uncovered number

Step 3: Subtract the smallest uncovered number (2 in this table) from every other uncovered number and add it to numbers at the intersection of two lines.

JOB \ TYPESETTER	A	B	C
R-34	3	4	0
S-66	0	0	5
T-50	0	1	0

Return to step 2. Cover the zeros with straight lines again.

JOB \ TYPESETTER	A	B	C
R-34	3	4	0
S-66	0	0	
T-50	0	1	0

Because three lines are necessary, an optimal assignment can be made (see Step 4). Assign R-34 to person C, S-66 to person B, and T-50 to person A. Referring to the original cost table, we see that:

$$\text{Minimum cost} = \$6 + \$10 + \$9 = \$25$$

INSIGHT ▶ If we had assigned S-66 to typesetter A, we could not assign T-50 to a zero location.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If it costs \$10 for Typesetter C to complete Job R-34 (instead of \$6), how does the solution change? [Answer: R-34 to A, S-66 to B, T-50 to C; cost = \$28.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 15.3–15.9 (15.11–15.14 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch15Ex4.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

Some assignment problems entail *maximizing* profit, effectiveness, or payoff of an assignment of people to tasks or of jobs to machines. An equivalent minimization problem can be obtained by converting every number in the table to an *opportunity loss*. To convert a maximizing problem to an equivalent minimization problem, we create a minimizing table by subtracting every number in the original payoff table from the largest single number in that table. We then proceed to step 1 of the four-step assignment method. Minimizing the opportunity loss produces the same assignment solution as the original maximization problem.

Nicholas D. Cacchione/Shutterstock

The problem of scheduling major league baseball umpiring crews from one series of games to the next is complicated by many restrictions on travel. The league strives to achieve two conflicting objectives: (1) balance crew assignments relatively evenly among all teams over the course of a season and (2) minimize travel costs. Using the assignment method, the time it takes the league to generate a schedule has been significantly decreased, and the quality of the schedule has improved.

Sequencing Jobs

Once jobs are *loaded* in a work center, as we just discussed, managers decide the *sequence* in which they are to be completed. **Sequencing** (often called *dispatching*) is accomplished by specifying the priority rules to use to release (dispatch) jobs to each work center.

Sequencing
Determining the order in which jobs should be done at each work center.

Priority Rules for Sequencing Jobs

Priority rules are especially applicable for process-focused facilities such as clinics, print shops, and manufacturing job shops. The most popular priority rules are:

- **FCFS:** first come, first served. Jobs are completed in the order they arrived.
- **SPT:** shortest processing time. Jobs with the shortest processing times are assigned first.
- **EDD:** earliest due date. Earliest due date jobs are assigned first.
- **LPT:** longest processing time. Jobs with the longest processing time are assigned first.

Priority rules
Rules used to determine the sequence of jobs in process-oriented facilities.

Performance Criteria The choice of which priority rule to choose depends in part on how each rule performs on four criteria: the priority rules try to minimize *completion time,* maximize *facility utilization,* minimize *number of jobs in the system*, and minimize *job lateness*. These performance criteria incorporate the concept of **flow time**, which measures the time each job spends waiting plus time being processed. For example, if Job B waits 6 days for Job A to be processed and then takes 2 more days of operation time itself, its flow time would be 6 + 2 = 8 days. The performance criteria are measured as:

Flow time
The time between the release of a job to a work center until the job is finished.

$$\text{Average completion time} = \frac{\text{Sum of total flow time}}{\text{Number of jobs}} \tag{15-1}$$

$$\text{Utilization metric} = \frac{\text{Total job work (processing) time}}{\text{Sum of total flow time}} \tag{15-2}$$

$$\text{Average number of jobs in the system} = \frac{\text{Sum of total flow time}}{\text{Total job work (processing) time}} \tag{15-3}$$

$$\text{Average job lateness} = \frac{\text{Total late days}}{\text{Number of jobs}} \tag{15-4}$$

Computing the lateness of a particular job involves assumptions about the start time during the day and the timing of delivering a completed job. Equation (15-5) assumes that today is a work day, work has not yet begun today, and a job finished by the end of a day can be delivered to the customer that same day.

$$\text{Job lateness} = \text{Max}\{0, \text{yesterday} + \text{flow time} - \text{due date}\} \tag{15-5}$$

For example, suppose that today is day 20 (thus yesterday was day 19). Job A is due tomorrow (day 21) and has a flow time of 1 day. That job would be considered to be completed on time, i.e., not late:

$$\text{Max}\{0, 19 + 1 - 21\} = \text{Max}\{0, -1\} = 0 \text{ days late.}$$

Meanwhile, Job B is due on day 32 and has a flow time of 15 days. The lateness of Job B would be:

$$\text{Max}\{0, 19 + 15 - 32\} = \text{Max}\{0, 2\} = 2 \text{ days late.}$$

We will examine four of the most popular priority rules in Example 5.

Example 5

PRIORITY RULES FOR DISPATCHING

Five architectural rendering jobs are waiting to be assigned at Avanti Sethi Architects. Their work (processing) times and due dates are given in the following table. The firm wants to determine the sequence of processing according to (1) FCFS, (2) SPT, (3) EDD, and (4) LPT rules. Jobs were assigned a letter in the order they arrived. Today is day 1, and work begins today.

Job	Job Work (Processing) Time (Days)	Job Due Date (Days)
A	6	8
B	2	6
C	8	18
D	3	15
E	9	23

APPROACH ▶ Each of the four priority rules is examined in turn. Four measures of effectiveness can be computed for each rule and then compared to see which rule is best for the company.

SOLUTION ▶

1. The *FCFS* sequence shown in the next table is simply A–B–C–D–E.

Job Sequence	Job Work (Processing) Time	Flow Time	Job Due Date	Job Lateness
A	6	6	8	0
B	2	8	6	2
C	8	16	18	0
D	3	19	15	4
E	9	28	23	5
	28	77		11

The FCFS rule results in the following measures of effectiveness:

a. Average completion time $= \dfrac{\text{Sum of total flow time}}{\text{Number of jobs}}$

$= \dfrac{77 \text{ days}}{5} = 15.4 \text{ days}$

b. Utilization metric $= \dfrac{\text{Total job work (processing) time}}{\text{Sum of total flow time}}$

$= \dfrac{28}{77} = 36.4\%$

c. Average number of jobs in the system $= \dfrac{\text{Sum of total flow time}}{\text{Total job work (processing) time}}$

$= \dfrac{77 \text{ days}}{28 \text{ days}} = 2.75 \text{ jobs}$

d. Average job lateness $= \dfrac{\text{Total late days}}{\text{Number of jobs}} = \dfrac{11}{5} = 2.2 \text{ days}$

2. The *SPT* rule shown in the next table results in the sequence B–D–A–C–E. Orders are sequenced according to processing time, with the highest priority given to the shortest job.

Job Sequence	Job Work (Processing) Time	Flow Time	Job Due Date	Job Lateness
B	2	2	6	0
D	3	5	15	0
A	6	11	8	3
C	8	19	18	1
E	9	28	23	5
	28	65		9

Measurements of effectiveness for SPT are:

a. Average completion time $= \dfrac{65}{5} = 13 \text{ days}$

b. Utilization metric $= \dfrac{28}{65} = 43.1\%$

c. Average number of jobs in the system $= \dfrac{65}{28} = 2.32 \text{ jobs}$

d. Average job lateness $= \dfrac{9}{5} = 1.8 \text{ days}$

LO 15.4 *Name* and describe each of the priority sequencing rules

3. The *EDD* rule shown in the next table gives the sequence B–A–D–C–E. Note that jobs are ordered by earliest due date first.

Job Sequence	Job Work (Processing) Time	Flow Time	Job Due Date	Job Lateness
B	2	2	6	0
A	6	8	8	0
D	3	11	15	0
C	8	19	18	1
E	9	28	23	5
	28	68		6

Measurements of effectiveness for EDD are:

a. Average completion time $= \frac{68}{5} = 13.6$ days

b. Utilization metric $= \frac{28}{68} = 41.2\%$

c. Average number of jobs in the system $= \frac{68}{28} = 2.43$ jobs

d. Average job lateness $= \frac{6}{5} = 1.2$ days

4. The *LPT* rule shown in the next table results in the order E–C–A–D–B.

Job Sequence	Job Work (Processing) Time	Flow Time	Job Due Date	Job Lateness
E	9	9	23	0
C	8	17	18	0
A	6	23	8	15
D	3	26	15	11
B	2	28	6	22
	28	103		48

Measures of effectiveness for LPT are:

a. Average completion time $= \frac{103}{5} = 20.6$ days

b. Utilization metric $= \frac{28}{103} = 27.2\%$

c. Average number of jobs in the system $= \frac{103}{28} = 3.68$ jobs

d. Average job lateness $= \frac{48}{5} = 9.6$ days

The results of these four rules are summarized in the following table:

Rule	Average Completion Time (days)	Utilization Metric (%)	Average Number of Jobs in System	Average Lateness (days)
FCFS	15.4	36.4	2.75	2.2
SPT	13.0	43.1	2.32	1.8
EDD	13.6	41.2	2.43	1.2
LPT	20.6	27.2	3.68	9.6

INSIGHT ▶ LPT is the least effective measurement for sequencing for the Avanti Sethi firm. SPT is superior in 3 measures, and EDD is superior in the fourth (average lateness).

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If job A takes 7 days (instead of 6), how do the 4 measures of effectiveness change under the FCFS rule? [Answer: 16.4 days, 35.4%, 2.83 jobs, 2.8 days late.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 15.15, 15.17a–d, 15.18, 15.19 (15.15 alternate, 15.24 are available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch15Ex5.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

ACTIVE MODEL 15.1 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 15.1 in MyOMLab.

Your doctor may use a first-come, first-served priority rule satisfactorily. However, such a rule may be less than optimal for this emergency room. What priority rule might be best, and why? What priority rule is often used on TV hospital dramas?

Tyler Olson/Fotolia

The results in Example 5 are typically true in the real world also. No one sequencing rule always excels on all criteria. Experience indicates the following:

1. **Shortest processing time** is generally the best technique for minimizing job flow and minimizing the average number of jobs in the system. Its chief disadvantage is that long-duration jobs may be continuously pushed back in priority in favor of short-duration jobs. Customers may view this dimly, and a periodic adjustment for longer jobs must be made.
2. **First come, first served** does not score well on most criteria (but neither does it score particularly poorly). It has the advantage, however, of appearing fair to customers, which is important in service systems.
3. **Earliest due date** minimizes maximum tardiness, which may be necessary for jobs that have a very heavy penalty after a certain date. In general, EDD works well when lateness is an issue.

Critical Ratio

Critical ratio (CR)
A sequencing rule that is an index number computed by dividing the time remaining until due date by the work time remaining.

For organizations that have due dates (such as manufacturers and many firms like your local printer and furniture re-upholsterer), the critical ratio for sequencing jobs is beneficial. The critical ratio (CR) is an index number computed by dividing the time remaining until due date by the work time remaining. As opposed to the priority rules, critical ratio is dynamic and easily updated. It tends to perform better than FCFS, SPT, EDD, or LPT on the average job-lateness criterion.

The critical ratio gives priority to jobs that must be done to keep shipping on schedule. A job with a low critical ratio (less than 1.0) is one that is falling behind schedule. If CR is exactly 1.0, the job is on schedule. A CR greater than 1.0 means the job is ahead of schedule and has some slack.

The formula for critical ratio is:

$$\text{CR} = \frac{\text{Time remaining}}{\text{Workdays remaining}} = \frac{\text{Due date} - \text{Today's date}}{\text{Work (lead) time remaining}} \qquad (15\text{-}6)$$

Example 6 shows how to use the critical ratio.

Example 6

CRITICAL RATIO

Today is day 25 on Zyco Medical Testing Laboratories' production schedule. Three jobs are on order, as indicated here:

JOB	DUE DATE	WORKDAYS REMAINING
A	30	4
B	28	5
C	27	2

APPROACH ► Zyco wants to compute the critical ratios, using the formula for CR.

SOLUTION ►

JOB	CRITICAL RATIO	PRIORITY ORDER
A	(30 − 25)/4 = 1.25	3
B	(28 − 25)/5 = .60	1
C	(27 − 25)/2 = 1.00	2

INSIGHT ► Job B has a critical ratio of less than 1, meaning it will be late unless expedited. Thus, it has the highest priority. Job C is on time, and job A has some slack. Once job B has been completed, we would recompute the critical ratios for jobs A and C to determine whether their priorities have changed.

LEARNING EXERCISE ► Today is day 24 (a day earlier) on Zyco's schedule. Recompute the CRs and determine the priorities. [Answer: 1.5, 0.8, 1.5; B is still number 1, but now jobs A and C are tied for second.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ► 15.16, 15.17e, 15.21

In most production scheduling systems, the critical-ratio rule can help do the following:

1. Determine the status of a specific job.
2. Establish relative priority among jobs on a common basis.
3. Adjust priorities (and revise schedules) automatically for changes in both demand and job progress.
4. Dynamically track job progress.

Sequencing *N* Jobs on Two Machines: Johnson's Rule

The next step in complexity is the case in which *N* jobs (where *N* is 2 or more) must go through two different machines or work centers in the same order. (Each work center only works on one job at a time.) This is called the *N*/2 problem.

Johnson's rule can be used to minimize the time for sequencing a group of jobs through two work centers. It also minimizes total idle time on the machines. *Johnson's rule* involves four steps:

Johnson's rule
An approach that minimizes the total time for sequencing a group of jobs through two work centers while minimizing total idle time in the work centers.

1. All jobs are to be listed, and the time that each requires on a machine is to be shown.
2. Select the job with the shortest activity time. If the shortest time lies with the first machine, the job is scheduled first. If the shortest time lies with the second machine, schedule the job last. Ties in activity times can be broken arbitrarily.
3. Once a job is scheduled, eliminate it.
4. Apply steps 2 and 3 to the remaining jobs, working toward the center of the sequence.

Example 7 shows how to apply Johnson's rule.

Example 7

JOHNSON'S RULE

Five specialty jobs at a La Crosse, Wisconsin, tool and die shop must be processed through two work centers (drill press and lathe). The time for processing each job follows:

Work (processing) Time for Jobs (hours)

JOB	WORK CENTER 1 (DRILL PRESS)	WORK CENTER 2 (LATHE)
A	5	2
B	3	6
C	8	4
D	10	7
E	7	12

The owner, Niranjan Pati, wants to set the sequence to minimize his total time for the five jobs.

LO 15.5 *Use* Johnson's rule

APPROACH ▶ Pati applies the four steps of Johnson's rule.

SOLUTION ▶

1. The job with the shortest processing time is A, in work center 2 (with a time of 2 hours). Because it is at the second center, schedule A last. Eliminate it from consideration.

				A

2. Job B has the next shortest time (3 hours). Because that time is at the first work center, we schedule it first and eliminate it from consideration.

B				A

3. The next shortest time is job C (4 hours) on the second machine. Therefore, it is placed as late as possible.

B			C	A

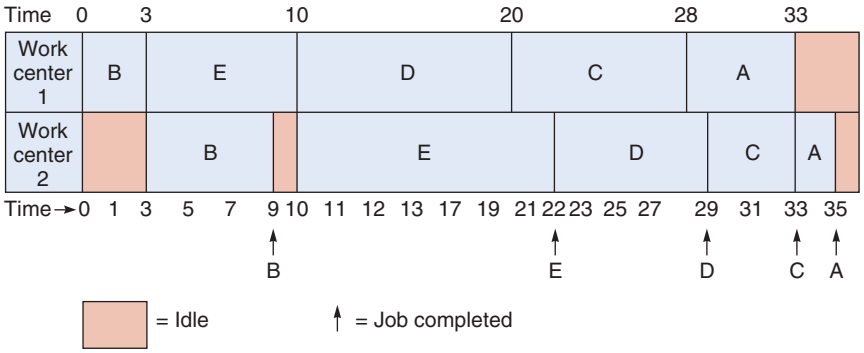
4. There is a tie (at 7 hours) for the shortest remaining job. We can place E, which was on the first work center, first. Then D is placed in the last sequencing position:

B	E	D	C	A

The sequential times are:

Work center 1	3	7	10	8	5
Work center 2	6	12	7	4	2

The time-phased flow of this job sequence is best illustrated graphically:



Thus, the five jobs are completed in 35 hours.

INSIGHT ▶ The second work center will wait 3 hours for its first job, and it will also wait 1 hour after completing job B.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If job C takes 8 hours in work center 2 (instead of 4 hours), what sequence is best? [Answer: B–E–C–D–A.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 15.20, 15.22, 15.23 (15.25 is available in MyOMLab)

EXCEL OM Data File **Ch15Ex7.xls** can be found in MyOMLab.

Limitations of Rule-Based Sequencing Systems

The scheduling techniques just discussed are rule-based techniques, but rule-based systems have a number of limitations. Among these are the following:

1. Scheduling is dynamic; therefore, rules need to be revised to adjust to changes in orders, process, equipment, product mix, and so forth.

2. Rules do not look upstream or downstream; idle resources and bottleneck resources in other departments may not be recognized.
3. Rules do not look beyond due dates. For instance, two orders may have the same due date. One order involves restocking a distributor and the other is a custom order that will shut down the customer's factory if not completed. Both may have the same due date, but clearly the custom order is more important.

Despite these limitations, schedulers often use sequencing rules such as SPT, EDD, or critical ratio. They apply these methods at each work center and then modify the sequence to deal with a multitude of real-world variables. They may do this manually or with finite capacity scheduling software.

Finite Capacity Scheduling (FCS)

Finite capacity scheduling (FCS)
Computerized short-term scheduling that overcomes the disadvantage of rule-based systems by providing the user with graphical interactive computing.

Short-term scheduling systems are also called finite capacity scheduling.[2] **Finite capacity scheduling (FCS)** overcomes the disadvantages of systems based exclusively on rules by providing the scheduler with interactive computing and graphic output. In dynamic scheduling environments such as job shops (with high variety, low volume, and shared resources) we expect changes. But changes disrupt schedules. Operations managers are moving toward FCS systems that allow virtually instantaneous change by the operator. Improvements in communication on the shop floor are also enhancing the accuracy and speed of information necessary for effective control in job shops. Computer-controlled machines can monitor events and collect information in near real-time. This means the scheduler can make schedule changes based on up-to-the-minute information. These schedules are often displayed in Gantt chart form. In addition to including priority rule options, many of the current FCS systems also combine an "expert system" or simulation techniques and allow the scheduler to assign costs to various options. The scheduler has the flexibility to handle any situation, including order, labor, or machine changes.

LO 15.6 *Define* finite capacity scheduling

The combining of planning and FCS data, priority rules, models to assist analysis, and Gantt chart output is shown in Figure 15.5.

Finite capacity scheduling allows delivery requirements to be based on today's conditions and today's orders, not according to some predefined rule. The scheduler determines what constitutes a "good" schedule. FCS software packages such as Lekin (shown in Figure 15.6), ProPlanner, Preactor, Asprova, Schedlyzer, and Jobplan are currently used at over 60% of U.S. plants.

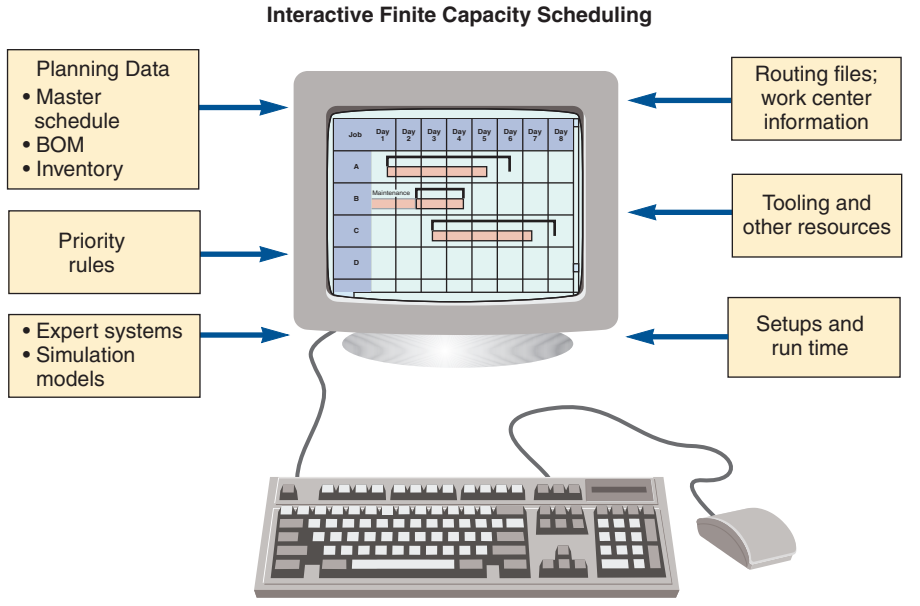


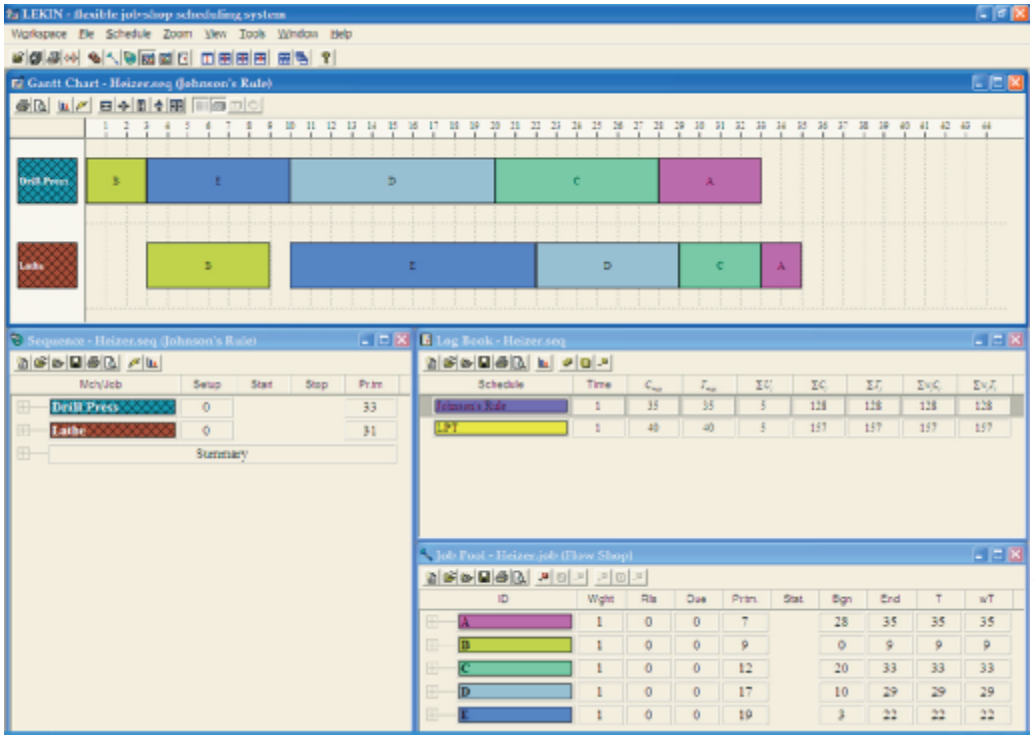
Figure **15.5**

Finite Capacity Scheduling Systems Use Production Data to Generate Gantt Load Charts, and Work-in-Process Data That Can Be Manipulated by the User to Evaluate Schedule Alternatives

Figure 15.6

Finite Capacity Scheduling (FCS) System

This Lekin® finite capacity scheduling software presents a schedule of the five jobs and the two work centers shown in Example 7 (pages 615–616) in Gantt chart form. The software is capable of using a variety of priority rules and many jobs. The Lekin software is available for free at **http://community.stern.nyu.edu/om/software/lekin/download.html** and can solve many of the problems at the end of this chapter.



Screenshot from Lekin® Finite Capacity Scheduling Software. Reprinted with permission.

Scheduling Services

STUDENT TIP Scheduling people to perform services can be even more complex than scheduling machines.

Scheduling service systems differs from scheduling manufacturing systems in several ways:

- In manufacturing, the scheduling emphasis is on machines and materials; in services, it is on staffing levels.
- Inventories can help smooth demand for manufacturers, but many service systems do not maintain inventories.
- Services are labor intensive, and the demand for this labor can be highly variable.
- Legal considerations, such as wage and hour laws and union contracts that limit hours worked per shift, week, or month, constrain scheduling decisions.
- Because services usually schedule people (rather than material), social, fatigue, seniority, and status issues complicate scheduling.

The following examples note the complexity of scheduling services.

VIDEO 15.2
Scheduling at Hard Rock Cafe

Hospitals A hospital is an example of a service facility that may use a scheduling system every bit as complex as one found in a job shop. Hospitals seldom use a machine shop priority system such as first come, first served (FCFS) for treating emergency patients, but they often use FCFS *within* a priority class, a "triage" approach. And they often schedule products (such as surgeries) just like a factory, maintaining excess capacity to meet wide variations in demand.

Banks Cross-training of the workforce in a bank allows loan officers and other managers to provide short-term help for tellers if there is a surge in demand. Banks also employ part-time personnel to provide a variable capacity.

Retail Stores Scheduling optimization systems, such as Workbrain, Cybershift, and Kronos, are used at retailers including Walmart, Payless Shoes, and Target. These systems track individual store sales, transactions, units sold, and customer traffic in 15-minute increments to create work schedules. Walmart's 2.2 million and Target's 350,000 employees used to take thousands of managers' hours to schedule; now staffing is drawn up nationwide in a few hours, and customer checkout experience has improved dramatically.

Starbucks' scheduling software is discussed in the *OM in Action* box on the next page.

OM in Action Starbucks' Controversial Scheduling Software

Starbucks recently announced revisions to the way the company schedules its 130,000 baristas, saying it wanted to improve "stability and consistency" in work hours from week to week. The company intends to curb the much-loathed practice of "clopening," or workers closing the store late at night and returning just a few hours later to reopen. All work hours must be posted at least one week in advance, a policy that has been only loosely followed in the past. Baristas with more than an hour's commute will be given the option to transfer to more convenient locations, and scheduling software will be revised to allow more input from managers.

The revisions came in response to a newspaper article about a single mother struggling to keep up with erratic hours set by automated software. A growing push to curb scheduling practices, enabled by sophisticated software, has caused havoc in employees' lives: giving only a few days' notice of working hours; sending workers home early when sales are slow; and shifting hours significantly from week to week. Those practices have been common at Starbucks. And many other chains use even more severe methods, such as requiring workers to have "open availability," or be able to work anytime they are needed, or to stay "on call," meaning they only find out that morning if they are needed.

Starbucks prides itself on progressive labor practices, such as offering health benefits, free online degrees at Arizona State University, and stock. But baristas across the country say that their actual working conditions vary wildly, and that the company often fails to live up to its professed ideals, by refusing to offer any guaranteed hours to part-time workers and keeping many workers' pay at minimum wage. Scheduling has been an issue for years. Said a former company executive: "Labor is the biggest controllable cost for front-line operators, who are under incredible pressure to hit financial targets."

RosaIreneBetancourt 7/Alamy

Sources: New York Times (September 24, 2015 and August 15, 2014) and *BloombergBusinessweek* (August 15, 2014).

Airlines Two of the constraints airlines face when scheduling flight crews are: (1) a complex set of FAA work-time limitations and (2) union contracts that guarantee crew pay for some number of hours each day or each trip. Planners must also make efficient use of their other expensive resource: aircraft. These schedules are typically built using linear programming models.

24/7 Operations Emergency hotlines, police/fire departments, telephone operations, and mail-order businesses (such as L.L.Bean) schedule employees 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. To allow management flexibility in staffing, sometimes part-time workers can be employed. This provides both benefits (in using odd shift lengths or matching anticipated workloads) and difficulties (from the large number of possible alternatives in terms of days off, lunch hour times, rest periods, starting times). Most companies use computerized scheduling systems to cope with these complexities.

Patricia McDonnell/AP Images

Good scheduling in the health care industry can help keep nurses happy and costs contained. Here, nurses in Boston protest nurse-staffing levels in Massachusetts hospitals. Shortages of qualified nurses is a chronic problem.

Scheduling Service Employees with Cyclical Scheduling

A number of techniques and algorithms exist for scheduling service-sector employees when staffing needs vary. This is typically the case for police officers, nurses, restaurant staff, tellers, and retail sales clerks. Managers, trying to set a timely and efficient schedule that keeps personnel happy, can spend substantial time each month developing employee schedules. Such schedules often consider a fairly long planning period (say, 6 weeks). One approach that is workable yet simple is *cyclical scheduling*.

LO 15.7 *Use* the cyclical scheduling technique

Cyclical Scheduling Cyclical scheduling focuses on developing varying (inconsistent) schedules with the minimum number of workers. In these cases, each employee is assigned to a shift and has prescribed time off. Let's look at Example 8.

Example 8

CYCLICAL SCHEDULING

Hospital administrator Doris Laughlin wants to staff the oncology ward using a standard 5-day workweek with two consecutive days off, but also wants to minimize the staff. However, as in most hospitals, she faces an inconsistent demand. Weekends have low usage. Doctors tend to work early in the week, and patients peak on Wednesday then taper off.

APPROACH ▶ Doris must first establish staffing requirements. Then the following five-step process is applied.

SOLUTION ▶

1. Doris has determined that the necessary daily staffing requirements are:

DAY	MONDAY	TUESDAY	WEDNESDAY	THURSDAY	FRIDAY	SATURDAY	SUNDAY
Staff required	5	5	6	5	4	3	3

2. Identify the two consecutive days that have the *lowest total requirement* and circle these. Assign these two days off to the first employee. In this case, the first employee has Saturday and Sunday off because 3 plus 3 is the *lowest sum* of any 2 days. In the case of a tie, choose the days with the lowest adjacent requirement, or by first assigning Saturday and Sunday as an "off" day. If there are more than one, make an arbitrary decision.
3. We now have an employee working each of the uncircled days; therefore, make a new row for the next employee by subtracting 1 from the first row (because one day has been worked)—except for the circled days (which represent the days not worked) and any day that has a zero. That is, do not subtract from a circled day or a day that has a value of zero.
4. In the new row, identify the two consecutive days that have the lowest total requirement and circle them. Assign the next employee to the remaining days.
5. Repeat the process (Steps 3 and 4) until all staffing requirements are met.

	MONDAY	TUESDAY	WEDNESDAY	THURSDAY	FRIDAY	SATURDAY	SUNDAY
Employee 1	5	5	6	5	4	(3)	(3)
Employee 2	4	4	5	4	3	(3)	(3)
Employee 3	3	3	4	3	(2)	(3)	3
Employee 4	2	2	3	(2)	(2)	3	2
Employee 5	(1)	(1)	2	2	2	2	1
Employee 6	1	1	1	1	1	(1)	(0)
Employee 7						1	
Capacity (measured in number of employees)	5	5	6	5	4	3	3
Excess capacity	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

Doris needs six full-time employees to meet the staffing needs and one employee to work Saturday.

Notice that capacity (number of employees) equals requirements, provided an employee works overtime on Saturday, or a part-time employee is hired for Saturday.

INSIGHT ▶ Doris has implemented an efficient scheduling system that accommodates 2 consecutive days off for every employee.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If Doris meets the staffing requirement for Saturday with a full-time employee, how does she schedule that employee? [Answer: That employee can have any 2 days off, except Saturday, and capacity will exceed requirements by 1 person each day the employee works (except Saturday).]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 15.26, 15.27

Using the approach in Example 8, Colorado General Hospital saved an average of 10 to 15 hours a month and found these added advantages: (1) no computer was needed, (2) the nurses were happy with the schedule, (3) the cycles could be changed seasonally to accommodate avid skiers, and (4) recruiting was easier because of predictability and flexibility. This approach yields an optimum, although there may be multiple optimal solutions.

Other cyclical scheduling techniques have been developed to aid service scheduling. Some approaches use linear programming: This is how Hard Rock Cafe schedules its services (see the Video Case Study at the end of this chapter). There is a natural bias in scheduling to use tools that are understood and yield solutions that are accepted.

Summary

Scheduling involves the timing of operations to achieve the efficient movement of units through a system. This chapter addressed the issues of short-term scheduling in process-focused and service environments. We saw that process-focused facilities are production systems in which products are made to order and that scheduling tasks in them can become complex. Several aspects and approaches to scheduling, loading, and sequencing of jobs were introduced. These ranged from Gantt charts and the assignment method of scheduling to a series of priority rules, the critical-ratio rule, Johnson's rule for sequencing, and finite capacity scheduling.

Service systems generally differ from manufacturing systems. This leads to the use of first-come, first-served rules and appointment and reservation systems, as well as linear programming for matching capacity to demand in service environments.

Key Terms

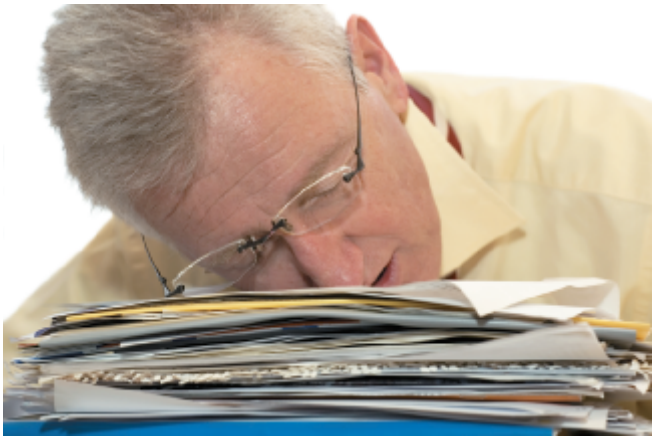
Loading (p. 642)
Input–output control (p. 644)
ConWIP cards (p. 644)
Gantt charts (p. 645)
Assignment method (p. 646)
Sequencing (p. 649)
Priority rules (p. 649)
Flow time (p. 649)
Critical ratio (CR) (p. 652)
Johnson's rule (p. 653)
Finite capacity scheduling (FCS) (p. 655)

Ethical Dilemma

Scheduling people to work second and third shifts (evening and "graveyard") is a problem in almost every 24-hour company. Medical and ergonomic data indicate the body does not respond well to significant shifts in its natural circadian rhythm of sleep. There are also significant long-run health issues with frequent changes in work and sleep cycles.

Consider yourself the manager of a nonunion steel mill that must operate 24-hour days, and where the physical demands are such that 8-hour days are preferable to 10- or 12-hour days.

Your empowered employees have decided that they want to work weekly rotating shifts. That is, they want a repeating work cycle of 1 week, 7 A.M. to 3 P.M., followed by a second week from 3 P.M. to 11 P.M., and the third week from 11 P.M. to 7 P.M. You are sure this is not a good idea in terms of both productivity and the long-term health of the employees. If you do not accept their decision, you undermine the work empowerment program, generate a morale issue, and perhaps, more significantly, generate few more votes for a union. What is the ethical position and what do you do?



Marcel Mooij/Shutterstock

Discussion Questions

1. What is the overall objective of scheduling?
2. List the four criteria for determining the effectiveness of a *scheduling* decision. How do these criteria relate to the four criteria for *sequencing* decisions?
3. Describe what is meant by "loading" work centers. What are the two ways work centers can be loaded? What are two techniques used in loading?
4. Name five priority sequencing rules. Explain how each works to assign jobs.
5. What are the advantages and disadvantages of the shortest processing time (SPT) rule?
6. What is a due date?
7. Explain the terms *flow time* and *lateness*.
8. Which shop-floor scheduling rule would you prefer to apply if you were the leader of the only team of experts charged with defusing several time bombs scattered throughout your building? You can see the bombs; they are of different types. You can tell how long each one will take to defuse. Discuss.
9. When is Johnson's rule best applied in job-shop scheduling?
10. State the four effectiveness measures for dispatching rules.
11. What are the steps of the assignment method of linear programming?
12. What are the advantages to finite capacity scheduling?
13. What is input–output control?

Using Software for Short-Term Scheduling

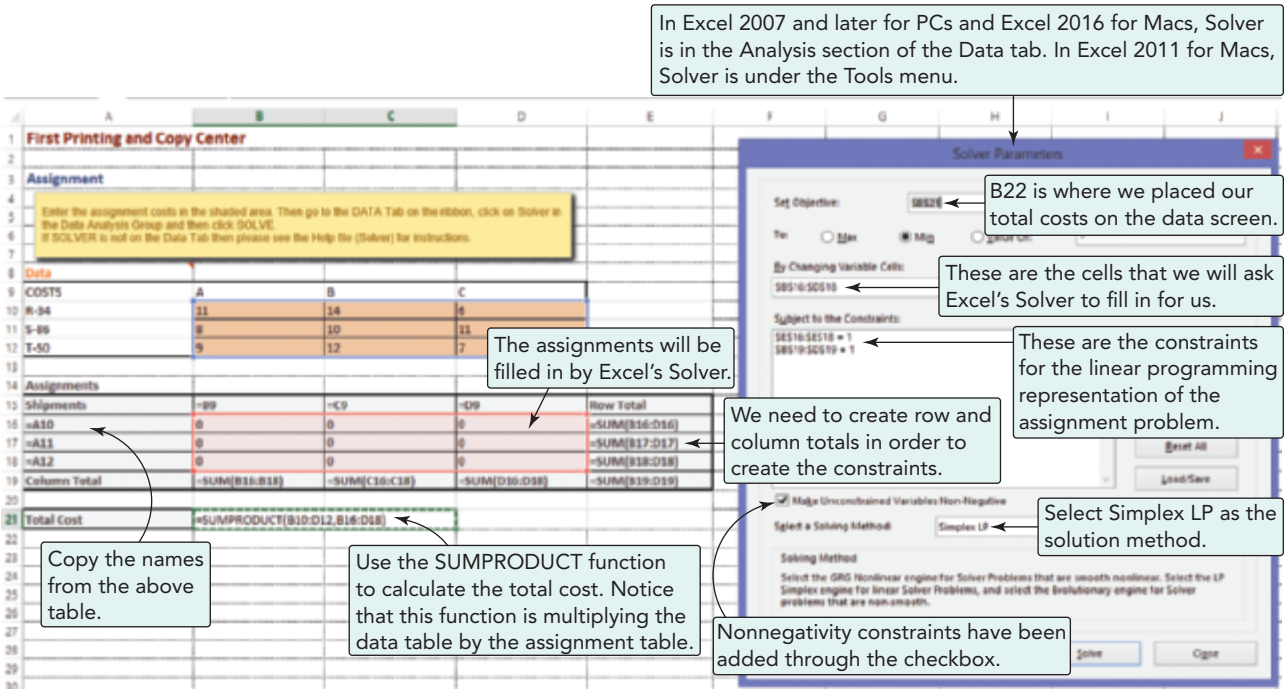
In addition to the commercial software we noted in this chapter, short-term scheduling problems can be solved with the Excel OM software that comes free with this text. POM for Windows also includes a scheduling module. The use of each of these programs is explained next.

USING EXCEL OM

Excel OM has two modules that help solve short-term scheduling problems: Assignment and Job Shop Scheduling. The Assignment module is illustrated in Programs 15.1 and 15.2. The input screen, using the Example 4 data, appears first, as Program 15.1. Once the data are all entered, we choose the **Data tab** command, followed by the **Solver** command. Excel's Solver uses linear programming to optimize assignment problems. (So select Simplex LP.) The constraints are also shown in Program 15.1. We then select the **Solve** command; the solution appears in Program 15.2.

Excel OM's Job Shop Scheduling module is illustrated in Program 15.3. Program 15.3 uses Example 5's data. Because jobs are listed in the sequence in which they arrived (see column A), the results are for the FCFS rule. Program 15.3 also shows some of the formulas (columns F, G, H, I, J) used in the calculations.

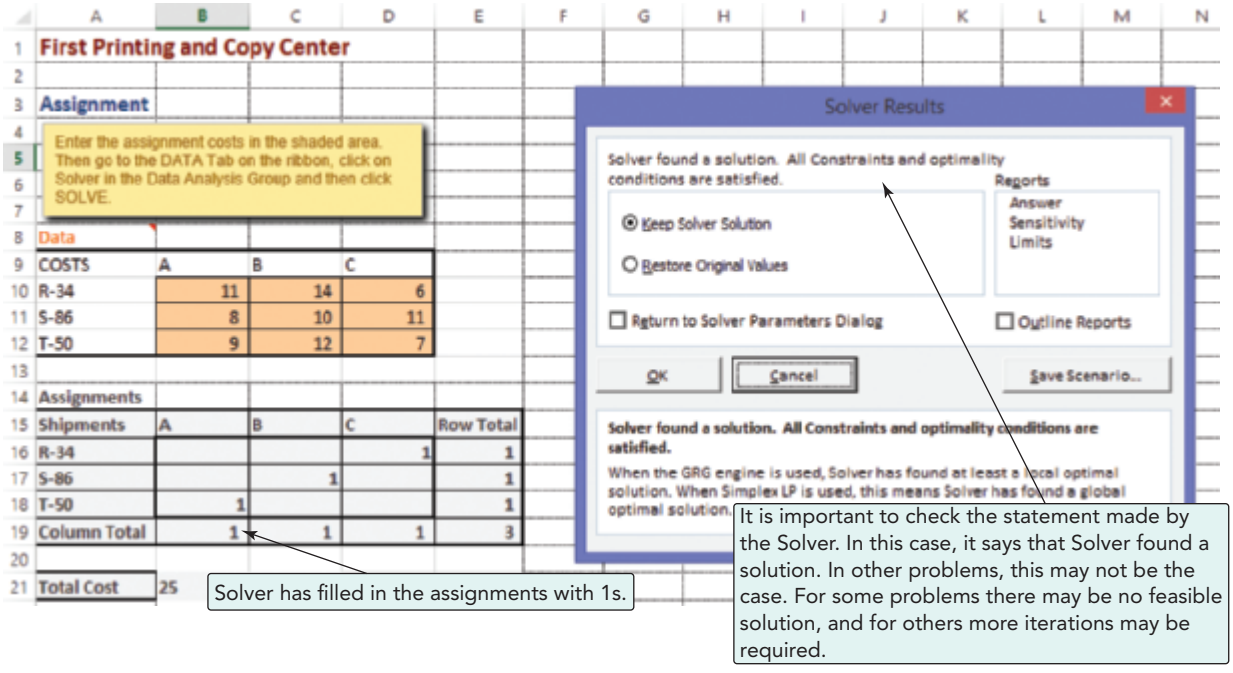
To solve with the SPT rule, we need four intermediate steps: (1) Select (that is, highlight) the data in columns A, B, C for all jobs; (2) invoke the **Data** command; (3) invoke the **Sort** command; and (4) sort by **Time** (column C) in *ascending* order. To solve for EDD, Step 4 changes to sort by **Due Date** (column D) in *ascending* order. Finally, for an LPT solution, Step 4 becomes sort by **Due Date** (column D) in *descending* order.



Program **15.1**

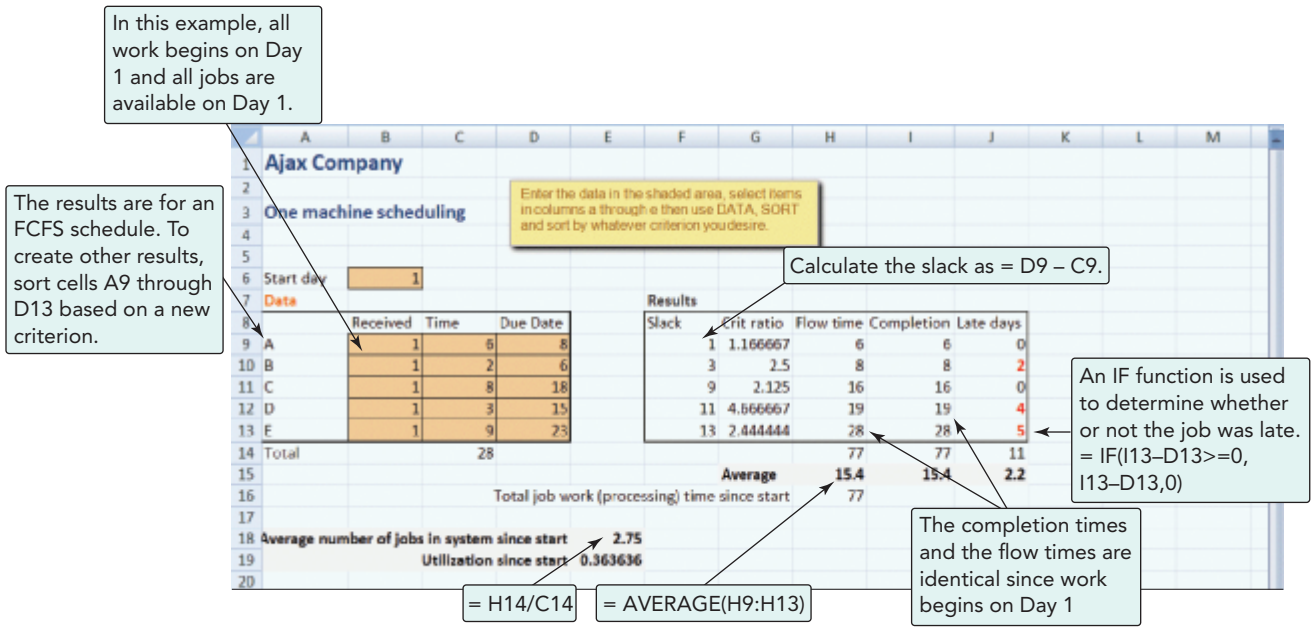
Excel OM's Assignment Module Using Example 4's Data

After entering the problem data in the yellow area, select Data, then Solver.



Program **15.2**

Excel OM Output Screen for Assignment Problem Described in Program 15.1



Program **15.3**

Excel OM's Job Shop Scheduling Module Applied to Example 5's Data

P USING POM FOR WINDOWS

POM for Windows can handle both categories of scheduling problems we see in this chapter. Its Assignment module is used to solve the traditional one-to-one assignment problem of people to tasks, machines to jobs, and so on. Its Job Shop Scheduling module can solve a one- or two-machine job-shop problem. Available priority rules include SPT, FCFS, EDD, and LPT. Each can be examined in turn once the data are all entered. Refer to Appendix IV for specifics regarding POM for Windows.

Solved Problems

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM 15.1

King Finance Corporation, headquartered in New York, wants to assign three recently hired college graduates, Julie Jones, Al Smith, and Pat Wilson, to regional offices. However, the firm also has an opening in New York and would send one of the three there if it were more economical than a move to Omaha, Dallas, or Miami. It will cost $1,000 to relocate Jones to New York, $800 to relocate Smith there, and $1,500 to move Wilson. What is the optimal assignment of personnel to offices?

HIREE \ OFFICE	OMAHA	MIAMI	DALLAS
Jones	$800	$1,100	$1,200
Smith	$500	$1,600	$1,300
Wilson	$500	$1,000	$2,300

SOLUTION

a) The cost table has a fourth column to represent New York. To "balance" the problem, we add a "dummy" row (person) with a zero relocation cost to each city.

HIREE \ OFFICE	OMAHA	MIAMI	DALLAS	NEW YORK
Jones	$800	$1,100	$1,200	$1,000
Smith	$500	$1,600	$1,300	$ 800
Wilson	$500	$1,000	$2,300	$1,500
Dummy	0	0	0	0

b) Subtract the smallest number in each row and cover all zeros (column subtraction of each column's zero will give the same numbers and therefore is not necessary):

HIREE \ OFFICE	OMAHA	MIAMI	DALLAS	NEW YORK
Jones	0	300	400	200
Smith	0	1,100	800	300
Wilson	0	500	1,800	1,000
Dummy	~~0~~	0	0	~~0~~

c) Only 2 lines cover, so subtract the smallest uncovered number (200) from all uncovered numbers, and add it to each square where two lines intersect. Then cover all zeros:

OFFICE / HIREE	OMAHA	MIAMI	DALLAS	NEW YORK
Jones	0	100	200	0
Smith	0	900	600	100
Wilson	0	300	1,600	800
Dummy	200	0	0	0

d) Only 3 lines cover, so subtract the smallest uncovered number (100) from all uncovered numbers, and add it to each square where two lines intersect. Then cover all zeros:

OFFICE / HIREE	OMAHA	MIAMI	DALLAS	NEW YORK
Jones	0	0	100	0
Smith	0	800	500	100
Wilson	0	200	1,500	800
Dummy	300	0	0	100

e) Still only 3 lines cover, so subtract the smallest uncovered number (100) from all uncovered numbers, add it to squares where two lines intersect, and cover all zeros:

OFFICE / HIREE	OMAHA	MIAMI	DALLAS	NEW YORK
Jones	100	0	100	0
Smith	0	700	400	0
Wilson	0	100	1,400	700
Dummy	400	0	0	100

f) Because it takes four lines to cover all zeros, an optimal assignment can be made at zero squares. We assign:

Wilson to Omaha
Jones to Miami
Dummy (no one) to Dallas
Smith to New York

$$\text{Cost} = \$500 + \$1{,}100 + \$0 + \$800$$
$$= \$2{,}400$$

SOLVED PROBLEM 15.2

A defense contractor in Dallas has six jobs awaiting processing. Processing time and due dates are given in the table. Assume that jobs arrive in the order shown. Set the processing sequence according to FCFS and evaluate. Start date is day 1.

JOB	JOB PROCESSING TIME (DAYS)	JOB DUE DATE (DAYS)
A	6	22
B	12	14
C	14	30
D	2	18
E	10	25
F	4	34

SOLUTION

FCFS has the sequence A–B–C–D–E–F.

JOB SEQUENCE	JOB PROCESSING TIME	FLOW TIME	DUE DATE	JOB LATENESS
A	6	6	22	0
B	12	18	14	4
C	14	32	30	2
D	2	34	18	16
E	10	44	25	19
F	4	48	34	14
	48	182		55

1. Average completion time = 182/6 = 30.33 days
2. Average number of jobs in system = 182/48 = 3.79 jobs
3. Average job lateness = 55/6 = 9.16 days
4. Utilization = 48/182 = 26.4%

SOLVED PROBLEM 15.3

The Dallas firm in Solved Problem 15.2 also wants to consider job sequencing by the SPT priority rule. Apply SPT to the same data, and provide a recommendation.

SOLUTION

SPT has the sequence D–F–A–E–B–C.

Job Sequence	Job Processing Time	Flow Time	Due Date	Job Lateness
D	2	2	18	0
F	4	6	34	0
A	6	12	22	0
E	10	22	25	0
B	12	34	14	20
C	14	48	30	18
	48	124		38

1. Average completion time = 124/6 = 20.67 days
2. Average number of jobs in system = 124/48 = 2.58 jobs
3. Average job lateness = 38/6 = 6.33 days
4. Utilization = 48/124 = 38.7%

SPT is superior to FCFS in this case on all four measures. If we were to also analyze EDD, we would, however, find its average job lateness to be lowest at 5.5 days. SPT is a good recommendation. SPT's major disadvantage is that it makes long jobs wait, sometimes for a long time.

SOLVED PROBLEM 15.4

Use Johnson's rule to find the optimum sequence for processing the jobs shown through two work centers. Times at each center are in hours.

Job	Work Center 1	Work Center 2
A	6	12
B	3	7
C	18	9
D	15	14
E	16	8
F	10	15

SOLUTION

B	A	F	D	C	E

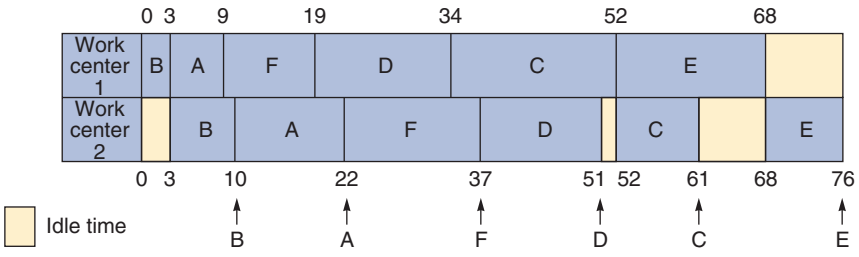
The sequential times are:

Work center 1	3	6	10	15	18	16
Work center 2	7	12	15	14	9	8

SOLVED PROBLEM 15.5

Illustrate the throughput time and idle time at the two work centers in Solved Problem 15.4 by constructing a time-phased chart.

SOLUTION



Problems

Note: PX means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel OM.

Problems 15.1–15.14 relate to Loading Jobs

•• **15.1** Ron Satterfield's excavation company uses both Gantt scheduling charts and Gantt load charts.

a) Today, which is the end of day 7, Ron is reviewing the Gantt chart depicting these schedules:
- Job #151 was scheduled to begin on day 3 and to take 6 days. As of now, it is 1 day ahead of schedule.
- Job #177 was scheduled to begin on day 1 and take 4 days. It is currently on time.
- Job #179 was scheduled to start on day 7 and take 2 days. It actually got started on day 6 and is progressing according to plan.
- Job #211 was scheduled to begin on day 5, but missing equipment delayed it until day 6. It is progressing as expected and should take 3 days.
- Job #215 was scheduled to begin on day 4 and take 5 days. It got started on time but has since fallen behind 2 days.

Draw the Gantt scheduling chart for the activities above.

b) Ron now wants to use a Gantt load chart to see how much work is scheduled in each of his three work teams: Able, Baker, and Charlie. Five jobs constitute the current workload for these three work teams: Job #250, requiring 48 hours and #275 requiring 32 hours for Work Team Able; Jobs #210 and #280, requiring 16 and 24 hours, respectively, for Team Baker; and Job #225, requiring 40 hours, for Team Charlie.

Prepare the Gantt load chart for these activities.

•• **15.2** First Printing and Copy Center has 4 more jobs to be scheduled, in addition to those shown in Example 3 in the chapter. Production scheduling personnel are reviewing the Gantt chart at the end of day 4.
- Job D was scheduled to begin early on day 2 and to end on the middle of day 9. As of now (the review point after day 4), it is 2 days ahead of schedule.
- Job E should begin on day 1 and end on day 3. It is on time.
- Job F was to begin on day 3, but maintenance forced a delay of 1½ days. The job should now take 5 full days. It is now on schedule.
- Job G is a day behind schedule. It started at the beginning of day 2 and should require 6 days to complete.

Develop a Gantt schedule chart for First Printing and Copy Center.

• **15.3** The Green Cab Company has a taxi waiting at each of four cabstands in Evanston, Illinois. Four customers have called and requested service. The distances, in miles, from the waiting taxis to the customers are given in the following table. Find the optimal assignment of taxis to customers so as to minimize total driving distances to the customers.

	CUSTOMER			
CAB SITE	A	B	C	D
Stand 1	7	3	4	8
Stand 2	5	4	6	5
Stand 3	6	7	9	6
Stand 4	8	6	7	4

PX

• **15.4** J.C. Howard's medical testing company in Kansas wishes to assign a set of jobs to a set of machines. The following table provides the production data of each machine when performing the specific job:

	MACHINE			
JOB	A	B	C	D
1	7	9	8	10
2	10	9	7	6
3	11	5	9	6
4	9	11	5	8

a) Determine the assignment of jobs to machines that will *maximize* total production.

b) What is the total production of your assignments? PX

• **15.5** The Johnny Ho Manufacturing Company in Columbus, Ohio, is putting out four new electronic components. Each of Ho's four plants has the capacity to add one more product to its current line of electronic parts. The unit-manufacturing costs for producing the different parts at the four plants are shown in the accompanying table. How should Ho assign the new products to the plants to minimize manufacturing costs?

ELECTRONIC COMPONENT	PLANT			
	1	2	3	4
C53	$0.10	$0.12	$0.13	$0.11
C81	0.05	0.06	0.04	0.08
D5	0.32	0.40	0.31	0.30
D44	0.17	0.14	0.19	0.15

PX

• **15.6** Jamison Day Consultants has been entrusted with the task of evaluating a business plan that has been divided into four sections—marketing, finance, operations, and human resources. Chris, Steve, Juana, and Rebecca form the evaluation team. Each of them has expertise in a certain field and tends to finish that section faster. The estimated times taken by each team member for each section have been outlined in the table below. Further information states that each of these individuals is paid $60/hour.

a) Assign each member to a different section such that Jamison Consultants's overall cost is minimized.

b) What is the total cost of these assignments?

Times Taken by Team Members for Different Sections (minutes)

	MARKETING	FINANCE	OPERATIONS	HR
Chris	80	120	125	140
Steve	20	115	145	160
Juana	40	100	85	45
Rebecca	65	35	25	75

PX

•• **15.7** The Baton Rouge Police Department has five detective squads available for assignment to five open crime cases. The chief of detectives, Jose Noguera, wishes to assign the squads so that the total time to conclude the cases is minimized. The average number of days, based on past performance, for each squad to complete each case is as follows:

	CASE				
SQUAD	A	B	C	D	E
1	14	7	3	7	27
2	20	7	12	6	30
3	10	3	4	5	21
4	8	12	7	12	21
5	13	25	24	26	8

Mikeledray/Shutterstock

Each squad is composed of different types of specialists, and whereas one squad may be very effective in certain types of cases, it may be almost useless in others.

a) Solve the problem by using the assignment method.
b) Assign the squads to the above cases, but with the constraint that squad 5 cannot work on case E because of a conflict. PX

• **15.8** Tigers Sports Club has to select four separate co-ed doubles teams to participate in an inter-club table tennis tournament. The pre-selection results in the selection of a group of four men—Raul, Jack, Gray, and Ajay—and four women—Barbara, Dona, Stella, and Jackie. Now, the task ahead lies in pairing these men and women in the best fashion. The table below shows a matrix that has been designed for this purpose, indicating how each of the men complements the game of each of the women. A higher score indicates a higher degree of compatibility in the games of the two individuals concerned. Find the best pairs.

Game Compatibility Matrix

	BARBARA	DONA	STELLA	JACKIE
Raul	30	20	10	40
Jack	70	10	60	70
Gray	40	20	50	40
Ajay	60	70	30	90

PX

••• **15.9** Daniel Glaser, chairman of the College of San Antonio's business department, needs to assign professors to courses next semester. As a criterion for judging who should teach each course, Professor Glaser reviews the past 2 years' teaching evaluations (which were filled out by students). Since each of the four professors taught each of the four courses at one time or another during the 2-year period, Glaser is able to record a course rating for each instructor. These ratings are shown in the following table.

a) Find the assignment of professors to courses to maximize the overall teaching rating.
b) Assign the professors to the courses with the exception that Professor Fisher cannot teach statistics. PX

	COURSE			
PROFESSOR	STATISTICS	MANAGEMENT	FINANCE	ECONOMICS
W. W. Fisher	90	65	95	40
D. Golhar	70	60	80	75
Z. Hug	85	40	80	60
N. K. Rustagi	55	80	65	55

•• **15.10** Lifang Wu owns an automated machine shop that makes precision auto parts. He has just compiled an input–output report for the grinding work center. Complete this report and analyze the results.

Input–Output Report

PERIOD	1	2	3	4	TOTAL
Planned input	80	80	100	100	
Actual input	85	85	85	85	
Deviation					
Planned output	90	90	90	90	
Actual output	85	85	80	80	
Deviation					
Initial backlog: 30					

Additional problems **15.11–15.14** *are available in* MyOMLab.

Problems 15.15–15.25 relate to Sequencing Jobs

•• **15.15** The following jobs are waiting to be processed at the same machine center. Jobs are logged as they arrive:

JOB	DUE DATE	DURATION (DAYS)
A	313	8
B	312	16
C	325	40
D	314	5
E	314	3

In what sequence would the jobs be ranked according to the following decision rules: (a) FCFS, (b) EDD, (c) SPT, and (d) LPT? All dates are specified as manufacturing planning calendar days. Assume that all jobs arrive on day 275. Which decision is best and why? PX

• **15.16** The following 5 overhaul jobs are waiting to be processed at Avianic's Engine Repair Inc. These jobs were logged as they arrived. All dates are specified as planning calendar days. Assume that all jobs arrived on day 180; today's date is 200.

JOB	DUE DATE	REMAINING TIME (DAYS)
103	214	10
205	223	7
309	217	11
412	219	5
517	217	15

Using the critical ratio scheduling rule, in what sequence would the jobs be processed? PX

•• **15.17** An Alabama lumberyard has four jobs on order, as shown in the following table. Today is day 205 on the yard's schedule.

JOB	DUE DATE	REMAINING TIME (DAYS)
A	212	6
B	209	3
C	208	3
D	210	8

PX

In what sequence would the jobs be ranked according to the following decision rules:

a) FCFS b) SPT c) LPT
d) EDD e) Critical ratio

Which is best and why? Which has the minimum lateness?

•• **15.18** The following jobs are waiting to be processed at Rick Solano's machine center. Solano's machine center has a relatively

long backlog and sets a fresh schedule every 2 weeks, which does not disturb earlier schedules. Below are the jobs received during the previous 2 weeks. They are ready to be scheduled today, which is day 241 (day 241 is a work day). Job names refer to names of clients and contract numbers.

JOB	DATE JOB RECEIVED	PRODUCTION DAYS NEEDED	DATE JOB DUE
BR-02	228	15	300
CX-01	225	25	270
DE-06	230	35	320
RG-05	235	40	360
SY-11	231	30	310

a) Complete the following table. (Show your supporting calculations.)
b) Which dispatching rule has the best score for flow time?
c) Which dispatching rule has the best score for utilization metric?
d) Which dispatching rule has the best score for lateness?
e) Which dispatching rule would you select? Support your decision.

DISPATCHING RULE	JOB SEQUENCE	FLOW TIME	UTILIZATION METRIC	AVERAGE NUMBER OF JOBS	AVERAGE LATENESS
EDD					
SPT					
LPT					
FCFS					

Px

•• 15.19 The following jobs are waiting to be processed at Julie Morel's machine center:

JOB	DATE ORDER RECEIVED	PRODUCTION DAYS NEEDED	DATE ORDER DUE
A	110	20	180
B	120	30	200
C	122	10	175
D	125	16	230
E	130	18	210

In what sequence would the jobs be ranked according to the following rules: (a) FCFS, (b) EDD, (c) SPT, and (d) LPT? All dates are according to shop calendar days. Today on the planning calendar is day 130, and none of the jobs have been started or scheduled. Which rule is best? Px

•• 15.20 Sunny Park Tailors has been asked to make three different types of wedding suits for separate customers. The table below highlights the time taken in hours for (1) cutting and sewing and (2) delivery of each of the suits. Which schedule finishes sooner: first come, first served (123) or a schedule using Johnson's rule?

Times Taken for Different Activities (hours)

SUIT	CUT AND SEW	DELIVER
1	4	2
2	7	7
3	6	5

Px

•• 15.21 The following jobs are waiting to be processed at Jeremy LaMontagne's machine center. Today is day 250.

JOB	DATE JOB RECEIVED	PRODUCTION DAYS NEEDED	DATE JOB DUE
1	215	30	260
2	220	20	290
3	225	40	300
4	240	50	320
5	250	20	340

Using the critical ratio scheduling rule, in what sequence would the jobs be processed? Px

•••• 15.22 The following set of seven jobs is to be processed through two work centers at George Heinrich's printing company. The sequence is first printing, then binding. Processing time at each of the work centers is shown in the following table:

JOB	PRINTING (HOURS)	BINDING (HOURS)
T	15	3
U	7	9
V	4	10
W	7	6
X	10	9
Y	4	5
Z	7	8

a) What is the optimal sequence for these jobs to be scheduled?
b) Chart these jobs through the two work centers.
c) What is the total length of time of this optimal solution?
d) What is the idle time in the binding shop, given the optimal solution?
e) How much would the binding machine's idle time be cut by splitting Job Z in half? Px

••• 15.23 Six jobs are to be processed through a two-step operation. The first operation involves sanding, and the second involves painting. Processing times are as follows:

JOB	OPERATION 1 (HOURS)	OPERATION 2 (HOURS)
A	10	5
B	7	4
C	5	7
D	3	8
E	2	6
F	4	3

Determine a sequence that will minimize the total completion time for these jobs. Illustrate graphically. Px

Additional problems **15.24–15.25** *are available in* MyOMLab.

Problems 15.26–15.27 relate to Scheduling Services

•• 15.26 Daniel's Barber Shop at Newark Airport is open 7 days a week but has fluctuating demand. Daniel Ball is interested in treating his barbers as well as he can with steady work and preferably 5 days of work with two consecutive days off. His analysis of his staffing needs resulted in the following plan. Schedule Daniel's staff with the minimum number of barbers.

	DAY						
	MON.	TUE.	WED.	THU.	FRI.	SAT.	SUN.
Barbers needed	6	5	5	5	6	4	3

•• 15.27 Given the following demand for waiters and waitresses at S. Ghosh Bar and Grill, determine the minimum wait staff needed with a policy of 2 consecutive days off.

	DAY						
	MON.	TUE.	WED.	THU.	FRI.	SAT.	SUN.
Wait staff needed	3	4	4	5	6	7	4

CASE STUDIES

Old Oregon Wood Store

In 2015, George Wright started the Old Oregon Wood Store to manufacture Old Oregon tables. Each table is carefully constructed by hand using the highest-quality oak. Old Oregon tables can support more than 500 pounds, and since the start of the Old Oregon Wood Store, not one table has been returned because of faulty workmanship or structural problems. In addition to being rugged, each table is beautifully finished using a urethane varnish that George developed over 20 years of working with wood-finishing materials.

The manufacturing process consists of four steps: preparation, assembly, finishing, and packaging. Each step is performed by one person. In addition to overseeing the entire operation, George does all of the finishing. Tom Surowski performs the preparation step, which involves cutting and forming the basic components of the tables. Leon Davis is in charge of the assembly, and Cathy Stark performs the packaging.

Although each person is responsible for only one step in the manufacturing process, everyone can perform any one of the steps. It is George's policy that occasionally everyone should complete several tables on his or her own without any help or assistance. A small competition is used to see who can complete an entire table in the least amount of time. George maintains average total and intermediate completion times. The data are shown in Figure 15.7.

It takes Cathy longer than the other employees to construct an Old Oregon table. In addition to being slower than the other employees, Cathy is also unhappy about her current responsibility of packaging, which leaves her idle most of the day. Her first preference is finishing, and her second preference is preparation.

In addition to quality, George is concerned with costs and efficiency. When one of the employees misses a day, it causes major scheduling problems. In some cases, George assigns another employee overtime to complete the necessary work. At other times, George simply waits until the employee returns to work to complete his or her step in the manufacturing process. Both solutions cause problems. Overtime is expensive, and waiting causes delays and sometimes stops the entire manufacturing process.

To overcome some of these problems, Randy Lane was hired. Randy's major duties are to perform miscellaneous jobs and to help out if one of the employees is absent. George has given Randy training in all phases of the manufacturing process, and he is pleased with the speed at which Randy has been able to learn how to completely assemble Old Oregon tables. Randy's average total and intermediate completion times are given in Figure 15.8.

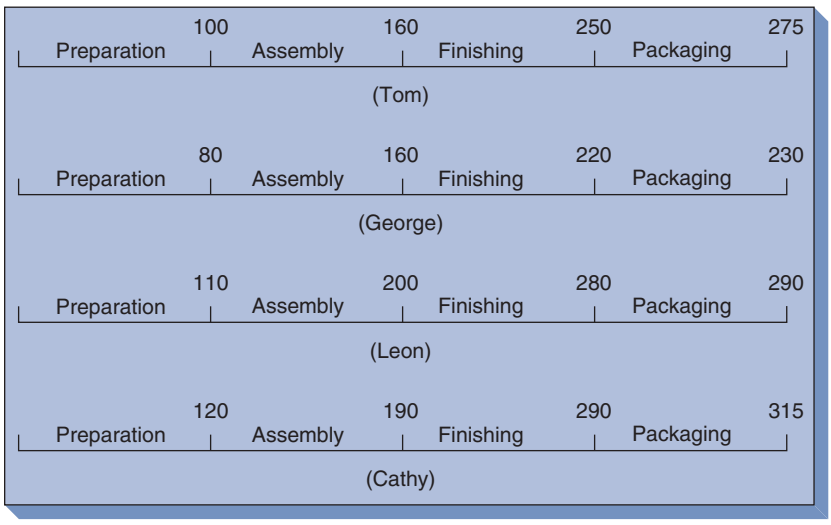


Figure 15.7
Manufacturing Time in Minutes

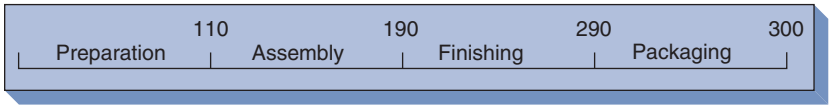


Figure 15.8
Randy's Completion Times in Minutes

Discussion Questions

1. What is the fastest way to manufacture Old Oregon tables using the original crew? How many could be made per day?
2. Would production rates and quantities change significantly if George would allow Randy to perform one of the four functions and make one of the original crew the backup person?
3. What is the fastest time to manufacture a table with the original crew if Cathy is moved to either preparation or finishing?
4. Whoever performs the packaging function is severely underutilized. Can you find a better way of utilizing the four- or five-person crew than either giving each a single job or allowing each to manufacture an entire table? How many tables could be manufactured per day with this scheme?

From the Eagles to the Magic: Converting the Amway Center

Video Case

The massive 875,000-square-foot Amway Center in Orlando, Florida, is a state-of-the-art sports entertainment center. While it is the home of the Orlando Magic basketball team, it is a flexible venue designed to accommodate a vast array of entertainment. The facility is used for everything from a concert by the Eagles or Britney Spears, to ice hockey, to arena football, to conventions, as well as 41 regular season home games played by its major tenant, the National Basketball Association's Orlando Magic.

The building is a LEED-certified (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design), sustainable, environmentally friendly design, with unmatched technology. Dispersed throughout the building are over 1,000 digital monitors, the latest in broadcasting technology, and the tallest high-definition video board in an NBA venue. To fully utilize this nearly $500 million complex, conversions from one event to the next must be done rapidly—often in a matter of hours. Letting the facility sit idle because of delays in conversion is not an option.

Well-executed conversions help maximize facility revenue and at the same time minimize expenses. Fast and efficient conversions are critical. Like any other process, a conversion can be analyzed and separated into its component activities, each requiring its own human and capital resources. The operations manager must determine when to do the conversion, how to train and schedule the crew, which tools and capital equipment are necessary, and the specific steps necessary to break down the current event and set up for the next. In addition to trying to maintain a stable crew (typically provided by local staffing companies) and to maintain

Fernando Medina

control during the frenzied pace of a conversion, managers divide the workforce into cross-trained crews, with each crew operating in its own uniquely colored shirt.

At the Amway Center, Charlie Leone makes it happen. Charlie is the operations manager, and as such, he knows that any conversion is loaded with complications and risks. Concerts add a special risk because each concert has its own idiosyncrasies—and the breakdown for the Eagles concert will be unique. Charlie and his crews must anticipate and eliminate any potential problems. Charlie's immediate issue is making a schedule for converting the Eagles' concert venue to an NBA basketball venue. The activities and the time for various tasks have been determined and are shown in Table 15.3.

TABLE 15.3 CONCERT-TO-BASKETBALL CONVERSION TASKS

Available crew size = 16, including two fork truck drivers

TIME ALLOWED	TASKS	CREW AND TIME REQUIRED
3 to 4 hr	**11:20 PM** Performance crew begins teardown of concert stage & equipment	Concert's Responsibility
45 min	**11:20 PM Clear Floor Crew**	
	Get chair carts from storage	10 for 15 min
	Clear all chairs on floor, loading carts starting at south end, working north	16 for 30 min
	Move chair carts to north storage and stack as they become full	(includes 1 fork truck operator)
15 min	**11:50 PM** *(Or as soon as area under rigging is cleared)*	6 for 15 min
	Set up retractable basketball seating on north end	
	Take down railing above concert stage	
	Place railings on cart and move to storage	
2.5 hr	**12:05 AM Basketball Floor Crew**	8
	Position 15 basketball floor carts on floor	
	Mark out arena floor for proper placement of basketball floor	
	Position basketball floor by section	
	Assemble/join flooring/lay carpets over concrete	
	Position basketball nets in place	
	Set up scorer tables	
	Install risers for all courtside seating	
	Install 8-ft tables on east side of court	
2.5 hr	**Seating Unit Crew** *Starts same time as Basketball Floor Crew*	8
	Set up retractable basketball seating on north end	(includes 2 fork truck operators)
	Set up retractable basketball seating on south end	
	(Can only be done after concert stage and equipment is out of way)	
	Install stairs to Superstar Seating	
2 hr	**Board Crew** *Starts after Seating Unit Crew finishes*	4
	Install dasher board on south end	
	Move stairs to storage	

(*Continued*)

TABLE 15.3 *Continued*

TIME ALLOWED	TASKS	CREW AND TIME REQUIRED
2 hr	**Chair Crew** *Starts after Seating Unit Crew finishes*	12
	Get chair carts from storage	
	Position chair carts on floor	
	Position chairs behind goals, courtside, and scorer tables	
	Clean, sweep, and place carts in order	
45 min	**End-of-Shift Activities** *Starts after Chair Crew finishes*	12
	Perform checklist items	
	Ensure that steps and stairways and railings are in place and tight	
	Check all seats are in upright position and locked in place	
	Report any damaged seats or armrests in need of repair	
	Verify exact number of chairs behind goals, courtside, and scorer tables	
15 min	**Check Out** *Starts after End-of-Shift Activities*	16
	Check for next conversion date and time and inform crew	
	Report any injuries Punch out all employees before leaving **8:00 AM** Floor ready for Magic practice	

Discussion Questions*

1. Make a Gantt chart to help Charlie organize his crew to perform the concert-to-basketball conversion. *Note*: Do not include the teardown of the concert stage and equipment, as that is the responsibility of the concert crew.
2. What time will the floor be ready?
3. Does Charlie have any extra personnel or a shortage of personnel? If so how many?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before answering the questions.

Scheduling at Hard Rock Cafe

Video Case

Whether it's scheduling nurses at Mayo Clinic, pilots at Southwest Airlines, classrooms at UCLA, or servers at a Hard Rock Cafe, it's clear that good scheduling is important. Proper schedules use an organization's assets (1) more effectively, by serving customers promptly, and (2) more efficiently, by lowering costs.

Hard Rock Cafe at Universal Studios, Orlando, is the world's largest restaurant, with 1,100 seats on two main levels. With typical turnover of employees in the restaurant industry at 80% to 100% per year, Hard Rock General Manager Ken Hoffman takes scheduling very seriously. Hoffman wants his 160 servers to be effective, but he also wants to treat them fairly. He has done so with scheduling software and flexibility that has increased productivity while contributing to turnover that is half the industry average. His goal is to find the fine balance that gives employees financially productive daily work shifts while setting the schedule tight enough so as to not overstaff between lunch and dinner.

The weekly schedule begins with a sales forecast. "First, we examine last year's sales at the cafe for the same day of the week," says Hoffman. "Then we adjust our forecast for this year based on a variety of closely watched factors. For example, we call the Orlando Convention Bureau every week to see what major groups will be in town. Then we send two researchers out to check on the occupancy of nearby hotels. We watch closely to see what concerts are scheduled at Hard Rock Live—the 3,000-seat concert stage next door. From the forecast, we calculate how many people we need to have on duty each day for the kitchen, the bar, as hosts, and for table service."

Once Hard Rock determines the number of staff needed, servers submit request forms, which are fed into the software's linear programming mathematical model. Individuals are given priority rankings from 1 to 9, based on their seniority and how important they are to fill each day's schedule. Schedules are then posted by day and by workstation. Trades are handled between employees, who understand the value of each specific shift and station.

Hard Rock employees like the system, as does the general manager, since sales per labor-hour are rising and turnover is dropping.

Discussion Questions*

1. Name and justify several factors that Hoffman could use in forecasting weekly sales.
2. What can be done to lower turnover in large restaurants?
3. Why is seniority important in scheduling servers?
4. How does the schedule impact productivity?

*You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before answering the questions.

- **Additional Case Study:** Visit MyOMLab for this free case study:
  Payroll Planning, Inc.: Describes setting a schedule for handling the accounting for dozens of client firms.

Endnotes

1. Opportunity costs are those profits forgone or not obtained.
2. Finite capacity scheduling (FCS) systems go by a number of names, including finite scheduling and advance planning systems (APS). The name manufacturing execution systems (MES) may also be used, but MES tends to suggest an emphasis on the reporting system from shop operations back to the scheduling activity.

Chapter 15 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
THE IMPORTANCE OF SHORT-TERM SCHEDULING (p. 640)	The strategic importance of scheduling is clear: ■ Effective scheduling means *faster movement* of goods and services through a facility. This means greater use of assets and hence greater capacity per dollar invested, which, in turn, *lowers cost*. ■ Added capacity, faster throughput, and the related flexibility mean better customer service through *faster delivery*. ■ Good scheduling contributes to realistic commitments, hence *dependable delivery*.	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.2
SCHEDULING ISSUES (pp. 640–643)	*The objective of scheduling is to allocate and prioritize demand (generated by either forecasts or customer orders) to available facilities.* ■ Forward scheduling—Begins the schedule as soon as the requirements are known. ■ Backward scheduling—Begins with the due date by scheduling the final operation first and the other job steps in reverse order. ■ Loading—The assigning of jobs to work or processing centers. The four scheduling criteria are (1) *minimize completion time*, (2) *maximize utilization*, (3) *minimize work-in-process (WIP) inventory*, and (4) *minimize customer waiting time*.	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4 **VIDEO 15.1** From the Eagles to the Magic: Converting the Amway Center
SCHEDULING PROCESS-FOCUSED FACILITIES (p. 643)	A process-focused facility is a high-variety, low-volume system commonly found in manufacturing and services. It is also called an intermittent, or job shop, facility.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4
LOADING JOBS (pp. 643–648)	■ **Input–output control**—A system that allows operations personnel to manage facility work flows by tracking work added to a work center and its work completed. ■ **ConWIP cards**—Cards that control the amount of work in a work center, aiding input/output control. ConWIP is an acronym for *constant work-in-process.* A ConWIP card travels with a job (or batch) through the work center. When the job is finished, the card is released and returned to the initial workstation, authorizing the entry of a new batch into the work center. ■ **Gantt charts**—Planning charts used to schedule resources and allocate time. The Gantt *load chart* shows the loading and idle times of several departments, machines, or facilities. It displays the relative workloads in the system so that the manager knows what adjustments are appropriate. The Gantt *schedule chart* is used to monitor jobs in progress (and is also used for project scheduling). It indicates which jobs are on schedule and which are ahead of or behind schedule. ■ **Assignment method**—A special class of linear programming models that involves assigning tasks or jobs to resources. In assignment problems, only one job (or worker) is assigned to one machine (or project). The assignment method involves adding and subtracting appropriate numbers in the table to find the lowest *opportunity cost* for each assignment.	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4 Problems: 15.1–15.14 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 15.1
SEQUENCING JOBS (pp. 649–655)	■ **Sequencing**—Determining the order in which jobs should be done at each work center. ■ **Priority rules**—Rules used to determine the sequence of jobs in process-oriented facilities. ■ First come, first served (FCFS)—Jobs are completed in the order in which they arrived. ■ Shortest processing time (SPT)—Jobs with the shortest processing times are assigned first. ■ Earliest due date—Earliest due date jobs are performed first. ■ Longest processing time (LPT)—Jobs with the longest processing time are completed first. $$\text{Average completion time} = \frac{\text{Sum of total flow time}}{\text{Number of jobs}} \quad (15\text{-}1)$$ $$\text{Utilization metric} = \frac{\text{Total job work (processing) time}}{\text{Sum of total flow time}} \quad (15\text{-}2)$$	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.4 Problems: 15.15–15.25 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problems: 15.2–15.5 **ACTIVE MODEL 15.1**

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
	$$\text{Average number of jobs in the system} = \frac{\text{Sum of total flow time}}{\text{Total job work (processing) time}} \quad (15\text{-}3)$$ $$\text{Average job lateness} = \frac{\text{Total late days}}{\text{Number of jobs}} \quad (15\text{-}4)$$ $$\text{Job lateness} = \text{Max}\{0, \text{yesterday} + \text{flow time} - \text{due date}\} \quad (15\text{-}5)$$ SPT is the best technique for minimizing job flow and average number of jobs in the system. FCFS performs about average on most criteria, and it appears fair to customers. EDD minimizes maximum tardiness. ■ **Flow time**—The time each job spends waiting plus the time being processed. ■ **Critical ratio (CR)**—A sequencing rule that is an index number computed by dividing the time remaining until due date by the work time remaining: $$\text{CR} = \frac{\text{Time remaining}}{\text{Workdays remaining}} = \frac{\text{Due date} - \text{Today's date}}{\text{Work (lead) time remaining}} \quad (15\text{-}6)$$ As opposed to the priority rules, the critical ratio is dynamic and easily updated. It tends to perform better than FCFS, SPT, EDD, or LPT on the average job-lateness criterion. ■ **Johnson's rule**—An approach that minimizes processing time for sequencing a group of jobs through two work centers while minimizing total idle time in the work centers. Rule-based scheduling systems have the following limitations: (1) Scheduling is dynamic, (2) rules do not look upstream or downstream, and (3) rules do not look beyond due dates.	
FINITE CAPACITY SCHEDULING (FCS) (pp. 655–656)	■ **Finite capacity scheduling (FCS)**—Computerized short-term scheduling that overcomes the disadvantage of rule-based systems by providing the user with graphical interactive computing.	Concept Questions: 6.1–6.2
SCHEDULING SERVICES (pp. 656–659)	Cyclical scheduling with inconsistent staffing needs is often the case in services. The objective focuses on developing a schedule with the minimum number of workers. In these cases, each employee is assigned to a shift and has time off.	Concept Questions: 7.1–7.4 **VIDEO 15.2** Scheduling at Hard Rock Cafe Problems: 15.26–15.27

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 15.1 Which of the following decisions covers the longest time period?
a) Short-term scheduling
b) Capacity planning
c) Aggregate planning
d) A master schedule

LO 15.2 A visual aid used in loading and scheduling jobs is a:
a) Gantt chart.
b) planning file.
c) bottleneck.
d) load-schedule matrix.
e) level material chart.

LO 15.3 The assignment method involves adding and subtracting appropriate numbers in the table to find the lowest _____ for each assignment.
a) profit
b) number of steps
c) number of allocations
d) range per row
e) opportunity cost

LO 15.4 The most popular priority rules include:
a) FCFS. **b)** EDD.
c) SPT. **d)** all of the above.

LO 15.5 The job that should be scheduled last when using Johnson's rule is the job with the:
a) largest total processing time on both machines.
b) smallest total processing time on both machines.
c) longest activity time if it lies with the first machine.
d) longest activity time if it lies with the second machine.
e) shortest activity time if it lies with the second machine.

LO 15.6 What is computerized short-term scheduling that overcomes the disadvantage of rule-based systems by providing the user with graphical interactive computing?
a) LPT **b)** FCS
c) CSS **d)** FCFS
e) GIC

LO 15.7 Cyclical scheduling is used to schedule:
a) jobs. **b)** machines.
c) shipments. **d)** employees.

Answers: LO 15.1. b; LO 15.2. a; LO 15.3. e; LO 15.4. d; LO 15.5. e; LO 15.6. b; LO 15.7. d.

JIT, Lean Operations, and the Toyota Production System

CHAPTER 16

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *Toyota Motor Corporation*

- Lean Operations ***676***
- Lean and Just-in-Time ***678***
- Lean and the Toyota Production System ***687***
- Lean Organizations ***688***
- Lean in Services ***690***

Alaska Airlines

10 OM STRATEGY DECISIONS

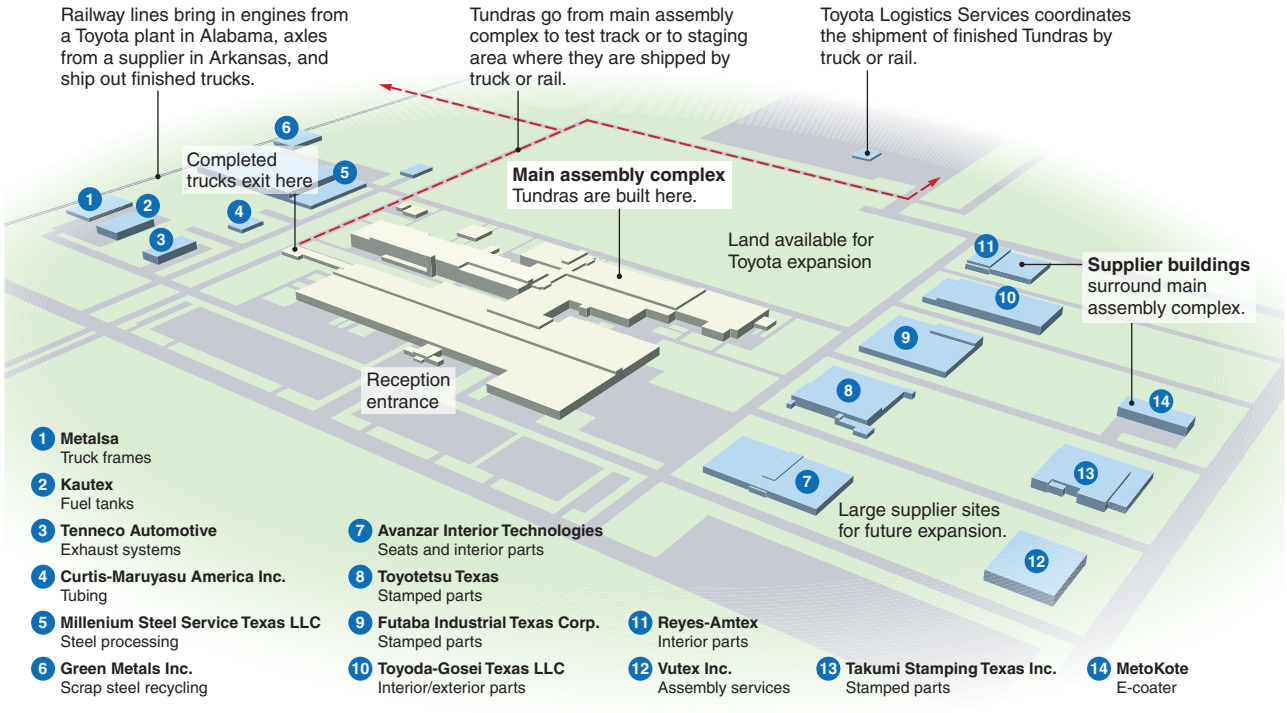
- Design of Goods and Services
- Managing Quality
- Process Strategy
- Location Strategies
- Layout Strategies
- Human Resources
- Supply-Chain Management
- *Inventory Management*
  - Independent Demand (Ch. 12)
  - Dependent Demand (Ch. 14)
  - ***Lean Operations (Ch. 16)***
- Scheduling
- Maintenance

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
Toyota Motor Corporation

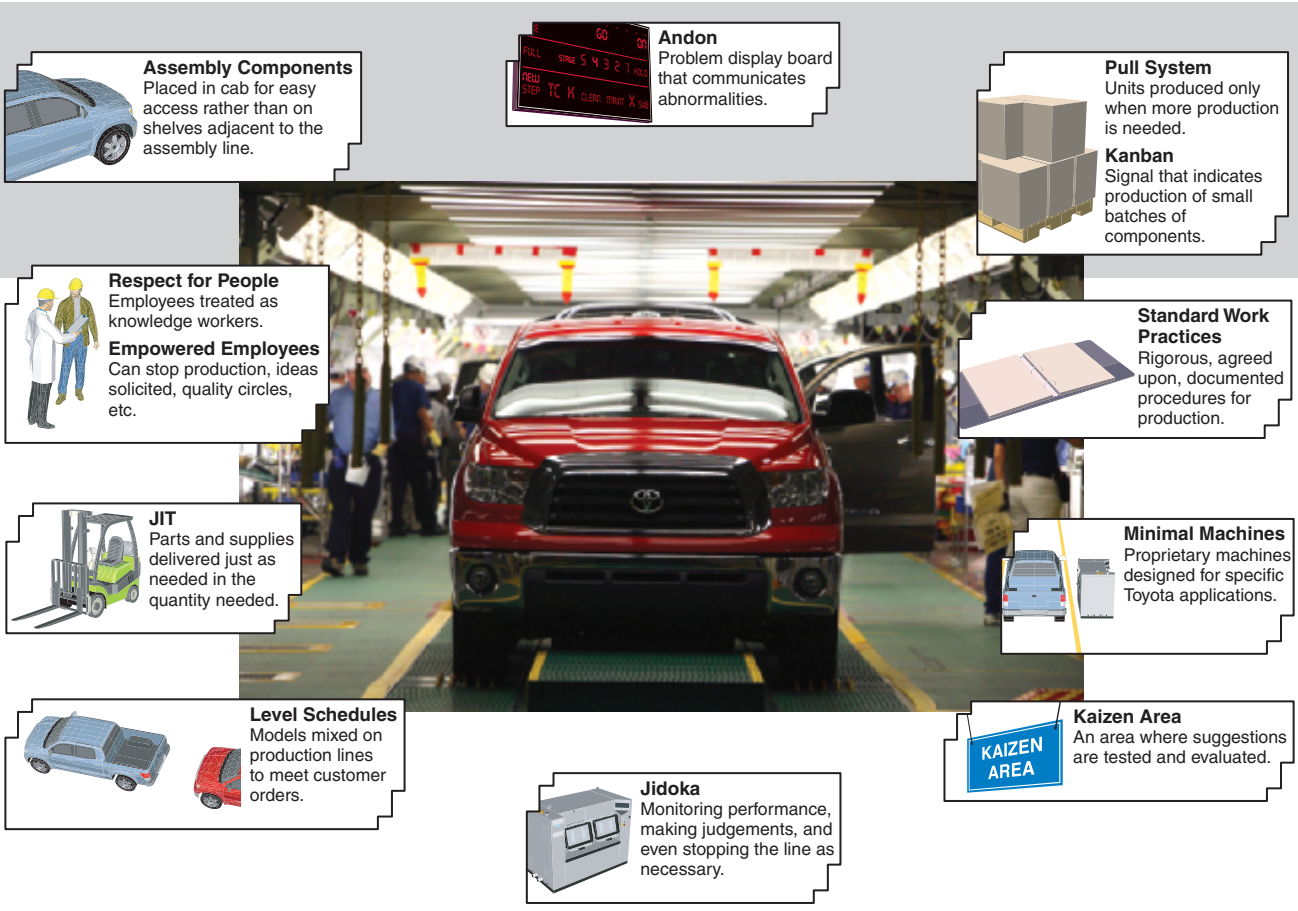
Achieving Competitive Advantage with Lean Operations at Toyota Motor Corporation

Toyota Motor Corporation, with $250 billion in annual sales of over 9 million cars and trucks, is one of the largest vehicle manufacturers in the world. Two Lean techniques, just-in-time (JIT) and the Toyota Production System (TPS), have been instrumental in its growth. Toyota, with a wide range of vehicles, competes head-to-head with successful, long-established companies in Europe and the U.S. Taiichi Ohno, a former vice president of Toyota, created the basic framework for two of the world's most discussed systems for improving productivity, JIT and TPS. These two concepts provide much of the foundation for Lean operations:

- Central to JIT is a philosophy of continuous problem solving. In practice, JIT means making only what is needed, when it is needed. JIT provides an excellent vehicle for finding and eliminating problems because problems are easy to find in a system that eliminates the slack that inventory generates. When excess inventory is eliminated, shortcomings related to quality, layout, scheduling, and supplier performance become immediately evident—as does excess production.
- Central to TPS is employee learning and a continuing effort to create and produce products under ideal conditions. Ideal conditions exist only when management



Outside: Toyota has a 2,000-acre site with 14 of the 21 onsite suppliers, adjacent rail lines, and nearby interstate highway. The site provides expansion space for both Toyota and for its suppliers — and provides an environment for just-in-time.



Seven suppliers inside the main plant

Toyota's San Antonio plant has about 2 million interior sq. ft., providing facilities within the final assembly building for 7 of the 21 onsite suppliers, and capacity to build 200,000 pick-up trucks annually. But most importantly, Toyota practices the world-class Toyota Production System and expects its suppliers to do the same thing, wherever they are.

brings facilities, machines, and people together to add value without waste. Waste undermines productivity by diverting resources to excess inventory, unnecessary processing, and poor quality. Respect for people, extensive training, cross-training, and standard work practices of empowered employees focusing on driving out waste are fundamental to TPS.

Toyota's implementation of TPS and JIT is present at its 2,000-acre San Antonio, Texas, facility, the largest Toyota land site for an automobile assembly plant in the U.S. Interestingly, despite its large site and annual production capability of 200,000, a throughput time of 20½ hours, and the output of a truck every 63 seconds, the building itself is one of the smallest in the industry. Modern automobiles have 30,000 parts, but at Toyota, independent suppliers combine many of these parts into subassemblies. Twenty-one of these suppliers are on site at the San Antonio facility and transfer components to the assembly line on a JIT basis.

Operations such as these taking place in the San Antonio plant are why Toyota continues to perform near the top in quality and maintain the lowest labor-hour assembly time in the industry. Lean operations *do* work—and they provide a competitive advantage for Toyota Motor Corporation.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO 16.1 ***Define*** Lean operations 676
LO 16.2 ***Define*** the seven wastes and the 5Ss 676
LO 16.3 ***Identify*** the concerns of suppliers when moving to supplier partnerships 680
LO 16.4 ***Determine*** optimal setup time 683
LO 16.5 ***Define*** kanban 685
LO 16.6 ***Compute*** the required number of kanbans 686
LO 16.7 ***Identify*** six attributes of Lean organizations 689
LO 16.8 ***Explain*** how Lean applies to services 690

Lean Operations

LO 16.1 *Define* Lean operations

As shown in the *Global Company Profile*, the Toyota Production System (TPS) contributes to a world-class operation at Toyota Motor Corporation. In this chapter, we discuss Lean operations, including JIT and TPS, as approaches to continuous improvement that lead to world-class operations.

Lean operations
Eliminates waste through continuous improvement and focus on exactly what the customer wants.

Just-in-time (JIT)
Continuous and forced problem solving via a focus on throughput and reduced inventory.

Toyota Production System (TPS)
Focus on continuous improvement, respect for people, and standard work practices.

Lean operations supply the customer with exactly what the customer wants when the customer wants it, without waste, through continuous improvement. Lean operations are driven by workflow initiated by the "pull" of the customer's order. **Just-in-time (JIT)** is an approach of continuous and forced problem solving via a focus on throughput and reduced inventory. The **Toyota Production System (TPS)**, with its emphasis on continuous improvement, respect for people, and standard work practices, is particularly suited for assembly lines.

In this chapter we use the term *Lean operations* to encompass all the related approaches and techniques of both JIT and TPS. When implemented as a comprehensive operations strategy, Lean sustains competitive advantage and results in increased overall returns to stakeholders.

Regardless of the approach and label, operations managers address three issues that are fundamental to operations improvement: *eliminate waste, remove variability,* and *improve throughput.* We now introduce these three issues and then discuss the major attributes of Lean operations. Finally, we look at Lean applied to services.

Eliminate Waste

Lean producers set their sights on perfection: *no* bad parts, *no* inventory, *only* value-added activities, and *no* waste. Any activity that does not add value in the eyes of the customer is a waste. The customer defines product value. If the customer does not want to pay for it, it is a waste. Taiichi Ohno, noted for his work on the Toyota Production System, identified seven categories of waste. These categories have become popular in Lean organizations and cover many of the ways organizations waste or lose money. Ohno's **seven wastes** are:

Seven wastes
Overproduction
Queues
Transportation
Inventory
Motion
Overprocessing
Defective product

- *Overproduction:* Producing more than the customer orders or producing early (before it is demanded) is waste.
- *Queues:* Idle time, storage, and waiting are wastes (they add no value).
- *Transportation:* Moving material between plants or between work centers and handling it more than once is waste.
- *Inventory:* Unnecessary raw material, work-in-process (WIP), finished goods, and excess operating supplies add no value and are wastes.
- *Motion:* Movement of equipment or people that adds no value is waste.
- *Overprocessing:* Work performed on the product that adds no value is waste.
- *Defective product:* Returns, warranty claims, rework, and scrap are wastes.

LO 16.2 *Define* the seven wastes and the 5Ss

A broader perspective—one that goes beyond immediate production—suggests that other resources, such as energy, water, and air, are often wasted but should not be. Efficient, sustainable production minimizes inputs and maximizes outputs, wasting nothing.

For over a century, managers have pursued "housekeeping" for a neat, orderly, and efficient workplace and as a means of reducing waste. Operations managers have embellished "housekeeping" to include a checklist—now known as the 5Ss.[1] The Japanese developed the initial 5Ss. Not only are the 5Ss a good checklist for Lean operations, but they also provide an easy vehicle with which to assist the culture change that is often necessary to bring about Lean operations. The **5Ss** follow:

Alaska Airlines

In keeping with 5S, airports, like many other facilities, specify with painted guidelines exactly where tools and equipment such as this fuel pump are to be positioned.

5Ss
A Lean production checklist:
Sort
Simplify
Shine
Standardize
Sustain

- *Sort/segregate:* Keep what is needed and remove everything else from the work area; when in doubt, throw it out. Identify nonvalue items and remove them. Getting rid of these items makes space available and usually improves workflow.
- *Simplify/straighten:* Arrange and use methods analysis tools (see Chapter 7 and Chapter 10) to improve workflow and reduce wasted motion. Consider long-run and short-run ergonomic issues. Label and display for easy use only what is needed in the immediate work area. (For examples of visual displays, see Chapter 10, Figure 10.8 and the adjacent photo of equipment located within prescribed lines on the tarmac at Seattle's airport.)
- *Shine/sweep:* Clean daily; eliminate all forms of dirt, contamination, and clutter from the work area.
- *Standardize:* Remove variations from the process by developing standard operating procedures and checklists; good standards make the abnormal obvious. Standardize equipment and tooling so that cross-training time and cost are reduced. Train and retrain the work team so that when deviations occur, they are readily apparent to all.
- *Sustain/self-discipline:* Review periodically to recognize efforts and to motivate to sustain progress. Use visuals wherever possible to communicate and sustain progress.

U.S. managers often add two additional Ss that contribute to establishing and maintaining a Lean workplace:

- *Safety:* Build good safety practices into the preceding five activities.
- *Support/maintenance:* Reduce variability, unplanned downtime, and costs. Integrate daily *shine* tasks with preventive maintenance.

The Ss support continuous improvement and provide a vehicle with which employees can identify. Operations managers need think only of the examples set by a well-run hospital emergency room or the spit-and-polish of a fire department for a benchmark. Offices and retail stores, as well as manufacturers, have successfully used the 5Ss in their respective efforts to eliminate waste and move to Lean operations. A place for everything and everything in its place does make a difference in a well-run office. And retail stores successfully use the Ss to reduce misplaced merchandise and improve customer service. An orderly workplace reduces waste, releasing assets for other, more productive, purposes.

Remove Variability

Managers seek to remove variability caused by both internal and external factors. **Variability** is any deviation from the optimum process that delivers a perfect product on time, every time. Variability is a polite word for problems. The less variability in a system, the less waste in the system. Most variability is caused by tolerating waste or by poor management. Among the many sources of variability are:

Variability
Any deviation from the optimum process that delivers a perfect product on time, every time.

- Poor processes that allow employees and suppliers to produce improper quantities or nonconforming units
- Inadequate maintenance of facilities and processes
- Unknown and changing customer demands
- Incomplete or inaccurate drawings, specifications, and bills of material

Inventory reduction via JIT is an effective tool for identifying causes of variability. The precise timing of JIT makes variability evident, just as reducing inventory exposes variability. Defeating variability allows managers to move good materials on schedule, add value at each step of the process, drive down costs, and ultimately win orders.

Improve Throughput

Throughput
The rate at which units move through a process.

Manufacturing cycle time
The time between the arrival of raw materials and the shipping of finished products.

Pull system
A concept that results in material being produced only when requested and moved to where it is needed just as it is needed.

Throughput is the rate at which units move through a process. Each minute that products remain on the books, costs accumulate, and competitive advantage is lost. Time is money. The time that an order is in the shop is called **manufacturing cycle time**. This is the time between the arrival of raw materials and the shipping of finished product. For example, phone-system manufacturer Nortel had materials pulled directly from qualified suppliers to the assembly line. This effort reduced a segment of the manufacturing cycle time from 3 weeks to just 4 hours, the incoming inspection staff from 47 to 24, and problems on the shop floor caused by defective materials by 97%. Driving down manufacturing cycle time can make a major improvement in throughput.

A technique for increasing throughput is a pull system. A **pull system** *pulls* a unit to where it is needed just as it is needed. Pull systems are a standard tool of Lean. Pull systems use signals to request production and delivery from supplying stations to stations that have production capacity available. The pull concept is used both within the immediate production process and with suppliers. By *pulling* material through the system in very small lots—just as it is needed—waste and inventory are removed. As inventory is removed, clutter is reduced, problems become evident, and continuous improvement is emphasized. Removing the cushion of inventory also reduces both investment in inventory and manufacturing cycle time. A *push* system dumps orders on the next downstream workstation, regardless of timeliness and resource availability. Push systems are the antithesis of Lean. Pulling material through a production process as it is needed rather than in a "push" mode typically lowers cost and improves schedule performance, enhancing customer satisfaction.

Lean and Just-in-Time

STUDENT TIP
JIT places added demands on performance, but that is why it pays off.

Just-in-time (JIT), with its focus on rapid throughput and reduced inventory, is a powerful component of Lean. With the inclusion of JIT in Lean, materials arrive *where* they are needed only *when* they are needed. When good units do not arrive just as needed, a "problem" has been identified. This is the reason this aspect of Lean is so powerful—it focuses attention on *problems*. By driving out waste and delay, JIT reduces inventory, cuts variability and waste, and improves throughput. Every moment material is held, an activity that adds value should be occurring. Consequently, as Figure 16.1 suggests, JIT often yields a competitive advantage.

A well-executed Lean program requires a meaningful buyer–supplier partnership.

Culinary Institute of America

Many services have adopted Lean techniques as a normal part of their business. Restaurants like Olive Garden expect and receive JIT deliveries. Both buyer and supplier expect fresh, high-quality produce delivered without fail just when it is needed. The system doesn't work any other way.

Supplier Partnerships

Supplier partnerships
Partnerships of suppliers and purchasers that remove waste and drive down costs for mutual benefits.

Supplier partnerships exist when a supplier and a purchaser work together with open communication and a goal of removing waste and driving down costs. Trust and close collaboration are critical to

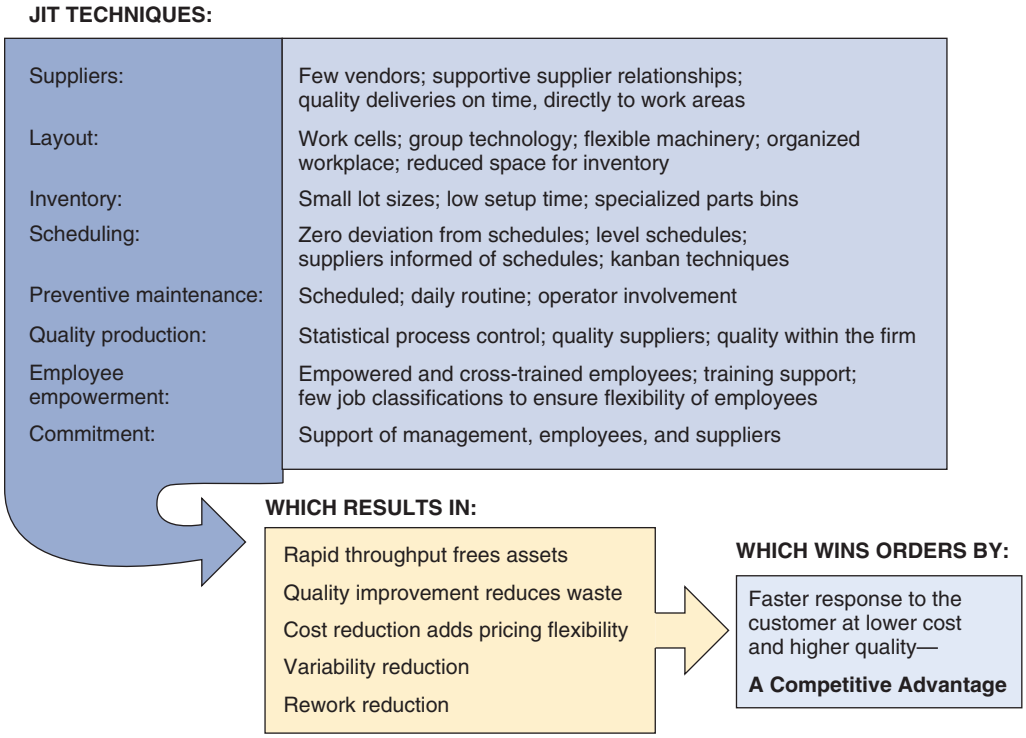


Figure 16.1
Lean Contributes to Competitive Advantage

the success of Lean. Figure 16.2 shows the characteristics of supplier partnerships. Some specific goals are:

- *Removal of unnecessary activities*, such as receiving, incoming inspection, and paperwork related to bidding, invoicing, and payment.
- *Removal of in-plant inventory* by delivery in small lots directly to the using department as needed.

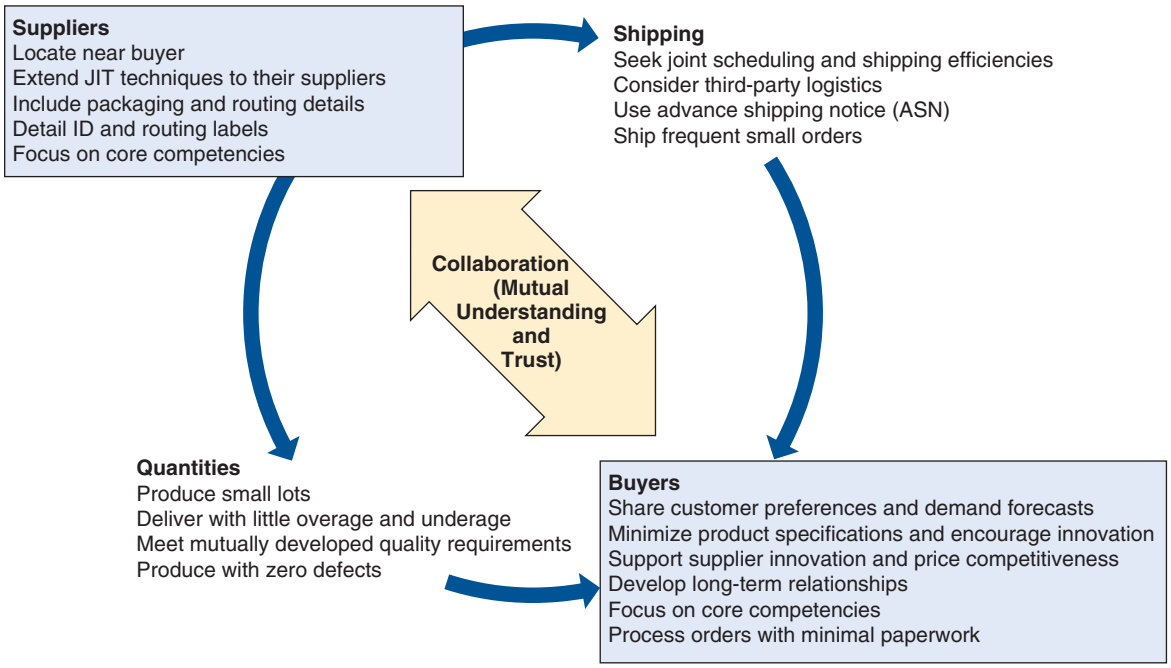


Figure 16.2
Characteristics of Supplier Partnerships

OM in Action Lean Production at Cessna Aircraft Company

When Cessna Aircraft opened its new plant in Independence, Kansas, it saw the opportunity to switch from craftwork to a Lean manufacturing system. The initial idea was to focus on three Lean concepts: (1) vendor-managed inventory, (2) cross-training of employees, and (3) using technology and manufacturing cells to move away from batch processing.

After several years, with these goals accomplished, Cessna began working on the next phase of Lean. This phase focuses on *Team Build* and *Area Team Development.*

Team Build at Cessna empowers employees to expand their skills, sequence their own work, and then sign off on it. This reduces wait time, inventory, part shortages, rework, and scrap, all contributing to improved productivity.

Area Team Development (ATD) provides experts when a factory employee cannot complete his or her standard work in the time planned. Team members trained in the ATD process are called Skill Coaches. Skill Coaches provide support throughout each area to improve response time to problems. Andon boards and performance metrics are used for evaluating daily performance.

Cessna Aircraft Company

These commitments to Lean manufacturing are a major contributor to Cessna being the world's largest manufacturer of single-engine aircraft.

Sources: Interviews with Cessna executives, 2013.

Consignment inventory
An arrangement in which the supplier maintains title to the inventory until it is used.

- *Removal of in-transit inventory* by encouraging suppliers to locate nearby and provide frequent small shipments. The shorter the flow of material in the resource pipeline, the less inventory. Inventory can also be reduced through a technique known as *consignment*. Consignment inventory (see the *OM in Action* box, "Lean Production at Cessna Aircraft Company"), a variation of vendor-managed inventory (Chapter 11), means the supplier maintains the title to the inventory until it is used.
- *Obtain improved quality and reliability* through long-term commitments, communication, and cooperation.

Leading organizations view suppliers as extensions of their own organizations and expect suppliers to be fully committed to constant improvement. However, supplier concerns can be significant and must be addressed. These concerns include:

LO 16.3 *Identify* the concerns of suppliers when moving to supplier partnerships

1. *Diversification:* Suppliers may not want to tie themselves to long-term contracts with one customer. The suppliers' perception is that they reduce their risk if they have a variety of customers.
2. *Scheduling:* Many suppliers have little faith in the purchaser's ability to produce orders to a smooth, coordinated schedule.
3. *Lead time:* Engineering or specification changes can play havoc with JIT because of inadequate lead time for suppliers to implement the necessary changes.
4. *Quality:* Suppliers' capital budgets, processes, or technology may limit ability to respond to changes in product and quality.
5. *Lot sizes:* Suppliers may see frequent delivery in small lots as a way to transfer buyers' holding costs to suppliers.

As the foregoing concerns suggest, good supplier partnerships require a high degree of trust and respect by both supplier and purchaser—in a word, collaboration. Many firms establish this trust and collaborate very successfully. Two such firms are McKesson-General and Baxter International, who provide surgical supplies for hospitals on a JIT basis. They deliver prepackaged surgical supplies based on hospital operating schedules. Moreover, the surgical packages themselves are prepared so supplies are available in the sequence in which they will be used during surgery.

Lean Layout

Lean layouts reduce another kind of waste—movement. The movement of material on a factory floor (or paper in an office) does not add value. Consequently, managers want flexible layouts that reduce the movement of both people and material. Lean layouts place material directly in the location where needed. For instance, an assembly line should be designed with delivery points next to the line so material need not be delivered first to a receiving department

and then moved again. Toyota has gone one step further and places components in the chassis of each vehicle moving down the assembly line. This is not only convenient, but it also allows Toyota to save space and opens areas adjacent to the assembly line previously occupied by shelves. When a layout reduces distance, firms often save labor and space and may have the added bonus of eliminating potential areas for accumulation of unwanted inventory. Table 16.1 provides a list of Lean layout tactics.

TABLE 16.1

LEAN LAYOUT TACTICS
Build work cells for families of products
Include a large number of operations in a small area
Minimize distance
Design little space for inventory
Improve employee communication
Use *poka-yoke* devices
Build flexible or movable equipment
Cross-train workers to add flexibility

Distance Reduction Reducing distance is a major contribution of work cells, work centers, and focused factories (see Chapter 9). The days of long production lines and huge economic lots, with goods passing through monumental, single-operation machines, are gone. Now firms use work cells, often arranged in a U shape, containing several machines performing different operations. These work cells are often based on group technology codes (as discussed in Chapter 5). Group technology codes help identify components with similar characteristics so they can be grouped into families. Once families are identified, work cells are built for them. The result can be thought of as a small product-oriented facility where the "product" is actually a group of similar products—a family of products. The cells produce one good unit at a time, and ideally, they produce the units *only* after a customer orders them.

Increased Flexibility Modern work areas are designed so they can be easily rearranged to adapt to changes in volume and product changes. Almost nothing is bolted down. This concept of layout flexibility applies to both factory and office environments. Not only is furniture and equipment movable, but so are walls, computer connections, and telecommunications. Equipment is modular. Layout flexibility aids the changes that result from product *and* process improvements that are inevitable at a firm with a philosophy of continuous improvement.

Impact on Employees When layouts provide for sequential operations, feedback, including quality issues, can be immediate, allowing employees working together to tell each other about problems and opportunities for improvement. When workers produce units one at a time, they test each product or component at each subsequent production stage. Work processes with self-testing *poka-yoke* functions detect defects automatically. Before Lean, defective products were replaced from inventory. Because surplus inventory is not kept in Lean facilities, there are no such buffers. Employees learn that getting it right the first time is critical. Indeed, Lean layouts allow cross-trained employees to bring flexibility and efficiency to the work area, reducing defects. Defects are waste.

Reduced Space and Inventory Because Lean layouts reduce travel distance, they also reduce inventory. When there is little space, inventory travels less and must be moved in very small lots or even single units. Units are always moving because there is no storage. For instance, each month a Bank of America focused facility sorts 7 million checks, processes 5 million statements, and mails 190,000 customer statements. With a Lean layout, mail-processing time has been reduced by 33%, annual salary costs by tens of thousands of dollars, floor space by 50%, and in-process waiting lines by 75% to 90%. Storage, including shelves and drawers, has been removed.

Lean Inventory

Inventories in production and distribution systems often exist "just in case" something goes wrong. That is, they are used just in case some variation from the production plan occurs. The "extra" inventory is then used to cover variations or problems. Lean inventory tactics require "just in time," not "just in case." **Lean inventory** is the minimum inventory necessary to keep a perfect system running. With Lean inventory, the exact amount of goods arrives at the moment it is needed, not a minute before or a minute after. Some useful Lean inventory tactics are shown in Table 16.2 and discussed in more detail in the following sections.

TABLE 16.2

LEAN INVENTORY TACTICS
Use a pull system to move inventory
Reduce lot size
Develop just-in-time delivery systems with suppliers
Deliver directly to the point of use
Perform to schedule
Reduce setup time
Use group technology

Lean inventory
The minimum inventory necessary to keep a perfect system running.

Reduce Inventory and Variability Operations managers move toward Lean by first reducing inventory. The idea is to eliminate variability in the production system hidden by inventory. Reducing inventory uncovers the "rocks" in Figure 16.3(a) that represent the variability and problems currently being tolerated. With reduced inventory, management chips away at the exposed problems. After the lake is lowered, managers make additional cuts

STUDENT TIP
Accountants book inventory as an asset, but operations managers know it is a cost.

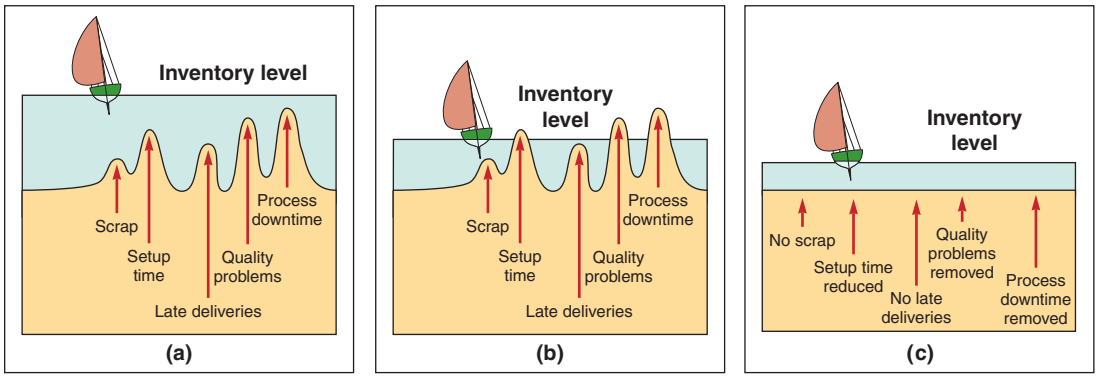


Figure **16.3**

High levels of inventory hide problems (a), but as we reduce inventory, problems are exposed (b), and finally after reducing inventory and removing problems, we have lower inventory, lower costs, and smooth sailing (c).

"Inventory is evil."
S. Shingo

Bob Daemmrich/CORBIS-NY

in inventory and continue to chip away at the next level of exposed problems [see Figure 16.3(b, c)]. Ultimately, there will be little inventory and few problems (variability).

Firms with technology-sensitive products estimate that the rapid product innovations can cost as much as $\frac{1}{2}\%$ to 2% of the values of inventory *each week*. Shigeo Shingo, codeveloper of the Toyota JIT system, says, "Inventory is evil." He is not far from the truth. If inventory itself is not evil, it hides evil at great cost.

Reduce Lot Sizes Lean also reduces waste by cutting the investment in inventory. A key to slashing inventory is to produce good product in small lot sizes. Reducing the size of batches can be a major help in reducing inventory and inventory costs. As we saw in Chapter 12, when inventory usage is constant, the average inventory level is the sum of the maximum inventory plus the minimum inventory divided by 2. Figure 16.4 shows that lowering the order size increases the number of orders, but drops inventory levels.

Ideally, in a Lean environment, order size is one and single units are being pulled from one adjacent process to another. More realistically, analysis of the process, transportation time, and physical attributes such as size of containers used for transport are considered when determining lot size. Such analysis typically results in a small lot size, but a lot size larger than one. Once a lot size has been determined, the EOQ production order quantity model can be modified to determine the desired setup time. We saw in Chapter 12 that the production order quantity model takes the form:

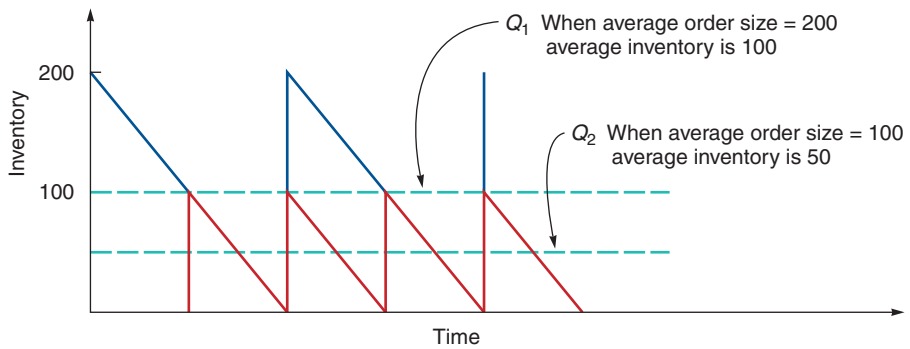
$$Q_p^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H[1 - (d/p)]}} \tag{16-1}$$

where D = Annual demand, S = Setup cost, H = Holding cost, d = Daily demand, p = Daily production

Figure **16.4**

Frequent Orders Reduce Average Inventory

A lower order size increases the number of orders and total ordering cost but reduces average inventory and total holding cost.



Example 1 shows how to determine the desired setup time.

Example 1

DETERMINING OPTIMAL SETUP TIME

Crate Furniture, Inc., a firm that produces rustic furniture, desires to move toward a reduced lot size. Crate Furniture's production analyst, Aleda Roth, determined that a 2-hour production cycle would be acceptable between two departments. Further, she concluded that a setup time that would accommodate the 2-hour cycle time should be achieved.

APPROACH ▶ Roth developed the following data and procedure to determine optimum setup time analytically:

D = Annual demand = 400,000 units
d = Daily demand = 400,000 per 250 days = 1,600 units per day
p = Daily production rate = 4,000 units per day
Q_p = EOQ desired = 400 (which is the 2-hour demand; that is, 1,600 per day per four 2-hour periods)
H = Holding cost = \$20 per unit per year
S = Setup cost (to be determined)

Hourly labor rate = \$30.00

LO 16.4 *Determine optimal setup time*

SOLUTION ▶ Roth determines that the cost and related time per setup should be:

$$Q_p = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H(1 - d/p)}}$$

$$Q_p^2 = \frac{2DS}{H(1 - d/p)}$$

$$S = \frac{(Q_p^2)(H)(1 - d/p)}{2D} \tag{16-2}$$

$$= \frac{(400)^2(20)(1 - 1{,}600/4{,}000)}{2(400{,}000)} = \frac{(3{,}200{,}000)(0.6)}{800{,}000} = \$2.40$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Setup time} &= \$2.40/(\text{hourly labor rate})\\ &= \$2.40/(\$30 \text{ per hour})\\ &= 0.08 \text{ hour, or } 4.8 \text{ minutes}\end{aligned}$$

INSIGHT ▶ Now, rather than produce components in large lots, Crate Furniture can produce in a 2-hour cycle with the advantage of an inventory turnover of four *per day*.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If labor cost goes to \$40 per hour, what should be the setup time? [Answer: 0.06 hours, or 3.6 minutes.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 16.1, 16.2, 16.3

Only two changes need to be made for small-lot material flow to work. First, material handling and work flow need to be improved. With short production cycles, there can be very little wait time. Improving material handling is usually easy and straightforward. The second change is more challenging, and that is a radical reduction in setup times. We discuss setup reduction next.

Reduce Setup Costs Both the quantity of inventory and the cost of holding it go down as the inventory-reorder quantity and the maximum inventory level drop. However, because inventory requires incurring an ordering or setup cost that is applied to the units produced, managers tend to purchase (or produce) large orders; the larger the order the less the cost to be absorbed by each unit. Consequently, the way to drive down lot sizes *and* reduce inventory cost is to reduce setup cost, which in turn lowers the optimum order size.

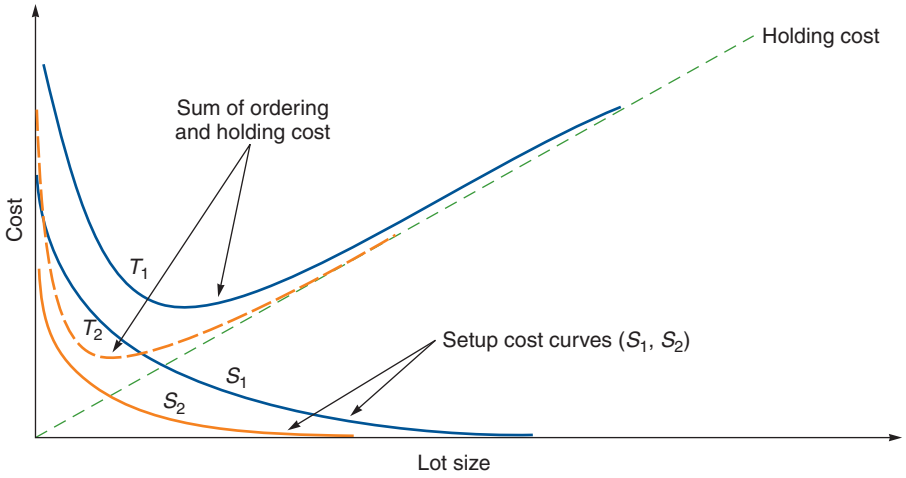
STUDENT TIP
Reduced lot sizes must be accompanied by reduced setup times.

The effect of reduced setup costs on total cost and lot size is shown in Figure 16.5. Moreover, smaller lot sizes hide fewer problems. In many environments, setup cost is highly correlated with setup time. In a manufacturing facility, setups usually require a substantial amount of preparation. Much of the preparation required by a setup can be done prior to shutting down

Figure 16.5

Lower Setup Costs Will Lower Total Cost

More frequent orders require reducing setup costs; otherwise, inventory costs will rise. As the setup costs are lowered (from S_1 to S_2), total inventory costs also fall (from T_1 to T_2).



the machine or process. Setup times can be reduced substantially, as shown in Figure 16.6. For example in one Kodak plant in Mexico, the setup time to change a bearing was reduced from 12 hours to 6 minutes! This is the kind of progress that is typical of world-class manufacturers.

Just as setup costs can be reduced at a machine in a factory, setup time can also be reduced during the process of getting the order ready in the office. Driving down factory setup time from hours to minutes does little good if orders are going to take weeks to process or "set up" in the office. This is exactly what happens in organizations that forget that Lean concepts have applications in offices as well as in the factory. Reducing setup time (and cost) is an excellent way to reduce inventory investment, improve productivity, and speed throughput.

STUDENT TIP Effective scheduling is required for effective use of capital and personnel.

Lean Scheduling

Effective schedules, communicated to those within the organization as well as to outside suppliers, support Lean. Better scheduling also improves the ability to meet customer orders, drives down inventory by allowing smaller lot sizes, and reduces work-in-process. For instance, many companies, such as Ford, now tie suppliers to their final assembly schedule. Ford communicates its schedules to bumper manufacturer Polycon Industries from the Ford production control system. The scheduling system describes the style and color of the bumper needed for each vehicle moving down the final assembly line. The scheduling system transmits the information to portable terminals carried by Polycon warehouse personnel, who load the bumpers onto conveyors leading to the loading dock. The bumpers are then trucked 50 miles to the Ford plant. Total time is 4 hours. However, as we saw in our opening *Global Company Profile*, Toyota has moved its bumper supplier *inside* the new Tundra plant; techniques such as this drive down delivery time even further.

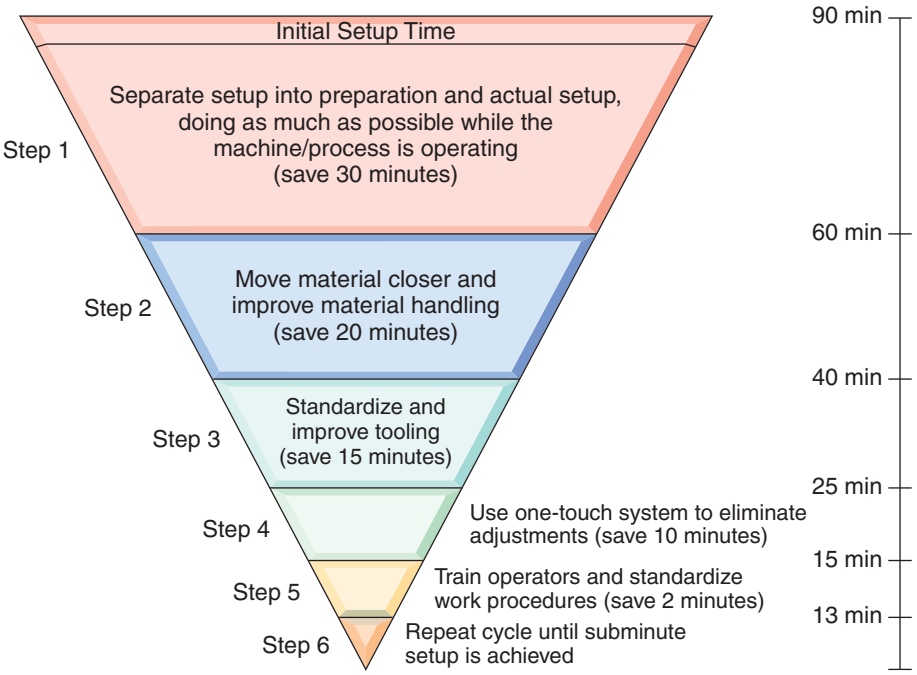


Figure 16.6

Steps for Reducing Setup Times

Reduced setup times are a major component of Lean.

Table 16.3 suggests several items that can contribute to achieving these goals, but two techniques (in addition to communicating schedules) are paramount. They are *level schedules* and *kanban*.

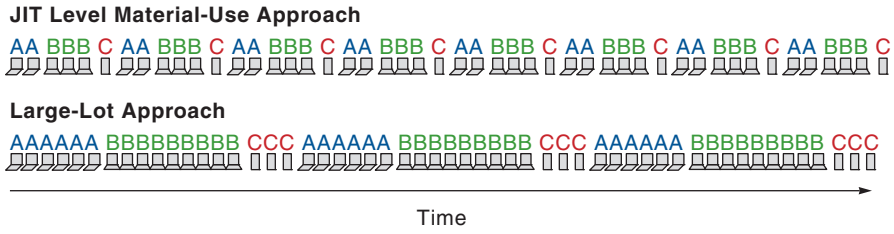


Figure 16.7

Scheduling Small Lots of Parts A, B, and C Increases Flexibility to Meet Customer Demand and Reduces Inventory

The Lean approach to scheduling, described as heijunka by the Japanese, produces just as many of each model per time period as the large-lot approach, provided setup times are lowered.

Level Schedules Level schedules process frequent small batches rather than a few large batches. Figure 16.7 contrasts a traditional large-lot approach using large batches with a level schedule using many small batches. The operations manager's task is to make and move small lots so the level schedule is economical. This requires success with the issues discussed in this chapter that allow small lots. As lots get smaller, the constraints may change and become increasingly challenging. At some point, processing a unit or two may not be feasible. The constraint may be the way units are sold and shipped (four to a carton), or an expensive paint changeover (on an automobile assembly line), or the proper number of units in a sterilizer (for a food-canning line).

The scheduler may find that *freezing*, that is holding a portion of the schedule near due dates constant, allows the production system to function and the schedule to be met. Operations managers expect the schedule to be achieved with no deviations.

Level schedules
Scheduling products so that each day's production meets the demand for that day.

TABLE 16.3

LEAN SCHEDULING TACTICS
Make level schedules
Use kanbans
Communicate schedules to suppliers
Freeze part of the schedule
Perform to schedule
Seek one-piece-make and one-piece-move
Eliminate waste
Produce in small lots
Each operation produces a perfect part

Kanban One way to achieve small lot sizes is to move inventory through the shop only as needed rather than *pushing* it on to the next workstation whether or not the personnel there are ready for it. As noted earlier, when inventory is moved only as needed, it is referred to as a *pull* system, and the ideal lot size is one. The Japanese call this system *kanban*. Kanbans allow arrivals at a work center to match (or nearly match) the processing time.

Kanban is a Japanese word for *card*. In their effort to reduce inventory, the Japanese use systems that "pull" inventory through work centers. They often use a "card" to signal the need for another container of material—hence the name *kanban.* The card is the authorization for the next container of material to be produced. Typically, a kanban signal exists for each container of items to be obtained. An order for the container is then initiated by each kanban and "pulled" from the producing department or supplier. A sequence of kanbans "pulls" the material through the plant.

Kanban
The Japanese word for *card*, which has come to mean "signal"; a kanban system moves parts through production via a "pull" from a signal.

LO 16.5 *Define* kanban

The system has been modified in many facilities so that even though it is called a *kanban*, the card itself does not exist. In some cases, an empty position on the floor is sufficient indication that the next container is needed. In other cases, some sort of signal, such as a flag or rag (Figure 16.8), alerts that it is time for the next container.

When there is visual contact between producer and user, the process works like this:

1. The user removes a standard-size container of parts from a small storage area, as shown in Figure 16.8.
2. The signal at the storage area is seen by the producing department as authorization to replenish the using department or storage area. Because there is an optimum lot size, the producing department may make several containers at a time.

A kanban system is similar to the resupply that occurs in your neighborhood supermarket: the customer buys; the stock clerk observes the shelf or receives notice from the end-of-day sales list and restocks. When the store's limited supply is depleted, a "pull" signal is sent to the warehouse, distributor, or manufacturer for resupply, usually that night. The complicating factor in a manufacturing firm is the time needed for actual manufacturing (production) to take place.

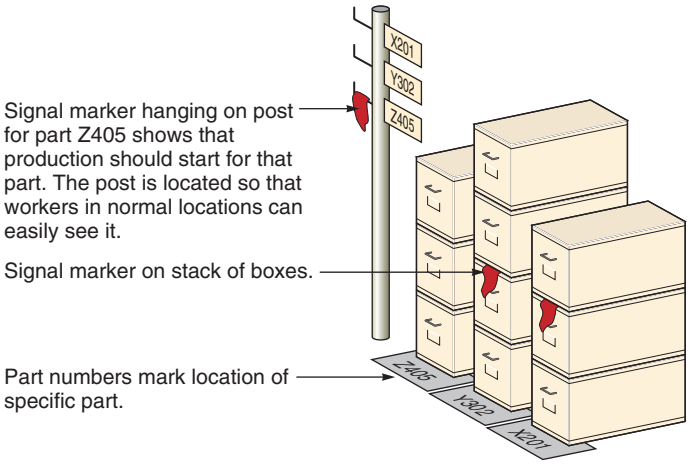


Figure 16.8

Diagram of Storage Area with Warning-Signal Marker

Donna Shader

A kanban need not be as formal as signal lights or empty carts. The cook in a fast-food restaurant knows that when six cars are in line, eight meat patties and six orders of french fries should be cooking.

Several additional points regarding kanbans may be helpful:

- When the producer and user are not in visual contact, a card can be used; otherwise, a light, flag, or empty spot on the floor may be adequate.
- Usually each card controls a specific quantity of parts, although multiple card systems are used if the work cell produces several components or if the lot size is different from the move size.
- The kanban cards provide a direct control (limit) on the amount of work-in-process between cells.

Determining the Number of Kanban Cards or Containers The number of kanban cards, or containers, sets the amount of authorized inventory. To determine the number of containers moving back and forth between the using area and the producing areas, management first sets the size of each container. This is done by computing the lot size, using a model such as the production order quantity model [discussed in Chapter 12 and shown again on page 644 in Equation (16-1)]. Setting the number of containers involves knowing: (1) lead time needed to produce a container of parts and (2) the amount of safety stock needed to account for variability or uncertainty in the system. The number of kanban cards is computed as follows:

LO 16.6 *Compute* the required number of kanbans

$$\text{Number of kanbans (containers)} = \frac{\text{Demand during lead time} + \text{Safety stock}}{\text{Size of container}} \tag{16-3}$$

Example 2 illustrates how to calculate the number of kanbans needed.

Example 2

DETERMINING THE NUMBER OF KANBAN CONTAINERS

Hobbs Bakery produces short runs of cakes that are shipped to grocery stores. The owner, Ken Hobbs, wants to try to reduce inventory by changing to a kanban system. He has developed the following data and asked you to finish the project.

$$\text{Production lead time} = \text{Wait time} + \text{Material handling time} + \text{Processing time} = 2 \text{ days}$$

$$\text{Daily demand} = 500 \text{ cakes}$$

$$\text{Safety stock} = \tfrac{1}{2} \text{ day}$$

$$\text{Container size (determined on a production order size EOQ basis)} = 250 \text{ cakes}$$

APPROACH ▶ Having determined that the EOQ size is 250, we then determine the number of kanbans (containers) needed.

SOLUTION ▶ Demand during lead time =

$$\text{Lead time} \times \text{Daily demand} = 2 \text{ days} \times 500 \text{ cakes} = 1{,}000$$

$$\text{Safety stock} = \tfrac{1}{2} \times \text{Daily demand} = 250$$

Number of kanbans (containers) needed =

$$\frac{\text{Demand during lead time} + \text{Safety stock}}{\text{Container size}} = \frac{1{,}000 + 250}{250} = 5$$

INSIGHT ▶ Once the reorder point is hit, five containers should be released.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If lead time drops to 1 day, how many containers are needed? [Answer: 3.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 16.4, 16.5, 16.6, 16.7, 16.8, 16.9, 16.10 (16.11, 16.12 are available in MyOMLab)

Advantages of Kanban Containers are typically very small, usually a matter of a few hours' worth of production. Such a system requires tight schedules, with small quantities being produced several times a day. The process must run smoothly with little variability in quality or lead time because any shortage has an almost immediate impact on the entire system. Kanban places added emphasis on meeting schedules, reducing the time and cost required by setups, and economical material handling.

In-plant kanban systems often use standardized, reusable containers that protect the specific quantities to be moved. Such containers are also desirable in the supply chain. Standardized containers reduce weight and disposal costs, generate less wasted space, and require less labor to pack, unpack, and prepare items.

Lean Quality

STUDENT TIP
Good quality costs less.

There is no Lean without quality. And Lean's "pull" production, smaller batch sizes, and low inventory all enhance quality by exposing bad quality. Savings occur because scrap, rework, inventory investment, and poor product are no longer buried in inventory. This means fewer bad units are produced. In short, whereas inventory *hides* bad quality, Lean *exposes* it.

As Lean shrinks queues and lead time, it keeps evidence of errors fresh and limits the number of potential sources of error. In effect, Lean creates an early warning system for quality problems so that fewer bad units are produced and feedback is immediate. This advantage accrues both within the firm and with goods received from outside vendors.

In addition, better quality means fewer buffers are needed, and therefore, a better, easier-to-maintain inventory system can exist. Often the purpose of keeping inventory is to protect against unreliable quality. But, when consistent quality exists, Lean firms can reduce all costs associated with inventory. Table 16.4 suggests some tactics for quality in a Lean environment.

TABLE 16.4

LEAN QUALITY TACTICS
Use statistical process control
Empower employees
Build fail-safe methods (poka-yoke, checklists, etc.)
Expose poor quality with small lots
Provide immediate feedback

Lean and the Toyota Production System

Toyota Motor's Eiji Toyoda and Taiichi Ohno are given credit for the Toyota Production System (TPS; see the *Global Company Profile* that opens this chapter). Three components of TPS are *continuous improvement*, *respect for people*, and *standard work practice*, which are now considered an integral part of Lean.

Continuous Improvement

Continuous improvement under TPS means building an organizational culture and instilling in its people a value system stressing that processes can be improved—indeed, that improvement is an integral part of every employee's job. This process is formalized in TPS by **kaizen**, the Japanese word for change for the good, or what is more generally known as *continuous improvement*. Kaizen is often implemented by a kaizen event. A **kaizen event** occurs when members of a work cell group or team meet to develop innovative ways to immediately implement improvements in the work area or process. In application, kaizen means making a multitude of small or incremental changes as one seeks elusive perfection. (See the *OM in Action* box, "Toyota's New Challenge.") Instilling the mantra of continuous improvement begins at personnel recruiting and continues through extensive and continuing training. One of the reasons continuous improvement works at Toyota, we should note, is because of another core value at Toyota, Toyota's respect for people.

Kaizen
A focus on continuous improvement.

Kaizen event
Members of a work cell or team meet to develop improvements in the process.

Respect for People

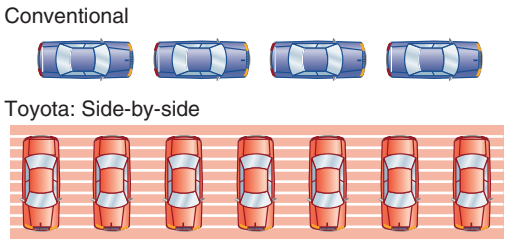
STUDENT TIP
Respect for people brings the entire person to work.

Toyota, like other Lean organizations, recruits, trains, and treats people as knowledge workers. Aided by aggressive cross-training and few job classifications, Lean firms engage the mental as well as physical capacities of employees in the challenging task of improving operations. Employees are empowered. They are empowered not only to make improvements, but also to stop machines and processes when quality problems exist. Indeed, empowered employees are an integral part of Lean. This means that those tasks that have traditionally been assigned to staff are moved to employees. Toyota recognizes that employees know more about their jobs than anyone else. Lean firms respect employees by giving them the opportunity to enrich both their jobs and their lives.

OM in Action Toyota's New Challenge

With the generally high value of the yen, making a profit on cars built in Japan but sold in foreign markets is a challenge. As a result, Honda and Nissan are moving plants overseas, closer to customers. But Toyota, despite marginal profit on cars produced for export, is maintaining its current Japanese capacity. Toyota, which led the way with JIT and the TPS, is doubling down on its manufacturing prowess and continuous improvement. For an organization that traditionally does things slowly and step-by-step, the changes are radical. With its first new plant in Japan in 18 years, Toyota believes it can once again set new production benchmarks. It is drastically reforming its production processes in a number of ways:

- The assembly line has cars sitting side-by-side, rather than bumper-to-bumper, shrinking the length of the line by 35% and requiring fewer steps by workers.
- Instead of having car chassis dangling from overhead conveyors, they are perched on raised platforms, reducing heating and cooling costs by 40%.



- Retooling permits faster changeovers, allowing for shorter product runs of components, supporting level scheduling.
- The assembly line uses quiet friction rollers with fewer moving parts, requiring less maintenance than conventional lines and reducing worker fatigue.

These TPS innovations, efficient production with small lot sizes, rapid changeover, level scheduling, half the workers, and half the square footage, are being duplicated in Toyota's new plant in Blue Springs, Mississippi.

Sources: Forbes (July 29, 2012); *Automotive News* (February, 2011); and *The Wall Street Journal* (November 29, 2011).

Bernd Weissbrod/dpa/picture-alliance/Newscom

This Porsche assembly line, like most other Lean facilities, empowers employees so they can stop the entire production line, what the Japanese call *jidoka*, if any quality problems are spotted.

Processes and Standard Work Practice

Building effective and efficient processes requires establishing what Toyota calls standard work practices. The underlying principles are:

- Work is completely specified as to content, sequence, timing, and outcome; this is fundamental to a good process.
- Supplier connections for both internal and external customers are direct, specifying personnel, methods, timing, and quantity.
- Material and service flows are simple and directed to a specific person or machine.
- Process improvements are made only after rigorous analysis at the lowest possible level in the organization.

Lean requires that activities, connections, and flows include built-in tests (or poka-yokes) to signal problems. When a problem or defect occurs, production is stopped. Japanese call the practice of stopping production because of a defect, *jidoka*. The dual focus on (1) education and training of employees and (2) the responsiveness of the system to problems make the seemingly rigid system flexible and adaptable. The result is continuous improvement.

Lean Organizations

STUDENT TIP Lean drives out non-value-added activities.

Lean organizations understand the customer and the customer's expectations. Moreover, Lean organizations have functional areas that communicate and collaborate to verify that customer expectations are not only understood, but also met efficiently. This means identifying and delivering the customer's value expectation by implementing the tools of Lean throughout the organization.

Building a Lean Organization

Building Lean organizations is difficult, requiring exceptional leadership. Such leaders imbue the organization not just with the tools of Lean, but with a *culture* of continuous improvement. Building such a culture requires open communication and destroying isolated functional

disciplines that act as independent "silos." There is no substitute for open two-way communication that fosters effective and efficient processes. Such an organizational culture will have a demonstrated respect for people and a management willing to fully understand how and where the work is performed. Lean firms sometimes use the Japanese term **Gemba** or **Gemba walk** to refer to going to where the work is actually performed.

Gemba or Gemba walk
Going to where the work is actually performed.

Building organizational cultures that foster ongoing improvement and that accept the constant change and improvement that makes improvement habitual is a challenge. However, such organizations exist. They understand the customer and drive out activities that do not add value in the eyes of the customer. They include industry leaders such as United Parcel Service, Alaska Airlines, and, of course, Toyota. Even traditionally idiosyncratic organizations such as hospitals (see the *OM in Action* box, "Lean Delivers the Medicine") find improved productivity with Lean operations. Lean operations adopt a philosophy of minimizing waste by striving for perfection through continuous learning, creativity, and teamwork. They tend to share the following attributes:

VIDEO 16.1
Lean Operations at Alaska Airlines

- *Respect and develop employees* by improving job design, providing constant training, instilling commitment, and building teamwork.
- *Empower employees* with jobs that are made challenging by pushing responsibility to the lowest level possible.
- *Develop worker flexibility* through cross-training and reducing job classifications.
- *Build processes* that destroy variability by helping employees produce a perfect product every time.
- *Develop collaborative partnerships with suppliers*, helping them not only to understand the needs of the ultimate customer, but also to accept responsibility for satisfying those needs.
- *Eliminate waste by performing only value-added activities.* Material handling, inspection, inventory, travel time, wasted space, and rework are targets, as they do not add value.

LO 16.7 *Identify* six attributes of Lean organizations

Success requires leadership as well as the full commitment and involvement of managers, employees, and suppliers. The rewards that Lean producers reap are spectacular. Lean producers often become benchmark performers.

OM in Action Lean Delivers the Medicine

Using kaizen techniques straight out of Lean, a team of employees at San Francisco General Hospital target and then analyze a particular area within the hospital for improvement. Hospitals today are focusing on throughput and quality in the belief that excelling on these measures will drive down costs and push up patient satisfaction. Doctors and nurses now work together in teams that immerse themselves in a weeklong kaizen event. These events generate plans that make specific improvements in flow, quality, costs, or the patients' experience.

One recent kaizen event focused on the number of minutes it takes from the moment a patient is wheeled into the operating room to when the first incision is made. A team spent a week coming up with ways to whittle 10 minutes off this "prep" time. Every minute saved reduces labor cost and opens up critical facilities. Another kaizen event targeted the Urgent Care Center, dropping the average wait from 5 hours down to 2.5, primarily by adding an on-site X-ray machine instead of requiring patients to walk 15 minutes to the main radiology department. Similarly, wait times in the Surgical Clinic dropped from 2.5 hours to 70 minutes. The operating room now uses a *5S* protocol and has implemented *Standard Work* for the preoperation process.

As hospitals focus on improving medical quality and patient satisfaction, they are exposed to some Japanese terms associated with Lean, many of which do not have a direct English translation: **Gemba,** the place where work is actually performed; **Hansei,** a period of critical self-reflection; **Heijunka,** a level production schedule that provides balance and smooths day-to-day variation; **Jidoka,** using both human intelligence and technology to stop a process at the first sign of a potential problem; **Kaizen,** continuous improvement; and **Muda,** anything that consumes resources, but provides no value.

Franck Boston/Fotolia

Lean systems are increasingly being adopted by hospitals as they try to reduce costs while improving quality and increasing patient satisfaction—and as San Francisco General has demonstrated, Lean techniques are working.

Sources: San Francisco Chronicle (Oct. 14, 2013) and *San Francisco General Hospital & Trauma Center Annual Report*, 2012–2013.

Lean Sustainability

Lean and sustainability are two sides of the same coin. Both seek to maximize resource and economic efficiency. However, if Lean focuses on only the immediate process and system, then managers may miss the sustainability issues beyond the firm. As we discussed in Supplement 5, sustainability requires examining the systems in which the firm and its stakeholders operate. When this is done, both Lean and sustainability achieve higher levels of performance.

Lean drives out waste because waste adds nothing for the customer. Sustainability drives out waste because waste is both expensive and has an adverse effect on the environment. Driving out waste is the common ground of Lean sustainability.

STUDENT TIP Lean began in factories, but is now also used in services throughout the world.

Lean in Services

The features of Lean apply to services—from hospitals to amusement parks and airlines—directly influencing the customers' received value. The Lean attributes of respect for people, efficient processes with rigorous standard practices that drive out waste, and a focus on continuous improvement are pervasive vehicles for consistently generating value for all stakeholders. If there is any change in focus of Lean between manufacturing and services, it may be that the high level of customer interaction places added emphasis on enabling people through training, motivation, and empowerment to contribute to their fullest. However, in addition to the customer interaction aspect of services, here are some specific applications of Lean applied to suppliers, layout, inventory, and scheduling in the service sector.

LO 16.8 *Explain* how Lean applies to services

Suppliers Virtually every restaurant deals with its suppliers on a JIT basis. Those that do not are usually unsuccessful. The waste is too evident—food spoils, and customers complain, get sick, and may die. Similarly, JIT is basic to the financial sector that processes your deposits, withdrawals, and brokerage activities on a JIT basis. That is the industry standard.

Layouts Lean layouts are required in restaurant kitchens, where cold food must be served cold and hot food hot. McDonald's, for example, has reconfigured its kitchen layout, at great expense, to drive seconds out of the production process, thereby speeding delivery to customers. With the new process, McDonald's can produce made-to-order hamburgers in 45 seconds. Layouts also make a difference at Alaska Airline's baggage claim, where customers expect their bags in 20 minutes or less.

Inventory Stockbrokers drive inventory down to nearly zero every day. Most sell and buy orders occur on an immediate basis because an unexecuted sell or buy order is not acceptable to the client. A broker may be in serious trouble if left holding an unexecuted trade. Similarly, McDonald's reduces inventory waste by maintaining a time-stamped finished-goods inventory of only a few minutes; after that, it is thrown away. Hospitals, such as Arnold Palmer (described in this chapter's *Video Case Study*), manage JIT inventory and low safety stocks for many items. For instance, critical supplies such as pharmaceuticals may be held to low levels by developing community networks as backup. In this manner, if one pharmacy runs out of a needed drug, another member of the network can supply it until the next day's shipment arrives.

VIDEO 16.2 JIT at Arnold Palmer Hospital

Scheduling Airlines must adjust to fluctuations in customer demand. But rather than adjusting by changes in inventory, demand is satisfied by personnel availability. Through elaborate scheduling, personnel show up just in time to cover peaks in customer demand. In other words, rather than "things" being inventoried, personnel are scheduled. At a salon, the focus is only slightly different: prompt service is assured by scheduling both the *customer* and the staff. At McDonald's and Walmart, scheduling of personnel is down to 15-minute increments, based on precise forecasting of demand. Notice that in these organizations scheduling is a key ingredient of Lean. Excellent forecasts drive those schedules. Such forecasts may be very elaborate, with seasonal, daily, and even hourly components in the case of the airline ticket counter (holiday sales, flight time, etc.), seasonal and weekly components at the salon (holidays and Fridays create special problems), and down to a few minutes (to respond to the daily meal cycle) at McDonald's.

To deliver goods and services to customers under continuously changing demand, suppliers need to be reliable, inventories low, cycle times short, and schedules nimble. Lean engages and empowers employees to create and deliver the customer's perception of value, eliminating whatever does not contribute to this goal. Lean techniques are widely used in both goods-producing and service-producing firms; they just look different.

Summary

Lean operations, including JIT and TPS, focuses on continuous improvement to eliminate waste. Because waste is found in anything that does not add value, organizations that implement these techniques are adding value more efficiently than other firms. The expectation of lean firms is that empowered employees work with committed management to build systems that respond to customers with ever-increasing efficiency and higher quality.

Key Terms

Lean operations (p. 676)
Just-in-time (JIT) (p. 676)
Toyota Production System (TPS) (p. 676)
Seven wastes (p. 676)
5Ss (p. 677)
Variability (p. 677)
Throughput (p. 678)
Manufacturing cycle time (p. 678)
Pull system (p. 678)
Supplier partnerships (p. 678)
Consignment inventory (p. 680)
Lean inventory (p. 681)
Level schedules (p. 685)
Kanban (p. 685)
Kaizen (p. 687)
Kaizen event (p. 687)
Gemba or Gemba walk (p. 689)

Ethical Dilemma

In this Lean operations world, in an effort to lower handling costs, speed delivery, and reduce inventory, retailers are forcing their suppliers to do more and more in the way of preparing their merchandise for their cross-docking warehouses, shipment to specific stores, and shelf presentation. Your company, a small manufacturer of aquarium decorations, is in a tough position. First, Mega-Mart wanted you to develop bar-code technology, then special packaging, then small individual shipments bar coded for each store. (This way when the merchandise hits the warehouse, it is cross-docked immediately to the truck destined for that store, and upon arrival the merchandise is ready for shelf placement.) And now Mega-Mart wants you to develop RFID—immediately. Mega-Mart has made it clear that suppliers that cannot keep up with the technology will be dropped.

Earlier, when you didn't have the expertise for bar codes, you had to borrow money and hire an outside firm to do the development, purchase the technology, and train your shipping clerk. Then, meeting the special packaging requirement drove you into a loss for several months, resulting in a loss for last year. Now it appears that the RFID request is impossible. Your business, under the best of conditions, is marginally profitable, and the bank may not be willing to bail you out again. Over the years, Mega-Mart has slowly become your major customer and without it, you are probably out of business. What are the ethical issues, and what do you do?

Discussion Questions

1. What is a Lean producer?
2. What is JIT?
3. What is TPS?
4. What is level scheduling?
5. JIT attempts to remove delays, which do not add value. How, then, does JIT cope with weather and its impact on crop harvest and transportation times?
6. What are three ways in which Lean and quality are related?
7. What is kaizen, and what is a kaizen event?
8. What are the characteristics of supplier partnerships with respect to suppliers?
9. Discuss how the Japanese word for *card* has application in the study of JIT.
10. Standardized, reusable containers have obvious benefits for shipping. What is the purpose of these devices within the plant?
11. Does Lean production work in the service sector? Provide an example.
12. Which Lean techniques work in both the manufacturing *and* service sectors?

Solved Problem

Virtual Office Hours help is available in MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM 16.1

Krupp Refrigeration, Inc., is trying to reduce inventory and wants you to install a kanban system for compressors on one of its assembly lines. Determine the size of the kanban and the number of kanbans (containers) needed.

Setup cost = \$10
Annual holding cost per compressor = \$100
Daily production = 200 compressors
Annual usage = 25,000 (50 weeks × 5 days each × daily usage of 100 compressors)
Lead time = 3 days
Safety stock = $\frac{1}{2}$ day's production of compressors

SOLUTION

First, we must determine kanban container size. To do this, we determine the production order quantity [see discussion in Chapter 12 or Equation (16-1)], which determines the kanban size:

$$Q_p^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H\left(1-\frac{d}{p}\right)}} = \sqrt{\frac{2(25{,}000)(10)}{H\left(1-\frac{d}{p}\right)}} = \sqrt{\frac{500{,}000}{100\left(1-\frac{100}{200}\right)}} = \sqrt{\frac{500{,}000}{50}}$$

$$= \sqrt{10{,}000} = 100 \text{ compressors. So the production order size and the size of the kanban container} = 100.$$

Then we determine the number of kanbans:

$$\text{Demand during lead time} = 300 \ (= 3 \text{ days} \times \text{daily usage of } 100)$$

$$\text{Safety stock} = 100 \ (= \tfrac{1}{2} \times \text{daily production of } 200)$$

$$\text{Number of kanbans} = \frac{\text{Demand during lead time} + \text{Safety stock}}{\text{Size of container}}$$

$$= \frac{300 + 100}{100} = \frac{400}{100} = 4 \text{ containers}$$

Problems

Note: PX means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel OM.

Problems 16.1–16.12 relate to Lean and Just-in-Time

••• **16.1** Carol Cagle has a repetitive manufacturing plant producing trailer hitches in Arlington, Texas. The plant has an average inventory turnover of only 12 times per year. She has therefore determined that she will reduce her component lot sizes. She has developed the following data for one component, the safety chain clip:

$$\text{Annual demand} = 31{,}200 \text{ units}$$
$$\text{Daily demand} = 120 \text{ units}$$
$$\text{Daily production (in 8 hours)} = 960 \text{ units}$$
$$\text{Desired lot size (1 hour of production)} = 120 \text{ units}$$
$$\text{Holding cost per unit per year} = \$12$$
$$\text{Setup labor cost per hour} = \$20$$

How many minutes of setup time should she have her plant manager aim for regarding this component?

••• **16.2** Given the following information about a product at Michael Gibson's firm, what is the appropriate setup time?

$$\text{Annual demand} = 39{,}000 \text{ units}$$
$$\text{Daily demand} = 150 \text{ units}$$
$$\text{Daily production} = 1{,}000 \text{ units}$$
$$\text{Desired lot size} = 150 \text{ units}$$
$$\text{Holding cost per unit per year} = \$10$$
$$\text{Setup labor cost per hour} = \$40$$

••• **16.3** Rick Wing has a repetitive manufacturing plant producing automobile steering wheels. Use the following data to prepare for a reduced lot size. The firm uses a work year of 305 days.

Annual demand for steering wheels	30,500
Daily demand	100
Daily production (8 hours)	800
Desired lot size (2 hours of production)	200
Holding cost per unit per year	$10

a) What is the setup cost, based on the desired lot size?
b) What is the setup time, based on $40 per hour setup labor?

• **16.4** Hartley Electronics, Inc., in Nashville, produces short runs of custom airwave scanners for the defense industry. The owner, Janet Hartley, has asked you to reduce inventory by introducing a kanban system. After several hours of analysis, you develop the following data for scanner connectors used in one work cell. How many kanbans do you need for this connector?

Daily demand	1,000 connectors
Lead time	2 days
Safety stock	$\frac{1}{2}$ day
Kanban size	500 connectors

• **16.5** Tej Dhakar's company wants to establish kanbans to feed a newly established work cell. The following data have been provided. How many kanbans are needed?

Daily demand	250 units
Lead time	$\frac{1}{2}$ day
Safety stock	$\frac{1}{4}$ day
Kanban size	50 units

•• **16.6** Pauline Found Manufacturing, Inc., is moving to kanbans to support its telephone switching-board assembly lines. Determine the size of the kanban for subassemblies and the number of kanbans needed.

$$\text{Setup cost} = \$30$$
$$\text{Annual holding cost} = \$120 \text{ per subassembly}$$
$$\text{Daily production} = 20 \text{ subassemblies}$$
$$\text{Annual usage} = 2{,}500 \ (50 \text{ weeks} \times 5 \text{ days each} \times \text{daily usage of } 10 \text{ subassemblies})$$
$$\text{Lead time} = 16 \text{ days}$$
$$\text{Safety stock} = 4 \text{ days' production of subassemblies}$$ PX

•• **16.7** Maggie Moylan Motorcycle Corp. uses kanbans to support its transmission assembly line. Determine the size of the kanban for the mainshaft assembly and the number of kanbans needed.

Setup cost	= $20
Annual holding cost of mainshaft assembly	= $250 per unit
Daily production	= 300 mainshafts
Annual usage	= 20,000 (= 50 weeks × 5 days each × daily usage of 80 mainshafts)
Lead time	= 3 days
Safety stock	= $\frac{1}{2}$ day's production of mainshafts

• **16.8** Discount-Mart, a major East Coast retailer, wants to determine the economic order quantity (see Chapter 12 for EOQ formulas) for its halogen lamps. It currently buys all halogen lamps from Specialty Lighting Manufacturers in Atlanta. Annual demand is 2,000 lamps, ordering cost per order is $30, and annual carrying cost per lamp is $12.

a) What is the EOQ?
b) What are the total annual costs of holding and ordering (managing) this inventory?
c) How many orders should Discount-Mart place with Specialty Lighting per year?

••• **16.9** Discount-Mart (see Problem 16.8), as part of its new Lean program, has signed a long-term contract with Specialty Lighting and will place orders electronically for its halogen lamps. Ordering costs will drop to $.50 per order, but Discount-Mart also reassessed its carrying costs and raised them to $20 per lamp.
a) What is the new economic order quantity?
b) How many orders will now be placed?
c) What is the total annual cost of managing the inventory with this policy?

•• **16.10** How do your answers to Problems 16.8 and 16.9 provide insight into a collaborative purchasing strategy?

Additional problems **16.11–16.12** *are available in* MyOMLab.

CASE STUDIES

Lean Operations at Alaska Airlines

Video Case

Alaska Airlines operates in a land of rugged beauty, crystal clear lakes, spectacular glaciers, majestic mountains, and bright blue skies. But equally awesome is its operating performance. Alaska Airlines consistently provides the industry's number one overall ranking and best on-time performance. A key ingredient of this excellent performance is Alaska Airlines' Lean initiative.

With an aggressive implementation of Lean, Ben Minicucci, Executive VP for Operations, is finding ever-increasing levels of performance. He pushes this initiative throughout the company with: (1) a focus on continuous improvement, (2) metrics that measure performance against targets, and (3) making performance relevant to Alaska Airlines' empowered employees.

With leadership training that includes a strong focus on participative management, Minicucci has created a seven-person Lean Department. The department provides extensive training in Lean via one-week courses, participative workshops, and two-week classes that train employees to become a Six Sigma Green Belt. Some employees even pursue the next step, Black Belt certification.

A huge part of any airline's operations is fuel cost, but capital utilization and much of the remaining cost is dependent upon ground equipment and crews that handle aircraft turnaround and maintenance, in-flight services, and customer service.

As John Ladner, Director of Seattle Airport Operations, has observed, "Lean eliminates waste, exposes non-standard work, and is forcing a focus on variations in documented best practices and work time."

Lean is now part of the Alaska Airlines corporate culture, with some 60 ongoing projects. Kaizen events (called "Accelerated Improvement Workshops" at Alaska Airlines), Gemba Walks (called "waste walks" by Alaska Airlines), and 5S are now a part of everyday conversation at Alaska Airlines. Lean projects have included:

- Applying 5S to identify aircraft ground equipment and its location on the tarmac.
- Improving preparation for and synchronization of the arrival and departure sequences; time to open the front door after arrival has been reduced from 4.5 to 1 min.
- Redefining the disconnect procedure for tow bars used to "push back" aircraft at departure time; planes now depart 2–3 minutes faster.
- Revising the deicing process, meaning less time for the plane to be on the tarmac.
- Improving pilot staffing, making Alaska's pilot productivity the highest in the industry. Every 1% improvement in productivity leads to a $5 million savings on a recurring basis. Alaska Airlines has achieved a 7% productivity improvement over the last five years.

Alaska Airlines

Another current Lean project is passenger unloading and loading. Lean instructor Allison Fletcher calls this "the most unique project I have worked on." One exciting aspect of deplaning is Alaska's solar-powered "switchback" staircase for unloading passengers through the rear door (see photo). Alaska is saving two minutes, or nearly 17%, off previous unloading time with this new process. Alaska Airlines' Lean culture has made it a leader in the industry.

Discussion Questions*

1. What are the key ingredients of Lean, as identified at Alaska Airlines?
2. As an initial phase of a kaizen event, discuss the many ways passengers can be loaded and unloaded from airplanes.
3. Document the research that is being done on the aircraft passenger-loading problem.

* You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before addressing these questions.

JIT at Arnold Palmer Hospital

Video Case

Orlando's Arnold Palmer Hospital, founded in 1989, specializes in treatment of women and children and is renowned for its high-quality rankings (top 10% of 2000 benchmarked hospitals), its labor and delivery volume (more than 14,000 births per year), and its neonatal intensive care unit (one of the highest survival rates in the nation). But quality medical practices and high patient satisfaction require costly inventory—some $30 million per year and thousands of SKUs.* With pressure on medical care to manage and reduce costs, Arnold Palmer Hospital has turned toward controlling its inventory with just-in-time (JIT) techniques.

Within the hospital, for example, drugs are now distributed at the nursing stations via dispensing machines (almost like vending machines) that electronically track patient usage and post the related charge to each patient. Each night, based on patient demand and prescriptions written by doctors, the dispensing stations are refilled.

To address JIT issues externally, Arnold Palmer Hospital turned to a major distribution partner, McKesson General Medical, which as a first-tier supplier provides the hospital with about one-quarter of all its medical/surgical inventory. McKesson supplies sponges, basins, towels, Mayo stand covers, syringes, and hundreds of other medical/surgical items. To ensure coordinated daily delivery of inventory purchased from McKesson, an account executive has been assigned to the hospital on a full-time basis, as well as two other individuals who address customer service and product issues. The result has been a drop in Central Supply average daily inventory from $400,000 to $114,000 since JIT.

JIT success has also been achieved in the area of *custom surgical packs*. Custom surgical packs are the sterile coverings, disposable plastic trays, gauze, and the like, specialized to each type of surgical procedure. Arnold Palmer Hospital uses 10 different custom packs for various surgical procedures. "Over 50,000 packs are used each year, for a total cost of about $1.5 million," says George DeLong, head of Supply-Chain Management.

The packs are not only delivered in a JIT manner, but packed that way as well. That is, they are packed in the reverse order they are used so each item comes out of the pack in the sequence it is needed. The packs are bulky, are expensive, and must remain sterile. Reducing the inventory and handling while maintaining an ensured sterile supply for scheduled surgeries presents a challenge to hospitals.

Here is how the supply chain works: Custom packs are *assembled* by a packing company with *components supplied* primarily from manufacturers selected by the hospital, and *delivered* by McKesson from its local warehouse. Arnold Palmer Hospital works with its own surgical staff (through the Medical Economics Outcome Committee) to identify and standardize the custom packs to reduce the number of custom pack SKUs. With this integrated system, pack safety stock inventory has been cut to one day.

The procedure to drive the custom surgical pack JIT system begins with a "pull" from the doctors' daily surgical schedule. Then, Arnold Palmer Hospital initiates an electronic order to McKesson between 1:00 and 2:00 P.M. daily. At 4:00 A.M. the next day, McKesson delivers the packs. Hospital personnel arrive at 7:00 A.M. and stock the shelves for scheduled surgeries. McKesson then reorders from the packing company, which in turn "pulls" necessary inventory for the quantity of packs needed from the manufacturers.

Arnold Palmer Hospital's JIT system reduces inventory investment, expensive traditional ordering, and bulky storage and supports quality with a sterile delivery.

Discussion Questions**

1. What do you recommend be done when an error is found in a pack as it is opened for an operation?
2. How might the procedure for custom surgical packs described here be improved?
3. When discussing JIT in services, the text notes that suppliers, layout, inventory, and scheduling are all used. Provide an example of each of these at Arnold Palmer Hospital.
4. When a doctor proposes a new surgical procedure, how do you recommend the SKU for a new custom pack be entered into the hospital's supply-chain system?

*SKU = stock keeping unit

**You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before answering these questions.

- **Additional Case Studies:** Visit MyOMLab for these case studies:
  JIT after a Catastrophe: How Caterpillar responded after a tornado tore apart its Oxford plant.
  Mutual Insurance Company of Iowa: Applying JIT in an insurance office.

Endnote

1. The term 5S comes from the Japanese words seiri (*sort* and clear out), seiton (*straighten* and configure), seiso (*scrub* and clean up), seiketsu (maintain *sanitation* and cleanliness of self and workplace), and shitsuke (*self-discipline and standardization* of these practices).

Chapter 16 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
LEAN OPERATIONS (pp. 676–678)	■ **Lean operations**—Eliminates waste through continuous improvement and focus on exactly what the customer wants. ■ **Just-in-time (JIT)**—Continuous and forced problem solving via a focus on throughput and reduced inventory. ■ **Toyota Production System (TPS)**—Focus on continuous improvement, respect for people, and standard work practices. *When implemented as a comprehensive manufacturing strategy, Lean, JIT, and TPS systems sustain competitive advantage and result in increased overall returns.* ■ **Seven wastes**—Overproduction, queues, transportation, inventory, motion, overprocessing, and defective product. ■ **5Ss**—A Lean production checklist: sort, simplify, shine, standardize, and sustain. U.S. managers often add two additional *S*s to the 5 original ones: *safety* and *support/maintenance*. ■ **Variability**—Any deviation from the optimum process that delivers perfect product on time, every time. Both JIT and inventory reduction are effective tools for identifying causes of variability. ■ **Throughput**—The rate at which units move through a process. ■ **Manufacturing cycle time**—The time between the arrival of raw materials and the shipping of finished products. ■ **Pull system**—A concept that results in material being produced only when requested and moved to where it is needed just as it is needed. Pull systems use signals to request production and delivery from supplying stations to stations that have production capacity available.	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4
LEAN AND JUST-IN-TIME (pp. 678–687)	■ **Supplier partnerships**—Suppliers and purchasers work together to remove waste and drive down costs for mutual benefit. Some specific goals of supplier partnerships are *removal of unnecessary activities*, *removal of in-plant inventory, removal of in-transit inventory,* and *obtain improved quality and reliability*. ■ **Consignment inventory**—An arrangement in which the supplier maintains title to the inventory until it is used. Concerns of suppliers in suppler partnerships include (1) *diversification*, (2) *scheduling*, (3) *lead time*, (4) *quality*, and (5) *lot sizes*. *Lean layout tactics* include building work cells for families of products, including a large number of operations in a small area, minimizing distance, designing little space for inventory, improving employee communication, using poka-yoke devices, building flexible or movable equipment, and cross-training workers to add flexibility. ■ **Lean inventory**—The minimum inventory necessary to keep a perfect system running. The idea behind JIT is to eliminate inventory that hides variability in the production system. *Lean inventory tactics* include using a pull system to move inventory, reducing lot size, developing just-in-time delivery systems with suppliers, delivering directly to the point of use, performing to schedule, reducing setup time, and using group technology. $$Q_p^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H[1 - (d/p)]}} \quad (16\text{-}1)$$ Using Equation (16-1), for a given desired lot size, Q, we can solve for the optimal setup cost, S: $$S = \frac{(Q^2)(H)(1 - d/p)}{2D} \quad (16\text{-}2)$$ *Lean scheduling tactics* include communicate schedules to suppliers, make level schedules, freeze part of the schedule, perform to schedule, seek one-piece-make and one-piece-move, eliminate waste, produce in small lots, use kanbans, and make each operation produce a perfect part. ■ **Level schedules**—Scheduling products so that each day's production meets the demand for that day. ■ **Kanban**—The Japanese word for *card*, which has come to mean "signal"; a kanban system moves parts through production via a "pull" from a signal. $$\text{Number of kanbans (containers)} = \frac{\text{Demand during lead time} + \text{Safety stock}}{\text{Size of container}} \quad (16\text{-}3)$$ *Lean quality*—whereas inventory *hides* bad quality, Lean immediately *exposes* it. Lean quality tactics include using statistical process control, empowering employees, building fail-safe methods (poka-yoke, checklists, etc.), exposing poor quality with small lots, and providing immediate feedback.	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4 Problems: 16.1–16.3 Problems: 16.4–16.9, 16.11, 16.12 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problem: 16.1

Chapter 16 *Rapid* Review *continued*

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
LEAN AND THE TOYOTA PRODUCTION SYSTEM (pp. 687–688)	■ **Kaizen**—A focus on continuous improvement. ■ **Kaizen event**—Members of a work cell or team meet to develop improvements in the process. Toyota recruits, trains, and treats people as knowledge workers. They are empowered. TPS employs aggressive cross-training and few job classifications.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4
LEAN ORGANIZATIONS (pp. 688–690)	Lean operations tend to share the following attributes: *respect and develop employees* by improving job design, providing constant training, instilling commitment, and building teamwork; *empower employees* by pushing responsibility to the lowest level possible; *develop worker flexibility* through cross-training and reducing job classifications; *build processes* that destroy variability; *develop collaborative partnerships with suppliers* to help them accept responsibility for satisfying end customer needs; and *eliminate waste by performing only value-added activities.* ■ **Gemba** or **Gemba walk**—Going to where the work is actually performed.	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4 **VIDEO 16.1** Lean Operations at Alaska Airlines
LEAN IN SERVICES (p. 690)	The features of Lean operations apply to services just as they do in other sectors. Forecasts in services may be very elaborate, with seasonal, daily, hourly, or even shorter components.	Concept Questions: 5.1–5.4 **VIDEO 16.2** JIT at Arnold Palmer Hospital

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 16.1 Match Lean Operations, JIT, and TPS with the concepts shown below:
- **a)** Continuous improvement and a focus on exactly what the customer wants, and when.
- **b)** Supply the customer with exactly what the customer wants when the customer wants it, without waste, through continuous improvement.
- **c)** Emphasis on continuous improvement, respect for people, and standard work practices.

LO 16.2 Define the seven wastes and the 5Ss. The seven wastes are _____, _____, _____, _____, _____. _____, and _____, and the 5Ss are _____, _____, _____, _____, and _____.

LO 16.3 Concerns of suppliers when moving to Supplier Partnerships include:
- **a)** small lots sometimes seeming economically prohibitive.
- **b)** realistic quality demands.
- **c)** changes without adequate lead time.
- **d)** erratic schedules.
- **e)** all of the above.

LO 16.4 What is the formula for optimal setup time?
- **a)** $\sqrt{2DQ/[H(1 - d/p)]}$
- **b)** $\sqrt{Q^2H(1 - d/p)/(2D)}$
- **c)** $QH(1 - d/p)/(2D)$
- **d)** $Q^2H(1 - d/p)/(2D)$
- **e)** $H(1 - d/p)$

LO 16.5 Kanban is the Japanese word for:
- **a)** car.
- **b)** pull.
- **c)** card.
- **d)** continuous improvement.
- **e)** level schedule.

LO 16.6 The required number of kanbans equals:
- **a)** 1.
- **b)** Demand during lead time / Q
- **c)** Size of container.
- **d)** Demand during lead time.
- **e)** Demand during lead time + Safety stock / Size of container

LO 16.7 The six attributes of Lean organizations are: _____, _____, _____, _____, _____, and _____.

LO 16.8 Lean applies to services:
- **a)** only in rare instances.
- **b)** except in terms of the supply chain.
- **c)** except in terms of employee issues.
- **d)** except in terms of both supply chain issues and employee issues.
- **e)** just as it applies to manufacturing.

Answers: LO 16.1. Lean = a, JIT = b, TPS = c; LO 16.2. overproduction, queues, transportation, inventory, motion, overprocessing, defective product; sort, simplify, shine, standardize, sustain; LO 16.3. e; LO 16.4. d; LO 16.5. c; LO 16.6. e; LO 16.7. respect and develop people, empower employees, develop worker flexibility, build excellent processes, develop collaborative partnerships with suppliers, eliminate waste; LO 16.8. e.

Maintenance and Reliability Decisions

CHAPTER 17

CHAPTER OUTLINE

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE: *Orlando Utilities Commission*

- The Strategic Importance of Maintenance and Reliability *700*
- Reliability *701*
- Maintenance *705*
- Total Productive Maintenance *709*

Alaska Airlines

10 OM STRATEGY DECISIONS

- Design of Goods and Services
- Managing Quality
- Process Strategy
- Location Strategies
- Layout Strategies
- Human Resources
- Supply-Chain Management
- Inventory Management
- Scheduling
- *Maintenance*

GLOBAL COMPANY PROFILE
Orlando Utilities Commission

Maintenance Provides a Competitive Advantage for the Orlando Utilities Commission

The Orlando Utilities Commission (OUC) owns and operates power plants that supply power to two central Florida counties. Every year, OUC takes each one of its power-generating units off-line for 1 to 3 weeks to perform maintenance work.

In addition, each unit is also taken off-line every 3 years for a complete overhaul and turbine generator inspection. Overhauls are scheduled for spring and fall, when the weather is mildest and demand for power is low. These overhauls last from 6 to 8 weeks.

Units at OUC's Stanton Energy Center require that maintenance personnel perform approximately 12,000 repair and preventive maintenance tasks a year. To accomplish these tasks efficiently, many of these jobs are scheduled daily via a computerized maintenance management program. The computer generates preventive maintenance work orders and lists of required materials.

Every day that a plant is down for maintenance costs OUC about $110,000 extra for the replacement cost of power that must be generated elsewhere. However, these costs pale beside the costs associated with a forced outage. An unexpected outage could cost OUC an additional $350,000 to $600,000 each day!

Scheduled overhauls are not easy; each one has 1,800 distinct tasks and requires 72,000 labor-hours. But the value of preventive maintenance was illustrated by the first overhaul of a new turbine generator. Workers discovered a cracked rotor blade, which could have destroyed a $27 million piece of equipment. To find such cracks, which are invisible to the naked eye, metals are examined using dye tests, X-rays, and ultrasound.

At OUC, preventive maintenance is worth its weight in gold. As a result, OUC's electric distribution system has been ranked number one in the Southeast U.S. by PA Consulting Group—a leading consulting firm. Effective maintenance provides a competitive advantage for the Orlando Utilities Commission.

Orlando Utilities Commission

The Stanton Energy Center in Orlando.

Orlando Utilities Commission

Two employees are on scaffolding near the top of Stanton Energy Center's 23-story high boiler, checking and repairing super heaters.

Orlando Utilities Commission

This inspector is examining a low-pressure section of turbine. The tips of these turbine blades will travel at supersonic speeds of 1,300 miles per hour when the plant is in operation. A crack in one of the blades can cause catastrophic failure.

Monty Rakusen Cultura/Newscom

Maintenance of capital-intensive facilities requires good planning to minimize downtime. Here, turbine overhaul is under way. Organizing the thousands of parts and pieces necessary for a shutdown is a major effort.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

LO 17.1 ***Describe*** how to improve system reliability 701
LO 17.2 ***Determine*** system reliability 702
LO 17.3 ***Determine*** mean time between failures (MTBF) 703
LO 17.4 ***Distinguish*** between preventive and breakdown maintenance 705
LO 17.5 ***Describe*** how to improve maintenance 706
LO 17.6 ***Compare*** preventive and breakdown maintenance costs 707
LO 17.7 ***Define*** autonomous maintenance 708

The Strategic Importance of Maintenance and Reliability

VIDEO 17.1
Maintenance Drives Profits at Frito-Lay

Managers at Orlando Utilities Commission (OUC), the subject of the chapter-opening *Global Company Profile*, fight for reliability to avoid the undesirable results of equipment failure. At OUC, a generator failure is very expensive for both the company and its customers. Power outages are instantaneous, with potentially devastating consequences. Similarly, managers at Frito-Lay, Walt Disney Company, and United Parcel Service (UPS) are intolerant of failures or breakdowns. Maintenance is critical at Frito-Lay to achieve high plant utilization and excellent sanitation. At Disney, sparkling-clean facilities and safe rides are necessary to retain its standing as one of the most popular vacation destinations in the world. Likewise, UPS's famed maintenance strategy keeps its delivery vehicles operating and looking as good as new for 20 years or more.

STUDENT TIP
If a system is not reliable, the other OM decisions are more difficult.

These companies, like most others, know that poor maintenance can be disruptive, inconvenient, wasteful, and expensive in dollars and even in lives. As Figure 17.1 illustrates, the interdependency of operator, machine, and mechanic is a hallmark of successful maintenance and reliability. Good maintenance and reliability management enhances a firm's performance and protects its investment.

Maintenance
The activities involved in keeping a system's equipment in working order.

Reliability
The probability that a machine part or product will function properly for a specified time under stated conditions.

The objective of maintenance and reliability is to maintain the capability of the system. Good maintenance removes variability. Systems must be designed and maintained to reach expected performance and quality standards. Maintenance includes all activities involved in keeping a system's equipment in working order. Reliability is the probability that a machine part or product will function properly for a specified time under stated conditions.

In this chapter, we examine four important tactics for improving the reliability and maintenance not only of products and equipment but also of the systems that produce them. The four tactics are organized around reliability and maintenance.

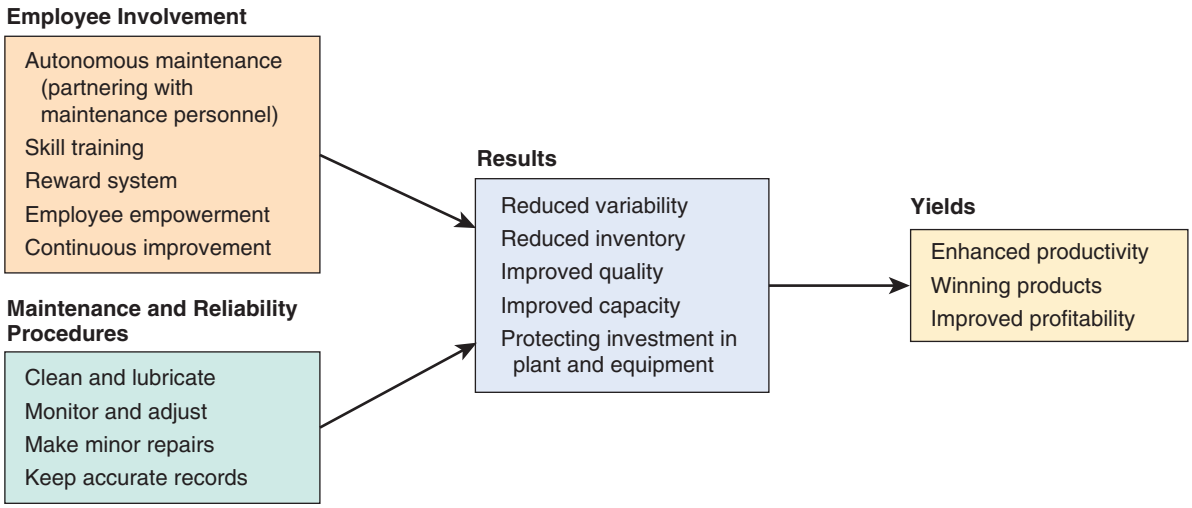


Figure 17.1
Good Maintenance and Reliability Management Requires Employee Involvement and Good Procedures

The reliability tactics are:

1. Improving individual components
2. Providing redundancy

The maintenance tactics are:

1. Implementing or improving preventive maintenance
2. Increasing repair capabilities or speed

We will now discuss these tactics.

Reliability

Systems are composed of a series of individual interrelated components, each performing a specific job. If any *one* component fails to perform, for whatever reason, the overall system (for example, an airplane or machine) can fail. First, we discuss system reliability and then improvement via redundancy.

System Reliability

STUDENT TIP
Designing for reliability is an excellent place to start reducing variability.

Because failures do occur in the real world, understanding their occurrence is an important reliability concept. We now examine the impact of failure in a series. Figure 17.2 shows that as the number of components in a *series* increases, the reliability of the whole system declines very quickly. A system of $n = 50$ interacting parts, each of which has a 99.5% reliability, has an overall reliability of 78%. If the system or machine has 100 interacting parts, each with an individual reliability of 99.5%, the overall reliability will be only about 60%!

To measure reliability in a system in which each component may have its own unique reliability, we cannot use the reliability curve in Figure 17.2. However, the method of computing system reliability (R_s) is simple. It consists of finding the product of individual reliabilities as follows:

LO 17.1 *Describe* how to improve system reliability

$$R_s = R_1 \times R_2 \times R_3 \times \ldots \times R_n \qquad (17\text{-}1)$$

where R_1 = reliability of component 1
R_2 = reliability of component 2

and so on.

Equation (17-1) assumes that the reliability of an individual component does not depend on the reliability of other components (that is, each component is *independent*). In addition, in this equation, as in most reliability discussions, reliabilities are presented as *probabilities*. Thus, a .90 reliability means that the unit will perform as intended 90% of the time. It also means that

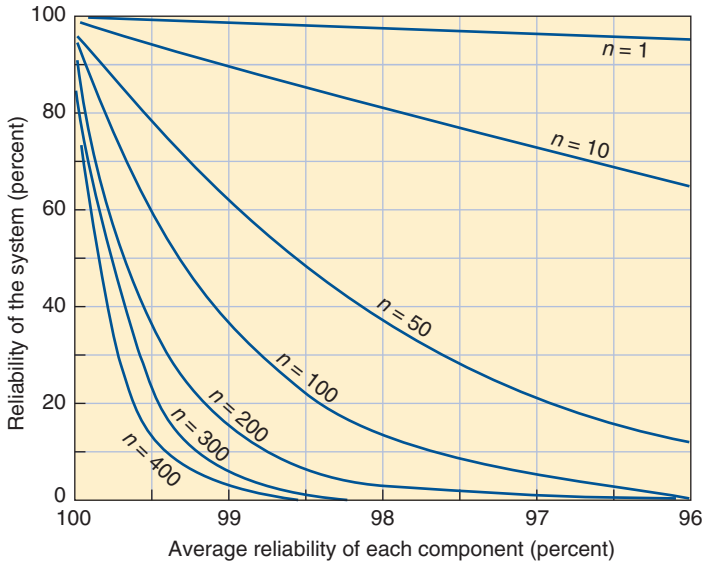


Figure 17.2
Overall System Reliability as a Function of Number of *n* Components (Each with the Same Reliability) and Component Reliability with Components in a Series

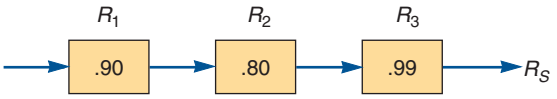
it will fail 1 − .90 = .10 = 10% of the time. We can use this method to evaluate the reliability of a service or a product, such as the one we examine in Example 1.

Example 1

RELIABILITY IN A SERIES

The National Bank of Greeley, Colorado, processes loan applications through three clerks (each checking different sections of the application in series), with reliabilities of .90, .80, and .99. It wants to find the system reliability.

APPROACH ▶ Apply Equation (17-1) to solve for R_s.



SOLUTION ▶ The reliability of the loan process is:

$$R_s = R_1 \times R_2 \times R_3 = (.90)(.80)(.99) = .713, \text{ or } 71.3\%$$

LO 17.2 *Determine* system reliability

INSIGHT ▶ Because each clerk in the series is less than perfect, the error probabilities are cumulative and the resulting reliability for this series is .713, which is less than any one clerk.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If the lowest-performing clerk (.80) is replaced by a clerk performing at .95 reliability, what is the new expected reliability? [Answer: .846.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 17.1, 17.2, 17.3, 17.9 (17.16 and 17.17 are available in MyOMLab)

ACTIVE MODEL 17.1 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 17.1 in MyOMLab.

EXCEL OM Data File Ch17Ex1.xls can be found in MyOMLab.

The basic unit of measure for reliability is the *product failure rate* (FR). Firms producing high-technology equipment often provide failure-rate data on their products. As shown in Equations (17-2) and (17-3), the failure rate measures the percent of failures among the total number of products tested, FR(%), or a number of failures during a period of operating time, FR(N):

$$\text{FR}(\%) = \frac{\text{Number of failures}}{\text{Number of units tested}} \times 100\% \tag{17-2}$$

$$\text{FR}(N) = \frac{\text{Number of failures}}{\text{Number of unit-hours of operating time}} \tag{17-3}$$

Mean time between failures (MTBF)
The expected time between a repair and the next failure of a component, machine, process, or product.

Perhaps the most common term in reliability analysis is the **mean time between failures (MTBF)**, which is the reciprocal of FR(N):

$$\text{MTBF} = \frac{1}{\text{FR}(N)} \tag{17-4}$$

In Example 2, we compute the percentage of failure FR(%), number of failures FR(N), and mean time between failures (MTBF).

Example 2

DETERMINING MEAN TIME BETWEEN FAILURES

Twenty air-conditioning systems designed for use by astronauts in Russia's Soyuz spacecraft were operated for 1,000 hours at a Russian test facility. Two of the systems failed during the test—one after 200 hours and the other after 600 hours.

APPROACH ▶ To determine the percent of failures [FR(%)], the number of failures per unit of time [FR(N)], and the mean time between failures (MTBF), we use Equations (17-2), (17-3), and (17-4), respectively.

SOLUTION ▶ Percentage of failures:

$$\text{FR}(\%) = \frac{\text{Number of failures}}{\text{Number of units tested}} = \frac{2}{20}(100\%) = 10\%$$

Number of failures per operating hour:

$$\text{FR}(N) = \frac{\text{Number of failures}}{\text{Number of unit-hours of operating time}}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total time} &= (1{,}000 \text{ hr})(20 \text{ units})\\ &= 20{,}000 \text{ unit-hour}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Nonoperating time} &= 800 \text{ hr for 1st failure} + 400 \text{ hr for 2nd failure}\\ &= 1{,}200 \text{ unit-hour}\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Number of unit-hours of operating time} = \text{Total time} - \text{Nonoperating time}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{FR}(N) &= \frac{2}{20{,}000 - 1{,}200} = \frac{2}{18{,}800}\\ &= .000106 \text{ failure/unit-hour}\end{aligned}$$

Because $\text{MTBF} = \dfrac{1}{\text{FR}(N)}$:

$$\text{MTBF} = \frac{1}{.000106} = 9{,}434 \text{ hr}$$

LO 17.3 *Determine* mean time between failures (MTBF)

If the typical Soyuz shuttle trip to the International Space Station lasts 6 days, Russia may note that the failure rate per trip is:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Failure rate} &= (\text{Failures/unit-hr})(24 \text{ hr/day})(6 \text{ days/trip})\\ &= (.000106)(24)(6)\\ &= .0153 \text{ failure/trip}\end{aligned}$$

INSIGHT ▶ Mean time between failures (MTBF) is the standard means of stating reliability.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If nonoperating time drops to 800, what is the new MTBF? [Answer: 9,606 hr.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 17.4, 17.5

If the failure rate recorded in Example 2 is too high, Russia will have to increase systems reliability by either increasing the reliability of individual components or by redundancy.

Providing Redundancy

To increase the reliability of systems, **redundancy** is added in the form of *backup* components or *parallel paths*. Redundancy is provided to ensure that if one component or path fails, the system has recourse to another.

Redundancy
The use of backup components or parallel paths to raise reliability.

Backup Redundancy Assume that reliability of a component is .80 and we back it up with another component with reliability of .75. The resulting reliability is the probability of the first component working plus the probability of the backup component working multiplied by the probability of needing the backup component (1 − .8 = .2). Therefore:

$$R_s = \begin{pmatrix}\text{Probability of first component working}\end{pmatrix} + \left[\begin{pmatrix}\text{Probability of second component working}\end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix}\text{Probability of needing second component}\end{pmatrix}\right] = \tag{17-5}$$

$$(.8) \quad + \quad [(.75) \quad \times \quad (1 - .8)] \quad = .8 + .15 = .95$$

Example 3 shows how redundancy, in the form of backup components, can improve the reliability of the loan process presented in Example 1.

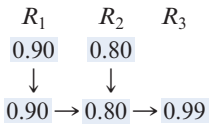
Example 3

RELIABILITY WITH BACKUP

The National Bank is disturbed that its loan-application process has a reliability of only .713 (see Example 1) and would like to improve this situation.

APPROACH ▶ The bank decides to provide redundancy for the two least reliable clerks, with clerks of equal competence.

SOLUTION ▶ This procedure results in the following system:



$$R_s = [.9 + .9(1 - .9)] \times [.8 + .8(1 - .8)] \times .99$$
$$= [.9 + (.9)(.1)] \times [.8 + (.8)(.2)] \times .99$$
$$= .99 \times .96 \times .99 = .94$$

INSIGHT ▶ By providing redundancy for two clerks, National Bank has increased reliability of the loan process from .713 to .94.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ What happens when the bank replaces both R_2 clerks with one new clerk who has a reliability of .90? [Answer: $R_s = .88$.]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 17.7, 17.10, 17.12, 17.13, 17.14, 17.15

ACTIVE MODEL 17.2 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 17.2 in MyOMLab.

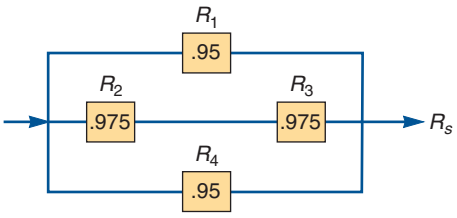
EXCEL OM Data File Ch17Ex3.xls can be found in MyOMLab.

Parallel Redundancy Another way to enhance reliability is to provide parallel paths. In a parallel system, the paths are assumed to be independent; therefore, success on any one path allows the system to perform. In Example 4, we determine the reliability of a process with three parallel paths.

Example 4

RELIABILITY WITH PARALLEL REDUNDANCY

A new iPad design that is more reliable because of its parallel circuits is shown below. What is its reliability?



APPROACH ▶ Identify the reliability of each path, then compute the likelihood of needing additional paths (likelihood of failure), and finally subtract the product of those failures from 1.

SOLUTION ▶

Reliability for the middle path $= R_2 \times R_3 = .975 \times .975 = .9506$

Then determine the probability of *failure* for all 3 paths $= (1 - 0.95) \times (1 - .9506) \times (1 - 0.95)$

$$= (.05) \times (.0494) \times (.05) = .00012$$

Therefore the reliability of the new design is 1 minus the probability of failures, or

$$= 1 - .00012 = .99988$$

INSIGHT ▶ Even in a system where no component has reliability over .975, the parallel design increases reliability to over .999. Parallel paths can add substantially to reliability.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ If reliability of *all* components is only .90, what is the new reliability? [Answer: .9981]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 17.6, 17.8, 17.11

ACTIVE MODEL 17.3 This example is further illustrated in Active Model 17.3 in MyOMLab.

Managers often use a combination of backup components or parallel paths to improve reliability.

Maintenance

There are two types of maintenance: preventive maintenance and breakdown maintenance. **Preventive maintenance** involves monitoring equipment and facilities, performing routine inspections, servicing, and keeping facilities in good repair. These activities are intended to build a system that will reduce variability, find potential failures, and make changes or repairs that will maintain efficient processes. The current generation of sophisticated sensors allows managers to build systems that can detect the slightest unusual vibration, minute changes in temperature or pressure, and slight changes in oil viscosity or chemical components. Preventive maintenance involves designing technical and human systems that will keep the productive process working within tolerance; it allows the system to perform as designed. **Breakdown maintenance** occurs when preventive maintenance fails and equipment/facilities must be repaired on an emergency or priority basis.

Preventive maintenance
A plan that involves monitoring, routine inspections, servicing, and keeping facilities in good repair.

Breakdown maintenance
Remedial maintenance that occurs when preventive maintenance fails and equipment/facilities must be repaired on an emergency or priority basis.

Implementing Preventive Maintenance

Preventive maintenance implies that we can determine when a system needs service or will need repair. Therefore, to perform preventive maintenance, we must know when a system requires service or when it is likely to fail. Failures occur at different rates during the life of a product. A high initial failure rate, known as **infant mortality**, may exist for many products. This is why many electronic firms "burn in" their products prior to shipment: that is to say, they execute a variety of tests (such as a full wash cycle at Whirlpool) to detect "startup" problems prior to shipment. Firms may also provide 90-day warranties. We should note that many infant mortality failures are not product failures per se, but rather failure due to improper use. This fact points up the importance in many industries of operations management's building an after-sales service system that includes installing and training.

Infant mortality
The failure rate early in the life of a product or process.

LO 17.4 *Distinguish* between preventive and breakdown maintenance

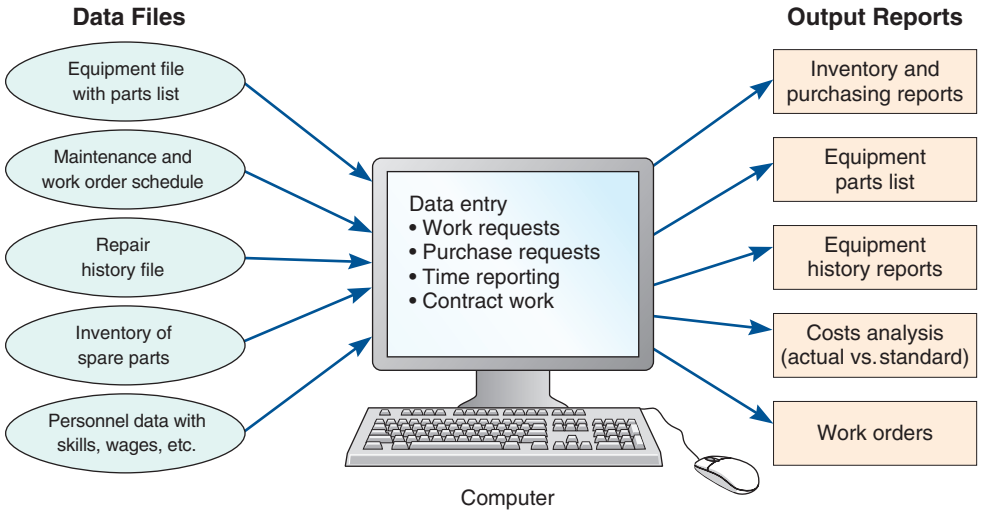
Once the product, machine, or process "settles in," a study can be made of the MTBF (mean time between failures) distribution. Such distributions often follow a normal curve. When these distributions exhibit small standard deviations, then we know we have a candidate for preventive maintenance, even if the maintenance is expensive.

Once our firm has a candidate for preventive maintenance, we want to determine *when* preventive maintenance is economical. Typically, the more expensive the maintenance, the narrower must be the MTBF distribution (that is, have a small standard deviation). In addition, if the process is no more expensive to repair when it breaks down than the cost of preventive maintenance, perhaps we should let the process break down and then do the repair. However, the consequence of the breakdown must be fully considered. Even some relatively minor breakdowns have catastrophic consequences. At the other extreme, preventive maintenance costs may be so incidental that preventive maintenance is appropriate even if the MTBF distribution is rather flat (that is, it has a large standard deviation).

With good reporting techniques, firms can maintain records of individual processes, machines, or equipment. Such records can provide a profile of both the kinds of maintenance required and the timing of maintenance needed. Maintaining equipment history is an important part of a preventive maintenance system, as is a record of the time and cost to make the repair. Such records can also provide information about the family of equipment and suppliers.

Figure 17.3

A Computerized Maintenance System



LO 17.5 *Describe* how to improve maintenance

Reliability and maintenance are of such importance that most maintenance management systems are now computerized. Figure 17.3 shows the major components of such a system with files to be maintained on the left and reports generated on the right.

Companies from Boeing to Ford are improving product reliability via their maintenance information systems. Boeing monitors the health of planes in flight by relaying relevant information in real-time to the ground. This provides a head start on reliability and maintenance issues. Similarly, with wireless satellite service, millions of car owners are alerted to thousands of diagnostic issues, from faulty airbag sensors to the need for an oil change. These real-time systems provide immediate data that are used to head off quality issues before customers even notice a problem. The technology enhances reliability and customer satisfaction. And catching problems early saves millions of dollars in warranty costs.

Figure 17.4(a) shows a traditional view of the relationship between preventive maintenance and breakdown maintenance. In this view, operations managers consider a *balance* between the two costs. Allocating more resources to preventive maintenance will reduce the number of breakdowns. At some point, however, the decrease in breakdown maintenance costs may be less than the increase in preventive maintenance costs. At this point, the total cost curve begins to rise. Beyond this optimal point, the firm will be better off waiting for breakdowns to occur and repairing them when they do.

Unfortunately, cost curves such as in Figure 17.4(a) seldom consider the *full costs of a breakdown*. Many costs are ignored because they are not *directly* related to the immediate breakdown. For instance, the cost of inventory maintained to compensate for downtime is not typically

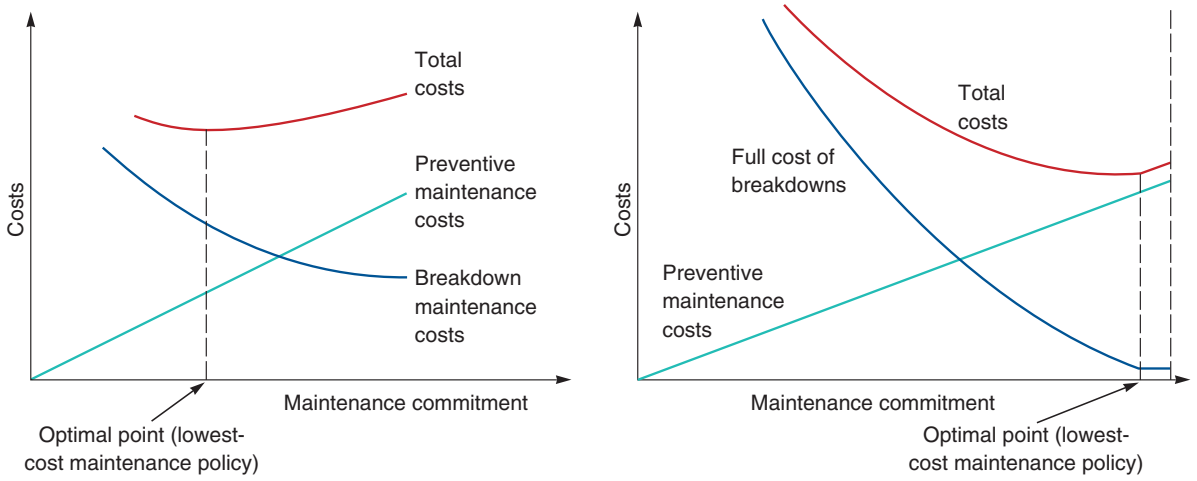


Figure 17.4

Maintenance Costs

considered. Moreover, downtime can have a devastating effect on safety and morale. Employees may also begin to believe that "performance to standard" and maintaining equipment are not important. Finally, downtime adversely affects delivery schedules, destroying customer relations and future sales. When the full impact of breakdowns is considered, Figure 17.4(b) may be a better representation of maintenance costs. In Figure 17.4(b), total costs are at a minimum when the system only breaks down due to unanticipated extraordinary events.

STUDENT TIP
When all breakdown costs are considered, much more maintenance may be advantageous.

Assuming that all potential costs associated with downtime have been identified, the operations staff can compute the optimal level of maintenance activity on a theoretical basis. Such analysis, of course, also requires accurate historical data on maintenance costs, breakdown probabilities, and repair times. Example 5 shows how to compare preventive and breakdown maintenance costs to select the least expensive maintenance policy.

Example 5

COMPARING PREVENTIVE AND BREAKDOWN MAINTENANCE COSTS

Farlen & Halikman is a CPA firm specializing in payroll preparation. The firm has been successful in automating much of its work, using high-speed printers for check processing and report preparation. The computerized approach, however, has problems. Over the past 20 months, the printers have broken down at the rate indicated in the following table:

NUMBER OF BREAKDOWNS	NUMBER OF MONTHS THAT BREAKDOWNS OCCURRED
0	2
1	8
2	6
3	4
	Total: 20

Each time the printers break down, Farlen & Halikman estimates that it loses an average of $300 in production time and service expenses. One alternative is to purchase a service contract for preventive maintenance. Even if Farlen & Halikman contracts for preventive maintenance, there will still be breakdowns, *averaging* one breakdown per month. The price for this service is $150 per month.

LO 17.6 *Compare* preventive and breakdown maintenance costs

APPROACH ▶ To determine if the CPA firm should follow a "run until breakdown" policy or contract for preventive maintenance, we follow a 4-step process:

Step 1 Compute the *expected number* of breakdowns (based on past history) if the firm continues as is, without the service contract.

Step 2 Compute the expected breakdown cost per month with no preventive maintenance contract.

Step 3 Compute the cost of preventive maintenance.

Step 4 Compare the two options and select the one that will cost less.

SOLUTION ▶

Step 1

NUMBER OF BREAKDOWNS	FREQUENCY	NUMBER OF BREAKDOWNS	FREQUENCY
0	2/20 = .1	2	6/20 = 0.3
1	8/20 = .4	3	4/20 = 0.2

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{Expected number}\\ \text{of breakdowns}\end{pmatrix} = \Sigma\left[\begin{pmatrix}\text{Number of}\\ \text{breakdowns}\end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix}\text{Corresponding}\\ \text{frequency}\end{pmatrix}\right]$$
$$= (0)(.1) + (1)(.4) + (2)(.3) + (3)(.2)$$
$$= 0 + .4 + .6 + .6$$
$$= 1.6 \text{ breakdowns/month}$$

Step 2

$$\text{Expected breakdown cost} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{Expected number}\\ \text{of breakdowns}\end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix}\text{Cost per}\\ \text{breakdown}\end{pmatrix}$$
$$= (1.6)(\$300)$$
$$= \$480/\text{month}$$

Step 3

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{Preventive}\\ \text{maintenance cost}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{Cost of expected}\\ \text{breakdowns if service}\\ \text{contract signed}\end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix}\text{Cost of}\\ \text{service contract}\end{pmatrix}$$
$$= (1 \text{ breakdown/month})(\$300) + \$150/\text{month}$$
$$= \$450/\text{month}$$

Step 4 Because it is less expensive overall to hire a maintenance service firm ($450) than to not do so ($480), Farlen & Halikman should hire the service firm.

INSIGHT ▶ Determining the expected number of breakdowns for each option is crucial to making a good decision. This typically requires good maintenance records.

LEARNING EXERCISE ▶ What is the best decision if the preventive maintenance contract cost increases to $195 per month? [Answer: At $495 (= $300 + $195) per month, "run until breakdown" becomes less expensive (assuming that all costs are included in the $300 per breakdown cost).]

RELATED PROBLEMS ▶ 17.18–17.21 (17.22–17.24 are available in MyOMLab)

Using variations of the technique shown in Example 5, operations managers can examine maintenance policies.

Increasing Repair Capabilities

Because reliability and preventive maintenance are seldom perfect, most firms opt for some level of repair capability. Enlarging repair facilities or improving maintenance management may be an excellent way to get the system back in operation faster.

However, not all repairs can be done in the firm's facility. Managers must, therefore, decide where repairs are to be performed. Figure 17.5 provides a continuum of options and how they rate in terms of speed, cost, and competence. Moving to the right in Figure 17.5 may improve the competence of the repair work, but at the same time it increases costs and replacement time.

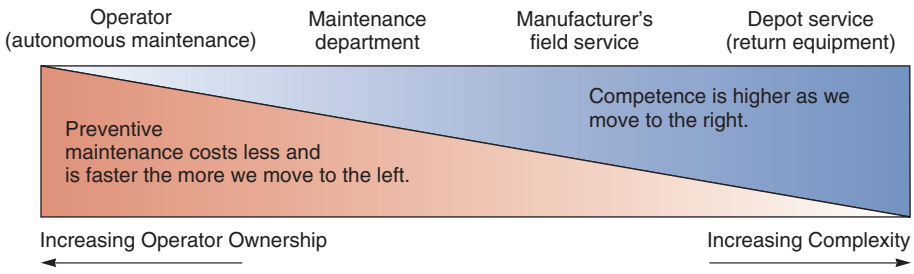
LO 17.7 *Define* autonomous maintenance

Autonomous Maintenance

Autonomous maintenance
Operators partner with maintenance personnel to observe, check, adjust, clean, and notify.

Preventive maintenance policies and techniques must include an emphasis on employees accepting responsibility for the "observe, check, adjust, clean, and notify" type of equipment maintenance. Such policies are consistent with the advantages of employee empowerment. This approach is known as **autonomous maintenance**. Employees can predict failures, prevent breakdowns, and prolong equipment life. With autonomous maintenance, the manager is making a step toward both employee empowerment and maintaining system performance.

Figure **17.5**
The Operations Manager Determines How Maintenance Will Be Performed



Total Productive Maintenance

Many firms have moved to bring total quality management concepts to the practice of preventive maintenance with an approach known as **total productive maintenance (TPM)**. It involves the concept of reducing variability through autonomous maintenance and excellent maintenance practices. Total productive maintenance includes:

Total productive maintenance (TPM)
Combines total quality management with a strategic view of maintenance from process and equipment design to preventive maintenance.

- Designing machines that are reliable, easy to operate, and easy to maintain
- Emphasizing total cost of ownership when purchasing machines, so that service and maintenance are included in the cost
- Developing preventive maintenance plans that utilize the best practices of operators, maintenance departments, and depot service
- Training for autonomous maintenance so operators maintain their own machines and partner with maintenance personnel

High utilization of facilities, tight scheduling, low inventory, and consistent quality demand reliability. Total productive maintenance, which continues to improve with recent advances in the use of simulation, expert systems, and sensors, is the key to reducing variability and improving reliability.

STUDENT TIP
Maintenance improves productivity.

Summary

Operations managers focus on design improvements, backup components, and parallel paths to improve reliability. Reliability improvements also can be obtained through the use of preventive maintenance and excellent repair facilities.

Firms give employees "ownership" of their equipment. When workers repair or do preventive maintenance on their own machines, breakdowns are less common. Well-trained and empowered employees ensure reliable systems through preventive maintenance. In turn, reliable, well-maintained equipment not only provides higher utilization but also improves quality and performance to schedule. Top firms build and maintain systems that drive out variability so that customers can rely on products and services to be produced to specifications and on time.

Key Terms

Maintenance (p. 700)
Reliability (p. 700)
Mean time between failures (MTBF) (p. 702)
Redundancy (p. 703)
Preventive maintenance (p. 705)
Breakdown maintenance (p. 705)
Infant mortality (p. 705)
Autonomous maintenance (p. 708)
Total productive maintenance (TPM) (p. 709)

Ethical Dilemma

The space shuttle *Columbia* disintegrated over Texas on its 2003 return to Earth. The *Challenger* exploded shortly after launch in 1986. And the *Apollo 1* spacecraft imploded in fire on the launch pad in 1967. In each case, the lives of all crew members were lost. The hugely complex shuttle may have looked a bit like an airplane but was very different. In reality, its overall statistical reliability is such that about 1 out of every 50 flights had a major malfunction. As one aerospace manager stated, "Of course, you can be perfectly safe and never get off the ground."

Given the huge reliability and maintenance issues NASA faced (seals cracking in cold weather, heat shielding tiles falling off, tools left in the capsule), should astronauts have been allowed to fly? (In earlier *Atlas* rockets, men were inserted not out of necessity but because test pilots and politicians thought they should be there.) What are the pros and cons of staffed space exploration from an ethical perspective? Should the U.S. spend billions of dollars to return an astronaut to the moon or send one to Mars?

Discussion Questions

1. What is the objective of maintenance and reliability?
2. How does one identify a candidate for preventive maintenance?
3. Explain the notion of "infant mortality" in the context of product reliability.
4. How could simulation be a useful technique for maintenance problems?
5. What is the trade-off between operator-performed maintenance versus supplier-performed maintenance?
6. How can a manager evaluate the effectiveness of the maintenance function?
7. How does machine design contribute to either increasing or alleviating the maintenance problem?

8. What roles can computerized maintenance management systems play in the maintenance function?
9. During an argument as to the merits of preventive maintenance at Windsor Printers, the company owner asked, "Why fix it before it breaks?" How would you, as the director of maintenance, respond?
10. Will preventive maintenance eliminate *all* breakdowns?

Using Software to Solve Reliability Problems

Excel OM and POM for Windows may be used to solve reliability problems. The reliability module allows us to enter (1) number of systems (components) in the series (1 through 10); (2) number of backup, or parallel, components (1 through 12); and (3) component reliability for both series and parallel data.

Solved Problems

Virtual Office Hours help is available at MyOMLab.

SOLVED PROBLEM 17.1

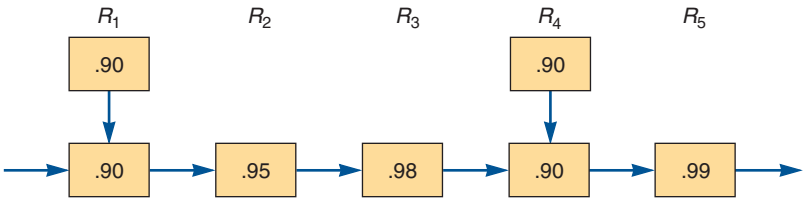
The semiconductor used in the Sullivan Wrist Calculator has five circuits, each of which has its own reliability rate. Component 1 has a reliability of .90; component 2, .95; component 3, .98; component 4, .90; and component 5, .99. What is the reliability of one semiconductor?

SOLUTION

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Semiconductor reliability, } R_s &= R_1 \times R_2 \times R_3 \times R_4 \times R_5\\ &= (.90)(.95)(.98)(.90)(.99)\\ &= .7466\end{aligned}$$

SOLVED PROBLEM 17.2

A recent engineering change at Sullivan Wrist Calculator places a backup component in each of the two least reliable transistor circuits. The new circuits will look like the following:



What is the reliability of the new system?

SOLUTION

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Reliability} &= [.9 + (1 - .9) \times .9] \times .95 \times .98 \times [.9 + (1 - .9) \times .9] \times .99\\ &= [.9 + .09] \times .95 \times .98 \times [.9 + .09] \times .99\\ &= .99 \times .95 \times .98 \times .99 \times .99\\ &= .903\end{aligned}$$

Problems

Note: means the problem may be solved with POM for Windows and/or Excel OM.

Problems 17.1–17.17 relate to Reliability

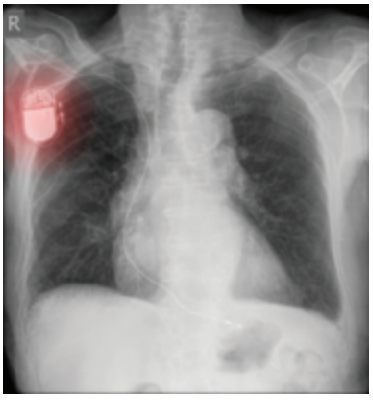
• **17.1** The Beta II computer's electronic processing unit contains 50 components in series. The average reliability of each component is 99.0%. Using Figure 17.2, determine the overall reliability of the processing unit.

• **17.2.** A testing process at Boeing Aircraft has 400 components in series. The average reliability of each component is 99.5%. Use Figure 17.2 to find the overall reliability of the whole testing process.

•• **17.3** A new aircraft control system is being designed that must be 98% reliable. This system consists of three components in series. If all three of the components are to have the same level of reliability, what level of reliability is required?

•• **17.4** Robert Klassan Manufacturing, a medical equipment manufacturer, subjected 100 heart pacemakers to 5,000 hours of testing. Halfway through the testing, 5 pacemakers failed. What was the failure rate in terms of the following:

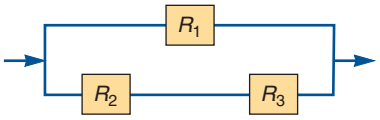
a) Percentage of failures?
b) Number of failures per unit-hour?
c) Number of failures per unit-year?
d) If 1,100 people receive pacemaker implants, how many units can we expect to fail during the following year?


Skyhawk x/Shutterstock

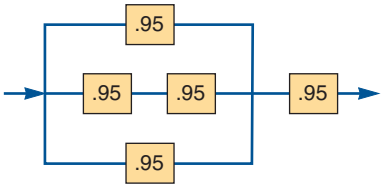
•• **17.5** A manufacturer of disk drives for notebook computers wants an MTBF of at least 50,000 hours. Recent test results for 10 units were one failure at 10,000 hours, another at 25,000 hours,

and two more at 45,000 hours. The remaining units were still running at 60,000 hours. Determine the following:
a) Percent of failures
b) Number of failures per unit-hour
c) MTBF at this point in the testing

••**17.6** What is the reliability of the following parallel production process? $R_1 = 0.95$, $R_2 = 0.90$, $R_3 = 0.98$.



••**17.7** What is the overall reliability that bank loans will be processed accurately if each of the 5 clerks shown in the chart has the reliability shown?



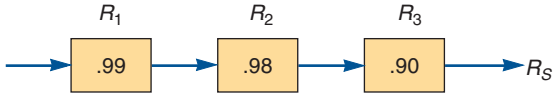
Hint: The three paths are done in parallel, followed by an additional independent step.

••**17.8** Merrill Kim Sharp has a system composed of three components in parallel. The components have the following reliabilities:

$$R_1 = 0.90, \quad R_2 = 0.95, \quad R_3 = 0.85$$

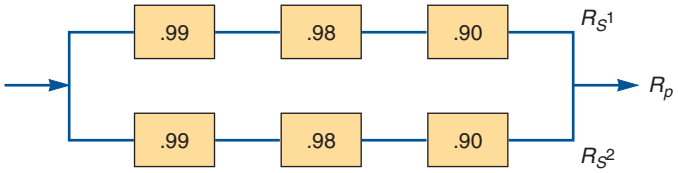
What is the reliability of the system? (*Hint:* See Example 4.)

•**17.9** A medical control system has three components in series with individual reliabilities (R_1, R_2, R_3) as shown:



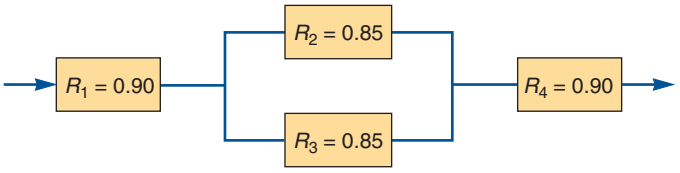
What is the reliability of the system?

••**17.10** What is the reliability of the system shown?



•**17.11** How much would reliability improve if the medical control system shown in Problem 17.9 changed to the redundant parallel system shown in Problem 17.10?

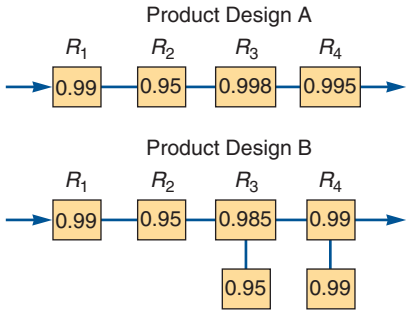
••**17.12** Elizabeth Irwin's design team has proposed the following system with component reliabilities as indicated:



What is the reliability of the system?
Hint: The system functions if either R_2 or R_3 work.

••**17.13** Rick Wing, salesperson for Wave Soldering Systems, Inc. (WSSI), has provided you with a proposal for improving the temperature control on your present machine. The machine uses a hot-air knife to cleanly remove excess solder from printed circuit boards; this is a great concept, but the hot-air temperature control lacks reliability. According to Wing, engineers at WSSI have improved the reliability of the critical temperature controls. The new system still has the four sensitive integrated circuits controlling the temperature, but the new machine has a backup for each. The four integrated circuits have reliabilities of .90, .92, .94, and .96. The four backup circuits all have a reliability of .90.
a) What is the reliability of the new temperature controller?
b) If you pay a premium, Wing says he can improve all four of the backup units to .93. What is the reliability of this option?

••••**17.14** As VP for operations at Méndez-Piñero Engineering, you must decide which product design, A or B, has the higher reliability. B is designed with backup units for components R_3 and R_4. What is the reliability of each design?



••••**17.15** A typical retail transaction consists of several smaller steps, which can be considered components subject to failure. A list of such components might include:

COMPONENT	DESCRIPTION	DEFINITION OF FAILURE
1	Find product in proper size, color, etc.	Can't find product
2	Enter cashier line	No lines open; lines too long; line experiencing difficulty
3	Scan product UPC for name, price, etc.	Won't scan; item not on file; scans incorrect name or price
4	Calculate purchase total	Wrong weight; wrong extension; wrong data entry; wrong tax
5	Make payment	Customer lacks cash; check not acceptable; credit card refused
6	Make change	Makes change incorrectly
7	Bag merchandise	Damages merchandise while bagging; bag splits
8	Conclude transaction and exit	No receipt; unfriendly, rude, or aloof clerk

Let the eight probabilities of success be .92, .94, .99, .99, .98, .97, .95, and .96. What is the reliability of the system; that is, the probability that there will be a satisfied customer? If you were the store manager, what do you think should be an acceptable value for this probability? Which components would be good candidates for backup, which for redesign?

Additional problems **17.16–17.17** *are available in* MyOMLab.

Problems 17.18–17.24 relate to Maintenance

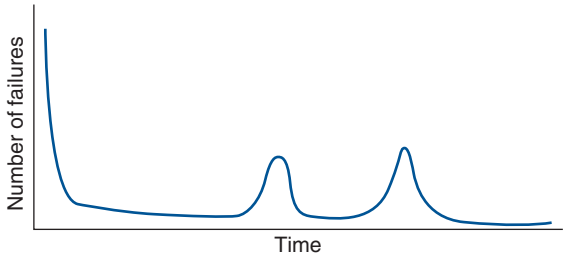
•**17.18** What are the *expected* number of yearly breakdowns for the power generator at Orlando Utilities that has exhibited the following data over the past 20 years?

Number of breakdowns	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
Number of years in which breakdown occurred	2	2	5	4	5	2	0

• **17.19** Each breakdown of a graphic plotter table at Airbus Industries costs $50. Find the expected daily breakdown cost, given the following data: PX

Number of breakdowns	0	1	2	3	4
Daily breakdown probability	.1	.2	.4	.2	.1

•• **17.20** David Hall, chief of the maintenance department at Mechanical Dynamics, has presented you with the following failure curve. What does it suggest?



••• **17.21** The fire department has a number of failures with its oxygen masks and is evaluating the possibility of outsourcing preventive maintenance to the manufacturer. Because of the risk associated with a failure, the cost of each failure is estimated at $2,000. The current maintenance policy (with station employees performing maintenance) has yielded the following history:

Number of breakdowns	0	1	2	3	4	5
Number of years in which breakdowns occurred	4	3	1	5	5	0

This manufacturer will guarantee repairs on any and all failures as part of a service contract. The cost of this service is $5,000 per year.

a) What is the expected number of breakdowns per year with station employees performing maintenance?
b) What is the cost of the current maintenance policy?
c) What is the more economical policy?

Additional problems **17.22–17.24** *are available in* MyOMLab.

CASE STUDY

Maintenance Drives Profits at Frito-Lay

Video Case

Frito-Lay, the multi-billion-dollar subsidiary of food and beverage giant PepsiCo, maintains 36 plants in the U.S. and Canada. These facilities produce dozen of snacks, including the well-known Lay's, Fritos, Cheetos, Doritos, Ruffles, and Tostitos brands, each of which sells over $1 billion per year.

Frito-Lay plants produce in the high-volume, low-variety process model common to commercial baked goods, steel, glass, and beer industries. In this environment, preventive maintenance of equipment takes a major role by avoiding costly downtime. Tom Rao, vice president for Florida operations, estimates that each 1% of downtime has a negative annual profit impact of $200,000. He is proud of the $1\frac{1}{2}$% unscheduled downtime his plant is able to reach—well below the 2% that is considered the "world-class" benchmark. This excellent performance is possible because the maintenance department takes an active role in setting the parameters for preventive maintenance. This is done with weekly input to the production schedule.

Maintenance policy impacts energy use as well. The Florida plant's technical manager, Jim Wentzel, states, "By reducing production interruptions, we create an opportunity to bring energy and utility use under control. Equipment maintenance and a solid production schedule are keys to utility efficiency. With every production interruption, there is substantial waste."

As a part of its total productive maintenance (TPM) program,* Frito-Lay empowers employees with what it calls the "Run Right" system. Run Right teaches employees to "identify and do." This means each shift is responsible for identifying problems and making the necessary corrections, when possible. This is accomplished through (1) a "power walk" at the beginning of the shift to ensure that equipment and process settings are performing to standard, (2) mid-shift and post-shift reviews of standards and performance, and (3) posting of any issues on a large whiteboard in the shift office. Items remain on the whiteboard until corrected, which is seldom more than a shift or two.

With good manpower scheduling and tight labor control to hold down variable costs, making time for training is challenging. But supervisors, including the plant manager, are available to fill in on the production line when that is necessary to free an employee for training.

The 30 maintenance personnel hired to cover 24/7 operations at the Florida plant all come with multi-craft skills (e.g., welding, electrical, plumbing). "Multi-craft maintenance personnel are harder to find and cost more," says Wentzel, "but they more than pay for themselves."

Discussion Questions**

1. What might be done to help take Frito-Lay to the next level of outstanding maintenance? Consider factors such as sophisticated software.
2. What are the advantages and disadvantages of giving more responsibility for machine maintenance to the operator?
3. Discuss the pros and cons of hiring multi-craft maintenance personnel.

*At Frito-Lay, preventive maintenance, autonomous maintenance, and total productive maintenance are part of a Frito-Lay program known as total productive manufacturing.

**You may wish to view the video that accompanies this case before answering these questions.

• **Additional Case Studies:** Visit MyOMLab for these free case studies:
Cartak's Department Store: Requires the evaluation of the impact of an additional invoice verifier.
Worldwide Chemical Company: The maintenance department in this company is in turmoil.

Chapter 17 *Rapid* Review

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
THE STRATEGIC IMPORTANCE OF MAINTENANCE AND RELIABILITY (pp. 700–701)	Poor maintenance can be disruptive, inconvenient, wasteful, and expensive in dollars and even in lives. The interdependency of operator, machine, and mechanic is a hallmark of successful maintenance and reliability. Good maintenance and reliability management requires employee involvement and good procedures; it enhances a firm's performance and protects its investment. *The objective of maintenance and reliability is to maintain the capability of the system.* ■ **Maintenance**—All activities involved in keeping a system's equipment in working order. ■ **Reliability**—The probability that a machine part or product will function properly for a specified time under stated conditions. The two main tactics for improving reliability are: 1. Improving individual components 2. Providing redundancy The two main tactics for improving maintenance are: 1. Implementing or improving preventive maintenance 2. Increasing repair capabilities or speed	Concept Questions: 1.1–1.4 **VIDEO 17.1** Maintenance Drives Profits at Frito-Lay
RELIABILITY (pp. 701–705)	A system is composed of a series of individual interrelated components, each performing a specific job. If any *one* component fails to perform, the overall system can fail. As the number of components in a *series* increases, the reliability of the whole system declines very quickly: $$R_s = R_1 \times R_2 \times R_3 \times \ldots \times R_n \quad (17\text{-}1)$$ where R_1 = reliability of component 1, R_2 = reliability of component 2, and so on. Equation (17-1) assumes that the reliability of an individual component does not depend on the reliability of other components. A .90 reliability means that the unit will perform as intended 90% of the time, and it will fail 10% of the time. The basic unit of measure for reliability is the *product failure rate* (FR). FR(%) is the percent of failures among the total number of products tested, and FR(N) is the number of failures during a period of time: $$\text{FR}(\%) = \frac{\text{Number of failures}}{\text{Number of units tested}} \times 100\% \quad (17\text{-}2)$$ $$\text{FR}(N) = \frac{\text{Number of failures}}{\text{Number of unit-hours of operating time}} \quad (17\text{-}3)$$ ■ **Mean time between failures (MTBF)**—The expected time between a repair and the next failure of a component, machine, process, or product. $$\text{MTBF} = \frac{1}{\text{FR}(N)} \quad (17\text{-}4)$$ ■ **Redundancy**—The use of components in parallel to raise reliability. The reliability of a component along with its backup equals: (Probability that 1st component works) + [(Prob. that backup works) × (Prob. that 1st fails)] (17-5)	Concept Questions: 2.1–2.4 Problems: 17.1–17.17 Virtual Office Hours for Solved Problems: 17.1, 17.2 **ACTIVE MODELS 17.1, 17.2, 17.3**
MAINTENANCE (pp. 705–708)	■ **Preventive maintenance**—Involves routine inspections, monitoring, servicing, and keeping facilities in good repair. ■ **Breakdown maintenance**—Remedial maintenance that occurs when preventive maintenance fails and equipment/facilities must be repaired on an emergency or priority basis. ■ **Infant mortality**—The failure rate early in the life of a product or process. Consistent with job enrichment practices, machine operators must be held responsible for preventive maintenance of their own equipment and tools. Reliability and maintenance are of such importance that most maintenance systems are now computerized.	Concept Questions: 3.1–3.4 Problems: 17.18–17.24

Chapter 17 *Rapid* Review *continued*

Main Heading	Review Material	MyOMLab
	Costs of a breakdown that may get ignored include: 1. The cost of inventory maintained to compensate for downtime 2. Downtime, which can have a devastating effect on safety and morale and which adversely affects delivery schedules, destroying customer relations and future sales ■ **Autonomous maintenance**—Operators partner with maintenance personnel to observe, check, adjust, clean, and notify. Employees can predict failures, prevent breakdowns, and prolong equipment life. With autonomous maintenance, the manager is making a step toward both employee empowerment and maintaining system performance.	
TOTAL PRODUCTIVE MAINTENANCE (p. 709)	■ **Total productive maintenance (TPM)**—Combines total quality management with a strategic view of maintenance from process and equipment design to preventive maintenance. Total productive maintenance includes: 1. Designing machines that are reliable, easy to operate, and easy to maintain 2. Emphasizing total cost of ownership when purchasing machines, so that service and maintenance are included in the cost 3. Developing preventive maintenance plans that utilize the best practices of operators, maintenance departments, and depot service 4. Training for autonomous maintenance so operators maintain their own machines and partner with maintenance personnel Three techniques that have proven beneficial to effective maintenance are simulation, expert systems, and sensors.	Concept Questions: 4.1–4.4

Self Test

■ **Before taking the self-test,** refer to the learning objectives listed at the beginning of the chapter and the key terms listed at the end of the chapter.

LO 17.1 The two main tactics for improving reliability are _____ and _____.

LO 17.2 The reliability of a system with *n* independent components equals:
a) the sum of the individual reliabilities.
b) the minimum reliability among all components.
c) the maximum reliability among all components.
d) the product of the individual reliabilities.
e) the average of the individual reliabilities.

LO 17.3 What is the formula for the mean time between failures?
a) Number of failures ÷ Number of unit-hours of operating time
b) Number of unit-hours of operating time ÷ Number of failures
c) (Number of failures ÷ Number of units tested) × 100%
d) (Number of units tested ÷ Number of failures) × 100%
e) 1 ÷ FR(%)

LO 17.4 The process that is intended to find potential failures and make changes or repairs is known as:
a) breakdown maintenance.
b) failure maintenance.
c) preventive maintenance.
d) all of the above.

LO 17.5 The two main tactics for improving maintenance are _____ and _____.

LO 17.6 The appropriate maintenance policy is developed by balancing preventive maintenance costs with breakdown maintenance costs. The problem is that:
a) preventive maintenance costs are very difficult to identify.
b) full breakdown costs are seldom considered.
c) preventive maintenance should be performed, regardless of the cost.
d) breakdown maintenance must be performed, regardless of the cost.

LO 17.7 _____ maintenance partners operators with maintenance personnel to observe, check, adjust, clean, and notify.
a) Partnering
b) Operator
c) Breakdown
d) Six Sigma
e) Autonomous

Answers: LO 17.1. improving individual components, providing redundancy; LO 17.2. d; LO 17.3. b; LO 17.4. c; LO 17.5. implementing or improving preventive maintenance, increasing repair capabilities or speed; LO 17.6. b; LO 17.7. e.

Appendixes

APPENDIX I
Normal Curve Areas

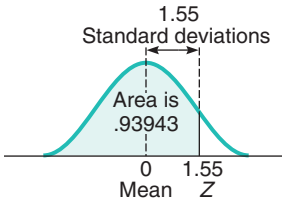
APPENDIX II
Values of $e^{-\lambda}$ for Use in the Poisson Distribution

APPENDIX III
Table of Random Numbers

APPENDIX IV
Using Excel OM and POM for Windows

APPENDIX V
Solutions to Even-Numbered Problems

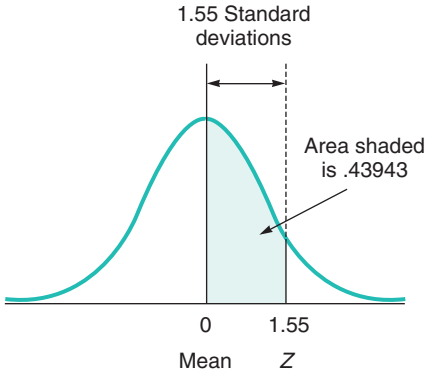
APPENDIX I
NORMAL CURVE AREAS



To find the area under the normal curve, you can apply either Table I.1 or Table I.2. In Table I.1, you must know how many standard deviations that point is to the right of the mean. Then, the area under the normal curve can be read directly from the normal table. For example, the total area under the normal curve for a point that is 1.55 standard deviations to the right of the mean is .93943.

TABLE I.1

Z	.00	.01	.02	.03	.04	.05	.06	.07	.08	.09
.0	.50000	.50399	.50798	.51197	.51595	.51994	.52392	.52790	.53188	.53586
.1	.53983	.54380	.54776	.55172	.55567	.55962	.56356	.56749	.57142	.57535
.2	.57926	.58317	.58706	.59095	.59483	.59871	.60257	.60642	.61026	.61409
.3	.61791	.62172	.62552	.62930	.63307	.63683	.64058	.64431	.64803	.65173
.4	.65542	.65910	.66276	.66640	.67003	.67364	.67724	.68082	.68439	.68793
.5	.69146	.69497	.69847	.70194	.70540	.70884	.71226	.71566	.71904	.72240
.6	.72575	.72907	.73237	.73565	.73891	.74215	.74537	.74857	.75175	.75490
.7	.75804	.76115	.76424	.76730	.77035	.77337	.77637	.77935	.78230	.78524
.8	.78814	.79103	.79389	.79673	.79955	.80234	.80511	.80785	.81057	.81327
.9	.81594	.81859	.82121	.82381	.82639	.82894	.83147	.83398	.83646	.83891
1.0	.84134	.84375	.84614	.84849	.85083	.85314	.85543	.85769	.85993	.86214
1.1	.86433	.86650	.86864	.87076	.87286	.87493	.87698	.87900	.88100	.88298
1.2	.88493	.88686	.88877	.89065	.89251	.89435	.89617	.89796	.89973	.90147
1.3	.90320	.90490	.90658	.90824	.90988	.91149	.91309	.91466	.91621	.91774
1.4	.91924	.92073	.92220	.92364	.92507	.92647	.92785	.92922	.93056	.93189
1.5	.93319	.93448	.93574	.93699	.93822	.93943	.94062	.94179	.94295	.94408
1.6	.94520	.94630	.94738	.94845	.94950	.95053	.95154	.95254	.95352	.95449
1.7	.95543	.95637	.95728	.95818	.95907	.95994	.96080	.96164	.96246	.96327
1.8	.96407	.96485	.96562	.96638	.96712	.96784	.96856	.96926	.96995	.97062
1.9	.97128	.97193	.97257	.97320	.97381	.97441	.97500	.97558	.97615	.97670
2.0	.97725	.97784	.97831	.97882	.97932	.97982	.98030	.98077	.98124	.98169
2.1	.98214	.98257	.98300	.98341	.98382	.98422	.98461	.98500	.98537	.98574
2.2	.98610	.98645	.98679	.98713	.98745	.98778	.98809	.98840	.98870	.98899
2.3	.98928	.98956	.98983	.99010	.99036	.99061	.99086	.99111	.99134	.99158
2.4	.99180	.99202	.99224	.99245	.99266	.99286	.99305	.99324	.99343	.99361
2.5	.99379	.99396	.99413	.99430	.99446	.99461	.99477	.99492	.99506	.99520
2.6	.99534	.99547	.99560	.99573	.99585	.99598	.99609	.99621	.99632	.99643
2.7	.99653	.99664	.99674	.99683	.99693	.99702	.99711	.99720	.99728	.99736
2.8	.99744	.99752	.99760	.99767	.99774	.99781	.99788	.99795	.99801	.99807
2.9	.99813	.99819	.99825	.99831	.99836	.99841	.99846	.99851	.99856	.99861
3.0	.99865	.99869	.99874	.99878	.99882	.99886	.99889	.99893	.99896	.99900
3.1	.99903	.99906	.99910	.99913	.99916	.99918	.99921	.99924	.99926	.99929
3.2	.99931	.99934	.99936	.99938	.99940	.99942	.99944	.99946	.99948	.99950
3.3	.99952	.99953	.99955	.99957	.99958	.99960	.99961	.99962	.99964	.99965
3.4	.99966	.99968	.99969	.99970	.99971	.99972	.99973	.99974	.99975	.99976
3.5	.99977	.99978	.99978	.99979	.99980	.99981	.99981	.99982	.99983	.99983
3.6	.99984	.99985	.99985	.99986	.99986	.99987	.99987	.99988	.99988	.99989
3.7	.99989	.99990	.99990	.99990	.99991	.99991	.99992	.99992	.99992	.99992
3.8	.99993	.99993	.99993	.99994	.99994	.99994	.99994	.99995	.99995	.99995
3.9	.99995	.99995	.99996	.99996	.99996	.99996	.99996	.99996	.99997	.99997



As an alternative to Table I.1, the numbers in Table I.2 represent the proportion of the total area away from the mean, μ, to one side. For example, the area between the mean and a point that is 1.55 standard deviations to its right is .43943.

TABLE I.2

Z	.00	.01	.02	.03	.04	.05	.06	.07	.08	.09
0.0	.00000	.00399	.00798	.01197	.01595	.01994	.02392	.02790	.03188	.03586
0.1	.03983	.04380	.04776	.05172	.05567	.05962	.06356	.06749	.07142	.07535
0.2	.07926	.08317	.08706	.09095	.09483	.09871	.10257	.10642	.11026	.11409
0.3	.11791	.12172	.12552	.12930	.13307	.13683	.14058	.14431	.14803	.15173
0.4	.15542	.15910	.16276	.16640	.17003	.17364	.17724	.18082	.18439	.18793
0.5	.19146	.19497	.19847	.20194	.20540	.20884	.21226	.21566	.21904	.22240
0.6	.22575	.22907	.23237	.23565	.23891	.24215	.24537	.24857	.25175	.25490
0.7	.25804	.26115	.26424	.26730	.27035	.27337	.27637	.27935	.28230	.28524
0.8	.28814	.29103	.29389	.29673	.29955	.30234	.30511	.30785	.31057	.31327
0.9	.31594	.31859	.32121	.32381	.32639	.32894	.33147	.33398	.33646	.33891
1.0	.34134	.34375	.34614	.34850	.35083	.35314	.35543	.35769	.35993	.36214
1.1	.36433	.36650	.36864	.37076	.37286	.37493	.37698	.37900	.38100	.38298
1.2	.38493	.38686	.38877	.39065	.39251	.39435	.39617	.39796	.39973	.40147
1.3	.40320	.40490	.40658	.40824	.40988	.41149	.41309	.41466	.41621	.41174
1.4	.41924	.42073	.42220	.42364	.42507	.42647	.42786	.42922	.43056	.43189
1.5	.43319	.43448	.43574	.43699	.43822	.43943	.44062	.44179	.44295	.44408
1.6	.44520	.44630	.44738	.44845	.44950	.45053	.45154	.45254	.45352	.45449
1.7	.45543	.45637	.45728	.45818	.45907	.45994	.46080	.46164	.46246	.46327
1.8	.46407	.46485	.46562	.46638	.46712	.46784	.46856	.46926	.46995	.47062
1.9	.47128	.47193	.47257	.47320	.47381	.47441	.47500	.47558	.47615	.47670
2.0	.47725	.47778	.47831	.47882	.47932	.47982	.48030	.48077	.48124	.48169
2.1	.48214	.48257	.48300	.48341	.48382	.48422	.48461	.48500	.48537	.48574
2.2	.48610	.48645	.48679	.48713	.48745	.48778	.48809	.48840	.48870	.48899
2.3	.48928	.48956	.48983	.49010	.49036	.49061	.49086	.49111	.49134	.49158
2.4	.49180	.49202	.49224	.49245	.49266	.49286	.49305	.49324	.49343	.49361
2.5	.49379	.49396	.49413	.49430	.49446	.49461	.49477	.49492	.49506	.49520
2.6	.49534	.49547	.49560	.49573	.49585	.49598	.49609	.49621	.49632	.49643
2.7	.49653	.49664	.49674	.49683	.49693	.49702	.49711	.49720	.49728	.49736
2.8	.49744	.49752	.49760	.49767	.49774	.49781	.49788	.49795	.49801	.49807
2.9	.49813	.49819	.49825	.49831	.49836	.49841	.49846	.49851	.49856	.49861
3.0	.49865	.49869	.49874	.49878	.49882	.49886	.49889	.49893	.49897	.49900
3.1	.49903	.49906	.49910	.49913	.49916	.49918	.49921	.49924	.49926	.49929

APPENDIX II

VALUES OF $e^{-\lambda}$ FOR USE IN THE POISSON DISTRIBUTION

Values of $e^{-\lambda}$

λ	$e^{-\lambda}$	λ	$e^{-\lambda}$	λ	$e^{-\lambda}$	λ	$e^{-\lambda}$
.0	1.0000	1.6	.2019	3.1	.0450	4.6	.0101
.1	.9048	1.7	.1827	3.2	.0408	4.7	.0091
.2	.8187	1.8	.1653	3.3	.0369	4.8	.0082
.3	.7408	1.9	.1496	3.4	.0334	4.9	.0074
.4	.6703	2.0	.1353	3.5	.0302	5.0	.0067
.5	.6065	2.1	.1225	3.6	.0273	5.1	.0061
.6	.5488	2.2	.1108	3.7	.0247	5.2	.0055
.7	.4966	2.3	.1003	3.8	.0224	5.3	.0050
.8	.4493	2.4	.0907	3.9	.0202	5.4	.0045
.9	.4066	2.5	.0821	4.0	.0183	5.5	.0041
1.0	.3679	2.6	.0743	4.1	.0166	5.6	.0037
1.1	.3329	2.7	.0672	4.2	.0150	5.7	.0033
1.2	.3012	2.8	.0608	4.3	.0136	5.8	.0030
1.3	.2725	2.9	.0550	4.4	.0123	5.9	.0027
1.4	.2466	3.0	.0498	4.5	.0111	6.0	.0025
1.5	.2231						

APPENDIX III

TABLE OF RANDOM NUMBERS

52	06	50	88	53	30	10	47	99	37	66	91	35	32	00	84	57	07
37	63	28	02	74	35	24	03	29	60	74	85	90	73	59	55	17	60
82	57	68	28	05	94	03	11	27	79	90	87	92	41	09	25	36	77
69	02	36	49	71	99	32	10	75	21	95	90	94	38	97	71	72	49
98	94	90	36	06	78	23	67	89	85	29	21	25	73	69	34	85	76
96	52	62	87	49	56	59	23	78	71	72	90	57	01	98	57	31	95
33	69	27	21	11	60	95	89	68	48	17	89	34	09	93	50	44	51
50	33	50	95	13	44	34	62	64	39	55	29	30	64	49	44	30	16
88	32	18	50	62	57	34	56	62	31	15	40	90	34	51	95	26	14
90	30	36	24	69	82	51	74	30	35	36	85	01	55	92	64	09	85
50	48	61	18	85	23	08	54	17	12	80	69	24	84	92	16	49	59
27	88	21	62	69	64	48	31	12	73	02	68	00	16	16	46	13	85
45	14	46	32	13	49	66	62	74	41	86	98	92	98	84	54	33	40
81	02	01	78	82	74	97	37	45	31	94	99	42	49	27	64	89	42
66	83	14	74	27	76	03	33	11	97	59	81	72	00	64	61	13	52
74	05	81	82	93	09	96	33	52	78	13	06	28	30	94	23	37	39
30	34	87	01	74	11	46	82	59	94	25	34	32	23	17	01	58	73
59	55	72	33	62	13	74	68	22	44	42	09	32	46	71	79	45	89
67	09	80	98	99	25	77	50	03	32	36	63	65	75	94	19	95	88
60	77	46	63	71	69	44	22	03	85	14	48	69	13	30	50	33	24
60	08	19	29	36	72	30	27	50	64	85	72	75	29	87	05	75	01
80	45	86	99	02	34	87	08	86	84	49	76	24	08	01	86	29	11
53	84	49	63	26	65	72	84	85	63	26	02	75	26	92	62	40	67
69	84	12	94	51	36	17	02	15	29	16	52	56	43	26	22	08	62
37	77	13	10	02	18	31	19	32	85	31	94	81	43	31	58	33	51

Source: Excerpted from *A Million Random Digits with 100,000 Normal Deviates*, The Free Press (1955): 7, with permission of the RAND Corporation.

APPENDIX IV
USING EXCEL OM AND POM FOR WINDOWS

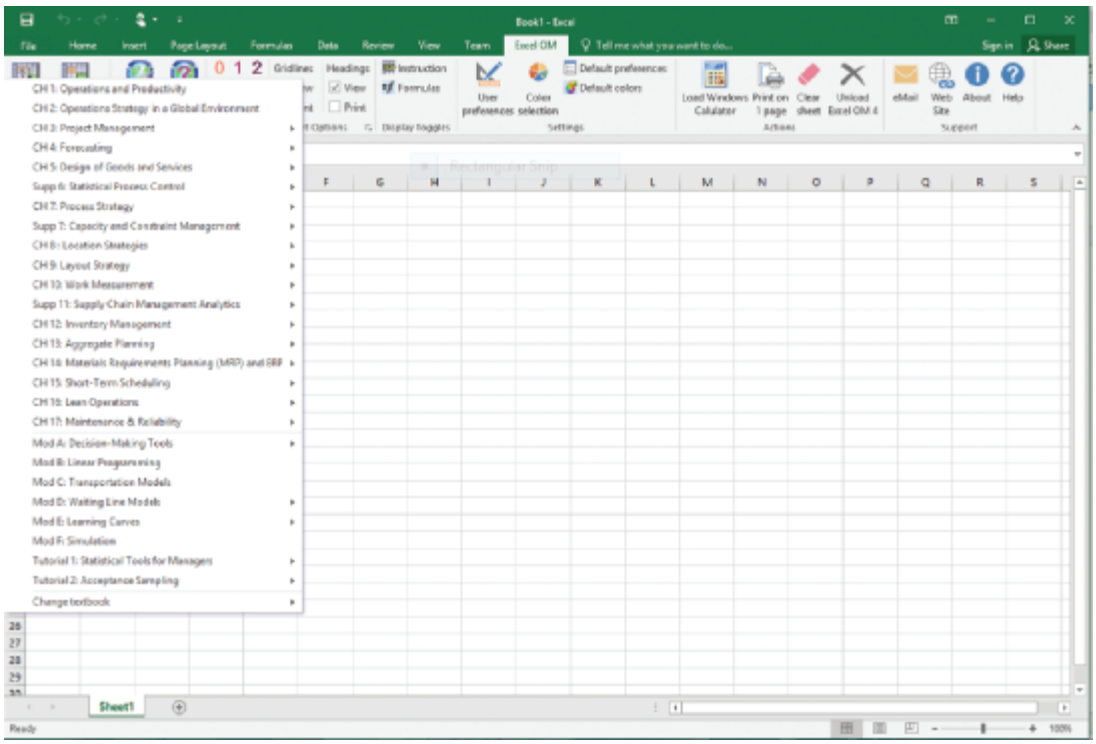
Two approaches to computer-aided decision making are provided with this text: **Excel OM** and **POM** (Production and Operations Management) **for Windows**. These are the two most user-friendly software packages available to help you learn and understand operations management. Both programs can be used either to solve homework problems identified with an icon or to check answers you have developed by hand. Both software packages use the standard Windows interface and run on any IBM-compatible PC operating Windows XP or newer. Excel OM is also available for the Mac.

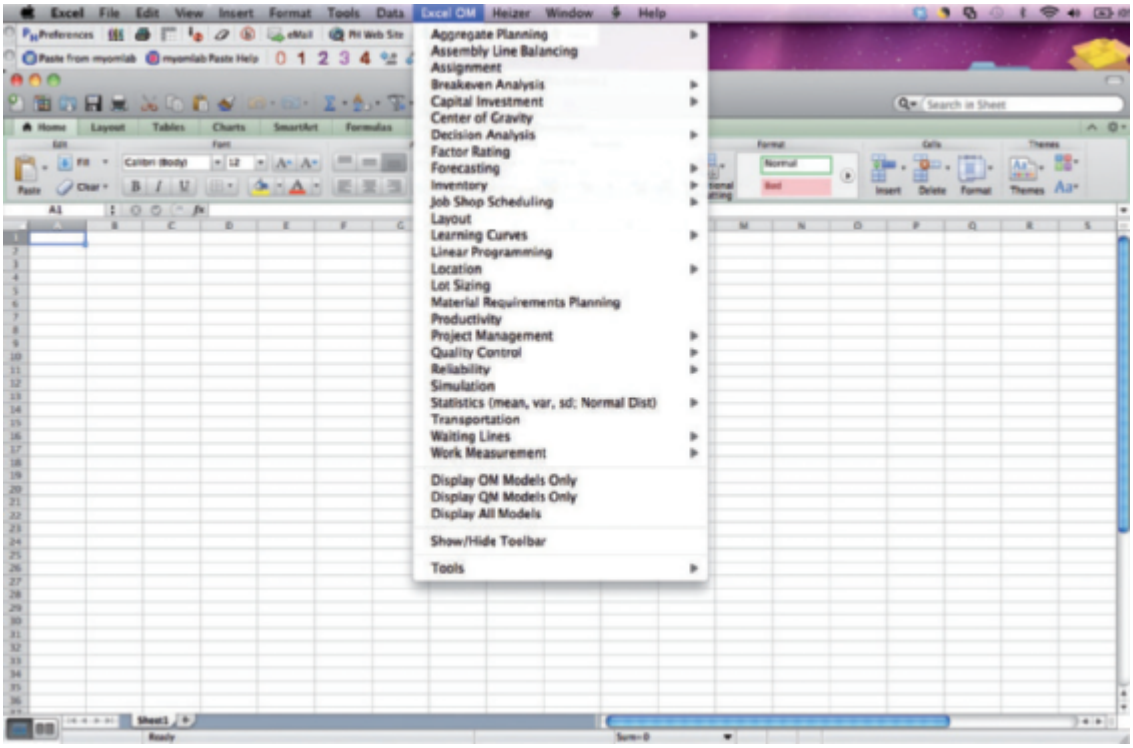
EXCEL OM

Excel OM has been designed to help you to better learn and understand both OM and Excel. Even though the software contains 24 modules and more than 60 submodules, the screens for every module are consistent and easy to use. The Chapter menu (Excel 2007 and later for PCs) or the Heizer menu (Excel 2011 for Macs) lists the modules in *chapter* order, as illustrated for Excel 2007 and later for PCs in Program IV.1(a). The Alphabetical menu (Excel 2007 and later for PCs) or Excel OM menu (Excel 2011 for Macs) lists the modules in alphabetical order, as illustrated for Excel OM for Macs in Program IV.1(b). The menu for Excel 2016 for Macs is slightly different and not displayed here. This software is provided at no cost to users of MyOMLab or purchasers of a new copy of this textbook. The software can also be purchased at www.pearsonhighered.com/heizer. Excel 2007 or newer must be on your PC or Excel 2011 or greater must be on your Mac.

To install Excel OM, click on the Download Center on the left side of your MyOMLab course, and follow the instructions. Default values have been assigned in the setup program, but you may change them if you like. For Windows, the default folder into which a program will be installed is

▼ **PROGRAM IV.1(a)** **Excel OM Modules Menu in Excel OM Tab in Excel 2007 and later for PCs**





▲ **PROGRAM IV.1(b)** **Excel OM Modules Menu in OM for Macs 2011**

named C:\Program Files(x86)\ExcelomQMv4. Generally speaking, it is simply necessary to click *Next* each time the installation asks a question. For Macs, simply unzip the zip file that is provided.

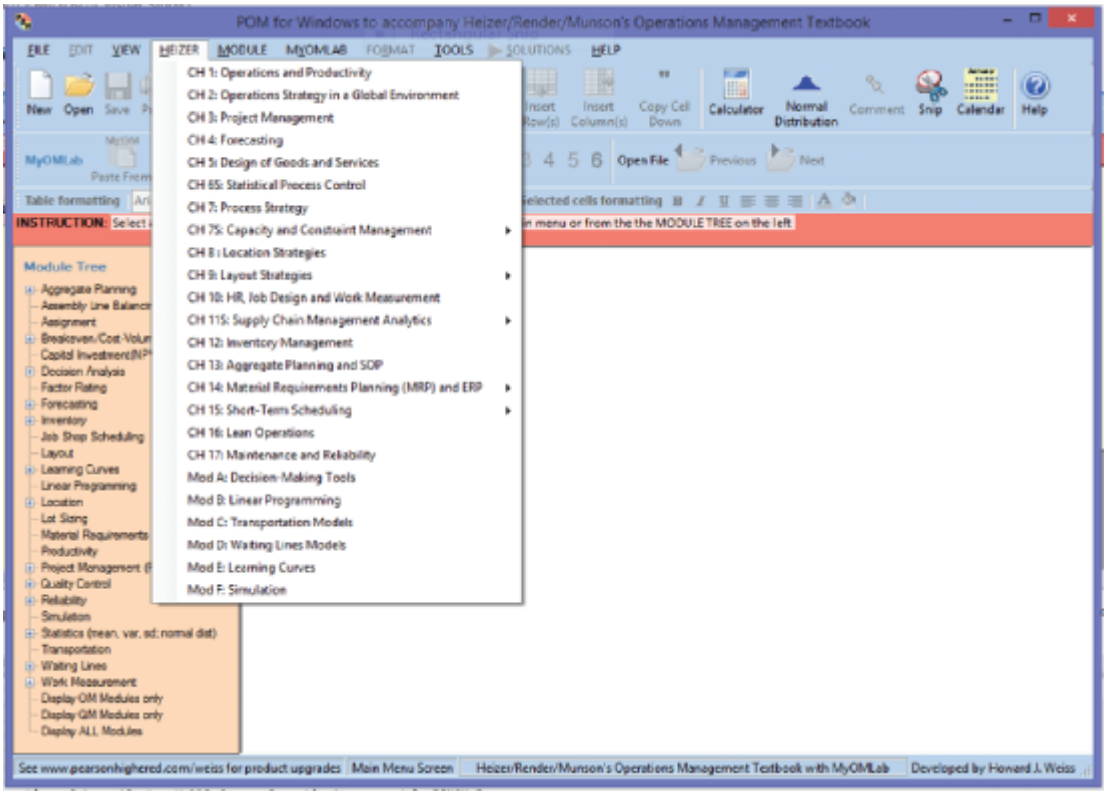
Starting the Program To start Excel OM using Windows, double-click on the Excel OM V4 shortcut placed on the desktop during installation. The Excel OM menu will appear in an Excel OM tab that will be added to the Excel ribbon, as displayed in Program IV.1(a). To start Excel OM on the Mac, open the file excelomqmv4.xla. Be certain that you open the file from the folder that has the excelomqmv4 .lic file. On the Mac under Excel 2011, the Excel OM menu will appear in the main menu of Excel, as displayed in Program IV.1(b).

If you have Excel 2007 or later and do not see an Excel OM tab on the Ribbon, then your Excel security settings need to be revised to enable Excel OM V4. Please consult the Excel instructions at the support site, www.pearsonhighered.com/weiss, or see the document Excel.Security.pdf that has been installed in the default directory.

Excel OM serves two purposes in the learning process. First, it helps you solve problems. You enter the appropriate data, and the program provides numerical solutions. POM for Windows operates on the same principle. However, Excel OM allows for a second approach: the Excel *formulas* used to develop solutions can be modified to deal with a wider variety of problems. This "open" approach enables you to observe, understand, and even change the formulas underlying the Excel calculations—conveying Excel's power as an OM analysis tool.

POM FOR WINDOWS

POM for Windows is decision support software that is also offered free to students who use MyOMLab or who purchased this as a new text. It can also be purchased at our Web site www.pearsonhighered .com/heizer. Program IV.2 shows a list of the 25 OM modules that can be accessed from the menu tree on the left. The modules can also be accessed from the MODULE menu where they are in alphabetical order or the HEIZER menu where they are in chapter order. Once you follow the standard setup instructions, a POM for Windows program icon will be added to your desktop, and a program group will be added to your Start, All Programs menu. The program may be accessed by double-clicking on the desktop icon.



▲ **PROGRAM IV.2** **POM for Windows Module List**

USING EXCEL OM AND POM FOR WINDOWS WITH MYOMLAB

Both Excel OM and POM for Windows have MyOMLab toolbars that make it very easy to copy from or paste to MyOMLab and very easy to set the specific number of decimals for which MyOMLab asks for any problem. To copy data from MyOMLab: after creating a model in Excel OM or POM, go to MyOMLab and click on the Copy icon. Then, in POM or in Excel OM, click on the **Paste from MyOMLab** icon on the toolbar or in the right-click menu.

Updates to POM for Windows and Excel OM are available on the Internet through the Downloads and Support links at *www.pearsonhighered.com/weiss*.

APPENDIX V

SOLUTIONS TO EVEN-NUMBERED PROBLEMS

Chapter 1

1.2 **(a)** 2 valves/hr.
(b) 2.25 valves/hr.
(c) 12.5%

1.4 **(a)** 20 pkg/hour
(b) 26.6 pkg/hour
(c) 33.0%

1.6 .078 fewer resources (7.8% improvement)

1.8 **(a)** 2.5 tires/hour
(b) 0.025 tires/dollar
(c) 2.56% increase

1.10 .000375 autos per dollar of inputs

1.12 4 workers

1.14 1.6%

1.16 $57.00 per labor hour

Chapter 2

2.2 Venezuela, China, United States, Switzerland, Denmark

2.4 Differentiation is evident when comparing most restaurants or restaurant chains.

2.6 **(a)** Focus more on standardization, make fewer product changes, find optimum capacity, and stabilize manufacturing process are a few possibilities
(b) New human resource skills, added capital investment for new equipment/processes
(c) Same as (b)

2.8 **(a)** Canada, 1.7
(b) No change

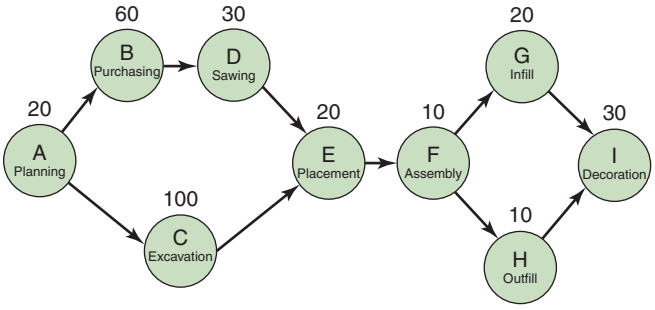
2.10 **(a)** Worldwide, 81.5 weighted *average*, 815 weighted *total*
(b) No change
(c) Overnight Shipping now preferred, weighted total = 880

2.12 Company C, $1.0 \leq w \leq 25.0$

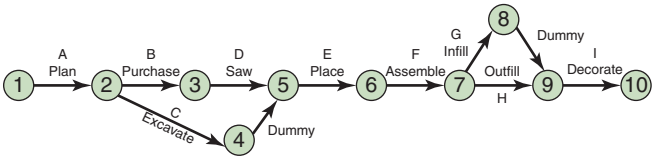
Chapter 3

3.2 Here are some detailed activities for the first two activities for Day's WBS:
1.1.1 Set initial goals for fundraising.
1.1.2 Set strategy, including identifying sources and solicitation.
1.1.3 Raise the funds.
1.2.1 Identify voters' concerns.
1.2.2 Analyze competitor's voting record.
1.2.3 Establish position on issues.

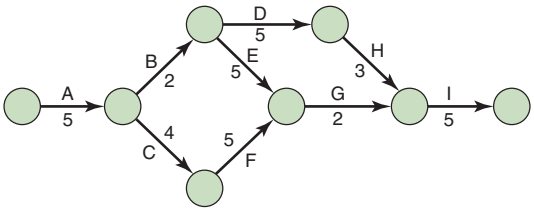
3.4 **(a)** AON network:



(b) AOA network:

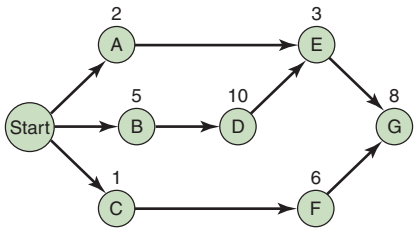


3.6



A–C–F–G–I is critical path; 21 days.
This is an AOA network.

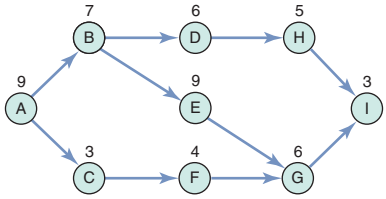
3.8 **(a)**



(b) B–D–E–G
(c) 26 days
(d)

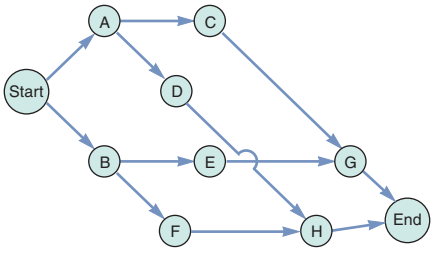
Activity	Slack
A	13
B	0
C	11
D	0
E	0
F	11
G	0

3.10 **(a)**



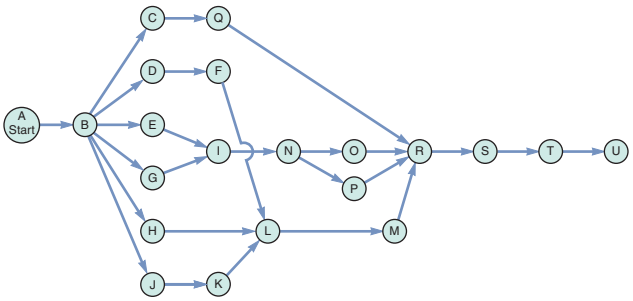
(b) A–B–E–G–I is critical path.
(c) 34

3.12



3.14 **(a)** List all courses you must take.
(b) List all immediate predecessors.
(c) Develop a network. Note the difficulty of scheduling electives.

3.16 **(a)**



(b) Critical path is A–B–J–K–L–M–R–S–T–U for 18 days.
(c) **i.** No, transmissions and drivetrains are not on the critical path.
ii. No, halving engine-building time will reduce the critical path by only 1 day.
iii. No, it is not on the critical path.
(d) Reallocating workers not involved with critical-path activities to activities along the critical path will reduce the critical path length.

3.18 A: 15, 1.33
B: 32, 2.33
C: 18, 0
D: 13.17, 1.83
E: 18.17, 0.5
F: 19, 1.0

3.20 **(a)** A: 10, 0.11
B: 10, 4
C: 10, 0.11
D: 8, 1
(b) A–C: 20 weeks
B–D: 18 weeks
(c) .22, 5
(d) 1.0
(e) 0.963

3.22 **(a)** 32 weeks, C-H-M-O
(b) 50%
(c) No impact

3.24 **(a)** A = 5, B = 6, C = 7, D = 6, E = 3, Time = 15
(b) 1, 1, 1, 4, 0; Project variance = 2

3.26 **(b)** Expected times are: 10.0, 7.2, 3.2, 20.0, 7.0, 10.0, 7.3, 15.0, 11.2, 7.0, 6.7, 2.2
(c) Slack times are: 0, 22.8, 19.8, 0, 19.8, 0, 17.7, 0, 10.8, 0, 0, 11.5
(d) A–D–F–H–J–K; 68.7 days
(e) 0.644
(f) 0.99934
(g) 0.99999

3.28 Crash C to 3 weeks at $200 total for one week. Now both paths are critical. Not worth it to crash further.

3.30 **(a)** Reduce A, cheapest path @ $600 per time period
(b) Reduce B, best choice now @ $900
(c) Total cost = $1,500

3.32 **(a)** Slacks are: 0, 2, 11, 0, 2, 11, 0
(b) First, crash D by 2 weeks. Then crash D and E by 2 weeks each.
(c) Minimum completion time = 7. Crash cost = $1,550.

Chapter 4

4.2 **(a)** None obvious.
(b) 7, 7.67, 9, 10, 11, 11, 11.33, 11, 9
(c) 6.4, 7.8, 11, 9.6, 10.9, 12.2, 10.5, 10.6, 8.4
(d) The 3-yr. moving average.

4.4 **(a)** 41.6
(b) 42.3
(c) Banking industry's seasonality.

4.6 **(b)** Naive = 23; 3-mo. moving = 21.33; 6-mo. weighted = 20.6; exponential smoothing = 20.62; trend = 20.67
(c) Trend projection

4.8 **(a)** 91.3
(b) 89
(c) MAD = 2.7
(d) MSE = 13.35
(e) MAPE = 2.99%

4.10 **(a)** 4.67, 5.00, 6.33, 7.67, 8.33, 8.00, 9.33, 11.67, 13.7
(b) 4.50, 5.00, 7.25, 7.75, 8.00, 8.25, 10.00, 12.25, 14.0
(c) Forecasts are about the same.

4.12 72

4.14 Method 1: MAD = .125; MSE = .021
Method 2: MAD = .1275; MSE = .018

4.16 **(a)** $y = 421 + 33.6x$. When $x = 6$, $y = 622.8$.
(b) MAD = 5.6
(c) MSE = 32.88

4.18 alpha = .25; forecast = 49

4.20 $\alpha = .1, \beta = .8$, August forecast = $71,303; MSE = 12.7 for $\beta = .8$ vs. MSE = 18.87 for $\beta = .2$ in Problem 4.19.

4.22 Confirm that you match the numbers in Table 4.1.

4.24 $y = 5 + 20x$, $y = 105$

4.26 1,680 sailboats

4.28 96.344, 132.946, 169.806, 85.204

4.30 $y = 29.76 + 3.28x$
Year 11 = 65.8, Year 12 = 69.1 (patients)
$r^2 = 0.853$

4.32 Trend adjustment does not appear to give any significant improvement based on MAD.

4.34 **(a)** Trend analysis: $y = -18.968 + 1.638 \times$ year
$r = .846$, MAD = 10.587

4.36 7.86

4.38 **(a)** 13.67, MAD = 2.20
(b) 13.17, MAD = 2.72

4.40 150,000; 126,000; 120,000; 198,000

4.42 **(a)** 7,000
(b) 9,000

4.44 **(a)** 337 **(b)** 380 **(c)** 423

4.46 **(a)** $y = 50 + 18x$
(b) $410

4.48 **(a)** 83,502
(d) 0.397

4.50 **(a)** $y = -.158 + .1308x$
(b) 2.719
(c) $r = .966$; $r^2 = .934$

4.52 **(b)** $y = 0.511 + 0.159x$
(c) 2,101,000 riders
(d) 511,000 people
(e) .404 (rounded to .407 in POM software)
(f) $r^2 = 0.840$

4.54 **(a)** Sales (y) = −9.349 + .1121 (contracts)
(b) $r = .8963$; $S_{xy} = 1.3408$

4.56 **(a)** $y = 1 + 1x$
(b) 0.45
(c) 3.65

4.58 Games lost = 6.41 + 0.533 × rainy days

4.60 MAD = 10.875; Tracking signal = 3.586

Chapter 5

5.2 *Possible strategies:*

Tablet (growth phase):

Increase capacity and improve balance of production system.

Attempt to make production facilities more efficient.

Smart watch (introductory phase):

Increase R&D to better define required product characteristics.

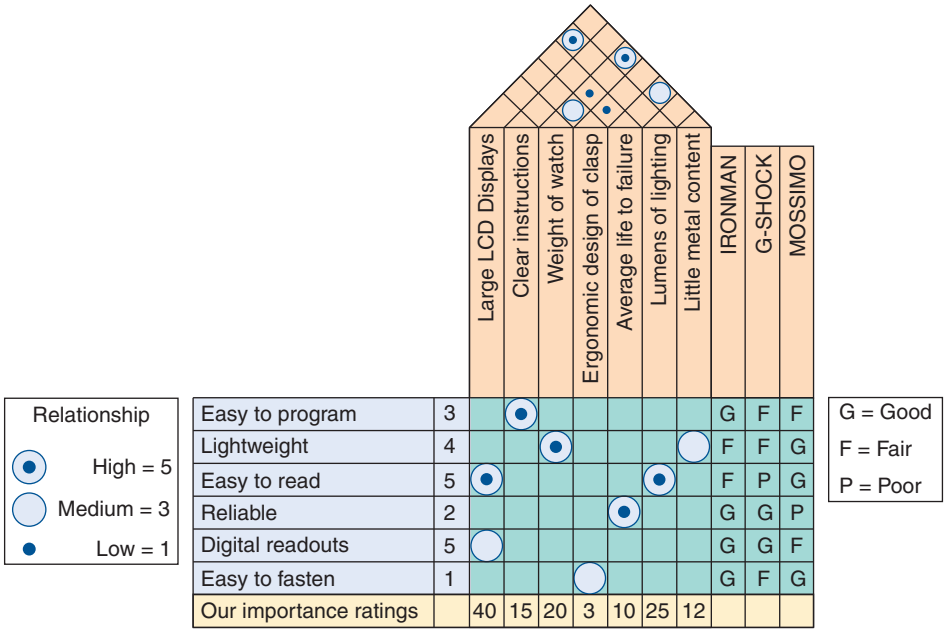
Modify and improve production process.

Develop supplier and distribution systems.

Hand calculator (decline phase):

Concentrate on production and distribution cost reduction.

5.4 Shown below is a house of quality for a sports watch in the under $50 market.



5.6 Build a house of quality similar to the one shown in Example 1 in the text.

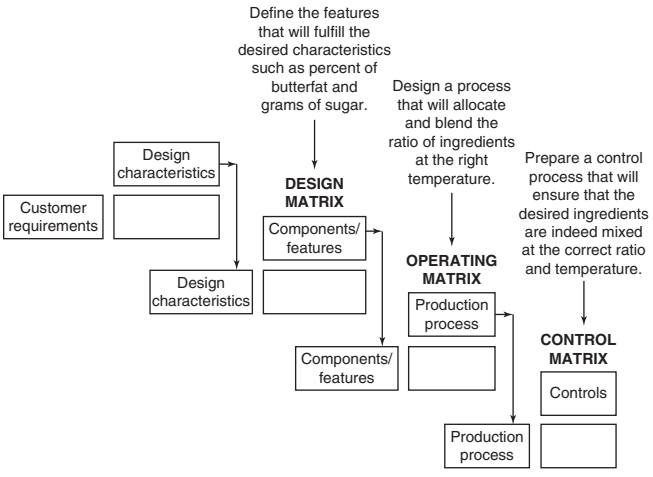
Consider customer requirements such as:

Effective Luring, Reliability, Kills Quickly, Finger Safe, etc.

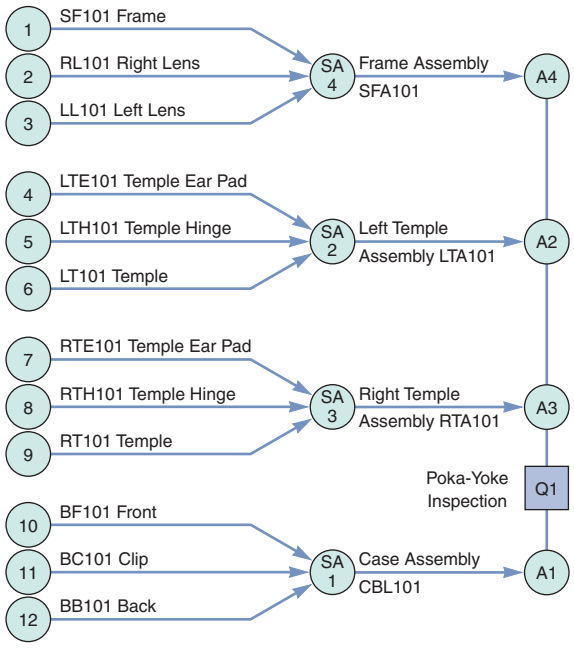
Consider Manufacturing issues such as:

Luring Radius, Dead Mouse Ratio, Time to Kill, Cost, etc.

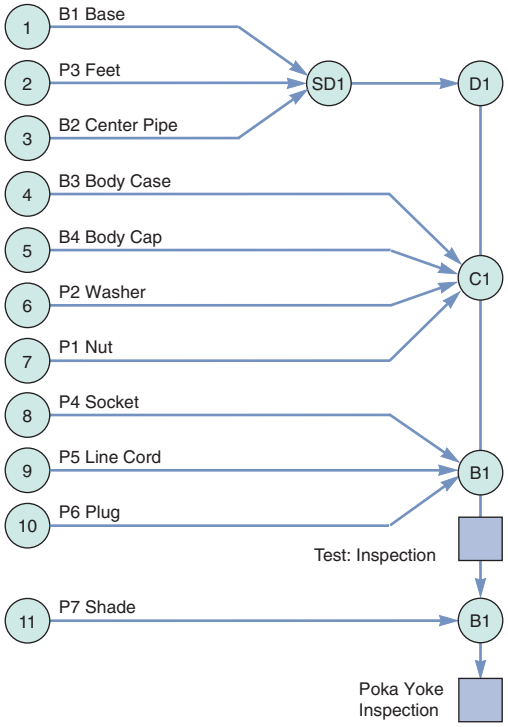
5.8 House of Quality Sequence for Ice Cream



5.10 An assembly chart for the eyeglasses is shown below:



5.12 Assembly chart for a table lamp:



5.14 Bill of material for a wooden pencil with eraser:

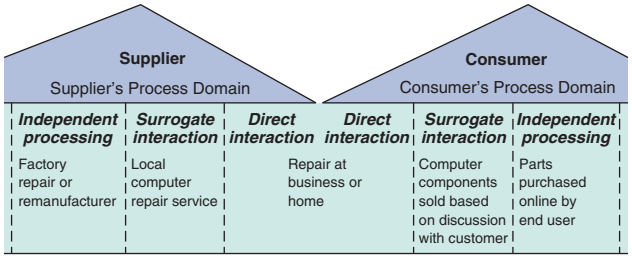
Description	Quantity
Pencil	1
Wood half	2
Graphite rod	1
Band	1
Eraser	1
Yellow paint	1 gram
Glue	1 gram

5.16 The major assemblies in the bill of material for a computer mouse (GeniMouse):

Bill of Material for GeniMouse

Part Number	Description	Quantity
GM1001	GeniMouse	1
SC004	Phillips Head No. 12 0.5 inch. Screw	1
TA101	Top Mouse Assembly	1
BA101	Base Assembly	1
GML101	GeniMouse Label	1

5.18 **(a)** For computer repair service, customer interaction is a strategic choice.



(b) Parts (b) and (c) should be prepared in a style similar to part (a).

5.20 Moving to the left is likely to be most efficient in terms of resources used (economies of scale), but there may be shipping cost and shipping time. Also, customization may be complicated.

Moving to the right may be faster and lend itself to more customization, but it may be less efficient. It may also provide less competence (less training, specialized skills, and testing).

5.22 The company should complete the value analysis, for an expected payoff of $55,025,000.

5.24 **(a)** Best decision, buy the semiconductors. Expected Payoff (cost) = $1,500,000.

(b) Expected monetary value, minimum cost.

(c) Worst case: Ritz fails at mfg. and must buy. Cost of $3,500,000.

Best case: They make the semiconductor and spend only $1,000,000.

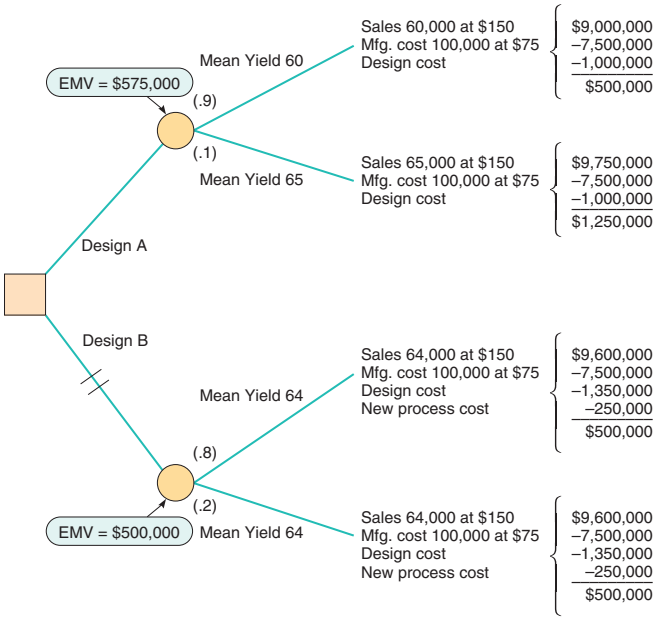
5.26 For design A:

EMV (DesignA) = (.9)($500,000) + (.1)($1,250,000) = $450,000 + $125,000 = $575,000.

For design B:

EMV (Design B) = (.8)($500,000) + (.2)($500,000) = $400,000 + $100,000 = $500,000.

The highest payoff is design option A at $575,000.



5.28 The EMV is maximized when using existing material; $8,910,000

Chapter 5 Supplement

S5.2 Brew Master revenue retrieval = $5.31 provides higher opportunity.

S5.4 $66,809

S5.6 3.57 years

S5.8 3.48 years

S5.10 66,667 miles

S5.12 **(a)** $4.53

(b) $3.23

(c) GF Deluxe

S5.14 **(a)** $4.53, GF Deluxe

(b) $5.06, Premium Mate

(c) Premium Mate model

S5.16 **(a)** 45,455 miles

(b) gas vehicle

S5.18 42,105 miles

Chapter 6

6.2 Individual answer, in the style of Figure 6.6(b).

6.4 Individual answer, in the style of Figure 6.6(f).

6.6 Partial flowchart for planning a party:

6.8 See figure below for a partial fish-bone. Individual answer in the style of Figure 6.7 in the chapter.

6.10 Individual answer, in the style of Figure 6.7 in the chapter.

6.12 Pareto chart, in the style of Example 1 with parking/drives most frequent, pool second, etc.

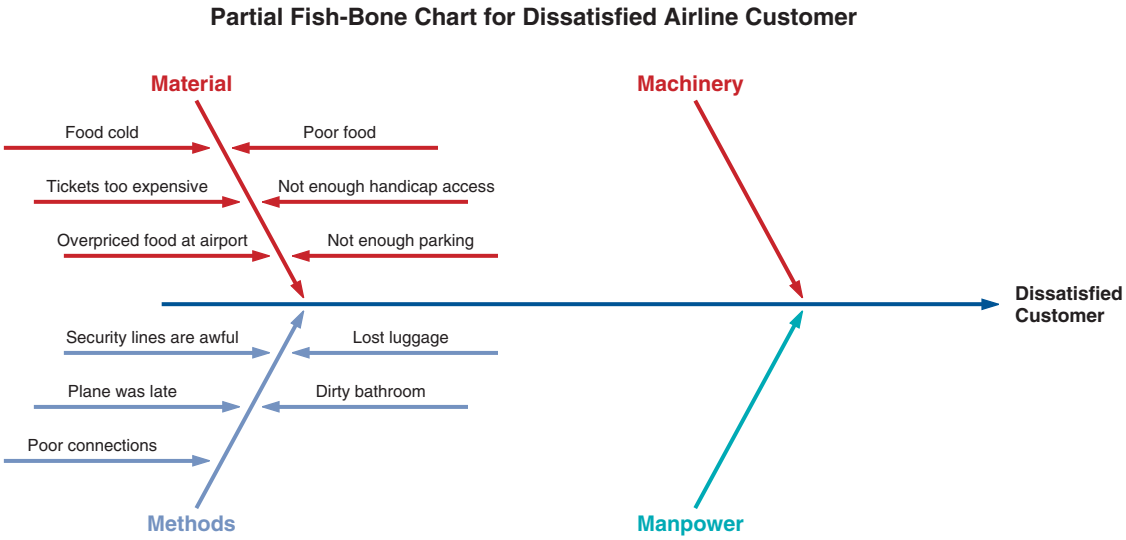
6.14 See figure below.
Issues: Materials: 4, 12, 14; Methods: 3, 7, 15, 16; Manpower: 1, 5, 6, 11; Machines: 2, 8, 9, 10, 13.

6.16 **(a)** A scatter diagram in the style of Figure 6.6(b) that shows a strong positive relationship between shipments and defects
(b) A scatter diagram in the style of Figure 6.6(b) that shows a mild relationship between shipments and turnover
(c) A Pareto chart in the style of Figure 6.6(d) that shows frequency of each type of defect
(d) A fishbone chart in the style of Figure 6.6(c) with the 4 *M*s showing possible causes of increasing defects in shipments

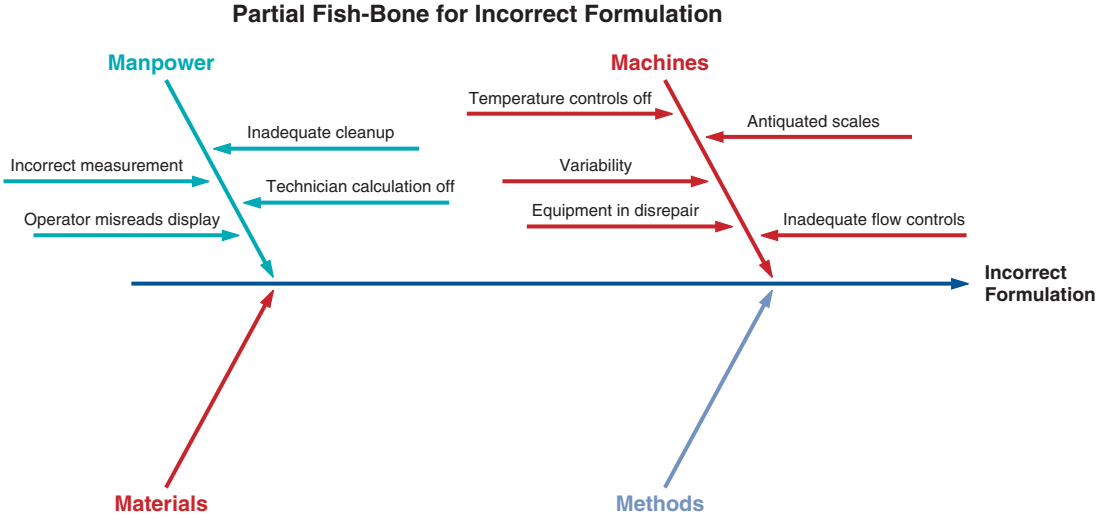
6.18 Stitching
Seams alignment
Buttons and buttonholes
Collar alignment
Hem

6.20 **Factor I** Illegible handwriting
Factor II Failure to proofread
Factor III Failure to use spell checker
(Factors II and III are interchangeable.)

▼ *Figure for Problem 6.8.*



▼ *Figure for Problem 6.14.*



Chapter 6 Supplement

S6.2 **(a)** $UCL_{\bar{x}} = 52.31$
$LCL_{\bar{x}} = 47.69$
(b) $UCL_{\bar{x}} = 51.54$
$LCL_{\bar{x}} = 48.46$

S6.4 **(a)** $UCL_{\bar{x}} = 440$ calories
$LCL_{\bar{x}} = 400$ calories
(b) $UCL_{\bar{x}} = 435$ calories
$LCL_{\bar{x}} = 405$ calories

S6.6 $UCL_{\bar{x}} = 3.728$
$LCL_{\bar{x}} = 2.236$
$UCL_R = 2.336$
$LCL_R = 0.0$
The process is in control.

S6.8 **(a)** $UCL_{\bar{x}} = 16.08$
$LCL_{\bar{x}} = 15.92$
(b) $UCL_{\bar{x}} = 16.12$
$LCL_{\bar{x}} = 15.88$

S6.10 **(a)** $\sigma_{\bar{x}} = 0.61$
(b) Using $\sigma_{\bar{x}}$, $UCL_{\bar{x}} = 11.83$, and $LCL_{\bar{x}} = 8.17$.
Using A_2, $UCL_{\bar{x}} = 11.90$, and $LCL_{\bar{x}} = 8.10$.
(c) $UCL_R = 6.98$; $LCL_R = 0$
(d) Yes

S6.12 $UCL_R = 6.058$; $LCL_R = 0.442$
Averages are increasing.

S6.14

UCL	LCL
.062	0
.099	0
.132	0
.161	0
.190	.01

S6.16 $UCL_p = .0313$; $LCL_p = 0$

S6.18 **(a)** $UCL_p = 0.077$; $LCL_p = 0.003$

S6.20 **(a)** $UCL_p = .0581$
$LCL_p = 0$
(b) in control
(c) $UCL_p = .1154$
$LCL_p = 0$

S6.22 **(a)** *c*-chart
(b) $UCL_c = 13.35$
$LCL_c = 0$
(c) in control
(d) not in control

S6.24 **(a)** $UCL_c = 26.063$
$LCL_c = 3.137$
(b) No point out of control.

S6.26 **(a)** $UCL_{\bar{x}} = 61.131$, $LCL_{\bar{x}} = 38.421$, $UCL_R = 41.62$, $LCL_R = 0$
(b) Yes, the process is in control for both $\bar{x}$- and *R*-charts.
(c) They support West's claim. But variance from the mean needs to be reduced and controlled.

S6.28 $UCL_{\bar{x}} = 76.85$ $LCL_{\bar{x}} = 73.15$

S6.30 $UCL_{\bar{x}} = 60.924$ $LCL_{\bar{x}} = 59.076$
$UCL_R = 5.331$ $LCL_R = 0.669$

S6.32 **(a)** $UCL_{\bar{x}} = 20.15$ $LCL_{\bar{x}} = 19.65$
(b) $UCL_R = 0.78$ $LCL_R = 0$

S6.34 At least 29 holes that meet tolerance, but no more than 88 holes before being replaced.

S6.36 $UCL_p = 0.0209$ $LCL_p = 0.0011$

S6.38 $UCL_p = 0.154$ $LCL_p = 0.031$
Sample 16 exceeds the UCL.

S6.40 $C_p = 1.0$. The process is barely capable.

S6.42 $C_{pk} = 1.125$. Process *is* centered and will produce within tolerance.

S6.44 $C_{pk} = .1667$

S6.46 $C_{pk} = 0.33$

S6.48 Machine 1 has index of $C_{pk} = 0.83$ (not capable)
Machine 2 has index of $C_{pk} = 1.0$ (capable)

S6.50 $C_p = 1.667$ (very capable)

S6.52 AOQ = 0.02

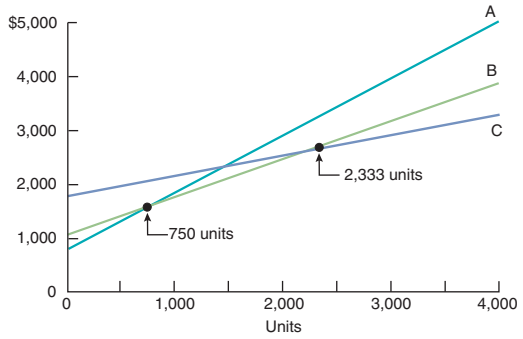
S6.54 AOQ = 0.0117

Chapter 7

7.2 GPE is best below 100,000.
FMS is best between 100,000 and 300,000.
DM is best over 300,000.

7.4 Optimal process will change at 100,000 and 300,000.

7.6 **(a)**



(b) Plan c
(c) Plan b

7.8 Rent HP software since projected volume of 80 is above the crossover point of 75.

7.10 **(a)** 82,000 units
(b) Loss of $10,000
(c) Profit of $1,000

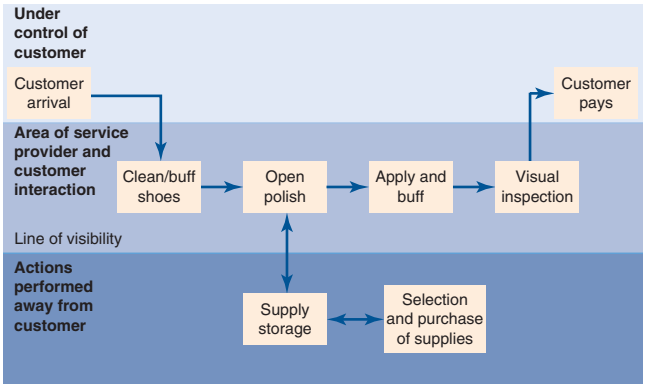
7.12 **(a)** 7,750 units
(b) Proposal A

7.14

Present Method [X] **PROCESS CHART** Proposed Method [ ]
SUBJECT CHARTED Shoe Shine DATE
CHART BY J.C.
DEPARTMENT SHEET NO. 1 OF 1

DIST. IN FEET	TIME IN MINS.	CHART SYMBOLS	PROCESS DESCRIPTION
	0.67		Clean/Brush Shoes
1.	0.05		Obtain Polish
	0.5		Open and Apply Polish
	0.75		Buff
	0.05		Inspect
	0.25		Collect Payment
1.	2.27	4 1 1	Totals

7.16



Chapter 7 Supplement

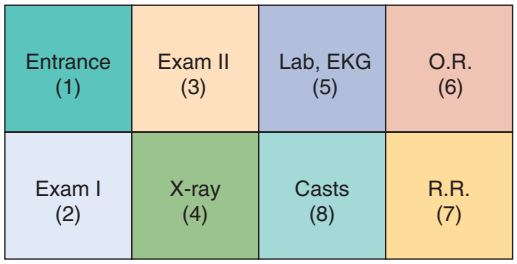
S7.2 69.2%
S7.4 88.9%
S7.6 Design = 88,920
Fabrication = 160,680
Finishing = 65,520
S7.8 5.17 (or 6) bays
S7.10 15 min/unit
S7.12 **(a)** Throughput time = 40 min
(b) Bottleneck time = 12 min.
(c) Station 2
(d) Weekly capacity = 240 units
S7.14 **(a)** Work station C at 20 min/unit
(b) 3 units/hr
S7.16 **(a)** 2,000 units
(b) $1,500
S7.18 **(a)** $150,000
(b) $160,000
S7.20 **(a)** BEP_A = 1,667;
BEP_B = 2,353
(b, c) Oven A slightly more profitable
(d) 13,333 pizzas
S7.22 **(a)** $18,750
(b) 375,000
S7.24 Yes, purchase new equipment and raise price. Profit = $2,500
S7.26 $BEP_\$$ = $7,584.83 per mo
Daily meals = 9
S7.28 **(a)** 6,250
(b) 7,000
S7.30 10,000
S7.32 Option B; $74,000
S7.34 $4,590
S7.36 NPV = $1,764
S7.38 **(a)** Purchase two large ovens.
(b) Equal quality, equal capacity.
(c) Payments are made at end of each time period, and future interest rates are known.
S7.40 Investment A; payoff = $24,234
S7.42 (11 percent) should not purchase; NPV = –$7,678
(4 percent) should purchase; NPV = $5,379
S7.44 Machine B; NPV = $85,983

Chapter 8

8.2 China, $1.44
8.4 India is $.05 less than elsewhere.
8.6 **(a)** Mobile = 53; Jackson = 60; select Jackson.
(b) Jackson now = 66.
8.8 **(a)** Hyde Park, with 54.5 points.
(b) Present location = 51 points.
8.10 **(a)** Location C, with a total *weighted* score of 1,530.
(b) Location B = 1,360
(c) B can never be in first place.
8.12 **(a)** Great Britain, at 4.6.
(b) Great Britain is now 3.6.
8.14 **(a)** Italy is highest.
(b) Spain always lowest.
8.16 **(a)** Site 1 up to 125, site 2 from 125 to 233, site 3 above 233
(b) Site 2
8.18 **(a)** Above 10,000 cars, site C is lowest cost
(b) Site A optimal from 0 to 10,000 cars.
(c) Site B is never optimal.
8.20 **(a)** (5.15, 7.31)
(b) (5.13, 7.67)
8.22 **(a)** (6.23, 6.08)
(b) safety, etc.
8.24 **(a)** Site C is best, with a score of 374
(b) For all positive values of w_7 such that $w_7 \leq 14$
8.26 Downtown rating = 2.24
Shopping mall rating = 3.24 (best)
Coral Gables rating = 2.42
When grade A = 4, B = 3, C = 2, D = 1
8.28 Site 1 = 78.125
Site 2 = 75.0
Site 3 = 86.56 (highest)
Site 4 = 80.94
8.30 **(a)** Atlanta TC = $125{,}000 + 6x$
Burlington TC = $75{,}000 + 5x$
Cleveland TC = $100{,}000 + 4x$
Denver TC = $50{,}000 + 12x$
(b) Denver best from 0 to 3,571 units
(c) At 5,000 units, Burlington best
8.32 (7.97, 6.69)
8.34 England, 3.55

Chapter 9

9.2 **(a)** $23,400
(b) $20,600
(c) $22,000
(d) Plan B
9.4 Benders to area 1; Materials to 2; Welders to 3; Drills to 4; Grinder to 5; and Lathes to 6; Trips × Distance = 13,000 ft.
9.6 Layout #1, distance = 600 with areas fixed
Layout #2, distance = 602 with areas fixed
9.8 Layout #4, distance = 609
Layout #5, distance = 478
9.10



Patient movement = 4,500 feet

9.12 **(a)** 20 seconds
(b) 3
(c) Yes; Station 1 with A, C;
Station 2 with B, D;
Station 3 with E
9.14 **(a)** 4 stations
(b) Cannot be done with theoretical minimum; requires 5 stations
(c) 80% for 5 stations
9.16 **(b)** Station 1–A, G, B, with .5 min. left
Station 2–C, D, E with no time left
Station 3–F, H, I, J with .5 min left
(c) If stations 1 and 3 each had 0.5 min. work more to do, the line would be 100% efficient
(d) 3
9.18 **(a)** Station 1–A, C
Station 2–E
Station 3–B, D
Station 4–F, H
Station 5–G, I
(b) 97.6% with cycle time = 3.33 (theoretical efficiency)
87.6% is operating efficiency
(c) 4
(d) 2 min./boat
9.20 **(b)** 15 min.
(c) 144 units/day
(d) 5 stations
(e) 83.33%
(f) 10 min./cycle

9.22 **(b)** 3.75 patients/hour
(c) Medical exam station, 16 min.
(d) Paramedics are idle 2 minutes, doctors 10 minutes for each patient
(e) 5 patients/hour

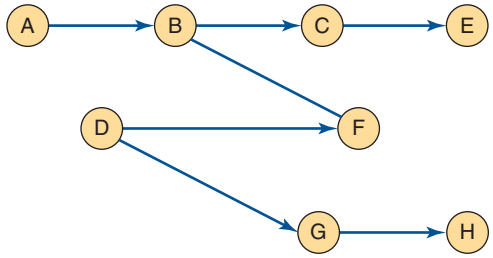
9.24 **(a)**

Algorithm	No. Workstations	Efficiency
Fewest following tasks	13	84.56%
Longest operating time	12	84.61
Most following tasks	12	84.61
Ranked positional weight	12	84.61
Shortest operating time	13	78.10

(b)

Algorithm	No. Workstations	Efficiency
Fewest following tasks	13	77.56%
Longest operating time	12	84.02
Most following tasks	12	84.02
Ranked positional weight	11	91.66
Shortest operating time	12	84.02

9.26 **(a)**



(b) Multiple alternatives are possible
(c) 92.5%

Chapter 10

10.2 The first 8 steps of the process chart are:

Process Chart
Charted by
Date: Sheet of
Problem:

Summary	
Operation	26
Transport	4
Inspect	2
Delay	
Store	
Vert. Dist.	
Hor. Dist.	24
Time (min)	24.4

Distance (ft)	Time (mins)	Chart Symbols	Process Description
	1.0		Park auto
	0.1		Set parking brake
	0.1		Set gear shift to park
	0.1		Turn off engine
	0.2		Exit vehicle
8	0.1		Move to trunk of auto
	0.3		Open trunk
	1.0		Remove jack and spare tire

10.4 Individually prepared solution in the style of Figure 10.6

10.6 The first 8 steps of the process chart are:

Process Chart
Charted by
Date: Sheet 1 of 1
Problem: adding a memory board to your computer

Summary	
Operation	14
Transport	4
Inspect	1
Delay	
Store	
Vert. Dist.	
Hor. Dist.	68
Time (min)	24.7

Distance (ft)	Time (mins)	Chart Symbols	Process Description
	0.2		Turn computer off
	2.0		Disconnect all cables
30	1.0		Move computer to table top
	1.5		Remove screws from cover
	1.0		Remove cover
3	0.1		Set cover on floor
	0.5		Find board to be replaced
5	0.2		Bring box with new board to table

10.8

Process Chart
Charted by H. Molano
Date Sheet 1 of 1
Problem Pit crew jack man

Summary	
Operation	2
Transport	3
Inspect	
Delay	2
Store	
Vert. Dist.	
Hor. Dist.	
Time (seconds)	12.5

Distance (feet)	Time (seconds)	Chart Symbols	Process Description
15	2.0		Move to right side of car
	2.0		Raise car
	1.0		Wait for tire exchange to finish
10	1.8		Move to left side of car
	2.0		Raise car
	1.2		Wait for tire exchange to finish
5	2.5		Move back over wall from left side

10.10 The first portion of the activity chart is shown below.

ACTIVITY CHART

	OPERATOR #1 TIME	OPERATOR #1 %	OPERATOR #2 TIME	OPERATOR #2 %
WORK	11.75	84	11.75	84
IDLE	2.25	16	2.25	16

OPERATIONS: Wash and Dry Dishes
EQUIPMENT: Sink, Drip Rack, Towels, Soap
OPERATOR:
STUDY NO.: 1 ANALYST: HSM

SUBJECT DATE
PRESENT (PROPOSED) DEPT. HOUSECLEANING SHEET 1 OF 1 CHART BY Hank

TIME	Operator #1	TIME	Operator #2	TIME
	Fill sink w/dishes		Idle	
	Fill sink w/soap/ water		Idle	
	Wash dishes (2 min.)		Idle	
			Rinse (1 min.)	
	Fill sink w/dishes (1 min.)		Dry dishes (3 min.)	

10.12 The first portion of the process chart is shown below.

PROCESS CHART

Present Method ☐
Proposed Method ☒
SUBJECT CHARTED Printing and Copying Document
DATE
CHART BY HSM
CHART NO. 1
DEPARTMENT Clerical
SHEET NO. 1 OF 1

DIST. IN FEET	TIME IN MINS.	CHART SYMBOLS	PROCESS DESCRIPTION
	0.25		Click on Print Command
50	0.25		Move to Printer
	0.50		Wait for Printer
	0.10		Read Error Message
100	0.50		Move to Supply Room
	0.25		Locate Correct Paper

10.14 NT = 7.65 sec; slower than normal

10.16 **(a)** 6.525 sec
(b) 6.2 sec
(c) 6.739 sec

10.18 **(a)** 12.6 min
(b) 15 min

10.20 **(a)** 12.0 sec
(b) 14.12 sec

10.22 10.12 min

10.24 **(a)** 3.24 min
(b) 4.208 min

10.26 n = 14.06, or 15 observations

10.28 **(a)** 45.36, 13.75, 3.6, 15.09
(b) 91.53 min
(c) 97 samples

10.30 **(a)** 47.6 min
(b) 75 samples

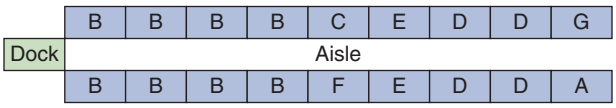
10.32 $n = 348$
10.34 73.8%
10.36 6.55 sec
10.38 **(a)** 240 min
(b) 150 hr
(c) Clean 8 rooms; refresh 16 rooms; 38 housekeepers
(d) 50 employees

Chapter 11

11.2 **(a)** 25% decrease in material costs; $45,000
(b) 75% increase in sales; $175,000
11.4 Problems include communication, product valuation, selecting virtual partners
11.6 **(a)** Weeks of supply = 3.85
(b) % of assets in inventory = 11.63%
(c) Turnover = 13.5
(d) No, but note they are in different industries
11.8 **(a)** Last year = 10.4
(b) This year = 9.67
(c) Yes

Chapter 11 Supplement

S11.2 Two suppliers best, $42,970
S11.4 **(a)** $P(2) = 0.017463$
(b) $P(2) = 0.018866$
(c) Option 1 (2 local suppliers) has lower risk.
S11.6 **(a)** 2.5
(b) 1.2
(c) 1.25
(d) 1.8
(e) Retailer
S11.8 **(a)** 1.20
(b) Bullwhip = 0 if order sizes all the same.
S11.10 Donna Inc., 8.2; Kay Corp., 9.8
S11.12 Individual responses. Issues might include academics, location, financial support, size, facilities, etc.
S11.14 **(a)** Alternative (1) (slower shipping)
(b) Customer satisfaction and interest earned on earlier payments
S11.16 **(a)** Alternative (2) (faster shipping)
(b) Potential delay in the production process
S11.18 **(a)** Item B
(b) Item A
S11.20



Chapter 12

12.2 **(a)** A items are G2 and F3; B items are A2, C7, and D1; all others are C.
12.4 108 items
12.6 (D23) A
(D27) C
(R02) C
(R19) C
(S123) C
(U11) $5,600; B
(U23) $1,500; C
(V75) $6,000
12.8 **(a)** 600 units
(b) 424.26 units
(c) 848.53 units
12.10 **(a)** 80 units
(b) 73 units
12.12 **(a)** 2,100 units
(b) 4,200 units
(c) 1,050 units
12.14 **(a)** 189.74 units
(b) 94.87
(c) 31.62
(d) 7.91
(e) $1,897.30
(f) $601,897
12.16 **(a)** Order quantity variations have limited impact on total cost.
(b) EOQ = 50
12.18 **(a)** 671 units
(b) 18.63
(c) 559 = max. inventory
(d) 16.7%
(e) $1,117.90
12.20 **(a)** 1,217 units
(b) 1,095 = max. inventory
(c) 8.22 production runs
(e) $657.30
12.22 **(a)** EOQ = 200, total cost = $1,446,380
(b) EOQ = 200, total cost = $1,445,880
12.24 **(a)** 16,971 units
(b) $530.33
(c) $530.33
(d) $56,250
(e) $57,310.66
12.26 **(a)** EOQ = 410
(b) Vendor Allen has slightly lower cost.
(c) Optimal order quantity = 1,000 @ total cost of $128,920
12.28 **(a)** EOQ (1) = 336; EOQ (2) = 335
(b) Order 1,200 from Vendor 2.
(c) At 1,200 lb., total cost = $161,275.
(d) Storage space and perishability.
12.30 **(a)** 32
(b) 2
(c) 20; $2,400
(d) 336; 168
(e) $10,800
(f) 214; $1,820
12.32 $8
12.34 7,000
12.36 **(a)** $1,220
(b) $1,200
(c) 24
12.38 (without discount) $2,200
(with discount) $2,510
No, do not take the discount.
12.40 Order more than 50 sheets; cost = $1,901.22
12.42 **(a)** $Z = 1.88$
(b) Safety stock = $Z\sigma = 1.88(5) = 9.4$ drives
(c) ROP = 59.4 drives
12.44 100 kilos of safety stock
12.46 **(a)** 291 towels
(b) 2,291 towels
12.48 **(a)** ROP = 1,718 cigars
(b) 1,868 cigars
(c) A higher service level means a lower probability of stocking out.
12.50 55
12.52 28 cakes

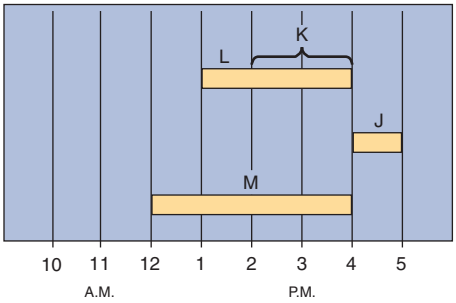
Chapter 13

13.2 **(a)** $109,120 = total cost
(b) $106,640 = total cost
(c) No, plan 2 is better at $105,152.
13.4 Cost = $244,000 for plan B

13.6 **(a)** Plan D, $128,000
(b) Plan E is $140,000
13.8 Extra total cost = $2,960.
13.10 **(a)** Plan C, $104,000; **(b)** plan D, $93,800, assuming initial inventory = 0
13.12 **(a)** Plan A: Cost is $314,000.
Plan B: Cost is $329,000.
Plan C: Cost is $222,000 (lowest cost).
(b) Plan C, with lowest cost and steady employment.
13.14 $1,186,810
13.16 $100,750
13.18 $90,850
13.20 $20,400
13.22 $308,125
13.24 **(b)** Cost using O.T. and Forrester = $195,625.
(c) A case could be made for either position.
13.26 Current model = $9,200 in sales; proposed model yields $9,350, which is only slightly better.

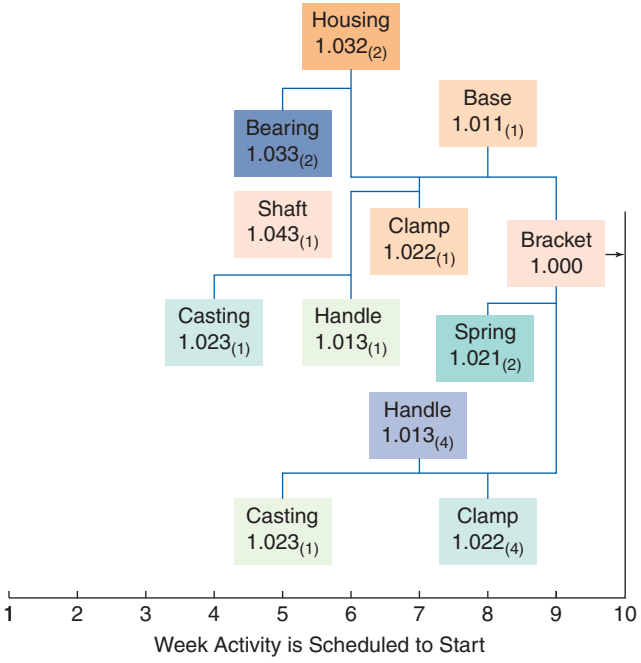
Chapter 14

14.2 The time-phased plan for the gift bags is:



Someone should start on item M by noon.

14.4 **(a)** Time-phased product structure for bracket with start times:



(b) Castings need to start in week 4.

14.6 Gross material requirements plan:

Item		Week 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Lead Time (wk)
S	Gross req.							100		
	Order release					100				2
T	Gross req.					100				
	Order release				100					1
U	Gross req.					200				
	Order release			200						2
V	Gross req.				100					
	Order release		100							2
W	Gross req.				200					
	Order release	200								3
X	Gross req.				100					
	Order release			100						1
Y	Gross req.			400						
	Order release	400								2
Z	Gross req.			600						
	Order release		600							1

14.8 Gross material requirements plan, modified to include the 20 units of U required for maintenance purposes:

Item		Week 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Lead Time (wk)
S	Gross req.							100		
	Order release					100				2
T	Gross req.					100				
	Order release				100					1
U	Gross req.					200	20			
	Order release			200	20					2
V	Gross req.				100					
	Order release		100							2
W	Gross req.				200					
	Order release	200								3
X	Gross req.				100					
	Order release			100						1
Y	Gross req.			400	40					
	Order release	400	40							2
Z	Gross req.			600	60					
	Order release		600	60						1

14.10 **(a)** Gross material requirements plan for the first three items:

Item		Week 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
X1	Gross req.								50		20		100
	Order release							50		20		100	
B1	Gross req.							50		20		100	
	Order release					50		20		100			
B2	Gross req.							100		40		200	
	Order release					100		40		200			

(b) The net materials requirement plan for the first two items:

Level: 0 Item: X1	Parent: Lead Time:							Quantity: Lot Size: L4L				
Week No.	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**10**	**11**	**12**
Gross Requirement								50		20		100
Scheduled Receipt												
On-hand Inventory								50		0		0
Net Requirement								0		20		100
Planned Order Receipt										20		100
Planned Order Release									20		100	

Level: 1 Item: B1	Parent: X1 Lead Time: 2							Quantity: 1X Lot Size: L4L				
Week No.	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**10**	**11**	**12**
Gross Requirement									20		100	
Scheduled Receipt												
On-hand Inventory									20		0	
Net Requirement									0		100	
Planned Order Receipt											100	
Planned Order Release									100			

14.12 **(a)** Net material requirements schedule (only items A and H are shown):

	Week											
	1	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**10**	**11**	**12**
A Gross Required								100		50		150
On Hand								0		0		0
Net Required								100		50		150
Order Receipt								100		50		150
Order Release							100		50		150	
H Gross Required									100		50	
On Hand									0		0	
Net Required									100		50	
Order Receipt									100		50	
Order Release								100		50		

(b) Net material requirements schedule (only items B and C are shown; schedule for items A and H remains the same as in part a).

	Week												
	1	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**10**	**11**	**12**	**13**
B Gross Requirements							200		100		300		
Scheduled Receipts													
Projected on Hand 100							100		0		0		
Net Requirements							100		100		300		
Planned Order Receipts							100		100		300		
Planned Order Releases					100		100		300				
C Gross Requirements							200	200	100	100	300		
Scheduled Receipts													
Projected on Hand 50							50	0	0	0	0		
Net Requirements							150	200	100	100	300		
Planned Order Receipts							150	200	100	100	300		
Planned Order Releases					150	200	100	100	300				

14.14 **(a)**

Level	Description	Qty
0	A	1
1	B	1
2	C	1
2	D	1
3	E	1
1	F	1
2	G	1
2	H	1
3	E	1
3	C	1

Note: with low-level coding "C" would be a level-3 code

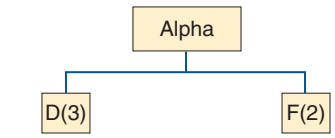
(b) Solution for Items A, B, F (on next page):

14.14 **(b)** Net material requirements schedule (only items A, B, and F are shown).

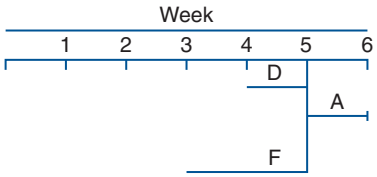
Lot Size	Lead Time	On Hand	Safety Stock	Allo-cated	Low-Level Code	Item ID		Period (week) 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Lot for Lot	1	0	—	—	0	A	Gross Requirement								10
							Scheduled Receipt								
							Projected on Hand								0
							Net Requirement								10
							Planned Receipt								10
							Planned Release							10	
Lot for Lot	1	2	—	—	1	B	Gross Requirement							10	
							Scheduled Receipt								
							Projected on Hand	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	0
							Net Requirement							8	
							Planned Receipt							8	
							Planned Release						8		
Lot for Lot	1	5	—	—	1	F	Gross Requirement							10	
							Scheduled Receipt								
							Projected on Hand	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	0
							Net Requirement							5	
							Planned Receipt							5	
							Planned Release						5		

14.16 **(a)** Only item G changes.
(b) Component F and 4 units of A will be delayed one week.
(c) Options include: delaying 4 units of A for 1 week; asking supplier of G to expedite production.

14.18 **(a)**



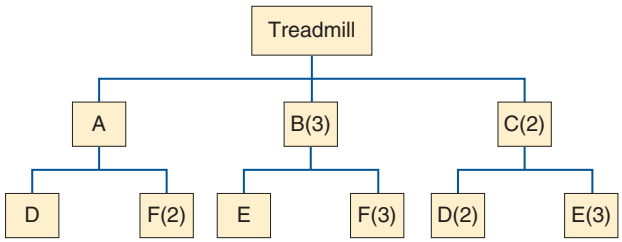
(b)



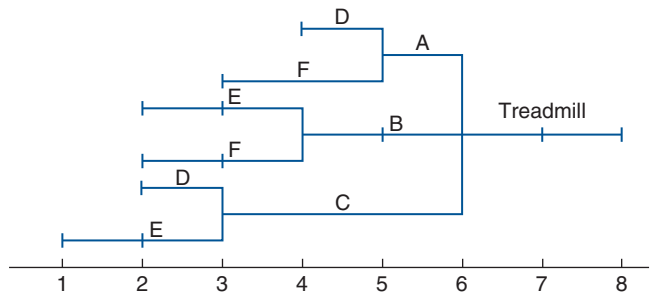
(c)

Week	2	3	4	5	6	
Required Date					10	A
Order Release				10		
Required Date				30		D
Order Release			30			
Required Date				20		F
Order Release		20				

14.20 **(a)**



(b)



(c) Treadmill: release P.O. for 30 in week 6
release P.O. for 20 of part A in week 5
release P.O. for 60 of part B in week 4
release P.O. for 160 of part B in week 2 and 40 in week 3

14.22 Lot-for-lot: Total cost = 7 orders × \$150/order + 20 units × \$2.50/unit/period = \$1,100.

14.24 POQ: Setup cost = 5 × \$150 = \$750; Holding cost = 2.50 × \$170 = \$425; Total \$1,175

14.26 **(a)** Lot-for-lot: Setup cost = $800; Holding cost = $0.0; Total cost = $800.
(b) EOQ: EOQ = 18, Setup cost = $800; Holding cost = $370; Total cost = $1,170.
(c) POQ: EOQ = 18, POQ = 2, Setup cost = $800; Holding cost = $0.0; Total cost = $800.
(d) Lot-for-lot and POQ have the same cost.

14.28 **(a)** EOQ = 105; orders released now and in weeks 3 and 7; Actual cost = $307.50
(b) Lot-for-lot: orders released now and in weeks 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9; Total cost = $400.

14.30 Selection for first 5 weeks:

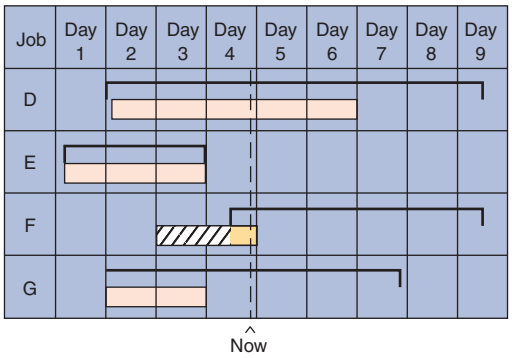
Week	Units	Capacity Required (time)	Capacity Available (time)	Over/ (Under)	Production Scheduler's Action
1	60	3,900	2,250	1,650	Lot split. Move 300 minutes (4.3 units) to week 2 and 1,350 minutes to week 3.
2	30	1,950	2,250	(300)	
3	10	650	2,250	(1,600)	
4	40	2,600	2,250	350	Lot split. Move 250 minutes to week 3. Operations split. Move 100 minutes to another machine, overtime, or subcontract.
5	70	4,550	2,250	2,300	Lot split. Move 1,600 minutes to week 6. Overlap operations to get product out door. Operations split. Move 700 minutes to another machine, overtime, or subcontract.

14.32

Coffee Table Master Schedule	Hrs Required	Lead Time	Day 1	Day 2	Day 3	Day 4	Day 5	Day 6	Day 7	Day 8
							640	640	128	128
Table Assembly	2	1				1,280	1,280	256	256	
Top Preparation	2	1			1,280	1,280	256	256		
Assemble Base	1	1			640	640	128	128		
Long Brace (2)	0.25	1		320	320	64	64			
Short Brace (2)	0.25	1		320	320	64	64			
Leg (4)	0.25	1		640	640	128	128			
Total Hours			0	1,280	3,200	3,456	1,920	640	256	
Employees needed @ 8 hrs. each			0	160	400	432	240	80	32	

Chapter 15

15.2



15.4 **(a)** 1–D, 2–A, 3–C, 4–B
(b) 40

15.6 Chris–Finance, Steve–Marketing, Juana–H.R., Rebecca Operations, $210

15.8 Ajay–Jackie, Jack–Barbara, Gray–Stella, Raul–Dona, 230

15.10

Period	1	2	3	4
Input deviation	+5	+5	–15	–15
Output deviation	–5	–5	–10	–10
Backlog	30	30	35	40

15.12 Divorce to Attorney 3
Felony to Attorney 1
Discrimination to Attorney 2
Total cost = $2,700

15.14 G99 to 1; E2 to 2; C81 to 3;
D5 to 4; D44 to 5; C53 to 6;
E35 to 8; no component to 7.
Total cost = $1.18

15.16 Sequence 517, 103, 309, 205, 412

15.18 **(b)** SPT for best flow time
(c) SPT for best utilization
(d) EDD for best lateness
(e) LPT scores poorly on all three criteria

15.20 Johnson's Rule finishes in 21 days
First-come, First-served finishes in 23 days

15.22 **(a)** V–Y–U–Z–X–W–T
(c) 57 hours
(d) 7 hours
(e) unchanged

15.24 **(a)** 010, 020, 030, 040, 050
(b) 020, 010, 030, 040, 050 (030 could come before 010)
(c) 030, 050, 020, 040, 010
(d) 010, 040, 020, 050, 030
Average no. jobs in system: FCFS = 3.4; EDD = 3.3; SPT = 2.4; LPT = 3.6

15.26 Worker 1, M–F; Worker 2; M–F;
Worker 3, M, Th, F, S, Su; Worker 4, M-F;
Worker 5, M, T, F, S, Su; Worker 6, W, Th, F, S, Su;
Worker 7, M, T, W, S (only 4 days)

Chapter 16

16.2 Setup time = 3.675 minutes
16.4 Number of kanbans needed = 5
16.6 Production order quantity = 50; 5 Kanbans
16.8 **(a)** EOQ = 100 lamps
(b) TC = $1,200
(c) 20 orders/year
16.10 EOQ size decreases; orders increase; inventory costs can be expected to drop.
16.12 Kanban size = 158; number of kanbans needed = 10

Chapter 17

17.2 From Figure 17.2, about 13% overall reliability.
17.4 **(a)** 5.0%
(b) .00001026 failures/unit-hr.
(c) .08985
(d) 98.83
17.6 $R_s = .9941$
17.8 $R_p = .99925$
17.10 $R_p = .984$
17.12 $R = .7918$
17.14 System B is slightly higher, at .9397.
17.16 From Figure 17.2, about 82%
17.18 2.7 breakdowns
17.20 The figure suggests that there are likely to be at least three separate modes of failure; one or more causes of infant mortality, and two modes of failure which occur at later times.
17.22 1.5 breakdowns; $15
17.24 Current cost = $1,255/week; Contract cost = $1,395; therefore, eliminate maintenance contract.

Online Tutorial 1

T1.2 5.45; 4.06
T1.4 **(a)** .2743
(b) 0.5
T1.6 .1587; .2347; .1587
T1.8 **(a)** .0548
(b) .6554
(c) .6554
(d) .2119

Online Tutorial 2

T2.2 (selected values)

Fraction Defective	Mean of Poisson	P(x ≤ 1)
.01	.05	.999
.05	.25	.974
.10	.50	.910
.30	1.50	.558
.60	3.00	.199
1.00	5.00	.040

T2.4 The plan meets neither the producer's nor the consumer's requirement.

Online Tutorial 3

T3.2 **(a)** Max $3x_1 + 9x_2$
$x_1 + 4x_2 + s_1 = 24$
$x_1 + 2x_2 + s_2 = 16$
(b) See the steps in the tutorial.
(c) Second tableau:

c_j	Mix	x_1	x_2	s_1	s_2	Qty.
9	x_2	.25	1	.25	0	6
0	s_2	.50	0	−.50	1	4
	z_j	2.25	9	2.25	0	54
	$c_j - z_j$	.75	0	−2.25	0	

(d) $x_1 = 8$, $x_2 = 4$, Profit = $60
T3.4 Basis for 1st tableau:
$A_1 = 80$
$A_2 = 75$
Basis for 2nd tableau:
$A_1 = 55$
$X_1 = 25$
Basis for 3rd tableau:
$X_1 = 14$
$X_2 = 33$
Cost = $221 at optimal solution
T3.6 **(a)** x_1
(b) A_1

Online Tutorial 4

T4.2 Cost = $980; 1–A = 20; 1–B = 50; 2–C = 20; 2–Dummy = 30; 3–A = 20; 3–C = 40
T4.4 Total = 3,100 mi; Morgantown–Coaltown = 35; Youngstown–Coal Valley = 30; Youngstown–Coaltown = 5; Youngstown–Coal Junction = 25; Pittsburgh–Coaltown = 5; Pittsburgh–Coalsburg = 20
T4.6 **(a)** Using VAM, cost = $635; A–Y = 35; A–Z = 20; B–W = 10; B–X = 20; B–Y = 15; C–W = 30
(b) Using MODI, cost is also $635 (i.e., initial solution was optimal). An alternative optimal solution is A–X = 20; A–Y = 15; A–Z = 20; B–W = 10; B–Y = 35; C–W = 30

Online Tutorial 5

T5.2 **(a)** $I_{13} = 12$
(b) $I_{35} = 7$
(c) $I_{51} = 4$
T5.4 **(a)** Tour: 1–2–4–5–7–6–8–3–1; 37.9 mi
(b) Tour: 4–5–7–6–8–1–2–3–4; 30.2 mi
T5.6 **(a)** Vehicle 1: Tour 1–2–4–3–5–1 = $134
Vehicle 2: Tour 1–6–10–9–8–7–1 = $188
T5.8 The cost matrix is shown below:

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	—	107.26	118.11	113.20	116.50	123.50	111.88	111.88
2		—	113.53	111.88	118.10	125.30	116.50	118.10
3			—	110.56	118.70	120.50	119.90	124.90
4				—	109.90	119.10	111.88	117.90
5					—	111.88	106.60	118.50
6						—	111.88	123.50
7							—	113.20
8								—

This page intentionally left blank

Bibliography

Chapter 1

Broedner, P., S. Kinkel, and G. Lay. "Productivity Effects of Outsourcing." *International Journal of Operations and Production Management* 29, no. 2 (2009): 165.

Hounshell, D. A. *From the American System to Mass Production 1800–1932: The Development of Manufacturing.* Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1985.

Lewis, William W. *The Power of Productivity.* Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2005.

Malone, T. W., R J. Laubacher, and T. Johns, "The Age of Hyperspecialization." *Harvard Business* 89, no. 7 (July–August 2011): 94–103.

Maroto, A., and L. Rubalcaba. "Services Productivity Revisited." *The Service Industries Journal* 28, no. 3 (April 2008): 375.

McLaughlin, Patrick. "Measuring Productivity." *Management Services* 58, no. 4 (Winter 2014): 69–75.

Sahay, B. S. "Multi-factor Productivity Measurement Model for Service Organization." *International Journal of Productivity and Performance Management* 54, no. 1–2 (2005): 45–61.

San, G., T. Huang, and L. Huang. "Does Labor Quality Matter on Productivity Growth?" *Total Quality Management and Business Excellence* 19, no. 10 (October 2008): 1043.

Sprague, Linda G. "Evolution of the Field of Operations Management." *Journal of Operations Management* 25, no. 2 (March 2007): 257–276.

Tangen, S. "Demystifying Productivity and Performance." *International Journal of Productivity and Performance Measurement* 54, no. 1–2 (2005): 72–85.

Taylor, F. W. *The Principles of Scientific Management.* New York: Harper & Brothers, 1911.

van Biema, Michael, and Bruce Greenwald. "Managing Our Way to Higher Service-Sector Productivity." *Harvard Business Review* 75, no. 4 (July–August 1997): 125–133.

Wren, Daniel A. *The Evolution of Management Thought*. New York: Wiley, 1994.

Chapter 2

Beckman, S. L., and D. B. Rosenfield. *Operations Strategy: Competing in the 21st Century*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2008.

Bravard, J., and R. Morgan. *Smarter Outsourcing*. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson, 2006.

Crotts, J. C., D. R. Dickson, and R. C. Ford. "Aligning Organizational Processes with Mission." *Academy of Management Executive* 19, no. 3 (August 2005): 92–106.

Flynn, B. B., R. G. Schroeder, and E. J. Flynn. "World Class Manufacturing." *Journal of Operations Management* 17, no. 3 (March 1999): 287–307.

Greenwald, Bruce C., and Judd Kahn. *Globalization: The Irrational Fear That Someone in China Will Take Your Job.* New York: Wiley, 2009.

Gordon, John Steel. *An Empire of Wealth: the Epic History of American Economic Power*. New York: HarperCollins, 2005.

Hirschheim, R., A. Heinzl, and J. Dibbern. *Information Systems Outsourcing*. Secaucus, NJ: Springer, 2009.

Lee, Hau L., and Chung-Yee Lee. *Building Supply Chain Excellence in Emerging Economies*. Secaucus, NJ: Springer, 2007.

Kaplan, Robert S., and David P. Norton. *Strategy Maps*. Boston: Harvard Business School Publishing, 2003.

Kathuria, R., M. P. Joshi, and S. Dellande. "International Growth Strategies of Service and Manufacturing Firms." *International Journal of Operations and Production Management* 28, no. 10 (2008): 968.

Midler, Paul. *Poorly Made in China: An Insider's Account of the Tactics Behind China's Production Game*. New York: Wiley, 2009.

Porter, Michael, and Nicolaj Siggelkow. "Contextuality within Activity Systems and Sustainability of Competitive Advantage." *Academy of Management Perspectives* 22, no. 2 (May 2008): 72–74.

Rothfeder, Jeffry. *Driving Honda: Inside the World's Most Innovative Car Company.* New York: Penguin Group, 2014.

Rudberg, Martin, and B. M. West. "Global Operations Strategy." *Omega* 36, no. 1 (February 2008): 129.

Skinner, Wickham. "Manufacturing Strategy: The Story of Its Evolution." *Journal of Operations Management* 25, no. 2 (March 2007): 366–372.

Slack, Nigel, and Mike Lewis. *Operation Strategy*, 3rd ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2011.

Wolf, Martin. *Why Globalization Works.* London: Yale University Press, 2004.

Chapter 3

Balakrishnan, R., B. Render, and R. M. Stair. *Managerial Decision Modeling with Spreadsheets*, 3rd ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2012.

Cleland, D. L., and L. R. Ireland. *Project Management*, 6th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill/Irwin, 2010.

Gray, C. L., and E. W. Larson. *Project Management with MS Project.* New York: McGraw-Hill/Irwin, 2008.

Helgadottir, Hilder. "The Ethical Dimension of Project Management." *International Journal of Project Management* 26, no. 7 (October 2008): 781.

Karlos, A., et al. "Foundations of Project Management." *International Journal of Project Management* 27, no. 1 (January 2009): 39.

Kerzner, H. *Project Management Case Studies*, 3rd ed. New York: Wiley, 2009.

Matta, N. F., and R. N. Ashkenas. "Why Good Projects Fail Anyway." *Harvard Business Review* 85, no. 5 (September 2003): 147–152.

Maylor, Harvey. *Project Management*, 5th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2011.

Meredith, J. R., and S. Mantel. *Project Management*, 8th ed. New York: Wiley, 2011.

Oates, David. "Understanding and Solving the Causes of Project Failure." *Knowledge Management Review* 9, no. 5 (May–June 2006): 43.

Render, B., R. M. Stair, and M. Hanna. *Quantitative Analysis for Management*, 11th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2012.

Verzuh, Eric. *The Fast Forward MBA in Project Management.* New York: Wiley, 2008.

Wysocki, R. K. *Effective Project Management,* 6th ed. New York: Wiley, 2012.

Chapter 4

Balakrishnan, R., B. Render, and R. M. Stair. *Managerial Decision Modeling with Spreadsheets*, 3rd ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2012.

Berenson, Mark, Tim Krehbiel, and David Levine. *Basic Business Statistics*, 12th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2012.

Campbell, Omar. "Forecasting in Direct Selling Business: Tupperware's Experience." *The Journal of Business Forecasting* 27, no. 2 (Summer 2008): 56–57.

Diebold, F. X. *Elements of Forecasting*, 6th ed. Cincinnati: South-Western College Publishing, 2013.

Fildes, Robert, and Paul Goodwin. "Against Your Better Judgment? How Organizations Can Improve Their Use of Management Judgment in Forecasting." *Decision Sciences* 37, no. 6 (November–December 2007): 608–614.

Georgoff, D. M., and R. G. Murdick. "Manager's Guide to Forecasting." *Harvard Business Review* 64 (January–February 1986): 148–158.

Gilliland, M., and M. Leonard. "Forecasting Software—The Past and the Future." *The Journal of Business Forecasting* 25, no. 1 (Spring 2006): 71–74.

Hanke, J. E. and D. W. Wichern. *Business Forecasting*, 10th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2012.
Jain, Chaman L. "Benchmarking Forecasting Software and Systems." *The Journal of Business Forecasting* 26, no. 4 (Winter 2007/2008): 68–72.
Onkal, D., M. S. Gonul, and M. Lawrence. "Judgmental Adjustments of Previously Adjusted Forecasts." *Decision Sciences* 39, no. 2 (May 2008): 251–276.
Render, B., R. M. Stair, and M. Hanna. *Quantitative Analysis for Management*, 11th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2012.
Shah, Piyush. "Techniques to Support Better Forecasting." *APICS Magazine* (November/December 2008): 87–88.
Urs, Rajiv. "How to Use a Demand Planning System for Best Forecasting and Planning Results." *The Journal of Business Forecasting* 27, no. 2 (Summer 2008): 60–63.
Wilson, J. H., B. Keating, and J. Galt. *Business Forecasting,* 7th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2012.
Yurklewicz, Jack. "Forecasting an Upward Trend." *OR/MS Today* (June 2012): 90–99.

Chapter 5

Alexy Oliver, P. Criscuelo, and A. Salter. "Managing Unsolicited Ideas for R&D." *California Management Review* 54, no. 3 (Spring 2012): 154–177.
Brown, Bruce, and S.D. Anthony; "How P&G Tripled Its Innovation Success Rate." *Harvard Business Review* 89, no. 6 (June 2011): 102–110.
Buckley, Peter J., and Roger Strange. "The Governance of the Global Factory: Location and Control of World Economic Activity." *Academy of Management Perspectives* 29, no. 2 (May 2015): 275–287.
Camevalli, J. A., and P. A. C. Miguel. "Review, Analysis, and Classification of the Literature on QFD." *International Journal of Production Economics* 114, no. 2 (August 2008): 775.
Ernst, David, and James Bamford. "Your Alliances Are too Stable." *Harvard Business Review* 83, no. 5 (June 2005): 171–179.
Gerwin, Donald. "Coordinating New Product Development in Strategic Alliances." *The Academy of Management Review* 29, no. 2 (April 2004): 279–295.
Gwynne, Peter. "Measuring R&D Productivity." *Research Technology Management* 58, no. 1 (Jan/Feb. 2015): 57–60.
Haines, Steven. *Managing Product Management*. New York; McGraw-Hill, 2012.
Krishnan, V., and Karl T. Ulrich. "Product Development Decisions: A Review of the Literature." *Management Science* 47, no. 1 (January 2001): 39–59.
Loch, C. H., and C. Terwiesch. "Rush and Be Wrong or Wait and Be Late?" *Production and Operations Management* 14, no. 3 (Fall 2005): 369–381.
Miguel, P. A. C., and J. A. Camevalli. "Benchmarking Practices of Quality Function Deployment." *Benchmarking* 15, no. 6 (2008): 695.
Phyper, J. D., and D. MacLean. *Good to Green: Managers' Business Risks and Opportunities in an Age of Environmental Awareness.* New York: Wiley, 2009.
Pisano, Gary P., and Roberto Verganti. "Which Kind of Collaboration Is Right for You?" *Harvard Business Review* 86, no. 12 (December 2008):116–124.
Reeves, Martin, and Mike Deimler. "Adaptability: The New Competitive Advantage." *Harvard Business Review* 90, no. 7 (July–August 2011): 173–179.
Saaksvuori, A., and A. Immonen. *Product Lifecycle Management.* Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 2004.
Seider, Warren D., et al. *Product and Process Design Principles,* 3rd. ed. New York: Wiley, 2008.
Ulrich, K., and S. Eppinger. *Product Design and Development*, 4th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2008.

Supplement 5

Ambec, Stefan, and Paul Lanoie. "Does It Pay to Be Green? A Systematic Overview." *Academy of Management Perspectives* 22, no. 4 (November 2008): 51–58.
Banerjee, S. B. "Embedding Sustainability Across the Organization: A Critical Perspective." *Academy of Management, Learning & Education* 10, no. 4 (December 2011): 757–769.
Epstein, Marc J. *Making Sustainability Work.* San Francisco: Berrett-Koehler Publisher, 2008.
Haugh, Helen M., and A. Talwar. "How Do Corporations Embed Sustainability Across the Organization?" *Academy of Management, Learning & Education* 9, no. 3 (September 2010): 422–434.
Laszlo, Chris. *Sustainable Value*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 2008.
Laszlo, Chris, and N. Zhexembayeva. *Embedded Sustainability.* Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 2011.
Nidumolu, Ram, C. K. Prahalad, and M. R. Rangaswami. "Why Sustainability Is Now the Key Driver of Innovation." *Harvard Business Review* 87, no. 9 (September 2009): 94–102.
Stoner, J. A. F., and C. Wankel (Ed). *Global Sustainability Initiatives.* Charlotte, NC: Information Age Publishing, 2008.

Chapter 6

Besterfield, Dale H. *Quality Control*, 8th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2009.
Brown, Mark G. *Baldrige Award Winning Quality*, 19th ed. University Park, IL: Productivity Press, 2010.
Crosby, P. B. *Quality Is Still Free*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1996.
Evans, J. R., and W. M. Lindsay. *Managing for Quality and Performance Excellence*, 8th ed. Mason, OH: Thomson-South-Western, 2012.
Feigenbaum, A. V. "Raising the Bar." *Quality Progress* 41, no. 7 (July 2008): 60–66.
Foster, Thomas. *Managing Quality,* 4th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson/Prentice Hall, 2010.
Gitlow, Howard S. *A Guide to Lean Six Sigma Management Skills*. University Park, IL: Productivity Press, 2009.
Gonzalez-Benito, J., and O. Gonzalez-Benito. "Operations Management Practices Linked to the Adoption of ISO 14001." *International Journal of Production Economics* 113, no. 1 (May 2008): 98.
Gray, John V., Gopesh Anand, and Aleda V. Roth. "The Influence of ISO 9000 Certification on Process Compliance." *Production and Operations Management* 24, no. 3 (March 2015): 407–420.
Gryna, F. M., R. C. H. Chua, and J. A. DeFeo. *Juran's Quality Planning and Analysis for Enterprise Quality*, 5th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2007.
Mitra, Amit. *Fundamentals of Quality Control and Improvement.* New York: Wiley, 2009.
Pande, P. S., R. P. Neuman, R. R. Cavanagh. *What Is Design for Six Sigma?* New York: McGraw-Hill, 2005.
Petroski, Henry. *To Forgive Design: Understanding Failure.* Cambridge, MA: Belknap, 2012.
Schroeder, Roger G., et al. "Six Sigma: Definition and Underlying Theory." *Journal of Operations Management* 26, no. 4 (2008): 574–592.
Stewart, D. M. "Piecing Together Service Quality: A Framework for Robust Service." *Production and Operations Management* (Summer 2003): 284–303.
Summers, Donna. *Quality Management,* 2nd ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2009.
Yan, Xinghao, Hui Zhao, and Kwei Tang. "Requirement or Promise? An Analysis of the First-Mover Advantage in Quality Contracting." *Production and Operations Management* 24, no. 6 (June 2015): 955–971.

Supplement 6

Bakir, S. T. "A Quality Control Chart for Work Performance Appraisal." *Quality Engineering* 17, no. 3 (2005): 467.
Besterfield, Dale H. *Quality Control*, 8th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2009.
Elg, M., J. Olsson, and J. J. Dahlgaard. "Implementing Statistical Process Control." *The International Journal of Quality and Reliability Management* 25, no. 6 (2008): 583.
Goetsch, David L., and Stanley B. Davis. *Quality Management*, 6th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2009.
Gryna, F. M., R. C. H. Chua, and J. A. DeFeo. *Juran's Quality Planning and Analysis*, 5th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2007.

Lin, H., and G. Sheen. "Practical Implementation of the Capability Index C_{pk} Based on Control Chart Data." *Quality Engineering* 17, no. 3 (2005): 409.
Matthes, N., et al. "Statistical Process Control for Hospitals." *Quality Management in Health Care* 16, no. 3 (July–September 2007): 243.
Mitra, Amit. *Fundamentals of Quality Control and Improvement*, 3rd ed. New York: Wiley, 2008.
Montgomery, D. C., C. L. Jennings, and M. E. Pfund. *Managing, Controlling, and Improving Quality.* New York: Wiley, 2011.
Roth, H. P. "How SPC Can Help Cut Costs." *Journal of Corporate Accounting and Finance* 16, no. 3 (March–April 2005): 59–68.
Sower, V. E. *Essentials of Quality.* New York: Wiley, 2011.
Summers, Donna. *Quality Management*, 2nd ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2009.

Chapter 7

Davenport, T. H. "The Coming Commoditization of Processes." *Harvard Business Review* 83, no. 6 (June 2005): 139–146.
Debo, L. G., L. B. Toktay, and L. N. Van Wassenhove. "Market Segmentation and Product Technology Selection for Remanufacturable Products." *Management Science* 51, no. 8 (August 2005): 1193–1205.
Duray, R., P. T. Ward, G. W. Milligan, and W. L. Berry. "Approaches to Mass Customization: Configurations and Empirical Validation." *Journal of Operations Management* 18, no. 6 (November 2000): 643–663.
Duray, R. "Mass Customization Origins: Mass or Custom Manufacturing." *International Journal of Operations and Production Management* 22, no. 3 (2002): 352–366.
Hall, Joseph M., and M. Eric Johnson. "When Should a Process Be Art, Not Science?" *Harvard Business Review* 87, no. 3 (March 2009): 96–103.
Hegde, V. G., et al. "Customization: Impact on Product and Process Performance." *Production and Operations Management* 14, no. 4 (Winter 2005): 426–437.
Inderfurth, Karl, I. M. Langella. "An Approach for Solving Disassembly-to-order Problems under Stochastic Yields." In *Logistik Management.* Heidelberg: Physica, 2004: 347–369.
Moultrie, James, and Anja M. Maier. "A Simplified Approach to Design for Assembly." *Journal of Engineering Design* 25, no. 1–3 (March 2014): 82–101.
Rugtusanatham, M. Johnny, and Fabrizio Salvador. "From Mass Production to Mass Customization." *Production and Operations Management* 17, no. 3 (May–June 2008): 423–434.
Swamidass, Paul M. *Innovations in Competitive Manufacturing*. Dordrecht, NL: Kluwer, 2000.
Welborn, Cliff. "Mass Customization." *OR/MS Today* (December 2007): 76–80.
Zhang, M., Y. Qi, and X. Zhao. "The Impact of Mass Customization Practices on Performance." *International Journal of Mass Customization* 4, no. 1–2 (2011): 82–104.
Zipkin, Paul. "The Limits of Mass Customization." *MIT Sloan Management Review* 40, no. 1 (Spring 2001): 119–126.

Supplement 7

Anderson, Edward James, and Shu-Jung Sunny Yang. "The Timing of Capacity Investment with Lead Times: When Do Firms Act in Unison?" *Production and Operations Management* 24, no. 1 (January 2015): 59–79.
Anupindi, Ravi, S. Deshmukh, and S. Chopra. *Managing Business Process Flows*, 2nd ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall (2007).
Bowers, John, et al. "Modeling Outpatient Capacity for a Diagnosis and Treatment Center." *Health Care Management Science* 8, no. 3 (August 2005): 243.
Chambers, Chester, Eli M. Snir, and Asad Ata. "The Use of Flexible Manufacturing Capacity in Pharmaceutical Product Introductions." *Decision Sciences* 40, no. 2 (May 2009): 281–306.
Chen, Wen-Chih, and C. Chien. "Evaluating Capacity Pooling Strategy in Semiconductor Manufacturing: A Productivity Perspective Study." *International Journal of Production Research* 49, no 12 (June 2011): 3635–3652.
Goldratt, Eliyaha. *The Choice*. Great Barrington, MA: North River Press (2009).
Goodale, John C., Rohit Verma, and Madeleine E. Pullman. "A Market Utility-Based Model for Capacity Scheduling in Mass Services." *Production and Operations Management* 12, no. 2 (Summer 2003): 203–223.
Gupta, M. C., and L. H. Boyd. "Theory of Constraints: A Theory for Operations Management." *International Journal of Operations Management* 28, no. 10 (2008): 1029.
Jonsson, Patrik, and Stig-Arne Mattsson. "Use and Applicability of Capacity Planning Methods." *Production and Inventory Management Journal* (3rd/4th Quarter 2002): 127–133.
Lee, Eva K., et al. "Transforming Hospital Emergency Department Workflow and Patient Care." *Interfaces* 45, no. 1 (January–February 2015): 96–120.
Li, Shanling, and L. Wang. "Outsourcing and Capacity Planning in an Uncertain Global Environment." *European Journal of Operational Research* 207, no. 1 (November 2010): 169–l41.
May, Jerrold H., W. E. Spangler, D. P. Strum, and L. G. Vargas. "The Surgical Scheduling Problem: Current Research and Future Opportunities." *Production & Operations Management* 20, no. 3 (May–June 2011): 430–443.
Mincsovics, G. Z., and N. P. Dellaert. "Workload-Dependent Capacity Control in Production-to-Order Systems." *IIE Transactions,* 41, no. 10 (October 2009): 891–903.
Roy, Anjan. "Strategic Positioning and Capacity Utilization: Factors in Planning for Profitable Growth in Banking." *Journal of Performance Management* 23, no. 3 (November 2010): 61.
Tanrisever, Fehmi, D. Morrice, and D. Morton. "Managing Capacity Flexibility in Make-to-Order Production Environments." *European Journal of Operational Research* 216, no. 2 (January 2012): 372–383.
Tibben-Lembke, Ronald S. "Theory of Constraints at UniCo." *International Journal of Production Research* 47, no. 7 (January 2009): 1815.
Watson, Kevin J., John H. Blackstone, and Stanley C. Gardiner. "The Evolution of a Management Philosophy: The Theory of Constraints." *Journal of Operations Management* 25, no. 2 (March 2007): 425–440.

Chapter 8

Ballou, Ronald H. *Business Logistics Management*, 5th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2004.
Bartness, A. D. "The Plant Location Puzzle." *Harvard Business Review* 72, no. 2 (March–April 1994).
Denton, B. "Decision Analysis, Location Models, and Scheduling Problems." *Interfaces* 30, no. 3 (May–June 2005): 300–301.
Drezner, Z. *Facility Location: Applications and Theory*. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 2002.
Florida, R. *The Flight of the Creative Class: The New Global Competition for Talent.* New York: HarperCollins, 2005.
Klamroth, K. *Single Facility Location Problems.* Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 2002.
Kennedy, M. *Introducing Geographic Information Systems with ArcGIS.* New York: Wiley, 2006.
Mentzer, John T. "Seven Keys to Facility Location." *Supply Chain Management Review* 12, no. 5 (May 2008): 63.
Partovi, F. Y. "An Analytic Model for Locating Facilities Strategically." *Omega* 34, no. 1 (January 2006): 79.
Porter, Michael E., and Scott Stern. "Innovation: Location Matters." *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Summer 2001): 66–74.
Render, B., R. M. Stair, and M. Hanna. *Quantitative Analysis for Management*, 11th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2012.
Snyder, L. V. "Facility Location Under Uncertainty." *IIE Transactions* 38, no. 7 (July 2006): 585.
Tallman, Stephen, et al. "Knowledge, Clusters, and Competitive Advantage." *The Academy of Management Review* 29, no. 2 (April 2004): 296–309.
White, G. "Location, Location, Location." *Nation's Restaurant News* 42, no. 27 (July 14, 2008): S10–S11.

Chapter 9

Aghazadeh, S. M., S. Hafeznezami, L. Najjar, and Z. Hug. "The Influence of Work-Cells and Facility Layout on Manufacturing Efficiency." *Journal of Facilities Management* 9, no. 3 (2011): 251–262.
Birchfield, J. C., and J. Birchfield. *Design and Layout of Foodservice Facilities*, 3rd ed. New York, Wiley & Sons, 2007.

Francis, R. L., L. F. McGinnis, and J. A. White. *Facility Layout and Location*, 3rd ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1998.
Heragu, S. S. *Facilities Design,* 3rd ed. New York: CRC Press, 2008.
Heyer, N., and U. Wemmerlöv. *Reorganizing the Factory: Competing through Cellular Manufacturing.* Portland, OR: Productivity Press, 2002.
Johnson, Alan. "Getting the Right Factory Layout." *Manufacturer's Monthly* (July 2008): 54.
Kator, C. "Crossdocking on the Rise." *Modern Materials Handling* 63, no. 6 (June 2008): 53.
Larson, S. "Extreme Makover—OR Edition." *Nursing Management* (November 2005): 64.
Quillien, Jenny. *Clever Digs: How Workspaces Can Enable Thought*. Ames, Iowa: Culicidae Press, LLC., 2012.
Roodbergen, K. J., and I. F. A. Vis. "A Model for Warehouse Layout." *IIE Transactions* 38, no. 10 (October 2006): 837–849.
Stanowy, A. "Evolutionary Strategy for Manufacturing Cell Design." *Omega* 34, no. 1 (January 2006): 39.
Taghavi, A., and A. Murat. "A Heuristic Procedure for the Integrated Facility Layout Design and Flow Assignment Problem." *Computers & Industrial Engineering* 61, no. 1 (August 2011): 93–101.
Tompkins, James A. *Facility Planning*, 4th ed. New York: Wiley, 2009.
Upton, David. "What Really Makes Factories Flexible?" *Harvard Business Review* 73, no. 4 (July–August 1995): 112–122.
Zhao, T., and C. L. Tseng. "Flexible Facility Interior Layout." *The Journal of the Operational Research Society* 58, no. 6 (June 2007): 767–778.

Chapter 10

Aft, Larry, and Neil Schmeidler. "Work Measurement Practices." *Industrial Engineer* 35, no. 11 (November 2003): 82.
Barnes, R. M. *Motion and Time Study, Design and Measurement of Work*, 7th ed. New York: Wiley, 1980.
Bridger, R. S. *Introduction to Ergonomics*, 3rd ed. New York: CRC Press, 2008.
De Jong, A., K. De Ruyter, and J. Lemmink. "Service Climate in Self-Managing Teams." *The Journal of Management Studies* 42, no. 8 (December 2005): 1593.
Freivalds, Andris, and B. W. Niebel. *Methods, Standards, and Work Design*, 12th ed. New York: Irwin/McGraw-Hill, 2009.
Huselid, Mark A., Richard W. Beatty, and Brian E. Becker. "'A Players' or 'A Positions'? The Strategic Logic of Workforce Management." *Harvard Business Review* (December 2005): 148–155.
Konz, S., and Steven Johnson. *Work Design: Industrial Ergonomics*, 7th ed. Scottsdale, AZ: Holcomb Hathaway, 2007.
Muthusamy, S. K., J. V. Wheeler, and B. L. Simmons. "Self-Managing Work Teams." *Organization Development Journal* 23, no. 3 (Fall 2005): 91–104.
Pfeffer, Jeffrey. "Producing Sustainable Competitive Advantage Through the Effective Management of People." *Academy of Management Executive* 19, no. 4 (2005): 133.
Salvendy, G., ed. *Handbook of Human Factors and Ergonomics*, 3rd ed. New York: Wiley, 2006.
Shahrokh, Shahraki, and N. A. Bakar. "Relationship Between Human Factors Engineering and Productivity." *Interdisciplinary Journal of Contemporary Research in Business* 3, no. 3 (July 2011): 744–750.
Sonne, Michael, D. L. Villalta, and D. M. Andrews. "Development and Evaluation of an Office Ergonomic Risk Check List." *Applied Ergonomics* 43, no. 1 (January 2012): 136–138.
Tolo, B. "21st-Century Stopwatch." *Industrial Engineer* 37, no. 7 (July 2005): 72–75.
Village, Judy, Patrick W. Neumann. "Designing for Human Factors." *Industrial Engineer: IE* 46, no. 11 (November 2014): 74–79.
Walsh, Ellen. "Get Results with Workload Management." *Nursing Management* (October 2003): 54.
White, Catherine M. "Proactive Ergonomics." *Professional Safety* 60, no. 6 (June 2015): 107–111.

Chapter 11

Autry, Chad W., Thomas J. Goldsby, and John E. Bell. *Global Macrotrends and Their Impact on Supply Chain Management*. Upper Saddle River, NJ: FT Press, 2013.
Blackburn, Joseph, and Gary Scudder. "Supply Chain Strategies for Perishable Products." *Production and Operations Management* 18, no. 2 (March–April 2009): 167–175.
Boyer, Kenneth K., and G. Tomas M. Hult. "Extending the Supply Chain: Integrating Operations and Marketing in the Online Grocery Industry." *Journal of Operations Management* 23, no. 6 (September 2005): 680–699.
Chopra, Sunil, and Peter Meindl. *Supply Chain Management*, 4th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall (2010).
Crandall, Richard E. "The Next Wave of Sourcing." *APICS* 24, no. 3 (May/June 2014): 64–66.
Crook, T. Russell, and James G. Combs. "Sources and Consequences of Bargaining Power in Supply Chains." *Journal of Operations Management* 25, no. 2 (March 2007): 584–593.
Hu, J., and C. L. Munson. "Speed versus Reliability Trade-offs in Supplier Selection." *International Journal Procurement Management* 1, no. 1/2 (2007): 276–297.
Kersten, Wolfgang, and Thorsten Blecker (eds.). *Managing Risk in Supply Chains*. Berlin: Erich Schmidt Verlag GmbH & Co. (2006).
Kreipl, Stephan, and Michael Pinedo. "Planning and Scheduling in Supply Chains." *Production and Operations Management* 13, no. 1 (Spring 2004): 115–130.
Linton, J. D., R. Klassen, and V. Jayaraman. "Sustainable Supply Chains: An Introduction." *Journal of Operations Management* 25, no. 6 (November, 2007): 1075–1082.
Monczka, R. M., R. B. Handfield, L. C. Gianipero, and J. L. Patterson. *Purchasing and Supply Chain Management*, 5th ed. Mason, OH: Cengage, 2012.
Munson, Chuck (ed.). *The Supply Chain Management Casebook: Comprehensive Coverage and Best Practices in SCM*. Upper Saddle River, NJ: FT Press, 2013.
Narayanan, Sriram, Ann S. Marucheck, and Robert B. Handfield. "Electronic Data Interchange: Research Review and Future Directions." *Decisions Sciences* 40, no. 1 (February 2009): 159–201.
Paine, Lincoln. *The Sea and Civilization.* New York: Knopf, 2013.
Pisano, Gary P., and Roberto Verganti. "Which Kind of Collaboration Is Right for You?" *Harvard Business Review* 86, no. 12 (December, 2008): 116–124.
Sinha, K. K., and E. J. Kohnke. "Health Care Supply Chain Design." *Decision Sciences* 40, no. 2 (May 2009): 235–250.
Stanley, L. L., and V. R. Singhal. "Service Quality Along the Supply Chain." *Journal of Operations Management* 19, no. 3 (May 2001): 325–344.
Wisner, Joel, K. Tan, and G. Keong Leong. *Principles of Supply Chain Management,* 4th ed., Mason, OH: Cengage, 2012.
Yang, Shilei, Charles L. Munson, Bintong Chen, and Chunming Shi. "Coordinated Contracts for Supply Chains that Market with Mail-In Rebates and Retailer Promotions." *Journal of the Operational Research Society* (2015), DOI: JORS.2014.127.

Supplement 11

Berger, Paul D., Arthur Gerstenfeld, and Amy Z. Zeng. "How Many Suppliers Are Best? A Decision-Analysis Approach." *Omega* 32, no. 1 (February 2004): 47–53.
Chopra, Sunil, and Peter Meindl. *Supply Chain Management,* 4th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2010.
Disney, Stephen M., and Marc R. Lambrecht. "On Replenishment Rules, Forecasting, and the Bullwhip Effect in Supply Chains." *Foundations and Trends in Technology, Information and Operations Management* 2, no. 1 (2007), 39–118.
Lee, Chieh, and Charles L. Munson. "A Predictive Global Sensitivity Analysis Approach to Monitoring and Modifying Operational Hedging Positions." *International Journal of Integrated Supply Management* 9, no. 3 (2015): 216–239.
Roodbergen, Kees Jan, Iris FA Vis, and G. Don Taylor Jr. "Simultaneous Determination of Warehouse Layout and Control Policies." *International Journal of Production Research* 53, no. 11 (2015): 3306–3326.
Wang, Phanich P., S. Kara, and B. Kayis. "Analysis of the Bullwhip Effect in Multi-product, Multi-stage Supply Chain Systems—A Simulation Approach." *International Journal of Production Research* 48, no. 15 (August 2010): 4501–4517.

Chapter 12

Abernathy, Frederick H., et al. "Control Your Inventory in a World of Lean Retailing." *Harvard Business Review* 78, no. 6 (November–December 2000): 207–214.

Arnold, J. R., S. N. Chapman, and L. M. Clive. *Introduction to Materials Management*, 6th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2008.

Baron, Opher, O. Derman, and D. Perry. "Shelf Space Management When Demand Depends on the Inventory Level." *Production and Operations Management* 20, no. 5 (September–October 2011): 752–764.

Burt, D. N., S. Petcavage, and R. Pinkerton. *Supply Management*, 8th ed. Burr Ridge, IL: Irwin/McGraw, 2010.

Chapman, Stephen. *Fundamentals of Production Planning and Control*. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2006.

Chopra, Sunil, Gilles Reinhardt, and Maqbool Dada. "The Effect of Lead Time Uncertainty on Safety Stocks." *Decision Sciences* 35, no. 1 (Winter 2004): 39–62.

Doğru, Mustafa K., and Ulaş Özen. "Tactical Inventory Planning at Alcatel-Lucent's Repair and Exchange Services." *Interfaces* 45, no. 3 (May–June 2015): 266–280.

Geismar, H. N., M. Dawande, and C. Sriskandarajah. "Pool-Point Distribution of Zero-Inventory Products." *Production and Operations Management* 20, no. 5 (September–October 2011): 775–791.

Harris, Chris and Thomas Parker. "Portion Control." *APICS* 24, no. 5 (September/October 2014): 64–66.

Keren, Baruch. "The Single Period Inventory Model." *Omega* 37, no. 4 (August 2009): 839.

Lee, H., and O. Ozer. "Unlocking the Value of RFID." *Production and Operations Management* 16, no. 1 (2007): 78–102.

Liu, X., and Z. Lian. "Cost-effective Inventory Control in a Value-added Manufacturing System." *European Journal of Operational Research* 196, no. 2 (July 2009): 572.

McDonald, Stan C. *Materials Management*. New York: Wiley, 2009.

Munson, Charles L., and Jonathan Jackson. "Quantity Discounts: An Overview and Practical Guide for Buyers and Sellers." *Foundations and Trends in Technology, Information and Operations Management* 8, nos. 1–2 (2014): 39–168.

Render, B., R. M. Stair, and M. Hanna. *Quantitative Analysis for Management*, 11th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2012.

Rubin, Paul A., and W. C. Benton. "A Generalized Framework for Quantity Discount Pricing Schedules." *Decision Sciences* 34, no. 1 (Winter 2003): 211–226.

Sethi, Suresh P. "i3: Incomplete Inventory Models." *Decision Line* (October 2010): 54–57.

Stein, Andrew C. "Warehouse Measurement and Control." *APICS* 24, no. 3 (May/June 2014): 80–83.

Teunter, Ruud H., M. Z. Babai, and A. A. Syntetos. "ABC Classification: Service Levels and Inventory Cost." *Production and Operations Management* 19, no. 3 (May–June 2010): 381–390.

Vollmann, T. E., W. L. Berry, D. C. Whybark, and F. R. Jacobs. *Manufacturing Planning and Control for Supply Chain Management*, 5th ed. Burr Ridge, IL: Irwin/McGraw, 2005.

Witt, Clyde E. "Mobile Warehouse Supplies U.S. Marines in Iraq." *Material Handling Management* 60, no. 8 (August 2005): 62–63.

Chapter 13

APICS. *2011 Sales and Operations Planning Practices and Challenges.* Chicago: APICS, 2011.

Bilginer, Özlem, and Feryal Erhun. "Production and Sales Planning in Capacitated New Product Introductions." *Production and Operations Management* 24, no. 1 (January 2015): 80–91.

Buxey, G. "Aggregate Planning for Seasonal Demand." *International Journal of Operations & Production Management* 25, no. 11 (2005): 1083–1100.

Chen, Fangruo. "Salesforce Initiative, Market Information, and Production/Inventory Planning." *Management Science* 51, no. 1 (January 2005): 98–113.

Chen, Ming, and Zhi-Long Chen. "Recent Developments in Dynamic Pricing Research: Multiple Products, Competition, and Limited Demand Information." *Production and Operations Management* 24, no. 5 (May 2015): 742–769.

Jacobs, F. R., W. L. Berry, D. C. Whybark, and T. E. Vollmann. *Manufacturing Planning and Control for Supply Chain Management*, 6th ed. Burr Ridge, IL: Irwin, 2011.

Kin, S., and S. Yoo. "The Combined Manpower Planning Strategies by Aggregate Planning for the Service Division of Vending Machines." *Journal of the Operational Research Society* 62 (November 2011).

Kimes, S. E., and G. M. Thompson. "Restaurant Revenue Management at Chevy's." *Decision Sciences* 35, no. 3 (Summer 2004): 409–431.

Metters, R., K. King-Metters, M. Pullman, and S. Walton. *Successful Service Operations Management*. 2nd ed. Mason, OH: Thomson-South-Western, 2006.

Metters, Richard, et al. "The 'Killer Application' of Revenue Management: Harrah's Cherokee Casino and Hotel." *Interfaces* 38, no. 3 (May–June 2008): 199–216.

Mukhopadhyay, S., S. Samaddar, and G. Colville. "Improving Revenue Management Decision Making for Airlines." *Decision Science* 38, no. 2 (May 2007): 347–365.

Sillekens, Thomas, A. Koberstein, and L. Suhl, "Aggregate Production Planning in the Automotive Industry with Special Consideration of Workforce Flexibility." *International Journal of Production Research* 49, no. 17 (September 2011): 5055–5078.

Silver, E. A., D. F. Pyke, and R. Peterson. *Inventory Management and Production Planning and Scheduling*. New York: Wiley, 1998.

Chapter 14

Barba-Gutierrez, Y., B. Adenso-Diaz, and S. M. Gupta. "Lot Sizing in Reverse MRP for Scheduling Disassembly." *International Journal of Production Economics* 111, no. 2 (February 2008): 779.

Bell, Steve. "Time Fence Secrets." *APICS* 16, no. 4 (April 2006): 82–86.

Bolander, Steven, and Sam G. Taylor. "Scheduling Techniques: A Comparison of Logic." *Production and Inventory Management Journal* 41, no. 1 (1st Quarter 2000): 39–43.

Crandall, Richard E. "The Epic Life of ERP." *APICS* 16, no. 2 (February 2006): 55–57.

De Mathis J. J. "An Economic Lot-Sizing Technique: The Part-Period Algorithms." *IBM Systems Jonmal* 7 (1968): 68–76.

Diehl Gregory W., and A. J. Armstrong "Making MRP Work." *Industrial Engineer* 43, no. 11 (November 2011): 73–78.

Kanet, J., and V. Sridharan. "The Value of Using Scheduling Information in Planning Material Requirements." *Decision Sciences* 29, no. 2 (Spring 1998): 517–536.

Krupp, James A. G. "Integrating Kanban and MRP to Reduce Lead Time." *Production and Inventory Management Journal* 43, no. 3–4 (3rd/4th quarter 2002): 116–120.

Louly, Mohamed-Aly, and A. Dolgui. "Optimal Time Phasing and Periodicity for MRP with POQ Policy." *International Journal of Production Economics* 131, no. 1 (May 2011): 114.

Norris, G. *E-Business & ERP.* New York: Wiley, 2005.

O' Sullivan, Jill, and Gene Caiola. *Enterprise Resource Planning,* 2nd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2008.

Segerstedt, A. "Master Production Scheduling and a Comparison of MRP and Cover-Time Planning." *International Journal of Production Research* 44, no. 18–19 (September 2006): 3585.

Steger-Jensen, Kenn, H. Hvolby, P. Nielsen, and I. Nielson. "Advanced Planning and Scheduling Technology." *Production Planning and Control* 22, no. 8 (December 2011): 838–846.

Summer, M. *Enterprise Resource Planning.* Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2005.

Tian, Feng, and Sean Xin Xu. "How do Enterprise Resource Planning Systems Affect Firm Risk? Post-Implementation Impact." *MIS Quarterly* 39, no. 1 (March 2015): 77–98.

Turbide, Dave. "New-Fashioned MRP." *APICS* 24, no. 3 (July/August 2015): 78–82.

Wagner, H. M., and T. M. Whitin. "Dynamic Version of the Economic Lot Size Model." *Management Science* 5, no. 1 (1958): 127–134.

Wu, Jen-Hur, et al. "Using Multiple Variables Decision-Making Analysis for ERP Selection." *International Journal of Manufacturing Technology and Management* 18, no. 2 (2009): 266.

Chapter 15

Baker, Kenneth A., and Dan Trietsch. *Principles of Sequencing and Scheduling.* New York: Wiley, 2009.

Cayirli, Tugba, and Emre Veral. "Outpatient Scheduling in Health Care: A Review of Literature." *Production and Operations Management* 12, no. 4 (Winter 2003): 557–587.

Chapman, Stephen. *Fundamentals of Production Planning and Control.* Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2006.

Deng, Honghui, Q. Wang, G. K. Leong, and S. X. Sun. "Usage of Opportunity Cost to Maximize Performance in Revenue Management." *Decision Sciences* 38, no. 4 (November 2008): 775–796.

Dietrich, Brenda, G. A. Paleologo, and L. Wynter. "Revenue Management in Business Services." *Production and Operations Management* 17, no. 4 (July–August 2008): 513–518.

Farmer, Adam, Jeffrey S. Smith, and Luke T. Miller. "Scheduling Umpire Crews for Professional Tennis Tournaments." *Interfaces* 37, no. 2 (March–April 2007): 225–234.

Kellogg, Deborah L., and Steven Walczak. "Nurse Scheduling." *Interfaces* 37, no. 4 (July–August 2007): 393–407.

Lopez, P., and F. Roubellat. *Production Scheduling*. New York: Wiley, 2008.

Mondschein, S. V., and G. Y. Weintraub. "Appointment Policies in Service Operations." *Production and Operations Management* 12, no. 2 (Summer 2003): 304–324.

Morton, Thomas E., and David W. Pentico. *Heuristic Scheduling Systems*. New York: Wiley, 1993.

Pinedo, M. *Scheduling: Theory, Algorithms, and Systems*, 2nd ed. Upper Saddle River, N.J.: Prentice Hall, 2002.

Plenert, Gerhard, and Bill Kirchmier. *Finite Capacity Scheduling.* New York: Wiley, 2000.

Render, B., R. M. Stair, and M. Hanna. *Quantitative Analysis for Management*, 11th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2012.

Robidoux, L., and P. Donnelly. "Automated Employee Scheduling." *Nursing Management* 42, no. 12 (December 2011): 79–81.

Veeraraghavan, S., and R. Vaidyanathan. "Measuring Seat Value in Stadiums and Theatres." *Production and Operations Management* 21, no. 1 (January–February 2012): 87–106.

Chapter 16

Black, I. T., and D. T. Phillips. "The Lean to Green Evolution." *Industrial Engineer* 42, no. 6 (June 2010): 84–89.

Flinchbauh, Jamie. *The Hitchhiker's Guide to Lean.* Dearborn, MI: Society of Manufacturing Engineers, 2006.

Graban, Mark. *Lean Hospitals.* 2nd ed. New York: CRC Press, 2012.

Hall, Robert W. "'Lean' and the Toyota Production System." *Target* 20, no. 3 (3rd Issue 2004): 60–65.

Keyte, Beau, and Drew Locher. *The Complete Lean Enterprise*. University Park, IL: Productivity Press, 2004.

Morgan, James M., and Jeffrey K. Liker. *The Toyota Product Development System.* New York: Productivity Press, 2007.

Nelson-Peterson, Dana L., and Carol J. Leppa, "Creating an Environment of Caring Using Lean Principles of the Virginia Mason Production System." *Journal of Nursing Administration* 37 (2007): 327.

Parks, Charles M. "The Bare Necessities of Lean." *Industrial Engineer* 35, no. 8 (August 2003): 77.

Radnor, Zoe J., M. Holweg, and J. Waring, "Lean in Healthcare: The Unfilled Promise?" *Social Science & Medicine* 74, no. 3 (February 2012): 402–409.

Sayre, Kim. "A Lean Introduction to Sustainability." *Industrial Engineer* 40, no. 9 (September 2008): 72.

Schonberger, Richard J. "Lean Extended." *Industrial Engineer* (December 2005): 64–69.

van Veen-Dirks, Paula. "Management Control and the Production Environment." *International Journal of Production Economics* 93 (January 8, 2005): 301.

Womack, James P., and Daniel T. Jones. "Lean Consumption." *Harvard Business Review* 83 (March 2005): 96–106.

Womack, James P., and Daniel T. Jones. *Lean Solutions: How Companies and Customers Can Create Value and Wealth Together.* New York: The Free Press, 2005.

Chapter 17

Ait-Kadi, D., J. B. Menge, and H. Kane. "Resource Assignment Model in Maintenance Activities Scheduling." *International Journal of Production Research* 49, no. 22 (November 2011): 6677–6689.

Bauer, Eric, X. Zhang, and D. A. Kimber. *Practical System Reliability.* New York: Wiley, 2009.

Blank, Ronald. *The Basics of Reliability*. University Park, IL: Productivity Press, 2004.

Finigen, Tim, and Jim Humphries. "Maintenance Gets Lean." *IE Industrial Systems* 38, no. 10 (October 2006): 64–69.

Phillippi, Brian, "3 Keys to Predictive Maintenance Success." *Flow Control* 21, no. 5 (May 2015): 45–46.

Rahman, Anisur, "Maintenance Contract Model for Complex Asset/Equipment." *International Journal of Reliability, Quality, & Safety Engineering* 21, no. 1 (February 2014): 39–49.

Stephens, M. P. *Productivity and Reliability-Based Maintenance Management.* Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2004.

Weil, Marty. "Beyond Preventive Maintenance." *APICS* 16, no. 4 (April 2006): 78–81.

Name Index

A
Abernathy, Frederick H., 741
Adenso-Diaz, B., 741
Aft, Larry, 740
Aghazadeh, S. M., 739
Ait-Kadi, D., 742
Alexy, Oliver, 738
Ambec, Stefan, 738
Anand, Gopesh, 738
Anderson, Edward James, 739
Anderson, Ross, 742
Andrews, D. M., 740
Anthony, S. D., 738
Anupindi, Ravi, 739
Armstrong, A. J., 741
Arnold, J. R., 741
Ashkenas, R. N., 737
Autry, Chad W., 740

B
Babai, M. Z., 741
Babbage. Charles, 450
Bakar, N. A., 740
Baker, Kenneth A., 742
Bakir, S. T., 738
Balakrishnan, R., 737, 742, 743
Baldridge, Malcolm, 256
Ballou, Ronald H., 739
Bamford, James, 738
Banerjee, S. B., 738
Banks, Jerry, 743
Barba-Gutierrez, Y., 741
Barnes, R. M., 740
Baron, Opher, 741
Bartness, A. D., 739
Bauer, Eric, 742
Beatty, Richard W., 740
Becker, Brian E., 740
Beckman, S. L., 737
Bell, Glenn, 56
Bell, Steve, 741
Benton, W. C., 741
Berenson, Mark, 737
Berger, Paul D., 740
Berry, Leonard L., 271n
Berry, W. L., 739, 741
Besterfield, Dale H., 738
Bilginer, Özlem, 741
Birchfield, J., 739
Birchfield, J. C., 739
Black, I. T., 742
Blackburn, Joseph, 740
Blackstone, John H., 739
Blank, Ronald, 742
Blecker, Thorsten, 740
Bockstette, V., 232n
Boh,W. F., 743
Bolander, Steven, 741
Bowers, John, 739
Boyd, L. H., 739
Boyer, Kenneth K., 740
Bradley, Milton, 531
Bravard, J., 737
Bridger, R. S., 740
Broedner, P., 737
Brown, Bruce, 738
Brown, Mark G., 738
Buboltz, W.C., 451n
Buchannan, Leigh, 742
Buckley, Peter J., 738
Burt, D. N., 741
Burton, Jeff, 447
Busch, Kurt, 447
Buxey, G., 741

C
Caiola, Gene, 741
Camevalli, J. A., 738
Campbell, Omar, 737
Canonaco, P., 743
Carson, J. S., 743
Cavanagh, R. R., 738
Cayirli, Tugba, 742
Chambers, Chester, 739
Chapman, S. N., 741
Chapman, Stephen, 741, 742
Chen, Bintong, 740
Chen, Fangruo., 741
Chen, Ming, 741
Chen, Wen-Chih, 739
Chen, Zhi-Long, 741
Chien, C., 739
Chopra, S., 739
Chopra, Sunil, 740, 741
Chu, K. F., 743
Chua, R. C. H., 738
Cleland, D. L., 737
Clive, L. M., 741
Cochran, J. K., 743
Collins, Bob, 442
Combs, James G., 740
Coogan, Denise, 243
Coupe, Henry, 440
Couto, J. P., 743
Crandall, Richard E., 740, 741
Criscuelo, P., 738
Crook, T. Russell, 740
Crosby, Philip B., 257, 257n, 738
Crotts, J. C., 737

D
Dahlgaard, J. J., 738
Datar, S. M., 280n
Davenport, T. H., 739
Davis, Leon, 668
Davis, Stanley B., 738
Dawande, M., 741
De Jong, A., 740
De Mathis J. J., 741
De Ruyter, K., 740
Debo, L. G., 739
DeFeo, J. A., 738
DeHoratius, N., 533n
Deimler, Mike, 738
Dellaert, N. P., 739
Dellande, S., 737
DeLong, George, 694
Deming, W. Edwards, 48, 256, 257, 258, 284n
Denton, Brian T., 742
Derman, O., 741
Deshmukh, S., 739
Dibbern, J., 737
Dickson, D. R., 737
Diebold, F. X., 737
Diehl Gregory W., 741
Dietrich, Brenda, 742
Disney, Stephen M., 740
Doğru, Mustafa K., 741
Dolgui, A., 741
Donnelly, P., 742
Dorso, Chris, 598
Drezner, Z., 739, 743
Duran, G., 742
Duray, R., 739

E
Elg, M., 738
Eppinger, S., 738
Epstein, Marc J., 738
Erhun, Feryal, 741
Ernst, David, 738
Espinosa, J. A., 743
Evans, J. R., 738

F
Farmer, Adam, 742
Fayurd, A.L., 410n
Feigenbaum, A. V., 257
Fildes, Robert, 737
Finigen, Tim, 742
Fisher, Marshall L., 484n
Fitzsimmons, J., 389n
Fletcher, Allison, 694
Flinchbauh, Jamie, 742
Florida, R., 739
Flynn, B. B., 737
Flynn, E. J., 737
Ford, Henry, 48
Ford, R. C., 737

Fornell, C., 84n
Foster, G., 280n
Foster, Thomas, 738
Freivalds, Andris, 740

G
Galt, J., 737
Gantt, Henry L., 47, 645
Gardiner, Stanley C., 739
Gardner, Leslie, 277
Georgoff, D. M., 737
Gerstenfeld, Arthur, 740
Gerwin, Donald, 738
Gianipero, L. C., 740
Gibson, Randall R., 743
Gilbreth, Frank, 47, 458, 464
Gilbreth, Lillian, 47, 458
Gilliland, M., 737
Gitlow, Howard S., 738
Goetsch, David L., 738
Goldratt, Eliyaha, 355n, 739
Goldsby, Thomas J., 740
Gonul, M. S., 737
Gonzalez-Benito, J., 738
Gonzalez-Benito, O., 738
Goodale, John C., 739
Goodwin, Paul, 737
Gordon, Jeff, 446–447
Gordon, John Steel, 737
Graban, Mark, 742
Gray, John V., 738
Green, L. V., 743
Greenwald, Bruce, 737
Groebner, D., 172n
Gross, Donald, 743
Gross, E. E. Jr., 456
Gryna, F. M., 738
Guergachi, A., 743
Gupta, M. C., 739
Gupta, S. M., 741
Gwynne, Peter, 738

H
Hackman, J. R., 451, 451n
Hafeznezami, S., 739
Haines, Steven, 738
Hall, Joseph M., 739
Hall, Robert W., 742
Hammond, J. S., 742
Handfield, R. B., 740
Handfield, Robert B., 740
Hanke, J. E., 737
Hanna, M., 737, 739, 741, 742, 743
Harmon, Larry, 227
Harris, Carl M., 743
Harris, Chris, 741
Harrod, Steven, 742
Haugh, Helen M., 738
Hegde, V. G., 739
Heinzl, A., 737
Helgadottir, Hilder, 737
Helms, A. S., 465n
Heragu, S. S., 740
Heyer, N., 740
Hirschheim, R., 737
Hoffman, Ken, 670
Holweg, M., 742
Hooper, Ana, 314
Horngren, C. T., 280n
Hounshell, D. A., 737
Hu, J., 740
Huang, H. C., 743
Huang, L., 737
Huang, T., 737
Hug, Z., 739
Hult, G., 740
Humphries, Jim, 742
Huselid, Mark A., 740
Hvolby, H., 741

I
Iger, Robert, 144
Immonen, A., 738
Inderfurth, Karl, 739
Inoue, L., 742
Ireland, L. R., 737
Ireland, R. D., 742

J
Jackson, Jonathan, 741
Jacobs, F. R., 741
Jain, Chaman L., 737
Jarrett, Dale, 447
Jayaraman, V., 740
Jennings, C. L., 739
Johns, T., 737
Johnson, Alan, 740
Johnson, M. Eric, 323n, 739
Johnson, Steven, 740
Jones, Daniel T., 742
Jonsson, Patrik, 739
Joshi, M. P., 737
Juran J. M., 257, 257n, 265

K
Kahn, Judd, 737
Kanawaty, George, 460n
Kane, H., 742
Kanet, J., 741
Kaplan, Robert S., 737
Kara, S., 740
Karlos, A., 737
Kathuria, R., 737
Kayis, B., 740
Keating, B., 737
Keefer, Donald L., 742
Kellogg, Deborah L., 742
Kelton, W. D., 743
Kennedy, M., 739
Kenney, R. L., 742
Keren, Baruch, 741
Kersten, Wolfgang, 740
Kerzner, H., 737
Keyte, Beau, 742
Kimes, S., 389n
Kimes, S. E., 741
Kin, S., 741
Kinard, Jerry, 313n
King-Metters, K., 741
Kinkel, S., 737
Kirchmier, Bill, 742
Klamroth, K., 739
Klassen, K., 743
Klassen, R., 740
Knight, Jim, 476
Koberstein, A., 741
Kohnke, E. J., 740
Koksalan, M., 743
Konz, S., 740
Konz, Stephan, 460n
Kopezak, Laura Rock, 323n
Kouvelis, Panos, 743
Kramer, M. R., 232n
Krehbiel, Tim, 737
Kreipl, Stephan, 740
Krishnan, M.S., 84n
Krishnan, V., 738
Krupp, James A. G., 741
Kuo, C., 386n

L
Ladner, John, 693
Lambrecht, Marc R., 740
Lane, Randy, 668
Langella, I. M., 739
Lanoie, Paul, 738
Larson, E. W., 737
Larson, S., 740
Laszlo, Chris, 738
Laubacher, R J., 737
Lawrence, M., 737
Lay, G., 737
Lee, Chieh, 740
Lee, Chung-Yee, 737
Lee, Eva K., 739
Lee, H., 741
Lee, Hau L., 737
Lemmink, J., 740
Leno, Jay, 210
Leon, Steve, 232
Leonard, M., 737
Leone, Charlie, 669–670
Leong, G. K., 742
Leong, G. Keong, 740
Leppa, Carol J., 742
Levine, David, 737
Lewis, Mike, 737
Lewis, William W., 737
Li, Shanling, 739
Lian, Z., 741
Liker, Jeffrey K., 742
Lin, H., 739
Lindner, C.A., 465n
Lindsay, W. M., 738
Lindsey, Todd, 193
Linton, J. D., 740
Liu, X., 741
Loch, C. H., 738
Locher, Drew, 742
Lopez, P., 742
Louly, Mohamed-Aly, 741

M
MacLean, D., 738
Maier, Anja M., 739
Malone, T. W., 737
Malone, Tom, 237
Malykhina, E., 533n
Mantel, S., 737
Maroto, A., 737
Martin, C. H., 742
Martins, Alex, 246–247
Marucheck, Ann S., 740
Matta, N. F., 737
Matthes, N., 739
Matthews, C. H., 742
Mattsson, Stig-Arne, 739
May, Jerrold H., 739
Maylor, Harvey, 737
McAlister, V. C., 743
McCormack, Angela, 313
McDonald, A., 743
McDonald, Stan C., 741
McEwan, Dr. Angus, 262
McFadden, Kathleen, 475
McGinnis, L. F., 740
McLaren, T., 743
McLaughlin, Patrick, 737
Medina-Borja, A., 742
Mehrotra, Vijay, 743
Meindl, Peter, 740
Menge, J. B., 742
Mentzer, John T., 739
Meredith, J. R., 737
Metters, Richard, 741
Midler, Paul, 737
Miguel, P. A. C., 738
Miller, C. C., 742
Miller, Luke T., 742
Milligan, G. W., 739
Mincsovics, G. Z., 739
Minicucci, Ben, 278–279, 693
Mitra, Amit, 738, 739
Monczka, R. M., 740
Mondschein, S. V., 742
Montgomery, D. C., 739
Morgan, James M., 742
Morgan, R., 737
Morrice, D., 739
Morrison, J. Bradley, 743
Morton, D., 739
Morton, Thomas E., 742
Moultrie, James, 739
Mukhopadhyay, S., 741
Munday, Oliver, 401–402
Munson, Charles L., 740, 741
Murat, A., 740
Murdick, R. G., 737
Muthusamy, S. K., 740

N
Najjar, L., 739
Narayanan, Sriram, 740
Nelson, B. L., 743
Nelson-Peterson, Dana L, 742
Neuman, R. P., 738
Neumann, Patrick W., 740
Newton, Wayne, 279, 341
Nicely, John, 633–634, 642
Nicol, D. M., 743
Niebel, B. W., 460n, 740
Nielsen, P., 741
Nielson, I., 741
Niemann, G., 464n
Norri, S., 743
Norris, G., 741
Norton, David P., 737

O
O' Sullivan, Jill, 741
O'Connell, Andrew, 742
Oates, David, 737
Oberwetter, R., 586n
Ohno, Taiichi, 674, 676, 687
Oldham, Greg R., 451, 451n
Oliver, Alexy, 738
Olson, Paul R., 440n
Olsson, J., 738
Onkal, D., 737
Özen, Ulaş, 741
Ozer, O., 741

P
Paine, Lincoln, 740
Paleologo, G. A., 742
Pande, P. S., 738
Parasuranam, A., 271n
Pareto, Vefredo, 265, 529
Parker, Thomas, 741
Parks, Charles M., 742
Parlar, M., 743
Parmigiani, G., 742
Partovi, F. Y., 739
Pasupathy, K., 742
Patterson, J. L., 740
Pentico, David W., 742
Perez, Anthony, 192, 598
Petcavage, S., 741
Peterson, A.P. G., 456
Peterson, R., 741
Peterson, Silva, 52
Petroski, Henry, 738
Pfeffer, Jeffrey, 740
Pfitzer, M., 232n
Pfund, M. E., 739
Phillippi, Brian, 742
Phillips, D. T., 742
Phyper, J. D., 738
Pinedo, M., 742
Pinedo, Michael, 740
Ping, J., 743
Pinkerton, R., 741
Pisano, Gary P., 738, 740
Plenert, Gerhard, 742
Porter, M. E., 232n
Porter, Michael, 78, 78n, 737, 739
Prabhu, N. U., 743
Prahalad, C. K., 738
Pronovost, Dr. Peter, 270
Pullman, M., 741
Pullman, Madeleine E., 739
Pyke, D. F., 741

Q
Qi,Y., 739
Quillien, Jenny, 740

R
Radnor, Zoe J., 742
Rahman, Anisur, 742
Raiffa, H., 742
Raman, A., 533n
Rangaswami, M. R., 738
Rao, Tom, 712
Reeves, Martin, 738
Reich, Robert, 454
Reiner, Rob, 400–401
Reinhardt, Gilles, 741
Render, Barry, 737, 739, 741, 742, 743
Renouf, E., 743
Richardson, D. J., 447
Robidoux, L., 742
Roche, K., 743
Rolewicz, Jamie, 446
Roodbergen, Kees Jan, 740
Rosenfield, D. B., 737
Rossetti, Manuel D., 743
Roth, Aleda V., 738
Roth, H. P., 739
Rothfeder, Jeffry, 737
Roubellat, F., 742
Roy, Anjan, 739
Rubalcaba, L., 737
Rubin, Paul A., 741
Rudberg, Martin, 737
Rugtusanatham, M. Johnny, 739

S
Saaksvuori, A., 738
Sadowski, R. P., 743
Sahay, B. S., 737
Salter, A., 738
Saltzman, Robert M., 743
Salvador, Fabrizio, 739
Salvendy, G., 740
Samaddar, S., 741
Sampson, Scott, 217–218, 218n
San, G., 737
Sasser, W. Earl, 440n
Sayre, Kim, 742
Schlaifer, R., 742
Schmeidler, Neil, 740
Schmenner, R. W., 743
Schonberger, Richard J., 742
Schrattenholzer, L., 743
Schroeder, R. G., 737, 738
Scudder, Gary, 740
Segerstedt, A., 741
Seider, Warren D., 738
Sethi, Suresh P., 741
Shah, Piyush, 737
Shahrokh, Shahraki, 740
Sharafali, M., 743

Shaw, B. W., 465n
Sheen, G., 739
Shewart, Walter, 48, 284
Shi, Chunming, 740
Shingo, Shiego, 682
Shortle, John F., 743
Siggelkow, Nicolaj, 737
Sillekens, Thomas, 741
Simmons, B. L., 740
Singhal, V. R., 740
Sinha, K. K., 740
Skinner, Wickham, 737
Slack, Nigel, 737
Slaughter, S. A., 743
Smith, Adam, 450
Smith, Bernard, 178, 178n
Smith, Fred, 376
Smith, Jeffrey S., 742
Smunt, T. L., 743
Snir, Eli M., 739
Snyder, L. V., 739
Sodhi, M. S., 743
Sonne, Michael, 740
Sorensen, Charles, 48
Sower, V. E., 739
Spangler, W. E., 739
Sprague, Linda G., 737
Sridharan, V., 741
Sriskandarajah, C., 741
Stair, R. M., 737, 739, 741, 742, 743
Stair, R. M. Jr., 742
Stamp, M., 232n
Stanford, D. A., 743
Stanley, L. L., 740
Stanowy, A., 740
Stark, Cathy, 668
Steger-Jensen, Kenn, 741
Stein, Andrew C., 741
Stephens, M. P., 742
Stepney, Nigel, 262
Stern, Scott, 739
Stewart, D. M., 738
Stoner, J. A., 133n
Stoner, J. A. F., 738
Strange, Roger, 738
Strum, D. P., 739
Sud, V. P., 743
Suhl, L., 741
Summer, M., 741
Summers, Donna, 738, 739
Sunny Yang, Shu-Jung, 739
Sural, H., 743
Surowski, Tom, 668
Sutera, Carla, 104
Swamidass, Paul M., 739
Swanson, Kathy, 278, 342, 371, 440
Swets, N. B., 743
Syntetos, A. A., 741

T

Taghavi, A., 740
Tallman, Stephen, 739
Talwar, A., 738
Tan, K., 740
Tang, Kwei, 738
Tangen, S., 737
Tanrisever, Fehmi, 739
Taylor, Bernard, 743
Taylor, Frederick W., 47, 48, 453, 458, 459
Taylor, G. Don Jr., 740
Taylor, S. J .E., 743
Taylor, Sam G., 741
Teixeira, J. C., 743
Terwiesch, C., 738
Teunter, Ruud H., 741
Thomas, A., 451n
Thompson, G. M., 741
Thompson, James M., 743
Tian, Feng, 741
Tian, Zhili, 743
Tibben-Lembke, Ronald S., 739
Tippet, L., 465
Toktay, L. B., 739
Tolo, B., 740
Tomas M., 740
Tompkins, James A., 740
Ton, Z., 533n
Toyoda, Eiji, 687
Trietsch, Dan, 742
Tseng, C. L., 740
Turbide, Dave, 741

U

Ulrich, Karl T., 738
Upton, David, 740
Urs, Rajiv, 737

V

Vaidyanathan, R., 742
van Biema, Michael, 737
van Veen-Dirks, Paula, 742
Van Wassenhove, L. N., 739
Vargas, L. G., 739
Veeraraghavan, S., 742
Veral, Emre, 742
Verganti, Roberto, 738, 740
Verma, Rohit, 739
Verzuh, Eric, 737
Village, Judy, 740
Villalta, D. L., 740
Vis, I. F. A., 740
Vollmann, T. E., 741

W

Wagner, H. M., 741
Walczak, Steven, 742
Wallace, Rusty, 446
Walsh, Ellen, 740
Walter, Janie, 227
Walton, S., 741
Wang, L., 739
Wang, Phanich P., 740
Wang, Q., 742
Wankel, C., 738
Ward, P. T., 739
Waring, J., 742
Watson, Kevin J., 739
Watts, C. A., 743
Weeks, J., 410n
Weil, Marty, 742
Weintraub, G. Y., 742
Welborn, Cliff, 739
Wells, John, 312
Wemmerlöv, U., 740
West, B. M., 737
Weston, M., 743
Whalen, Lynn, 634
Wheeler, J. V., 740
Whitaker, J., 84n
White, Catherine M., 740
White, G., 739
White, J. A., 740
White, R. E., 386n
Whitin, T. M., 741
Whitney, Eli, 47
Whybark, D. C., 741
Wichern, D. W., 737
Wilson, J. H., 737
Winkelspecht, C., 451n
Wisner, Joel, 740
Wisner, Joel D., 277
Witt, Clyde E., 741
Wolf, Martin, 737
Womack, James P., 742
Wren, Daniel A., 737
Wright, George, 668
Wyckoff, D. Daryl, 440n
Wynter, L., 742
Wysocki, R. K., 737

X

Xie, Xiaolan, 743
Xin Xu, Sean, 741

Y

Yan Kovic, N., 743
Yan, Xinghao, 738
Yang, Shilei, 740
Yoo, S., 741
Yoogalingam, R., 743
Yurklewicz, Jack, 737

Z

Zeithaml, Valarie A., 271n
Zeng, Amy Z., 740
Zhang, Aheng, 743
Zhang, M., 739
Zhang, X., 742
Zhao, Hui, 738
Zhao, T., 740
Zhao, X., 739
Zhao, Yong-Pin, 562
Zhexembayeva, N., 738
Zipkin, Paul, 739

General Index

A

ABC analysis, 529–530
Acceptable quality level (AQL), 301
Acceptance sampling, 300–303, T2–1 to T2–7
  average outgoing quality (AOQ), 302–303, T2–5 to T2–6
  erroneous conclusions and, 301n
  operating characteristic (OC) curve and, 301–302
  sampling plans, T2–2
Accurate inventory records, MRP and, 608
Accurate pull data, 490
Activity charts, job design and, 456
Activity map, 81
Activity times, variability in, 115–120
Activity-on-arrow (AOA), 106, 109
Activity-on-node (AON), 106, 107–108, 128
Adaptive smoothing, forecasting and, 177
Additive manufacturing, 333
Advanced shipping notice (ASN), 492
Aggregate planning, 567–600
  capacity options, 573–574
  chase strategy and, 575
  comparison of planning methods for, 575
  demand options and, 574–575
  disaggregation and, 573
  ethical dilemma, 589
  graphical methods and, 576–581
  level strategy and, 576
  master production schedule and, 573
  mathematical approaches and, 581–583
  methods for, 576–581
  mixing options to develop a plan and, 575–576
  nature of, 572–573
  planning process and, 570–571
  revenue management and, 585–588
  sales and operating planning (S&OP) and, 571–572
  scheduling issues and, 641
  services and, 583–585
  software for, 590–591
  S&OP definition, 571
  strategies for, 573–576
  transportation method of linear programming and, 581–583
  yield management and, 585–588
Aggregate scheduling. *See* Aggregate planning
Agile project management, 105
Air Berlin, 295
Airbus, 69
Aircraft industry, 455
Airfreight, logistics management and, 495
Airline industry:
  aggregate planning and, 585
  capacity, matching to demand, 351
  inventory, 690
  organizational chart, 43
  revenue management, 589
  scheduling services in, 657
  sustainability, 232
AirTran, 295
Alaska, long-range economic forecasting, 149
Alaska Airlines:
  baggage process strategy, 341–342
  Global Company Profile, 638–639
  human resources, 475–476
  inspection, 270
  lean operations, 689, 693–694
  quality, 278–280
  short-term scheduling, 638–640
  sustainability, 237
Alenia Aeronautica, 68–69
Algebraic approach, break-even analysis and, 357–358
Align Technology, 323
Alliances, 213
  time-based competition and, 213
Allstate Insurance, 201
All-units discount, 545
Amazon.com, 148
  Global Company Profile, 526–527
  supply chain, 483
  warehouse strategy, 414
Ambient conditions, 413
American Hardware Supply, 178
American National Can Company, 327, 328
American Society for Quality (ASQ), 46, 255
Amway Center, 246–247, 669–670
Analysis and design, process strategy and, 327
Andon, 675, 680
Anheuser-Busch, 501
AOA (Activity-on-arrow), 106, 109
AON (Activity-on-node), 106, 107–108
APEC, 72
APICS (Association for Operations Management), 46
APICS Supply Chain Council, 502
Apple, 79, 83, 147–148, 200, 233
Application of decision trees:
  evaluating disaster risk, 511–512
  product design, 220–222
Appointment system, 352
Appraisal costs, quality and, 256
Approaches to forecasting, 149–150
Arby's, use of GIS system, 391
ArcGIS, 391
Arcs, routing and scheduling vehicles and, T5–3
Area under the normal curve, T1–4 to T1–5
Argentina, MERCOSUR and, 72
Arnold Palmer Hospital, 104
  building construction, 104
  capacity planning, 371–372
  flowchart, 267
  Global Company Profile, 252–253
  hospital layout, 440–442
  inspection, 270
  JIT, 694
  labor standards and, 466
  managing quality, 252–253
  mission statement, 74
  process analysis, 342
  process focus, 321
  project management, 137–138
  supply chain, 506
Artifacts, servicescapes and, 413
Artificial variables, T3–8
ASRS, 334
Assembly chart, 216
Assembly drawing, 216
Assembly line
  labor specialization, 450
  product-oriented layout and, 424
  regulations, 241–242
  repetitive manufacturing, 318–319
  scheduling, 643
  sustainability, 241
Assembly-line balancing, product-oriented layout and, 424
Assets committed to inventory, 499–501
Assignable variations, statistical process control and, 285
Assignment method, loading and, 646–648

Note: Page numbers beginning with a T refer to the Online Tutorial chapters that appear on our web site **www.pearsonglobaleditions.com/heizer.**

Association for Operations Management (APICS), 46
Associative forecasting methods, 150, 169–175
  correlation coefficient for regression lines, 172–174
  linear-regression analysis, 169–174
  multiple regression analysis, 174–175
  regression analysis, 169–175
  standard deviation of the estimate, 171–172
  standard error of the estimate, 171–172
Assumptions, break-even analysis and, 356–357
Atlas GIS, 391
AT&T, 256
Attract and retain global talent, global view of operations and, 72–73
Attribute(s):
  c-charts and, 295–297
  control charts for, 294–297
  p-charts and, 294–295, 297
  versus variables, inspection and, 271
Auctions, online, 494
Auctions, supply chain management, and, 493
Audi, 84
Australia, SEATO and, 72
Automated Storage and Retrieval Systems (ASRS), 334, 335
Automatic Guided Vehicles (AGV), 334
Automatic identification systems (AIS), 333, 415
Automation, service efficiency and, 219
Automobile manufacturing. *See also* Ford Motor Co.
  bullwhip effect in, 514
  sustainability, 241, 243
Autonomous maintenance, 708
Avendra, 494
Average observed time, 460
Average outgoing quality, 302–303, T2–5 to T2–6

B

Babbage, Charles, 450
Back ordering, 574–575
Backup redundancy, 703–704
Backward integration, 486
Backward pass, 112
Backward scheduling, 642
BAE Systems, 68
Balancing work cells, 422–424
Ballard Power Systems, 213
Baltimore, Port of, 157–158
Bank of America, 681
Banks
  organizational chart, 43
  scheduling for services and, 656
Basic feasible solution, T3–3
Basic variables, T3–3
Baxter International, 680
Bayfield Mud Company, SPC and, 312–313
Bechtel Group, Global Company Profile, 98–99
Beer, supply chain for, 482
Bell Laboratories, 284
Benchmarking, 260–262
  supply chain, 501
Benetton, 70, 408, 491, 623
Best Buy, 413
Beta probability distribution, 115–116
Bias, forecasts and, 176
Bills-of-material (BOM), 213, 606–608
Blanket orders, 491
Blue Cross, 84
BMW, 72, 241
Boeing Aircraft, 211, 426–427
  Global Company Profile, 68–69
  operations strategy, 78
  product reliability, 706
  supply chain risks and tactics, 488
  sustainable product design, 237
Bose Corp., 254
Boston Medical Center, 453
Bottleneck analysis and theory of constraints, 352–356
  management of, 355–356
  time and, 353
Bottom line, triple, 233–236
Brazil, MERCOSUR and, 72
Break-bulk warehouse function, 495
Breakdown maintenance, 705
Break-even analysis, 356–360
  assumptions and, 356–357
  definition, 356
  fixed costs, 356
  multiproduct case and, 358–360
  revenue function, 356
  single-product case and, 357–358
Bristol-Myers Squibb, 149
British Petroleum (CP), 242
Buckets, MRP and, 614
Buffer, in bottleneck management, 355
Building the supply base, centralized purchasing, 493–494
Build-to-order (BTO), 323
Bullwhip effect, 490, 512–514
Burger King, 424
Buybacks, 493

C

CAD, 209–210
Cadillac, 256
CAFTA, 72
Calculating slack time, 113–114
California drought, 235
Call center industry, location strategies and, 85
CAM, 210
Canada, NAFTA and, 72
Canon, 422
"Cap and trade" principle, 242
Capacity. *See also* Break-even analysis
  aggregate planning, 573–574
  analysis and, 352
  applying expected monetary value (EMV) to capacity decisions, 361
  applying investment analysis to strategy-driven investments, 362–364
  bottleneck analysis and theory of constraints, 352–356
  break-even analysis, 356–360
  capacity exceeds demand, 350
  considerations and, 349
  definition, 346
  demand management and, 350–351
  design and, 347–349
  effective capacity, 347–349
  forecasting and, 147, 148
  managing demand, 350–351
  net present value and, 362–364
  reducing risks with incremental changes, 360–361
  service sector demand, 351–352
  strategy and, 349
  strategy-driven investments and, 362–364
  theory of constraints, 355
  using software, 365
Capacity analysis, 352
Capacity management, service sector and, 352
Capacity planning, MRP and, 619–621
Capacity plans, scheduling issues and, 640–641
Capital, as a productivity variable, 53, 54
Carbon footprint, 235
Cartoon industry in Manila, 71
Carvel Ice Cream, use of GIS system, 390
Case Studies:
  Alaska Airlines:
    human resources, 475–476
    lean operations, 693–694
    process strategy, 341–342
    quality, 278–280
  Amway Center sustainability, 246–247
  Andrew Carter, Inc. aggregate planning, 597–598
  Arnold Palmer Hospital
    capacity planning, 371–372
    hospital layout, 440–442
    JIT, 694

process analysis, 342
project management, 137–138
quality, 278
supply chain, 506
Bayfield Mud Company, SPC and, 312–313
Darden Restaurants
outsourcing offshore, 94
Red Lobster, location and strategies, 400–401
statistical process control, 314
supply chain, 505
De Mar's Product Strategy, 227
Frito-Lay
inventory management, 563–564
maintenance, 712
operations management, 63
statistical process control, 313
sustainability, 247–248
Hard Rock Cafe
forecasting, 193–194
global strategy, 93–94
human resource strategy, 476
location strategy, 401–402
operations management in services, 63–64
project management, 115, 138–140
scheduling, 670
Jackson Manufacturing Co., work measurement, 475
Old Oregon Wood Store, short-term scheduling and, 668
Orlando Magic
forecasting, 192–193
MRP and, 633–634
revenue management, 598
short-term scheduling, 669–670
sustainability, 246–247
Parker Hi-Fi Systems, inventory management and, 563
Phlebotomists, routing and scheduling, T5–17 to T5–18
Rapid-Lube, operations strategy in a global environment and, 93
Regal Marine
global strategy, 93
product design, 227–228
supply chain management, 505–506
Ritz-Carlton Hotel company
quality, 280
Rochester Manufacturing Corp., 340
Southern Recreational Vehicle Co., location strategies and, 400
Southwestern University:
forecasting, 191–192
project management, 136–137
quality, 277–278
State automobile license renewals, 440
Uber Technologies, Inc., 62
Wheeled Coach
inventory control, 564
layout strategy, 442
MRP and, 634
process strategy, 340–341
Zhou Bicycle Co., inventory management and, 562–563
Cash flow, investment analysis and, 362
Cash for Clunkers program, 514
Caterpillar, 87, 88, 241, 512
Cause-and-effect diagrams, 264, 265
c-charts, 295–297
Center-of-gravity method, location strategies and, 386–387, 386n
Central limit theorem, 286–287
Certification, supplier, 492
Cessna Aircraft Company, 680
Channel assembly, supply-chain management and, 495–496
Characteristics of goods and services, 49
Characteristics of vehicle routing and scheduling problems, T5–3 to T5–5
Charleston, port of, 489
Charts. *See* Control charts
Chase strategy, aggregate scheduling and, 575
Check sheets, TQM tools and, 264–265
Checklist, source inspection and, 269
Chengdu Aircraft, 68
Chile, SEATO and, 72
China
ethics within supply chain, 498
manufacturing in, 86, 89
Chinese postman problem (CPP), T5–4
CIM, 335–336
Cisco Systems, 410
Clark and Wright Savings heuristic, T5–5, T5–7 to T5–8
Classifying routing and scheduling vehicle problems, T5–3 to T5–4
Closed-loop material requirements planning, 619
Closed-loop supply chain, 241, 499
Cluster first, route second approach, T5–10 to T5–11
Clustering, 382
Cobham, 68
Coca-Cola, 236, 501
Coefficient of correlation, 172–174
Coefficient of determination, 174
Collaborative planning, forecasting, and replenishment (CPFR), 148, 491
Colruyt, Franz, 76
Commodities transport, 495
Common, resources in the, 233
Company reputation, quality and, 255
Comparative advantage, theory of outsourcing, 84
Comparison of aggregate planning methods, 575
Comparison of process choices, 324–326
Competing on cost
differentiation, operations and, 75–76
experience differentiation, 76
operations and, 76
product strategy options and, 202
response, operations, 77–78
Competitive advantage, operations and, 74–77
Amazon.com, 526–527
Arnold Palmer Hospital and, 252–253
Bechtel and, 98–99
Boeing and, 68–69
cost and, 76
Darden Restaurants, 480–481
definition, 74–75
differentiation and, 75–76
Federal Express, 376–377
Frito-Lay, 568–569
human resources and, 448–449
lean operations and, 674–675
McDonalds, 406–407
Orlando Utilities Commission, 698–699
product strategy options and, 201–202
Regal Marine and, 198–199
Walt Disney World and, 144–145
Wheeled Coach, 602–603
Competitive bidding, 493
Competitors, location proximity to, 382
Components, lead time for, 608–609
Computer numerical control (CNC), 333
Computer software. *See also* Excel, creating your own spreadsheets; Excel OM; POM for Windows
for process oriented layouts, 420–421
Computer-aided design (CAD), 199, 209, 335
Computer-aided manufacturing (CAM), 210, 335
Computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM), 335–336
Concurrent engineering, 208
Concurrent scheduler approach, T5–13
Configuration management, 216
Consignment inventory, JIT and, 680
Constant work-in-process (ConWIP), 644–645

Constraints:
human resource strategy and, 448
Consumer market survey, forecasting and, 149–150
Consumer Product Safety Commission, 241
Consumer's risk, 301, T2–3 to T2–4
Containers. *See* Kanban
Continuous improvement
TPS and, 687
TQM and, 258–259
Continuous probability distributions, statistical tools and, T1–5 to T1–8
Contracting, with suppliers, 493
Contribution, break-even analysis and, 356
Contribution, defined, 203n
Control charts, 268, 279
attributes, 294–296
building process, 285–286
c-charts, 295–297
defined, 284
managerial issues and, 297–298
patterns on, 297
p-charts, 294–295, 297
R-charts, 286, 291–292
steps to follow in using, 292–293
variables, 286, 297
x-bar chart, 286, 288–291, 297
Control of service inventory, 532–533
Controlling, project management and, 104–105
Controlling forecasts, 176–178
ConWIP cards, 644–645
Coors, 150
Core competencies, 80–81
Core job characteristics, 451–452
Corporate social responsibility (CSR), 232
Correlation analysis, associative forecasting methods and, 169–175
Correlation coefficients for regression lines, 172–174
Cost of goods sold, 500
Cost of quality (COQ), 256–257
Cost-based price model, 493
Costco, 533
Cost(s)
breakdown, 706–707
competing on, 76
globalization, 71
intangible, 380
location and, 378–379
reduction through value engineering, 208
tangible, 380
Cost-time trade-offs, project management and, 120–123
Council of Supply Chain Management Professionals, 46
CP, 242
C_p ratio, 298–299
CPFR (Collaborative planning, forecasting, and replenishment), 148
C_{pk} index, 299–300
CPM. *See* Critical path method (CPM)
Crashing, project management and, 120–123
Criteria, scheduling and, 642–643
Critical path, 105, 129–130
Critical path analysis, 109–110
Critical Path Method (CPM)
activity-on-arrow example, 106, 109
activity-on-node example, 107–108
calculating slack time, 113–114
critique of, 123–124
determining the project schedule, 109–114
framework of, 105–106
Gantt charts *versus,* 103
identifying the critical path, 110
network diagrams and approaches, 106
variability in activity time, 115–120
Critical ratio (CR), sequencing and, 652–653
Critique of PERT and CPM, 123–124
Crosby, Philip B., 257
Cross-docking, 414
Crossover charts, 324–325
Cross-sourcing, 488
CSR (corporate social responsibility), 232
Cultural issues, global view of operations and, 73
Culture, location strategy and, 381
Currency risks, location strategies and, 380
Customer interaction, process design and, 331–332
Customer relationship management (CRM) software, 622
Customer service, dissatisfaction from outsourcing, 84
Customers, understanding
focus, 326
new products and, 204, 205
sustainability, 233–234
Customizing. *See also* Mass customization
service efficiency, increasing, 219
warehousing layout and, 415
Cycle counting, inventory management and, 531–532
Cycle time, focused work center and focused factory and, 427, 427n
Cycles, forecasting and, 151, 169
Cyclical scheduling, 658–659
Cyclical variations in data, forecasting and, 169

D

Daimler-BMW, joint venture and, 486
Darden Restaurants. *See also* Olive Garden Restaurant,Red Lobster Restaurant
Global Company Profile, 480–481
outsourcing offshore, 94
statistical process control, 291, 314
supply chain management, 480–481, 498, 505
supply chain risks and tactics, 488
use of GIS system, 390
Dassault, 68
De Mar, 227
Deadhead time, T5–12
Decibel (dB) levels, 456
Decision making tools. *See also* decision trees
Decision trees
evaluating disaster risk, 511–512
product design and, 220–222
Decline phase, product life cycle and, 203
Decomposition of a time series, 150–151
Defects, control charts for, 296
Defining a product, 213–215
Delay
allowances, 460
waste, 327n
Delay customization, adding service efficiency and, 219
Dell computers
inventory management, 501
mass customization and, 322–323
quality, 254
Deloitte & Touche, 410
Delphi method, forecasting and, 149
Delta Airlines, 104, 295
Gantt chart of service activities, 103
Demand exceeds capacity, 350
Demand forecasts, 147
exponential smoothing, 154–155
regression, 169–175
moving averages, 152–154
steady (naive approach), 151–152
Demand is variable and lead time is constant, probability models and, 549
Demand management in service sector, 351–352
Demand options, aggregate strategies and, 574–575
Deming, W. Edwards, 256, 257, 284n
Deming Prize, 256
Deming's 52 points, quality and, 258
Denim production, 235
Department of Agriculture
product definition, 213–214
Dependent demand, 533, 604

Dependent inventory model requirements, 604–609
accurate inventory records and, 608
bills-of-material and, 606–608
lead times for components and, 608
low level coding, 608
master production schedule and, 605–606
modular bills, 607–608
planning bill, 608
purchase orders outstanding and, 608
Depot node, routing and scheduling vehicles and, T5–3
Design and production for sustainability, 57, 211, 236–238
Design capacity, 347
Design for manufacture and assembly (DFMA), 209
Design of goods and services, 197–230. *See also* Product Development
adding service efficiency and, 219
alliances and, 213
application of decision trees to product design, 220–222
bill of material (BOM) and, 213
computer-aided design (CAD) and, 209–210
computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) and, 210
defining the product, 213–215
documents for production, 216–217
documents for services, 219–220
generating new products, 203–204
goods and services selection, 200–203
group technology and, 215
issues for product design, 209–211
joint ventures and, 212–213
life cycle and strategy and, 202–203
life cycle assessment (LCA), 211
make-or-buy decisions and, 214–215
modular design and, 209
OM decisions and, 46
process-chain-network (PCN) analysis, 217–219
product development, 204–208
product development continuum, 211–213
product life cycles and, 202
product life-cycle management (PLC) and, 216–217
product strategy options support competitive advantage and, 201–202
product-by-value analysis, 203
purchasing technology by acquiring a firm and, 212
robust design and, 209
service design, 217–220
sustainability, 57, 211, 236–238
time-based competition, 211–213
transition to production, 222
value analysis and, 211
virtual reality technology and, 210–211
Determinants of service quality, 272
Determining project schedule
backward pass, 112–113
calculating slack time, 113–114
forward pass, 110–112
identifying critical paths, 113–114
Developing missions and strategies, 73–74
DFMA, 209
DHL, supply chain and, 495, 496
Diehl, 68
Differences between goods and services, 49
Differentiation, competitive advantage and, 75–76, 201–202
Direct interaction, process chain and, 218
Disaggregation, aggregate planning and, 573
Disaster risk in supply chain, evaluating, 510–512
Discrete probability distributions, strategic tools and, T1–2 to T1–3
Diseconomies of scale, 349
Disney Parks and Resorts. *See* Walt Disney Parks and Resorts
Disney World. *See* Walt Disney Parks and Resorts
Disneyland, 413
Dispatching jobs, priority rules and, 649–650
Distance reduction, JIT layout and, 681
Distribution management, supply chain management and, 497
Distribution resource planning (DRP), 622
Distribution systems, supply-chain management, 497
Distributions, control chart, 285
DMAIC, TQM and, 259
Documents:
for production, 216–217
for services, 219–220
Domestic Port Radiation Initiative
supply chain risks and tactics, 488
Dominican Republic, CAFTA and, 72
Double smoothing, 162
Dow Chemical, 232
Drop shipping, 492
Drum, in bottleneck management, 355
Dubuque, Iowa, call center, 85
DuPont, 84, 201, 260
Dutch auctions, 494
Dynamics, MRP and, 613

E

Earliest due date (EDD), 649, 652
Earliest finish time (EF), critical path analysis and, 110, 111
Earliest start time (ES), critical path analysis and, 110, 111
Earthquake damage, 510
Eco Index, 242
Economic change, generating new products, 204
Economic forecasts, 147
Economic order quantity (EOQ) models, 534–535
lot sizing and, 615–616
minimize costs, 535
production order quantity model, 540–542
quantity discount model, 543–545
reorder points, 539–540
robust model, 538–539
Economic sustainability, 235
Economies of scale, 349
Effective capacity, 347
Efficiency
capacity and, 348
of line balance, 429
Electronic data interchange (EDI), 492
Electronic ordering and funds transfer, 491–492
Eliminate waste, lean operations and, 676–677
Elliot Health System, 453
Emergency room
process layout, 417
Emirates, 295
Employee empowerment
job expansion and, 451
OM and, 56
TPS and, 687
TQM and, 260
Employees
lean operations and JIT, 681
recruiting globally, 72–73
Employment stability policies, 449
EMV. *See* Expected monetary value
End-of-life phase, 241
Energy Star rating, 242
Engineering change notice (ECN), 216
Engineering drawing, 213
Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP), 604, 622–625. *See also* Material requirements planning
Environment
supply chain ethics and, 498
sustainability and, 234–235

Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), 242
Environmentally sensitive production, OM and, 56
EOQ (economic order quantity models), 534–535
E-procurement, 494
Equipment, selecting for process strategy, 326
Ergonomics, work environment and, 453–455
  feedback to operators, 455
  operators input to machines, 454–455
Erie Canal, 495
Errors, type 39 and type 40, 301
Ethical dilemmas:
  aggregate planning, 589
  airline revenue management, 589
  car battery recycling, 58
  design of goods and services, 223
  human resources, job design, work measurement and, 469
  inventory management, 553
  layout strategy, 430
  lean operations, 691
  location strategies, 392
  maintenance and reliability, 709
  managing quality, 273
  material requirements planning (MRP) and ERP, 625
  operation and productivity, 58
  operation strategy in a global environment, 89
  process strategy, 338
  project management, 102, 127
  short-term scheduling, 659–660
  supply-chain management, 503
  test scores and forecasting, 179
Ethical issues
  global view of operations and, 73
Ethics:
  human resources, job design and work measurement, 468
  project management and, 102
  quality management and, 257
  response identification, 57
  social responsibility and, 57
  supply chain and, 498, 503
  sustainability and, 57
EU Emissions Trading System (EUETS), 242
European Union (EU), 72, 72n
  environmental regulations, 242
  standard for the exchange of product data (STEP), 210
Evaluating disaster risk in supply chain, 510–512
Even-numbered problems, solutions to, A7–A20
Excel OM:
  accessing, 59
  aggregate planning and, 591
  break-even analysis and, 365
  develop x-bar charts, *p*-charts, *c*-charts, OC curves, acceptance sampling and process capability, 304
  forecasting and, 181
  inventory management and, 555
  layout problems and, 431
  location problems and, 392
  MRP and ERP and, 626–627
  outsourcing problems, 89
  project scheduling and, 127, 128
  reliability and, 710
  short-term scheduling and, 660–662
  using and, A5
Excel Solver, 590–591
Excel spreadsheets, creating your own
  aggregate planning, 590–591
  break-even analysis, 365
  control limits for c-chart, 304
  creating your own spreadsheets, 59
  factor rating analysis, 90
  forecasting, 180–181
  inventory management, 554
  location strategies, 392
  outsourcing problems, 89
Exchange rates
  reducing risk through globalization, 71–72, 380
Expected monetary value (EMV)
  capacity decisions, 361
Expected value:
  of discrete probability distribution, statistical tools and, T1–3
Experience differentiation, 76
  Disney and, 76
Exponential smoothing
  forecasting and, 154–155
  smoothing constant, 154–155
  trend adjustment and, 158–162
Extensions of MRP, 618–621
  capacity planning, 619–621
  closed loop, 619
  material requirements planning II, 618–619
External failure costs, quality and, 256

F

Fabrication line, production-oriented layout and, 424
Factor weighting technique, 515
Factor-rating method
  location strategies and, 383–384
  outsource providers, 85
Factors affecting location decisions and, 379–382
  costs, 380
  currency risk, 380
  exchange rates, 380
  labor productivity, 380
  political risks, 381
  proximity to markets, 381
  proximity to suppliers, 382
Faro Technologies, 302
Fast Track, 104
Fast-food restaurants
  forecasting and, 178–179
  repetitive process using modules, 321
Fatigue allowances, 460
Feasible tour, T5–3
FedEx, 179, 256
  Global Company Profile, 376–377
  customized warehouses, 415
  logistics, 496
Feedback to operators, 455
Feigenbaum, Armand V., 257
Ferrari racing team, 262
Finance/accounting, OM and, 42
Finished-goods inventory, 529
Finite capacity scheduling (FCS), 635, 655–656
Finite loading, 642
First Simplex tableau, T3–2 to T3–4
First-come, first-served (FCFS) system, 352, 649, 652
First-order smoothing, 162
Fish-bone chart, 265
Five forces analysis, 78
43 Ss, lean operations and, 677, 677n
Fixed costs, break-even analysis and, 356
Fixed fees, 545
Fixed-period (P) inventory systems, 552–553
Fixed-position layout, 408, 415–416
Fixed-quantity (Q) inventory system, 552
Flexibility, process strategy and, 326
Flexibility increased, JIT layout and, 681
Flexible manufacturing system (FMS), 335
Flexible response, 77
Flexible workweek, 450
Flextronics, 83
Flow diagrams, 456, 457
Flow time, 649
Flowcharts, 264, 266–267, 327
Flowers Bakery, 284
Focus forecasting, 177–178
Focused factory, 424
Focused processes, 325–326
Focused work center, 424
Food and Drug Administration, 241
Foot Locker, 624
Ford Motor Co., 213, 236, 485, 684
Forecast error, measuring, 155–158
Forecasting, 143–204. *See also* Associative forecasting methods; Time series forecasting

adaptive smoothing and, 177
approaches to, 149–150
associative methods, regression & correlation analysis and, 169–175
bias and, 176
capacity and, 148
coefficient of determination and, 174
correlation coefficients for regression lines and, 172–174
defined, 146
Delphi method and, 149
demand forecast and, 147
economic forecasts and, 147
fast food restaurants and, 178
focus forecasting and, 177–178
human resources and, 148
jury of executive opinion and, 149
linear regression analysis and, 169–174
market survey and, 149–150
monitoring and controlling forecasts and, 176–178
multiple regression analysis and, 174–175
qualitative methods and, 149–150
quantitative method and, 150
regression analysis and, 169–175
service sector and, 178–179
seven steps in, 148–149
software in, 180–182
specialty retail shops and, 178
standard error of the estimate and, 171–172
strategic importance of, 147–148
supply chain management and, 147–148
technological forcasts and, 147
time horizons and, 146–147
types of, 147
using software and, 180–182
Forward integration, 486
Forward pass, 110–112
Forward scheduling, 641
Four process strategies, 320–326
mass customization focus, 322–323
process focus, 320–321
product focus, 322
repetitive focus, 321
Framework of PERT and CPM, 105–106
Franz Colruyt, low-cost strategy and, 76
Free slack, 113
Freezing schedule, 685
Frito-Lay
aggregate planning and, 568–569
Global Company Profile, 568–569
maintenance, 700, 712
managing inventory, 563–564
operations management, 63
product focus, 322
statistical process control, 313
sustainability, 235–236, 238, 247–248
x-bar charts, 293
Fuji Heavy Industries, 68
Functional area, mission and, 74
Functionality, servicescapes and, 413
Functions of inventory, 528
Future time horizon, forecasting and, 146–147

G

Gantt charts, 645–646
load chart, 645
Microsoft Project view, 124–125
project scheduling and, 103
schedule chart, 645–646
Gap, 459, 498
Gemba or Gemba walk, 689, 693
General Electric, 68, 233, 257, 259, 284
General Motors (GM), 202
Generating new products, 203–204
Geographic information systems (GISs), location strategies and, 389–391
GeoMedia, 391
Giant Manufacturing Company, 485
Gillette, 200
Glidden Paints, 172
Global Aquaculture Alliance, 498
Global Company Profiles:
Alaska Airlines, 638–639
Amazon.com, 526–527
Arnold Palmer Hospital, 252–253
Bechtel Group, 98–99
Boeing Aircraft, 68–69
Darden Restaurants, 480–481
FedEx, 376–377
Frito-Lay, 568–569
Hard Rock Cafe, 40–41
Harley-Davidson, 318–319
McDonald's, 406–407
NASCAR Racing Team, 446–447
Orlando Utilities Commission, 698–699
Regal Marine, 198–199
Toyota Motor Corp., 674–675
Walt Disney Parks and Resorts, 144–145
Wheeled Coach, 602–603
Global implications
impact of culture and ethics and, 73
quality and, 256
Global Insights, 148
Global operations. *See* Operations strategy in a global environment
Global operations strategy options, 87–88
Global strategy, 87
Global view of operations, supply chains and, 70–73
attract and retain global talent and, 72–73
improve products and, 72
improve supply chain and, 71
reduce costs, 71
The Goal: A Process of Ongoing Improvement (Goldratt and Cox), 355n
"Going green." *See* Sustainability
GOL-Brazil, 295
Goods, differences from services, 49
Goods and services selection
design of, 200–203
importance of, 200
life cycle and strategy, 202–203
operations and, 49–51
product decision, 201
product life cycles, 202
product strategy options, 201–202
product-by-value analysis, 203
Graphic approach, break-even analysis and, 357–358
Graphical methods for aggregate scheduling, 576–581
Graphical techniques, 576–581
Great Ormond Street Hospital, 261, 262
Greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, 242
Greenlist classification, 234
Gross material requirements plan, MRP and, 609–610
Group technology, 215
Growth of services, OM and, 49–50
Growth phase, product life cycle and, 203

H

Hafei Aviation, 68
Haier, globalization and, 70
Hallmark, 423–424
Hansel, 689
Hard Rock Cafe
Global Company Profile, 40–41
experience differentiation, 76
forecasting, 193–194
global strategy, 93–94
human resource strategy, 453, 476
layout strategy, 413
location strategy, 401–402
operations management in services, 63–64
Pareto charts and, 266
portion-control standard, 214, 215
project management, 115, 138–140
scheduling, 670
supply chain, 488
Hard Rock Hotel, 270

Harley-Davidson, 327
Global Company Profile, 318–319
Hawthorne studies, 451
Heijunka, 685, 689
Heinz, 87
Heritage of OM, 46–48
Hershey, 210
Heuristic, assembly-line balancing and, 427
Hewlett-Packard, 77, 84, 211
supply chain management, 491
Histogram, 264
Historical experience, labor standards and, 459
Holding costs, 533
Home Depot
inventory management, 499, 501
use of GIS system, 391
Honda, 80, 210
supply chain risks and tactics, 488
Hong Kong, SEATO and, 72
Hospitals. *See also* Arnold Palmer Hospital
accident avoidance, 270
benchmarking handoffs, 262
differentiation, 201–202
emergency room process layout, 417
forecasting, 167–168
inventory management, 690
lean operations, 689
MRP and, 622
operating room traffic jams, 453
process strategy, 322
quality management, 261, 262
scheduling services and, 656
Hotels
MRP and, 622
site selection, location strategies and, 389
technology changes, 336
House of quality, 204–207
HP Project, 104
Human resource, job design, work management and, 445–478. *See also* labor standards
competitive advantage for, 448
constraints on, 448
employment-stability policies and, 449
ergonomics and the work environment, 453–455
ethics, the work measurement and, 468–469
forecasting, 148
job classifications, work rules and, 450
job design and, 450–453
labor planning and, 449–450
labor standards, 458–468
methods analysis, 455–457
motivation, incentive systems and, 453
objective of, 448
psychological components of job design , 451–452
self-directed teams and, 452
visual work place, 458
work schedules and, 449–450
Human resources, forecasting and, 147
Humidity, in work area, 455
Hyatt, 494
Hyundai Shipyard, 117

I

IBM, 84, 87
closed-loop supply chain, 499
reshoring, 85
Idea Works, 295
Ikea, 415
Illumination, 455–456
Impact on employees, JIT layout and, 681
Implementing 48 strategic OM decisions, 82
Importance of
inventory, 528–529
project management, 100
Improve operations, global view of operations and, 72
Improve products, global view of operations and, 72
Improve supply chain, global view of operations and, 71
Incentives:
for individual or group productivity, 453
job design and, 453
managing the supply chain, 490
Increased flexibility, JIT layout and, 681
Independent demand, inventory models and, 533
basic economic order quantity (EOQ) model, 534–535
minimizing costs, 535–539
production order quantity model, 540–542
quantity discount models, 543–545
reorder points, 539–540
Independent processing region, 218
India, call centers in, 85
Indonesia, manufacturing in, 89
Industrial engineering, OM and, 48
Infant mortality, 705
Infinite loading, 642
Information technology, 48
Ingall Ship Building Corporation, 416
Initial failure rate, 705
Innovation, new products and, 201
Input-output control, loading jobs and, 644–645
Inspection:
attributes *versus* variables, 271
definition, 268
quality role, 268–271
service industry and, 270
source and, 269
waste, 327n
when and where, 268–269
Institute for Supply Management (ISM), 46
Intangible costs, location strategies and, 380
Integrated supply chain, managing and, 489–492
issues in, 489–490
opportunities in, 490–492
Intermittent processes, 320
Internal benchmarking, 261
Internal failure costs, quality and, 256
International business, 87
International Organization for Standardization (ISO), 242–243
International standards
environmental, 242–243
quality, 256, 492
International strategy, global operations and, 87
Introductory phase, product life cycle and, 203
Inventory
accurate records, 608
assets committed to, 500–501
capacity options, 573–574
functions of, 528
lean operations, 681–684, 690
maintenance/repair/operating (MRO) inventory, 528–529
quantities and values, 500n
raw material inventory and, 528
types of, 528–529
work-in-process (WIP) and, 528
Inventory management, 525–566. *See also* Independent demand
classifying items through ABC analysis, 529–530
control of service inventories, 532–533
cycle counting, 531–532
demand, independent *vs.* dependent, 533
ethical dilemma, 553
fixed-period (P) systems and, 552–553
holding, ordering, and setup costs, 533–534
importance of, 528–529
independent demand, models for, 534–545
just-in-time, 681–684
kanban, 685–687
managing and, 529–533
mass customization, 323
models, 533–552
other probabilistic models, 549–551

probabilistic models and safety stock, 546–551
record accuracy, 531
single-period model, 551–552
using software, 554–555
Inventory turnover, 500
Inventory types, 528–529
Investment analysis, capacity planning and, 362–364
Invisalign Corp., 210
iPad menu, 327
Ishikawa diagrams, 265
ISO 9000, 256, 492
ISO 14000, 242–243, 492
Issues in:
integrated supply chain, 489–490
operations strategy, 78–79
short-term scheduling, 640–643
Item aggregation, 545

J

J R Simplot, 217
Jackson Manufacturing Co., 475
Jagoda Wholesalers, 168–169
Japan/Japanese. *See also* Toyota Production System
collegial management structure, 208
Deming Prize, 256
earthquake damage, 510
5Ss, 677
Gemba or Gemba walk, 689
kanban, 685–687
keiretsu networks, 486–487
SEATO and, 72
Takumi, 257
JC Penney, 491
Jidoka, 688, 689
JIT. *See* Just-in-time
Jo-Ann Stores, use of GIS system, 391
Job characteristics, 451–452
Job classifications, 450
Job design, 450–453. *See also* Methods analysis
core job characteristics and, 451–452
definition, 450
Hawthorne Studies and, 451
job expansion, 451
labor specialization, 450
limitations of job expansion, 452
motivation and incentive systems and, 453
psychological components of, 451–452
self-directed teams, 452
Job enlargement, human resource strategy and, 451
Job enrichment, 451
Job expansion, 451
limitations, 452
Job lots, 417
Job rotation, 451
Job shops, facilities, 643
scheduling, 655
Job specialization, 450
John Deere, 574
Johns Hopkins Medical Center, 270
Johnson & Johnson, 84, 257
Johnson Controls, 501
Johnson Electric Holdings, LTD., 77
Johnson's rule, sequencing and, 653–654
Johnsonville Sausage Co., 453
Johnstown Foundry, Inc., 469
Joint ventures
supply-chain management and, 486
time-based competition and, 212–213
Jones Law Offices
inspection, 270
Juran, Joseph M., 257
Jury of executive opinion, 149
Just-in-time (JIT)
consignment inventory and, 680
definition of, 676
distance reduction and, 681
impact on employees and, 681
increased flexibility and, 681
inventory and, 681–684
Kanban and, 685–687
layout and, 680–681
MRP and, 614
partnerships and, 678–680
quality and, 262, 687
reduced space and inventory and, 681
remove variability and, 681–682
scheduling and, 684–687
security, 489
supply chain risk and, 489
TQM and, 262
Just-in-time (JIT) inventory
reduce setup costs, 683–684

K

Kaizen, lean production and, 687, 689
Kaizen event, 687
Kanban, JIT and, 458, 685–687
advantages of, 686–687
definition, 685
number of cards or containers and, 686
Kawasaki Heavy Ind, 68
Keiretsu networks, 486–487
Key success factors (KSFs), 79–81, 379
Kindle, forecasting and, 148
Kits, BOMs and, 608
Kitted material, MRP and, 608
Knowledge society, 54–55
Knowledge-based pay systems, 453
Kodak, 684
Komatsu, 88
Korean Airlines, 68
Kroger, 413

L

La Quinta hotel site selection, 389
Labinel, 68
Labor planning, human resources and, 449–450
employment-stability policies and, 449
job classifications and, 450
work rules and, 450
work schedules and, 449–450
Labor productivity
location strategies and, 380
as productivity variable, 53, 54
Labor specialization, job design and, 450
Labor standards, 458–468
historical experience, 459
predetermined time standards, 463–465
time studies, 459–463
work sampling, 465–468
Large lots, integrated supply chain and, 490
Latecoere, 68
Latest finish time (LF), 110, 112
Latest start time (LS), 110, 112
Layout, types of, 408–409
Layout design, OM decisions and, 80
Layout strategies, 405–444
ethical dilemma, 430
fixed-position layout, 408, 415–416
lean operations, 680–681, 690
lean operations and JIT, 680–681
office layout and, 408, 409–410
process-oriented layout and, 409, 416–421
product-oriented, 409
repetitive and product-oriented layout and, 424–429
retail layout and, 408, 410–413
servicescapes, 413
strategic importance of, 408
types of, 408–409
using software, 431
warehouse and storage layouts and, 408, 413–415
work cells, 409, 421–424
Lead time:
additional probabilistic models, 549–551
inventory model and, 539
MRP and, 608–609
probabilistic model, inventory management and, 549–551
Leaders in quality, 257

Lean operations, 57, 673–696
definition, 676
eliminate waste and, 676–677
ethical dilemma, 691
5Ss and, 677
improve throughput and, 678
inventory and, 681–684
just-in-time, 678–687
kanban, 685–687
layout and, 680–681
lean organizations, 688–690
material requirements planning and, 614
quality and, 687
removing variability, 677–678
scheduling and, 684–687
services, 690
seven wastes and, 676
supplier partnerships, 678–680
throughput, 678
Toyota production system and, 676, 687–688
waste elimination, 676–677
Learn to improve operations, global view of operations and, 72
Least-squares method, trend projections and, 162–164
Legal change, product development and, 204
Lekin® finite capacity scheduling software, 655–656
Level schedules, JIT and, 685
Level scheduling, 576
Level strategy, aggregate planning and, 576
Levi, 235
Lexus, 149
Life cycle, strategy and, 72, 202–203
Life cycle assessment, 211, 236
Limitations of :
job expansion, 452
MRP, 613–614
rule-based dispatching systems, 654–655
Linear programming (LP)
transportation method, 581–583
Linear regression analysis, 169–174
Lion King revenue management, 586
L.L. Bean, 261
Loading jobs, short term scheduling and, 642, 643
assignment method, 646–648
Gantt charts, 645–646
input-output control, 644–645
Local optimization, managing the supply chain and, 489–490
Location, costs and, 378–379
Location, importance of, 378–379
Location decisions, factors affecting, 379–382
Location strategies, 375–404
center-of-gravity method and, 386–387
costs of, 378–379, 380
exchange rates and currency risk and, 380
factors affecting location decisions, 379–382
geographic information systems (GIS), 389–391
methods of evaluating location alternatives, 382–388
objective of, 378
political risks, values and culture and, 381
proximity to competitors and, 382
proximity to markets and, 381–382
proximity to suppliers and, 382
service location strategy, 388–389
strategic importance of, 378–379
tangible costs and, 380
transportation model, 387–388
using software, 392–393
Locational cost-volume analysis, 384–385
Lockheed Martin, 210
Logistics management, supply chain management, and, 494–497
reverse, 241, 498–499
shipping systems and, 494–495
sustainability, 238–240
third-party logistics (3PL) and, 496–497
warehousing and, 495–496
Longest processing time (LPT), 649
Long-range forecast, 146–147
Lot size reduction
integrated supply chain and, 490
lean operations and JIT, 682–683
Lot sizing decision, 614–618
Lot sizing summary, 617–618
Lot sizing techniques, MRP and, 614–618
economic order quantity, 615–616
lot-for-lot, 614
periodic order quantity, 616–617
Lot tolerance percent defective (LTPD), 397
Lot-for-lot, 614
Low-cost leadership, 76
Low-level coding, MRP and, 608
Lufthansa, 295, 351

M

Machine technology, 332–333
Machines, operator input to, 454–455
MAD (mean absolute deviation), 156–157, 159
Maintenance and reliability, 697–714
autonomous maintenance, 708
defined, 700
ethical dilemma, 709
increasing repair capabilities, 708
preventive maintenance, 705–708
reliability, 701–705
strategic importance of, 700–701
total productive maintenance, 709
Maintenance/repair/operating (MROs) inventories and, 528–529
Major league baseball umpires, 648
Make-or-buy decisions, 214–215, 484–485
Malcolm Baldrige National Quality Awards, 83, 256
Management, as productivity variable, 53, 54–55
Management, MRP and
dynamics of, 613
JIT and, 614
Management process, OM and, 45
Manager, project, 101–102
Managerial issues, control charts and, 297–298
Managing bullwhip effect, 512–514
Managing demand, capacity and, 350–351
Managing inventory. *See* Inventory management
Managing quality, 251–282. *See also* Total quality management
cost of, 256–257
defining, 255–257
ethics and, 257
implications of, 255–256
international quality standards, 256
role of inspection, 268–271
services and, 271–272
strategy and, 254
tools of TQM, 264–268
total quality management, 257–264
Manila, cartoon industry in, 71
Manufacturability, product development and, 208
Manufacturing
organizational chart, 43
regulations, 241–242
repetitive, 318–319
Manufacturing cycle time, 678
MAPE (Mean absolute percent error), 158, 159
MapInfo, 391
Maptitude, 391
Maquiladoras, 72
Market survey, 149–150
Market-based price model, 493
Marketing, OM and, 42
Markets
global view of operations and, 72
proximity to, 381–382
Marriott, 494
Mass customization
focus in, 322–323, 324
OM and, 57

Mastek Corp., agile project management, 105
Master production schedule, 573, 605–606
Master schedule, scheduling issues and, 613, 641
Material flow cycle, 529
Material handling costs, 413
Material requirements planning (MRP), 601–636. *See also* Dependent inventory model requirements
  buckets and, 614
  capacity planning and, 619–621
  closed loop, 619
  defined, 604
  dependent demand, 604
  dependent inventory model requirements and, 604–609
  distribution resource planning (DRP) and, 622
  dynamics, 613
  enterprise resource planning (ERP), 622–625
  ethical dilemma, 625
  extensions of, 618–621
  gross material requirements plan and , 609–610
  JIT and, 614
  limitations and, 613–614
  lot-sizing techniques and, 614–618
  net requirements plan and, 610–613
  planning bill, time-phased product structure and, 608
  safety stock and, 613
  services and, 621–622, 625
  structure for, 609–613
  using software, 626–627
Material requirements planning II (MRP II), 618–619
Mathematical approaches, aggregate planning and, 581–583
Matrix organization, 101
Mattel, 86, 242
Maturity phase, product life cycle and, 203
Maximization problems, linear programming and, T3–7
McDonald's Corp., 80, 213, 273
  Global Company Profile, 406–407
  hamburger assembly line, 425
  inventory management, 501, 690
  process analysis, 326
  process strategy, 336
  quality, 273
  scheduling, 690
  supply chain risks and tactics, 488
McKesson Corp., 532, 680
Mean absolute deviation (MAD), 156–157, 159
Mean absolute percent error (MAPE), 158, 159
Mean chart limits, setting of, 288–291
Mean squared error (MSE), 157–158, 159
Mean time between failures (MTBF), 702–703
Measurement, productivity and, 52–53
Measuring:
  forecast error, 155–158
  supply chain performance, 499–502
Medium-range forecast, 146–147
Meijer, 459
Mercedes-Benz, 84, 210, 213, 261, 378
  sustainability, 236, 241
Merck mission statement, 74
MERCOSUR, 72
Mercury Marine, 483
Messier-Bugatti, 68
Messier-Dowty, 68
Methods analysis, 455–457
Methods for aggregate planning, 576–583
Methods of evaluating location alternatives,
  center-of-gravity method, 386–387
  factor-rating method, 382–388
  locational cost-volume analysis, 384–385
  transportation model, 387–388
Methods time measurement (MTM), 465
Methods Time Measurement Association, 465n
Mexico, NAFTA and, 72
MicroGreen Polymers, 237
Microsoft Corp., 78, 102–103, 150, 210, 212
Microsoft Project, 104
  entering data, 124
  PERT analysis, 125
  project management and, 124–126
  tracking the time status of a project, 125–126
  viewing the project schedule, 124–125
Milliken, 256
Milton Bradley, 531
Milwaukee Paper
  activity-on-arrow (AOA), 109
  activity-on-node (AON), 106–108, 71completion of product on time and, 117
  computing project variance, 116
  critical path, 114
  earliest finish time (EFT), 111
  earliest start time (EST), 111
  expected times and, 116
  latest finish time (LFT) and, 112–113
  latest start time, (LST) and, 112–113
  project crashing, 121–123
  project network, 125
  project schedule, 124–125, 128
  sample Gantt chart, 124
  slack time and, 113–114
  standard deviation and, 117
  time estimates, 109
  variances, 116, 117
MindView, 104
Minimal-cost-flow problem, T5–13
Minimization problems, LP and, T3–7 to T3–8
Minimizing costs, independent demand inventory and, 535–539
Minimum cost of insertion technique, T5–10
Miscellaneous services, aggregate planning and, 584–585
Missions, global view of operations and, 73–74, 75
Mitigation tactics, supply chain risks, 488
Mitsubishi Heavy Ind, 68
Mixed strategy, aggregate planning and, 576
Mixing options, aggregate scheduling and, 575–576
MNC (Multinational corporation), 87
Models, independent demand and, 540–545
MODI method (modified distribution):
  how to use, T4–2 to T4–4
  solving a problem, T4–2 to T4–4
  transportation problems and, T4–2 to T4–4
Modular bills, MRP and, 607–608
Modular design, product development and, 209
Modularization, service efficiency and, 219
Modules, repetitive focus and, 321
Moment-of-truth, service design and, 219
Monitoring forecasts, 176–177
Monterey Jack cheese, 213–214
Most likely time, PERT and, 115
Motivation, incentive systems, 453
Motivation systems, job design and, 453
Motorola, 256, 259
Moving averages
  quantitative forecasting and, 152–154
  weighted, 153–154
MROs, 528–529
MRP., *see* Material requirements planning
Mrs. Field's Cookies, 413
MSE (mean squared error), 157–158, 159
Muda, 689
Multidomestic strategy, global operations and, 87

Multifactor productivity, 52–53
Multimodal shipping, logistics management and, 495
Multinational corporation (MNC), 87
Multiple regression, 174–175
Multiple regression analysis, 174–175
Multiple traveling salesmen problem (MTSP), T5–4, T5–8
Multiplicative seasonal model, 165
Multiproduct case, break-even analysis and, 358–360
Muther Grid, 410

N

Nabisco, 148
NAFTA (North American Free Trade Agreement), 72
Naive approach, quantitative forecasting and, 151–152
NASCAR Racing Team, Global Company Profile, 446–447
National chains, aggregate planning and, 584
National Highway Safety Administration, 241
Natural variations, statistical process control and, 284–285
Nature of aggregate planning, 572–573
Nearest neighbor procedure, T5–5 to T5–7
Negotiation strategies, vendor selection and, 493
Nestlé, 88, 493
Net material requirements plan, MRP and, 610–612
Net present value, strategy-driven investments and, 362–364
Net requirements plan, MRP and, 610–613
Networks, routing and scheduling vehicles and, T5–3
New challenges in OM, 56–57
New Guinea, SEATO and, 72
New products, generating, 203–204
New York City potholes, regression analysis of, 175
New Zealand, SEATO and, 72
Night Hawk, 352
Nike, 150, 496
Nintendo, 148
Nissan
  annual inventory turnover, 501
  level strategy, 576
  low-emission vehicles, 232
  scheduling, 615
  supply chain risks and tactics, 488
Nodel Construction Company, 170–175
Nodes, routing and scheduling vehicles and, T5–3
Noise, in work area, 455, 456
Non-basic variables, T3–3
Nordstrom Department Store inspection, 270
Normal curve areas, A2–A3, T1–4 to T1–7
Normal distribution, A2–A3
Normal time, labor standards and, 460, 461
North American Free Trade Agreement, 72
Nucor, 254
Nurse shortage, 657
N.Y. Edison, 163–164

O

Objectives of routing and scheduling vehicle problems, T5–2
Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), 241, 469, 469n
Office Depot, 459, 497
Office layout, 408, 409–410
Office Max, 572
Office relationships chart, 410
Official Board Markets weekly publication, 493
Old Oregon Wood Store, 668
Olive Garden Restaurant. *See also* Darden Restaurants
  forecasting, 151
  inspection, 270
  JIT, 678
OM. *See* Operations management
OM in Action
  airline capacity, matching to demand, 351
  Align Technology mass customization, 323
  Amazon robot warehouse strategy, 414
  Benetton, ERP software and, 623
  blue jeans and sustainability, 235
  car assembly lines, sustainability in, 241
  Cessna Aircraft Company lean production, 680
  Delta Airlines, project management and, 104
  Denmark's meat cluster, 383
  DHL, supply chain and, 496
  Disney musical's revenue management, 586
  frequent flyer miles, booking seat with, 295
  hospital accident avoidance, 270
  hospital benchmarks against Ferrari Racing Team, 262
  hotel industry, technology changes and, 336
  incentives to unsnarl traffic jams in the OR, 453
  Iowa data center locations, 381
  iPad menu, 327
  JC Penney, supply chain and, 491
  La Quinta hotel site selection, 389
  Lean Production at Cessna Aircraft, 680
  mass customization for straight teeth, 323
  Mastek Corp. agile project management, 105
  Milton Bradley inventory management, 531
  missing perfect chair, 454
  New York City potholes and regression analysis, 175
  Olive Garden, forecasting and, 151
  operating room traffic jams, 453
  Orlando Magic short-term scheduling, 642
  Reshoring to Small-Town U.S.A., 85
  retail services, saving time, 459
  retail's last 48 yards, 533
  RFID tags help control bullwhip effect, 513
  Richey International's spies, 273
  roses, supply-chain management and, 484
  San Francisco General Hospital lean operations, 689
  Snapper, aggregate planning and, 573
  Starbucks Coffee productivity and, 52
  Subaru's clean, green set of wheels, 243
  Taco Bell
    product development, 212
    productivity and lower costs and, 56
  3D printers, 210
  Tour de France, 123
  Toyota reworking production, 688
  UPS
    staffing, 464
  U.S. cartoon production in Manila, global view of operations, 71
One-sided window, T5–12
Online auctions, 494
Online catalogues, 494
Online exchanges, 494
On-time delivery, 526
Operating characteristics (OC) curves, 301–302, T2–2 to T2–3
Operations analyst, OM and, 47
Operations and productivity, 39–66. *See also* operations management
Operations chart
  job design and, 456
  method analysis and, 457
Operations layout strategy. *See* Layout strategies

Operations management
definition, 42
ethics and social responsibility, 57
goods and services, 49–51
growth of services, 49–50
Hard Rock Café and, 40–41
heritage of, 46–48
integrating with other activities, 81
job opportunities in, 45–46
management process, 45
new challenges, 56–57
operations for goods and services, 49–51
organizing to produce goods and services, 42, 44
productivity, service sector and, 55–56
productivity challenge, 51–56
productivity measurement, 52–53
productivity variables, 53–55
reasons to study, 44–45
service growth, 49–50
service pay, 50–51
significant events in OM, 48
supply chain and, 44
ten strategy decisions, 45, 46
what operation managers do, 45–46
where OM jobs are, 45–46
why study?, 44–45
Operations managers jobs, 45–46
Operations strategy in a global environment, 67–96
competitive advantage through operations, 74–77
developing missions and strategies, 73–74
global view, 70–73
issues in, 78–79
outsourcing, 82–86
strategy development and implementation, 79–82
strategy options, 87–88
ten strategic OM decisions, 77, 81, 82
using software, 89–90
Operator input to machines, 454–455
Opportunities in an integrated supply chain, 490–492
Opportunity cost, assignment method and, 646–648, 646n
Opportunity loss, 648
Optimistic time in PERT, 115
Options, limiting for service efficiency, 219
Oracle Primavera, 104
Ordering cost, 533–534
Organization, building and staffing, 81–82
Organization charts, 43
Organizing for product development, 207–208
Organizing to produce goods and services, 42, 44
Orlando Magic, 268. *See also* Amway Center
aggregate planning, revenue management, and, 598
control chart, 268
forecasting and, 192–193
MRP and, 633–634
short-term scheduling and, 642, 669–670
sustainability, 246–247
Orlando Utilities Commission, Global Company Profile, 698–699
Otis Elevator, 380
Outsourcing
defined, 82–84
rating outsource providers, 85–86
risks of, 84–85
theory of comparative advantage, 84
types of, 485

P

P system, 552–553
Pacific Cycle LLC, 485
Paddy-Hopkirk Factory, 457
Paraguay, MERCOSUR and, 72
Parallel path, redundancy and, 704–705
Parametric Technology Corp., 217
Pareto charts, 264, 265–266
Pareto principle, 529
Park Plaza Hotel, 236
Parker Hi-Fi Systems, 563
Partial tour, T5–6
Partnering relationships, supply chain strategies and, 57
Partnerships, JIT and, 678–680
Part-time employees, 450
Path, T5–6
Pay, service sector and, 50–51
p-charts, 294–295, 297
Pegging, 613
People, sustainability issues and, 233–234
PepsiCo
mission statement, 74
supply chain management, 500–501
sustainable production process, 238
Performance criteria, for sequencing jobs, 649
Periodic inventory systems, 531
Periodic order quantity (POQ), 616–617
Perpetual inventory system, 531, 552
Perrier, 257
Personal ethics, 498
Personal time allowances, 460
PERT (program evaluation and review technique)
activity-on-arrow (AOA) example, 109
activity-on-node (AON) example, 107–108
critique, 123–124
framework, 105–106
Gantt charts *versus,* 103
Microsoft Project analysis, 125
network diagrams and approaches, 106
probability of project completion, 117–120
time estimates, 115–116
PERT analysis, Microsoft Project and, 125
Pessimistic time estimate, PERT and, 115
Phantom bills of material, MRP and, 608
Pharmaceutical companies, use of RFID tags, 333
Philippines, cartoon industry and, 71
Physical sciences, OM and, 48
Pig production, 338
Pilferage, 532
Ping Inc., 323
Pipelines, logistics management and, 495
Pirelli SpA, 90–91
Pivot column, T3–4
Pivot number, T3–4
Pivot row, T3–4
Pixar, 411
Plan-Do-Check-Act (PDCA), 258–259
Planned order receipt, MRP and, 612
Planned order release, MRP and, 612
Planning bills, MRP and, 608
Planning horizons, aggregate planning and, 570–571
Planning process, aggregate planning and, 570–571
Plant manager position, OM and, 47
Poisson distribution, 288n
Poisson table, A4
Poka-yoke
lean operations, 688
service blueprinting, 330
source inspection and, 269
Political change, generating new products and, 204
Political risk, location strategy and, 381
Polycon Industries, 684
POM for Windows, A6–A7
accessing, 59
aggregate planning, 591
break-even analysis, 365
factor rating models, 89
forecasting, 182
inventory problems, 555
layout strategy, 431
location problems, 392–393

POM for Windows (*Continued*)
material requirements planning (MRP), 626
project scheduling, 127
reliability problems, 710
short-term scheduling, 662
SPC control charts, OC curves, acceptance sampling and process capability, 305
use of, A6–A7
Porsche, 688
Port of Baltimore, 157–158
Port of Charleston, 489
Portion-control standards, 214
Postponement, mass customization and, 323
supply chain management and, 491
Potholes, New York City, 175
Pratt & Whitney, machine technology and, 333
Precedence relationship, in assembly-line balancing, 425
Predetermined time standards, 463–465
Preferred Hotels and Resorts Worldwide, 273
Prevention costs, quality and, 256
Preventive maintenance, 705–708
Priority rules, sequencing jobs and, 649–652
Probabilistic inventory models and safety stock, 546–548
other models, 549–551
Process analysis, design and, 326–331
flowchart, 327
job design and, 457
process chart, 327–328
service blueprinting, 330–331
time-function mapping, 327
value-stream mapping, 328–329
Process capability, SPC and, 298–300
definition, 298
index (C_{pk}) and, 299–300
ratio (C_p) and, 298–299
Process charts, 327–328, 456, 457
Process choices, comparison of, 324–326
Process comparison, 324–326
Process control, 333–334
Process design
mass customization, 323
OM and
customer interaction and, 331–332
Process focus
process strategies and, 320–321, 324
scheduling, 643
Process improvement consultants, OM positions and, 47
Process mapping, 327
Process redesign, 336–337
Process strategy, 317–343
analysis and design, 326–331
comparison and, 324–326
defined, 320
equipment and technology selection, 326
four process strategies, 320–326
mass customization focus and, 322–324
process focus and, 320–321
process redesign, 336–337
product focus, 322
production technology, 332–336
repetitive focus and, 321
service process design, special considerations for, 331–332
technology in services, 336
Process time of a station, 352
Process-chain-network (PCN) analysis, 217–219
Process-focused facilities, 643
Process-oriented layout, 409, 416–421
computer software for, 420–421
focused work center and focused factory, 424
work cells and, 409, 421–424
Procter & Gamble, 210–211, 233, 236, 512
Producer's risk, 301, T2–3 to T2–4
Product decision, 201
Product design issues, 209–211. *See also* Design of goods and services
application of decision trees and, 220–222
computer-aided design (CAD), 209
computer-aided manufacturing (CAM), 210
life cycle assessment (LCA), 211
mass customization, 323
modular design, 209
regulations, 241
robust design, 209
standard for the exchange of product data (STEP), 210
sustainability, 211, 236–238
3D printing and, 210
value analysis, 211
virtual reality technology, 210–211
Product development, 204–208
alliances and, 213
continuum, 211–213
development system, 204
global OM, 72
house of quality and, 204–207
issues for design and, 209–211
joint ventures and, 212–213
manufacturability and, 208
OM challenges, 57
organizing for, 207–208
purchasing technology by acquiring a firm and, 212
quality function deployment (QFD), 204–207
teams and, 208
41-D printing, 210
value engineering and, 208
Product development continuum, 211–213
Product failure rate (FR), reliability and, 702
Product focus, 322, 324, 326
Product generation, new opportunities, 204
Product liability, quality and, 256
Product life cycle, 202
management and, 216–217
strategy and, 79, 202–203
Product life-cycle management (PLM), 216–217
Product manager, 207–208
Product strategy options support competitive advantage, 201–202
Product-by-value analysis, 203
Product-focused facilities, 643
Production
defined, 42
transition from design to, 222
varying capacity, 574
Production order quantity model, 540–542
Production technology, 332–336
automated guided vehicles (AGV), 334
automated storage and retrieval system (ASRS), 334
automatic identification system (AIS), 333
computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM), 335–336
flexible manufacturing system (FMS), 335
machine technology, 332–333
process control, 333–334
radio frequency identification (RFID), 333
robots, 334
vision systems, 334
Production/operations, OM and, 42
Productivity
defined, 51
multifactor, 52–53
single-factor, 52
Productivity, Starbucks Coffee and, 52
Productivity challenge and OM, 51
defined, 51
measurement of, 52–53
service sector and, 55–56
variables, 53–55
Productivity variables, 53–55
Product-oriented layout, 409, 424–429, 425

assembly line balancing and, 425–429
Profit, sustainability and, 235
Program evaluation and review technique (PERT). *See* PERT
Project completion probability, 117–120
Project controlling, 104–105
Project crashing and cost-time trade-offs, 120–123
Project management, 98–142
activity-on-arrow example, 109
activity-on-node example, 107–108
calculating slack time, 113–114
cost-time trade-offs, 120–123
critical path analysis, 109–110
critique of PERT and CPM, 123–124
determining the project schedule, 109–114
ethical dilemma, 127
ethical issues in, 102
framework of PERT and CPM, 105–106
identifying the critical path, 113–114
importance of, 100
Microsoft Project, 115, 124–126
network diagrams and approaches, 106
non-critical paths, 119–120
PERT/CPM in, 105–106
probability of project completion, 117–120
project controlling, 104–105
project crashing, 120–123
project planning, 100–103
project scheduling and, 103
time estimates in, 115–116
using software, 127–128
variability in activity times, 115–120
work breakdown structure, 102–103
Project Management Institute (PMI), 46, 102
Project manager, 101–102
Project network, 107
Project organization, 100–101
Project planning, 100–103
Project scheduling, 103
determining, 109–114
Microsoft Project view, 124–125
Proplanner, 217, 421
Provide better goods and services, global view of operations and, 72
Providing redundancy, reliability and, 703–705
Proximity
to competitors, location strategies and, 382
to markets, location strategies and, 381–382
to suppliers, location strategies and, 382
in workspace, 410
Psychological components, job design and, 451–452
Pull data, 490
Pull system, 678
kanban, 685–687
Purchase orders outstanding, MRP and, 608
Purchase technology by acquiring firm, 212
Purchasing, centralized, 493–494
Purdue Pharma LP, 336
Push systems, 678

Q

Q systems, 552
QFD. *See* Quality Function Deployment (QFD)
Qualitative forecasting methods, 149
consumer market survey, 149–150
Delphi method, 149
jury of executive opinion, 149
market survey, 149–150
sales force composite, 149
Quality, 251–282. *See also* Total quality management (TQM)
cost of, 256–257
defining, 255–257
demand, capacity and, 349–325
ethics and, 257
house of, 204–205
implications of, 255–256
international quality standards, 256, 492
leaders in, 257
lean operations, 687
Malcolm Baldrige National Quality Award, 256
productivity measurement, 53
role of inspection, 268–271
services and, 271–272
strategy and, 254
tools of TQM, 264–268
total quality management, 257–264
Quality circle, 260
Quality control, 48
Quality function deployment (QFD), 204–207
Quality loss function (QLF), 263
Quality manager, 47
Quality robust, 262–263
Quantitative forecasts, 149
associative models, 150
time series models, 150
Quantity discount models, inventory management and, 543–545
Quantity discounts
contracting, 493
Quik Lube, 298

R

Rackspace, 572
Radio frequency identification (RFID), 333, 490, 513
Railroads, logistics management and, 495
Random number
table of, A4
Random stocking, warehouse layout and, 415
Random variations, time series forecasting and, 151
Range chart limits, setting of, 291–292
using of, 291–292
Rapid Reviews:
Chapter 39 Operations and Productivity, 65–66
Chapter 40 Operations Strategy in a Global Environment, 95–96
Chapter 41 Project Management, 141–142
Chapter 42 Forecasting, 203–204
Chapter 43 Design of Goods and Services, 229–230
Chapter 44 Managing Quality, 281–282
Chapter 45 Process Strategy and Sustainability, 343–344
Chapter 46 Location Strategies, 403–404
Chapter 47 Layout Strategies, 443–444
Chapter 48 Human Resources, Job Design, and Work Measurement, 477–478
Chapter 49 Supply-Chain Management, 507–508
Chapter 50 Inventory Management, 565–566
Chapter 51 Aggregate Planning, 599–600
Chapter 52 Material Requirement Planning (MRP) and ERP, 635–636
Chapter 53 Short-Term Scheduling, 671–672
Chapter 54 Lean Operations, 695–696
Chapter 55 Maintenance and Reliability, 713–714
Supplement 43 Sustainability in the Supply Chain, 249–250
Supplement 44 Statistical Process Control, 315–316
Supplement 45 Capacity and Constraint Management, 343–344
Supplement 49 Supply-Chain Management Analytics, 523–524
Rapid-Lube case study, 93
Rating outsource providers, 85–86
Raw material inventory, 528
R-chart, 286, 291–292
Record accuracy, inventory management and, 531

Red Lobster Restaurants
location studies, 400–401
time study, 461
Reduce costs, global view of operations and, 71–72
Reduce inventory, JIT and, 681–682
Reduce lot sizes, JIT and, 682–683
Reduce setup costs, JIT and, 683–684
Reduce variability, JIT inventory and, 681–682
Reduced space and inventory, JIT and, 681
Redundancy, reliability and, 703–705
Regal Marine, 93, 200
Global Company Profile, 198–199
product design, 227–228
strategy at, 93
supply chain management, 505–506
Regression and correlation analysis, forecasting and, 169–175
Relationship chart, 410
Reliability, 701–705. *See also* Maintenance and reliability
defined, 700
providing redundancy and, 703–705
using software to improve, 710
Reorder point (ROP) inventory management and, 539–540
Repair capabilities, increasing, 708
Repetitive and product-oriented layout, 424–429
Repetitive facilities, scheduling and, 643
Repetitive focus, process strategy and, 321, 324
Repetitive manufacturing, Harley Davidson and, 318–319
Reputation, quality and, 255
"Request for quotation," 485
Reservations systems, 352
Reshoring, 84, 85
Resource Conservation and Recovery Act, 242
Resources view, operations strategy and, 78
Respect for people, TPS and, 687
Response, competitive advantage and, 77–78
Restaurants. *See also* Darden restaurants; Fast-food restaurants
aggregate planning and, 584
MRP and, 621–622
Retail layout, 408, 410–413
Retail stores. *See also* Specialty retail shops
inventory management, 533
job design, 459
scheduling services and, 656–657
Revenue function, break-even analysis and, 356
Revenue management, aggregate planning and, 585–588
Revenue sharing, 493
Reverse auctions, 494
Reverse logistics, 241, 498–499
RFID, 333, 490, 513
RFQs (requests for quotes), 485
Richey International, 273
Ricoh Corp., 266
Right-hand/left-hand chart, 456
Risk
outsourcing, 84–85
reducing with incremental changes, 360–361
supply chain and, 487–489, 510–512
Ritz-Carlton Hotels
quality, 256, 280
Robert Bosch, 72
Robots, 334, 335, 414
Robust design, product development and, 209
Robust model, inventory management and, 538–539
Rochester Manufacturing Corp., 340
Rolls-Royce, 68
Rope, in bottleneck management, 355
Route sheet, 216
Routing service vehicles, T5–5 to T5–11
Routing vehicles, T5–4
Rubbermaid, 200, 572
Run test, charts and, 298
Rusty Wallace's NASCAR Racing Team, Global Company Profile, 446–447

S

Saab, 68
Saber Roofing, use of GIS system, 390–391
SAE (Society of Automotive Engineers), 214–215
Safe Drinking Water Act, 242
Safe Place Infant Security Solution, 333
Safeskin Corp., 75
Safety stock
inventory management and, 539, 546–548
MRP and, 613
Sales and operations planning (S&OP), 571–572
Sales force composite, forecasting and, 149
Sales incentives, 490
Sample missions, 75
Samples, SPC and, 285. *See also* Acceptance sampling
Sam's Club, 533
Samsung, 72, 201
San Diego Hospital, 167–168
San Francisco General Hospital, 689
SAP AG, 624
SAP PLM, 217
SAS, 295
SAS/GIS, 391
S.C. Johnson, 234, 238
Scatter diagrams, TQM tools and, 264, 265
Scheduling
criteria, 642–643
decisions, 570
forward and backward and, 641–642
just-in-time and, 684–687
lean operations, 684–687, 690
mass customization, 323
OM decisions and, 46
project, 103, 109–114
service vehicles and, T5–11 to T5–13
vehicles, T5–4
Schneider National, 495
Schwinn Bicycle Co., 485
SCOR model, 501–502
Seasonal demands, capacity and, 350
aggregate planning, 575
airline industry, 351
Seasonal variations in data, 164–169
Seasonality, time series and, 150
SEATO, 72
Second-order smoothing, 162
Security, JIT, supply chain management and, 489
Selection of equipment and technology, process strategy and, 332–336
Self-directed teams, 452
Sequencing, jobs in work centers, 649–655
critical ratio and, 652–653
definition, 649
earliest due date, 649, 652
first come, first served, 652
Johnson's rule and, 653–654
limitations of rule-based dispatching systems, 654–655
priority rules for dispatching jobs, 649–652
shortest processing time, 649, 652
Sequential sampling, T2–2
Service blueprinting, 330–331
Service industry inspection, 270
Service level, probabilistic models and, 546
Service pay, 50–51
Service recovery, 272
Service sector
defined, 50
demand and capacity management in, 351–352

documents for, 219–220
efficiency and, 219
forecasting and, 178–179
location strategy, 388–389
operations in, 49–51
organization chart, 43
productivity, boosting, 332
productivity and, 55–56
TQM in, 270–272
Service vehicle scheduling, T5–11 to T5–13
Service(s). *See also* Service Sector
aggregate planning and, 583–585
defined, 49
design of, goods and, 217–220
differences from goods and, 49
documents for, 217–220
focus, 326
growth of, 49–50
inventory control, 532–533
lean operations in, 690
MRP and, 621–622
pay in, 50–51
process design, 331–332
scheduling and, 656–659
service blueprinting, process strategy and, 330–331
technology, 336
total quality management, services and, 271–272
Servicescapes, 413
SERVQUAL, 272
Setup cost, 534
reducing in lean operations and JIT, 683–684
Setup time, 534
steps for reducing, 684
Seven steps in forecasting, 148–149
Seven tools of TQM, 264–268
Seven wastes, lean operations and, 676
Shader Electronics, LP problem example, T3–1 to T3–7
Shared value, 232
Shell Lubricants, 337
Sherwin Williams, 201
Shipping systems, 494–495
Shortest processing time (SPT), 649, 652
Short-range forecast, 146
Short-term scheduling, 637–672. *See also* Scheduling
airlines, 657
cyclical scheduling, service employees and, 658–659
ethical dilemma, 659–660
finite capacity (FCS) and, 655–656
finite loading, and, 642
importance of, 640
infinite loading and, 642
issues and, 640–643
limitations of rule-based dispatching systems, 654–655
loading jobs, 643–648
priority rules for sequencing jobs and, 649–652
process-focused facilities and, 643
repetitive facilities and, 643
scheduling criteria, 642–643
sequencing, jobs in work centers, 649–655
services and, 656–659
using software, 660–662
Shouldice hospital, 201–202, 322
Shrinkage, 532
Siemens, 217, 420
Significant events in OM, 48
Signs, symbols, artifacts, 413
Simplex method of LP, T3–1 to T3–10. *See also* Linear programming
artificial and surplus variable, T3–7
converting constants to equations, T3–2
definition, T3–2
setting up first simplex table, T3–2 to T3–4
simplex solution procedures, T3–4 to T3–6
solving minimization problems, T3–7 to T3–8
summary of simplex steps for maximization problems, T3–6
Singapore Airlines, 295
Single sampling, T2–2
Single-factor productivity, 52
Single-period inventory model, 551–552
Single-product case, break-even analysis and, 357–358
Single-stage control of replenishment, 490
Six Sigma, 259–260, 260n, 299
SKUs, 533
Slack time, 113–114
Slack variables, simplex method and, T3–2
Slotting fees, 412, 430
Smith, Adam, 450
Smiths Aerospace, 68
Smoothing constant, 154–155
Snapper Lawn Mowers, 572–573
Social accounting, 235
Social responsibility, OM and, 57
Sociological and demographic change, generating new products and, 204
Software. *See* Excel OM; Excel spreadsheets, creating your own; POM for Windows
Solutions to even-numbered problems, A8–A19
Solved Problems
aggregate planning, 592–593
capacity and constraint management, 366–367
forecasting, 182–184
human resources, job design, and work measurement, 470–471
inventory management, 555–557
layout strategy, 432–434
lean operations, 691–692
location problems, 393–395
maintenance and reliability, 710
modem production, 91
MRP and ERP and, 627–630
process strategy, 338
product design, 224
project management, 128–131
quality, 274
short-term scheduling, 662–664
statistical process control, 305–306
supply chain management, 503–504
supply chain management analytics, 518–519
sustainability, 244–245
tire industry globalization, 90–91
Solving routing and scheduling vehicle problems, T5–4
Sony, 70, 84, 263
Source inspection, 269
Sourcing issues: make-or-buy *vs.* outsourcing, 484–485
South Korea
SEATO and, 69
South Korea, manufacturing in, 89
Southern Recreational Vehicle Co., 400
Southwest Airlines, 76, 295, 351, 452
activity mapping, 81, 82
activity mapping of low-cost competitive advantage, 82
Southwestern University
forecasting, 191–192
project management, 136–137
quality management, 277–278
Spatial layout, 413
Special considerations for service process design, 331–332
Special packaging, 492
Specialty retail shops, forecasting and, 178
St. John's Health Center, 453
Staffing
capacity, 574
global talent, 72–73
organization, 81–82
work cells, 422–424
Stakeholders, 57
Standard deviation, calculation, 286n
Standard deviation of the regression, 171

Standard error of the estimate, 171–172
Standard for the exchange of product data (STEP), 210
Standard normal distribution, T1–5 to T1–7
Standard normal table, A2–A3, T1–6 to T1–7
Standard time, labor standards and, 460, 461
Standard work practice, TPS and, 688
Standardization, supply-chain management and, 491
Starbucks Coffee
  productivity and, 52
  scheduling software, 657
Statistical process control (SPC), 264, 267–268, 283–316
  acceptance sampling, 300–303
  assignable variations, 285
  average outgoing quality (AOQ) and, 302–303
  c-charts, 295–297
  central limit theorem and, 286–287
  control charts, 268, 279, 285–286
  control charts for attributes, 294–297
  control charts for variables, 286
  definition, 284
  managerial issues and control charts, 297–298
  mean chart limits, 288–291
  natural variations, 284–285
  operating characteristic curve and, 301–302
  patterns on control charts, 297
  p-charts, 294–295, 297
  process capability, 298–300
  process capability index and, 299–300
  process capability ratio and, 298–299
  R-chart, 286, 291–292
  samples, 285
  setting mean and range charts, 292–294
  setting range chart limits and, 291–292
  using ranges and mean charts, 288–293
  using software, 304–305
  variables for, 286
  which chart to use, 297
  x-bar chart, 286, 288–291, 297
Statistical tools for managers, T1–1 to T1–8
  continuous probability distributions, T1–4 to T1–7
  discrete probability distribution, T1–2 to T1–4
  expected value of a discrete probability distribution, T1–3
  variance of a discrete probability distribution, T1–3 to T1–4
Status, viewing in Microsoft Project, 125–126
Steakhouses restaurant chain, 327
Stock-keeping units (SKUs), 415
Stop & Shop, 414
Stopwatch studies, 459–462
Storage, 327n, 516–517
Strategic importance of:
  layout decisions, 408
  location, 378–379
  maintenance and reliability, 700–701
  short-term scheduling, 640
  supply-chain management, 482–484
Strategic OM decisions, 79–81
Strategy
  aggregate planning, 573–576
  capacity and, 349
  competitive advantages and, 201–202
  definition, 74
  developing missions and, 73–74
  driven investments, applying investment analysis to, 362–364
  global operation options and, 87
  human resource, 448
  international, 87
  issues in operations and, 79–82
  life cycle and, 202–203
  multidomestic, 87
  operations in a global environment, 67–96
  quality and, 254
  service locations and, 388–389
  transnational, 88
Strategy, aggregate planning development and implementation
  key success factors, 79–80
Strategy development and implementation, 79–82
  building and staffing the organization, 81–82
  core competencies and, 80–81
  implementing 48 strategic OM decisions and, 82
  integrating OM and other activities, 81
  key success factors, 79–81
Structure for MRP, 609–613
Subaru, 243
Subcontracting, 574
Sub-Saharan Africa, 498
Subtours, T5–8
Super Fast Pizza, 78
Supplier selection analysis, 514–515
Suppliers
  audits of, 233
  development, 492–493
  evaluation, 492
  lean operations in services and, 690
  location in proximity to, 382
  partnerships in lean operations and JIT, 678–680
Supply chain, 44
  partnering, 57
  risk, 487–489
Supply-chain management, 479–508
Supply chain management analytics, 509–524
  evaluation techniques, 510–512
  managing the bullwhip effect, 512–514
  supplier selection analysis and, 514–515
  Supply Chain Operations Reference model (SCOR), 501–502
  transportation mode analysis and, 515–516
  warehouse storage, 516–517
Supply Chain Operations Reference model (SCOR), 501–502
  benchmarking and, 501
  definition, 482
  distribution management, 497
  E-procurement and, 494
  ethics and, 498, 503
  forecasting and, 147–148
  globalization, 71
  integrated and, 489–492
  inventory assets, 499–501
  JIT and, 489
  joint ventures and, 486
  keiretsu networks and, 486–487
  logistics management, 494–497
  Manager and Planner, 47
  measuring performance and, 499–502
  mitigation tactics and, 488
  objective of, 482
  risk, 487–489
  software, 622
  sourcing issues: make-or-buy *vs.* outsourcing, 484–485
  sourcing strategies and, 485–487
  strategic importance of, 482–484
  strategies and, 485–487
  suppliers, few, many and, 485
  supply base, building, 492–494
  Supply Chain Operations Reference (SCOR) model, 501–502
  sustainability and, 498–499
  vertical integration, 486
  virtual companies, 487
Surplus variables, T3–7
Surrogate (substitute) interaction, process, 218
Survey, market, 149–150

Sustainability
commons, 233
corporate social responsibility, 232
end-of-life phase, 241
lean operations, 690
logistics, 238–240
OM and, 57
product design, 236–238
product design and, 211
production process, 238
regulations and industry standards, 241–243
supply-chain management, and, 498–499
systems view, 233
triple bottom line, 233–236
Sustainability software, 622
SWOT analysis, 79
Symbols, servicescapes, and, 413
System nervousness, 613
System reliability, 701–703
Systems view of sustainability, 233

T

Tables
control chart limits, 290
Normal curve areas, A2–A3
Poisson distribution, A4
random numbers, A4
TacoBell, 202
forecasting, 178
lowering costs with productivity and energy savings, 56
product development, 212
Taguchi concepts, 262–263
Takt time, 422, 422n
Takumi, 257
TAL Apparel Ltd., 490, 491
Tangible costs, location strategies and, 380
Target-oriented quality, 263
Teams, self-directed, 452
Techniques for evaluating supply chain, 510
Technological change, generating new products and, 204
Technological forecasts, 147
Technology. *See also* Production technology
acquiring by purchasing firm, 212
focus, 326
group, 215
human resource constraints, 448
Teijin Ltd, 212–213
Teijin Seiki, 68
Temperature, in work area, 455
Ten OM strategy decisions, 45, 46, 77, 81, 82
Tesla, 232
Test scores, forecasting success by, 179
Texas Instruments, 87, 256, 260
Thales, 68
Theory of comparative advantage, 84
Theory of constraints (TOC), capacity and constraint management, 355
Therbligs, 464
Third-party logistics (3PL), 496–497
Three Mile Island nuclear facility, 455
Three time estimates in PERT, 115–116
3M, 200
41-D printing, 210
Throughput, lean operations and, 678
Throughput time, 353
Time aggregation, 545
Time estimates, in PERT, 115–116
Time fences, 613
Time horizons, 146–147
Time Measurement Units (TMUs), 464
Time series forecasting, 150–169
cycles in, 151
cyclical variations in data, 169
decomposition of time series and, 150–151
exponential smoothing and, 154–155
exponential smoothing with trend adjustment, 158–162
least-square methods, 162–164
mean absolute deviation, 156–157
measuring forecast error, 155–158
moving averages and, 152–154
naive approach to, 151–152
random variations and, 151
seasonal variations in data, 164–169
seasonality, 150–151
smoothing constant, 154–155
trend and, 150
trend projections and, 162–164
Time status, viewing in Microsoft Project, 125–126
Time studies, labor standards and, 459–463, 468
Time-based competition, product development and, 211–213
alliances, 213
joint ventures, 212–213
purchasing technology by buying a firm, 212
Time-function mapping, 327
Tools of total quality management, 263–268. *See also* Control charts
cause and effect diagrams, 265
check sheets, 264
flowcharts, 266–267
histogram, 267
knowledge of, 263
Pareto charts, 265–266
scatter diagrams, 265
statistical process control, 267–268
Toray Industries, 68
Toshiba, 535
Total productive maintenance (TPM), 709
Total quality management (TQM), 257–268
benchmarking, 260–261
continuous improvement, 258–259
definition, 257
employee empowerment, 260
flow chart, 254
just-in-time, 262
plan-do-check-act (PDCA), 258–259
services, 270–272
Six Sigma, 259–260
Taguchi concepts, 262–263
tools of, 263–268
total productive maintenance (TPM), 709
Total slack time, 114
Tour, T5–15
Tour de France, 123
Toy manufacturing in China, 86
Toyota Motor Corp., 72, 148, 202, 689
annual inventory turnover, 501
Global Company Profile, 674–675
level strategy, 576
low-emission vehicles, 232
reworking production line, 688
supply chain risks and tactics, 488
Toyota Production System, 674–675, 687–688
continuous improvement and, 687
defined, 676
respect for people, 687
standard work practice, 688
Toys "R" Us, 459
TQM. *See* Total quality management (TQM)
Tracking signal, forecasts and, 176
Transition to production, 222
Transnational strategy, global operations and, 88
Transportation
location strategies and, 387–388
waste, 327n
Transportation method of linear programming, 581–583
Transportation mode analysis, 515–516
Transportation models
location and strategies and, 387–388
Transportation problems,
MODI and VAM methods and, T4–1 to T4–10
MODI method, T4–2 to T4–4
VOGEL's approximation method (VAM), T4–4 to T4–7

Traveling salesman problem (TSP), T5–4, T5–5 to T5–8
Trend projections, forecasting and, 150, 162–164
Triple bottom line, 233–236
Trucking
  logistics management and, 495
  sustainability and, 239
Trust, managing the supply chain and, 491
TRW airbag plant, 260
Turkish airline, 295
62/45 operations, scheduling services and, 657
Twin Falls, Idaho, call center, 88
Two-bin system, 531
Two-sided window, T5–50
Type I error, 301
Type II error, 301
Types of forecasts, 147
Tyson, 488

U

Uber Technologies, Inc., 62
Umpires, major league baseball, 648
U.N. Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC), 242
Understand markets, global view of operations and, 72
Undirected arcs, routing and scheduling vehicles, T5–3
Unifi, 483
United Airlines, 392
United States trade agreements, 72
UPS (United Parcel Service), 454, 464, 495, 689
  logistics, 239, 496
  maintenance and, 700
  sustainable product design, 236
Uruguay, MERCOSUR and, 72
U.S., NAFTA and, 72
US Airways, 295
U.S. Navy, 105
Using ExcelOM, A5
Using POM for Windows, A6–A7
Utilization, capacity and, 348

V

Value, shared, 232
Value analysis, 211
Value engineering, product development and, 208
Value stream mapping (VSM), 328–329
Value-chain analysis, 78
Values, location strategy and, 381
Values for use in Poisson distribution, A4
Variability, lean operations and, 677–678, 681–682
Variability in activity times, project management and, 115–120
  probability of project completion, 117–120
  three time estimates in PERT, 115–116
Variable costs, break-even analysis and, 356, 362
Variable data, control charts for, 297
Variable inspection, 270
Variable(s), control charts for, 286, 297
Variance of a discrete probability distribution, statistical tools and, T1–3 to T1–4
Vehicle routing and scheduling, T5–1 to T5–18
  characteristics of problems, and, T5–3 to T5–5
  introduction, T5–2
  objectives of routing and scheduling problems, T5–2
  other problems, T5–13 to T5–14
  routing service vehicles, T5–5 to T5–11
  scheduling service vehicles, T5–11 to T5–13
Vendor-managed inventory (VMI), 490–491
Vertical integration, supply-chain management and, 486
Video Case Studies:
  Alaska Airlines:
  human resources, 475–476
  lean operations, 693–694
  process strategy, 341–342
  quality, 278–280
  Amway Center sustainability, 246–247
  Arnold Palmer Hospital:
  capacity planning, 371–372
  culture of quality, 278
  hospital layout, 440–442
  JIT, 694
  process analysis, 342
  project management, 137–138
  supply chain and, 506
  Darden Restaurants:
  location strategies, 400–401
  outsourcing offshore, 94
  statistical process control, 314
  supply chain and, 505
  Frito-Lay:
  maintenance, 712
  managing inventory, 563–564
  operations management, 63
  statistical process control, 313
  sustainability, 247–248
  Hard Rock Cafe:
  forecasting, 193–194
  global strategy, 93–94
  human resource strategy, 476
  location strategy, 401–402
  operations management in services, 63–64
  project management, 115, 138–140
  scheduling, 670
  Orlando Magic:
  forecasting and, 192–193
  MRP and, 633–634
  revenue management, 598
  short-term scheduling, 669–670
  sustainability, 246–247
  Red Lobster, location and strategies, 400–401
  Regal Marine:
  product design, 227–228
  strategy at, 93
  supply-chain management at, 505–506
  Ritz-Carlton Hotel company, 280
  Wheeled Coach:
  inventory control, 564
  layout strategy, 442
  MRP and, 634
  process strategy, 340–341
Viewing the project schedule, Microsoft Project and, 124–125
Virgin Australia, 295
Virtual companies, sourcing strategies and, 487
  supply chain strategies and, 487
Virtual reality technology, 210–211
Vision systems, production technology and, 334
Visual workplace, job design and, 458
Vizio, Inc., 487
Vogel's approximation method (VAM), transportation problems and, T4–4 to T4–7
Volkswagen, 211, 387–388
Volvo, 70

W

Walmart, 413
  competing on cost and, 76
  cross-docking strategy, 414
  retail layout and, 413
  RFID, 513
  RFID and supply chain, 490, 513
  scheduling, 690
  supply chain management and, 148, 483, 498, 501
  supply chain risks and tactics, 488
  supply-chain review, 234
Walmart Marketplace, 492
Walt Disney Co. *See also* Walt Disney Parks and Resorts
  Lion King revenue management, 586
Walt Disney Parks and Resorts
  experience differentiation and, 76
  forecasting and, 148–149
  Global Company Profile, 144–145
  maintenance, 700
  new products, 200

Warehouse
logistics management and, 495–496
storage, 516–517
Warehousing layout, 408, 413–415
cross-docking, 414
customizing, 415
objective, 413
random stocking, 415
Waste, 327n
Waste elimination, lean production and, 676–677
Waterfall approach to projects, 105
Waterways, logistics management and, 495
WBS (work breakdown structure), 102–103
Weeks of supply, 500–501
Weighted moving average forecasts, 153–154
Western Electric Hawthorne plant, 451
Wheeled Coach
Global Company Profile, 602–603
inventory control, 564
layout strategy, 442
MRP and, 602–603, 606, 634
process strategy, 340–341
Where are OM jobs?, 45–46
Whirlpool, 73, 239, 334
Why study OM, 44–45
Wilheim Karmann, 84
Windows, Microsoft's development structure, 102–103
Work balance chart, 423
Work breakdown structure (WBS), project management and, 102–103
Work cells, layout and, 409, 421–424
advantage of, 422
focused work center and focused factory, 424
requirements of, 421–422
staffing and balancing, 422–424
ergonomics and, 453–455
Work environment,
job design and, 455
Work measurement (labor standards)
historical experience and, 459
predetermined time standards and, 463–465
time studies and, 459–463
work sampling and, 465–468
Work order, 216
Work rules, human resources and, 450
Work sampling, labor standards and, 465–467
Work schedules, labor planning and, 449–450
Work-in-process (WIP) inventory, 528, 642–643
World Trade Organization (WTO), 72
ethical issues, 73

X

x-bar chart, 286, 288–291, 297
Xerox, 256, 261

Y

Yield management, aggregate planning and, 585–588

Z

z values, A2–A3
sample size for time study, 462
Zero opportunity costs, 647
Zhou Bicycle Co., 562–563

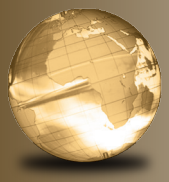
This page intentionally left blank

This page intentionally left blank

This page intentionally left blank

This page intentionally left blank

This page intentionally left blank



GLOBAL EDITION

For these Global Editions, the editorial team at Pearson has collaborated with educators across the world to address a wide range of subjects and requirements, equipping students with the best possible learning tools. This Global Edition preserves the cutting-edge approach and pedagogy of the original, but also features alterations, customization, and adaptation from the North American version.

This is a special edition of an established title widely used by colleges and universities throughout the world. Pearson published this exclusive edition for the benefit of students outside the United States and Canada. If you purchased this book within the United States or Canada, you should be aware that it has been imported without the approval of the Publisher or Author.

Pearson Global Edition

ISBN-10 1-292-15301-6
ISBN-13 978-1-292-15301-8
90000
9 781292 153018